AUTHENTICATED
U.S. GOVERNMENT
INFORMATION
GPO

# SUBCHAPTER A—ORGANIZATION, PROCEDURES AND RULES OF PRACTICE

## PART 0—ORGANIZATION

Sec.
0.1 The Commission.
0.2 Official address.
0.3 Hours.
0.4 Laws administered.
0.5 Laws authorizing monetary claims.
0.6 [Reserved]
0.7 Delegation of functions.
0.8 The Chairman.
0.9 Organization structure.
0.10 Office of the Executive Director.
0.11 Office of the General Counsel.
0.12 Office of the Secretary.
0.13 [Reserved]
0.14 Office of Administrative Law Judges.
0.15 [Reserved]
0.16 Bureau of Competition.
0.17 Bureau of Consumer Protection.
0.18 Bureau of Economics.
0.19 The Regional Offices.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 6(g), 38 Stat. 721 (15 U.S.C. 46); 80 Stat. 383, as amended (5 U.S.C. 552).

SOURCE: 41 FR 54483, Dec. 14, 1976, unless otherwise noted.

### § 0.1 The Commission.

The Federal Trade Commission is an independent administrative agency which was organized in 1915 pursuant to the Federal Trade Commission Act of 1914 (38 Stat. 717, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 41–58). It is responsible for the administration of a variety of statutes which, in general, are designed to promote competition and to protect the public from unfair and deceptive acts and practices in the advertising and marketing of goods and services. It is composed of five members appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate for terms of seven years.

### § 0.2 Official address.

The principal office of the Commission is at Washington, DC. All communications to the Commission should be addressed to the Federal Trade Commission, Pennsylvania Avenue and Sixth Street, NW., Washington, DC 20580, unless otherwise specifically directed.

### § 0.3 Hours.

Principal and field offices are open on each business day from 8:30 a.m. to 5 p.m.

### § 0.4 Laws administered.

The Commission exercises enforcement and administrative authority under the Federal Trade Commission Act (38 Stat. 717, as amended (15 U.S.C. 41–58)), the Clayton Act (38 Stat 730, as amended (15 U.S.C. 12–27)), the Export Trade Act (40 Stat. 516, as amended (15 U.S.C. 61–65)), the Packers and Stockyards Act (42 Stat. 159, as amended (7 U.S.C. 181–229)), the Wool Products Labeling Act (54 Stat. 1128, as amended (15 U.S.C. 68–68j)), the Trade Mark Act (60 Stat. 427, as amended (15 U.S.C. 1051–72)), The Fur Products Labeling Act (65 Stat. 175, as amended (15 U.S.C. 69–69j)), the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act (72 Stat. 1717, as amended (15 U.S.C. 70–70k)), the Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act (79 Stat. 282, as amended (15 U.S.C. 1331–39)), the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act (80 Stat. 1296, as amended (15 U.S.C. 1451–61)), the Truth in Lending Act (82 Stat. 146, as amended (15 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.)), the Fair Credit Reporting Act (84 Stat. 1128 (15 U.S.C. 1681 et seq.)), the Fair Credit Billing Act (88 Stat. 1511; (15 U.S.C. 1666)), the Equal Credit Opportunity Act (88 Stat. 1521, as amended (15 U.S.C. 1691)), Hobby Protection Act (87 Stat. 686 (15 U.S.C. 2101)), the Magnuson-Moss Warranty—Federal Trade Commission Improvement Act (88 Stat. 2183 (15 U.S.C. 2301–12, 45–58)), the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (89 Stat. 871 (42 U.S.C. 6291)), the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976 (90 Stat. 1383 (15 U.S.C. 1311)), and other Federal statutes.

### § 0.5 Laws authorizing monetary claims.

The Commission is authorized to entertain monetary claims against it under two statutes. The Federal Tort Claims Act (28 U.S.C. 2671–2680) provides that the United States shall be

liable for injury or loss of property or personal injury or death caused by the negligent or wrongful acts or omissions of its employees acting within the scope of their employment or office. The Military Personnel and Civilian Employees Claims Act of 1964 (31 U.S.C. 3701, 3721) authorizes the Commission to compensate employees' claims for damage to or loss of personal property incident to their service. The Commission's claims officer for both statutes is Teresa A. Hennessy, telephone (202) 523–3533.

(Sec. 6(g), 38 Stat. 721 (15 U.S.C. 46); 80 Stat. 383, as amended (5 U.S.C. 552))

[50 FR 16699, Apr. 29, 1985]

### § 0.6 [Reserved]

### § 0.7 Delegation of functions.

The Commission, under the authority provided by Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1961, may delegate, by published order or rule, certain of its functions to a division of the Commission, an individual Commissioner, an administrative law judge, or an employee or employee board.

### § 0.8 The Chairman.

The Chairman of the Commission is designated by the President, and, subject to the general policies of the Commission, is the executive and administrative head of the agency. He presides at meetings of and hearings before the Commission and participates with other Commissioners in all Commission decisions. Attached to the Office of the Chairman, and reporting directly to him, and through him to the Commission, are the following staff units:

(a) The Office of Public Affairs, which furnishes information concerning Commission activities to news media and the public; and

(b) the Office of Congressional Relations, which coordinates all liaison activities with Congress.

[50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

### § 0.9 Organization structure.

The Federal Trade Commission comprises the following principal units: Office of the Executive Director, Office of the General Counsel, Office of the Secretary, Office of Administrative Law Judges, Bureau of Competition, Bureau of Consumer Protection, Bureau of Economics, The Regional Offices.

[54 FR 19885, May 9, 1989]

### § 0.10 Office of the Executive Director.

(a) The Executive Director, under the direction of the Chairman, is the chief operating official. He exercises executive and administrative supervision over all the offices, bureaus, and staff of the Commission and resolves problems concerning priorities in case handling. Immediately under his direction are the Deputy Executive Directors for Management and Planning and Information.

(b) The Deputy Executive Director for Management functions as staff advisor to the Executive Director in all aspects of administrative management; provides administrative policy guidance to agency management and provides general supervision to the programs of procurement and contracts, personnel, budget and finance, and administrative service activities; and initiates and develops long-range plans to assure that the Commission acquires and effectively utilizes the manpower, financial resources, physical facilities and management tools necessary to accomplish its mission.

(c) The Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information provides general supervision to the programs of data processing and information systems, information analysis, and the library; responds to initial requests for Commission records under the Freedom of Information and Privacy Acts; maintains a current index of opinions, orders, statements of policy and interpretations, staff manuals and instructions that affect any member of the public, and other public records of the Commission; makes available for inspection and copying all public records of the Commission; coordinates the Commission's information processing systems; and is responsible for the publication of all Commission actions which must appear in the FEDERAL REGISTER and for the publication of *Federal Trade Commission Decisions* and *Court Decisions—Federal Trade Commission*.

[48 FR 4280, Jan. 31, 1983, as amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

### §0.11 Office of the General Counsel.

The General Counsel is the Commission's chief law officer and adviser, who renders necessary legal services to the Commission, represents the Commission in the Federal and State Courts, advises the Commission with respect to questions of law and policy, including advice with respect to legislative matters, cooperates with and assists State and local officials in the efforts to eliminate local and national trade restraints.

[41 FR 54483, Dec. 14, 1976, as amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

### §0.12 Office of the Secretary.

The Secretary is responsible for the minutes of Commission meetings and is the legal custodian of the Commission's seal, property, papers, and records, including legal and public records. The Secretary, or in his absence an Acting Secretary designated by the Commission, signs Commission orders and official correspondence.

[48 FR 4280, Jan. 31, 1983]

### §0.13 [Reserved]

### §0.14 Office of Administrative Law Judges.

Administrative law judges are officials to whom the Commission, in accordance with law, delegates the initial performance of its adjudicative fact-finding functions to be exercised in conformity with Commission decisions and policy directives and with its rules of practice. The administrative law judges also serve as presiding officers assigned to conduct rulemaking proceedings under section 18(a)(1)(B) of the Federal Trade Commission Act as amended and other rulemaking proceedings as directed. The Chief Administrative Law Judge also serves as the Chief Presiding Officer. Administrative law judges are appointed under the authority and subject to the prior approval of the Office of Personnel Management.

[54 FR 19885, May 9, 1989]

### §0.15 [Reserved]

### §0.16 Bureau of Competition.

The bureau is responsible for enforcing Federal antitrust and trade regulation laws under section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, the Clayton Act, and a number of other special statutes which the Commission is charged with enforcing. The bureau work aims to preserve the free market system and assure the unfettered operation of the forces of supply and demand. Its activities seek to ensure price competition, quality products and services and efficient operation of the national economy. The bureau carries out its responsibilities by investigating alleged law violations, and recommending to the Commission such further action as may be appropriate. Such action may include injunctive relief in Federal District Court, complaint and litigation before the agency's administrative law judges, formal nonadjudicative settlement of complaints, trade regulation rules, or reports. The bureau also conducts compliance investigations and initiates proceedings for civil penalties to assure compliance with final Commission orders dealing with competition and trade restraint matters.

[41 FR 54483, Dec. 14, 1976. Redesignated at 45 FR 36341, May 29, 1980, and amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

### §0.17 Bureau of Consumer Protection.

The Bureau investigates unfair or deceptive acts or practices under section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act as well as potential violations of numerous special statutes which the Commission is charged with enforcing. It prosecutes before the agency's administrative law judges alleged violations of law after issuance of a complaint by the Commission or obtains through negotiation consented-to orders, which must be accepted and issued by the Commission. The bureau participates in trade regulation rulemaking proceedings under section 18(a)(1)(B) of the Federal Trade Commission Act and other rulemaking proceedings under other statutory authority. It investigates compliance with

final orders and trade regulation rules and seeks civil penalties or consumer redress for their violation. In addition, the bureau seeks to educate both consumers and the business community about the laws it enforces.

[46 FR 26287, May 12, 1981]

### § 0.18 Bureau of Economics.

The bureau aids and advises the Commission concerning the economic aspects of all of its functions, and is responsible for the preparation of various economic reports and surveys. The bureau provides economic and statistical assistance to the enforcement bureaus in the investigation and trial of cases.

[41 FR 54483, Dec. 14, 1976. Redesignated at 45 FR 36341, May 29, 1980, and amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

### § 0.19 The Regional Offices.

(a) These offices are investigatory arms of the Commission, and, with respect to matters of a regional nature, have responsibility for investigational, trial, compliance, and consumer educational activities as delegated by the Commission. Each regional office has general responsibility for its own activities and for the smaller offices, designated as field stations, located in its area of responsibility. They are under the general supervision of the Office of the Executive Director, and clear their activities through the appropriate operating bureaus.

(b) The addresses of the respective regional offices, and of the field stations located in the area of each are as follows:

(1) *Atlanta Regional Office.* Federal Trade Commission, Room 1000, 1718 Peachtree Street, NW., Atlanta, GA 30309.

(2) *Boston Regional Office.* Federal Trade Commission, Room 1301, 150 Causeway Street, Boston, MA 02114.

(3) *Chicago Regional Office.* Federal Trade Commission, Suite 1437, 55 East Monroe Street, Chicago, IL 60603.

(4) *Cleveland Regional Office.* Federal Trade Commission, Suite 500, Mall Building, 118 Saint Clair Avenue NE., Cleveland, OH 44114.

(5) *Dallas Regional Office.* Federal Trade Commission, 8303 Elmbrook Drive, Dallas, TX 75247.

(6) *Denver Regional Office.* Federal Trade Commission, Suite 2900, 1405 Curtis Street, Denver, CO 80202.

(7) *Los Angeles Regional Office.* Federal Trade Commission, Room 13209, Federal Building, 11000 Wilshire Boulevard, Los Angeles, CA 90024.

(8) *New York Regional Office.* Federal Trade Commission, 2243–EB, Federal Building, 26 Federal Plaza, New York, NY 10278.

(9) *San Francisco Regional Office.* Federal Trade Commission, 450 Golden Gate Avenue, Box 36005, San Francisco, CA 94102. Field Station: Federal Trade Commission, Room 6324, 300 Ala Moana, Honolulu, HI 96850.

(10) *Seattle Regional Office.* Federal Trade Commission, 28th Floor, Federal Building, 915 Second Avenue, Seattle, WA 98174.

(c) Each of the regional offices is supervised by a Regional Director, who is available for conferences with attorneys, consumers, and other members of the public on matters relating to the Commission's activities.

[41 FR 54483, Dec. 14, 1976, as amended at 42 FR 27218, May 27, 1977; 43 FR 754, Jan. 4, 1978; 43 FR 6579, Feb. 15, 1978. Redesignated at 45 FR 36341, May 29, 1980, and amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

## PART 1—GENERAL PROCEDURES

### Subpart A—Industry Guidance

ADVISORY OPINIONS

Sec.
1.1 Policy.
1.2 Procedure.
1.3 Advice.
1.4 Public disclosure.

INDUSTRY GUIDES

1.5 Purpose.
1.6 How promulgated.

### Subpart B—Rules and Rulemaking Under Section 18(a)(1)(B) of the FTC Act

1.7 Scope of rules in this subpart.
1.8 Nature, authority and use of trade regulation rules.
1.9 Petitions to commence trade regulation rule proceedings.
1.10 Advance notice of proposed rulemaking.
1.11 Commencement of a rulemaking proceeding.
1.12 Final notice.
1.13 Rulemaking proceeding.

1.14 Promulgation.
1.15 Amendment or repeal of a rule.
1.16 Petition for exemption from trade regulation rule.
1.17 [Reserved]
1.18 Rulemaking record.
1.19 Modification of a rule by the Commission at the time of judicial review.
1.20 Alternative procedures.

**Subpart C—Rules Promulgated Under Authority Other Than Section 18(a)(1)(B) of the FTC Act**

1.21 Scope of the rules in this subpart.
1.22 Rulemaking.
1.23 Quantity limit rules.
1.24 Rules applicable to wool, fur, and textile fiber products and rules promulgated under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.
1.25 Initiation of proceedings—petitions.
1.26 Procedure.

**Subpart D—Administration of the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939, Fur Products Labeling Act, and Textile Fiber Products Identification Act**

1.31 Administration.
1.32 Registered identification numbers.
1.33 Continuing guaranties.
1.34 Inspections and counseling.

**Subpart E—Export Trade Associations**

1.41 Limited antitrust exemption.
1.42 Notice to Commission.
1.43 Recommendations.

**Subpart F—Trademark Cancellation Procedure**

1.51 Applications.

**Subpart G—Injunctive and Condemnation Proceedings**

1.61 Injunctions.
1.62 Ancillary court orders pending review.
1.63 Injunctions: Wool, fur, and textile cases.
1.64 Condemnation proceedings.

**Subpart H—Administration of the Fair Credit Reporting Act**

1.71 Administration.
1.72 Examination, counseling and staff advice.
1.73 Interpretations.

**Subpart I—Procedures for Implementation of the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969**

1.81 Authority and incorporation of CEQ Regulations.
1.82 Declaration of policy.
1.83 Whether to commence the process for an environmental impact statement.
1.84 Draft environmental impact statements: Availability and comment.
1.85 Final environmental impact statements.
1.86 Supplemental statements.
1.87 NEPA and agency decisionmaking.
1.88 Implementing procedures.
1.89 Effect on prior actions.

**Subpart J—Economic Surveys, Investigations, and Reports**

1.91 Authority and purpose.

**Subpart K—Penalties for Violation of Appliance Labeling Rules**

1.92 Scope.
1.93 Notice of proposed penalty.
1.94 Commission proceeding to assess civil penalty.
1.95 Procedures upon election.
1.96 Compromise of penalty.
1.97 Amount of penalty.

**Subpart L—Civil Penalty Adjustments Under the Debt Collection Improvement Act of 1996**

1.98 Adjustment of civil monetary penalty amounts.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 6, 38 Stat. 721 (15 U.S.C. 46), unless otherwise noted.

SOURCE: 32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967, unless otherwise noted.

## Subpart A—Industry Guidance

ADVISORY OPINIONS

### §1.1 Policy.

(a) Any person, partnership, or corporation may request advice from the Commission with respect to a course of action which the requesting party proposes to pursue. The Commission will consider such requests for advice and inform the requesting party of the Commission's views, where practicable, under the following circumstances.

(1) The matter involves a substantial or novel question of fact or law and there is no clear Commission or court precedent; or

(2) The subject matter of the request and consequent publication of Commission advice is of significant public interest.

(b) The Commission has authorized its staff to consider all requests for advice and to render advice, where practicable, in those circumstances in which a Commission opinion would not be warranted. Hypothetical questions will not be answered, and a request for advice will ordinarily be considered inappropriate where:

(1) The same or substantially the same course of action is under investigation or is or has been the subject of a current proceeding involving the Commission or another governmental agency, or

(2) An informed opinion cannot be made or could be made only after extensive investigation, clinical study, testing, or collateral inquiry.

[44 FR 21624, Apr. 11, 1979; 44 FR 23515, Apr. 20, 1979, as amended at 54 FR 14072, Apr. 7, 1989]

### § 1.2 Procedure.

(a) Application. The request for advice or interpretation should be submitted in writing (one original and two copies) to the Secretary of the Commission and should: (1) State clearly the question(s) that the applicant wishes resolved; (2) cite the provision of law under which the question arises; and (3) state all facts which the applicant believes to be material. In addition, the identity of the companies and other persons involved should be disclosed. Letters relating to unnamed companies or persons may not be answered. Submittal of additional facts may be requested prior to the rendering of any advice.

(b) Compliance matters. If the request is for advice as to whether the proposed course of action may violate an outstanding order to cease and desist issued by the Commission, such request will be considered as provided for in § 2.41 of this chapter.

[44 FR 21624, Apr. 11, 1979, as amended at 44 FR 40638, July 12, 1979]

### § 1.3 Advice.

(a) On the basis of the materials submitted, as well as any other information available, and if practicable, the Commission or its staff will inform the requesting party of its views.

(b) Any advice given by the Commission is without prejudice to the right of the Commission to reconsider the questions involved and, where the public interest requires, to rescind or revoke the action. Notice of such rescission or revocation will be given to the requesting party so that he may discontinue the course of action taken pursuant to the Commission's advice. The Commission will not proceed against the requesting party with respect to any action taken in good faith reliance upon the Commission's advice under this section, where all the relevant facts were fully, completely, and accurately presented to the Commission and where such action was promptly discontinued upon notification of rescission or revocation of the Commission's approval.

(c) Advice rendered by the staff is without prejudice to the right of the Commission later to rescind the advice and, where appropriate, to commence an enforcement proceeding.

[44 FR 21624, Apr. 11, 1979]

### § 1.4 Public disclosure.

Written advice rendered pursuant to this section and requests therefor, including names and details, will be placed in the Commission's public record immediately after the requesting party has received the advice, subject to any limitations on public disclosure arising from statutory restrictions, the Commission's rules, and the public interest. A request for confidential treatment of information submitted in connection with the questions should be made separately.

[44 FR 21624, Apr. 11, 1979]

## INDUSTRY GUIDES

### § 1.5 Purpose.

Industry guides are administrative interpretations of laws administered by the Commission for the guidance of the public in conducting its affairs in conformity with legal requirements. They provide the basis for voluntary and simultaneous abandonment of unlawful

practices by members of industry. Failure to comply with the guides may result in corrective action by the Commission under applicable statutory provisions. Guides may relate to a practice common to many industries or to specific practices of a particular industry.

### §1.6 How promulgated.

Industry guides[1] are promulgated by the Commission on its own initiative or pursuant to petition filed with the Secretary or upon informal application therefor, by any interested person or group, when it appears to the Commission that guidance as to the legal requirements applicable to particular practices would be beneficial in the public interest and would serve to bring about more widespread and equitable observance of laws administered by the Commission. In connection with the promulgation of industry guides, the Commission at any time may conduct such investigations, make such studies, and hold such conferences or hearings as it may deem appropriate. All or any part of any such investigation, study, conference, or hearing may be conducted under the provisions of subpart A of part 2 of this chapter.

## Subpart B—Rules and Rulemaking Under Section 18(a)(1)(B) of the FTC Act

AUTHORITY: Sec. 6, 38 Stat. 721 (15 U.S.C. 46); sec. 18(a)(1)(B), 88 Stat. 2193 (15 U.S.C. 57a); sec. 552, 80 Stat. 378 (5 U.S.C. 552).

### §1.7 Scope of rules in this subpart.

The rules in this subpart apply to and govern proceedings for the promulgation of rules as provided in section 18(a)(1)(B) of the Federal Trade Commission Act. Such rules shall be known as trade regulation rules. All other rulemaking proceedings shall be governed by the rules in subpart C, except as otherwise required by law or as otherwise specified in this chapter.

[46 FR 26288, May, 12, 1981, as amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

[1] In the past, certain of these have been promulgated and referred to as trade practice rules.

### §1.8 Nature, authority and use of trade regulation rules.

(a) For the purpose of carrying out the provisions of the Federal Trade Commission Act, the Commission is empowered to promulgate trade regulation rules which define with specificity acts or practices which are unfair or deceptive acts or practices in or affecting commerce. Such rules may include requirements prescribed for the purpose of preventing such acts or practices. A violation of a rule shall constitute an unfair or deceptive act or practice in violation of section 5(a)(1) of that Act, unless the Commission otherwise expressly provides in its rule. However, the respondent in an adjudicative proceeding may show that his conduct does not violate the rule or assert any other defense to which he is legally entitled.

(b) The Commission at any time may conduct such investigations, make such studies and hold such conferences as it may deem necessary. All or any part of any such investigation may be conducted under the provisions of subpart A of part 2 of this chapter.

[46 FR 26288, May 12, 1981]

### §1.9 Petitions to commence trade regulation rule proceedings.

Trade regulation rule proceedings may be commenced by the Commission upon its own initiative or pursuant to written petition filed with the Secretary by any interested person stating reasonable grounds therefor. If the Commission determines to commence a trade regulation rule proceeding pursuant to the petition, the petitioner shall be mailed a copy of the public notices issued under §§1.10, 1.11 and 1.12. Any person whose petition is not deemed by the Commission sufficient to warrant commencement of a rulemaking proceeding shall be notified of that determination and may be given an opportunity to submit additional data.

[46 FR 26288, May, 12, 1981, as amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

### §1.10 Advance notice of proposed rulemaking.

(a) Prior to the commencement of any trade regulation rule proceeding, the Commission shall publish in the

FEDERAL REGISTER an advance notice of such proposed proceeding.

(b) The advance notice shall:

(1) Contain a brief description of the area of inquiry under consideration, the objectives which the Commission seeks to achieve, and possible regulatory alternatives under consideration by the Commission; and

(2) invite the response of interested persons with respect to such proposed rulemaking, including any suggestions or alternative methods for achieving such objectives.

(c) The advance notice shall be submitted to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and to the Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce of the House of Representatives.

(d) The Commission may, in addition to publication of the advance notice, use such additional mechanisms as it considers useful to obtain suggestions regarding the content of the area of inquiry before publication of an initial notice of proposed rulemaking pursuant to § 1.11.

[46 FR 26288, May, 12, 1981, as amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

### § 1.11 Commencement of a rulemaking proceeding.

(a) *Initial notice.* A trade regulation rule proceeding shall commence with an initial notice of proposed rulemaking. Such notice shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER not sooner than 30 days after it has been submitted to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and to the Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce of the House of Representatives. The initial notice shall include:

(1) The text of the proposed rule including any alternatives which the Commission proposes to promulgate;

(2) Reference to the legal authority under which the rule is proposed;

(3) A statement describing with particularity the reason for the proposed rule;

(4) An invitation to all interested persons to propose issues which meet the criteria of § 1.13(d)(1)(i) for consideration in accordance with § 1.13(d)(5) and (d)(6);

(5) An invitation to all interested persons to comment on the proposed rule; and

(6) A statement of the manner in which the public may obtain copies of the preliminary regulatory analysis.

(b) *Preliminary regulatory analysis.* Except as otherwise provided by statute, the Commission shall, when commencing a rulemaking proceeding, issue a preliminary regulatory analysis which shall contain:

(1) A concise statement of the need for, and the objectives of, the proposed rule;

(2) A description of any reasonable alternatives to the proposed rule which may accomplish the stated objective of the rule in a manner consistent with applicable law;

(3) For the proposed rule, and for each of the alternatives described in the analysis, a preliminary analysis of the projected benefits and any adverse economic effects and any other effects, and of the effectiveness of the proposed rule and each alternative in meeting the stated objectives of the proposed rule; and

(4) The information required by the Regulatory Flexibility Act at 5 U.S.C. 603.

[46 FR 26288, May, 12, 1981, as amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

### § 1.12 Final notice.

A final notice of proposed rulemaking shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER and, to the extent practicable, otherwise made available to interested persons. The final notice shall include:

(a) Designated issues, unless there are none, which are to be considered in accordance with § 1.13(d)(5) and (d)(6);

(b) The time and place of an informal hearing;

(c) Instructions to interested persons seeking to make oral presentations;

(d) A requirement that interested persons who desire to avail themselves of the procedures of § 1.13(d)(5) and (d)(6) with respect to any issue designated in paragraph (a) of this section must identify their interests with respect to those issues in such manner as may be established by the presiding officer; and

(e) an incorporation by reference of the contents of the initial notice.

[40 FR 33966, Aug. 13, 1975, as amended at 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985]

**§1.13 Rulemaking proceeding.**

(a) *Written comments.* After commencement of a trade regulation rule proceeding, the Commission shall accept written submissions of data, views, and arguments on all issues of fact, law, and policy. The initial notice shall specify the deadline for filing written comments under this subsection.

(b) *Comments proposing issues subject to the procedures of §1.13(d)(5) and (d)(6).* Interested persons may propose issues for consideration in accordance with §1.13(d)(5) and (d)(6) until thirty (30) days after the close of the written comment period or such other period as the Commission may establish in the initial notice.

(c) *Presiding officer*—(1) *Assignment.* Upon commencement of a proposed trade regulation rule proceeding, a presiding officer shall be appointed by the Chief Presiding Officer or, when the Commission or one or more of its members serves as presiding officer, by the Commission.

(2) *Powers of the presiding officer.* The presiding officer shall be responsible for the orderly conduct of the rulemaking proceeding and the maintenance of the rulemaking and public records until the close of the postrecord comment period. He shall have all powers necessary to that end including the following:

(i) To publish a final notice in accordance with §1.12 or issue any other public notice that may be necessary for the orderly conduct of the rulemaking proceeding;

(ii) To designate or modify, issues for consideration in accordance with §1.13(d)(5) and (d)(6);

(iii) To set the time and place of the informal hearing and to change any time periods prescribed in this subpart;

(iv) To prescribe rules or issue rulings to avoid unnecessary costs or delay. Such rules or rulings may include, but are not limited to, the imposition of reasonable time limits on each person's oral presentation; and requirements that any examination; including cross-examination, which a person may be entitled to conduct or have conducted be conducted by the presiding officer on behalf of that person in such a manner as the presiding officer determines to be appropriate and to be required for a full and true disclosure with respect to any issue designated for consideration in accordance with §1.13 (d)(5) and (d)(6);

(v) To make rules and rulings limiting the representation of interested persons for the purpose of examination, including cross-examination, and governing the manner in which such examination is limited, including the selection of a representative from among a group of persons with the same or similar interests;

(vi) To require that oral presentations at the informal hearing or responses to written questions be under oath;

(vii) To require that oral presentations at the informal hearing be submitted in writing in advance of presentation;

(viii) To certify questions to the Commission for its determination; and

(ix) To rule upon all motions or petitions of interested persons, which motions or petitions must be filed with the presiding officer until the close of the postrecord comment period.

(3) *Review of rulings by the presiding officer*—(i) *Review after certification by the presiding officer.* Except as otherwise provided in paragraph (c)(3)(ii) of this section, applications for review of a ruling will not be entertained by the Commission prior to its review of the record pursuant to §1.14, unless the presiding officer certifies in writing to the Commission that a ruling involves a controlling question of law or policy as to which there is substantial ground for difference of opinion and that an immediate review of the ruling may materially advance the ultimate termination of the proceeding or subsequent review will be an inadequate remedy. Within five (5) days after a ruling by the presiding officer, any interested person may petition the presiding officer for certification of that ruling to the Commission. Certification of a ruling shall not stay the rulemaking proceeding unless the presiding officer or

the Commission shall so order. Submissions to the Commission not to exceed fifteen (15) pages may be made within ten (10) days of the presiding officer's certification. All such filings shall be a part of the rulemaking record. The Commission may thereupon, in its discretion, permit the appeal. Commission review, if permitted, will be based on the application for review and any additional submissions, without oral argument or further briefs, unless otherwise ordered by the Commission.

(ii) *Review without certification by the presiding officer.* Within ten (10) days after publication of the final notice, any interested person may petition the Commission for addition, modification or deletion of a designated issue, accompanied by a filing not to exceed fifteen (15) pages. Additional submissions on the issue by other interested persons, not to exceed fifteen (15) pages, may be made within twenty (20) days of the publication of the final notice. The Commission may thereupon, in its discretion, permit the appeal. Commission review, if permitted, will be based on the petition and any additional submissions, without oral argument or further briefs, unless otherwise ordered by the Commission. A petition hereunder shall not stay the rulemaking proceeding unless the presiding officer or the Commission shall so order. All petitions filed under this paragraph shall be a part of the rulemaking record. Notice of the filing of any such petition may be obtained from the Office of the Secretary of the Commission. In the event any designated issue is added or substantially modified by the Commission, interested persons shall be given a further opportunity to identify their interests with respect to those issues.

(4) *Substitution of presiding officer.* In the event of the substitution of a new presiding officer for the one originally appointed, any motion predicated upon such substitution shall be made within five (5) days thereafter.

(5) *Organization.* In the performance of their rulemaking functions, presiding officers shall be responsible to the chief presiding officer who shall not be responsible to any other officer or employee of the Commission.

(6) *Ex parte communications.* Except as required for the disposition of *ex parte* matters as authorized by law, no presiding officer shall consult any person or party with respect to any fact in issue unless such officer gives notice and opportunity for all parties to participate.

(d) *Informal hearings.* An informal hearing with the opportunity for oral presentations on all issues shall be conducted by the presiding officer. In addition, if an issue is designated pursuant to these rules for consideration in accordance with §1.13(d) (5) and (6), the informal hearing on such issues shall be conducted in accordance with those paragraphs. For all other issues the presiding officer may in his discretion employ, in whole or in part, the procedures of those paragraphs.

(1) *Nature of issues for consideration in accordance with §1.13* (d)(*5*) *and* (*d*)(*6*)—(i) *Issues that must be considered in accordance with §1.13*(*d*)(*5*) *and* (*d*)(*6*). The only issues that must be designated for consideration in accordance with paragraphs (d)(5) and (d)(6) of this section are disputed issues of fact that are determined by the Commission or the presiding officer to be material and necessary to resolve.

(ii) *Issues that may be considered in accordance with §1.13*(*d*)(*5*) *and (d*)((*6*). The Commission and the presiding officer retain the power to designate any other issues for consideration in accordance with paragraphs (d)(5) and (d)(6) of this section.

(2) *Addition or modification of issues for consideration in accordance with §1.13(d)(5) and* (*d*)(*6*). The presiding officer may at any time on his own motion or pursuant to a written petition by interested persons, add or modify any issues designated pursuant to §1.12(a). No such petition shall be considered unless good cause is shown why any such proposed issue was not proposed pursuant to §1.13(b).

(3) *Identification of interests.* Not later than twenty (20) days after publication of the final notice each interested person who desires to avail himself of the procedures of paragraphs (d)(5) and (d)(6) of this section shall notify the presiding officer in writing of his particular interest with respect to each issue designated for consideration in accordance with those subsections. In

the event that new issues are designated, each interested person shall promptly notify the presiding officer of his particular interest with respect to each such issue.

(4) *Examination and cross-examination by the presiding officer.* The presiding officer may conduct any examination, including cross-examination, to which a person may be entitled. For that purpose he may require submission of written requests for presentation of questions to any person making oral presentations and shall determine whether to ask such questions or any other questions. All requests for presentation of questions shall be placed in the rulemaking record.

(5) *Examination, cross-examination, and the presentation of rebuttal submissions by interested persons*—(i) *In general.* The presiding officer shall conduct or allow to be conducted examination, including cross-examination of oral presentations and the presentation of rebuttal submissions relevant to the issues designated for consideration in accordance with paragraphs (d)(5) and (d)(6) of this section. Examination, including, cross-examination, and the presentation of rebuttal submissions, shall be allowed to the extent to which it is appropriate and is required for a full and true disclosure with respect to those issues. Requests for an opportunity to examine, including cross-examine, or to present rebuttal submissions, shall be accompanied by a specific justification therefor. In determining whether or not to grant such requests, the presence of the following circumstances indicate that such requests should be granted:

(A) An issue for examination including cross-examination, or the presentation of rebuttal submissions, is an issue of specific in contrast to legislative fact.

(B) A full and true disclosure with respect to the issue can only be achieved through examination including cross-examination rather than through rebuttal submissions or the presentation of additional oral submissions.

(C) Circumstantial guarantees of the trustworthiness of a presentation do not exist.

(D) The particular presentation is required for the resolution of a designated issue.

(ii) *Selection of representatives for cross-examination.* After consideration of the information supplied in response to the final notice, the presiding officer shall identify groups of persons with the same or similar interests in the proceeding. Any such group may be required to select a single representative for the purpose of examination, including cross-examination. If a group is unable to select a representative then the presiding officer may select a representative of each such group.

(iii) *Inability to select representative for examination, including cross-examination.* No person shall be denied the opportunity to conduct or have conducted, examination, including cross-examination, under paragraph (d)(5)(i) of this section if he is a member of a group as described in paragraph (d)(5)(ii) of this section and is unable to agree upon group representation with other group members after a good faith effort to do so and seeks to present substantial and relevant issues which will not be adequately presented by the group representative. In that event he shall be allowed to conduct or have conducted any examination, including cross-examination, to which he is entitled on issues designated for consideration in accordance with paragraphs (d)(5) and (d)(6) of this section and which affect his particular interest.

(6) *Requests to compel the attendance of persons or the production of documents or to obtain responses to written questions.* During the course of the rulemaking proceeding, the presiding officer shall entertain requests from the Commission's staff or any interested person to compel the attendance of persons or the production of documents or to obtain responses to written questions. Requests to compel the attendance of persons or the production of documents or to obtain responses to written questions shall contain a statement showing the general relevancy of the material, information or presentation, and the reasonableness of the scope of the request, together with a showing that such material, information or presentation is not available by voluntary methods and cannot be obtained

through examination, including cross-examination, of oral presentations or the presentation of rebuttal submissions, and is appropriate and required for a full and true disclosure with respect to the issues designated for consideration in accordance with paragraphs (d)(5) and (d)(6) of this section. If the presiding officer determines that a request should be granted, he shall transmit his determination to the Commission which shall determine whether to issue a civil investigative demand under § 2.7(b). Information received in response to such a demand may be disclosed in the rulemaking proceeding subject to an *in camera* order under § 1.18(b).

(e) *Written transcript.* A verbatim transcript shall be made of the informal hearing which transcript shall be placed in the rulemaking record.

(f) *Staff recommendations.* The staff shall make recommendations to the Commission in a report on the rulemaking record. Such report shall contain its analysis of the record and its recommendations as to the form of the final rule.

(g) *Recommended decision.* After publication of the staff report, the presiding officer shall make a recommended decision based upon his or her findings and conclusions as to all relevant and material evidence, and taking into account the staff report. The recommended decision shall be made by the presiding officer who presided over the rulemaking proceeding except that such recommended decision may be made by another officer if the officer who presided over the proceeding is no longer available to the Commission.

(h) *Postrecord comment.* The staff report and the presiding officer's recommended decision shall be the subject of public comment for a period to be prescribed by the presiding officer at the time the recommended decision is placed in the rulemaking record. The comment period shall be no less than sixty (60) days. The comments shall be confined to information already in the record and may include requests for review by the Commission of determinations made by the presiding officer.

(i) *Commission review of the rulemaking record.* The Commission shall review the rulemaking record to determine what form of rule, if any, it should promulgate. During this review process, the Commission may allow persons who have previously participated in the proceeding to make oral presentations to the Commission, unless it determines with respect to that proceeding that such presentations would not significantly assist it in its deliberations. Presentations shall be confined to information already in the rulemaking record. Requests to participate in an oral presentation must be received by the Commission no later than the close of the comment period under § 1.13(h). The identity of the participants and the format of such presentations will be announced in advance by the Office of Public Information in the Commisison's *Weekly Calendar and Notice of ''Sunshine'' Meetings* and in accordance with the applicable provisions of 5 U.S.C. 552(b) and § 4.15 of the Commission's Rules of Practice. Such presentations will be transcribed verbatim or summarized at the discretion of the Commission and a copy of the transcript or summary and copies of any written communications and summaries of any oral communications relating to such presentations shall be placed on the rulemaking record.

[40 FR 33966, Aug. 13, 1975, as amended at 43 FR 39084, Sept. 1, 1978; 45 36341, May 29, 1980; 45 FR 78628, Nov. 26, 1980; 46 FR 14888, Mar. 3, 1981; 46 FR 26288, May 12, 1981; 50 FR 53303, Dec. 31, 1985; 54 FR 19886, May 9, 1989]

### § 1.14 Promulgation.

(a) The Commission, after review of the rulemaking record, may issue, modify, or decline to issue any rule. Where it believes that it should have further information or additional views of interested persons, it may withhold final action pending the receipt of such additional information or views. If it determines not to issue a rule, it may adopt and publish an explanation for not doing so.

(1) *Statement of Basis and Purpose.* If the Commission determines to promulgate a rule, it shall adopt a Statement of Basis and Purpose to accompany the rule which shall include:

(i) A statement as to the prevalence of the acts or practices treated by the rule;

(ii) A statement as to the manner and context in which such acts or practices are unfair or deceptive;

(iii) A statement as to the economic effect of the rule, taking into account the effect on small businesses and consumers;

(iv) a statement as to the effect of the rule on state and local laws; and

(v) A statement of the manner in which the public may obtain copies of the final regulatory analysis.

(2) *Final regulatory analysis.* Except as otherwise provided by statute, if the Commission determines to promulgate a final rule, it shall issue a final regulatory analysis relating to the final rule. Each final regulatory analysis shall contain:

(i) A concise statement of the need for, and the objectives of, the final rule;

(ii) A description of any alternatives to the final rule which were considered by the Commission;

(iii) An analysis of the projected benefits and any adverse economic effects and any other effects of the final rule;

(iv) An explanation of the reasons for the determination of the Commission that the final rule will attain its objectives in a manner consistent with applicable law and the reasons the particular alternative was chosen;

(v) A summary of any significant issues raised by the comments submitted during the public comment period in response to the preliminary regulatory analysis, and a summary of the assessment by the Commission of such issues; and

(vi) The information required by the Regulatory Flexibility Act at 5 U.S.C. 604.

(b) In the event the Commission determines, upon its review of the rulemaking record, to propose a revised rule for further proceedings in accordance with this subpart, such proceedings, including the opportunity of interested persons to avail themselves of the procedures of §1.13 (d)(5) and (d)(6), shall be limited to those portions of the revised rule, the subjects and issues of which were not substantially the subject of comment in response to a previous notice of proposed rulemaking.

(c) The final rule and Statement of Basis and Purpose shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. A rule issued under this subpart shall be deemed promulgated at 3 p.m. Eastern Standard Time on the fourth day after the date on which the final rule and Statement of Basis and Purpose are published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. In the event such day is a Saturday, Sunday or national holiday, then the rule is deemed promulgated at 3 p.m. Eastern Standard Time on the following business day.

[40 FR 33966, Aug. 13, 1975, as amended at 46 FR 26289, May 12, 1981; 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

### §1.15 Amendment or repeal of a rule.

(a) *Substantive amendment or repeal of a rule.* The procedures for substantive amendment to or repeal of a rule are the same as for the issuance thereof.

(b) *Nonsubstantive amendment of a rule.* The Commission may make a nonsubstantive amendment to a rule by announcing the amendment in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

[46 FR 26289, May 12, 1981]

### §1.16 Petition for exemption from trade regulation rule.

Any person to whom a rule would otherwise apply may petition the Commission for an exemption from such rule. The procedures for determining such a petition shall be those of subpart C of these rules.

[40 FR 33966, Aug. 13, 1975]

### §1.17 [Reserved]

### §1.18 Rulemaking record.

(a) *Definition.* For purposes of these rules the term *rulemaking record* includes the rule, its Statement of Basis and Purpose, the verbatim transcripts of the informal hearing, written submissions, the recommended decision of the presiding officer, and the staff recommendations as well as any public comment thereon, verbatim transcripts or summaries of oral presentations to the Commission any communications placed on the rulemaking record pursuant to §1.18c and any other information which the Commission considers relevant to the rule.

(b) *Public availability.* The rulemaking record shall be publicly available except when the presiding officer, for good cause shown, determines that it is in the public interest to allow any submission to be received in camera subject to the provisions of § 4.11 of this chapter.

(c) *Communications to Commissioners and Commissioners' personal staffs*—(1) *Communications by outside parties.* Except as otherwise provided in this subpart or by the Commission, after the Commission votes to issue an initial notice of proposed rulemaking, comment on the proposed rule should be directed to the presiding officer pursuant to § 1.13. Communications with respect to the merits of that proceeding from any outside party to any Commissioner or Commissioner advisor shall be subject to the following treatment:

(i) *Written communications.* Written communications, including written communications from members of Congress, received within the period for acceptance of initial written comments shall be forwarded promptly to the presiding officer for placement on the rulemaking record. Written communications received after the time period for acceptance of initial written comments but prior to any other deadline for the acceptance of written submissions will be forwarded promptly to the presiding officer, who will determine whether such communications comply with the applicable requirements for written submissions at that stage of the proceeding. Communications that comply with such requirements will be promptly placed on the rulemaking record. Noncomplying communications and all communications received after the time periods for acceptance of written submissions will be placed promptly on the public record.

(ii) *Oral communications.* Oral communications are permitted only when advance notice of such oral communications is published by the Commission's Office of Public Information in its *Weekly Calendar and Notice of ''Sunshine'' Meetings* and when such oral communications are transcribed verbatim or summarized at the discretion of the Commissioner or Commissioner advisor to whom such oral communications are made and are promptly placed on the rulemaking record together with any written communications and summaries of any oral communications relating to such oral communications. Transcripts or summaries of oral communications which occur after the time period for acceptance of initial written comments but prior to any other deadline for the acceptance of written submissions will be forwarded promptly to the presiding officer together with any written communications and summaries of any oral communications relating to such oral communications. The presiding officer will determine whether such oral communications comply with the applicable requirements for written submissions at that stage of the proceeding. Transcripts or summaries of oral communications that comply with such requirements will be promptly placed on the rulemaking record together with any written communications and summaries of any oral communications relating to such oral communications. Transcripts or summaries of noncomplying oral communications will be promptly placed on the public record together with any written communications and summaries of any oral communications relating to such oral communications. No oral communications are permitted subsequent to the close of the postrecord comment period, except as provided in § 1.13(i). If an oral communication does otherwise occur, the Commissioner or Commissioner advisor will promptly place on the public record either a transcript of the communication or a memorandum setting forth the contents of the communication and the circumstances thereof; such transcript or memorandum will not be part of the rulemaking record.

(iii) *Congressional communications.* The provisions of paragraph (c)(1)(ii) of this section do not apply to communications from members of Congress. Memoranda prepared by the Commissioner or Commissioner advisor setting forth the contents of any oral congressional communications will be placed on the public record. If the communication occurs within the initial comment period and is transcribed verbatim or summarized, the transcript or summary will be promptly placed on the

rulemaking record. A transcript or summary of any oral communication which occurs after the time period for acceptance of initial written comments but prior to any other deadline for the acceptance of written submissions will be forwarded promptly to the presiding officer, who will determine whether such oral communication complies with the applicable requirements for written submissions at that stage of the proceeding. Transcripts or summaries of oral communications that comply with such requirements will be promptly placed on the rulemaking record. Transcripts or summaries of noncomplying oral communications will be placed promptly on the public record.

(2) *Communications by certain officers, employees, and agents of the Commission.* Any officer, employee, or agent of the Commission with investigative or other responsibility relating to any rulemaking proceeding within any operating bureau of the Commission is prohibited from communicating or causing to be communicated to any Commissioner or to the personal staff of any Commissioner any fact which is relevant to the merits of such proceeding and which is not on the rulemaking record of such proceeding, unless such communication is made available to the public and is included in the rulemaking record. The provisions of this subsection shall not apply to any communication to the extent such communication is required for the disposition of *ex parte* matters as authorized by law.

(Sec. 6(g), 38 Stat. 721 (15 U.S.C. 46), 80 Stat. 383, as amended (5 U.S.C. 552))

[42 FR 43974, Sept. 1, 1977, as amended at 42 FR 60563, Nov. 28, 1977; 44 FR 16368, Mar. 19, 1979; 44 FR 21005, Apr. 9, 1979; 45 FR 78628, Nov. 26, 1980; 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

### §1.19 Modification of a rule by the Commission at the time of judicial review.

In the event that a reviewing court determines under section 18(e)(2) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, to allow further submissions and presentations on the rule, the Commission may modify or set aside its rule or make a new rule by reason of the additional submissions and presentations. Such modified or new rule shall then be filed with the court together with an appropriate Statement of Basis and Purpose and the return of such submissions and presentations.

[40 FR 33966, Aug. 13, 1975, as amended at 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

### §1.20 Alternative procedures.

If the Commission determines at the commencement of a rulemaking proceeding to employ procedures other than those established in the remainder of this subpart, it may do so by announcing those procedures in the FEDERAL REGISTER notice commencing the rulemaking proceeding.

[43 FR 35683, Aug. 11, 1978]

## Subpart C—Rules Promulgated Under Authority Other Than Section 18(a)(1)(B) of the FTC Act

### §1.21 Scope of the rules in this subpart.

This subpart sets forth procedures for the promulgation of rules under authority other than section 18(a)(1)(B) of the FTC Act except as otherwise required by law or otherwise specified in the rules of this chapter. This subpart does not apply to the promulgation of industry guides, general statements of policy, rules of agency organization, procedure, or practice, or rules governed by subpart B of this part.

[50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

### §1.22 Rulemaking.

(a) *Nature and authority.* For the purpose of carrying out the provisions of the statutes administered by it, the Commission is empowered to promulgate rules and regulations applicable to unlawful trade practices. Such rules and regulations express the experience and judgment of the Commission, based on facts of which it has knowledge derived from studies, reports, investigations, hearings, and other proceedings, or within official notice, concerning the substantive requirements of the statutes which it administers.

(b) *Scope.* Rules may cover all applications of a particular statutory provision and may be nationwide in effect,

or they may be limited to particular areas or industries or to particular product or geographic markets, as may be appropriate.

(c) *Use of rules in adjudicative proceedings.* When a rule is relevant to any issue involved in an ajudicative proceeding thereafter instituted, the Commission may rely upon the rule to resolve such issue, provided that the respondent shall have been given a fair hearing on the applicability of the rule to the particular case.

[40 FR 15232, Apr. 4, 1975]

### § 1.23 Quantity limit rules.

Quantity limit rules are authorized by section 2(a) of the Clayton Act, as amended by the Robinson-Patman Act. These rules have the force and effect of law.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967. Redesignated at 40 FR 15232, Apr. 4, 1975]

### § 1.24 Rules applicable to wool, fur, and textile fiber products and rules promulgated under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.

Rules having the force and effect of law are authorized under section 6 of the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939, section 8 of the Fur Products Labeling Act, section 7 of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, and sections 4, 5, and 6 of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.

[40 FR 15233, Apr. 4, 1975]

### § 1.25 Initiation of proceedings—petitions.

Proceedings for the issuance of rules or regulations, including proceedings for exemption of products or classes of products from statutory requirements, may be commenced by the Commission upon its own initiative or pursuant to petition filed with the Secretary by any interested person or group stating reasonable grounds therefor. Anyone whose petition is not deemed by the Commission sufficient to warrant the holding of a rulemaking proceeding will be promptly notified of that determination and given an opportunity to submit additional data. Procedures for the amendment or repeal of a rule or regulation are the same as for the issuance thereof.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967. Redesignated at 40 FR 15232, Apr. 4, 1975]

### § 1.26 Procedure.

(a) *Investigations and conferences.* In connection with any rulemaking proceeding, the Commission at any time may conduct such investigations, make such studies, and hold such conferences as it may deem necessary. All or any part of any such investigation may be conducted under the provisions of subpart A of part 2 of this chapter.

(b) *Notice.* General notice of proposed rulemaking will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER and, to the extent practicable, otherwise made available to interested persons except when the Commission for good cause finds that notice and public procedure relating to the rule are impractical, unnecessary or contrary to the public interest and incorporates such finding and a brief statement of the reasons therefor in the rule. If the rulemaking proceeding was instituted pursuant to petition, a copy of the notice will be served on the petitioner. Such notice will include:

(1) A statement of the time, place, and nature of the public proceedings;

(2) Reference to the authority under which the rule is proposed;

(3) Either the terms or substance of the proposed rule or description of the subjects and issues involved;

(4) An opportunity for interested persons to participate in the proceeding through the submission of written data, views, or arguments; and(5) A statement setting forth such procedures for treatment of communications from persons not employed by the Commission to Commissioners or Commissioner Advisors with respect to the merits of the proceeding as will incorporate the requirements of § 1.18(c), including the transcription of oral communications required by § 1.18(c)(2), adapted in such form as may be appropriate to the circumstances of the particular proceeding.

(c) *Oral hearings.* Oral hearing on a proposed rule may be held within the discretion of the Commission, unless otherwise expressly required by law. Any such hearing will be conducted by the Commission, a member thereof, or

a member of the Commission's staff. At the hearing interested persons may appear and express their views as to the proposed rule and may suggest such amendments, revisions, and additions thereto as they may consider desirable and appropriate. The presiding officer may impose reasonable limitations upon the length of time allotted to any person. If by reason of the limitations imposed the person cannot complete the presentation of his suggestions, he may within twenty-four (24) hours file a written statement covering those relevant matters which he did not orally present.

(d) *Promulgation of rules or orders.* The Commission, after consideration of all relevant matters of fact, law, policy, and discretion, including all relevant matters presented by interested persons in the proceeding, will adopt and publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER an appropriate rule or order, together with a concise general statement of its basis and purpose and any necessary findings, or will give other appropriate public notice of disposition of the proceeding.

(e) *Effective date of rules.* Except as provided in paragraphs (f) and (g) of this section, the effective date of any rule, or of the amendment, suspension, or repeal of any rule will be as specified in a notice published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, which date will be not less than thirty (30) days after the date of such publication unless an earlier effective date is specified by the Commission upon good cause found and published with the rule.

(f) *Effective date of rules and orders under Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.* The effective date of any rule or order under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act will be as specified by order published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, but shall not be prior to the day following the last day on which objections may be filed under paragraph (g) of this section.

(g) *Objections and request for hearing under Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.* On or before the thirtieth (30th) day after the date of publication of an order in the FEDERAL REGISTER pursuant to paragraph (f) of this section, any person who will be adversely affected by the order if placed in effect may file objections thereto with the Secretary of the Commission, specifying with particularity the provisions of the order deemed objectionable, stating the grounds therefor, and requesting a public hearing upon such objections. Objections will be deemed sufficient to warrant the holding of a public hearing only:

(1) If they establish that the objector will be adversely affected by the order;

(2) If they specify with particularity the provisions of the order to which objection is taken; and

(3) If they are supported by reasonable grounds which, if valid and factually supported, may be adequate to justify the relief sought.

Anyone who files objections which are not deemed by the Commission sufficient to warrant the holding of a public hearing will be promptly notified of that determination. As soon as practicable after the time for filing objections has expired, the Commission will publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER specifying those parts of the order which have been stayed by the filing of objections or, if no objections sufficient to warrant the holding of a hearing have been filed, stating that fact.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967. Redesignated at 40 FR 15232, Apr. 4, 1975, and amended at 44 FR 16368, Mar. 19, 1979; 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

## Subpart D—Administration of the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939, Fur Products Labeling Act, and Textile Fiber Products Identification Act

### § 1.31 Administration.

The general administration of the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939, Fur Products Labeling Act, and Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, and of the respective rules and regulations thereunder is carried out by the Bureau of Consumer Protection. Any interested person may obtain copies of the several Acts and rules and regulations upon request to the Secretary of the Commission.

[35 FR 10584, June 30, 1970, as amended at 41 FR 4814, Feb. 2, 1976]

### § 1.32 Registered identification numbers.

Registered identification numbers are issued by the Commission under the provisions of Rule 4 of the rules and regulations under the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939 (§ 300.4 of this chapter); Rule 26 of the rules and regulations under the Fur Products Labeling Act (§ 301.26 of this chapter); and Rule 20 of the rules and regulations under the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act (§ 303.20 of this chapter). Such numbers are for use as required identification in lieu of the name of the person to whom the number has been issued in satisfying the identification requirement in labeling under the respective Acts. Any person marketing wool products, textile fiber products, or fur or fur products, in commerce, may file an application with the Secretary of the Commission for issuance of a registered identification number. The Commission will furnish application forms upon request. Numbers are issued when, upon examination of the application, the applicant is found to come within the terms of the applicable rules and regulations. Numbers are subject to revocation for cause or upon a change in business status or discontinuance of business. The identity of holders of registered identification numbers issued by the Commission is released upon oral or written request directed to the Enforcement Division of the Bureau of Consumer Protection.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967, as amended at 39 FR 23699, July 19, 1974; 46 FR 26290, May 12, 1981; 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

### § 1.33 Continuing guaranties.

Continuing guaranties may be filed with the Commission under section 9 of the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939 and Rule 33 of the rules and regulations thereunder (§ 300.33 of this chapter); section 10 of the Fur Products Labeling Act and Rule 48 of the rules and regulations thereunder (§ 301.48 of this chapter); and section 10 of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act and Rule 38 of the rules and regulations thereunder (§ 303.38 of this chapter). Upon receipt of continuing guaranties duly executed according to form and substance as prescribed in the applicable rules and regulations, they are filed and made public. Necessary forms may be obtained from the Commission upon request.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967, as amended at 41 FR 4814, Feb. 2, 1976]

### § 1.34 Inspections and counseling.

The Commission maintains a staff to carry on compliance inspection and industry counseling work among manufacturers and marketers of wool products, textile fiber products, and fur or fur products. Administrative action to effect correction of minor infractions on a voluntary basis is taken in those cases where such procedure is believed adequate to effect immediate compliance and protect the public interest.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967, as amended at 41 FR 4814, Feb. 2, 1976]

## Subpart E—Export Trade Associations

### § 1.41 Limited antitrust exemption.

The Export Trade Act authorizes the organization and operation of export trade associations, and extends to them certain limited exemptions from the Sherman Act and the Clayton Act. It also extends the jurisdiction of the Commission under the Federal Trade Commission Act to unfair methods of competition used in export trade against competitors engaged in export trade, even though the acts constituting such unfair methods are done without the territorial jurisdiction of the United States.

### § 1.42 Notice to Commission.

To obtain the exemptions afforded by the Act, an export trade association is required to file with the Commission, within thirty (30) days after its creation, a verified written statement setting forth the location of its offices and places of business, names, and addresses of its officers, stockholders, or members, and copies of its documents of incorporation or association. On the first day of January of each year thereafter, each association must file a like statement and, when required by the Commission to do so, must furnish to the Commission detailed information as to its organization, business, conduct, practices, management, and relation to

other associations, corporations, partnerships, and individuals.

### §1.43 Recommendations.

Whenever the Commission has reason to believe that an association has violated the prohibitions of section 2 of the Act, it may conduct an investigation. If, after investigation, it concludes that the law has been violated, it may make to such association recommendations for the readjustment of its business. If the association fails to comply with the recommendations, the Commission will refer its findings and recommendations to the Attorney General for appropriate action.

## Subpart F—Trademark Cancellation Procedure

### §1.51 Applications.

Applications for the institution of proceedings for the cancellation of registration of trade, service, or certification marks under the Trade-Mark Act of 1946 may be filed with the Secretary of the Commission. Such applications shall be in writing, signed by or in behalf of the applicant, and should identify the registration concerned and contain a short and simple statement of the facts constituting the alleged basis for cancellation, the name and address of the applicant, together with all relevant and available information. If, after consideration of the application, or upon its own initiative, the Commission concludes that cancellation of the mark may be warranted, it will institute a proceeding before the Commissioner of Patents for cancellation of the registration.

## Subpart G—Injunctive and Condemnation Proceedings

### §1.61 Injunctions.

In those cases where the Commission has reason to believe that it would be to the interest of the public, the Commission will apply to the courts for injunctive relief, pursuant to the authority granted in section 13 of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

[40 FR 15233, Apr. 4, 1975]

### §1.62 Ancillary court orders pending review.

Where petition for review of an order to cease and desist has been filed in a U.S. court of appeals, the Commission may apply to the court for issuance of such writs as are ancillary to its jurisdiction or are necessary in its judgment to prevent injury to the public or to competitors pendente lite.

### §1.63 Injunctions: Wool, fur, and textile cases.

In those cases arising under the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939, Fur Products Labeling Act, and Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, where it appears to the Commission that it would be to the public interest for it to do so, the Commission will apply to the courts for injunctive relief, pursuant to the authority granted in such Acts.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967, as amended at 41 FR 4814, Feb. 2, 1976]

### §1.64 Condemnation proceedings.

In those cases arising under the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939 and Fur Products Labeling Act, and where it appears to the Commission that the public interest requires such action, the Commission will apply to the courts for condemnation, pursuant to the authority granted in such Acts.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967, as amended at 41 FR 4814, Feb. 2, 1976]

## Subpart H—Administration of the Fair Credit Reporting Act

AUTHORITY: 84 Stat. 1128, 15 U.S.C. 1681 et seq.

### §1.71 Administration.

The general administration of the Fair Credit Reporting Act (Title VI of the Consumer Credit Protection Act of 1968; enacted October 26, 1970; Pub. L. 91–508, 82 Stat. 146, 15 U.S.C. 1601 *et seq.*) is carried out by the Bureau of Consumer Protection, Division of Credit Practices. Any interested person may

obtain copies of the Act and these procedures and rules of practice upon request to the Secretary of the Commission, Washington, DC 20580.

[36 FR 9293, May 22, 1971, as amended at 36 FR 18788, Sept. 22, 1971; 38 FR 32438, Nov. 26, 1973; 46 FR 26290, May 12, 1981]

### § 1.72 Examination, counseling and staff advice.

The Commission maintains a staff to carry out on-the-scene examination of records and procedures utilized to comply with the Fair Credit Reporting Act and to carry out industry counseling. Requests for staff interpretation of the Fair Credit Reporting Act should be directed to the Division of Credit Practices, Bureau of Consumer Protection. Such interpretations represent informal staff opinion which is advisory in nature and is not binding upon the Commission as to any action it may take in the matter. Administrative action to effect correction of minor infractions on a voluntary basis is taken in those cases where such procedure is believed adequate to effect immediate compliance and protect the public interest.

[36 FR 9293, May 22, 1971, as amended at 36 FR 18788, Sept. 22, 1971; 38 FR 32438, Nov. 26, 1973; 46 FR 26290, May 12, 1981]

### § 1.73 Interpretations.

(a) *Nature and purpose.* (1) The Commission issues and causes to be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER interpretations of the provisions of the Fair Credit Reporting Act on its own initiative or pursuant to the application of any person when it appears to the Commission that guidance as to the legal requirements of the Act would be in the public interest and would serve to bring about more widespread and equitable observance of the Act.

(2) The interpretations are not substantive rules and do not have the force or effect of statutory provisions. They are guidelines intended as clarification of the Fair Credit Reporting Act, and, like industry guides, are advisory in nature. They represent the Commission's view as to what a particular provision of the Fair Credit Reporting Act means for the guidance of the public in conducting its affairs in conformity with that Act, and they provide the basis for voluntary and simultaneous abandonment of unlawful practices by members of industry. Failure to comply with such interpretations may result in corrective action by the Commission under applicable statutory provisions.

(b) *Procedure.* (1) Requests for Commission interpretations should be submitted in writing to the Secretary of the Federal Trade Commission stating the nature of the interpretation requested and the reasons and justification therefor. If the request is granted, as soon as practicable thereafter, the Commission will publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER setting forth the text of the proposed interpretation. Comments, views, or objections, together with the grounds therefor, concerning the proposed interpretation may be submitted to the Secretary of the Commission within thirty (30) days of public notice thereof. The proposed interpretation will automatically become final after the expiration of sixty (60) days from the date of public notice thereof, unless upon consideration of written comments submitted as hereinabove provided, the Commission determine to rescind, revoke, modify, or withdraw the proposed interpretation, in which event notification of such determination will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(2) The issuance of such interpretations is within the discretion of the Commission and the Commission at any time may conduct such investigations and hold such conferences or hearings as it may deem appropriate. Any interpretation issued pursuant to this chapter is without prejudice to the right of the Commission to reconsider the interpretation, and where the public interest requires, to rescind, revoke, modify, or withdraw the interpretation, in which event notification of such action will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(c) *Applicability of interpretations.* Interpretations issued pursuant to this subpart may cover all applications of a particular statutory provision, or they may be limited in application to a particular industry, as appropriate.

[36 FR 9293, May 22, 1971]

## Subpart I—Procedures for Implementation of the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 46(g), 42 U.S.C. 4321 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 47 FR 3096, Jan. 22, 1982, unless otherwise noted.

### §1.81 Authority and incorporation of CEQ Regulations.

This subpart is issued pursuant to 102(2) of the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (NEPA), as amended (42 U.S.C. 4321 *et seq.*). Pursuant to Executive Order 11514 (March 5, 1970, as amended by Executive Order 11991, May 24, 1977) and the Environmental Quality Improvement Act of 1980, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4371 *et seq.*) the Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) has issued comprehensive regulations for implementing the procedural provisions of NEPA (40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508) (''CEQ Regulations''). Although it is the Commission's position that these regulations are not binding on it, the Commission's policy is to comply fully with the CEQ Regulations unless it determines in a particular instance or for a category of actions that compliance would not be consistent with the requirements of law. With this caveat, the Commission incorporates into this subpart the CEQ Regulations. The following are supplementary definitions and procedures to be applied in conjunction with the CEQ Regulations.

[47 FR 3096, Jan. 22, 1982, as amended at 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

### §1.82 Declaration of policy.

(a) Except for actions which are not subject to the requirements of section 102(2)(C) of NEPA, no Commission proposal for a major action significantly affecting the quality of the human environment will be instituted unless an environmental impact statement has been prepared for consideration in the decisionmaking. All relevant environmental documents, comments, and responses as provided in this subpart shall accompany such proposal through all review processes. ''Major actions, significantly affecting the quality of the human environment'' referred to in this subpart ''do not include bringing judicial or administrative civil or criminal enforcement actions'' CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1508.18(a)). In the event that the Commission in an administrative enforcement proceeding actively contemplates the adoption of standards or a form of relief which it determines may have a significant effect on the environment, the Commission will, when consistent with the requirements of law, provide for the preparation of an environmental assessment or an environmental impact statement or such other action as will permit the Commission to assess alternatives with a view toward avoiding or minimizing any adverse effect upon the environment.

(b) No Commission proposal for legislation significantly affecting the quality of the human environment and concerning a subject matter in which the Commission has primary responsibility will be submitted to Congress without an accompanying environmental impact statement.

(c) When the Commission finds that emergency action is necessary and an environmental impact statement cannot be prepared in conformance with the CEQ Regulations, the Commission will consult with CEQ about alternative arrangements in accordance with CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1506.11).

### §1.83 Whether to commence the process for an environmental impact statement.

(a) The Bureau responsible for submitting a proposed rule, guide, or proposal for legislation to the Commission for agency action shall, after consultation with the Office of the General Counsel, initially determine whether or not the proposal is one which requires an environmental impact statement. Except for matters where the environmental effects, if any, would appear to be either (1) clearly significant and therefore the decision is made to prepare an environmental impact statement, or (2) so uncertain that environmental analysis would be based on speculation, the Bureau should normally prepare an ''environmental assessment'' CEQ Regulation (40 CFR

1508.9) for purposes of providing sufficient evidence and analysis for determining whether to prepare an environmental impact statement or a finding of no significant impact. The Bureau should involve environmental agencies to the extent practicable in preparing an assessment. An environmental assessment shall be made available to the public when the proposed action is made public along with any ensuing environmental impact statement or finding of no significant impact.

(b) If the Bureau determines that the proposal is one which requires an environmental impact statement, it shall commence the ''scoping process'' CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1501.7) except that the impact statement which is part of a proposal for legislation need not go through a scoping process but shall conform to CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1506.8). As soon as practicable after its decision to prepare an environmental impact statement and before the scoping process, the Bureau shall publish a notice of intent as provided in CEQ Regulations (40 CFR 1501.7 and 1508.22).

(c) If, on the basis of an environmental assessment, the determination is made not to prepare a statement, a finding of ''no significant impact'' shall be made in accordance with CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1508.3) and shall be made available to the public as specified in CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1506.6).

### § 1.84 Draft environmental impact statements: Availability and comment.

Except for proposals for legislation, environmental impact statements shall be prepared in two stages: Draft statement and final statement.

(a) *Proposed rules or guides.* (1) An environmental impact statement, if deemed necessary, shall be in draft form at the time a proposed rule or guide is published in the FEDERAL REGISTER and shall accompany the proposal throughout the decisionmaking process.

(2) The major decision points with respect to rules and guides are:

(i) Preliminary formulation of a staff proposal;

(ii) The time the proposal is initially published in the FEDERAL REGISTER as a Commission proposal;

(iii) Presiding officer's report (in trade regulation rule proceedings);

(iv) Submission to the Commission of the staff report or recommendation for final action on the proposed guide or rule;

(v) Final decision by the Commission. The decision on whether or not to prepare an environmental impact statement should occur at point (a)(2)(i) of this section. The publication of any draft impact statement should occur at point (a)(2)(ii) of this section. The publication of the final environmental impact statement should occur at point (a)(2)(iv) of this section.

(b) *Legislative proposals.* In legislative matters, a legislative environmental impact statement shall be prepared in accordance with CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1506.8).

(c) In rule or guide proceedings the draft environmental impact statement shall be prepared in accordance with CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1502.9) and shall be placed in the public record to which it pertains; in legislative matters, the legislative impact statement shall be placed in a public record to be established, containing the legislative report to which it pertains; these will be available to the public through the Office of the Secretary and will be published in full with the appropriate proposed rule, guide, or legislative report; such statements shall also be filed with the Environmental Protection Agency's (EPA) Office of Environmental Review (CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1506.9)) for listing in the weekly FEDERAL REGISTER Notice of draft environmental impact statements, and shall be circulated, in accordance with CEQ Regulations (40 CFR 1502.19, 1506.6) to appropriate federal, state and local agencies.

(d) Forty-five (45) days will be allowed for comment on the draft environmental impact statement, calculated from the date of publication in the EPA's weekly FEDERAL REGISTER list of draft environmental impact statements. The Commission may in its discretion grant such longer period as the complexity of the issues may warrant.

**§1.85 Final environmental impact statements.**

(a) After the close of the comment period, the Bureau responsible for the matter will consider the comments received on the draft environmental impact statement and will put the draft statement into final form in accordance with the requirements of CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1502.9(b)), attaching the comments received (or summaries if response was exceptionally voluminous).

(b) Upon Bureau approval of the final environmental impact statement the final statement will be

(1) Filed with the EPA;

(2) Forwarded to all parties which commented on the draft environmental impact statement and to other interested parties, if practicable;

(3) Placed in the public record of the proposed rule or guide proceeding or legislative matter to which it pertains;

(4) Distributed in any other way which the Bureau in consultation with CEQ deems appropriate.

(c) In rule and guide proceedings, at least thirty (30) days will be allowed for comment on the final environmental impact statement, calculated from the date of publication in the EPA's weekly FEDERAL REGISTER list of final environmental impact statements. In no event will a final rule or guide be promulgated prior to ninety (90) days after notice of the draft environmental impact statement, except where emergency action makes such time period impossible.

**§1.86 Supplemental statements.**

Except for proposals for legislation, as provided in CEQ Regulation (40 CFR 1502.9(c)), the Commission shall publish supplements to either draft or final environmental statements if:

(a) The Commission makes substantial changes in the proposed action that are relevant to environmental concerns; or

(b) There are significant new circumstances or information relevant to environmental concerns and bearing on the proposed action and its impacts. In the course of a trade regulation rule proceeding, the supplement will be placed in the rulemaking record.

**§1.87 NEPA and agency decision-making.**

In its final decision on the proposed action or, if appropriate, in its recommendation to Congress, the Commission shall consider all the alternatives in the environmental impact statement and other relevant environmental documents and shall prepare a concise statement which, in accordance with CEQ Regulation §1505.2, shall:

(a) Identify all alternatives considered by the Commission in reaching its decision or recommendation, specifying the alternatives which were considered to be environmentally preferable;

(b) State whether all practicable means to avoid or minimize environmental harm from the alternative selected have been adopted, and if not, why they were not.

**§1.88 Implementing procedures.**

(a) The General Counsel is designated the official responsible for coordinating the Commission's efforts to improve environmental quality. He will provide assistance to the staff in determining when an environmental impact statement is needed and in its preparation.

(b) The Commission will determine finally whether an action complies with NEPA.

(c) The Directors of the Bureaus of Consumer Protection and Competition will supplement these procedures for their Bureaus to assure that every proposed rule and guide is reviewed to assess the need for an environmental impact statement and that, where need exists, an environmental impact statement is developed to assure timely consideration of environmental factors.

(d) The General Counsel will establish procedures to assure that every legislative proposal on a matter for which the Commission has primary responsibility is reviewed to assess the need for an environmental impact statement and that, where need exists, and environmental impact statement is developed to assure timely consideration of environmental factors.

(e) Parties seeking information or status reports on environmental impact statements and other elements of the NEPA process, should contact the

Assistant General Counsel for Litigation and Environmental Policy.

### § 1.89 Effect on prior actions.

It is the policy of the Commission to apply these procedures to the fullest extent possible to proceedings which are already in progress.

## Subpart J—Economic Surveys, Investigations and Reports

### § 1.91 Authority and purpose.

General and special economic surveys, investigations, and reports are made by the Bureau of Economics under the authority of the various laws which the Federal Trade Commission administers. The Commission may in any such survey or investigation invoke any or all of the compulsory processes authorized by law.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967. Redesignated at 40 FR 15233, Apr. 4, 1975]

## Subpart K—Penalties for Violation of Appliance Labeling Rules

SOURCE: 45 FR 67318, Oct. 10, 1980, unless otherwise noted.

### § 1.92 Scope.

The rules in this subpart apply to and govern proceedings for the assessment of civil penalties for the violation of section 332 of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C. 6302, and the Commission's Rules on Labeling and Advertising of Consumer Appliances, 16 CFR part 305, promulgated under sections 324 and 326 of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C. 6294 and 6296.

### § 1.93 Notice of proposed penalty.

(a) *Notice.* Before issuing an order assessing a civil penalty under this subpart against any person, the Commission shall provide to such person notice of the proposed penalty. This notice shall:

(1) Inform such person of the opportunity to elect in writing within 30 days of receipt of the notice of proposed penalty to have procedures of § 1.95 (in lieu of those of § 1.94) apply with respect to such assessment; and

(2) Include a copy of a proposed complaint conforming to the provision of § 3.11(b)(1) and (2) of the Commission's Rules of Practice, or a statement of the material facts constituting the alleged violation and the legal basis for the proposed penalty; and

(3) Include the amount of the proposed penalty; and

(4) Include a statement of the procedural rules that the Commission will follow if respondent elects to proceed under § 1.94 unless the Commission chooses to follow subparts B, C, D, E, and F of part 3 of this chapter.

(b) *Election.* Within 30 days of receipt of the notice of proposed penalty, the respondent shall, if it wishes to elect to have the procedures of § 1.95 apply, notify the Commission of the election in writing. The notification, to be filed in accordance with § 4.2 of this chapter, may include any factual or legal reasons for which the proposed assessment order should not issue, should be reduced in amount, or should otherwise be modified.

### § 1.94 Commission proceeding to assess civil penalty.

If the respondent fails to elect to have the procedures of § 1.95 apply, the Commission shall determine whether to issue a complaint and thereby commence an adjudicative proceeding in conformance with section 333(d)(2)(A) of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C. 6303(d)(2)(A). If the Commission votes to issue a complaint, the proceeding shall be conducted in accordance with subparts B, C, D, E and F of part 3 of this chapter, unless otherwise ordered in the notice of proposed penalty. In assessing a penalty, the Commission shall take into account the factors listed in § 1.97.

### § 1.95 Procedures upon election.

(a) After receipt of the notification of election to apply the procedures of this section pursuant to § 1.93, the Commission shall promptly assess such penalty as it deems appropriate, in accordance with § 1.97.

(b) If the civil penalty has not been paid within 60 calendar days after the assessment order has been issued under paragraph (a) of this section, the General Counsel, unless otherwise directed,

shall institute an action in the appropriate district court of the United States for an order enforcing the assessment of the civil penalty.

(c) Any election to have this section apply may not be revoked except with the consent of the Commission.

### §1.96 Compromise of penalty.

The Commission may compromise any penalty or proposed penalty at any time, with leave of court when necessary, taking into account the nature and degree of violation and the impact of a penalty upon a particular respondent.

### §1.97 Amount of penalty.

All penalties assessed under this subchapter shall be in the amount per violation as described in section 333(a) of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C. 6303(a), adjusted for inflation pursuant to §1.98, unless the Commission otherwise directs. In considering the amount of penalty, the Commission shall take into account:

(a) Respondent's size and ability to pay;

(b) Respondent's good faith;

(c) Any history of previous violations;

(d) The deterrent effect of the penalty action;

(e) The length of time involved before the Commission was made aware of the violation;

(f) The gravity of the violation, including the amount of harm to consumers and the public caused by the violation; and

(g) Such other matters as justice may require.

[32 FR 8444, June 13, 1967, as amended at 61 FR 54548, Oct. 21, 1996]

## Subpart L—Civil Penalty Adjustments Under the Debt Collection Improvement Act of 1996

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 101–410 (28 U.S.C. 2461 note), as amended by sec. 31001(s), Pub. L. 104–134 (Apr. 26, 1996), 110 Stat. 3009 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 61 FR 54549, Oct. 21, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

### §1.98 Adjustment of civil monetary penalty amounts.

Effective November 20, 1996, dollar amounts specified in civil monetary penalty provisions within the Commission's jurisdiction are adjusted for inflation in accordance with paragraphs (a) through (l) of this section. The adjustments set forth in this section apply to violations occurring after November 20, 1996. The adjustments are as follows:

(a) Clayton Act section 7A(g)(1), 15 U.S.C. 18a(g)(1), adjusted from $10,000 to $11,000 per violation;

(b) Clayton Act section 11(*l*), 15 U.S.C. 21(*l*), adjusted from $5,000 to $5,500 per violation;

(c) FTC Act section 5(*l*), 15 U.S.C. 45(*l*), adjusted from $10,000 to $11,000 per violation;

(d) FTC Act section 5(m)(1)(A), 15 U.S.C. 45(m)(1)(A), adjusted from $10,000 to $11,000 per violation;

(e) FTC Act section 5(m)(1)(B), 15 U.S.C. 45(m)(1)(B), adjusted from $10,000 to $11,000 per violation;

(f) FTC Act section 10, 15 U.S.C. 50, adjusted from $100 to $110 per violation;

(g) Webb-Pomerene (Export Trade) Act section 5, 15 U.S.C. 65, adjusted from $100 to $110 per violation;

(h) Wool Products Labeling Act section 6(b), 15 U.S.C. 68d(b), adjusted from $100 to $110 per violation;

(i) Fur Products Labeling Act section 3(e), 15 U.S.C. 69a(e), adjusted from $100 to $110 per violation;

(j) Fur Products Labeling Act section 8(d)(2), 15 U.S.C. 69f(d)(2), adjusted from $100 to $110 per violation;

(k) Energy Policy and Conservation Act section 333(a), 42 U.S.C. 6303(a), adjusted from $100 to $110 per violation; and

(l) Civil monetary penalties authorized by reference to the Federal Trade Commission Act under any other provision of law within the jurisdiction of the Commission, adjusted in accordance with paragraphs (c), (d), (e) and (f) of this section, as applicable.

# PART 2—NONADJUDICATIVE PROCEDURES

## Subpart A—Inquiries; Investigations; Compulsory Processes

Sec.
2.1 How initiated.
2.2 Request for Commission action.
2.3 Policy as to private controversies.
2.4 Investigational policy.
2.5 By whom conducted.
2.6 Notification of purpose.
2.7 Compulsory process in investigations.
2.8 Investigational hearings.
2.8A Withholding requested material.
2.9 Rights of witnesses in investigations.
2.10 Depositions.
2.11 Orders requiring access.
2.12 Reports.
2.13 Noncompliance with compulsory processes.
2.14 Disposition.
2.15 Orders requiring witnesses to testify or provide other information and granting immunity.
2.16 Custodians.

## Subpart B [Reserved]

## Subpart C—Consent Order Procedure

2.31 Opportunity to submit a proposed consent order.
2.32 Agreement.
2.33 Compliance procedure.
2.34 Disposition.

## Subpart D—Reports of Compliance

2.41 Reports of compliance.

## Subpart E—Requests to Reopen

2.51 Requests to reopen.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 6, 38 Stat. 721; 15 U.S.C. 46.

## Subpart A—Inquiries; Investigations; Compulsory Processes

### § 2.1 How initiated.

Commission investigations and inquiries may be originated upon the request of the President, Congress, governmental agencies, or the Attorney General; upon referrals by the courts; upon complaint by members of the public; or by the Commission upon its own initiative. The Commission has delegated to the Director, Deputy Directors, and Assistant Directors of the Bureau of Competition, the Director, Deputy Directors, and Associate Directors of the Bureau of Consumer Protection and, the Regional Directors and Assistant Regional Directors of the Commission's regional offices, without power of redelegation, limited authority to initiate investigations.

[48 FR 41374, Sept. 15, 1983, as amended at 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

### § 2.2 Request for Commission action.

(a) Any individual, partnership, corporation, association, or organization may request the Commission to institute an investigation in respect to any matter over which the Commission has jurisdiction.

(b) Such request should be in the form of a signed statement setting forth the alleged violation of law with such supporting information as is available, and the name and address of the person or persons complained of. No forms or formal procedures are required.

(c) The person making the request is not regarded as a party to any proceeding which might result from the investigation.

(d) It is the general Commission policy not to publish or divulge the name of an applicant or complaining party except as required by law or by the Commission's rules. Where a complaint is by a consumer or consumer representative concerning a specific consumer product or service, the Commission, in the course of a referral of the complaint or of an investigation, may disclose the identity of the complainant or complainants. In referring any such consumer complaint, the Commission specifically retains its right to take such action as it deems appropriate in the public interest and under any of the statutes which it administers.

[32 FR 8446, June 13, 1967, as amended at 35 FR 10146, June 20, 1970]

### § 2.3 Policy as to private controversies.

The Commission acts only in the public interest and does not initiate an investigation or take other action when the alleged violation of law is merely a matter of private controversy and does not tend adversely to affect the public.

[32 FR 8446, June 13, 1967]

### §2.4 Investigational policy.

The Commission encourages voluntary cooperation in its investigations. Where the public interest requires, however, the Commission may, in any matter under investigation adopt a resolution authorizing the use of any or all of the compulsory processes provided for by law.

[45 FR 36341, May 29, 1980]

### §2.5 By whom conducted.

Inquiries and investigations are conducted under the various statutes administered by the Commission by Commission representatives designated and duly authorized for the purpose. Such representatives are ''examiners'' or ''Commission investigators'' within the meaning of the Federal Trade Commission Act and are authorized to exercise and perform the duties of their office in accordance with the laws of the United States and the regulations of the Commission. Included among such duties is the administration of oaths and affirmations in any matter under investigation by the Commission.

[45 FR 36341, May 29, 1980]

### §2.6 Notification of purpose.

Any person under investigation compelled or requested to furnish information or documentary evidence shall be advised of the purpose and scope of the investigation and of the nature of the conduct constituting the alleged violation which is under investigation and the provisions of law applicable to such violation.

[46 FR 26290, May 12, 1981; 46 FR 27634, May 21, 1981]

### §2.7 Compulsory process in investigations.

(a) *In general.* The Commission or any member thereof may, pursuant to a Commission resolution, issue a subpoena or a civil investigative demand directing the person named therein to appear before a designated representative at a designated time and place to testify or to produce documentary evidence, or both, or, in the case of a civil investigative demand, to provide a written report or answers to questions relating to any matter under investigation by the Commission. Material for which a civil investigative demand has been issued shall be made available for inspection and copying at the principal place of business of the person or at such other place or in such other manner as the person and the custodian designated pursuant to §2.16 agree.

(b) *Civil investigative demands.* Civil investigative demands shall be the only form of compulsory process issued in investigations with respect to unfair or deceptive acts or practices within the meaning of FTC Act section 5(a)(1).

(1) Civil investigative demands for the production of documentary material shall describe each class of material to be produced with such definiteness and certainty as to permit such material to be fairly identified, prescribe a return date or dates which will provide a reasonable period of time within which the material so demanded may be assembled and made available for inspection and copying or reproduction, and identify the custodian to whom such material shall be made available. Production of documentary material in response to a civil investigative demand shall be made in accordance with the procedures prescribed by section 20(c)(11) of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(2) Civil investigative demands for tangible things will describe each class of tangible things to be produced with such definiteness and certainty as to permit such things to be fairly identified, prescribe a return date or dates which will provide a reasonable period of time within which the things so demanded may be assembled and submitted, and identify the custodian to whom such things shall be submitted. Submission of tangible things in response to a civil investigative demand shall be made in accordance with the procedures prescribed by section 20(c)(12) of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(3) Civil investigative demands for written reports or answers to questions shall propound with definiteness and certainty the reports to be produced or the questions to be answered, prescribe a date or dates at which time written reports or answers to questions shall be submitted, and identify the custodian to whom such reports or answers shall

be submitted. Response to a civil investigative demand for a written report or answers to questions shall be made in accordance with the procedures prescribed by section 20(c)(13) of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(4) Civil investigative demands for the giving of oral testimony shall prescribe a date, time, and place at which oral testimony shall be commenced, and identify a Commission investigator who shall conduct the investigation and the custodian to whom the transcript of such investigation shall be submitted. Oral testimony in response to a civil investigative demand shall be taken in accordance with the procedures prescribed by section 20(c)(14) of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(c) The Bureau Director, Deputy Directors and Assistant Directors of the Bureaus of Competition and Economics, the Director, Deputy Directors and Associate Directors of the Bureau of Consumer Protection, Regional Directors, and Assistant Regional Directors, are authorized to negotiate and approve the terms of satisfactory compliance with subpoenas and civil investigative demands and, for good cause shown, may extend the time prescribed for compliance. Specifically, the subpoena power conferred by Section 329 of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (42 U.S.C. 6299) is included within this delegation.

(d) *Petitions to limit or quash*—(1) *General.* Any petition to limit or quash any investigational subpoena or civil investigative demand shall be filed with the Secretary of the Commission within twenty (20) days after service of the subpoena or civil investigative demand, or, if the return date is less than twenty (20) days after service, prior to the return date. Such petition shall set forth all assertions of privilege or other factual and legal objections to the subpoena or civil investigative demand, including all appropriate arguments, affidavits and other supporting documentation.

(2) *Statement.* Each petition shall be accompanied by a signed statement representing that counsel for the petitioner has conferred with counsel for the Commission in an effort in good faith to resolve by agreement the issues raised by the petition and has been unable to reach such an agreement. If some of the matters in controversy have been resolved by agreement, the statement shall specify the matters so resolved and the matters remaining unresolved. The statement shall recite the date, time, and place of each such conference between counsel, and the names of all parties participating in each such conference.

(3) *Extensions of time.* Bureau Directors, Deputy Directors, and Assistant Directors in the Bureaus of Competition and Economics, the Bureau Director, Deputy Directors and Associate Directors in the Bureau of Consumer Protection, Regional Directors and Assistant Regional Directors are delegated, without power of redelegation, the authority to rule upon requests for extensions of time within which to file such petitions.

(4) *Disposition.* A Commissioner, to be designated by the Chairman, is delegated, without power of redelegation, the authority to rule upon petitions to limit or quash an investigational subpoena or civil investigative demand, but the designated Commissioner may, in his or her sole discretion, refer a petition to the full Commission for determination.

(e) *Stay of compliance period.* The timely filing of a petition to limit or quash any investigational subpoena or civil investigative demand shall stay the time permitted for compliance with the portion challenged. If the petition is denied in whole or in part, the ruling will specify a new return date.

(f) *Review.* Any petitioner, within three days after service of a ruling by the designated Commissioner denying all or a portion of the relief requested in its petition, may file with the Secretary of the Commission a request that the full Commission review the ruling. The timely filing of such a request shall not stay the return date specified in the ruling, unless otherwise specified by the Commission.

(g) *Public disclosure.* All petitions to limit or quash investigational subpoenas or civil investigative demands and the responses thereto are part of the

public records of the Commission, except for information exempt from disclosure under §4.10(a) of this chapter.

[45 FR 36342, May 29, 1980, as amended at 46 FR 26290, May 12, 1981; 48 FR 41375, Sept. 15, 1983; 49 FR 6089, Feb. 17, 1984; 50 FR 42672, Oct. 22, 1985; 60 FR 37747, July 21, 1995]

### §2.8 Investigational hearings.

(a) Investigational hearings, as distinguished from hearings in adjudicative proceedings, may be conducted in the course of any investigation undertaken by the Commission, including rulemaking proceedings under subpart B of part 1 of this chapter, inquiries initiated for the purpose of determining whether or not a respondent is complying with an order of the Commission or the manner in which decrees in suits brought by the United States under the antitrust laws are being carried out, the development of facts in cases referred by the courts to the Commission as a master in chancery, and investigations made under section 5 of the Export Trade Act.

(b) Investigational hearings shall be conducted by any Commission member, examiner, attorney, investigator, or other person duly designated under the FTC Act, for the purpose of hearing the testimony of witnesses and receiving documents and other data relating to any subject under investigation. Such hearings shall be stenographically reported and a transcript thereof shall be made a part of the record of the investigation.

(c) Unless otherwise ordered by the Commission, investigational hearings shall not be public. In investigational hearings conducted pursuant to a civil investigative demand for the giving of oral testimony, the Commission investigators shall exclude from the hearing room all other persons except the person being examined, his counsel, the officer before whom the testimony is to be taken, and the stenographer recording such testimony. A copy of the transcript shall promptly be forwarded by the Commission investigator to the custodian designated in §2.16.

[32 FR 8446, June 13, 1967, as amended at 45 FR 36342, May 29, 1980; 61 FR 50645, Sept. 26, 1996]

### §2.8A Withholding requested material.

(a) Any person withholding material responsive to an investigational subpoena or civil investigative demand issued pursuant to §2.7, an access order issued pursuant to §2.11, an order to file a report issued pursuant to §2.12, or any other request for production of material issued under this part, shall assert a claim of privilege or any similar claim not later than the date set for the production of material. Such person shall, if so directed in the subpoena, civil investigative demand or other request for production, submit, together with such claim, a schedule of the items withheld which states individually as to each such item the type, specific subject matter, and date of the item; the names, addresses, positions, and organizations of all authors and recipients of the item; and the specific grounds for claiming that the item is privileged.

(b) A person withholding material solely for reasons described in §2.8A(a) shall comply with the requirements of that subsection in lieu of filing a motion to limit or quash compulsory process.

(Sec. 5, 38 Stat. 719 as amended (15 U.S.C. 45))

[44 FR 54042, Sept. 18, 1979, as amended at 45 FR 36342, May 29, 1980]

### §2.9 Rights of witnesses in investigations.

(a) Any person compelled to submit data to the Commission or to testify in an investigational hearing shall be entitled to retain a copy or, on payment of lawfully prescribed costs, procure a copy of any document submitted by him and of his own testimony as stenographically reported, except that in a nonpublic hearing the witness may for good cause be limited to inspection of the official transcript of his testimony. Where the investigational hearing has been conducted pursuant to a civil investigative demand issued under section 20 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, upon completion of transcription of the testimony of the witness, the witness shall be offered an opportunity to read the transcript of his testimony. Any changes in form or substance which the witness desires to make shall be entered and identified

upon the transcript by the Commission investigator with a statement of the reasons given by the witness for making such changes. The transcript shall then be signed by the witness unless the witnesss cannot be found, is ill, waives in writing his right to signature or refuses to sign. If the transcript is not signed by the witness within thirty days of his being afforded a reasonable opportunity to review it, the Commission investigator shall take the actions prescribed by section 20(c)(12)(E)(ii) of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(b) Any witness compelled to appear in person in an investigational hearing may be accompanied, represented, and advised by counsel as follows:

(1) Counsel for a witness may advise the witness, in confidence and upon the initiative of either counsel or the witness, with respect to any question asked of the witness. If the witness refuses to answer a question, then counsel may briefly state on the record if he has advised the witness not to answer the question and the legal grounds for such refusal.

(2) Where it is claimed that the testimony or other evidence sought from a witness is outside the scope of the investigation, or that the witness is privileged to refuse to answer a question or to produce other evidence, the witness or counsel for the witness may object on the record to the question or requirement and may state briefly and precisely the ground therefor. The witness and his counsel shall not otherwise object to or refuse to answer any question, and they shall not otherwise interrupt the oral examination.

(3) Any objections made under the rules in this part will be treated as continuing objections and preserved throughout the further course of the hearing without the necessity for repeating them as to any similar line of inquiry. Cumulative objections are unnecessary. Repetition of the grounds for any objection will not be allowed.

(4) Counsel for a witness may not, for any purpose or to any extent not allowed by paragraphs (b) (1) and (2) of this section, interrupt the examination of the witness by making any objections or statements on the record. Petitions challenging the Commission's authority to conduct the investigation or the sufficiency or legality of the subpoena or civil investigative demand must have been addressed to the Commission in advance of the hearing. Copies of such petitions may be filed as part of the record of the investigation with the person conducting the investigational hearing, but no arguments in support thereof will be allowed at the hearing.

(5) Following completion of the examination of a witness, counsel for the witness may on the record request the person conducting the investigational hearing to permit the witness of clarify any of his or her answers. The grant or denial of such request shall be within the sole discretion of the person conducting the hearing.

(6) The person conducting the hearing shall take all necessary action to regulate the course of the hearing to avoid delay and to prevent or restrain disorderly, dilatory, obstructionist, or contumacious conduct, or contemptuous language. Such person shall, for reasons stated on the record, immediately report to the Commission any instances where an attorney has allegedly refused to comply with his or her directions, or has allegedly engaged in disorderly, dilatory, obstructionist, or contumacious conduct, or contemptuous language in the course of the hearing. The Commission, acting pursuant to §4.1(e) of this chapter, will thereupon take such further action, if any, as the circumstances warrant, including suspension or disbarment of the attorney from further practice before the Commission or exclusion from further participation in the particular investigation.

(18 U.S.C. 6002, 6004)

[32 FR 8446, June 13, 1967, as amended at 45 FR 36343, May 29, 1980; 45 FR 39244, June 10, 1980; 46 FR 26290, May 12, 1981; 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985; 61 FR 50645, Sept. 26, 1996]

### § 2.10 Depositions.

In investigations other than those conducted under section 20 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, the Commission may order testimony to be taken by deposition at any stage of such investigation. Such depositions may be taken before any person having power to administer oaths who may be designated by the Commission. The

testimony shall be reduced to writing by the person taking the deposition, or under his direction, and shall then be subscribed to by the deponent. Any person may be compelled to appear and be deposed and to produce documentary evidence in the same manner as witnesses may be compelled to appear and testify and produce documentary evidence as provided in §§2.7 through 2.9.

[45 FR 36343, May 29, 1980, as amended at 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

### §2.11 Orders requiring access.

(a) In investigations other than those conducted under section 20 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, the Commission may issue an order requiring any person, partnership or corporation being investigated to grant access to files for the purpose of examination and the right to copy any documentary evidence. The Directors, Deputy Directors and Assistant Directors of the Bureaus of Competition and Economics, the Director, Deputy Directors and Associate Directors of the Bureau of Consumer Protection, the Regional Directors, and Assistant Regional Directors of the Commission's regional offices, pursuant to delegation of authority by the Commission, without power of redelegation, are authorized, for good cause shown, to extend the time prescribed for compliance with orders requiring access issued during the investigation of any matter.

(b) Any petition to limit or quash an order requiring access shall be filed with the Secretary of the Commission within twenty (20) days after service of the order, or, if the date for compliance is less than twenty (20) days after service of the order, then before the return date. Such petition shall set forth all assertions of privilege or other factual and legal objections to the order requiring access, including all appropriate arguments, affidavits and other supporting documentation. All petitions to limit or quash orders requiring access shall be ruled upon by the Commission itself, but the above-designated Directors, Deputy Directors, Assistant Directors, Associate Directors, Regional Directors and Assistant Regional Directors are delegated, without power of redelegation, the authority to rule upon motions for extensions of time within which to file petitions to limit or quash orders requiring access.

(c) The timely filing of any petition to limit or quash such an order shall stay the requirement of compliance if the Commission has not ruled upon the motion by the date of compliance. If it rules on or subsequent to the date required for compliance and its ruling denies the petition in whole or in part, the Commission shall specify a new date of compliance.

(d) All petitions to limit or quash orders requiring access, and the Commission's responses thereto, are part of the public records of the Commission, except for information exempt from disclosure under §4.10(a) of this chapter.

[46 FR 26290, May 12, 1981, as amended at 48 FR 41375, Sept. 15, 1983]

### §2.12 Reports.

(a) In investigations other than those covered by section 20 of the Federal Trade Commission Act the Commission may issue an order requiring a person, partnership, or corporation to file a report or answers in writing to specific questions relating to any matter under investigation, study or survey, or under any of the Commission's reporting programs.

(b) The Directors, Deputy Directors and Assistant Directors of the Bureaus of Competition and Economics, the Director, Deputy Directors and Associate Directors of the Bureau of Consumer Protection, and the Regional Directors and Assistant Regional Directors of the Commission's regional offices, pursuant to delegation of authority by the Commission, without power of redelegation, are authorized, for good cause shown, to extend the time prescribed for compliance with orders requiring reports or answers to questions issued during the investigation, study or survey of any matter or in connection with any of the Commission's reporting programs.

(c) Any petition to limit or quash an order requiring a report or answer to specific questions shall be filed with the Secretary of the Commission within twenty (20) days after service of the order, or, if the date for compliance is less than twenty (20) days after service

of the order, then before the return date. Such petition shall set forth all assertions of privilege or other factual and legal objections to the order requiring a report or answer to specific questions, including all appropriate arguments, affidavits and other supporting documentation. All petitions to limit or quash orders requiring reports or answers to questions shall be ruled upon by the Commission itself, but the above-designated Directors, Deputy Directors, Assistant Directors, Associate Directors, Regional Directors and Assistant Regional Directors are delegated, without power of redelegation, the authority to rule upon motions for extensions of time within which to file petitions to limit or quash orders requiring reports or answers to questions.

(d) Except as otherwise provided by the Commission, the timely filing of any petition to limit or quash such an order shall stay the requirement of return on the portion challenged if the Commission has not ruled upon the petition by the return date. If it rules on or subsequent to the return date and its ruling denies the petition in whole or in part, the Commission shall specify a new return date.

(e) All petitions to limit or quash orders requiring a report or answers to specific questions, and the Commission's responses thereto, are part of the public records of the Commission, except for information exempt from disclosure under § 4.10(a) of this chapter.

[41 FR 54485, Dec. 14, 1976, as amended at 45 FR 36343, May 29, 1980; 46 FR 26290, May 12, 1981; 48 FR 41375, Sept. 15, 1983; 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

### § 2.13 Noncompliance with compulsory processes.

(a) In cases of failure to comply with Commission compulsory processes, appropriate action may be initiated by the Commission or the Attorney General, including actions for enforcement, forfeiture, or penalties or criminal actions.

(b) The General Counsel, pursuant to delegation of authority by the Commission, without power of redelegation, is authorized:

(1) To institute, on behalf of the Commission, an enforcement proceeding in connection with the failure or refusal of a person, partnership, or corporation to comply with, or to obey, a subpoena, or civil investigative demand if the return date or any extension thereof has passed;

(2) To approve and have prepared and issued, in the name of the Commission when deemed appropriate by the General Counsel, a notice of default in connection with the failure of a person, partnership, or corporation to timely file a report pursuant to section 6(b) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, if the return date or any extension thereof has passed;

(3) To institute, on behalf of the Commission, an enforcement proceeding and to request, on behalf of the Commission, the institution, when deemed appropriate by the General Counsel, of a civil action in connection with the failure of a person, partnership, or corporation to timely file a report pursuant to an order under section 6(b) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, if the return date or any extension thereof has passed; and

(4) To seek civil contempt in cases where a court order enforcing compulsory process has been violated.

[41 FR 54485, Dec. 14, 1976, as amended at 45 FR 39244, June 10, 1980; 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

### § 2.14 Disposition.

(a) When the facts disclosed by an investigation indicate that corrective action is warranted, and the matter is not subject to a consent settlement pursuant to subpart C of this part, further proceedings may be instituted pursuant to the provisions of part 3 of this chapter.

(b) When the facts disclosed by an investigation indicate that corrective action is not necessary or warranted in the public interest, the investigational file will be closed. The matter may be further investigated at any time if circumstances so warrant.

(c) The Commission has delegated to the Director, Deputy Directors, and Assistant Directors of the Bureau of Competition, the Director, Deputy Directors and Associate Directors of the Bureau of Consumer Protection, and Regional Directors, without power of redelegation, limited authority to close investigations.

[32 FR 8446, June 13, 1967, as amended at 42 FR 42195, Aug. 22, 1977; 48 FR 41375, Sept. 15, 1983; 50 FR 53304, Dec. 31, 1985]

### §2.15 Orders requiring witnesses to testify or provide other information and granting immunity.

(a) The Bureau Director, Deputy Directors, and Assistant Directors in the Bureaus of Competition and Economics, the Bureau Director, Deputy Directors and Associate Directors of the Bureau of Consumer Protection, Regional Directors and Assistant Regional Directors are hereby authorized to request, through the Commission's liaison officer, approval from the Attorney General for the issuance of an order requiring a witness to testify or provide other information granting immunity under title 18, section 6002, of the United States Code.

(b) The Commission retains the right to review the exercise of any of the functions delegated under paragraph (a) of this section. Appeals to the Commission from an order requiring a witness to testify or provide other information will be entertained by the Commission only upon a showing that a substantial question is involved, the determination of which is essential to serve the interests of justice. Such appeals shall be made on the record and shall be in the form of a brief not to exceed fifteen (15) pages in length and shall be filed within five (5) days after notice of the complained of action. The appeal shall not operate to suspend the hearing unless otherwise determined by the person conducting the hearing or ordered by the Commission.

(18 U.S.C. 6002, 6004)

[37 FR 5016, Mar. 9, 1972, as amended at 48 FR 41375, Sept. 15, 1983; 61 FR 50645, Sept. 26, 1996]

### §2.16 Custodians.

(a) *Designation.* The Commission shall designate a custodian and one or more deputy custodians for material to be delivered pursuant to compulsory process in a investigation, a purpose of which is to determine whether any person may have violated any provision of the laws administered by the Commission. The custodian shall have the powers and duties prescribed by section 21 of the FTC Act. Deputy custodians may perform all of the duties assigned to custodians. The appropriate Bureau Directors, Deputy Directors, Associate Directors in the Bureau of Consumer Protection, Assistant Directors in the Bureau of Competition, Regional Directors or Assistant Regional Directors shall take the action required by section 21(b)(7) of the FTC Act if it is necessary to replace a custodian or deputy custodian.

(b) *Copying of custodial documents.* The custodian designated pursuant to section 21 of the Federal Trade Commission Act (subject to the general supervision of the Executive Director) may, from among the material submitted, select the material the copying of which is necessary or appropriate for the official use of the Commission, and shall determine, the number of copies of any such material that are to be reproduced. Copies of material in the physical possession of the custodian may be reproduced by or under the authority of an employee of the Commission designated by the custodian.

(c) Material produced pursuant to the Federal Trade Commission Act, while in the custody of the custodian, shall be for the official use of the Commission in accordance with the Act; but such material shall upon reasonable notice to the custodian be made available for examination by the person who produced such material, or his duly authorized representative, during regular office hours established for the Commission.

[45 FR 36343, May 29, 1980, as amended at 46 FR 26291, May 12, 1981; 48 FR 41376, Sept. 15, 1983; 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985]

## Subpart B [Reserved]

## Subpart C—Consent Order Procedure

### § 2.31 Opportunity to submit a proposed consent order.

(a) Where time, the nature of the proceeding, and the public interest permit, any individual, partnership, or corporation being investigated shall be afforded the opportunity to submit through the operating Bureau or Regional Office having responsibility in the matter a proposal for disposition of the matter in the form of a consent order agreement executed by the party being investigated and complying with the requirements of § 2.32, for consideration by the Commission in connection with a proposed complaint submitted by the Commission's staff.

(b) After a complaint has been issued, the consent order procedure described in this part will not be available except as provided in § 3.25(b).

[40 FR 15235, Apr. 4, 1975]

### § 2.32 Agreement.

Every agreement shall contain, in addition to an appropriate order, either an admission of the proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law submitted simultaneously by the Commission's staff or an admission of all jurisdictional facts and an express waiver of the requirement that the Commission's decision contain a statement of findings of fact and conclusions of law. In addition, every agreement shall contain waivers of further procedural steps and of all rights to seek judicial review or otherwise to challenge or contest the validity of the order. The agreement shall also contain provisions that the complaint may be used in construing the terms of the order, and that no agreement, understanding, representation, or interpretation not contained in the order or the aforementioned agreement may be used to vary or to contradict the terms of the order; that the order shall have the same force and effect and may be altered, modified, or set aside in the same manner provided by statute for other orders; that the order shall become final upon service; that the agreement shall not become a part of the public record unless and until it is accepted by the Commission; and, if the agreement is accepted, that the Commission will place the order contained therein on the public record for a period of sixty (60) days for the receipt and consideration of comments or views from any interested person; and that the Commission thereafter may either withdraw its acceptance of the agreement and so notify the other party, in which event it will take such other action as it may consider appropriate, or issue and serve its complaint (in such form as the circumstances may require) and decision, in disposition of the proceeding. In addition, in appropriate circumstances the agreement may contain a statement that the signing thereof is for settlement purposes only and does not constitute an admission by any party that the law has been violated as alleged in the complaint.

[42 FR 3300, Jan. 18, 1977, as amended at 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985]

### § 2.33 Compliance procedure.

The Commission may in its discretion require that a proposed agreement containing an order to cease and desist be accompanied by an initial report signed by the respondent setting forth in precise detail the manner in which the respondent will comply with the order when and if entered. Such report will not become part of the public record unless and until the accompanying agreement and order are accepted by the Commission. At the time any such report is submitted a respondent may request confidentiality for any portion thereof with a precise showing of justification therefore, and the General Counsel with due regard to statutory restrictions, the Commission's rules, and the public interest will act upon such request.

[59 FR 34969, July 8, 1994]

### § 2.34 Disposition.

Upon receiving an executed agreement conforming with the requirements of § 2.32, the Commission may:

Accept it; reject it and issue its complaint; or take such other action as it may deem appropriate. If an agreement is accepted, the Commission will place

the order contained therein and any initial report of compliance submitted pursuant to §2.33 on the public record, and at the same time, will make available an explanation of the provisions of the order and the relief to be obtained thereby, and any other information which it deems helpful in assisting interested persons to understand the terms of the order. The Commission will publish the explanation in the FEDERAL REGISTER. For a period of sixty (60) days after placement of the order on the public record and issuance of the statement, the Commission will receive and consider any comments or views concerning the order that may be filed by any interested person. Thereafter, the Commission may either withdraw its acceptance of the agreement and so notify the other party, in which event it will take such other action as it may consider appropriate, or issue and serve its complaint (in such form as the circumstances may require) and decision, in disposition of the proceeding.

[43 FR 51758, Nov. 7, 1978, as amended at 61 FR 50431, Sept. 26, 1996]

## Subpart D—Reports of Compliance

### §2.41 Reports of compliance.

(a) In every proceeding in which the Commission has issued an order pursuant to the provisions of section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act or section 11 of the Clayton Act, as amended, and except as otherwise specifically provided in any such order, each respondent named in such order shall file with the Commission, within sixty (60) days after service thereof, or within such other time as may be provided by the order or the rules in this chapter, a report in writing, signed by the respondent, setting forth in detail the manner and form of his compliance with the order, and shall thereafter file with the Commission such further signed, written reports of compliance as it may require. Reports of compliance shall be under oath if so requested. Where the order prohibits the use of a false advertisement of a food, drug, device, or cosmetic which may be injurious to health because of results from its use under the conditions prescribed in the advertisement, or under such conditions as are customary or usual, or if the use of such advertisement is with intent to defraud or mislead, or in any other case where the circumstances so warrant, the order may provide for an interim report stating whether and how respondents intend to comply to be filed within ten (10) days after service of the order. Neither the filing of an application for stay pursuant to §3.56, nor the filing of a petition for judicial review, shall operate to postpone the time for filing a compliance report under the order or this section. If the Commission, or a court, determines to grant a stay of an order, or portion thereof, pending judicial review, or if any order provision is automatically stayed by statute, no compliance report shall be due as to those portions of the order that are stayed unless ordered by the court. Thereafter, as to orders, or portions thereof, that are stayed, the time for filing a report of compliance shall begin to run de novo from the final judicial determination, except that if no petition for certiorari has been filed following affirmance of the order of the Commission by a court of appeals, the compliance report shall be due the day following the date on which the time expires for the filing of such petition. Staff of the Bureaus of Competition and Consumer Protection will review such reports of compliance and may advise each respondent whether the staff intends to recommend that the Commission take any enforcement action. The Commission may, however, institute proceedings, including certification of facts to the Attorney General pursuant to the provisions of section 5(l) of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 45(l)) and section 11(1) of the Clayton Act, as amended (15 U.S.C. 21(1)), to enforce compliance with an order, without advising a respondent whether the actions set forth in a report of compliance evidence compliance with the Commission's order or without prior notice of any kind to a respondent.

(b) The Commission has delegated to the Director, the Deputy Directors, and the Assistant Director for Compliance of the Bureau of Competition, and to

the Director, the Deputy Directors, and the Associate Director for Enforcement of the Bureau of Consumer Protection the authority to monitor compliance reports and to open and close compliance investigations. With respect to any compliance matter which has received previous Commission consideration as to compliance or in which the Commission or any Commissioner has expressed an interest, any matter proposed to be closed by reason of expense of investigation or testing, or any matter involving substantial questions as to the public interest, Commission policy or statutory construction, the Bureaus shall submit an analysis to the Commission regarding their intended actions.

(c) The Commission has delegated to the Director, Deputy Directors, and Assistant Directors of the Bureau of Competition and to the Director, Deputy Directors, and Associate Directors of the Bureau of Consumer Protection, and to the Regional Directors, the authority, for good cause shown, to extend the time within which reports of compliance with orders to cease and desist may be filed. It is to be noted, however, that an extension of time within which a report of compliance may be filed, or the filing of a report which does not evidence full compliance with the order, does not in any circumstances suspend or relieve a respondent from his obligation under the law with respect to compliance with such order. An order of the Commission to cease and desist becomes final on the date and under the conditions provided in the Federal Trade Commission Act and the Clayton Act. Any person, partnership or corporation against which an order to cease and desist has been issued who is not in full compliance with such order on and after the date provided in these statutes for the order to become final is in violation of such order and is subject to an immediate action for civil penalties. The authority under this paragraph may not be redelegated, except that the Associate Director for Enforcement in the Bureau of Consumer Protection and the Assistant Director for Compliance in the Bureau of Competition may each name a designee under this paragraph.

(d) Any respondent subject to a Commission order may request advice from the Commission as to whether a proposed course of action, if pursued by it, will constitute compliance with such order. The request for advice should be submitted in writing to the Secretary of the Commission and should include full and complete information regarding the proposed course of action. On the basis of the facts submitted, as well as other information available to the Commission, the Commission will inform the respondent whether or not the proposed course of action, if pursued, would constitute compliance with its order. A request ordinarily will be considered inappropriate for such advice:

(1) Where the course of action is already being followed by the requesting party;

(2) Where the same or substantially the same course of action is under investigation or is or has been the subject of a current proceeding, order, or decree initiated or obtained by the Commission or another governmental agency; or

(3) Where the proposed course of action or its effects may be such that an informed decision thereon cannot be made or could be made only after extensive investigation, clinical study, testing or collateral inquiry.

Furthermore, the filing of a request for advice under this paragraph does not in any circumstances suspend or relieve a respondent from his obligation under the law with respect to his compliance with the order. He must in any event be in full compliance on and after the date the order becomes final as prescribed by statute referred to in paragraph (b) of this section. Advice to respondents under this paragraph will be published by the Commission in the same manner and subject to the same restrictions and considerations as advisory opinions under § 1.4 of this chapter.

(e) The Commission may at any time reconsider any advice given under this section and, where the public interest requires, rescind or revoke its prior advice. In such event the respondent will be given notice of the Commission's intent to revoke or rescind and will be given an opportunity to submit its

views to the Commission. The Commission will not proceed against a respondent for violation of an order with respect to any action which was taken in good faith reliance upon the Commission's advice under this section, where all relevant facts were fully, completely, and accurately presented to the Commission and where such action was promptly discontinued upon notification of rescission or revocation of the Commission's advice.

(f) All applications for approval of proposed divestitures, acquisitions, or similar transactions subject to Commission review under outstanding orders, together with supporting materials, will be placed on the public record as soon after they are received as circumstances permit, except for information for which confidential classification has been requested, with a showing of justification therefor, and which the General Counsel, with due regard to statutory restrictions, the Commission's rules, and the public interest, has determined should not be made public. Within thirty (30) days after such requests and materials are placed on the public record, any person may file formal written objections or comments with the Secretary of the Commission. Such objections or comments shall be placed on the public record except for information for which confidentiality has been requested, with a showing of justification therefor, and which the General Counsel with due regard to statutory restrictions, the Commission's rules, and the public interest, has determined should not be made public. Additionally, any communications, written or oral, concerning such proposed transactions, received by any individual member of the Commission, or by any employee involved in the decisional process, will be placed on the public record immediately after their receipt. In the case of an oral communication, the member or employee shall immediately furnish the Commission with a memorandum setting forth the full contents of such communication and the circumstances thereof, and such memorandum will immediately be placed on the public record. All responses to applications for approval of proposed divestitures, acquisitions, or similar transactions subject to Commission review under outstanding orders, together with a statement of supporting reasons, will be published when made.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967]

EDITORIAL NOTE: For FEDERAL REGISTER citations affecting §2.41, see the List of CFR Sections Affected in the Finding Aids section of this volume.

## Subpart E—Requests to Reopen

### §2.51 Requests to reopen.

(a) *Scope.* Any person, partnership, or corporation subject to a Commission decision containing a rule or order which has become effective, or an order to cease and desist which has become final, may file with the Secretary a request that the Commission reopen the proceeding to consider whether the rule or order, including any affirmative relief provision contained therein, should be altered, modified, or set aside in whole or in part.

(b) *Contents.* A request under this section shall contain a satisfactory showing that changed conditions of law or fact require the rule or order to be altered, modified or set aside, in whole or in part or that the public interest so requires. This requirement shall not be deemed satisfied if a request is merely conclusory or otherwise fails to set forth by affidavit(s) specific facts demonstrating in detail the nature of the changed conditions and the reasons why these changed conditions or the public interest require the requested modifications of the rule of order. Each affidavit shall set forth facts that would be admissible in evidence and shall show that the affiant is competent to testify to the matters stated therein. All information and material that the requester wishes the Commission to consider shall be contained in the request at the time of filing.

(c) *Opportunity for public comment.* A request under this section shall be placed on the public record except for material exempt from public disclosure under rule 4.10(a). Unless the Commission determines that earlier disposition is necessary, the request shall remain on the public record for thirty (30) days after a press release on the request is issued. Bureau Directors are authorized

to publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER announcing the receipt of a request to reopen at their discretion. The public is invited to comment on the request while it is on the public record.

(d) *Determination.* After the period for public comments on a request under this section has expired and no later than one hundred and twenty (120) days after the date of the filing of the request, the Commission shall determine whether the request complies with paragraph (b) of this section and whether the proceeding shall be reopened and the rule or order should be altered, modified, or set aside as requested. In doing so, the Commission may, in its discretion, issue an order reopening the proceeding and modifying the rule or order as requested, issue an order to show cause pursuant to §3.72, or take such other action as is appropriate: *Provided, however,* That any action under §3.72 or otherwise shall be concluded within the specified 120-day period.

(Sec. 6(g), 38 Stat. 721 (15 U.S.C. 46(g)); 80 Stat. 383, as amended, 81 Stat. 54 (5 U.S.C. 552))

[45 FR 36344, May 29, 1980, as amended at 46 FR 26291, May 12, 1981; 47 FR 33251, Aug. 2, 1982; 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985; 53 FR 40868, Oct. 19, 1988]

# PART 3—RULES OF PRACTICE FOR ADJUDICATIVE PROCEEDINGS

## Subpart A—Scope of Rules; Nature of Adjudicative Proceedings

Sec.
3.1 Scope of the rules in this part.
3.2 Nature of adjudicative proceedings.

## Subpart B—Pleadings

3.11 Commencement of proceedings.
3.11A Fast track proceedings.
3.12 Answer.
3.13 Adjudicative hearing on issues arising in rulemaking proceedings under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.
3.14 Intervention.
3.15 Amendments and supplemental pleadings.

## Subpart C—Prehearing Procedures; Motions; Interlocutory Appeals; Summary Decisions

3.21 Prehearing procedures.
3.22 Motions.
3.23 Interlocutory appeals.
3.24 Summary decisions.
3.25 Consent agreement settlements.
3.26 Motions following denial of preliminary injunctive relief.

## Subpart D—Discovery; Compulsory Process

3.31 General provisions.
3.32 Admissions.
3.33 Depositions.
3.34 Subpoenas.
3.35 Interrogatories to parties.
3.36 Applications for subpoenas for records, or appearances by officials or employees, of governmental agencies other than the Commission.
3.37 Production of documents and things; access for inspection and other purposes.
3.38 Motion for order compelling disclosure or discovery; sanctions.
3.38A Withholding requested material.
3.39 Orders requiring witnesses to testify or provide other information and granting immunity.
3.40 Admissibility of evidence in advertising substantiation cases.

## Subpart E—Hearings

3.41 General rules.
3.42 Presiding officials.
3.43 Evidence.
3.44 Record.
3.45 In camera orders.
3.46 Proposed findings, conclusions, and order.

## Subpart F—Decision

3.51 Initial decision.
3.52 Appeal from initial decision.
3.53 Review of initial decision in absence of appeal.
3.54 Decision on appeal or review.
3.55 Reconsideration.
3.56 Effective date of orders; application for stay.

## Subpart G [Reserved]

## Subpart H—Reopening of Proceedings

3.71 Authority.
3.72 Reopening.

## Subpart I—Recovery of Awards Under the Equal Access to Justice Act in Commission Proceedings

3.81 General provisions.
3.82 Information required from applicants.
3.83 Procedures for considering applicants.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 6, 38 Stat. 721 (15 U.S.C. 46), unless otherwise noted.

SOURCE: 32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, unless otherwise noted.

EDITORIAL NOTE: Nomenclature changes affecting part 3 appear at 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985.

## Subpart A—Scope of Rules; Nature of Adjudicative Proceedings

### §3.1 Scope of the rules in this part.

The rules in this part govern procedure in adjudicative proceedings. It is the policy of the Commission that, to the extent practicable and consistent with requirements of law, such proceedings shall be conducted expeditiously. In the conduct of such proceedings the Administrative Law Judge and counsel for all parties shall make every effort at each state of a proceeding to avoid delay.

### §3.2 Nature of adjudicative proceedings.

Adjudicative proceedings are those formal proceedings conducted under one or more of the statutes administered by the Commission which are required by statute to be determined on the record after opportunity for an agency hearing. The term includes hearings upon objections to orders relating to the promulgation, amendment, or repeal of rules under sections 4, 5 and 6 of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act and proceedings for the assessment of civil penalties pursuant to §1.94 of this chapter. It does not include other proceedings such as negotiations for the entry of consent orders; investigational hearings as distinguished from proceedings after the issuance of a complaint; requests for extensions of time to comply with final orders or other proceedings involving compliance with final orders; proceedings for the promulgation of industry guides or trade regulation rules; proceedings for fixing quantity limits under section 2(a) of the Clayton Act; investigations under section 5 of the Export Trade Act; rulemaking proceedings under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act up to the time when the Commission determines under §1.26(g) of this chapter that objections sufficient to warrant the holding of a public hearing have been filed; or the promulgation of substantive rules and regulations, determinations of classes of products exempted from statutory requirements, the establishment of name guides, or inspections and industry counseling, under sections 4(d) and 6(a) of the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939, sections 7, 8(b), and 8(c) of the Fur Products Labeling Act, and sections 7(c), 7(d), and 12(b) of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act.

[45 FR 67319, Oct. 10, 1980]

## Subpart B—Pleadings

### §3.11 Commencement of proceedings.

(a) *Complaint.* Except as provided in §3.13, an adjudicative proceeding is commenced when an affirmative vote is taken by the Commission to issue a complaint.

(b) *Form of complaint.* The Commission's complaint shall contain the following:

(1) Recital of the legal authority and jurisdiction for institution of the proceeding, with specific designation of the statutory provisions alleged to have been violated;

(2) A clear and concise factual statement sufficient to inform each respondent with reasonable definiteness of the type of acts or practices alleged to be in violation of the law;

(3) Where practical, a form of order which the Commission has reason to believe should issue if the facts are found to be as alleged in the complaint; and

(4) Notice of the time and place for hearing, the time to be at least thirty (30) days after service of the complaint.

(c) *Motion for more definite statement.* Where the respondent makes a reasonable showing that it cannot frame a responsive answer based on the allegations contained in the complaint, the respondent may move for a more definite statement of the charges against it before filing an answer. Such a motion shall be filed within ten (10) days after service of the complaint and shall point out the defects complained of and the details desired.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 43 FR 11978, Mar. 23, 1978; 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985]

**§ 3.11A Fast track proceedings.**

(a) *Availability of Fast Track Proceedings.* In certain administrative proceedings that have been designated by the Commission as appropriate for the fast track schedule, respondents may elect to have the proceeding adjudicated under the expedited schedule set forth in this section. In administrative proceedings involving multiple respondents, the fast track schedule shall be available only if all respondents elect it. The Commission shall designate whether the fast track schedule will be available at the time it authorizes Commission staff to seek a preliminary injunction in federal district court and shall provide notice of the defendant's option to elect the fast track procedures in the event that the Commission should initiate an administrative adjudication challenging some or all of the same conduct at issue in the federal court injunctive proceeding. Such notice shall be provided to the prospective respondent at the time it is notified of the Commission's action to authorize the filing of the preliminary injunction motion. In fast track proceedings, the Commission shall be prepared to issue a final order and opinion within thirteen (13) months after the latest of the following events (hereinafter ''triggering event''): Issuance of the Commission's administrative complaint; entry of a preliminary injunction by a federal court in a collateral proceeding against respondent brought by the Commission; or the date on which respondent elects the fast track procedure. The date for issuance of the Commission's final order and opinion in fast track proceedings may be amended by the Commission in the following circumstances: If the Commission's final order or opinion contains material or information designated for *in camera* treatment such that the agency is required to provide advance notification of such disclosure to submitters of *in camera* material or information; or if the Commission determines that adherence to the thirteen-month deadline would result in a miscarriage of justice due to circumstances unforeseen at the time of respondent's election of the fast track proceeding. Only administrative proceedings challenging conduct that has been preliminarily enjoined by a federal court in a collateral proceeding brought by the Commission shall be subject to the fast track schedule. In the event the preliminary injunction in the collateral federal court proceeding is vacated, the Commission, in its discretion, may take such action as it deems appropriate in the administrative adjudication. Except as modified by this section, the rules contained in subparts A through I of part 3 of this chapter shall govern fast track procedures in adjudicative proceedings.

(b) *Election of Fast Track Proceedings.* Respondents making an election under this section shall make such election by the later of either: Three (3) days after service of the administrative complaint challenging the merger or acquisition; or three (3) days after a federal district court grants the Commission's request for a preliminary injunction. Respondents electing fast track proceedings shall do so by filing a notice of election of such expedited proceedings with the Secretary.

(c) *Interim Deadlines in Fast Track Proceedings.* The following deadlines shall govern all fast tract proceedings covered by this section:

(1) The scheduling conference required by § 3.21(b) shall be held not later than three (3) days after the triggering event.

(2) Respondent's answer shall be filed within fourteen (14) days after the triggering event.

(3) The ALJ shall file an initial decision within fifty-six (56) days following the conclusion of the evidentiary hearing. The initial decision shall be filed no later than one hundred ninety-five (195) days after the triggering event, pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section.

(4) Any party wishing to appeal an initial decision to the Commission shall file a notice of appeal with the Secretary within three (3) days after service of the initial decision. The notice shall comply with § 3.52(a) in all other respects.

(5) The appeal shall be in the form of a brief, filed within twenty-one (21) days after service of the initial decision, and shall comply with § 3.52(b) in all other respects.

(6) Within fourteen (14) days after service of the appeal brief, the appellee may file an answering brief which shall comply with §3.52(c). Cross-appeals, as permitted in §3.52(c), may not be raised in an appellee's answering brief. All issues raised on appeal must be presented in the party's appeal brief and must be filed within the deadline specified in paragraphs (c)(4) and (c)(5) of this section.

(7) Within five (5) days after service of the appellee's answering brief, the appellant may file a reply brief, in accordance with §3.52(d) in all other respects.

(d) *Discovery*. Discovery shall be governed by subpart D of this part. The ALJ may establish limitations on the number of depositions, witnesses, or any document production, pursuant to his plenary authority under §3.42(c)(6).

[61 FR 50645, Sept. 26, 1996]

### §3.12 Answer.

(a) *Time for filing*. A respondent shall file an answer within twenty (20) days after being served with the complaint: *Provided, however*, That the filing of a motion for a more definite statement of the charges shall alter this period of time as follows, unless a different time is fixed by the Administrative Law Judge:

(1) If the motion is denied, the answer shall be filed within ten (10) days after service of the order of denial or thirty (30) days after service of the complaint, whichever is later;

(2) If the motion is granted, in whole or in part, the more definite statement of the charges shall be filed within ten (10) days after service of the order granting the motion and the answer shall be filed within ten (10) days after service of the more definite statement of the charges.

(b) *Content of answer*. An answer shall conform to the following:

(1) *If allegations of complaint are contested*. An answer in which the allegations of a complaint are contested shall contain:

(i) A concise statement of the facts constituting each ground of defense;

(ii) Specific admission, denial, or explanation of each fact alleged in the complaint or, if the respondent is without knowledge thereof, a statement to that effect. Allegations of a complaint not thus answered shall be deemed to have been admitted.

(2) *If allegations of complaint are admitted*. If the respondent elects not to contest the allegations of fact set forth in the complaint, his answer shall consist of a statement that he admits all of the material allegations to be true. Such an answer shall constitute a waiver of hearings as to the facts alleged in the complaint, and together with the complaint will provide a record basis on which the Administrative Law Judge shall file an initial decision containing appropriate findings and conclusions and an appropriate order disposing of the proceeding. In such an answer, the respondent may, however, reserve the right to submit proposed findings and conclusions under §3.46 and the right to appeal the initial decision to the Commission under §3.52.

(c) *Default*. Failure of the respondent to file an answer within the time provided shall be deemed to constitute a waiver of the respondent's right to appear and contest the allegations of the complaint and to authorize the Administrative Law Judge, without further notice to the respondent, to find the facts to be as alleged in the complaint and to enter an initial decision containing such findings, appropriate conclusions, and order.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985; 61 FR 50646, Sept. 26, 1996]

### §3.13 Adjudicative hearing on issues arising in rulemaking proceedings under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.

(a) *Notice of hearing*. When the Commission, acting under §1.26(g) of this chapter, determines that objections which have been filed are sufficient to warrant the holding of an adjudicative hearing in rulemaking proceedings under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act, or when the Commission otherwise determines that the holding of such a hearing would be in the public interest, a hearing will be held before an Administrative Law Judge for the purpose of receiving evidence relevant and material to the issues raised by

such objections or other issues specified by the Commission. In such case the Commission will publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER containing a statement of:

(1) The provisions of the rule or order to which objections have been filed;

(2) The issues raised by the objections or the issues on which the Commission wishes to receive evidence;

(3) The time and place for hearing, the time to be at least thirty (30) days after publication of the notice; and

(4) The time within which, and the conditions under which, any person who petitioned for issuance, amendment, or repeal of the rule or order, or any person who filed objections sufficient to warrant the holding of the hearing, or any other interested person, may file notice of intention to participate in the proceeding.

(b) *Parties.* Any person who petitions for issuance, amendment, or repeal of a rule or order, and any person who files objections sufficient to warrant the holding of a hearing, and who files timely notice of intention to participate, shall be regarded as a party and shall be individually served with any pleadings filed in the proceeding. Upon written application to the Administrative Law Judge and a showing of good cause, any interested person may be designated by the Administrative Law Judge as a party.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 40 FR 33969, Aug. 13, 1975]

### § 3.14 Intervention.

(a) Any individual, partnership, unincorporated association, or corporation desiring to intervene in an adjudicative proceeding shall make written application in the form of a motion setting forth the basis therefor. Such application shall have attached to it a certificate showing service thereof upon each party to the proceeding in accordance with the provisions of § 4.4(b) of this chapter. A similar certificate shall be attached to the answer filed by any party, other than counsel in support of the complaint, showing service of such answer upon the applicant. The Administrative Law Judge or the Commission may by order permit the intervention to such extent and upon such terms as are provided by law or as otherwise may be deemed proper.

(b) In an adjudicative proceeding where the complaint states that divestiture relief is contemplated, the labor organization[s] representing employees of the respondent[s] may intervene as a matter of right. Applications for such intervention are to be made in accordance with the procedures set forth in paragraph (a) of this section and must be filed within 60 days of the issuance of the complaint. Intervention as a matter of right shall be limited to the issue of the effect, if any, of proposed remedies on employment, with full rights of participation in the proceeding concerning this issue. This paragraph does not affect a labor organization's ability to petition for leave to intervene pursuant to § 3.14(a).

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 46 FR 20979, Apr. 8, 1981]

### § 3.15 Amendments and supplemental pleadings.

(a) *Amendments*—(1) *By leave.* If and whenever determination of a controversy on the merits will be facilitated thereby, the Administrative Law Judge may, upon such conditions as are necessary to avoid prejudicing the public interest and the rights of the parties, allow appropriate amendments to pleadings or notice of hearing: *Provided, however,* That a motion for amendment of a complaint or notice may be allowed by the Administrative Law Judge only if the amendment is reasonably within the scope of the original complaint or notice. Motions for other amendments of complaints or notices shall be certified to the Commission.

(2) *Conformance to evidence.* When issues not raised by the pleadings or notice of hearing but reasonably within the scope of the original complaint or notice of hearing are tried by express or implied consent of the parties, they shall be treated in all respects as if they had been raised in the pleadings or notice of hearing; and such amendments of the pleadings or notice as may be necessary to make them conform to the evidence and to raise such issues shall be allowed at any time.

(b) *Supplemental pleadings.* The Administrative Law Judge may, upon reasonable notice and such terms as are just, permit service of a supplemental pleading or notice setting forth transactions, occurrences, or events which have happened since the date of the pleading or notice sought to be supplemented and which are relevant to any of the issues involved.

## Subpart C—Prehearing Procedures; Motions; Interlocutory Appeals; Summary Decisions

### §3.21 Prehearing procedures.

(a) *Meeting of the parties before scheduling conference.* An early as practicable before the prehearing scheduling conference described in paragraph (b) of this section, counsel for the parties shall meet to discuss the nature and basis of their claims and defenses and the possibilities for a prompt settlement or resolution of the case, and to agree, if possible, on a proposed discovery schedule, a preliminary estimate of the time required for the hearing, and a proposed hearing date, and on any other matters to be determined at the scheduling conference.

(b) *Scheduling conference.* Not later than seven (7) days after the answer is filed by the last answering respondent, the Administrative Law Judge shall hold a scheduling conference. At the scheduling conference, counsel for the parties shall be prepared to address their factual and legal theories, a schedule of proceedings, possible limitations on discovery, and other possible agreements or steps that may aid in the orderly and expeditious disposition of the proceeding.

(c) *Prehearing scheduling order.* (1) Not later than two (2) days after the scheduling conference, the Administrative Law Judge shall enter an order that sets forth the results of the conference and establishes a schedule of proceedings, including a plan of discovery, dates for the submission and hearing of motions, the specific method by which exhibits shall be numbered or otherwise identified and marked for the record, and the time and place of a final prehearing conference and of the evidentiary hearing.

(2) The Administrative Law Judge may grant a motion to extend any deadline or time specified in this scheduling order only upon a showing of good cause. Such motion shall set forth the total period of extensions, if any, previously obtained by the moving party. In determining whether to grant the motion, the Administrative Law Judge shall consider any extensions already granted, the length of the proceedings to date, and the need to conclude the evidentiary hearing and render an initial decision in a timely manner. The Administrative Law Judge shall not rule on *ex parte* motions to extend the deadlines specified in the scheduling order, or modify such deadlines solely upon stipulation or agreement of counsel.

(d) *Meeting prior to final prehearing conference.* Counsel for the parties shall meet before the final prehearing conference described in paragraph (e) of this section to discuss the matters set forth therein in preparation for the conference.

(e) *Final prehearing conference.* As close to the commencement of the evidentiary hearing as practicable, the Administrative Law Judge shall hold a final prehearing conference, which counsel shall attend in person, to submit any proposed stipulations as to law, fact, or admissibility of evidence, exchange exhibit and witness lists, and designate testimony to be presented by deposition. At this conference, the Administrative Law Judge shall also resolve any outstanding evidentiary matters or pending motions (except motions for summary decision) and establish a final schedule for the evidentiary hearing.

(f) *Additional prehearing conferences and orders.* The Administrative Law Judge shall hold additional prehearing and status conferences or enter additional orders as may be needed to ensure the orderly and expeditious disposition of a proceeding. Such conferences shall be held in person to the extent practicable.

(g) *Public access and reporting.* Prehearing conferences shall be public unless the Administrative Law Judge determines in his or her discretion that the conference (or any part thereof)

shall be closed to the public. The Administrative Law Judge shall have discretion to determine whether a prehearing conference shall be stenographically reported.

[50 FR 41487, Oct. 11, 1985, as amended at 61 FR 50646, Sept. 26, 1996]

**§ 3.22 Motions.**

(a) *Presentation and disposition.* During the time a proceeding is before an Administrative Law Judge, all motions therein, except those filed under § 3.26, § 3.42(g), or § 4.17, shall be addressed to and ruled upon, if within his or her authority, by the Administrative Law Judge. The Administrative Law Judge shall certify to the Commission any motion upon which he or she has no authority to rule, accompanied by any recommendation that he or she may deem appropriate. Such recommendation may contain a proposed disposition of the motion or other relevant comments. The Commission may order the ALJ to submit a recommendation or an amplification thereof. Rulings or recommendations containing information granted *in camera* status pursuant to § 3.45 shall be filed in accordance with § 3.45(f). All written motions shall be filed with the Secretary of the Commission, and all motions addressed to the Commission shall be in writing. The moving party shall also provide a copy of its motion to the Administrative Law Judge at the time the motion is filed with the Secretary.

(b) *Content.* All written motions shall state the particular order, ruling, or action desired and the grounds therefor. If a party includes in a motion information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to § 3.45(b), the party shall file two versions of the motion in accordance with the procedures set forth in § 3.45(e). The time period specified by § 3.22(c) within which an opposing party may file an answer will begin to run upon service on that opposing party of the *in camera* version of a motion.

(c) *Answers.* Within ten (10) days after service of any written motion, or within such longer or shorter time as may be designated by the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission, the opposing party shall answer or shall be deemed to have consented to the granting of the relief asked for in the motion. If an opposing party includes in an answer information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to § 3.45(b), the opposing party shall file two versions of the answer in accordance with the procedures set forth in § 3.45(e). The moving party shall have no right to reply, except as permitted by the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission.

(d) *Motions for extensions.* The Administrative Law Judge or the Commission may waive the requirements of this section as to motions for extensions of time; however, the Administrative Law Judge shall have no authority to rule on *ex parte* motions for extensions of time.

(e) *Rulings on motions for dismissal.* When a motion to dismiss a complaint or for other relief is granted with the result that the proceeding before the Administrative Law Judge is terminated, the Administrative Law Judge shall file an initial decision in accordance with the provisions of § 3.51. If such a motion is granted as to all charges of the complaint in regard to some, but not all, of the respondents, or is granted as to any part of the charges in regard to any or all of the respondents, the Administrative Law Judge shall enter his ruling on the record, in accordance with the procedures set forth in paragraph (a) of this section, and take it into account in his initial decision. When a motion to dismiss is made at the close of the evidence offered in support of the complaint based upon an alleged failure to establish a *prima facie* case, the Administrative Law Judge may defer ruling thereon until immediately after all evidence has been received and the hearing record is closed.

(f) *Statement.* Each motion to quash filed pursuant to § 3.34(c), each motion to compel or determine sufficiency pursuant to § 3.38(a), each motion for sanctions pursuant to § 3.38(b), and each motion for enforcement pursuant to § 3.38(c) shall be accompanied by a signed statement representing that counsel for the moving party has conferred with opposing counsel in an effort in good faith to resolve by agreement the issues raised by the motion and has been unable to reach such an

agreement. If some of the matters in controversy have been resolved by agreement, the statement shall specify the matters so resolved and the matters remaining unresolved. The statement shall recite the date, time, and place of each such conference between counsel, and the names of all parties participating in each such conference. Unless otherwise ordered by the Administrative Law Judge, the statement required by this rule must be filed only with the first motion concerning compliance with the discovery demand at issue.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 50 FR 42672, Oct. 22, 1985; 52 FR 22293, June 11, 1987; 60 FR 39641, Aug. 3, 1995; 61 FR 50647, Sept. 26, 1996]

### §3.23 Interlocutory appeals.

(a) *Appeals without a determination by the Administrative Law Judge.* The Commission may, in its discretion, entertain interlocutory appeals where a ruling of the Administrative Law Judge:

(1) Requires the disclosure of records of the Commission or another governmental agency or the appearance of an official or employee of the Commission or another governmental agency pursuant to §3.36, if such appeal is based solely on a claim of privilege: *Provided*, that The Administrative Law Judge shall stay until further order of the Commission the effectiveness of any ruling, whether or not appeal is sought, that requires the disclosure of nonpublic Commission minutes, Commissioner circulations, or similar documents prepared by the Commission, individual Commissioner, or the Office of the General Counsel;

(2) Suspends an attorney from participation in a particular proceeding pursuant to §3.42(d); or

(3) Grants or denies an application for intervention pursuant to the provisions of §3.14.

Appeal from such rulings may be sought by filing with the Commission an application for review, not to exceed fifteen (15) pages exclusive of those attachments required below, within five (5) days after notice of the Administrative Law Judge's ruling. Answer thereto may be filed within five (5) days after service of the application for review. The application for review should specify the person or party taking the appeal; should attach the ruling or part thereof from which appeal is being taken and any other portions of the record on which the moving party relies; and should specify under which provisions hereof review is being sought. The Commission upon its own motion may enter an order staying the return date of an order issued by the Administrative Law Judge pursuant to §3.36 or placing the matter on the Commission's docket for review. Any order placing the matter on the Commission's docket for review will set forth the scope of the review and the issues which will be considered and will make provision for the filing of briefs if deemed appropriate by the Commission.

(b) *Appeals upon a determination by the Administrative Law Judge.* Except as provided in paragraph (a) of this section, applications for review of a ruling by the Administrative Law Judge may be allowed only upon request made to the Administrative Law Judge and a determination by the Administrative Law Judge in writing, with justification in support thereof, that the ruling involves a controlling question of law or policy as to which there is substantial ground for difference of opinion and that an immediate appeal from the ruling may materially advance the ultimate termination of the litigation or subsequent review will be an inadequate remedy. Applications for review in writing may be filed, not to exceed fifteen (15) pages exclusive of those attachments required below, within five (5) days after notice of the Administrative Law Judge's determination. Additionally, the moving party is required to attach the ruling or part thereof from which appeal is being taken and any other portions of the record on which the moving party is relying. Answer thereto may be filed within five (5) days after service of the application for review. The Commission may thereupon, in its discretion, permit an appeal. Commission review, if permitted, will be confined to the application for review and answer thereto, without oral argument or further briefs, unless otherwise ordered by the Commission.

(c) *Proceedings not stayed.* Application for review and appeal hereunder shall

not stay proceedings before the Administrative Law Judge unless the Judge or the Commission shall so order.

[37 FR 5608, Mar. 17, 1972, as amended at 42 FR 31591, June 22, 1977; 42 FR 33025, June 29, 1977; 43 FR 56902 Dec. 5, 1978; 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985]

**§ 3.24 Summary decisions.**

(a) *Procedure.* (1) Any party to an adjudicatory proceeding may move, with or without supporting affidavits, for a summary decision in the party's favor upon all or any part of the issues being adjudicated. The motion shall be accompanied by a separate and concise statement of the material facts as to which the moving party contends there is not genuine issue. Counsel in support of the complaint may so move at any time after twenty (20) days following issuance of the complaint and any party respondent may so move at any time after issuance of the complaint. Any such motion by any party, however, shall be filed in accordance with the scheduling order issued pursuant to § 3.21, but in any case at least twenty (20) days before the date fixed for the adjudicatory hearing.

(2) Any other party may, within ten (10) days after service of the motion, file opposing affidavits. The opposing party shall include a separate and concise statement of those material facts as to which the opposing party contends there exists a genuine issue for trial, as provided in § 3.24(a)(3). The Administrative Law Judge may, in his discretion, set the matter for oral argument and call for the submission of briefs or memoranda. If a party includes in any such brief or memorandum information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to § 3.45(b), the party shall file two versions of the document in accordance with the procedures set forth in § 3.45(e). The decision sought by the moving party shall be rendered within thirty (30) days if the pleadings and any depositions, answers to interrogatories, admissions on file, and affidavits show that there is no genuine issue as to any material fact and that the moving party is entitled to such decision as a matter of law. Any such decision shall constitute the initial decision of the Administrative Law Judge and shall accord with the procedures set forth in § 3.51(c). A summary decision, interlocutory in character and in compliance with the procedures set forth in § 3.51(c), may be rendered on the issue of liability alone although there is a genuine issue as to the nature and extent of relief.

(3) Affidavits shall set forth such facts as would be admissible in evidence and shall show affirmatively that the affiant is competent to testify to the matters stated therein. The Administrative Law Judge may permit affidavits to be supplemented or opposed by depositions, answers to interrogatories, or further affidavits. When a motion for summary decision is made and supported as provided in this rule, a party opposing the motion may not rest upon the mere allegations or denials of his pleading; his response, by affidavits or as otherwise provided in this rule, must set forth specific facts showing that there is a genuine issue of fact for trial. If no such response is filed, summary decision, if appropriate, shall be rendered.

(4) Should it appear from the affidavits of a party opposing the motion that he cannot, for reasons stated, present by affidavit facts essential to justify his opposition, the Administrative Law Judge may refuse the application for summary decision or may order a continuance to permit affidavits to be obtained or depositions to be taken or discovery to be had or make such other order as is appropriate and a determination to that effect shall be made a matter of record.

(5) If on motion under this rule a summary decision is not rendered upon the whole case or for all the relief asked and a trial is necessary, the Administrative Law Judge shall make an order specifying the facts that appear without substantial controversy and directing further proceedings in the action. The facts so specified shall be deemed established.

(b) *Affidavits filed in bad faith.* (1) Should it appear to the satisfaction of the Administrative Law Judge at any time that any of the affidavits presented pursuant to this rule are presented in bad faith, or solely for the purpose of delay, or are patently frivolous, the Administrative Law Judge

shall enter a determination to that effect upon the record.

(2) If upon consideration of all relevant facts attending the submission of any affidavit covered by paragraph (b)(1) of this section, the Administrative Law Judge concludes that action by him to suspend or remove an attorney from the case is warranted, he shall take action as specified in §3.42(d). If the Administrative Law Judge concludes, upon consideration of all the relevant facts attending the submission of any affidavit covered by paragraph (b)(1) of this section, that the matter should be certified to the Commission for consideration of disciplinary action against an attorney, including reprimand, suspension or disbarment, the examiner shall certify the matter, with his findings and recommendations, to the Commission for its consideration of disciplinary action in the manner provided by the Commission's rules.

[35 FR 5007, Mar. 24, 1970, as amended at 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985; 52 FR 22293, June 11, 1987; 61 FR 50647, Sept. 26, 1996]

### §3.25 Consent agreement settlements.

(a) The Administrative Law Judge may, in his discretion and without suspension of prehearing procedures, hold conferences for the purpose of supervising negotiations for the settlement of the case, in whole or in part, by way of consent agreement.

(b) A proposal to settle a matter in adjudication by consent agreement shall be submitted by way of a motion to withdraw the matter from adjudication for the purpose of considering the proposed consent agreement. Such motion shall be filed with the Secretary of the Commission, as provided in §4.2. Any such motion shall be accompanied by a proposed consent agreement containing a proposed order executed by one or more respondents and conforming to the requirements of §2.32; the proposed consent agreement itself, however, shall not be placed on the public record unless and until it is accepted by the Commission as provided herein. If the proposed consent agreement affects only some of the respondents or resolves only some of the charges in adjudication, the motion required by this subsection shall so state and shall specify the portions of the matter that the proposal would resolve.

(c) If the proposed consent agreement accompanying the motion has also been executed by complaint counsel, including the appropriate Bureau Director, the Secretary shall issue an order withdrawing from adjudication those portions of the matter that the proposal would resolve and all proceedings before the Administrative Law Judge shall be stayed with respect to such portions, pending a determination by the Commission pursuant to paragraph (f) of this section.

(d) If the proposed consent agreement accompanying the motion has not been executed by complaint counsel, the Administrative Law Judge may certify the motion and agreement to the Commission together with his recommendation if he determines, in writing, that there is a likelihood of settlement. The filing of a motion under this subsection and certification thereof to the Commission shall not stay proceedings before the Administrative Law Judge unless the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission shall so order. Upon certification of a motion pursuant to this subsection, the Commission may, if it is satisfied that there is a likelihood of settlement, issue an order withdrawing from adjudication those portions of the matter that the proposal would resolve, for the purpose of considering the proposed consent agreement.

(e) The Commission will treat those portions of a matter withdrawn from adjudication pursuant to paragraph (c) or (d) of this section as being in a nonadjudicative status. Portions not so withdrawn shall remain in an adjudicative status.

(f) After the matter has been withdrawn from adjudication, in whole or in part, the Commission may:

(1) Accept the proposed consent agreement,

(2) Reject it and return to adjudication for further proceedings any portion of the matter previously withdrawn from adjudication, or

(3) Take such other action as it may deem appropriate.

If a proposed consent agreement is accepted, the Commission will place it on

the public record, together with any initial report of compliance submitted pursuant to §2.33, and at the same time, will make available an explanation of the provisions of the order and the relief to be obtained thereby, and any other information which it deems helpful in assisting interested persons to understand the terms of the order. The Commission will publish the explanation in the FEDERAL REGISTER. For a period of sixty (60) days after placement of the order on the public record and issuance of the statement, the Commission will receive and consider any comments concerning the order that may be filed by any interested person. Thereafter, the Commission may either withdraw its acceptance of the agreement and so notify the parties, in which event it will return the affected portions of the matter to adjudication for further proceedings or take such other action as it may consider appropriate, or issue and serve its decision.

(g) This rule will not preclude the settlement of the case by regular adjudicatory process through the filing of an admission answer or submission of the case to the Administrative Law Judge on a stipulation of facts and an agreed order.

[40 FR 15236, Apr. 4, 1975, as amended at 42 FR 39659, Aug. 5, 1977; 43 FR 51758, Nov. 7, 1978; 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985; 54 FR 18885, May 3, 1989; 61 FR 50431, Sept. 26, 1996; 61 FR 50647, Sept. 26, 1996]

### § 3.26 Motions following denial of preliminary injunctive relief.

(a) This section sets forth two procedures by which respondents may obtain consideration of whether continuation of an adjudicative proceeding is in the public interest after a court has denied preliminary injunctive relief in a separate proceeding brought, under section 13(b) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 53(b), in aid of the adjudication.

(b) A motion under this section shall be addressed to the Commission and filed with the Secretary of the Commission. Such a motion must be filed within fourteen (14) days after:

(1) A district court has denied preliminary injunctive relief, all opportunity has passed for the Commission to seek reconsideration of the denial or to appeal it, and the Commission has neither sought reconsideration of the denial nor appealed it; or

(2) A court of appeals has denied preliminary injunctive relief.

(c) *Withdrawal from adjudication.* If a court has denied preliminary injunctive relief to the Commission in a section 13(b) proceeding brought in aid of an adjudicative proceeding, respondents may move that the adjudicative proceeding be withdrawn from adjudication in order to consider whether or not the public interest warrants further litigation. Such a motion shall be filed by all of the respondents in the adjudicative proceeding. The Secretary shall issue an order withdrawing the matter from adjudication two days after such a motion is filed, except that, if complaint counsel have objected that the conditions of paragraph (b) of this section have not been met, the Commission shall determine whether to withdraw the matter from adjudication.

(d) *Consideration on the record.* (1) In lieu of a motion to withdraw a matter from adjudication under paragraph (c) of this section, any respondent or respondents may file a motion under this paragraph to dismiss the administrative complaint on the basis that the public interest does not warrant further litigation after a court has denied preliminary injunctive relief to the Commission. Motions filed under this paragraph shall incorporate or be accompanied by a supporting brief or memorandum.

(2) *Stay.* A motion under this paragraph will stay all proceedings before the Administrative Law Judge until such time as the Commission directs otherwise.

(3) *Answer.* Within fourteen (14) days after service of a motion filed under this paragraph, complaint counsel may file an answer.

(4) *Form.* Motions (including any supporting briefs and memoranda) and answers under this paragraph shall not exceed 30 pages if printed, or 45 pages if typewritten, and shall comply with the requirements of §3.52(e).

(5) *In camera materials.* If any filing includes materials that are subject to confidentiality protections pursuant to

an order entered in either the proceeding under section 13(b) or in the proceeding under this part, such materials shall be treated as *In camera* materials for purposes of this paragraph and the party shall file two versions of the document in accordance with the procedures set forth in §3.45(e). The time within which complaint counsel may file an answer under this paragraph will begin to run upon service of the *in camera* version of the motion (including any supporting briefs and memoranda).

[60 FR 39641, Aug. 3, 1995]

## Subpart D—Discovery; Compulsory Process

### §3.31 General provisions.

(a) *Discovery methods.* Parties may obtain discovery by one or more of the following methods: Depositions upon oral examination or written questions; written interrogatories; production of documents or things for inspection and other purposes; and requests for admission. Unless the Administrative Law Judge orders otherwise, the frequency or sequence of these methods is not limited. The parties shall, to the greatest extent practicable, conduct discovery simultaneously; the fact that a party is conducting discovery shall not operate to delay any other party's discovery.

(b) *Initial disclosures.* Complaint counsel and respondent's counsel shall, within five (5) days of receipt of a respondent's answer to the complaint and without awaiting a discovery request, provide to each other:

(1) The name, and, if known, the address and telephone number of each individual likely to have discoverable information relevant to the allegations of the Commission's complaint, to the proposed relief, or to the defenses of the respondent, as set forth in §3.31(c)(1);

(2) A copy of, or a description by category and location of, all documents, data compilations, and tangible things in the possession, custody, or control of the Commission or respondent(s) that are relevant to the allegations of the Commission's complaint, to the proposed relief, or to the defenses of the respondent, as set forth in §3.31(c)(1); unless such information or materials are privileged as defined in §3.31(c)(2), pertain to hearing preparation as defined in §3.31(c)(3), pertain to experts as defined in §3.31(c)(4), or are obtainable from some other source that is more convenient, less burdensome, or less expensive. A party shall make its disclosures based on the information then reasonably available to it and is not excused from making its disclosures because it has not fully completed its investigation.

(c) *Scope of discovery.* Unless otherwise limited by order of the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission in accordance with these rules, the scope of discovery is as follows:

(1) *In general; limitations.* Parties may obtain discovery to the extent that it may be reasonably expected to yield information relevant to the allegations of the complaint, to the proposed relief, or to the defenses of any respondent. Such information may include the existence, description, nature, custody, condition and location of any books, documents, or other tangible things and the identity and location of persons having any knowledge of any discoverable matter. Information may not be withheld from discovery on grounds that the information will be inadmissible at the hearing if the information sought appears reasonably calculated to lead to the discovery of admissible evidence. The frequency or extent of use of the discovery methods otherwise permitted under these rules shall be limited by the Administrative Law Judge if he determines that:

(i) The discover sought is unreasonably cumulative or duplicative, or is obtainable from some other source that is more convenient, less burdensome, or less expensive;

(ii) The party seeking discovery has had ample opportunity by discovery in the action to obtain the information sought; or

(iii) The burden and expense of the proposed discovery outweigh its likely benefit.

(2) *Privilege.* The Administrative Law Judge may enter a protective order denying or limiting discovery to preserve the privilege of a witness, person, or governmental agency as governed by the Constitution, any applicable act of

Congress, or the principles of the common law as they may be interpreted by the Commission in the light of reason and experience.

(3) *Hearing preparations: Materials.* Subject to the provisions of paragraph (c)(4) of this section, a party may obtain discovery of documents and tangible things otherwise discoverable under paragraph (c)(1) of this section and prepared in anticipation of litigation or for hearing by or for another party or by or for that other party's representative (including the party's attorney, consultant, or agent) only upon a showing that the party seeking discovery has substantial need of the materials in the preparation of its case and that the party is unable without undue hardship to obtain the substantial equivalent of the materials by other means. In ordering discovery of such materials when the required showing has been made, the Administrative Law Judge shall protect against disclosure of the mental impressions, conclusions, opinions, or legal theories of an attorney or other representative of a party.

(4) *Hearing preparation: Experts.* (i) Discovery of facts known and opinions held by experts, otherwise discoverable under the provisions of paragraph (c)(1) of this section and acquired or developed in anticipation of litigation or for hearing, may be obtained only as follows:

(A) A party may through interrogatories require any other party to identify each person whom the other party expects to call as an expert witness at hearing, to state the subject matter on which the expert is expected to testify, and to state the substance of the facts and opinions to which the expert is expected to testify and a summary of the grounds for each opinion.

(B) Upon motion, the Administrative Law Judge may order further discovery by other means, subject to such restrictions as to scope as the Administrative Law Judge may deem appropriate.

(ii) A party may discover facts known or opinions held by an expert who has been retained or specially employed by another party in anticipation of litigation or preparation for hearing and who is not expected to be called as a witness at hearing, only upon a showing of exceptional circumstances under which it is impracticable for the party seeking discovery to obtain facts or opinions on the same subject by other means.

(iii) The Administrative Law Judge may require as a condition of discovery that the party seeking discovery pay the expert a reasonable fee, but not more than the maximum specified in 5 U.S.C. 3109 unless the parties have stipulated a higher amount, for time spent in responding to discovery under paragraphs (c)(4)(i)(B) and (c)(4)(ii) of this section.

(d) *Protective orders; order to preserve evidence.* (1) The Administrative Law Judge may deny discovery or make any order which justice requires to protect a party or other person from annoyance, embarrassment, oppression, or undue burden or expense, or to prevent undue delay in the proceeding. Such an order may also be issued to preserve evidence upon a showing that there is substantial reason to believe that such evidence would not otherwise be available for presentation at the hearing.

(2) [Reserved]

(e) *Supplementation of disclosures and responses.* A party who has made an initial disclosure under § 3.31(b) or responded to a request for discovery with a disclosure or response is under a duty to supplement or correct the disclosure or response to include information thereafter acquired if ordered by the Administrative Law Judge or in the following circumstances:

(1) A party is under a duty to supplement at appropriate intervals its initial disclosures under § 3.31(b) if the party learns that in some material respect the information disclosed is incomplete or incorrect and if the additional or corrective information has not otherwise been made known to the other parties during the discovery process or in writing.

(2) A party is under a duty seasonably to amend a prior response to an interrogatory, request for production, or request for admission if the party learns that the response is in some material respect incomplete or incorrect.

(f) *Stipulations.* When approved by the Administrative Law Judge, the parties may by written stipulation (1) provide

that depositions may be taken before any person, at any time or place, upon any notice, and in any manner and when so taken may be used like other depositions, and (2) modify the procedures provided by these rules for other methods of discovery.

(g) *Ex parte rulings on applications for compulsory process.* Applications for the issuance of subpoenas to compel testimony at an adjudicative hearing pursuant to §3.34 may be made *ex parte,* and, if so made, such applications and rulings thereon shall remain *ex parte* unless otherwise ordered by the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission.

[43 FR 56864, Dec. 4, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985; 61 FR 50647, Sept. 26, 1996]

### §3.32 Admissions.

(a) At any time after thirty (30) days after issuance of compliant, or after publication of notice of an adjudicative hearing in a rulemaking proceeding under §3.13, any party may serve on any other party a written request for admission of the truth of any matters relevant to the pending proceeding set forth in the request that relate to statements or opinions of fact or of the application of law to fact, including the genuineness of any documents described in the request. Copies of documents shall be served with the request unless they have been or are otherwise furnished or are known to be, and in the request are stated as being, in the possession of the other party. Each matter of which an admission is requested shall be separately set forth. A copy of the request shall be filed with the Secretary.

(b) The matter is admitted unless, within ten (10) days after service of the request, or within such shorter or longer time as the Administrative Law Judge may allow, the party to whom the request is directed serves upon the party requesting the admission, with a copy filed with the Secretary, a sworn written answer or objection addressed to the matter. If objection is made, the reasons therefor shall be stated. The answer shall specifically deny the matter or set forth in detail the reasons why the answering party cannot truthfully admit or deny the matter. A denial shall fairly meet the substance of the requested admission, and when good faith requires that a party qualify its answer or deny only a part of the matter of which an admission is requested, the party shall specify so much of it as is true and qualify or deny the remainder. An answering party may not give lack of information or knowledge as a reason for failure to admit or deny unless the party states that it has made reasonable inquiry and that the information known to or readily obtainable by the party is insufficient to enable it to admit or deny. A party who considers that a matter of which an admission has been requested presents a genuine issue for trial may not, on that ground alone, object to the request; the party may deny the matter or set fourth reasons why the party cannot admit or deny it.

(c) Any matter admitted under this rule is conclusively established unless the Administrative Law Judge on motion permits withdrawal or amendment of the admission. The Administrative Law Judge may permit withdrawal or amendment when the presentation of the merits of the proceeding will be subserved thereby and the party who obtained the admission fails to satisfy the Administrative Law Judge that withdrawal or amendment will prejudice him in maintaining his action or defense on the merits. Any admission made by a party under this rule is for the purpose of the pending proceeding only and is not an admission by him for any other purpose nor may it be used against him in any other proceeding.

[43 FR 56865, Dec. 4, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985]

### §3.33 Depositions.

(a) *In general.* Any party may take a deposition of a named person or of a person or persons described with reasonable particularity, provided that such deposition is reasonably expected to yield information within the scope of discovery under §3.31(c)(1). Such party may, by motion, obtain from the Administrative Law Judge an order to preserve relevant evidence upon a showing that there is substantial reason to believe that such evidence would not otherwise be available for presentation at the hearing. Depositions may

be taken before any person having power to administer oaths, either under the law of the United States or of the state or other place in which the deposition is taken, who may be designated by the party seeking the deposition, provided that such person shall have no interest in the outcome of the proceeding. The party seeking the deposition shall serve upon each person whose deposition is sought and upon each party to the proceeding reasonable notice in writing of the time and place at which it will be taken, and the name and address of each person or persons to be examined, if known, and if the name is not known, a description sufficient to identify them.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) *Notice to corporation or other organization.* A party may name as the deponent a public or private corporation, partnership, association, governmental agency other than the Federal Trade Commission, or any bureau or regional office to the Federal Trade Commission, and describe with reasonable particularity the matters on which examination is requested. The organization so names shall designate one or more officers, directors, or managing agents, or other persons who consent to testify on its behalf, and may set forth, for each person designated, the matters on which he will testify. A subpoena shall advise a non-party organization of its duty to make such a designation. The persons so designated shall testify as to matters known or reasonably available to the organization. This subsection does not preclude taking a deposition by any other procedure authorized in these rules.

(d) *Taking of deposition.* Each deponent shall be duly sworn, and any party shall have the right to question him. Objections to questions or to evidence presented shall be in short form, stating the grounds of objections relied upon. The questions propounded and the answers thereto, together with all objections made, shall be recorded and certified by the officer. Thereafter, upon payment of the charges therefor, the officer shall furnish a copy of the deposition to the deponent and to any party.

(e) *Depositions upon written questions.* A party desiring to take a deposition upon written questions shall serve them upon every other party with a notice stating:

(1) The name and address of the person who is to answer them, and

(2) The name or descriptive title and address of the officer before whom the deposition is to be taken.

A deposition upon written questions may be taken of a public or private corporation, partnership, association, governmental agency other than the Federal Trade Commission, or any bureau or regional office of the Federal Trade Commission in accordance with the provisions of Rule 3.33(c). Within 30 days after the notice and written questions are served, any other party may serve cross questions upon all other parties. Within 10 days after being served with cross questions, the party taking the deposition may serve redirect questions upon all other parties. Within 10 days after being served with redirect questions, any other party may serve recross questions upon all other parties. The content of any question shall not be disclosed to the deponent prior to the taking of the deposition. A copy of the notice and copies of all questions served shall be delivered by the party taking the deposition to the officer designated in the notice, who shall proceed promptly to take the testimony of the deponent in response to the questions and to prepare, certify, and file or mail the deposition, attaching thereto the copy of the notice and the questions received by him. When the deposition is filed the party taking it shall promptly give notice thereof to all other parties.

(f) *Correction of deposition.* A deposition may be corrected, as to form or substance, in the manner provided by § 3.44(b). Any such deposition shall, in addition to the other required procedures, be read to or by the deponent and signed by him, unless the parties by stipulation waive the signing or the deponent is unavailable or cannot be found or refuses to sign. If the deposition is not signed by the deponent within 30 days of its submission or attempted submission, the officer shall sign it and certify that the signing has

been waived or that the deponent is unavailable or that the deponent has refused to sign, as the case may be, together with the reason for the refusal to sign, if any has been given. The deposition may then be used as though signed unless, on a motion to suppress under Rule 3.33(g)(3)(iv), the Administrative Law Judge determines that the reasons given for the refusal to sign require rejection of the deposition in whole or in part. In addition to and not in lieu of the procedure for formal correction of the deposition, the deponent may enter in the record at the time of signing a list of objections to the transcription of his remarks, stating with specificity the alleged errors in the transcript.

(g)(1) *Use of depositions in hearings.* At the hearing on the complaint or upon a motion, any part or all of a deposition, so far as admissible under the rules of evidence applied as though the witness were then present and testifying, may be used against any party who was present or represented at the taking of the deposition or who had reasonable notice thereof, in accordance with any of the following provisions:

(i) Any deposition may be used for the purpose of contradicting or impeaching the testimony of deponent as a witness.

(ii) The deposition of a party or of anyone who at the time of taking the deposition was an officer, director, or managing agent, or a person designated to testify on behalf of a public or private corporation, partnership or association which is a party, or of an official or employee (other than a special employee) of the Commission, may be used by an adverse party for any purpose.

(iii) A deposition may be used by any party for any purpose if the Administrative Law Judge finds:

(A) That the deponent is dead; or

(B) That the deponent is out of the United States or is located at such a distance that his attendance would be impractical, unless it appears that the absence of the deponent was procured by the party offering the deposition; or

(C) That the deponent is unable to attend or testify because of age, sickness, infirmity, or imprisonment; or

(D) That the party offering the deposition has been unable to procure the attendance of the deponent by subpoena; or

(E) That such exceptional circumstances exist as to make it desirable, in the interest of justice and with due regard to the importance of presenting the testimony of witnesses orally in open hearing, to allow the deposition to be used.

(iv) If only part of a deposition is offered in evidence by a party, any other party may introduce any other part which ought in fairness to be considered with the part introduced.

(2) *Objections to admissibility.* Subject to the provisions of paragraph (g)(3) of this section, objection may be made at the hearing to receiving in evidence any deposition or part thereof for any reason which would require the exclusion of the evidence if the witness were then present and testifying.

(3) *Effect of errors and irregularities in depositions*—(i) *As to notice.* All errors and irregularities in the notice for taking a deposition are waived unless written objection is promptly served upon the party giving the notice.

(ii) *As to disqualification of officer.* Objection to taking a deposition because of disqualification of the officer before whom it is to be taken is waived unless made before the taking of the deposition begins or as soon thereafter as the disqualification becomes known or could be discovered with reasonable diligence.

(iii) *As to taking of deposition.* (A) Objections to the competency of a witness or to the competency, relevancy, or materiality of testimony are not waived by failure to make them before or during the taking of the deposition, unless the ground of the objection is one which might have been obviated or removed if presented at that time.

(B) Errors and irregularities occurring at the oral examination in the manner of taking the deposition, in the form of the questions or answers, in the oath or affirmation, or in the conduct of parties, and errors of any kind which might be obviated, removed, or cured if promptly presented, are waived unless seasonable objection thereto is made at the taking of the deposition.

(C) Objections to the form of written questions are waived unless served in writing upon all parties within the time allowed for serving the succeeding cross or other questions and within 5 days after service of the last questions authorized.

(iv) *As to completion and return of deposition.* Errors and irregularities in the manner in which the testimony is transcribed or the deposition is prepared, signed, certified, endorsed, or otherwise dealt with by the officer are waived unless a motion to suppress the deposition or some part thereof is made with reasonable promptness after such defect is or with due diligence might have been ascertained.

[43 FR 56865, Dec. 4, 1978, as amended at 61 FR 50648, Sept. 26, 1996]

### § 3.34 Subpoenas.

(a) *Subpoenas ad testificandum*—(1) *Prehearing.* The Secretary of the Commission shall issue a subpoena, signed but otherwise in blank, requiring a person to appear and give testimony at the taking of a deposition to a party requesting such subpoena, who shall complete it before service.

(2) *Hearing.* Application for issuance of a subpoena commanding a person to attend and give testimony at an adjudicative hearing shall be made in writing to the Administrative Law Judge. Such subpoena may be issued upon a showing of the reasonable relevancy of the expected testimony.

(b) *Subpoenas duces tecum; subpoenas to permit inspection of premises.* The Secretary of the Commission, upon request of a party, shall issue a subpoena, signed but otherwise in blank, commanding a person to produce and permit inspection and copying of designated books, documents, or tangible things, or commanding a person to permit inspection of premises, at a time and place therein specified. The subpoena shall specify with reasonable particularity the material to be produced. The person commanded by the subpoena need not appear in person at the place of production or inspection unless commanded to appear for a deposition or hearing pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section. As used herein, the term ''documents'' includes writings, drawings, graphs, charts, handwritten notes, film, photographs, audio and video recordings and any such representations stored on a computer, a computer disk, CD–ROM, magnetic or electronic tape, or any other means of electronic storage, and other data compilations from which information can be obtained in machine-readable form (translated, if necessary, into reasonably usable form by the person subject to the subpoena). A subpoena *duces tecum* may be used by any party for purposes of discovery, for obtaining documents for use in evidence, or for both purposes, and shall specify with reasonable particularity the materials to be produced.

(c) *Motions to quash; limitation on subpoenas to other government agencies.* Any motion by the subject of a subpoena to limit or quash the subpoena shall be filed within the earlier of ten (10) days after service thereof or the time for compliance therewith. Such motions shall set forth all assertions of privilege or other factual and legal objections to the subpoena, including all appropriate arguments, affidavits and other supporting documentation, and shall include the statement required by Rule 3.22(f). Nothing in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section authorizes the issuance of subpoenas requiring the appearance of, or the production of documents in the possession, custody, or control of, an official or employee of a governmental agency other than the Commission, which may be authorized only in accordance with § 3.36.

[43 FR 56866, Dec. 4, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 42672, Oct. 22, 1985; 61 FR 50648, Sept. 26, 1996]

### § 3.35 Interrogatories to parties.

(a) *Availability; Procedures for Use.* (1) Any party may serve upon any other party written interrogatories, not exceeding twenty-five (25) in number, including all discrete subparts, to be answered by the party served or, if the party served is a public or private corporation, partnership, association or governmental agency, by any officer or agent, who shall furnish such information as is available to the party. For this purpose, information shall not be deemed to be available insofar as it is in the possession of the Commissioners,

the General Counsel, the office of Administrative Law Judges, or the Secretary in his capacity as custodian or recorder of any such information, or their respective staffs.

(2) Each interrogatory shall be answered separately and fully in writing under oath, unless it is objected to on grounds not raised and ruled on in connection with the authorization, in which event the reasons for objection shall be stated in lieu of an answer. The answers are to be signed by the person making them, and the objections signed by the attorney making them. The party upon whom the interrogatories have been served shall serve a copy of the answers, and objections, if any, within thirty (30) days after the service of the interrogatories. The Administrative Law Judge may allow a shorter or longer time.

(b) *Scope; use at hearing.* (1) Interrogatories may relate to any matters that can be inquired into under §3.31(c)(1), and the answers may be used to the extent permitted by the rules of evidence.

(2) An interrogatory otherwise proper is not necessarily objectionable merely because an answer to the interrogatory involves an opinion or contention that relates to fact or the application of law to fact, but the Administrative Law Judge may order that such an interrogatory need not be answered until after designated discovery has been completed or until a pre-trial conference or other later time.

(c) *Option to produce records.* Where the answer to an interrogatory may be derived or ascertained from the records of the party upon whom the interrogatory has been served or from an examination, audit or inspection of such records, or from a compilation, abstract or summary based thereon, and the burden of deriving or ascertaining the answer is substantially the same for the party serving the interrogatory as for the party served, it is a sufficient answer to such interrogatory to specify the records from which the answer may be derived or ascertained and to afford to the party serving the interrogatory reasonable opportunity to examine, audit or inspect such records and to make copies, compilations, abstracts or summaries. The specification shall include sufficient detail to permit the interrogating party to identify readily the individual documents from which the answer may be ascertained.

[43 FR 56867, Dec. 4, 1978, as amended at 61 FR 50649, Sept. 26, 1996]

### §3.36 Applications for subpoenas for records, or appearances by officials or employees, of governmental agencies other than the Commission.

(a) *Form.* An application for issuance of a subpoena for the production of documents, as defined in §3.34(b), or for the issuance of a subpoena requiring access to documents or other tangible things, for the purposes described in §3.37(a), in the possession, custody, or control of a governmental agency other than the Commission or the officials or employees of such other agency, or for the issuance of a subpoena requiring the appearance of an official or employee of another governmental agency, shall be made in the form of a written motion filed in accordance with the provisions of §3.22(a). No application for records pursuant to §4.11 of this chapter or the Freedom of Information Act may be filed with the Administrative Law Judge.

(b) *Content.* The motion shall satisfy the same requirements for a subpoena under §3.34 or a request for production or access under §3.37, together with a specific showing that:

(1) the material sought is reasonable in scope;

(2) if for purposes of discovery, the material falls within the limits of discovery under §3.31(b)(1), or, if for an adjudicative hearing, the material is reasonably relevant; and

(3) the information or material sought cannot reasonably be obtained by other means.

[61 FR 50649, Sept. 26, 1996]

### §3.37 Production of documents and things; access for inspection and other purposes.

(a) *Availability; procedures for use.* Any party may serve on another party a request: to produce and permit the party making the request, or someone acting on the party's behalf, to inspect and copy any designated documents, as defined in §3.34(b), or to inspect and copy, test, or sample any tangible

things which are within the scope of § 3.31(c)(1) and in the possession, custody or control of the party upon whom the request is served; or to permit entry upon designated land or other property in the possession or control of the party upon whom the order would be served for the purpose of inspection and measuring, surveying, photographing, testing, or sampling the property or any designated object or operation thereon, within the scope of § 3.31(c)(1). Each such request shall specify with reasonable particularity the documents or things to be inspected, or the property to be entered. Each such request shall also specify a reasonable time, place, and manner of making the inspection and performing the related acts. A party shall make documents available as they are kept in the usual course of business or shall organize and label them to correspond with the categories in the request. A person not a party to the action may be compelled to produce documents and things or to submit to an inspection as provided in § 3.34.

(b) *Response; objections.* The response of the party upon whom the request is served shall state, with respect to each item or category, that inspection and related activities will be permitted as requested, unless the request is objected to, in which event the reasons for the objection shall be stated. If objection is made to part of an item or category, the part shall be specified and inspection permitted of the remaining parts. The party submitting the request may move for an order under § 3.38(a) with respect to any objection to or other failure to respond to the request or any part thereof, or any failure to permit inspection as requested.

[61 FR 50649, Sept. 26, 1996]

### § 3.38 Motion for order compelling disclosure or discovery; sanctions.

(a) *Motion for order to compel.* A party may apply by motion to the Administrative Law Judge for an order compelling disclosure or discovery, including a determination of the sufficiency of the answers or objections with respect to the initial disclosures required by § 3.31(b), a request for admission under § 3.32, a deposition under § 3.33, or an interrogatory under § 3.35.

(1) *Initial disclosures; requests for admission; depositions; interrogatories.* Unless the objecting party sustains its burden of showing that the objection is justified, the Administrative Law Judge shall order that an answer be served or disclosure otherwise be made. If the Administrative Law Judge determines that an answer or other response by the objecting party does not comply with the requirements of these rules, he may order either that the matter is admitted or that an amended answer or response be served. The Administrative Law Judge may, in lieu of these orders, determine that final disposition may be made at a prehearing conference or at a designated time prior to trial.

(2) *Requests for production or access.* If a party fails to respond to or comply as requested with a request for production or access made under § 3.37(a), the discovering party may move for an order to compel production or access in accordance with the request.

(b) If a party or an officer or agent of a party fails to comply with a subpoena or with an order including, but not limited to, an order for the taking of a deposition, the production of documents, or the answering of interrogatories, or requests for admissions, or an order of the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission issued as, or in accordance with, a ruling upon a motion concerning such an order or subpoena or upon an appeal from such a ruling, the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission, or both, for the purpose of permitting resolution of relevant issues and disposition of the proceeding without unnecessary delay despite such failure, may take such action in regard thereto as is just, including but not limited to the following:

(1) Infer that the admission, testimony, documents or other evidence would have been adverse to the party;

(2) Rule that for the purposes of the proceeding the matter or matters concerning which the order or subpoena was issued be taken as established adversely to the party;

(3) Rule that the party may not introduce into evidence or otherwise rely, in support of any claim or defense, upon testimony by such party,

officer, or agent, or the documents or other evidence;

(4) Rule that the party may not be heard to object to introduction and use of secondary evidence to show what the withheld admission, testimony, documents, or other evidence would have shown;

(5) Rule that a pleading, or part of a pleading, or a motion or other submission by the party, concerning which the order or subpoena was issued, be stricken, or that a decision of the proceeding be rendered against the party, or both.

(c) Any such action may be taken by written or oral order issued in the course of the proceeding or by inclusion in an initial decision of the Administrative Law Judge or an order or opinion of the Commission. It shall be the duty of parties to seek and Administrative Law Judges to grant such of the foregoing means of relief or other appropriate relief as may be sufficient to compensate for withheld testimony, documents, or other evidence. If in the Administrative Law Judge's opinion such relief would not be sufficient, or in instances where a nonparty fails to comply with a subpoena or order, he shall certify to the Commission a request that court enforcement of the subpoena or order be sought.

[43 FR 56867, Dec. 4, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 53305, Dec. 31, 1985; 61 FR 50649, Sept. 26, 1996]

### §3.38A Withholding requested material.

(a) Any person withholding material responsive to a subpoena issued pursuant to §3.34, written interrogatories requested pursuant to §3.35, a request for production or access pursuant to §3.37, or any other request for the production of materials under this part, shall assert a claim of privilege or any similar claim not later than the date set for production of the material. Such person shall, if so directed in the subpoena or other request for production, submit, together with such claim, a schedule of the items withheld which states individually as to each such item the type, title, specific subject matter, and date of the item; the names, addresses, positions, and organizations of all authors and recipients of the item; and the specific grounds for claiming that the item is privileged.

(b) A person withholding material for reasons described in §3.38A(a) shall comply with the requirements of that subsection in lieu of filing a motion to limit or quash compulsory process.

(Sec. 5, 38 Stat. 719 as amended (15 U.S.C. 45))

[44 FR 54043, Sept. 18, 1979, as amended at 61 FR 50650, Sept. 26, 1996]

### §3.39 Orders requiring witnesses to testify or provide other information and granting immunity.

(a) Where Commission complaint counsel desire the issuance of an order requiring a witness or deponent to testify or provide other information and granting immunity under title 18, section 6002, United States Code, Directors and Assistant Directors of Bureaus and Regional Directors and Assistant Regional Directors of Commission Regional Offices having responsibility for presenting evidence in support of the complaint are authorized to determine:

(1) That the testimony or other information sought from a witness or deponent, or prospective witness or deponent, may be necessary to the public interest, and

(2) That such individual has refused or is likely to refuse to testify or provide such information on the basis of his privilege against self-incrimination; and to request, through the Commission's liaison officer, approval by the Attorney General for the issuance of such an order. Upon receipt of approval by the Attorney General (or his designee), the Administrative Law Judge is authorized to issue an order requiring the witness or deponent to testify or provide other information and granting immunity when the witness or deponent has invoked his privilege against self-incrimination and it cannot be determined that such privilege was improperly invoked.

(b) Requests by counsel other than Commission complaint counsel for an order requiring a witness to testify or provide other information and granting immunity under title 18, section 6002, United States Code, may be made to the Administrative Law Judge and may be made ex parte. When such requests are made, the Administrative Law Judge is authorized to determine:

(1) That the testimony or other information sought from a witness or deponent, or prospective witness or deponent, may be necessary to the public interest, and

(2) That such individual has refused or is likely to refuse to testify or provide such information on the basis of his privilege against self-incrimination; and, upon making such determinations, to request, through the Commission's liaison officer, approval by the Attorney General for the issuance of an order requiring a witness to testify or provide other information and granting immunity; and, after the Attorney General (or his designee) has granted such approval, to issue such order when the witness or deponent has invoked his privilege against self-incrimination and it cannot be determined that such privilege was improperly invoked.

(18 U.S.C. 6002, 6004)

[37 FR 5017, Mar. 9, 1972, as amended at 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985]

### § 3.40 Admissibility of evidence in advertising substantiation cases.

(a) If a person, partnership, or corporation is required through compulsory process under section 6, 9 or 20 of the Act issued after October 26, 1977 to submit to the Commission substantiation in support of an express or an implied representation contained in an advertisement, such person, partnership or corporation shall not thereafter be allowed, in any adjudicative proceeding in which it is alleged that the person, partnership, or corporation lacked a reasonable basis for the representation, and for any purpose relating to the defense of such allegation, to introduce into the record, whether directly or indirectly through references contained in documents or oral testimony, any material of any type whatsoever that was required to be but was not timely submitted in response to said compulsory process. *Provided, however,* that a person, partnership, or corporation is not, within the meaning of this section, required through compulsory process to submit substantiation with respect to those portions of said compulsory process to which such person, partnership, or corporation has raised good faith legal objections in a timely motion pursuant to the Commission's Rules of Practice and Procedure, until the Commission denies such motion; or if the person, partnership, or corporation thereafter continues to refuse to comply, until such process has been judicially enforced.

(b) The Administrative Law Judge shall, upon motion, at any stage exclude all material that was required to be but was not timely submitted in response to compulsory process described in paragraph (a) of this section, or any reference to such material, unless the person, partnership, or corporation demonstrates in a hearing, and the Administrative Law Judge finds, that by the exercise of due diligence the material could not have been timely submitted in response to the compulsory process, and that the Commission was notified of the existence of the material immediately upon its discovery. Said findings of the Administrative Law Judge shall be in writing and shall specify with particularity the evidence relied upon. The rules normally governing the admissibility of evidence in Commission proceedings shall in any event apply to any material coming within the above exception.

[42 FR 56500, Oct. 10, 1977; 42 FR 61450, Dec. 5, 1977, as amended at 45 FR 45578, July 7, 1980]

## Subpart E—Hearings

### § 3.41 General rules.

(a) *Public hearings.* All hearings in adjudicative proceedings shall be public unless an *in camera* order is entered by the Administrative Law Judge pursuant to § 3.45(b) of this chapter or unless otherwise ordered by the Commission.

(b) *Expedition.* Hearings shall proceed with all reasonable expedition, and, insofar as practicable, shall be held at one place and shall continue, except for brief intervals of the sort normally involved in judicial proceedings, without suspension until concluded. Consistent with the requirements of expedition:

(1) The Administrative Law Judge may order hearings at more than one place and may grant a reasonable recess at the end of a case-in-chief for the purpose of discovery deferred during the pre-hearing procedure where the Administrative Law Judge determines

that such recess will materially expedite the ultimate disposition of the proceeding.

(2) When actions involving a common question of law or fact are pending before the Administrative Law Judge, the Administrative Law Judge may order a joint hearing of any or all the matters in issue in the actions; the Administrative Law Judge may order all the actions consolidated; and the Administrative Law Judge may make such orders concerning proceedings therein as may tend to avoid unnecessary costs or delay.

(3) When separate hearings will be conducive to expedition and economy, the Administrative Law Judge may order a separate hearing of any claim, or of any separate issue, or of any number of claims or issues.

(c) *Rights of parties.* Every party, except intervenors, whose rights are determined under §3.14, shall have the right of due notice, cross-examination, presentation of evidence, objection, motion, argument, and all other rights essential to a fair hearing.

(d) *Adverse witnesses.* An adverse party, or an officer, agent, or employee thereof, and any witness who appears to be hostile, unwilling, or evasive, may be interrogated by leading questions and may also be contradicted and impeached by the party calling him.

(e) *Participation in adjudicative packaging and labeling hearings.* At adjudicative hearings under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act, any party or any interested person designated as a party pursuant to §3.13, or his representative, may be sworn as a witness and heard.

(f) Requests for an order requiring a witness to testify or provide other information and granting immunity under title 18, section 6002, of the United States Code, shall be disposed of in accordance with §3.39.

(18 U.S.C. 6002, 6004)

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 37 FR 5017, Mar. 9, 1972; 37 FR 5609, Mar. 17, 1972; 39 FR 34398, Sept. 25, 1974; 44 FR 62887, Nov. 1, 1979]

### §3.42 Presiding officials.

(a) *Who presides.* Hearings in adjudicative proceedings shall be presided over by a duly qualified Administrative Law Judge or by the Commission or one or more members of the Commission sitting as Administrative Law Judges; and the term *Administrative Law Judge* as used in this part means and applies to the Commission or any of its members when so sitting.

(b) *How assigned.* The presiding Administrative Law Judge shall be designated by the Chief Administrative Law Judge or, when the Commission or one or more of its members preside, by the Commission, who shall notify the parties of the Administrative Law Judge designated.

(c) *Powers and duties.* Administrative Law Judges shall have the duty to conduct fair and impartial hearings, to take all necessary action to avoid delay in the disposition of proceedings, and to maintain order. They shall have all powers necessary to that end, including the following:

(1) To administer oaths and affirmations;

(2) To issue subpenas and orders requiring answers to questions;

(3) To take depositions or to cause depositions to be taken;

(4) To compel admissions, upon request of a party or on their own initiative;

(5) To rule upon offers of proof and receive evidence;

(6) To regulate the course of the hearings and the conduct of the parties and their counsel therein;

(7) To hold conferences for settlement, simplification of the issues, or any other proper purpose;

(8) To consider and rule upon, as justice may require, all procedural and other motions appropriate in an adjudicative proceeding, including motions to open defaults;

(9) To make and file initial decisions;

(10) To certify questions to the Commission for its determination; and

(11) To take any action authorized by the rules in this part or in conformance with the provisions of the Administrative Procedure Act as restated and incorporated in title 5, U.S.C.

(d) *Suspension of attorneys by Administrative Law Judge.* The Administrative Law Judge shall have the authority, for good cause stated on the record, to suspend or bar from participation in a particular proceeding any attorney

who shall refuse to comply with his directions, or who shall be guilty of disorderly, dilatory, obstructionist, or contumacious conduct, or contemptuous language in the course of such proceeding. Any attorney so suspended or barred may appeal to the Commission in accordance with the provisions of § 3.23(a). The appeal shall not operate to suspend the hearing unless otherwise ordered by the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission; in the event the hearing is not suspended, the attorney may continue to participate therein pending disposition of the appeal.

(e) *Substitution of Administrative Law Judge.* In the event of the substitution of a new Administrative Law Judge for the one originally designated, any motion predicated upon such substitution shall be made within five (5) days thereafter.

(f) *Interference.* In the performance of their adjudicative functions, Administrative Law Judges shall not be responsible to or subject to the supervision or direction of any officer, employee, or agent engaged in the performance of investigative or prosecuting functions for the Commission, and all direction by the Commission to Administrative Law Judges concerning any adjudicative proceedings shall appear in and be made a part of the record.

(g) *Disqualification of Administrative Law Judges.* (1) When an Administrative Law Judge deems himself disqualified to preside in a particular proceeding, he shall withdraw therefrom by notice on the record and shall notify the Director of Administrative Law Judges of such withdrawal.

(2) Whenever any party shall deem the Administrative Law Judge for any reason to be disqualified to preside, or to continue to preside, in a particular proceeding, such party may file with the Secretary a motion addressed to the Administrative Law Judge to disqualify and remove him, such motion to be supported by affidavits setting forth the alleged grounds for disqualification. If the Administrative Law Judge does not disqualify himself within ten (10) days, he shall certify the motion to the Commission, together with any statement he may wish to have considered by the Commission. The Commission shall promptly determine the validity of the grounds alleged, either directly or on the report of another Administrative Law Judge appointed to conduct a hearing for that purpose.

(3) Such motion shall be filed at the earliest practicable time after the participant learns, or could reasonably have learned, of the alleged grounds for disqualification.

(h) *Failure to comply with Administrative Law Judge's directions.* Any party who refuses or fails to comply with a lawfully issued order or direction of an Administrative Law Judge may be considered to be in contempt of the Commission. The circumstances of any such neglect, refusal, or failure, together with a recommendation for appropriate action, shall be promptly certified by the Administrative Law Judge to the Commission. The Commission may make such orders in regard thereto as the circumstances may warrant.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 37 FR 5609, Mar. 17, 1972; 41 FR 8340, Feb. 26, 1976; 43 FR 56868, Dec. 4, 1978; 46 FR 45750, Sept. 15, 1981; 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985]

### § 3.43 Evidence.

(a) *Burden of proof.* Counsel representing the Commission, or any person who has filed objections sufficient to warrant the holding of an adjudicative hearing pursuant to § 3.13, shall have the burden of proof, but the proponent of any factual proposition shall be required to sustain the burden of proof with respect thereto.

(b) *Admissibility; exclusion of relevant evidence; mode and order of interrogation and presentation.* Relevant, material, and reliable evidence shall be admitted. Irrelevant, immaterial, and unreliable evidence shall be excluded. Evidence, even if relevant, may be excluded if its probative value is substantially outweighed by the danger of unfair prejudice, confusion of the issues, or if the evidence would be misleading, or by considerations of undue delay, waste of time, or needless presentation of cumulative evidence. The Administrative Law Judge shall exercise reasonable control over the mode and order of interrogating witnesses and presenting evidence so as to

(1) make the interrogation and presentation effective for the ascertainment of the truth,

(2) avoid needless consumption of time, and

(3) protect witnesses from harassment or undue embarrassment.

(c) *Information obtained in investigations.* Any documents, papers, books, physical exhibits, or other materials or information obtained by the Commission under any of its powers may be disclosed by counsel representing the Commission when necessary in connection with adjudicative proceedings and may be offered in evidence by counsel representing the Commission in any such proceeding.

(d) *Official notice.* When any decision of an Administrative Law Judge or of the Commission rests, in whole or in part, upon the taking of official notice of a material fact not appearing in evidence of record, opportunity to disprove such noticed fact shall be granted any party making timely motion therefor.

(e) *Objections.* Objections to evidence shall timely and briefly state the grounds relied upon, but the transcript shall not include argument or debate thereon except as ordered by the Administrative Law Judge. Rulings on all objections shall appear in the record.

(f) *Exceptions.* Formal exception to an adverse ruling is not required.

(g) *Excluded evidence.* When an objection to a question propounded to a witness is sustained, the questioner may make a specific offer of what he expects to prove by the answer of the witness, or the Administrative Law Judge may, in his discretion, receive and report the evidence in full. Rejected exhibits, adequately marked for identification, shall be retained in the record so as to be available for consideration by any reviewing authority.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967; 32 FR 8711, June 17, 1967, as amended at 48 FR 44766, Sept. 30, 1983; 61 FR 50650, Sept. 26, 1996]

### §3.44 Record.

(a) *Reporting and transcription.* Hearings shall be stenographically reported and transcribed by the official reporter of the Commission under the supervision of the Administrative Law Judge, and the original transcript shall be a part of the record and the sole official transcript. Copies of transcripts are available from the reporter at rates not to exceed the maximum rates fixed by contract between the Commission and the reporter.

(b) *Corrections.* Corrections of the official transcript may be made only when they involve errors affecting substance and then only in the manner herein provided. Corrections ordered by the Administrative Law Judge or agreed to in a written stipulation signed by all counsel and parties not represented by counsel, and approved by the Administrative Law Judge, shall be included in the record, and such stipulations, except to the extent they are capricious or without substance, shall be approved by the Administrative Law Judge. Corrections shall not be ordered by the Administrative Law Judge except upon notice and opportunity for the hearing of objections. Such corrections shall be made by the official reporter by furnishing substitute type pages, under the usual certificate of the reporter, for insertion in the official record. The original uncorrected pages shall be retained in the files of the Commission.

(c) *Closing of the hearing record.* Immediately upon completion of the evidentiary hearing, the Administrative Law Judge shall issue an order closing the hearing record. The Administrative Law Judge shall retain the description to permit or order correction of the record as provided in §3.44(b).

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 61 FR 50650, Sept. 26, 1996]

### §3.45 In camera orders.

(a) *Definition.* Except as hereinafter provided, material made subject to an in camera order will be kept confidential and not placed on the public record of the proceeding in which it was submitted. Only respondents, their counsel, authorized Commission personnel, and court personnel concerned with judicial review may have access thereto, provided that the Administrative Law Judge, the Commission and reviewing courts may disclose such in camera material to the extent necessary for the proper disposition of the proceeding.

(b) *In camera treatment of material.* The Administrative Law Judge may order material, or portions thereof, offered into evidence, whether admitted or rejected, to be placed in camera on a finding that their public disclosure will likely result in a clearly defined, serious injury to the person, partnership or corporation requesting their in camera treatment. This finding shall be based on the standard articulated in H.P. Hood & Sons, Inc., 58 F.T.C. 1184, 1188 (1961); see also Bristol-Myers Co., 90 F.T.C. 455, 456 (1977), which established a three-part test that was modified by General Foods Corp., 95 F.T.C. 352, 355 (1980). No material, or portion thereof offered into evidence, whether admitted or rejected, may be withheld from the public record unless it falls within the scope of an order issued in accordance with this section, stating the date on which in camera treatment will expire, and including:

(1) A description of the material;

(2) A statement of the reasons for granting in camera treatment; and

(3) A statement of the reasons for the date on which in camera treatment will expire. Such expiration date may not be omitted except in unusual circumstances, in which event the order shall state with specificity the reasons why the need for confidentiality of the material, or portion thereof at issue is not likely to decrease over time, and any other reasons why such material is entitled to in camera treatment for an indeterminate period. Any party desiring, in connection with the preparation and presentation of the case, to disclose in camera material to experts, consultants, prospective witnesses, or witnesses, shall make application to the Administrative Law Judge setting forth the justification therefor. The Administrative Law Judge, in granting such application for good cause found, shall enter an order protecting the rights of the affected parties and preventing unnecessary disclosure of information. Material subject to an in camera order shall be segregated from the public record and filed in a sealed envelope, or other appropriate container, bearing the title, the docket number of the proceeding, the notation ''In Camera Record under §3.45,'' and the date, if any, on which in camera treatment expires.

(c) *Release of in camera material.* In camera material constitutes part of the confidential records of the Commission and is subject to the provisions of §4.11 of this chapter.

(d) *Briefs and other submissions referring to in camera information.* Parties shall not disclose information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to §3.45(b) in the public version of proposed findings, briefs, or other documents. This provision does not preclude references in such proposed findings, briefs, or other documents to *in camera* information or general statements based on the content of such information.

(e) *When in camera information is included in briefs and other submissions.* If a party includes specific information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to §3.45(b) in any document filed in a proceeding under this part, the party shall file two versions of the document. A complete version shall be marked ''*In Camera*'' on the first page and shall be filed with the Secretary and served upon the parties in accordance with the rules in this part. Any time period within which these rules allow a party to respond to a document shall run from the date the party is served with the complete version of the document. An expurgated version of the document, marked ''Public Record'' on the first page and omitting the *in camera* information that appears in the complete version, shall be filed with the Secretary within five days after the filing of the complete version, unless the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission directs otherwise, and shall be served upon the parties. The expurgated version shall indicate any omissions with brackets or elipses.

(f) *When in camera information is included in rulings or recommendations of the Administrative Law Judge.* If the Administrative Law Judge includes in any ruling or recommendation information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to §3.45(b), the Administrative Law Judge shall file two versions of the ruling or recommendation. A complete version shall be marked ''*In Camera*'' on the first page and shall

be serve upon the parties. The complete version will be placed in the *in camera* record of the proceeding. An expurgated version, to be filed within five (5) days after the filing of the complete version, shall omit the *in camera* information that appears in the complete version, shall be marked ''Public Record'' on the first page, shall be served upon the parties, and shall be included in the public record of the proceeding.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 52 FR 22293, June 11, 1987; 60 FR 37748, July 21, 1995; 61 FR 50650, Sept. 26, 1996]

### §3.46 Proposed findings, conclusions, and order.

(a) *General.* Upon the closing of the hearing record, or within a reasonable time thereafter fixed by the Administrative Law Judge, any party may file with the Secretary of the Commission for consideration of the Administrative Law Judge proposed findings of fact, conclusions of law, and rule or order, together with reasons therefor and briefs in support thereof. Such proposals shall be in writing, shall be served upon all parties, and shall contain adequate references to the record and authorities relied on. If a party includes in the proposals information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to §3.45(b), the party shall file two versions of the proposals in accordance with the procedures set forth in §3.45(e).

(b) *Exhibit Index.* The first statement of proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law filed by a party shall include an index listing for each exhibit offered by the party and received in evidence:

(1) The exhibit number, followed by

(2) The exhibit's title or a brief description if the exhibit is untitled;

(3) The transcript page at which the Administrative Law Judge ruled on the exhibit's admissibility or a citation to any written order in which such ruling was made;

(4) The transcript pages at which the exhibit is discussed;

(5) An identification of any other exhibit which summarizes the contents of the listed exhibit, or of any other exhibit of which the listed exhibit is a summary;

(6) A cross-reference, by exhibit number, to any other portions of that document admitted as a separate exhibit on motion by any other party; and

(7) A statement whether the exhibit has been accorded *in camera* treatment.

(c) *Witness Index.* The first statement of proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law filed by a party shall also include an index to the witnesses called by that party, to include for each witness:

(1) The name of the witness;

(2) A brief identification of the witness;

(3) The transcript pages at which any testimony of the witness appears; and

(4) A statement identifying any portion of the witness' testimony that was received *in camera*.

(d) *Stipulated indices.* As an alternative to the filing of separate indices, the parties are encouraged to stipulate to joint exhibit and witness indices at the time the first statement of proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law is due to be filed.

(e) *Rulings.* The record shall show the Administrative Law Judge's ruling on each proposed finding and conclusion, except when the order disposing of the proceeding otherwise informs the parties of the action taken.

[48 FR 56945, Dec. 27, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 22294, June 11, 1987; 61 FR 50650, Sept. 26, 1996]

## Subpart F—Decision

### §3.51 Initial decision.

(a) *When filed and when effective.* The Administrative Law Judge shall file an initial decision within ninety (90) days after closing the hearing record pursuant to §3.44(c), or within thirty (30) days after a default or the granting of a motion for summary decision or waiver by the parties of the filing of proposed findings of fact, conclusions of law and order, or within such further time as the Commission may by order allow upon written request from the Administrative Law Judge. In no event shall the initial decision be filed any later than one (1) year after the issuance of the administrative compliant, except that the Administrative Law Judge may, upon a finding of extraordinary circumstances, extend the

one-year deadline for a period of up to sixty (60) days. Such extension, upon its expiration, may be continued for additional consecutive periods of up to sixty (60) days, provided that each additional period is based upon a finding by the Administrative Law Judge that extraordinary circumstances are still present. The pendency of any collateral federal court proceeding that relates to the administrative adjudication shall toll the one-year deadline for filing the initial decision. The ALJ may stay the administrative proceeding until resolution of the collateral federal court proceeding. Once issued, the initial decision shall become the decision of the Commission thirty (30) days after service thereof upon the parties or thirty (30) days after the filing of a timely notice of appeal, whichever shall be later, unless a party filing such a notice shall have perfected an appeal by the timely filing of an appeal brief or the Commission shall have issued an order placing the case on its own docket for review or staying the effective date of the decision.

(b) *Exhaustion of administrative remedies.* An initial decision shall not be considered final agency action subject to judicial review under 5 U.S.C. 704. Any objection to a ruling by the Administrative Law Judge, or to a finding, conclusion or a provision of the order in the initial decision, which is not made a part of an appeal to the Commission shall be deemed to have been waived.

(c) *Content.* (1) The initial decision shall include a statement of findings (with specific page references to principal supporting items of evidence in the record) and conclusions, as well as the reasons or basis therefor, upon all the material issues of fact, law, or discretion presented on the record (or those designated under paragraph (c)(2) of this section) and an appropriate rule or order. Rulings containing information granted *in camera* status pursuant to § 3.45 shall be filed in accordance with § 3.45(f).

(2) When more than one claim for relief is presented in an action, or when multiple parties are involved, the Administrative Law Judge may direct the entry of an initial decision as to one or more but fewer than all of the claims or parties only upon an express determination that there is no just reason for delay and upon an express direction for the entry of initial decision.

(3) An initial decision shall be based upon a consideration of the whole record relevant to the issues decided pursuant to paragraph (c)(1) of this section, and it shall be supported by reliable, probative and substantial evidence.

(d) *By whom made.* The initial decision shall be made and filed by the Administrative Law Judge who presided over the hearings, except when he shall have become unavailable to the Commission.

(e) *Reopening of proceeding by Administrative Law Judge; termination of jurisdiction.* (1) At any time prior to the filing of his initial decision, an Administrative Law Judge may reopen the proceeding for the reception of further evidence.

(2) Except for the correction of clerical errors or pursuant to an order of remand from the Commission, the jurisdiction of the Administrative Law Judge is terminated upon the filing of his initial decision with respect to those issues decided pursuant to paragraph (c)(1) of this section.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 35 FR 10656, July 1, 1970; 44 FR 62887, Nov. 1, 1979; 48 FR 52576, Nov. 21, 1983; 48 FR 54810, Dec. 7, 1983; 52 FR 22294, June 11, 1987; 61 FR 50650, Sept. 26, 1996]

### § 3.52 Appeal from initial decision.

(a) *Who may file; notice of intention.* Any party to a proceeding may appeal an initial decision to the Commission by filing a notice of appeal with the Secretary within 10 days after service of the initial decision. The notice shall specify the party or parties against whom the appeal is taken and shall designate the initial decision and order or part thereof appealed from. If a timely notice of appeal is filed by a party, any other party may thereafter file a notice of appeal within 5 days after service of the first notice, or within 10 days after service of the initial decision, whichever period expires last.

(b) *Appeal brief.* The appeal shall be in the form of a brief, filed within 30 days after service of the initial decision, and

shall contain, in the order indicated, the following:

(1) A subject index of the matter in the brief, with page references, and a table of cases (alphabetically arranged), textbooks, statutes, and other material cited, with page references thereto;

(2) A concise statement of the case;

(3) A specification of the questions intended to be urged;

(4) The argument presenting clearly the points of fact and law relied upon in support of the position taken on each question, with specific page references to the record and the legal or other material relied upon; and

(5) A proposed form of order for the Commission's consideration instead of the order contained in the initial decision.

The brief shall not, without leave of the Commission, exceed 60 pages, if printed, or 90 pages, if typewritten, including any appendices but exclusive of pages containing the table of contents, tables of authorities and any addendum containing statutes, rules and regulations.

(c) *Answering brief.* Within 30 days after service of the appeal brief, the appellee may file an answering brief, which shall contain a subject index, with page references, and a table of cases (alphabetically arranged), textbooks, statutes, and other material cited, with page references thereto, as well as arguments in response to the appellant's appeal brief. However, if the appellee is also cross-appealing, its answering brief shall also contain its arguments as to any issues the party is raising on cross-appeal, including the points of fact and law relied upon in support of its position on each question, with specific page references to the record and legal or other material on which the party relies in support of its cross-appeal, and a proposed form of order for the Commission's consideration instead of the order contained in the initial decision. If the appellee does not cross-appeal, its answering brief shall not, without leave of the Commission, exceed 60 pages, if printed, or 90 pages, if typewritten. If the appellee cross-appeals, its brief in answer and on cross-appeal shall not, without leave of the Commission, exceed 105 pages, if printed, or 160 pages, if typewritten. The page limitations of this paragraph include any appendices but are exclusive of pages containing the table of contents, tables of authorities, and any addendum containing statutes, rules and regulations.

(d) *Reply brief.* Within 7 days after service of the appellee's answering brief, the appellant may file a reply brief, which shall be limited to rebuttal of matters in the answering brief and shall not, without leave of the Commission, exceed 60 pages, if printed, or 90 pages, if typewritten. However, if the appellee has cross-appealed, any appellant who is the subject of the cross-appeal may, within 30 days after service of such appellee's brief, file a reply brief, which shall be limited to rebuttal of matters in the appellee's brief and shall not, without leave of the Commission, exceed 75 pages, if printed, or 115 pages, if typewritten. If the appellee has cross-appealed, any party who is the subject of the cross-appeal, other than an appellant may, within 30 days after service of the appellee's brief, file a reply brief which shall be limited to rebuttal of matters raised by the appellee's cross-appeal with respect to the party and shall not, without leave of the Commission, exceed 60 pages if printed, or 90 pages, if typewritten. The appellee who has cross-appealed may, within 7 days after service of a reply to its cross-appeal, file an additional brief, which shall be limited to rebuttal of matters in the reply to its cross-appeal and shall not, without leave of the Commission, exceed 30 pages, if printed, or 45 pages, if typewritten. The page limitations of this paragraph include any appendices but are exclusive of pages containing the table of contents, tables of authorities, and any addendum containing statutes, rules, and regulations. No further briefs may be filed except by leave of the Commission.

(e) *Form of briefs.* Briefs may be produced by standard typographic printing or by any duplicating or copying process which produces a clear black image on white paper. All printed matter must appear in the least 11 point type on opaque, unglazed paper. Briefs produced by the standard typographic

process shall be bound in volumes having pages 6⅛ by 9¼ inches and type matter 4⅙ by 7⅙ inches. Those produced by any other process shall be bound in volumes having pages not exceeding 8½ by 11 inches and type matter not exceeding 6½ by 9½ inches, with double spacing between each line of text. Footnotes and quoted material within the text may be single-spaced. Both printed and typewritten briefs shall contain no more than 10 characters (including spaces) per inch.

(f) *In camera information.* If a party includes in any brief to be filed under this section information that has been granted *in camera* status pursuant to § 3.45(b), the party shall file two versions of the brief in accordance with the procedures set forth in § 3.45(e). The time period specified by this section within which a party may file an answering or reply brief will begin to run upon service on the party of the *in camera* version of a brief.

(g) *Signature.* (1) The original of each brief filed shall have a hand-signed signature by an attorney of record for the party, or in the case of parties not represented by counsel, by the party itself, or by a partner if a partnership, or by an officer of the party if it is a corporation or an unincorporated association.

(2) Signing a brief constitutes a representation by the signer that he or she has read it, that to the best of his or her knowledge, information, and belief, the statements made in it are true, and that it is not interposed for delay. If a brief is not signed or is signed with intent to defeat the purpose of this section, it may be stricken as sham and false and the proceeding may go forward as though the brief has not been filed.

(h) *Designation of appellant and appellee in cases involving cross-appeals.* In a case involving an appeal by complaint counsel and one or more respondents, any respondent who has filed a timely notice of appeal and as to whom the Administrative Law Judge has issued an order to cease and desist shall be deemed an appellant for purposes of paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section. In a case in which the Administrative Law Judge has dismissed the complaint as to all respondents, complaint counsel shall be deemed the appellant for purposes of paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this rule.

(i) *Oral argument.* All oral arguments shall be public unless otherwise ordered by the Commission. Oral arguments will be held in all cases on appeal to the Commission, unless the Commission otherwise orders upon its own initiative or upon request of any party made at the time of filing his brief. Oral arguments before the Commission shall be reported stenographically, unless otherwise ordered, and a member of the Commission absent from an oral argument may participate in the consideration and decision of the appeal in any case in which the oral argument is stenographically reported. The purpose of oral argument is to emphasize and clarify the written argument appearing in the briefs and to answer questions. Reading at length from the briefs or other texts is not favored.

(j) *Corrections in transcript of oral argument.* The Commission will entertain only joint motions of the parties requesting corrections in the transcript of oral argument, except that the Commission will receive a unilateral motion which recites that the parties have made a good faith effort to stipulate to the desired corrections but have been unable to do so. If the parties agree in part and disagree in part, they should file a joint motion incorporating the extent of their agreement, and, if desired, separate motions requesting those corrections to which they have been unable to agree. The Secretary, pursuant to delegation of authority by the Commission, is authorized to prepare and issue in the name of the Commission a brief ''Order Correcting Transcript'' whenever a joint motion to correct transcript is received.

(k) *Briefs of amicus curiae.* A brief of an amicus curiae may be filed by leave of the Commission granted on motion with notice to the parties or at the request of the Commission, except that such leave shall not be required when the brief is presented by an agency or officer of the United States; or by a State, territory, commonwealth, or the District of Columbia, or by an agency or officer of any of them. The brief may be conditionally filed with the motion for leave. A motion for leave shall

identify the interest of the applicant and state how a Commission decision in the matter would affect the applicant or persons it represents. The motion shall also state the reasons why a brief of an amicus curiae is desirable. Except as otherwise permitted by the Commission, an amicus curiae shall file its brief within the time allowed the parties whose position as to affirmance or reversal the amicus brief will support. The Commission shall grant leave for a later filing only for cause shown, in which event it shall specify within what period such brief must be filed. A motion for an amicus curiae to participate in oral argument will be granted only for extraordinary reasons.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 33 FR 7033, May 10, 1968; 41 FR 54486, Dec. 14, 1976; 42 FR 13540, Mar. 11, 1977; 42 FR 39977, Aug. 8, 1977; 50 FR 28096, July 10, 1985; 52 FR 22294, June 11, 1987]

### § 3.53 Review of initial decision in absence of appeal.

An order by the Commission placing a case on its own docket for review will set forth the scope of such review and the issues which will be considered and will make provision for the filing of briefs if deemed appropriate by the Commission.

### § 3.54 Decision on appeal or review.

(a) Upon appeal from or review of an initial decision, the Commission will consider such parts of the record as are cited or as may be necessary to resolve the issues presented and, in addition, will, to the extent necessary or desirable, exercise all the powers which it could have exercised if it had made the initial decision.

(b) In rendering its decision, the Commission will adopt, modify, or set aside the findings, conclusions, and rule or order contained in the initial decision, and will include in the decision a statement of the reasons or basis for its action and any concurring and dissenting opinions.

(c) In those cases where the Commission believes that it should have further information or additional views of the parties as to the form and content of the rule or order to be issued, the Commission, in its discretion, may withhold final action pending the receipt of such additional information or views.

(d) The order of the Commission disposing of adjudicative hearings under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER and, if it contains a rule or regulation, will specify the effective date thereof, which will not be prior to the ninetieth (90th) day after its publication unless the Commission finds that emergency conditions exist necessitating an earlier effective date, in which event the Commission will specify in the order its findings as to such conditions.

### § 3.55 Reconsideration.

Within fourteen (14) days after completion of service of a Commission decision, any party may file with the Commission a petition for reconsideration of such decision, setting forth the relief desired and the grounds in support thereof. Any petition filed under this subsection must be confined to new questions raised by the decision or final order and upon which the petitioner had no opportunity to argue before the Commission. Any party desiring to oppose such a petition shall file an answer thereto within ten (10) days after service upon him of the petition. The filing of a petition for reconsideration shall not operate to stay the effective date of the decision or order or to toll the running of any statutory time period affecting such decision or order unless specifically so ordered by the Commission.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 61 FR 50650, Sept. 26, 1996]

### § 3.56 Effective date of orders; application for stay.

(a) Other than consent orders, an order to cease and desist under section 5 of the FTC Act becomes effective upon the sixtieth day after service, except as provided in section 5(g)(3) of the FTC Act, and except for divestiture provisions, as provided in section 5(g)(4) of the FTC Act.

(b) Any party subject to a cease and desist order under section 5 of the FTC Act, other than a consent order, may apply to the Commission for a stay of all or part of that order pending judicial review. If, within 30 days after the

application was received by the Commission, the Commission either has denied or has not acted on the application, a stay may be sought in a court of appeals where a petition for review of the order is pending.

(c) An application for stay shall state the reasons a stay is warranted and the facts relied upon, and shall include supporting affidavits or other sworn statements, and a copy of the relevant portions of the record. The application shall address the likelihood of the applicant's success on appeal, whether the applicant will suffer irreparable harm if a stay is not granted, the degree of injury to other parties if a stay is granted, and why the stay is in the public interest.

(d) An application for stay shall be filed within 30 days of service of the order on the party. Such application shall be served in accordance with the provisions of § 4.4(b) of this part that are applicable to service in adjudicative proceedings. Any party opposing the application may file an answer within 5 business days after receipt of the application. The applicant may file a reply brief, limited to new matters raised by the answer, within 3 business days after receipt of the answer.

[60 FR 37748, July 21, 1995]

## Subpart G [Reserved]

## Subpart H—Reopening of Proceedings

### § 3.71 Authority.

Except while pending in a U.S. court of appeals on a petition for review (after the transcript of the record has been filed) or in the U.S. Supreme Court, a proceeding may be reopened by the Commission at any time in accordance with § 3.72. Any person subject to a Commission decision containing a rule or order which has become effective, or an order to cease and desist which has become final may file a request to reopen the proceeding in accordance with § 2.51.

[44 FR 40637, July 12, 1979]

### § 3.72 Reopening.

(a) *Before statutory review*. At any time prior to the expiration of the time allowed for filing a petition for review or prior to the filing of the transcript of the record of a proceeding in a U.S. court of appeals pursuant to a petition for review, the Commission may upon its own initiative and without prior notice to the parties reopen the proceeding and enter a new decision modifying or setting aside the whole or any part of the findings as to the facts, conclusions, rule, order, or opinion issued by the Commission in such proceeding.

(b) *After decision has become final.* (1) Whenever the Commission is of the opinion that changed conditions of fact or law or the public interest may require that a Commission decision containing a rule or order which has become effective, or an order to cease and desist which has become final by reason of court affirmance or expiration of the statutory period for court review without a petition for review having been filed, or a Commission decision containing an order dismissing a proceeding, should be altered, modified, or set aside in whole or in part, the Commission will, except as provided in § 2.51, serve upon each person subject to such decision (in the case of proceedings instituted under § 3.13, such service may be by publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER) an order to show cause, stating the changes it proposes to make in the decision and the reasons they are deemed necessary. Within thirty (30) days after service of such order to show cause, any person served may file an answer thereto. Any person not responding to the order within the time allowed may be deemed to have consented to the proposed changes.

(2) Whenever an order to show cause is not opposed, or if opposed but the pleadings do not raise issues of fact to be resolved, the Commission, in its discretion, may decide the matter on the order to show cause and answer thereto, if any, or it may serve upon the parties (in the case of proceedings instituted under § 3.13, such service may be by publication in FEDERAL REGISTER) a notice of hearing, setting forth the date when the cause will be heard. In such a case, the hearing will be limited to the filing of briefs and may include oral argument when deemed necessary by the Commission. When the pleadings raise substantial factual issues,

the Commission will direct such hearings as it deems appropriate, including hearings for the receipt of evidence by it or by an Administrative Law Judge. Unless otherwise ordered and insofar as practicable, hearings before an Administrative Law Judge to receive evidence shall be conducted in accordance with subparts B, C, D, and E of part 3 of this chapter. Upon conclusion of hearings before an Administrative Law Judge, the record and the Administrative Law Judge's recommendations shall be certified to the Commission for final disposition of the matter.

(3) *Termination of existing orders*—(i) *Generally*. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this rule, and except as provided in paragraphs (b)(3)(ii) and (iii) of this section, an order issued by the Commission before August 16, 1995, will be deemed, without further notice or proceedings, to terminate 20 years from the date on which the order was first issued, or on January 2, 1996, whichever is later.

(ii) *Exception*. This paragraph applies to the termination of an order issued before August 16, 1995, where a complaint alleging a violation of the order was or is filed (with or without an accompanying consent decree) in federal court by the United States or the Federal Trade Commission while the order remains in force, either on or after August 16, 1995, or within the 20 years preceding that date. If more than one complaint was or is filed while the order remains in force, the relevant complaint for purposes of this paragraph will be the latest filed complaint. An order subject to this paragraph will terminate 20 years from the date on which a court complaint described in this paragraph was or is filed, except as provided in the following sentence. If the complaint was or is dismissed, or a federal court rules or has ruled that the respondent did not violate any provision of the order, and the dismissal or ruling was or is not appealed, or was or is upheld on appeal, the order will terminate according to paragraph (b)(3)(i) of this section as though the complaint was never filed; provided, however, that the order will not terminate between the date that such complaint is filed and the later of the deadline for appealing such dismissal or ruling and the date such dismissal or ruling is upheld on appeal. The filing of a complaint described in this paragraph will not affect the duration of any order provision that has expired, or will expire, by its own terms. The filing of a complaint described in this paragraph also will not affect the duration of an order's application to any respondent that is not named in the complaint.

(iii) *Stay of Termination*. Any party to an order may seek to stay, in whole or part, the termination of the order as to that party pursuant to paragraph (b)(3)(i) or (ii) of this section. Petitions for such stays shall be filed in accordance with the procedures set forth in §2.51 of these rules. Such petitions shall be filed on or before the date on which the order would be terminated pursuant to paragraph (b)(3)(i) or (ii) of this section. Pending the disposition of such a petition, the order will be deemed to remain in effect without interruption.

(iv) *Orders not terminated*. Nothing in §3.72(b)(3) is intended to apply to *in camera* orders or other procedural or interlocutory rulings by an Administrative Law Judge or the Commission.

[32 FR 8449, June 13, 1967, as amended at 44 FR 40637, July 12, 1979; 45 FR 21623, Apr. 2, 1980; 60 FR 58515, Nov. 28, 1995]

## Subpart I—Recovery of Awards Under the Equal Access to Justice Act in Commission Proceedings

AUTHORITY: Sec. (a)(1), Pub. L. 96–481, 94 Stat. 2325 (5 U.S.C. 504(c)(1) and 5 U.S.C. 553(b)).

### §3.81 General provisions.

(a) *Purpose of these rules*. The Equal Access to Justice Act, 5 U.S.C. 504 (called "the Act" in this subpart), provides for the award of attorney fees and other expenses to eligible individuals and entities who are parties to adjudicative proceedings under part 3 of this title. An eligible party may receive an award when it prevails in the adjudicative proceeding, unless the Commission's position in the proceeding was substantially justified or special circumstances make an award unjust. Whether or not the position of the

agency was substantially justified shall be determined on the basis of the administrative record as a whole that is made in the adversary proceeding for which fees and other expenses are sought. The rules in this subpart describe the parties eligible for awards, how to apply for awards, and the procedures and standards that the Commission will use to make them.

(b) *When the Act applies.* The Act applies to any adjudicative proceeding pending before the Commission at any time after October 1, 1981. This includes proceedings begun before October 1, 1981, if final Commission action has not been taken before that date.

(c) *Proceedings covered.* (1) The Act applies to all adjudicative proceedings under this part 3 of the rules of practice as defined in Rule 3.2, except hearings relating to the promulgation, amendment, or repeal of rules under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.

(2) [Reserved]

(d) *Eligibility of applicants.* (1) To be eligible for an award of attorney fees and other expenses under the Act, the applicant must be a party to the adjudicative proceeding in which it seeks an award. The term *party* is defined in 5 U.S.C. 551(3). The applicant must show that it meets all conditions of eligibility set out in this subpart.

(2) The types of eligible applicants are as follows:

(i) An individual with a net worth of not more than $2 million;

(ii) The sole owner of an unincorporated business who has a net worth of not more than $7 million, including both personal and business interests, and not more than 500 employees;

(iii) A charitable or other tax-exempt organization described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code (26 U.S.C. 501(c)(3)) with not more than 500 employees;

(iv) A cooperative association as defined in section 15(a) of the Agricultural Marketing Act (12 U.S.C. 1141j(a)) with not more than 500 employees; and

(v) Any other partnership, corporation, association, unit of local government, or organization with a net worth of not more than $7 million and not more than 500 employees.

(3) For the purpose of eligibility, the new worth and number of employees of an applicant shall be determined as of the date the proceeding was initiated.

(4) An applicant who owns an unincorporated business will be considered as an ''individual'' rather than a ''sole owner of an unincorporated business'' if the issues on which the applicant prevails are related primarily to personal interests rather than to business interests.

(5) The employees of an applicant include all persons who regularly perform services for remuneration for the applicant, under the applicant's direction and control. Part-time employees shall be included on a proportional basis.

(6) The net worth and number of employees of the applicant and all of its affiliates shall be aggregated to determine eligibility. Any individual, corporation or other entity that directly or indirectly controls or owns a majority of the voting shares or other interest of the applicant, or any corporation or other entity of which the applicant directly or indirectly owns or controls a majority of the voting shares or other interest, will be considered an affiliate for purposes of this part, unless the Administrative Law Judge determines that such treatment would be unjust and contrary to the purposes of the Act in light of the actual relationship between the affiliated entities. In addition, the Administrative Law Judge may determine that financial relationships of the applicant other than those described in this paragraph constitute special circumstances that would make an award unjust.

(7) An applicant that participates in a proceeding primarily on behalf of one or more other persons or entities that would be ineligible is not itself eligible for an award.

(e) *Standards for awards.* (1) A prevailing applicant may receive an award for fees and expenses incurred in connection with an entire proceeding, or on a substantive portion of the proceeding that is sufficiently significant and discrete to merit treatment as a separate unit unless the position of the agency over which the applicant has prevailed was substantially justified. The burden of proof that an award should not be made to an eligible prevailing applicant is on complaint counsel, which

may avoid an award by showing that its position had a reasonable basis in law and fact.

(2) An award will be reduced or denied if the applicant has unduly or unreasonably protracted the proceeding or if special circumstances make the award sought unjust.

(f) *Allowable fees and expenses.* (1) Awards will be based on rates customarily charged by persons engaged in the business of acting as attorneys, agents and expert witnesses, even if the services were made available without charge or at a reduced rate to the applicant.

(2) No award for the fee of an attorney or agent under these rules may exceed $75.00 per hour. No award to compensate an expert witness may exceed the highest rate at which the Commission paid expert witnesses for similiar services at the time the fees were incurred. The appropriate rate may be obtained from the Office of the Executive Director. However, an award may also include the reasonable expenses of the attorney, agent, or witness as a separate item, if the attorney, agent or witness ordinarily charges clients separately for such expenses.

(3) In determining the reasonableness of the fee sought for an attorney, agent or expert witness, the Administrative Law Judge shall consider the following:

(i) If the attorney, agent or witness is in private practice, his or her customary fee for similar services, or, if an employee of the applicant, the fully allocated cost of the services;

(ii) The prevailing rate for similar services in the community in which the attorney, agent or witness ordinarily performs services;

(iii) The time actually spent in the representation of the applicant;

(iv) The time reasonably spent in light of the difficulty or complexity of the issues in the proceeding; and

(v) Such other factors as may bear on the value of the services provided.

(4) The reasonable cost of any study, analysis, engineering report, test, project or similar matter prepared on behalf of a party may be awarded, to the extent that the charge for the service does not exceed the prevailing rate for similar services, and the study or other matter was necessary for preparation of the applicant's case.

(g) *Rulemaking on maximum rates for attorney fees.* If warranted by an increase in the cost of living or by special circumstances (such as limited availability of attorneys qualified to handle certain types of proceedings), this agency may, upon its own initiative or on petition of any interested person or group, adopt regulations providing that attorney fees may be awarded at a rate higher than $75 per hour in some or all of the types of proceedings covered by this part. Rulemaking under this provision will be in accordance with Rules of Practice part 1, subpart C of this chapter.

[46 FR 48910, Oct. 5, 1981, as amended at 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985]

### § 3.82 Information required from applicants.

(a) *Contents of application.* An application for an award of fees and expenses under the Act shall contain the following:

(1) Identity of the applicant and the proceeding for which the award is sought;

(2) A showing that the applicant has prevailed;

(3) Identification of the Commission position(s) that applicant alleges was (were) not substantially justified;

(4) A brief description of the type and purpose of the organization or business (unless the applicant is an individual);

(5) A statement of how the applicant meets the criteria of § 3.81(d);

(6) The amount of fees and expenses sought;

(7) Any other matters the applicant wishes the Commission to consider in determining whether and in what amount an award should be made;

(8) A written verification under oath or under penalty or perjury that the information provided is true and correct accompanied by the signature of the applicant or an authorized officer or attorney.

(b) *Net worth exhibit.* (1) Each applicant except a qualified tax-exempt organization or cooperative association must provide with its application a detailed exhibit showing the net worth of the application and any affiliates (as

defined in § 3.81(d)(6)) when the proceeding was initiated. The exhibit may be in any form convenient to the applicant that provides full disclosure of the applicant's and its affiliates' assets and liabilities and is sufficient to determine whether the applicant qualifies under the standards in this part. The Administrative Law Judge may require an applicant to file additional information to determine its eligibility for an award.

(2) Ordinarily, the net worth exhibit will be included in the public record of the proceeding. However, an applicant that objects to public disclosure of information in any portion of the exhibit and believes there are legal grounds for withholding it from disclosure may submit that portion of the exhibit directly to the Administrative Law Judge in a sealed envelope labeled ''Confidential Financial Information,'' accompanied by a motion to withhold the information from public disclosure. The motion shall describe the information sought to be withheld and explain, in detail, why it falls within one or more of the specific exemptions from mandatory disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. 552(b)(1) through (9), why public disclosure of the information would adversely affect the applicant, and why disclosure is not required in the public interest. The material in question shall be served on complaint counsel but need not be served on any other party to the proceeding. If the Administrative Law Judge finds that the information should not be withheld from disclosure, it shall be placed in the public record of the proceeding. Otherwise, any request to inspect or copy the exhibit shall be disposed of in accordance with Rule 4.11.

(c) *Documentation of fees and expenses.* The application shall be accompanied by full documentation of the fees and expenses, including the cost of any study, analysis, engineering report, test, project or similar matter, for which an award is sought. A separate itemized statement shall be submitted for each professional firm or individual whose services are covered by the application, showing the hours spent in connection with the proceeding by each individual, a description of the specific services performed, the rate at which each fee has been computed, any expenses for which reimbursement is sought, the total amount claimed, and the total amount paid or payable by the applicant or by any other person or entity for the services provided. The Administrative Law Judge may require the applicant to provide vouchers, receipts, or other substantiation for any expenses claimed.

(d) *When an application may be filed.* (1) An application may be filed whenever the applicant has prevailed in the entire proceeding or on a substantive portion of the proceeding that is sufficiently significant and discrete to merit treatment as a separate unit, but in no case later than 30 days after the Commission's final disposition of the proceeding.

(2) If review or reconsideration is sought or taken of a decision as to which an applicant believes it has prevailed, proceedings for the award of fees shall be stayed pending final disposition of the underlying controversy.

(3) For purposes of this rule, final disposition means the later of:

(i) The date on which the initial decision of the Administrative Law Judge becomes the decision of the Commission pursuant to § 3.51(a);

(ii) Issuance of an order disposing of any petitions for reconsideration of the Commission's final order in the proceeding;

(iii) If no petition for reconsideration is filed, the last date on which such petition could have been filed pursuant to § 3.55; or

(iv) Issuance of a final order or any other final resolution of a proceeding, such as a consent agreement, settlement or voluntary dismissal, which is not subject to a petition for reconsideration.

[46 FR 48910, Oct. 5, 1981]

### § 3.83 Procedures for considering applicants.

(a) *Filing and service of documents.* Any application for an award or other pleading or document related to an application shall be filed and served on all parties as specified in §§ 4.2 and 4.4(b), except as provided in § 3.82(b)(2) for confidential financial information.

(b) *Answer to application.* (1) Within 30 days after service of an application, complaint counsel may file an answer to the application. Unless complaint counsel requests an extension of time for filing or files a statement of intent to negotiate under paragraph (b)(2) of this section, failure to file an answer within the 30-day period may be treated as a consent to the award requested.

(2) If complaint counsel and the applicant believe that the issues in the fee application can be settled, they may jointly file a statement of their intent to negotiate a settlement. The filing of this statement shall extend the time for filing an answer for an additional 30 days, and further extensions may be granted by the Administrative Law Judge upon request by complaint counsel and the applicant.

(3) The answer shall explain in detail any objections to the award requested and identify the facts relied on in support of complaint counsel's position. If the answer is based on any alleged facts not already in the record of the proceeding, complaint counsel shall include with the answer either supporting affidavits or a request for further proceedings under paragraph (f) of this section.

(c) *Reply.* Within 15 days after service of an answer, the applicant may file a reply. If the reply is based on any alleged facts not already in the record of the proceeding, the applicant shall include with the reply either supporting affidavits or a request for further proceedings under paragraph (f) of this section.

(d) *Comments by other parties.* Any party to a proceeding other than the applicant and complaint counsel may file comments on an application within 30 days after it is served or on an answer within 15 days after it is served. A commenting party may not participate further in proceedings on the application unless the Administrative Law Judge determines that the public interest requires such participation in order to permit full exploration of matters raised in the comments.

(e) *Settlement.* The applicant and complaint counsel may agree on a proposed settlement of the award before final action on the application. A proposed award settlement entered into in connection with a consent agreement covering the underlying proceeding will be considered in accordance with § 3.25. The Commission may request findings of fact or recommendations on the award settlement from the Administrative Law Judge. A proposed award settlement entered into after the underlying proceeding has been concluded will be considered and may be approved or disapproved by the Administrative Law Judge subject to Commission review under paragraph (h) of this section. If a prevailing party and complaint counsel agree on a proposed settlement of an award before an application has been filed, the application shall be filed with the proposed settlement.

(f) *Further proceedings.* (1) Ordinarily, the determination of an award will be made on the basis of the written record. However, on request of either the applicant or complaint counsel, or on his or her own initiative, the Administrative Law Judge may order further proceedings, such as an informal conference, oral argument, additional written submissions or an evidentiary hearing. Such further proceedings shall be held only when necessary for full and fair resolution of the issues arising from the application, and shall be conducted as promptly as possible.

(2) A request that the Administrative Law Judge order further proceedings under this section shall specifically identify the information sought or the disputed issues and shall explain why the additional proceedings are necessary to resolve the issues.

(g) *Decision.* The Administrative Law Judge shall issue an initial decision on the application within 30 days after completion of proceedings on the application. The decision shall include written findings and conclusions on the applicant's eligibility and status as a prevailing party, and an explanation of the reasons for any difference between the amount requested and the amount awarded. The decision shall also include, if at issue, findings on whether the agency's position was substantially justified, whether the applicant unduly protracted the proceedings, or whether special circumstances make an award unjust.

(h) *Agency review.* Either the applicant or complaint counsel may seek review of the initial decision on the fee application, or the Commission may decide to review the decision on its own initiative, in accordance with §3.53. If neither the applicant nor complaint counsel seeks review and the Commission does not take review on its own initiative, the initial decision on the application shall become a final decision of the Commission 30 days after it is issued. Whether to review a decision is a matter within the discretion of the Commission. If review is taken, the Commission will issue a final decision on the application or remand the application to the Administrative Law Judge for further proceedings.

(i) *Judical review.* Judicial review of final Commission decisions on awards may be sought as provided in 5 U.S.C. 503(c)(2).

(j) *Payment of award.* An applicant seeking payment of an award shall submit to the Secretary of the Commission a copy of the Commission's final decision granting the award, accompanied by a statement that the applicant will not seek review of the decision in the United States courts. The agency will pay the amount awarded to the applicant within 60 days, unless judicial review of the award or of the underlying decision of the adjudicative proceeding has been sought by the applicant or any other party to the proceeding.

[46 FR 48910, Oct. 5, 1981, as amended at 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985]

## PART 4—MISCELLANEOUS RULES

Sec.

4.1 Appearances.
4.2 Requirements as to form, and filing of documents other than correspondence.
4.3 Time.
4.4 Service.
4.5 Fees.
4.6 Cooperation with other agencies.
4.7 Ex parte communications.
4.8 Costs for obtaining Commission records.
4.9 The public record.
4.10 Nonpublic material.
4.11 Disclosure requests.
4.12 Disposition of documents submitted to the Commission.
4.13 Privacy Act rules.
4.14 Conduct of business.
4.15 Commission meetings.
4.16 Privilege against self-incrimination.
4.17 Disqualification of Commissioners.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 6, 38 Stat. 721; 15 U.S.C. 46.

### §4.1 Appearances.

(a) *Qualifications*—(1) *Attorneys.* (i) U.S.-admitted. Members of the bar of a Federal court or of the highest court of any State or Territory of the United States are eligible to practice before the Commission.

(ii) European Community (EC)-qualified. Persons who are qualified to practice law in a Member State of the European Community and authorized to practice before The Commission of the European Communities in accordance with Regulation No. 99/63/EEC are eligible to practice before the Commission.

(iii) Any attorney desiring to appear before the Commission or an Administrative Law Judge may be required to show to the satisfaction of the Commission or the Administrative Law Judge his or her acceptability to act in that capacity.

(2) *Others.* (i) Any individual or member of a partnership involved in any proceeding or investigation may appear on behalf or himself or of such partnership upon adequate identification. A corporation or association may be represented by a bona fide officer thereof upon a showing of adequate authorization.

(ii) At the request of counsel representing any party in an adjudicative proceeding, the Administrative Law Judge may permit an expert witness to conduct all or a portion of the cross-examination of such witness.

(b) *Restrictions as to former members and employees.* (1) Except as provided in this section or otherwise specifically authorized by the Commission, no former member or employee of the Commission shall appear as attorney or counsel or otherwise participate through any form of professional consultation or assistance:

(i) In any proceeding or investigation, formal or informal,

(A) If such proceeding or investigation was itself pending in the Commission while the former member or employee served with the Commission;

(B) If an investigation from which such proceeding or investigation directly resulted was pending during such service; or

(C) If such former member or employee, during the course of his service with the Commission, gained personal knowledge of nonpublic documents or information containing specific criteria for the initiation of future investigations or cases pertaining to a practice involved in the proceeding or investigation, and if the participation by the former member or employee would occur within three (3) years of the termination of his service with the Commission; or

(ii) In an investigation of compliance with an order, submission of a request to reopen an order, or a proceeding with respect to reopening of an order, if the former member or employee participated personally and substantially in the adjudicative proceeding or investigation that resulted in such order.

(2) In cases to which paragraph (b)(1) of this section is applicable, a former member or employee of the Commission may request authorization to appear or participate in a proceeding or investigation by filing with the Secretary of the Commission a written application therefor, disclosing the following information, to the extent known:

(i) The nature and extent of the former member's or employee's participation in, knowledge of, and connection with the proceeding or investigation during his service with the Commission;

(ii) In the case of applications filed pursuant to paragraph (b)(1)(i)(B), (b)(1)(ii), or (b)(1)(iii) of this section, the nature and extent of the former member's or employee's participation in, knowledge of, and connection with the predecessor investigation, adjudication or investigation, or rulemaking proceeding, respectively, during his service with the Commission;

(iii) Whether documents or information concerning the proceeding or investigation came to his attention and, if so, the nature of such documents or information;

(iv) Whether he was employed in the same bureau, office, division, or other administrative unit in which the proceeding or investigation is or has been pending; (v) whether he worked directly or in close association with Commission personnel assigned to the proceeding or investigation; and

(vi) Whether during his service with the commission he was engaged in any matter concerning the individual, company, industry, or any member of the industry involved in the proceeding or investigation.

(3) The requested authorization will not be given in any case:

(i) Where it appears that the former member or employee during his service with the Commission participated personally and substantially in the proceeding or investigation;

(ii) Where the application is filed within two (2) years after termination of the former member's or employee's service with the Commission and it appears that within a period of one (1) year prior to the termination of his service the former member or employee was officially responsible for the proceeding or investigation; or

(iii) Where documents or information of the kind delineated in § 4.10(a) pertaining to the proceeding or investigation for which authorization is sought came to the attention of the former member or employee or would be likely to have come to his attention in the course of his duties, unless the Commission finds that the nature of the documents or information is such that no present advantage could thereby be derived.

(4) Notwithstanding any other provision of this section, no former member of the Commission and no former senior employee in a position designated by the Office of Government Ethics pursuant to 18 U.S.C. 207(d) shall, for a period of one (1) year after termination of the former member's or employee's service in that position, appear as attorney or counsel or otherwise represent anyone (other than the United States) in any formal or informal appearance before the Commission in any proceeding or investigation or, with the intent to influence, make any oral or written communication on behalf of anyone in any proceeding or investigation which is before the Commission or in which the Commission has a direct and substantial interest.

(5) The General Counsel shall have the authority (i) to determine whether, under paragraph (b)(1) of this section, a request for authorization to appear or participate need be filed and (ii) to grant any such request. In any case in which the General Counsel proposes that a request be denied, he shall refer the request to the Commission for determination, and in other unusual or difficult cases he may, in his sole discretion, refer a request to the Commission for determination.

(6)(i) The General Counsel shall:

(A) Within three (3) working days of receipt of an oral or written request for a determination whether, under paragraph (b)(1) of this section, a request for authorization to appear or participate need be filed, render such determination and

(B) Within fifteen (15) working days of the receipt of a request for authorization to appear or participate, either grant such request or refer it to the Commission.

(ii) The Commission shall, within fifteen (15) working days of the receipt of a request referred by the General Counsel pursuant to paragraph (b)(5) of this section either grant or deny such request.

(iii)(A) The Commission or the General Counsel may, by written notice to the requester, and for good cause, extend the time limit for a determination by not more than fifteen (15) working days.

(B) Any time limit specified in this paragraph shall be tolled during such time as may elapse between a request by the Commission or General Counsel to the former member or employee for additional information and the receipt of such information by the Commission or General Counsel.

(7)(i) Paragraphs (b)(1), (b)(2), (b)(3) and (b)(4) of this section shall not apply to:

(A) Pro se filings of any kind;

(B) Submissions of requests or appeals under the Freedom of Information Act, Privacy Act, or Government in the Sunshine Act;

(C) Testimony under oath;

(D) Submissions of statements required to be made under penalty of perjury;

(E) Submissions of statements based on the former member's or employee's own special knowledge in the particular area that is the subject of the statement, provided that no compensation is thereby received, other than that regularly provided by law or by § 4.5 for witnesses; and

(F) Appearances on behalf of the United States.

(ii) Paragraphs (b)(1), (b)(2), and (b)(3) shall not apply to:

(A) Submissions of comments on a matter on which the Commission has invited public comment; and

(B) Filings of premerger notification forms or participation in subsequent events concerning compliance or noncompliance with section 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18a, or any regulations issued pursuant to that section.

(8)(i) In any case in which a former member or employee of the Commission is prohibited under paragraph (b)(3)(i) of this section from appearing or participating in a Commission proceeding or investigation, no partner or legal or business associate of such former member or employee shall appear or participate in such proceeding or investigation, except as provided in this paragraph.

(ii) If a partner or legal or business associate of a former member or employee of the Commission prohibited under paragraph (b)(3)(i) of this section from appearing or participating in a Commission proceeding or investigation wishes to appear or participate in such proceeding or investigation, he shall file with the Secretary of the Commission, not later than the time such appearance or participation begins, an affidavit attesting: (A) That the former member or employee will not participate in the proceeding or investigation in any way, directly or indirectly; (B) that he will not share, directly or indirectly, in any fees in the proceeding or investigation; (C) that all persons who intend to appear or participate are aware of the requirement that the former member or employee be screened from participating in or discussing the proceeding or investigation, or the firm's representation, and describing the procedures being taken to screen the personally

disqualified former member or employee; (D) that the client or clients have been so informed; and (E) that the matter was not brought to such partner or legal or business associate through the active solicitation of the former member or employee.

(iii) Upon the filing of the affidavit, such partner or legal or business associate may begin such appearance or participation, *Provided, however,* That if the Commission finds (A) that the screening measures being taken are unsatisfactory or (B) that the matter was brought to such partner or legal or business associate through the active solicitation of the former member or employee, and so notifies such partner or legal or business associate, such appearance or representation shall cease immediately.

(9)(i) The restrictions and procedures in this subsection are intended to apply in lieu of restrictions and procedures as may be adopted by the appropriate authority in any state or jurisdiction, insofar as such restrictions and procedures apply to appearances or participation in Commission proceedings or investigations: *Provided, however,* That nothing in this section supersedes other standards of ethical conduct required under paragraph (e) of this section.

(ii) In the event that Commission approval is sought for an appearance or participation by a former member or employee in a proceeding in court or before another agency, the General Counsel shall have the authority to respond to such a request, applying as appropriate the standards of this paragraph (b)(9)(ii).

(c) *Public disclosure.* All applications requesting authorization to appear or participate in a proceeding or investigation, and the Commission's responses thereto, are part of the public records of the Commission, except for information exempt from disclosure under §4.10(a) of this chapter. Information identifying the subject of a nonpublic Commission investigation will be redacted from all applications and responses before they are placed on the public record.

(d) *Notice of appearance.* Any attorney desiring to appear before the Commission or an Administrative Law Judge on behalf of a person or party shall file with the Secretary of the Commission a written notice of appearance, stating the basis for eligibility under this section and including the attorney's jurisdiction of admission/qualification, attorney identification number, if applicable, and a statement by the appearing attorney attesting to his/her good standing within the legal profession. No other application shall be required for admission to practice, and no register of attorneys will be maintained.

(e) *Standards of conduct; disbarment.* (1) All attorneys practicing before the Commission shall conform to the standards of ethical conduct required by the bars of which the attorneys are members.

(2) If for good cause shown, the Commission shall be of the opinion that any attorney is not conforming to such standards, or that he has been otherwise guilty of conduct warranting disciplinary action, the Commission may issue an order requiring such attorney to show cause why he should not be suspended or disbarred from practice before the Commission. The alleged offender shall be granted due opportunity to be heard in his own defense and may be represented by counsel. Thereafter, if warranted by the facts, the Commission may issue against the attorney an order of reprimand, suspension, or disbarment.

[32 FR 8456, June 13, 1967, as amended at 40 FR 15235, Apr. 4, 1975; 41 FR 16453, Apr. 19, 1976; 46 FR 26295, May 12, 1981; 48 FR 44767, Sept. 30, 1983; 50 FR 50781, Dec. 12, 1985; 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985; 56 FR 44139, Sept. 27, 1991; 58 FR 40737, July 30, 1993]

### § 4.2 Requirements as to form, and filing of documents other than correspondence.

(a) *Filing.* (1) Except as otherwise provided, all documents submitted to the Commission, including those addressed to the Administrative Law Judge, shall be filed with the Secretary of the Commission; *Provided, however,* That in any instance informal applications or requests may be submitted directly to the official in charge of any office of the Commission or to the appropriate Director, Deputy Director, Associate Director in the Bureau of Consumer Protection, or Assistant Director in

the Bureau of Competition or to the Administrative Law Judge. Copies of all documents filed with the Secretary of the Commission by parties in adjudicative proceedings shall, at or before the time of filing, be served by the party filing the documents or person acting for that party on all other parties pursuant to § 4.4.

(2) Documents submitted to the Commission in response to a Civil Investigative Demand under section 20 of the FTC Act shall be filed with the custodian or deputy custodian named in the demand.

(b) *Title.* Documents shall clearly show the file or docket number and title of the action in connection with which they are filed.

(c) *Copies.* An original and twenty (20) copies of all documents before the Commission and motions for an Administrative Law Judge's certification of an interlocutory appeal pursuant to § 3.23(b) shall be filed; an original and ten (10) copies of all other documents before the Administrative Law Judge shall be filed; and an original and one (1) copy of compliance reports shall be filed. Only one (1) copy of admissions and answers thereto must be filed with the Secretary, the originals to be served on the opposing party as specified by § 3.32. With respect to motions under § 3.22, the moving party shall provide a copy of its motion to the Administrative Law Judge at the time the motion is filed with the Secretary.

(d) *Form.* (1) Documents filed with the Secretary of the Commission, other than briefs in support of appeals from initial decisions, shall be printed, typewritten, or otherwise processed in permanent form and on good unglazed paper. A motion or other paper filed in an adjudicative proceeding shall contain a caption setting forth the title of the case, the docket number, and a brief descriptive title indicating the purpose of the paper.

(2) Briefs filed on an appeal from an initial decision shall be in the form prescribed by § 3.52(e).

(3) If printed, documents shall be on good unglazed paper seven (7) inches by ten (10) inches. The type shall not be less than ten (10) point adequately leaded. Citations and quotations shall not be less than ten (10) point single leaded, and footnotes shall not be less than eight (8) point single leaded. The printed line shall not exceed four and three-quarter (4¾) inches in length.

(4) If typewritten, documents shall be on paper not less than eight (8) inches nor more than eight and one-half (8½) inches by not less than ten and one-half (10½) inches nor more than eleven (11) inches.

(5) All documents must be bound on the left side. Except for printed documents, the left margin of each page must be at least one and one-half (1½) inches and the right margin at least one (1) inch.

(e) *Signature.* (1) The original of each document filed shall have a hand signed signature by an attorney of record for the party, or in the case of parties not represented by counsel, by the party itself, or by a partner if a partnership, or by an officer of the party if it is a corporation or an unincorporated association. In addition, motions filed pursuant to § 3.22 shall include the name, address, and telephone number of counsel.

(2) Signing a document constitutes a representation by the signer that he has read it, that to the best of his knowledge, information, and belief, the statements made in it are true, and that it is not interposed for delay. If a document is not signed or is signed with intent to defeat the purpose of this section, it may be stricken as sham and false and the proceeding may go forward as though the document had not been filed.

[32 FR 8456, June 13, 1967, as amended at 40 FR 59725, Dec. 30, 1975; 42 FR 30150, June 13, 1977; 45 FR 36344, May 29, 1980; 47 FR 7826, Feb. 23, 1982; 48 FR 41376, Sept. 15, 1983; 50 FR 28097, July 10, 1985; 61 FR 50650, Sept. 26, 1996]

### § 4.3 Time.

(a) *Computation.* Computation of any period of time prescribed or allowed by the rules in this chapter, by order of the Commission or an Administrative Law Judge, or by any applicable statute, shall begin with the first business day following that on which the act, event, or development initiating such period of time shall have occurred. When the last day of the period so computed is a Saturday, Sunday, or national holiday, or other day on which

the office of the Commission is closed, the period shall run until the end of the next following business day. When such period of time, with the intervening Saturdays, Sundays, and national holidays counted, is seven (7) days or less, each of the Saturdays, Sundays, and such holidays shall be excluded from the computation. When such period of time, with the intervening Saturdays, Sundays, and national holidays counted, exceeds seven (7) days, each of the Saturdays, Sundays, and such holidays shall be included in the computation.

(b) *Extensions.* For good cause shown, the Administrative Law Judge may, in any proceeding before him, extend any time limit prescribed or allowed by the rules in this chapter or by order of the Commission or the Administrative Law Judge, except those governing the filing of interlocutory appeals and initial decisions and those expressly requiring Commission action. Except as otherwise provided by law, the Commission, for good cause shown, may extend any time limit prescribed by the rules in this chapter or by order of the Commission or an Administrative Law Judge: *Provided, however,* That in a proceeding pending before an Administrative Law Judge, any motion on which he may properly rule shall be made to him. Notwithstanding the above, where a motion to extend is made after the expiration of the specified period, the Administrative Law Judge or the Commission may consider the motion where the untimely filing was the result of excusable neglect.

(c) *Additional time after service by mail.* Whenever a party in an adjudicative proceeding under part 3 of the rules is required or permitted to do an act within a prescribed period after service of a paper upon it and the paper is served by first-class mail pursuant to § 4.4(a)(3) or § 4.4(b), 3 days shall be added to the prescribed period.

[32 FR 8456, June 13, 1967, as amended at 42 FR 30150, June 13, 1977; 50 FR 28097, July 10, 1985; 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985]

### § 4.4 Service.

(a) *By the Commission.* (1) Service of complaints, initial decisions, final orders and other processes of the Commission under 15 U.S.C. 45 may be effected as follows:

(i) *By registered or certified mail.* A copy of the document shall be addressed to the person, partnership, corporation or unincorporated association to be served at his, her or its residence or principal office or place of business, registered or certified, and mailed; service under this provision is complete upon delivery of the document by the Post Office; or

(ii) *By delivery to an individual.* A copy therof may be delivered to the person to be served, or to a member of the partnership to be served, or to the president, secretary, or other executive officer or a director of the corporation or unincorporated association to be served; service under this provision is complete upon delivery as specified herein; or

(iii) *By delivery to an address.* A copy thereof may be left at the principal office or place of business of the person, partnership, corporation, or unincorporated association, or it may be left at the residence of the person or of a member of the partnership or of an executive officer or director of the corporation, or unincorporated association to be served; service under this provision is complete upon delivery as specified herein.

(2) All other orders and notices, including subpoenas, orders requiring access, orders to file annual and special reports, and notices of default, may be served by any method reasonably certain to inform the affected person, partnership, corporation or unincorporated association, including any method specified in paragraph (a)(1), except that civil investigative demands may only be served in the manner provided by section 20(c)(7) of the FTC Act (in the case of service on a partnership, corporation, association, or other legal entity) or section 20(c)(8) of the FTC Act (in the case of a natural person). Service under this provision is complete upon delivery by the Post Office or upon personal delivery.

(3) All documents served in adjudicative proceedings under part 3 of the Commission's Rules of Practice other than complaints and initial, interlocutory, and final decisions and orders may be served by personal delivery or

by first-class mail and shall be deemed served on the day of personal delivery or the day of mailing.

(4) When a party has appeared in a proceeding by an attorney, service on that individual of any document pertaining to the proceeding other than a complaint shall be deemed service upon the party. However, service of those documents specified in paragraph (a)(1) of this section shall first be attempted in accordance with the provision of paragraphs (a)(1) (i), (ii), and (iii) of this section.

(b) *By other parties.* Service of documents by parties other than the Commission shall be by delivering copies thereof as follows: Upon the Commission, by personal delivery or delivery by first-class mail to the Office of the Secretary of the Commission and, in adjudicative proceedings under part 3 of the Commission's Rules of Practice, to the Assistant Director in the Bureau of Competition, the Associate Director in the Bureau of Consumer Protection, or the Director of the Regional Office of complaint counsel. Upon a party other than the Commission or Commission counsel, service shall be by personal delivery or delivery by first-class mail. If the party is an individual or partnership, delivery shall be to such individual or a member of the partnership; if a corporation or unincorporated association, to an officer or agent authorized to accept service of process therefor. Personal service includes handling the document to be served to the individual, partner, officer, or agent; leaving it at his or her office with a person in charge thereof; or, if there is no one in charge or if the office is closed or if the party has no office, leaving it at his or her dwelling house or usual place of abode with some person of suitable age and discretion then residing therein. Documents served in adjudicative proceedings under part 3 of the Commission's Rules of Practice shall be deemed served on the day of personal service or the day of mailing. All other documents shall be deemed served on the day of personal service or on the day of delivery by the Post Office.

(c) *Proof of service.* In an adjudicative proceeding under part 3 of the Commission's Rules of Practice, papers presented for filing by a party respondent or intervenor shall contain an acknowledgment of service by the person served or proof of service in the form of a statement of the date and manner of service and of the names of the person served, certified by the person who made service. Proof of service may appear on or be affixed to the papers filed.

[50 FR 28097, July 10, 1985]

### § 4.5 Fees.

(a) *Deponents and witnesses.* Any person compelled to appear in person in response to subpoena shall be paid the same fees and mileage as are paid witnesses in the courts of the United States.

(b) *Presiding officers.* Officers before whom depositions are taken shall be entitled to the same fees as are paid for like services in the courts of the United States.

(c) *Responsibility.* The fees and mileage referred to in this section shall be paid by the party at whose instance deponents or witnesses appear.

[32 FR 8456, June 13, 1967]

### § 4.6 Cooperation with other agencies.

It is the policy of the Commission to cooperate with other governmental agencies to avoid unnecessary overlapping or duplication of regulatory functions.

[32 FR 8456, June 13, 1967]

### § 4.7 Ex parte communications.

(a) *Definitions.* For purposes of this section, *ex parte communication* means an oral or written communication not on the public record with respect to which reasonable prior notice to all parties is not given, but it shall not include requests for status reports on any matter or proceeding.

(b) *Prohibited ex parte communications.* While a proceeding is in adjudicative status within the Commission, except to the extent required for the disposition of *ex parte* matters as authorized by law:

(1) No person not employed by the Commission, and no employee or agent of the Commission who performs investigative or prosecuting functions in adjudicative proceedings, shall make or

knowingly cause to be made to any member of the Commission, or to the Administrative Law Judge, or to any other employee who is or who reasonably may be expected to be involved in the decisional process in the proceeding, an ex parte communciation relevant to the merits of that or a factually related proceeding; and

(2) No member of the Commission, the Administrative Law Judge, or any other employee who is or who reasonably may be expected to be involved in the decisional process in the proceeding, shall make or knowingly cause to be made to any person not employed by the Commission, or to any employee or agent of the Commission who performs investigative or prosecuting functions in adjudicative proceedings, an *ex parte* communication relevant to the merits of that or a factually related proceeding.

(c) *Procedures.* A Commissioner, the Administrative Law Judge or any other employee who is or who may reasonably be expected to be involved in the decisional process who receives or who make or knowingly causes to be made, a communication prohibited by paragraph (b) of this section shall promptly provide to the Secretary of the Commission:

(1) All such written communications;

(2) Memoranda stating the substance of and circumstances of all such oral communications; and

(3) All written responses, and memoranda stating the substance of all oral responses, to the materials described in paragraphs (c)(1) and (2) of this section. The Secretary shall make relevant portions of any such materials part of the public record of the Commission, pursuant to §4.9, and place them in the docket binder of the proceeding to which it pertains, but they will not be considered by the Commission as part of the record for purposes of decision unless introduced into evidence in the proceeding. The Secretary shall also send copies of the materials to or otherwise notify all parties to the proceeding.

(d) *Sanctions.* (1) Upon receipt of an ex parte communication knowingly made or knowingly caused to be made by a party and prohibited by paragraph (b) of this section, the Commission, Administrative Law Judge, or other employee presiding over the proceeding may, to the extent consistent with the interests of justice and the policy of the underlying statutes administered by the Commission, require the party to show cause why his claim or interest in the proceeding should not be dismissed, denied, disregarded, or otherwise adversely affected on account of such violation. The Commission may take such action as it considers appropriate, including but not limited to, action under §4.1(e)(2) and 5 U.S.C. 556(d).

(2) A person, not a party to the proceeding who knowingly makes or causes to be made an ex parte communication prohibited by paragraph (b) of this section shall be subject to all sanctions provided herein if he subsequently becomes a party to the proceeding.

(e) The prohibitions of this section shall apply in an adjudicative proceeding from the time the Commission votes to issue a complaint pursuant to §3.11, to conduct adjudicative hearings pursuant to §3.13, or to issue an order to show cause pursuant to §3.72(b), or from the time an order by a U.S. court of appeals remanding a Commission decision and order for further proceedings becomes effective, until the time the Commission votes to enter its decision in the proceeding and the time permitted by §3.55 to seek reconsideration of that decision has elapsed. For purposes of this section, an order of remand by a U.S. court of appeals shall be deemed to become effective when the Commission determines not to file a petition for a writ of *certiorari,* or when the time for filing such a petition has expired without a petition having been filed, or when such a petition has been denied. If a petition for reconsideration of a Commission decision is filed pursuant to §3.55, the provisions of this section shall apply until the time the Commission votes to enter an order disposing of the petition. In addition, the prohibitions of this section shall apply with respect to communications concerning an application for stay filed with the Commission pursuant to §3.56 from the time that the application is filed until its disposition.

(f) The prohibitions of paragraph (b) of this section do not apply to a communication occasioned by and concerning a nonadjudicative function of the Commission, including such functions as the initiation, conduct, or disposition of a separate investigation, the issuance of a complaint, or the initiation of a rulemaking or other proceeding, whether or not it involves a party already in an adjudicative proceeding; preparations for judicial review of a Commission order; a proceeding outside the scope of § 3.2, including a matter in state or federal court or before another governmental agency; a nonadjudicative function of the Commission, including but not limited to an obligation under § 4.11 or a communication with Congress; or the disposition of a consent settlement under § 3.25 concerning some or all of the charges involved in a complaint and executed by some or all respondents. The Commission, at its discretion and under such restrictions as it may deem appropriate, may disclose to the public or to respondent(s) in a pending adjudicative proceeding a communication made exempt by this paragraph from the prohibitions of paragraph (b) of this section, however, when the Commission determines that the interests of justice would be served by the disclosure. The prohibitions of paragraph (b) of this section also do not apply to a communication between any member of the Commission, the Administrative Law Judge, or any other employee who is or who reasonably may be expected to be involved in the decisional process, and any employee who has been directed by the Commission or requested by an individual Commissioner or Administrative Law Judge to assist in the decision of the adjudicative proceeding. Such employee shall not, however, have performed an investigative or prosecuting function in that or a factually related proceeding.

[42 FR 43974, Sept. 1, 1977, as amended at 44 FR 40637, July 12, 1979; 46 FR 32435, June 23, 1981; 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985; 51 FR 36802, Oct. 16, 1986; 57 FR 10805, Mar. 31, 1992; 60 FR 37748, July 21, 1995; 60 FR 67325, Dec. 29, 1995]

**§ 4.8 Costs for obtaining Commission records.**

(a) *Definitions.* For the purpose of this section:

(1) The term *search* includes all time spent looking for material that is responsive to a request, including page-by-page or line-by-line identification of material within documents.

(2) The term *duplication* refers to the process of making a copy of a document in order to respond to a request for Commission records.

(3) The term *review* refers to the examination of documents located in response to a request to determine whether any portion of such documents may be withheld, and the reduction or other processing of documents for disclosure. Review does not include time spent resolving general legal or policy issues regarding the release of the document.

(4) The term *direct costs* means expenditures that the Commission actually incurs in processing requests. Not included in direct costs are overhead expenses such as costs of document review facilities or the costs of heating or lighting such a facility or other facilities in which records are stored. The direct costs of specific services are set forth in § 4.8(b)(6).

(b) *Fees.* User fees pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 483(a) and 5 U.S.C. 552(a) shall be charged according to this paragraph.

(1) *Commercial use requesters.* Commercial use requesters will be charged for the direct costs to search for, review, and duplicate documents. A commercial use requester is a requester who seeks information for a use or purpose that furthers the commercial, trade, or profit interests of the requester or the person on whose behalf the request is made.

(2) *Educational requesters, non-commercial scientific institution requesters, and representative of the news media.* Requesters in these categories will be charged for the direct costs to duplicate documents, excluding charges for the first 100 pages. An *educational institution* is a preschool, a public or private elementary or secondary school, an institution of graduate higher education, an institution of undergraduate higher

education, an institution of professional education, and an institution of vocational education, which operates a program or programs of scholarly research. A *non-commercial scientific institution* is an institution that is not operated on a *commercial* basis as that term is referenced in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, and that is operated solely to conduct scientific research the results of which are not intended to promote any particular product or industry. A *representative of the news media* is any person actively gathering news for an entity that is organized and operated to publish or broadcast news to the public. *News* means information that is about current events or that would be of current interest to the public.

(3) *Other requesters.* Other requesters will be charged for the direct costs to search for and duplicate documents, except that the first 100 pages of duplication and the first two hours of search time shall be furnished without charge.

(4) *Waiver of small charges.* Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraphs (b) (1), (2), and (3), charges will be waived if the total chargeable fees for a request do not exceed $5.00.

(5) *Materials available without charge.* These provisions do not apply to recent Commission decisions and other materials that may be made available to all requesters without charge while supplies last.

(6) *Schedule of direct costs.* The following uniform schedule of fees applies to records held by all constituent units of the Commission.

Duplication

Paper Copy (up to 8½″×14″)
(Reproduced by Commission staff)—$0.14 per page
(Reproduced by Requester)—$0.05 per page
Computer Paper—$0.14 per page

Microfilm Services

Film Copy—Paper to 16mm film—$0.02 per frame
Fiche Copy—Paper to 105mm fiche—$0.02 per frame + $0.23 per fiche
Film Copy—Duplication of existing 100 ft. roll of 16mm film—$3.35 per roll
Fiche Copy—Duplication of existing 105mm fiche—$0.04 per roll
Paper Copy—Converting existing 16mm film to paper
(Conversion by Commission Staff)—$0.23 per page
(Conversion by Requester)—$0.14 per page
Paper Copy—Converting existing 105mm fiche to paper
(Conversion by Commission Staff)—$0.23 per page
(Conversion by Requester)—$0.14 per page
Film Cassettes—$3.60 per cassette

Other Charges

Computer Tape—$18.50 per tape
Certification—$10.35 each
Express Mail—$5.00 for the first pound and $.89 for each additional pound (per request)

Search and Review Fees

Agency staff is divided into three categories: clerical, attorney/economist, and other professional. Fees for search and review are assessed on a quarter-hourly basis, and are determined by identifying the category into which the staff member(s) conducting the search or review belong(s), determining the average quarter-hourly wages of all staff members within that category, and adding 16 percent to reflect the cost of additional benefits accorded to government employees. The exact fees are calculated and announced periodically and are available from the Public Reference Section, Federal Trade Commission, Sixth Street and Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580; (202) 326–2222.

(c) *Information to determine fees.* Each request for records shall set forth whether the request is made for other than commercial purposes and whether the requester is an educational institution, a noncommercial scientific institution, or a representative of the news media. The Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division initially, or the General Counsel or Commission on appeal, will use this information, any additional information provided by the requester, and any other relevant information to determine the appropriate fee category in which to place the requester.

(d) *Agreement to pay fees.* (1) Each request that does not contain an application for a fee waiver shall specifically indicate the requester's willingness either:

(i) To pay, in accordance with § 4.8(b) of these rules, whatever fees may be charged for processing the request; or

(ii) A willingness to pay such fees up to a specified amount.

(2) Each request that contains an application for a fee waiver must specifically indicate:

(i) The requester's willingness to pay, in accordance with §4.8(b) of the rules, whatever fees may be charged for processing the request;

(ii) The requester's willingness to pay fees up to a specified amount; or

(iii) That the requester is not willing to pay fees if the waiver is not granted.

(3) If the agreement required by this section is absent, and if the estimated fees exceed $25.00, the requester will be advised of the estimated fees and the request will not be processed until the requester agrees to pay such fees.

(e) *Public interest fee waivers*—(1) *Procedures.* A requester may apply for a waiver of fees. The requester shall explain why a waiver is appropriate under the standards set forth in this paragraph. The application shall also include a statement, as provided by paragraph (d) of this section, of whether the requester agrees to pay costs if the waiver is denied. The Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division initially, and the General Counsel or Commission on appeal, will rule on applications for fee waivers.

(2) *Standards.* (i) The first requirement for a fee waiver is that disclosure will likely contribute significantly to public understanding of the operations or activities of the government. This requirement shall be met if:

(A) The subject matter of the requested information concerns the operations or activities of the Federal government;

(B) The disclosure is likely to contribute to an understanding of these operations or activities;

(C) The understanding to which disclosure is likely to contribute is the understanding of the public at large, as opposed to the understanding of the individual requester or a narrow segment of interested persons; and

(D) The likely contribution to public understanding will be significant.

(ii) The second requirement for a fee waiver is that the request not be primarily in the commercial interest of the requester. Satisfaction of this requirement shall be determined by considering:

(A) Whether the requester has a commercial interest that would be furthered by the requested disclosure; and

(B) If so, whether the public interest in disclosure is outweighed by the identified commercial interest of the requester so as to render the disclosure primarily in the requester's commercial interest.

(f) *Unsuccessful searches.* Charges may be assessed for search time even if the agency fails to locate any responsive records or if it locates only records that are determined to be exempt from disclosure.

(g) *Aggregating requests.* If the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division initially, or the General Counsel or Commission on appeal, reasonably believes that a requester, or a group of requesters acting in concert, is attempting to evade an assessment of fees by dividing a single request into a series of smaller requests, the requests may be aggregated and fees charged accordingly.

(h) *Advance payment.* If the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Service Division initially, or the General Counsel or Commission on appeal, estimates or determines that allowable charges that a requester may be required to pay are likely to exceed $250.00, or if the requester has previously failed to pay a fee within 30 days of the date of billing, the requester may be required to pay some or all of the total estimated charge in advance. Further, the requester may be required to pay all unpaid bills, including accrued interest, prior to processing the request.

(i) *Means of payment.* Payment shall be made by check or money order payable to the Treasury of the United States, or by credit card. Procedures for paying fees by credit card are available from the Public Reference Section, Federal Trade Commission, Sixth Street and Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580; (202) 326–2222.

(j) *Interest charges.* The Commission will begin assessing interest charges on an unpaid bill starting on the 31st day

following the day on which the bill was sent. Interest will accrue from the date of the billing, and will be calculated at the rate prescribed in 31 U.S.C. 3717.

(k) *Effect of the Debt Collection Act of 1982 (Pub. L. 97–365)* The Commission may pursue repayment, where appropriate, by employing the provisions of the Debt Collection Act, Public Law 97–365), including disclosure to consumer reporting agencies and use of collection agencies.

[57 FR 10806, Mar. 31, 1992]

**§4.9 The public record.**

(a) *General.* (1) Materials on the public record of the Commission are available for public inspection and copying either routinely or upon request.

(2) Materials that are exempt from mandatory public disclosure, or are otherwise not available from the Commission's public record, may be made available for inspection and copying only upon request under the procedures set forth in §4.11 of this part, or as provided in §§4.10 (d) through (g), 4.13, and 4.15(b)(3) of this part, or by the Commission.

(3) Location. Materials on the public record are available for inspection at the principal office of the Commission, and copies of some of those records are available at the regional offices, on each business day from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m.

(4) *Copying of public records*—(i) *Procedures.* Reseasonable facilities for copying public records are provided at each office of the Commission. Subject to appropriate limitations and the availability of facilities, any person may copy public records available for inspection at each of those offices. Further, the agency will provide copies to any person upon request. Written requests for copies of public records should be addressed to the Director of the Information Services Division, and should specify as clearly and accurately as reasonably possible the records desired. For records that cannot be specified with complete clarity and particularity, requesters must provide descriptions sufficient to enable qualified Commission personnel to locate the records sought. In any instance, the Commission, the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information, the Director of the Information Services Division, or the official in charge of each office may prohibit the use of Commission facilities to produce more than one copy of any public record, and may refuse to permit the use of such facilities for copying records that have been published or are publicly available at places other than the offices of the Commission.

(ii) *Costs; agreement to pay costs.* Requesters will be charged search and duplication costs prescribed by Rule 4.8 for requests under this section. All requests shall include a statement of the information needed to determine fees, as provided by §4.8(c), and an agreement to pay fees (or a statement that the requester will not pay fees if a fee waiver is denied), as provided by §4.8(d). Requests may also include an application for a fee waiver, as provided by §4.8(e). Advance payment may be required, as provided by §4.8(h).

(iii) *Records for sale at another government agency.* If requested materials are available for sale at a another government agency, the requester will not be provided with copies of the materials but will be advised to obtain them from the selling agency.

(b) *Categories.* Except to the extent material is confidential, as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, the public record of the Commission includes, but is not necessarily limited to:

(1) *Commission Organization and Procedures (16 CFR part 0 and §§4.14 through 4.15, 4.17).* (i) A current index of opinions, orders, statements of policy and interpretations, administrative staff manuals, general instructions and other public records of the Commission;

(ii) A current record of the final votes of each member of the Commission in all matters of public record, including matters of public record decided by notational voting;

(iii) Descriptions of the Commission's organization, including descriptions of where, from whom, and how the public may secure information, submit documents or requests, and obtain copies of orders, decisions and other materials;

(iv) Statements of the Commission's general procedures and policies and interpretations, its nonadjudicative procedures, its rules of practice for adjudicative proceedings, and its miscellaneous rules, including descriptions of the nature and requirements of all formal and informal procedures available, and

(v) Reprints of the principal laws under which the Commission exercises enforcement or administrative responsibilities.

(2) *Industry Guidance (16 CFR 1.1–1.6).* (i) Any advice, advisory opinion or response given and required to be made public under §§ 1.4 and 2.41 (d) or (f) of this chapter (whether by the Commission or the staff), together with a statement of supporting reasons;

(ii) Industry guides, digests of advisory opinions and compliance advice believed to be of interest to the public generally and other administrative interpretations;

(iii) Transcripts of hearings in all industry guide proceedings, as well as written statements filed with or forwarded to the Commission in connection with these proceedings; and

(iv) Petitions filed with the Secretary of the Commission for the promulgation or issuance, amendment, or repeal of industry guides.

(3) *Rulemaking (16 CFR 1.7 through 1.26).* (i) Petitions filed with the Secretary of the Commission for the promulgation or issuance, amendment, or repeal of rules or regulations within the scope of §§ 1.7 and 1.21 of this chapter, and petitions for exemptions;

(ii) Notices and advance notices of proposed rulemaking and rules and orders issued in rulemaking proceedings; and

(iii) Transcripts of hearings of all rulemaking proceedings, as well as written statements filed with or forwarded to the Commission in connection with these proceedings.

(4) *Investigations (16 CFR 2.7).* (i) Petitions to limit or quash compulsory process and the rulings thereon, requests for review by the full Commission of those rulings, and Commission rulings on such requests; and

(ii) Closing letters in initial phase and full phase investigations.

(5) *Adjudicative proceedings, stay applications, requests to reopen, and litigated orders. (16 CFR 2.51, 3.1 through 3.24, 3.31 through 3.56, 3.71 through 3.72, 4.7)*—Except for transcripts of matters heard in camera pursuant to § 3.45 and material filed in camera pursuant to §§ 3.22, 3.24, 3.45, 3.46, 3.51 and 3.52,

(i) The versions of pleadings and transcripts of prehearing conferences to the extent made available under § 3.21(e), motions, certifications, orders, and the transcripts of hearings (including public conferences), testimony, oral arguments, and other material made a part thereof, and exhibits and material received in evidence or made a part of the public record in adjudicative proceedings;

(ii) Initial decisions of administrative law judges;

(iii) Orders and opinions in interlocutory matters;

(iv) Final orders and opinions in adjudications, and rulings on stay applications, including separate statements of Commissioners;

(v) Petitions for reconsideration, and answers thereto, filed pursuant to § 3.55;

(vi) Applications for stay, answers thereto, and replies, filed pursuant to § 3.56;

(vii) Petitions, applications, pleadings, briefs, and other records filed by the Commission with the courts in connection with adjudicative, injunctive, enforcement, compliance, and condemnation proceedings, and in connection with judicial review of Commission actions, and opinions and orders of the courts in disposition thereof;

(viii) Records of ex parte communications in adjudicative proceedings and stay applications;

(ix) Petitions to reopen proceedings and orders to determine whether orders should be altered, modified, or set aside in accordance with § 2.51; and

(x) Decisions reopening proceedings, and orders to show cause under § 3.72.

(6) *Consent Agreements (16 CFR 2.31 through 2.34, 3.25).* (i) Agreements containing orders, after acceptance by the Commission pursuant to §§ 2.34 and 3.25(f) of this chapter;

(ii) Comments filed under §§ 2.34 and 3.25(f) of this chapter concerning proposed consent agreements; and

(iii) Final decisions and orders issued after the comment period prescribed in §§ 2.34 and 3.25(f), including separate statements of Commissioners.

(7) Compliance/Enforcement (16 CFR 2.33, 2.41). (i) Reports of compliance filed pursuant to the rules in this chapter or pursuant to a provision in a Commission order and supplemental materials filed in connection with these reports, except for reports of compliance, and supplemental materials filed in connection with Commission orders requiring divestitures or establishment of business enterprises or facilities, which are confidential until the last divestiture or establishment of a business enterprise or facility, as required by a particular order, has been finally approved by the Commission, and staff letters to respondents advising them that their compliance reports do not warrant any further action. At the time each such report is submitted the filing party may request confidential treatment in whole or in part and submit satisfactory reasons therefor, and the General Counsel with due regard for statutory restrictions, the Commission's rules and the public interest will pass upon such request;

(ii) Requests for advice concerning proposed mergers and material required to be made public under § 2.41(f) of the Commission Rules; and

(iii) Applications for approval of proposed divestitures, acquisitions or similar transactions subject to Commission review under outstanding orders together with supporting materials, objections and comments concerning these transactions submitted by the public and Commission responses.

(8) *Access to Documents and Meetings (16 CFR 4.8, 4.11, 4.13, 4.15).* (i) Letters requesting access to Commission records pursuant to § 4.11(a) of this chapter and the Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. 552, and letters granting or denying such requests (not including access requests and answers thereto from the Congress or other government agencies);

(ii) Announcements of Commission meetings as required under the Sunshine Act, 5 U.S.C. 552b, including records of the votes to close such meetings;

(iii) Summaries or other explanatory materials relating to matters to be considered at open meetings made available pursuant to § 4.15(b)(3) of this chapter; and

(iv) Commission minutes of open meetings, and, to the extent they are not exempt from mandatory public disclosure under the Sunshine Act or the Freedom of Information Act, portions of minutes or transcripts of closed meetings.

(9) *Standards of Conduct (16 CFR 5.5 through 5.6, 5.10 through 5.26, 5.31, 5.57 through 5.68).* (i) Memoranda to staff elaborating or clarifying standards described in administative staff manuals and part 5 of this subchapter.

(10) *Miscellaneous (Press Releases, Clearance Requests, Reports Filed by or with the Commission, Continuing Guaranties, Registered Identification Numbers).* (i) Releases by the Commission's Office of Public Affairs supplying information concerning the activities of the Commission;

(ii) Applications under § 4.1(b)(2) of this chapter for clearance or authorization to appear or participate in a proceeding or investigation and of the Commission's responses thereto;

(iii) Continuing guaranties filed under the Wool, Fur, and Textile Acts;

(iv) Published reports by the staff or by the Commission on economic surveys and investigations of general interest;

(v) Filings by the Commission or by the staff in connection with proceedings before other federal agencies or state or local government bodies;

(vi) Registration statements and annual reports filed with the Commission by export trade associations, and bulletins, pamphlets, and reports with respect to such associations released by the Commission;

(vii) The identities of holders of registered identification numbers issued by the Commission pursuant to § 1.32 of this chapter;

(viii) The Commission's annual report submitted after the end of each fiscal year, summarizing its work during the year (available for inspection at each of the offices of the Commission with copies obtainable from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S.

Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402) and any other annual reports made to Congress on activities of the Commission as required by law; and

(ix) Every amendment, revision, substitute, or repeal of any of the foregoing items listed in § 4.9(b)(1) through (10) of this section.

(c) *Confidentiality and in camera material.* (1) Persons submitting material to the Commission described in this section may designate that material or portions of it confidential and request that it be withheld from the public record. No such material or portions of material (including documents generated by the Commission or its staff containing or reflecting such material or portions of material) will be placed on the public record pursuant to this section until the General Counsel has ruled on the request for confidential treatment and provided any prior notice to the submitter required by law. All requests for confidential treatment shall be supported by a showing of justification in light of applicable statutes, rules, orders of the Commission or its administrative law judges, orders of the courts, or other relevant authority.

(2) Motions seeking in camera treatment of material submitted in connection with a proceeding under part 3 of these rules, except stay applications under § 3.56, shall be filed with the Administrative Law Judge who is presiding over the proceeding. Requests for confidential treatment of material submitted in connection with a stay application shall be made in accordance with § 4.9(c)(1).

(3) To the extent that any material or portions of material otherwise falling within § 4.9(b) contain information that is not required to be made public under § 4.10 of this part, the General Counsel may determine to withhold such materials from the public record.

[50 FR 50779, Dec. 12, 1985, as amended at 57 FR 10805, Mar. 31, 1992; 59 FR 34970, July 8, 1994; 60 FR 37749, July 21, 1995]

### § 4.10 Nonpublic material.

(a) The following records and other material of the Commission are not required to be made public pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552.

(1) Records, except to the extent required to be disclosed under other laws or regulations, related solely to the internal personnel rules and practices of the Commission. This exemption applies to internal rules or instructions to Commission personnel which must be kept confidential in order to assure effective performance of the functions and activities for which the Commission is responsible and which do not affect members of the public.

(2) Trade secrets and commercial or financial information obtained from a person and privileged or confidential. As provided in section 6(f) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 46(f), this exemption applies to competitively sensitive information, such as costs or various types of sales statistics and inventories. It includes trade secrets in the nature of formulas, patterns, devices, and processes of manufacture, as well as names of customers in which there is a proprietary or highly competitive interest.

(3) Interagency or intra-agency memoranda or letters which would not routinely be available by law to a private party in litigation with the Commission. This exemption preserves the existing freedom of Commission officials and employees to engage in full and frank communication with each other and with officials and employees of other governmental agencies. This exemption includes records of the deliberations of the Commission except for the record of the final votes of each member of the Commission in every agency proceeding. It includes intra-agency and interagency reports, memorandums, letters, correspondence, work papers, and minutes of meetings, as well as staff papers prepared for use within the Commission or between the Commission and other governmental agencies. It also includes information scheduled for public release, but as to which premature release would be contrary to the public interest;

(4) Personnel and medical files and similar files the disclosure of which would constitute a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy except to the extent such files or materials must be disclosed under other laws or regulations. This exemption applies to personnel and medical records and similar

records containing private or personal information concerning any individual which, if disclosed to any person other than the individual concerned or his designated legal representative without his permission in writing, would constitute a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy. Examples of files exempt from disclosure include, but are not limited to:

(i) The personnel records of the Commission;

(ii) Files containing reports, records or other material pertaining to individual cases in which disciplinary or other administrative action has been or may be taken, including records of proceedings pertaining to the conduct or performance of duties by Commission personnel;

(5) Records or information compiled for law enforcement purposes, but only to the extent that production of such law enforcement records or information:

(i) Could reasonably be expected to interfere with enforcement proceedings;

(ii) Would deprive a person of a right to a fair trial or an impartial adjudication;

(iii) Could reasonably be expected to constitute an unwarranted invasion of personal privacy;

(iv) Could reasonably be expected to disclose the identity of a confidential source, including a State, local, or foreign agency or authority or any private institution that furnished information on a confidential basis, and, in the case of a record or information compiled by a criminal law enforcement authority in the course of a criminal investigation, or by an agency conducting a lawful national security intelligence investigation, information furnished by a confidential source;

(v) Would disclose techniques and procedures for law enforcement investigations or prosecutions, or would disclose guidelines for law enforcement investigations or prosecutions if such disclosure could reasonably be expected to risk circumvention of the law; or

(vi) Could reasonably be expected to endanger the life or physical safety of any individual.

(6) Information contained in or related to examination, operating, or condition reports prepared by, on behalf of, or for the use of an agency responsible for the regulation or supervision of financial institutions;

(7) Geological and geophysical information and data, including maps, concerning wells; and

(8) Material, as that term is defined in section 21(a) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, which is received by the Commission:

(i) In an investigation, a purpose of which is to determine whether any person may have violated any provision of the laws administered by the Commission; and

(ii) Which is provided pursuant to any compulsory process under the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 41, *et seq.*, or which is provided voluntarily in place of compulsory process in such an investigation. *See* section 21(f) of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(9) Material, as that term is defined in section 21(a) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, which is received by the Commission pursuant to compulsory process in an investigation, a purpose of which is to determine whether any person may have violated any provision of the laws administered by the Commission. *See* section 21(b)(3)(C) of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(10) Such other material of the Commission as may from time to time be designated by the Commission as confidential pursuant to statute or Executive Order. This exempts from disclosure any information that has been designated nonpublic pursuant to criteria and procedures prescribed by Executive Order and that has not been subsequently declassified in accordance with applicable procedures. The exemption also preserves the full force and effect of statutes that restrict public access to specific government records or material.

(11) Material in an investigation or proceeding that involves a possible violation of criminal law, when there is reason to believe that the subject of the investigation or proceeding is not aware of its pendency, and disclosure of the existence of the investigation could reasonably be expected to interfere with enforcement proceedings. When a

request is made for records under §4.11(a), the Commission may treat the records as not subject to the requirements of the Freedom of Information Act.

(b) With respect to information contained in transcripts of Commission meetings, the exemptions contained in paragraph (a) of this section, except for paragraphs (a)(3) and (a)(7) of this section, shall apply; in addition, such information will not be made available if it is likely to have any of the effects described in 5 U.S.C. 552b (c)(5), (c)(9), or (c)(10).

(c) Under section 10 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, any officer or employee of the Commission who shall make public any information obtained by the Commission, without its authority, unless directed by a court, shall be deemed guilty of a misdemeanor, and upon conviction thereof, may be punished by a fine not exceeding five thousand dollars ($5,000), or by imprisonment not exceeding 1 year, or by fine and imprisonment, in the discretion of the court.

(d) Except as provided in paragraphs (f) and (g) of this section and in §4.11 (b), (c), and (d), no material which is marked or otherwise identified as confidential and which is within the scope of §4.10(a)(8) and no material which is within the scope of §4.10(a)(9) which is not otherwise public shall be made available to any individual other than a duly authorized officer or employee of the Commission or a consultant or contractor retained by the Commission who has agreed in writing not to disclose the information without the consent of the person who produced the material. All other Commission records may be made available to a requester under the procedures set forth in §4.11 or may be disclosed by the Commission except where prohibited by law.

(e) Except as provided in paragraphs (f) and (g) of this section and in §4.11 (b), (c), and (d), material not within the scope of §4.10(a)(8) or §4.10(a)(9) which is received by the Commission and is marked or otherwise identified as confidential may be disclosed only if it is determined that the material is not within the scope of §4.10(a)(2), and only if the submitter is provided at least 10 days' notice of the intent to disclose the material involved.

(f) Nonpublic material obtained by the Commission may be disclosed to persons other than the submitter in connection with the taking of oral testimony without the consent of the submitter only if the material or transcript is not within the scope of §4.10(a)(2). If the material is marked confidential, the submitter will be provided 10 days' notice of the intended disclosure or will be afforded an opportunity to seek an appropriate protective order.

(g) Material obtained by the Commission:

(1) Through compulsory process or voluntarily in lieu thereof, and protected by sections 21 (b) and (f) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 57b–2 (b), (f), and 4.10(d) of this part; or

(2) That is designated by the submitter as confidential, and protected by section 21(c) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 57b–2(c), and §4.10(e) of this part; or

(3) That is confidential commercial or financial information protected by section 6(f) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 46(f), and §4.10(a)(2) of this part, may be disclosed in Commission administrative or court proceedings subject to Commission or court protective or *in camera* orders as appropriate. *See* §§1.18(b) and 3.45.

Prior to disclosure of such material in a proceeding, the submitter will be afforded an opportunity to seek an appropriate protective or in camera order. All other material obtained by the Commission may be disclosed in Commission administrative or court proceedings at the discretion of the Commission except where prohibited by law.

(15 U.S.C. 41 *et seq.*)

[38 FR 1731, Jan. 18, 1973, as amended at 40 FR 7629, Feb. 21, 1975; 40 FR 23278, May 29, 1975; 42 FR 13540, Mar. 11, 1977; 46 FR 26291, May 12, 1981; 49 FR 30166, July 27, 1984; 54 FR 7399, Feb. 21, 1989; 57 FR 10807, Mar. 31, 1992; 60 FR 37749, July 21, 1995]

### § 4.11 Disclosure requests.

(a) *Freedom of Information Act requests*—(1) *Initial requests*—(i) *Form and contents; time of receipt.* (A) A request

under the provisions of the Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. 552, as amended, for access to Commission records shall be in writing and addressed as follows:

Freedom of Information Act Request, Office of the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information, Federal Trade Commission, 6th Street and Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580.

(B) Failure to mark the envelope and the request in accordance with paragraph (a)(1)(i)(A) of this section will result in the request being treated as received on the date the request is actually received by the processing unit in the Office of the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information.

(C) *Costs; agreement to pay costs.* Requesters will be charged search and duplication costs prescribed by Rule 4.8 for requests under this section. All requests shall include a statement of the information needed to determine fees, as provided by §4.8(c), and an agreement to pay fees (or a statement that the requester will not pay fees if a fee waiver is denied), as provided by §4.8(d). Requests may also include an application for a fee waiver, as provided by §4.8(e). An advance payment may be required in appropriate cases as provided by §4.8(h).

(D) *Failure to agree to pay fees.* If a request does not include an agreement to pay fees, and if the requester is notified of the estimated costs pursuant to Rule 4.8(d)(3), the request will be deemed not to have been received until the requester agrees to pay such fees. If a requester declines to pay fees and is not granted a fee waiver, the request will be denied.

(E) *Records for sale at another government agency.* If requested materials are available for sale at another government agency, the requester will not be provided with copies of the materials but will be advised to obtain them from the selling agency.

(ii) *Identifiability.* (A) A request for access to Commission records must reasonably describe the records requested to enable Commission personnel to identify and locate them with a reasonable amount of effort. A request should be as specific as possible, and include, where known, information regarding dates, titles, file designations, location, and any other information which may assist the Commission in identifying and locating the records requested.

(B) A denial of a request may state that the description required by paragraph (a)(1)(ii)(A) of this section is insufficient to allow identification and location of the records.

(iii) *Time limit for initial determination.* (A) The Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division shall, within ten (10) working days of the receipt of a request, either grant or deny, in whole or in part, such request.

(B) The Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division may extend this time limit by not more than ten working days if such extension is:

(*1*) Necessary for locating records or transferring them from physically separate facilities; or

(*2*) Necessary to search for, collect, and appropriately examine a voluminous amount of separate and distinct records which are sought in a single or series of closely related requests; or

(*3*) Necessary for consultation with another agency having a substantial interest in the determination, or for consultation among two or more components of the Commission having substantial subject matter interest therein.

(C) If the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division extends the time limit for initial determination pursuant to paragraph (A)(1)(iii)(B), the requester shall be notified in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(A)(6)(B).

(D) If a request is not granted within the time limits set forth in paragraphs (a)(1)(iii) (A) and (B) of this section, the request shall be deemed to be denied and the requesting party may appeal such denial to the General Counsel in accordance with paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

(iv) *Initial determination.* (A) The Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division shall grant access to requested records, or

any portions thereof, that must be made available under the Freedom of Information Act. He shall deny access to records that are exempt under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552(b)), unless he determines that such records fall within a category the Commission or the General Counsel has previously authorized to be made available to the public as a matter of policy. Denials shall set forth the reasons therefore and advise the requester that this determination can be appealed to the General Counsel either because the requester believes the records are not exempt, or because the requester believes the General Counsel should exercise his discretion to release such records notwithstanding their exempt status.

(B) The Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division is deemed to be the sole official responsible for all denials of initial requests, except denials to materials contained in active investigatory files in which case the Director or Deputy Director of the Bureau or the Director of the Regional Office responsible for the investigation shall be the responsible official.

(C) Records to which access has been granted will be made available to the requester and will remain available for inspection and copying for a period not to exceed thirty days from date of notification to the requester unless the requester asks for and receives the consent of the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division to a longer period. Records assembled pursuant to a request will remain available only during this period and thereafter will be refiled. Appropriate fees may again be imposed for any new or renewed request for the same records.

(D) If a requested record cannot be located from the information supplied, or is known to have been destroyed or otherwise disposed of, the requester shall be so notified.

(2) *Appeals to the General Counsel from initial denials*—(i) *Form and contents; time of receipt.* (A) If an initial request for records is denied in its entirety, the requester may, within 30 days of the date of the determination appeal such denial to the General Counsel. If an initial request is denied in part, the time for appeal shall not expire until 30 days after the date of the letter notifying the requester that all records to which access has been granted have been made available. The appeal shall be in writing and should include a copy of the initial request and a copy of the response to that initial request, if any. The appeal shall be addressed as follows:

Freedom of Information Act Appeal, Office of the General Counsel, Federal Trade Commission, 6th Street and Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580.

(B) Failure to mark the envelope and the appeal, in accordance with paragraph (a)(2)(i)(A) of this section, will result in the appeal being treated as received on the date the appeal is actually received by the Office of the General Counsel.

(C) Each appeal to the General Counsel which requests him to exercise his discretion to release exempt records shall set forth the interest of the requester in the subject matter and the purpose for which the records will be used if the request is granted.

(ii) *Time limit for appeal.* (A) The General Counsel shall, within twenty (20) working days of the receipt of an appeal, either grant or deny the appeal, in whole or in part.

(B) The Commission or the General Counsel may, by written notice to the requester in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(6)(B), extend the time limit for deciding an appeal by not more than ten (10 working days for the reasons set forth in paragraph (a)(1)(iii)(B) of this section, provided that the amount of any extension utilized during the initial consideration of the request under that subsection shall be substracted from the amount of additional time otherwise available.

(iii) *Determination of appeal.* (A) The General Counsel shall have the authority to grant or deny all appeals and to release as an exercise of discretion records exempt from mandatory disclosure under 5 U.S.C. 552(b). In unusual or difficult cases he may, in his sole discretion, refer an appeal to the Commission for determination. A denial of an appeal in whole or in part shall set

forth the basis for the denial, and shall advise the requester that judicial review of the decision is available either in the district in which the requester resides or has a principal place of business, in the district in which the agency records are situated, or in the District of Columbia.

(B) The General Counsel shall be deemed solely responsible for all denials of appeals, except where an appeal is denied by the Commission. In such instances, the Commission shall be deemed solely responsible for the denial.

(b) *Requests from congressional committees and subcommittees.* Requests from congressional committees and subcommittees for nonpublic material shall be referred to the General Counsel for presentation to the Commission, subject to the provisions in 5 U.S.C. 552(c) and FTC Act 21(b) that neither the Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. 552, nor the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 41, *et seq.*, is authority to withhold information from Congress. Upon receipt of a request from a congressional committee or subcommittee, notice will be given to the submitter of any material marked confidential, or any material within the scope of § 4.10(a)(9), that is responsive to the request that the request has been received. No other notice need be provided prior to granting the request. The Commission will inform the committee or subcommittee that the submitter considers such information confidential.

(c) *Requests from Federal and State law enforcement agencies.* Requests from law enforcement agencies of the Federal government shall be addressed to the liaison officer for the requesting agency, or if there is none, to the General Counsel. Requests from state agencies shall be addressed to the General Counsel. With respect to requests under this paragraph, the General Counsel or the appropriate liaison officer is delegated the authority to dispose of them or may refer them to the Commission for determination, except that requests must be referred to the Commission for determination where the Bureau having the material sought and the General Counsel do not agree on the disposition. Prior to granting access under this section to any material submitted to the Commission, the General Counsel or liaison officer will obtain from the requester a certification that such information will be maintained in confidence and will be used only for official law enforcement purposes. The certificate will also describe the nature of the law enforcement activity and the anticipated relevance of the information to that activity. A copy of the certificate will be forwarded to the submitter of the information at the time the request is granted unless the agency requests that the submitter not be notified.

(d) *Requests from Federal and State agencies for purposes other than law enforcement.* Requests from Federal and State agencies for access not related to law enforcement should be addressed to the General Counsel. Disclosure of nonpublic information will be made consistent with sections 6(f) and 21 of the FTC Act. Requests under this section shall be subject to the fee and fee waiver provisions of § 4.8.

(e) *Material and information requested by subpoena in cases or matters to which the agency is not a party.* (1) The procedures specified in this section will apply to all subpoenas directed to Commission employees, except special government employees, that relate in any way to the employees' official duties. These procedures will also apply to subpoenas directed to former Commission employees and current or former special government employees of the Commission, if the subpoenas seek nonpublic materials or information acquired during Commission employment. The provisions of paragraph (e)(3) of this section will also apply to subpoenas directed to the agency. For purposes of this section, the term *subpoena* includes any compulsory process in a case or matter to which the agency is not a party; the term *nonpublic* includes any material or information which, under § 4.10, is not required to be made public; the term *employees*, except where otherwise specified, includes ''special government employees'' and other agency employees; and the term *special government employees* includes consultants and other employees as defined by section 202 of title 18 of the United States Code.

(2) Any employee or former employee who is served with a subpoena shall promptly advise the General Counsel of the service of the subpoena, the nature of the material or information sought, and all relevant facts and circumstances.

(3) A party causing a subpoena to be issued to the Commission or any employee or former employee of the Commission shall furnish a statement to the General Counsel. The statement shall set forth the party's interest in the case or matter, the relevance of the desired testimony or material, and a discussion of whether it is reasonably available from other sources. If testimony is desired, the statement shall also contain a general summary of the testimony and a discussion of whether agency records could be produced and used in its place. Any authorization for testimony will be limited to the scope of the demand as summarized in such statement.

(4) Absent authorization from the General Counsel, the employee or former employee shall respectfully decline to produce requested material or to disclose requested information. The refusal should be based on this paragraph and on *Touhy* v. *Ragen,* 340 U.S. 462 (1951).

(5) The General Counsel will consider and act upon subpoenas under this section with due regard for statutory restrictions, the Commission's rules and the public interest, taking into account factors such as the need to conserve the time of employees for conducting official business; the need to avoid spending the time and money of the United States for private purposes; the need to maintain impartiality between private litigants in cases where a substantial government interest is not involved; and the established legal standards for determining whether justification exists for the disclosure of confidential information and material.

(f) Requests by current or former employees to use nonpublic memoranda as writing samples shall be addressed to the General Counsel. The General Counsel is delegated the authority to dispose of such requests consistent with applicable nondisclosure provisions, including sections 6(f) and 21 of the FTC Act.

(g) Employees are encouraged to engage in teaching, lecturing, and writing that is not prohibited by law, Executive order, or regulation. However, an employee shall not use information obtained as a result of his Government employment, except to the extent that such information has been made available to the general public or will be made available on request, or when the General Counsel gives written authorization for the use of nonpublic information on the basis that the use is in the public interest.

(15 U.S.C. 41 *et seq.*)

[40 FR 7629, Feb. 21, 1975, as amended at 42 FR 13820, Mar. 14, 1977; 43 FR 5802, Feb. 10, 1978; 46 FR 26292, May 12, 1981; 48 FR 4280, Jan. 31, 1983; 49 FR 20279, May 14, 1984; 49 FR 21048, May 18, 1984; 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985; 55 FR 29839, July 23, 1990; 57 FR 10807, Mar. 31, 1992; 58 FR 15764, Mar. 24, 1993; 60 FR 37750, July 21, 1995]

### § 4.12 Disposition of documents submitted to the Commission.

(a) *Material submitted to the Commission.* (1) Any person who has submitted material to the Commission may obtain, on request, the return of material submitted to the Commission which has not been received into evidence:

(i) After the close of the proceeding in connection with which the material was submitted; or

(ii) When no proceeding in which the material may be used has been commenced within a reasonable time after completion of the examination and analysis of all such material and other information assembled in the course of the investigation.

(2) Such request shall be in writing, addressed to the custodian designated pursuant to § 2.16 or the Secretary of the Commission in all other circumstances, and shall reasonably describe the material requested. A request for return of material may be filed at any time, but material will not be returned nor will commitments to return material be undertaken prior to the time described in this paragraph.

(b) *Commission-made copies of documents submitted to the Commission.* The Commission will not return to the submitter copies of documents made by the Commission unless, upon a showing of extraordinary circumstances, the

Commission determines that return would be required in the public interest.

(c) *Disposition of material not returned.* Subsequent to the time prescribed in paragraph (a) of this section, the staff will examine all submitted material and Commission-made copies of documents located in a reasonable search of the Commission's files and will determine, consistent with the Federal Records Act, 44 U.S.C. 3301, which materials are appropriate for preservation as evidence of the organization, functions, policies, decisions, procedures, operations, or other activities of the Commission or because of the information value of data in them. The Commission will dispose of all material determined not to be appropriate for preservation in accordance with applicable regulations of the National Archives and Records Administration.

[46 FR 26292, May 12, 1981, as amended at 60 FR 37751, July 21, 1995]

### §4.13 Privacy Act rules.

(a) *Purpose and scope.* (1) This section is promulgated to implement the Privacy Act of 1974 (Pub. L. 93–579, 5 U.S.C. 552a) by establishing procedures whereby an individual can, as to all systems of records maintained by the Commission except those set forth in §4.13(m) as exempt from disclosure, (i) Request notification of whether the Commission maintains a record pertaining to him in any system of records, (ii) request access to such a record or to an accounting of its disclosure, (iii) request that the record be amended or corrected, and (iv) appeal an initial adverse determination of any such request. This section also establishes those systems of records that are specifically exempt from disclosure and from other requirements.

(2) The procedures of this section apply only to requests by an individual as defined in §4.13(b). Except as otherwise provided, they govern only records containing personal information in systems of records for which notice has been published by the Commission in the FEDERAL REGISTER pursuant to section 552a(e)(4) of the Privacy Act of 1974 and which are neither exempt from the provisions of this section nor contained in government-wide systems of personnel records for which notice has been published in the FEDERAL REGISTER by the Office of Personnel Management. Requests for notification, access, and amendment of personnel records which are contained in a system of records for which notice has been given by the Office of Personnel Management are governed by the Office of Personnel Management's notices, 5 CFR part 297. Access to records which are not subject to the requirements of the Privacy Act are governed by §§4.8 through 4.11.

(b) *Definitions.* The following definitions apply to this section only:

(1) *Individual* means a natural person who is a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence.

(2) *Record* means any item, collection, or grouping of personal information about an individual that is maintained by the Commission, including, but not limited to, his education, financial transactions, medical history, and criminal or employment history and that contains his name, or the identifying number, symbol, or other identifying particular assigned to the individual, such as a finger or voice print or a photograph, but does not include information concerning proprietorships, businesses, or corporations.

(3) *System of records* means a group of any records under the control of the Commission from which information is retrieved by the name of the individual or by some identifying number, symbol, or other identifying particular assigned to the individual, for which notice has been published by the Commission in the FEDERAL REGISTER pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(e)(4).

(c) *Procedures for requests pertaining to individual records in a record system.* An individual may request access to his records or any information pertaining to him in a system of records, and notification of whether and to whom the Commission has disclosed a record for which an accounting of disclosures is required to be kept and made available to him, using the procedures of this subsection. Requests for the disclosure of records under this subsection or to determine whether a system of records contains records pertaining to an individual or to obtain an accounting of

disclosures, shall be in writing and if mailed, addressed as follows:

Privacy Act Request, Office of the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information, Federal Trade Commission, 6th Street and Pennsylvania Avenue NW., Washington, DC 20580.

If requests are presented in person at the Office of the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information, the individual shall be required to execute a written request. All requests must name the system of records which is the subject of the request, and must include any additional information specified in the pertinent system notice as necessary to locate the records requested. If the requester desires to permit a person to accompany him to review his record, the request shall so state. Nothing in this section shall allow an individual access to any information compiled in reasonable anticipation of a civil action or proceeding.

(d) *Times, places, and requirements for identification of individuals making requests.* Verification of identity of persons making written requests to the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information ordinarily will not be required. The signature upon such requests shall be deemed to be a certification by the person signing that he is the individual to whom the record pertains or the parent of a minor or the duly appointed legal guardian of the individual to whom the record pertains. The Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information may require additional verification of identity as specified by him when necessary reasonably to assure that records are not improperly disclosed; provided, however, that no verification of identity will be required where the records sought are publicly available under the Freedom of Information Act.

(e) *Disclosure of requested information to individuals.* Within ten (10) working days of receipt of a request under §4.13(c) the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division shall acknowledge receipt of the request. Within thirty (30) working days of the receipt of a request under §4.13(c) the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division shall inform the requester whether a system of records containing retrievable information pertaining to the requester exists, and if so, either that his request has been granted or that the requested records or information is exempt from disclosure pursuant to §4.13(m). When, for good cause shown, the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division is unable to respond within thirty (30) working days of the receipt of the request, he shall notify the requester of that fact and approximately when it is anticipated that a response will be made.

(f) *Special procedures: Medical records.* When the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division determines that disclosure of a medical or psychological record directly to a requesting individual could have an adverse effect on the individual, he shall require the individual to designate a medical doctor to whom the record will be transmitted.

(g) *Request for correction or amendment of record.* An individual to whom access to his records or any information pertaining to him in a system of records has been granted may request that any portion thereof be amended or corrected because he believes it is not accurate, relevant, timely, or complete. An initial request for correction or amendment of a record shall be in writing whether presented in person or by mail, and if by mail, addressed as in §4.13(c). In making a request under this subsection, the requesting party shall state the nature of the information in the record the individual believes to be inaccurate, irrelevant, untimely, or incomplete, the correction or amendment desired, and the reasons therefore.

(h) *Agency review of request for correction or amendment of record.* Whether presented in person or by mail, requests under §4.13(g) shall be acknowledged by the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division within ten (10) working days of the receipt of the request if action on the request cannot be completed and the individual notified of

the results within that time. Thereafter, the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division shall promptly either make the requested amendment or correction or inform the requester of his refusal to make the amendment or correction, the reasons for the refusal, and the requester's right to appeal that determination in accordance with §4.13(i).

(i) *Appeal of initial adverse agency determination.* (1) If an initial request is denied under §4.13(c) or §4.13(g), the requester may appeal that determination to the Commission. The appeal shall be in writing and addressed as follows:

Privacy Act Appeal, Office of the General Counsel, Federal Trade Commission, 6th Street and Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20580

The Commission shall notify the requester within thirty (30) working days of the receipt of his appeal of the disposition of that appeal, except that the thirty (30) day period may be extended for good cause, in which case the requester will be advised of the approximate date on which review will be completed.

(2)(i) If the Commission refuses to amend or correct the record in accordance with a request under §4.13(g), it shall notify the requester of that determination and inform him of his right to file with the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information of the Commission a concise statement setting forth the reasons for his disagreement with that determination and the fact that such a statement will be treated as set forth in paragraph (i)(2)(ii) of this section. The Commission shall also inform the requester that judicial review of the determination is available by a civil suit in the district in which the requester resides, or has his principal place of business, or in which the agency records are situated, or in the District of Columbia.

(ii) If the individual files a statement disagreeing with the Commission's determination not to amend or correct a record, it shall be clearly noted in the record involved and made available to anyone to whom the record has been disclosed after September 27, 1975, or is subsequently disclosed together with, if the Commission deems it appropriate, a brief statement of the reasons for refusing to amend the record.

(j) *Disclosure of record to person other than the individual to whom it pertains.* Except as provided by 5 U.S.C. 552a(b), the written request or prior written consent of the individual to whom a record pertains, or of his parent if a minor, or legal guardian if incompetent, shall be required before such record is disclosed. If the individual elects to inspect a record in person and desires to be accompanied by another person, the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information or the Director of the Information Services Division may require the individual to furnish a signed statement authorizing his record to be disclosed in the presence of the accompanying named person.

(k) *Fees.* No fees shall be charged for searching for a record, reviewing it, or for copies of records made by the Commission for its own purposes incident to granting access to a requester. Copies of records to which access has been granted under this section may be obtained by the requester from the Deputy Executive Director for Planning and Information upon payment of the reproduction fees provided in §4.8(b)(6).

(l) *Penalties.* Section 552a(i)(3) of the Privacy Act, 5 U.S.C. 552a(i)(3), makes it a misdemeanor, subject to a maximum fine of $5,000, to knowingly and willfully request or obtain any record concerning an individual under false pretenses. Sections 552a(i) (1) and (2) of the Privacy Act, 5 U.S.C. 552a(i) (1) and (2), provide penalties for violations by agency employees of the Privacy Act or regulations established thereunder. Title 18 U.S.C. 1001, Crimes and Criminal Procedures, makes it a criminal offense, subject to a maximum fine of $10,000 or imprisonment for not more than 5 years or both, to knowingly and willfully make or cause to be made any false or fraudulent statements or representations in any matter within the jurisdiction of any agency of the United States.

(m) *Specific exemptions.* (1) Pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(j)(2), investigatory materials maintained by an agency component in connection with any activity relating to criminal law enforcement

in the following systems of records are exempt from all subsections of 5 U.S.C. 552a, except (b), (c) (1) and (2), (e)(4) (A) through (F), (e) (6), (7), (9), (10), and (11), and (i), and from the provisions of this section, except as otherwise provided in 5 U.S.C. 552a(j)(2):

Office of Inspector General Investigative Files—FTC

(2) Pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(2), investigatory materials compiled for law enforcement purposes in the following systems of records are exempt from subsections (c)(3), (d), (e)(1), (e)(4) (G), (H), and (I), and (f) of 5 U.S.C. 552a, and from the provisions of this section, except as otherwise provided in 552a(k)(2):

Investigational, Legal, and Public Records—FTC
Disciplinary Action Investigatory Files—FTC
Clearance to Participate Applications and the Commission's Responses Thereto, and Related Documents—FTC
Management Information System—FTC
Office of the Secretary Control and Reporting System—FTC
Office of Inspector General Investigative Files—FTC
Stenographic Reporting Service Requests—FTC
Freedom of Information Act Requests and Appeals—FTC
Privacy Act Requests and Appeals—FTC
Information Retrieval and Indexing System—FTC

(3) Pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(5), investigatory materials compiled to determine suitability, eligibility, or qualifications for Federal civilian employment, military service, Federal contracts, or access to classified information, but only where disclosure would reveal the identity of a confidential source of information, in the following systems of records are exempt from subsections (c)(3), (d), (e)(1), (e)(4) (G), (H), and (I), and (f) of 5 U.S.C. 552a, and from the provisions of this section, except as otherwise provided in 5 U.S.C. 552a(k)(5):

Personnel Security File—FTC

[40 FR 40780, Sept. 3, 1975, as amended at 46 FR 26292, May 12, 1981; 48 FR 4280, Jan. 31, 1983; 55 FR 37700, Sept. 13, 1990; 55 FR 38801, Sept. 21, 1990; 57 FR 10808, Mar. 31, 1992; 58 FR 7047, Feb. 4, 1993]

### § 4.14 Conduct of business.

(a) Matters before the Commission for consideration may be resolved either at a meeting under § 4.15 or by written circulation. Any Commissioner may direct that a matter presented for consideration be placed on the agenda of a Commission meeting.

(b) *Quorum.* A majority of the members of the Commission, constitutes a quorum for the transaction of business.

(c) Any Commission action, either at a meeting or by written circulation, may be taken only with the affirmative concurrence of a majority of the participating Commissioners, except where a greater majority is required by statute or rule or where the action is taken pursuant to a valid delegation of authority. No Commissioner may delegate the authority to determine his or her vote in any matter requiring Commission action, but authority to report a Commissioner's vote on a particular matter resolved either by written circulation, or at a meeting held in the Commissioner's absence, may be vested in a member of the Commissioner's staff.

[42 FR 13540, Mar. 11, 1977, as amended at 50 FR 53306, Dec. 31, 1985]

### § 4.15 Commission meetings.

(a) *In general.* (1) Meetings of the Commission, as defined in 5 U.S.C. 552b(a)(2), are held at the principal office of the Commission, unless otherwise directed.

(2) *Initial announcements of meetings.* For each meeting, the Commission shall announce:

(i) The time, place and subject matter of the meeting,

(ii) Whether the meeting will be open or closed to the public, and

(iii) The name and phone number of the official who will respond to requests for information about the meeting.

Such announcement shall be made at least one week before the meeting except that where the agency determines pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552b(e)(1) to call the meeting on less than one week's notice, or where the agency determines

to close the meeting pursuant to paragraph (c)(2) of this section, the announcement shall be made at the earliest practicable time.

(3) *Announcements of changes in meetings.* Following the announcement of a meeting, any change in the time, place or subject matter will be announced at the earliest practicable time, and, except with respect to meetings closed under paragraph (c)(2) of this section, any change in the subject matter or decision to open or close a meeting shall be made only as provided in 5 U.S.C. 552b(e)(2).

(4) *Deletions from announcements.* The requirements of paragraphs (a)(2) and (a)(3) of this section do not require the disclosure of any information pertaining to a portion of a closed meeting where such disclosure is likely to concern a matter within the scope of 5 U.S.C. 552b(c).

(5) *Dissemination of notices.* Notices required under paragraphs (a)(2) and (a)(3) of this section will be posted at the principal office of the Commission, recorded on a telephone message device, and, except as to notices of meetings closed under paragraph (c)(2) of this section, submitted to the FEDERAL REGISTER for publication. In addition, notices issued under paragraph (a)(2) of this section one week in advance of the meeting will be sent to all persons and organizations who have requested inclusion on a meeting notice mailing list, and will be issued as a press release to interested media.

(b) *Open meetings.* (1) Commission meetings shall be open to public observation unless the Commission determines that portions may be closed pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552b(c).

(2) Any person whose interest may be directly affected if a portion of a meeting is open, may request that the Commission close that portion for any of the reasons described in 5 U.S.C. 552b(c). The Commission shall vote on such requests if at least one member desires to do so. Such requests shall be in writing, filed at the earliest practicable time, and describe how the matters to be discussed will have any of the effects enumerated in 5 U.S.C. 552b(c). Requests shall be addressed as follows:

Closed Meeting Request, Office of the General Counsel, Federal Trade Commission, 6th Street and Pennsylvania Avenue NW., Washington, DC 20580.

(3) The Commissioner to whom a matter has been assigned for presentation to the Commission shall have the authority to make available to the public, prior to consideration of that matter at an open meeting, material sufficient to inform the public of the issues likely to be discussed in connection with that matter.

(c) *Closed meetings.* (1) Whenever the Commission votes to close a meeting or series of meetings under these rules, it shall make publicly available within one day notices both of such vote and the General Counsel's determination regarding certification under 5 U.S.C. 552b(f)(1). Such determination by the General Counsel shall be made prior to the Commission vote to close a meeting or series of meetings. Further, except with respect to meetings closed under paragraph (c)(2) of this section, the Commission shall make publicly available within one day a full written explanation of its action in closing any meeting, and a list specifying the names and affiliations of all persons expected to attend, except Commission employees and consultants and any stenographer or court reporter attending for the sole purpose of preparing a verbatim transcript. All Commission employees and consultants may attend nonadjudicative portions of any closed meeting and members of Commissioners' personal staffs, the General Counsel and his staff, and the Secretary and his staff may attend the adjudicative portions of any closed meeting except to the extent the notice of a particular closed meeting otherwise specifically provides. Stenographers or court reporters may attend any closed meeting at which their services are required by the Commission.

(2) If a Commission meeting, or portions thereof, may be closed pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552b(c)(10), the Commission may, by vote recorded at the beginning of the meeting, or portion thereof, close the portion or portions of the meeting so exempt.

(3) Closed meeting transcripts or minutes required by 5 U.S.C. 552b(f)(1) will be released to the public insofar as

they contain information that either is not exempt from disclosure under 5 U.S.C. 552b(c), or, although exempt, should be disclosed in the public interest. The Commission will determine whether to release, in whole or in part, the minutes of its executive sessions to consider oral arguments. With regard to all other closed meetings, the General Counsel, without power of redelegation, shall have the authority to determine which portions of the transcripts or minutes may be released. In unusual or difficult cases the General Counsel may, in his sole discretion, refer the question of release to the Commission for determination

(d) The presiding officer shall be responsible for preserving order and decorum at meetings and shall have all powers necessary to that end.

[42 FR 13541, Mar. 11, 1977; 42 FR 15409, Mar. 22, 1977, as amended at 42 FR 62912, Dec. 14, 1977: 43 FR 1937, Jan. 13, 1978; 43 FR 35684, Aug. 11, 1978]

### § 4.16 Privilege against self-incrimination.

Section 2.11 of Pub. L. 91–462 specifically repeals paragraph 7 of section 9 of the Federal Trade Commission Act. Title 18, section 6002, of the United States Code provides that whenever a witness refuses, on the basis of his privilege against self-incrimination, to testify or provide other information in a proceeding before or ancillary to:

(a) A court or grand jury of the United States,

(b) An agency of the United States, or

(c) Either House of Congress, a joint committee of the two Houses, or a committee or a subcommittee of either House, and the person presiding over the proceeding communicates to the witness an order issued under section 6004, the witness may not refuse to comply with the order on the basis of his privilege against self-incrimination; but no testimony or other information compelled under the order (or any information directly or indirectly derived from such testimony or other information) may be used against the witness in any criminal case, except a prosecution for perjury, giving a false statement, or otherwise failing to comply with the order. Title 18, section 6004, of the United States Code provides that: (1) In the case of any individual who has been or who may be called to testify or provide other information at any proceeding before an agency of the United States, the agency may, with the approval of the Attorney General, issue, in accordance with subsection (b) of section 6004, an order requiring the individual to give testimony or provide other information which he refused to give or provide on the basis of his privilege against self-incrimination, such order to become effective as provided in title 18, section 6002, of the United States Code; (2) an agency of the United States may issue an order under subsection (a) of section 6004 only if in its judgment (i) the testimony or other information from such individual may be necessary to the public interest; and (ii) such individual has refused or is likely to refuse to testify or provide other information on the basis of his privilege against self-incrimination.

(18 U.S.C. 6002, 6004)

[37 FR 5017, Mar. 9, 1972. Redesignated at 45 FR 36345, May 29, 1980]

### § 4.17 Disqualification of Commissioners.

(a) *Applicability.* This section applies to all motions seeking the disqualification of a Commissioner from any adjudicative or rulemaking proceeding.

(b) *Procedures.* (1) Whenever any participant in a proceeding shall deem a Commissioner for any reason to be disqualified from participation in that proceeding, such participant may file with the Secretary a motion to the Commission to disqualify the Commissioner, such motion to be supported by affidavits and other information setting forth with particularity the alleged grounds for disqualification.

(2) Such motion shall be filed at the earliest practicable time after the participant learns, or could reasonably have learned, of the alleged grounds for disqualification.

(3)(i) Such motion shall be addressed in the first instance by the Commissioner whose disqualification is sought.

(ii) In the event such Commissioner declines to recuse himself or herself

from further participation in the proceeding, the Commission shall determine the motion without the participation of such Commissioner.

(c) *Standards.* Such motion shall be determined in accordance with legal standards applicable to the proceeding in which such motion is filed.

(15 U.S.C. 46(g))

[46 FR 45750, Sept. 15, 1981]

# PART 5—STANDARDS OF CONDUCT

## Subpart A—Employee Conduct Standards and Financial Conflicts of Interest

Sec.
5.1 Cross-reference to executive branch-wide regulations.
5.2 Exemption of insubstantial financial conflicts.

## Subpart B—Financial Disclosure Requirements

5.10 Cross-reference to executive branch-wide regulations.

## Subparts C–D [Reserved]

## Subpart E—Disciplinary Actions Concerning Postemployment Conflict of Interest

5.51 Scope and applicability.
5.52 Nonpublic proceedings.
5.53 Initiation of investigation.
5.54 Referral to the Office of Government Ethics and to the Department of Justice.
5.55 Conduct of investigation.
5.56 Disposition.
5.57 Order to show cause.
5.58 Answer and request for a hearing.
5.59 Presiding official.
5.60 Scheduling of hearing.
5.61 Prehearing procedures; motions; interlocutory appeals; summary decision; discovery; compulsory process.
5.62 Hearing rights of respondent.
5.63 Evidence; transcript; in camera orders; proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law.
5.64 Initial decision.
5.65 Review of initial decision.
5.66 Commission decision and reconsideration.
5.67 Sanctions.
5.68 Judicial review.

AUTHORITY: 5 U.S.C. 7301; 5 U.S.C. App. (Ethics in Government Act of 1978); 15 U.S.C. 46(g); E.O. 12674, 54 FR 15159, 3 CFR, 1989 Comp., p. 215, as modified by E.O. 12731, 55 FR 42547, 3 CFR, 1990 Comp., p. 306; 5 CFR part 2635, unless otherwise noted.

SOURCE: 32 FR 13272, Sept. 20, 1967, unless otherwise noted. Redesignated at 41 FR 54483, Dec. 14, 1976.

## Subpart A—Employee Conduct Standards and Financial Conflicts of Interest

SOURCE: 58 FR 15764, Mar. 24, 1993, unless otherwise noted.

### §5.1 Cross-reference to executive branch-wide regulations.

Commissioners and employees, including special government employees, of the Federal Trade Commission (FTC) are subject to and should refer to the ''Standards of Ethical Conduct for Employees of the Executive Branch'' at 5 CFR part 2635 (''executive branch-wide Standards of Conduct'') and to the FTC regulations at 5 CFR 5701.101 that supplements the executive branch-wide Standards of Conduct.

### §5.2 Exemption of insubstantial financial conflicts.

(a) An employee or special Government employee will not be subject to remedial or disciplinary action or to criminal prosecution under 18 U.S.C. 208(a), if he makes a full disclosure in writing to the official responsible for his appointment of the nature and circumstances of the particular matter involved and of his conflicting financial interest relating thereto, and receives in advance a written determination made by such official that the interest is not so substantial as to be deemed likely to affect the integrity of the services which the Government may expect from the employee or special Government employee.

(b) For the purposes of paragraph (a) of this section, the ''official responsible for appointment'' shall be the Executive Director in all cases where the employee is classified at grade GS–15 or below, or at a comparable pay level, except that each Commissioner shall be the ''official responsible for appointment'' of advisors in the Commissioner's immediate office.

(c) In all other cases, the Chairman shall be the ''official responsible for appointment.''

(d) The financial interests described below are exempted from the provisions of 18 U.S.C. 208(a) as being too remote or too inconsequential to affect the integrity of an employee's services: Stocks and bonds of a diversified mutual fund or investment company *Provided,* that the fair market value of the employee's holdings in the fund or company does not exceed one percent of the value of its reported assets.

## Subpart B—Financial Disclosure Requirements

### § 5.10 Cross-reference to executive branch-wide regulations.

Commissioners and employees, including special government employees, of the Federal Trade Commission are subject to and should refer to the executive branch-wide financial disclosure regulations at 5 CFR part 2634, and to the procedures for filing and review of financial disclosure reports found in Chapter 3 of the FTC *Administrative Manual.*

[58 FR 15765, Mar. 24, 1993]

## Subparts C–D [Reserved]

## Subpart E—Disciplinary Actions Concerning Postemployment Conflict of Interest

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 41 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 46 FR 26050, May 11, 1981, unless otherwise noted.

### § 5.51 Scope and applicability.

These regulations establish procedures for investigating and determining alleged violations of 18 U.S.C. 207 (postemployment restrictions applicable to federal employees) or regulations issued by the Office of Government Ethics, set forth in 5 CFR parts 2637 and 2641, reflecting the views of the Office of Government Ethics and the Department of Justice as to the requirements of 18 U.S.C. 207.

[58 FR 15765, Mar. 24, 1993]

### § 5.52 Nonpublic proceedings.

Any investigation or proceedings held under this part shall be nonpublic unless the respondent specifically requests otherwise, except to the extent required by the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) or by the Sunshine Act (5 U.S.C. 552b). However, the presiding official's initial decision and any final decision of the Commission shall be placed on the public record, except that information may be designated *in camera* in accordance with § 3.45 of the Commission's Rules of Practice.

### § 5.53 Initiation of investigation.

(a) Investigations under this part may be initiated upon the submission by any person of a written statement to the Secretary setting forth sufficient information to indicate a possible violation of 18 U.S.C. 207 or by the Commission on its own initiative when a possible violation is indicated by information within the Commission's possession.

(b) At the direction of the Commission, the General Counsel shall investigate any alleged violation of 18 U.S.C. 207.

### § 5.54 Referral to the Office of Government Ethics and to the Department of Justice.

(a) The General Counsel shall make a preliminary determination of whether the matter appears frivolous and, if not, shall expeditiously transmit any available information to the Director of the Office of Government Ethics and to the Criminal Division, Department of Justice.

(b) Unless the Department of Justice communicates to the Commission that it does not intend to initiate criminal prosecution, the General Counsel shall coordinate any investigation or proceeding under this part with the Department of Justice in order to avoid prejudicing criminal proceedings.

### § 5.55 Conduct of investigation.

(a) The General Counsel may (1) exercise the authority granted in § 2.5 of the Commission's Rules of Practice to administer oaths and affirmations; and (2) conduct investigational hearings pursuant to part 2 of these rules. He may also recommend that the Commission issue compulsory process in connection with an investigation under this section.

(b) Witnesses in investigations shall have the rights set forth in §2.9 of the Commission's Rules of Practice.

**§5.56 Disposition.**

(a) Upon the conclusion of an investigation under this part, the General Counsel shall forward to the Commission a summary of the facts disclosed by the investigation along with a recommendation as to whether the Commission should issue an order to show cause pursuant to §5.57.

(b) When the former government employee involved is an attorney, the General Counsel shall also recommend whether the matter should be referred to the disciplinary committee of the bar(s) of which the attorney is a member.

**§5.57 Order to show cause.**

(a) Upon a Commission determination that there exists reasonable cause to believe a former government employee has violated 18 U.S.C. 207, the Commission may issue an order requiring the former employee to show cause why sanctions should not be imposed.

(b) The show cause order shall contain:

(1) The statutory provisions alleged to have been violated and a clear and concise description of the acts of the former employee that are alleged to constitute the violation;

(2) Notice of the respondent's right to submit an answer and request a hearing, and the time and manner in which the request is to be made; and

(3) A statement of the sanctions that may be imposed pursuant to §5.67 of this part.

(c) Subsequent to the issuance of an order to show cause, any communications to or from the Commission or any member of the Commission shall be governed by the *ex parte* provisions of §4.7 of the Commission's Rules of Practice. 16 CFR 4.7.

**§5.58 Answer and request for a hearing.**

(a) An answer and request for a hearing must be filed with the Secretary of the Commission within thirty (30) days after service of the order to show cause.

(b) In the absence of good cause shown, failure to file an answer and request for a hearing within the specified time limit:

(1) Will be deemed a waiver of the respondent's right to contest the allegations of the show cause order or request a hearing and

(2) Shall authorize the Commission to find the facts to be as alleged in the show cause order and enter a final decision providing for the imposition of such sanctions specified in §5.67 as the Commission deems appropriate.

(c) An answer shall contain (1) a concise statement of the facts or law constituting each ground of defense and (2) specific admission, denial, or explanation of each fact alleged in the show cause order or, if the respondent is without knowledge thereof, a statement to that effect. Any allegations of a complaint not answered in this manner will be deemed admitted.

(d) Hearings shall be deemed waived as to any facts in the show cause order that are specifically admitted or deemed to be admitted as a result of respondent's failure to deny them. Those portions of respondent's answer, together with the show cause order, will provide a record basis for initial decision by the Administrative Law Judge or for final decision by the Commission.

(e) If all material factual allegations of the show cause order are specifically admitted or have been deemed admitted in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section, the Commission will decide the matter on the basis of the allegations set forth in the show cause order and respondent's answer.

**§5.59 Presiding official.**

(a) Upon the receipt of an answer and request for a hearing, the Secretary shall refer the matter to the Chief Administrative Law Judge, who shall appoint an Administrative Law Judge to preside over the hearing and shall notify the respondent and the General Counsel as to the person selected.

(b) The powers and duties of the presiding official shall be as set forth in §3.42(b) through (h) of the Commission's Rules of Practice.

**§ 5.60 Scheduling of hearing.**

The presiding official shall fix the date, time and place of the hearing. The hearing shall not be scheduled earlier than fifteen days after receipt of the respondent's answer and request for a hearing. In fixing the time, date and place of the hearing, the presiding official shall give due regard to the respondent's need for adequate time to prepare a defense and an expeditious resolution of allegations that may be damaging to his or her reputation.

**§ 5.61 Prehearing procedures; motions; interlocutory appeals; summary decision; discovery; compulsory process.**

Because of the nature of the issues involved in proceedings under this part, the Commission anticipates that extensive motions, prehearing proceedings and discovery will not be required in most cases. For this reason, detailed procedures will not be established under this part. However, to the extent deemed warranted by the presiding official, prehearing conferences, motions, interlocutory appeals, summary decisions, discovery and compulsory process shall be permitted and shall be governed, where appropriate, by the provisions set forth in subparts C and D, part 3, of the Commission's Rules of Practice.

**§ 5.62 Hearing rights of respondent.**

In any hearing under this subpart, the respondent shall have the right:

(a) To be represented by counsel;

(b) To present and cross-examine witnesses and submit evidence;

(c) To present objections, motions, and arguments, oral or written; and

(d) To obtain a transcript of the proceedings on request.

**§ 5.63 Evidence; transcript; in camera orders; proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law.**

Sections 3.43, 3.44, 3.45, and 3.46 of the Commission's Rules of Practice shall govern, respectively, the receipt and objections to admissibility of evidence, the transcript of the hearing, *in camera* orders and the submission and consideration of proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law except that (a) a copy of the hearing transcript shall be provided the respondent; and (b) the Commission has the burden of establishing, by a preponderance of the evidence on the record as a whole, the allegations stated in the order to show cause.

**§ 5.64 Initial decision.**

Section 3.51 of the Commission's Rules of Practice shall govern the initial decision in proceedings under this subpart, except that the determination of the Administrative Law Judge must be supported by a preponderance of the evidence.

**§ 5.65 Review of initial decision.**

Appeals from the initial decision of the Administrative Law Judge or review by the Commission in the absence of an appeal shall be governed by §§ 3.52 and 3.53 of the Commission's Rules of Practice except that oral arguments shall be nonpublic subject to the exceptions stated in § 3.52 of this part.

**§ 5.66 Commission decision and reconsideration.**

The Commission's decision and any reconsideration or reopening of the proceeding shall be governed by §§ 2.51, 3.54, 3.55, 3.71 and 3.72 of the Commission's Rules of Practice, except that (a) if the initial decision is modified or reversed, the Commission shall specify such findings of fact and conclusions of law as are different from those of the presiding official; and (b) references therein to ''court of appeals'' shall be deemed for purposes of proceedings under this part to refer to ''district court.''

**§ 5.67 Sanctions.**

In the case of any respondent who fails to request a hearing after receiving adequate notice of the allegations pursuant to § 5.57 or who is found in the Commission's final decision to have violated 18 U.S.C. 207 (a), (b), or (c), the Commission may order such disciplinary action as it deems warranted, including:

(a) Reprimand;

(b) Suspension from participating in a particular matter or matters before the Commission; or

(c) Prohibiting the respondent from making, with the intent to influence,

any formal or informal appearance before, or any oral or written communication to, the Commission or its staff on any matter or business on behalf of any other person (except the United States) for a period not to exceed five (5) years.

### §5.68 Judicial review.

A respondent against whom the Commission has issued an order imposing disciplinary action under this part may seek judicial review of the Commission's determination in an appropriate United States District Court by filing a petition for such review within sixty (60) days of receipt of notice of the Commission's final decision.

## PART 6—ENFORCEMENT OF NONDISCRIMINATION ON THE BASIS OF HANDICAP IN PROGRAMS OR ACTIVITIES CONDUCTED BY THE FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

Sec.
6.101 Purpose.
6.102 Application.
6.103 Definitions.
6.104–6.109 [Reserved]
6.110 Self-evaluation.
6.111 Notice.
6.112–6.129 [Reserved]
6.130 General prohibitions against discrimination.
6.131–6.139 [Reserved]
6.140 Employment.
6.141–6.148 [Reserved]
6.149 Program accessibility: Discrimination prohibited.
6.150 Program accessibility: Existing facilities.
6.151 Program accessibility: New construction and alterations.
6.152–6.159 [Reserved]
6.160 Communications.
6.161–6.169 [Reserved]
6.170 Compliance procedures.
6.171–6.999 [Reserved]

AUTHORITY: 29 U.S.C. 794.

SOURCE: 52 FR 45628, Dec. 1, 1987, unless otherwise noted.

### §6.101 Purpose.

This part effectuates section 119 of the Rehabilitation, Comprehensive Services, and Developmental Disabilities Amendments of 1978, which amended section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 to prohibit discrimination on the basis of handicap in programs or activities conducted by Executive agencies or the United States Postal Service.

### §6.102 Application.

This part applies to all programs or activities conducted by the Commission except for programs or activities conducted outside the United States that do not involve individuals with handicaps in the United States.

### §6.103 Definitions.

For purposes of this part, the term—

*Auxiliary aids* means services or devices that enable persons with impaired sensory, manual, or speaking skills to have an equal opportunity to participate in, and to enjoy the benefits of, programs or activities conducted by the Commission. For example, auxiliary aids useful for persons with impaired vision include readers, Brailled materials, audio recordings, and other similar services and devices. Auxiliary aids useful for persons with impaired hearing include telephone handset amplifiers, telephones compatible with hearing aids, telecommunication devices for deaf persons (TDD's), interpreters, notetakers, written materials, and other similar services and devices.

*Commission* means the Federal Trade Commission.

*Complete complaint* means a written statement that contains the complainant's name and address and describes the Commission's alleged discriminatory action in sufficient detail to inform the Commission of the nature and date of the alleged violation of section 504. It shall be signed by the complainant or by someone authorized to do so on his or her behalf. Complaints filed on behalf of classes or third parties shall describe or identify (by name, if possible) the alleged victims of discrimination.

*Facility* means all or any portion of buildings, structures, equipment, roads, walks, parking lots, rolling stock or other conveyances, or other real or personal property.

*Individual with handicaps* means any person who has a physical or mental impairment that substantially limits

one or more major life activities, has a record of such an impairment, or is regarded as having such an impairment. As used in this definition, the phrase:

(1) *Physical or mental impairment* includes—

(i) Any physiological disorder or condition, cosmetic disfigurement, or anatomical loss affecting one or more of the following body systems: Neurological; musculoskeletal; special sense organs; respiratory, including speech organs; cardiovascular; reproductive; digestive; genitourinary; hemic and lymphatic; skin; and endocrine; or

(ii) Any mental or psychological disorder, such as mental retardation, organic brain syndrome, emotional or mental illness, and specific learning disabilities. The term *physical or mental impairment* includes, but is not limited to, such diseases and conditions as orthopedic, visual, speech, and hearing impairments, cerebral palsy, epilepsy, muscular dystrophy, multiple sclerosis, cancer, heart disease, diabetes, mental retardation, emotional illness, and drug addiction and alcoholism.

(2) *Major life activities* includes functions such as caring for one's self, performing manual tasks, walking, seeing, hearing, speaking, breathing, learning, and working.

(3) *Has a record of such an impairment* means has a history of, or has been misclassified as having, a mental or physical impairment that substantially limits one or more major life activities.

(4) *Is regarded as having an impairment* means—

(i) Has a physical or mental impairment that does not substantially limit major life activities but is treated by the Commission as constituting such a limitation;

(ii) Has a physical or mental impairment that substantially limits major life activities only as a result of the attitudes of others toward such impairment; or

(iii) Has none of the impairments defined in paragraph (1) of this definition but is treated by the Commission as having such an impairment.

*Qualified individual with handicaps* means—

(1) With respect to any Commission program or activity under which a person is required to perform services or to achieve a level of accomplishment, an individual with handicaps who meets the essential eligibility requirements and who can achieve the purpose of the program or activity without modifications in the program or activity that the Commission can demonstrate would result in a fundamental alteration in its nature; and

(2) With respect to any other program or activity, an individual with handicaps who meets the essential eligibility requirements for participation in, or receipt of benefits from, that program or activity.

(3) *Qualified handicapped person* as that term is defined for purposes of employment in 29 CFR 1613.702 (f), which is made applicable to this part by § 6.140.

*Section 504* means section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (Pub. L. 93–112, 87 Stat. 394 (29 U.S.C. 794)), as amended by the Rehabilitation Act Amendments of 1974 (Pub. L. 93–516, 88 Stat. 1617); the Rehabilitation, Comprehensive Services, and Developmental Disabilities Amendments of 1978 (Pub. L. 95–602, 92 Stat. 2955) and the Rehabilitation Act Amendments of 1986 (Pub. L. 99–506, 100 Stat. 1810). As used in this part, section 504 applies only to programs or activities conducted by Executive agencies and not to federally assisted programs.

**§§ 6.104–6.109 [Reserved]**

**§ 6.110 Self-evaluation.**

(a) The Commission shall, by February 1, 1989, evaluate its current policies and practices, and the effects thereof, that do not or may not meet the requirements of this part, and, to the extent modification of any such policies and practices is required, the Commission shall proceed to make the necessary modifications.

(b) The Commission shall provide an opportunity to interested persons, including individuals with handicaps or organizations representing individuals with handicaps, to participate in the self-evaluation process by submitting comments (both oral and written).

(c) The Commission shall, for at least three years following completion of the

self-evaluation required under paragraph (a) of this section, maintain on file and make available for public inspection:

(1) A description of areas examined and any problems identified, and

(2) A description of any modifications made.

### §6.111 Notice.

The Commission shall make available to employees, applicants, participants, beneficiaries, and other interested persons such information regarding the provisions of this part and its applicability to the programs or activities conducted by the Commission, and make such information available to them in such manner as the Chairman or his or her designee finds necessary to apprise such persons of the protections against discrimination assured to them by section 504 and this regulation.

### §§6.112–6.129 [Reserved]

### §6.130 General prohibitions against discrimination.

(a) No qualified individual with handicaps shall, on the basis of handicap, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity conducted by the Commission.

(b)(1) The Commission, in providing any aid, benefit, or service, may not, directly or through contractual, licensing, or other arrangements, on the basis of handicap—

(i) Deny a qualified individual with handicaps the opportunity to participate in or benefit from the aid, benefit, or service;

(ii) Afford a qualified individual with handicaps an opportunity to participate in or benefit from the aid, benefit, or service that is not equal to that afforded others;

(iii) Provide a qualified individual with handicaps with an aid, benefit, or service that is not as effective in affording equal opportunity to obtain the same result, to gain the same benefit, or to reach the same level of achievement as that provided to others;

(iv) Provide different or separate aid, benefits, or services to individuals with handicaps or to any class of individuals with handicaps than is provided to others unless such action is necessary to provide qualified individuals with handicaps with aid, benefits, or services that are as effective as those provided to others;

(v) Deny a qualified individual with handicaps the opportunity to participate as a member of planning or advisory boards; or

(vi) Otherwise limit a qualified individual with handicaps in the enjoyment of any right, privilege, advantage, or opportunity enjoyed by others receiving the aid, benefit, or service.

(2) The Commission may not deny a qualified individual with handicaps the opportunity to participate in programs or activities that are not separate or different, despite the existence of permissibly separate or different programs or activities.

(3) The Commission may not, directly or through contractual or other arrangements, utilize criteria or methods of administration the purpose or effect of which would—

(i) Subject qualified individuals with handicaps to discrimination on the basis of handicap; or

(ii) Defeat or substantially impair accomplishment of the objectives of a program or activity with respect to individuals with handicaps.

(4) The Commission may not, in determining the site or location of a facility, make selections the purpose or effect of which would—

(i) Exclude individuals with handicaps from, deny them the benefits of, or otherwise subject them to discrimination under any program or activity conducted by the Commission; or

(ii) Defeat or substantially impair the accomplishment of the objectives of a program or activity with respect to individuals with handicaps.

(5) The Commission, in the selection of procurement contractors, may not use criteria that subject qualified individuals with handicaps to discrimination on the basis of handicap.

(c) The exclusion of nonhandicapped persons from the benefits of a program limited by Federal statute or Executive order to individuals with handicaps or the exclusion of a specific class of individuals with handicaps from a

program limited by Federal statute or Executive order to a different class of individuals with handicaps is not prohibited by this part.

(d) The Commission shall administer programs and activities in the most integrated setting appropriate to the needs of qualified individuals with handicaps.

**§§ 6.131–6.139 [Reserved]**

**§ 6.140 Employment.**

No qualified individual with handicaps shall, on the basis of handicap, be subjected to discrimination in employment under any program or activity conducted by the Commission. The definitions, requirements and procedures of section 501 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 791), as established by the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission in 29 CFR part 1613, shall apply to employment in federally conducted programs or activities.

**§§ 6.141–6.148 [Reserved]**

**§ 6.149 Program accessibility: Discrimination prohibited.**

Except as otherwise provided in § 6.150, no qualified individuals with handicaps shall, because the Commission's facilities are inaccessible to or unusable by individuals with handicaps, be denied the benefits of, be excluded from participation in, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity conducted by the Commission.

**§ 6.150 Program accessibility: Existing facilities.**

(a) *General.* The Commission shall operate each program or activity so that the program or activity, when viewed in its entirety, is readily accessible to and usable by individuals with handicaps. This paragraph does not—

(1) Necessarily require the Commission to make each of its existing facilities accessible to and usable by individuals with handicaps, or

(2) Require the Commission to take any action that it can demonstrate would result in a fundamental alteration in the nature of a program or activity or in undue financial and administrative burdens. In those circumstances where Commission personnel believe that the proposed action would fundamentally alter the program or activity or would result in undue financial and administrative burdens, the Commission has the burden of proving that compliance with § 6.150(a) would result in such alteration or burdens. The decision that compliance would result in such alteration or burdens must be made by the Chairman or his or her designee after considering all Commission resources available for use in the funding and operation of the conducted program or activity, and must be accompanied by a written statement of the reasons for reaching that conclusion. If an action would result in such an alteration or such burdens, the Commission shall take any other action that would not result in such an alteration or such burdens, but would, nevertheless, ensure that individuals with handicaps receive the benefits and services of the program or activity.

(b) *Methods.* The Commission may comply with the requirements of this section through such means as redesign of equipment, reassignment of services to accessible buildings, assignment of aides to beneficiaries, home visits, delivery of services at alternate accessible sites, alteration of existing facilities and construction of new facilities, use of accessible rolling stock, or any methods that result in making its programs or activities readily accessible to and usable by individuals with handicaps. The Commission is not required to make structural changes in existing facilities where other methods are effective in achieving compliance with this section. The Commission, in making alterations to existing buildings, shall meet accessibility requirements to the extent compelled by the Architectural Barriers Act of 1968, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4151–4157) and any regulations implementing it. In choosing among available methods for meeting the requirements of this section, the Commission shall give priority to those methods that offer programs and activities to qualified individuals with handicaps in the most integrated setting appropriate.

(c) *Time period for compliance.* The Commission shall comply with the obligations established under this section by April 1, 1988, except that where structural changes in facilities are undertaken, such changes shall be made by February 1, 1991, but in any event as expeditiously as possible.

(d) *Transition plan.* In the event that structural changes to facilities will be undertaken to achieve program accessibility, the Commission shall develop, by August 1, 1988, a transition plan setting forth the steps necessary to complete such changes. The Commission shall provide an opportunity to interested persons, including individuals with handicaps or organizations representing individuals with handicaps, to participate in the development of the transition plan by submitting comments (both oral and written). A copy of the transition plan shall be made available for public inspection. The plan shall, at a minimum—

(1) Identify physical obstacles in the Commission's facilities that limit the accessibility of its programs or activities to individuals with handicaps;

(2) Describe in detail the methods that will be used to make the facilities accessible;

(3) Specify the schedule for taking the steps necessary to achieve compliance with this section and, if the time period of the transition plan is longer than one year, identify steps that will be taken during each year of the transition period;

(4) Indicate the official responsible for implementation of the plan; and

(5) Identify the persons or groups with whose assistance the plan was prepared.

### §6.151 Program accessibility: New construction and alterations.

Each building or part of a building that is constructed or altered by, on behalf of, or for the use of the Commission shall be designed, constructed, or altered so as to be readily accessible to and usable by individuals with handicaps. The definitions, requirements, and standards of the Architectural Barriers Act (42 U.S.C. 4151–4157), as established in 41 CFR 101–19.600 to 101–19.607, apply to buildings covered by this section.

### §§6.152–6.159 [Reserved]

### §6.160 Communications.

(a) The Commission shall take appropriate steps to ensure effective communication with applicants, participants, personnel of other Federal entities, and members of the public.

(1) The Commission shall furnish appropriate auxiliary aids where necessary to afford an individual with handicaps an equal opportunity to participate in, and enjoy the benefits of, a program or activity conducted by the Commission.

(i) In determining what type of auxiliary aid is necessary, the Commission shall give primary consideration to the requests of the individual with handicaps.

(ii) The Commission need not provide individually prescribed devices, readers for personal use or study, or other devices of a personal nature.

(2) Where the Commission communicates with applicants and beneficiaries by telephone, telecommunication devices for deaf persons (TDD's), or equally effective telecommunication systems shall be used.

(b) The Commission shall ensure that interested persons, including persons with impaired vision or hearing, can obtain information as to the existence and location of accessible services, activities, and facilities.

(c) The Commission shall provide signs at a primary entrance to each of its inaccessible facilities, directing users to a location at which they can obtain information about accessible facilities. The international symbol for accessibility shall be used at each primary entrance of an accessible facility.

(d) This section does not require the Commission to take any action that it can demonstrate would result in a fundamental alteration in the nature of a program or activity, or in undue financial and administrative burdens. In those circumstances where Commission personnel believe that the proposed action would fundamentally alter the program or activity or would result in undue financial and administrative burdens, the Commission has the burden of proving that compliance with §6.160 would result in such alteration or burdens. The decision that

compliance would result in such alteration or burdens must be made by the Chairman or his or her designee after considering all Commission resources available for use in the funding and operation of the conducted program or activity, and must be accompanied by a written statement of the reasons for reaching that conclusion. If an action required to comply with this section would result in such an alteration or such burdens, the Commission shall take any other action that would not result in such an alteration or burdens but would nevertheless ensure that, to the maximum extent possible, individuals with handicaps receive the benefits and services of the program or activity.

**§§ 6.161–6.169 [Reserved]**

**§ 6.170 Compliance procedures.**

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, this section applies to all allegations of discrimination on the basis of handicap in programs or activities conducted by the Commission.

(b) The Commission shall process complaints alleging violations of section 504 with respect to employment according to the procedures established by the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission in 29 CFR part 1613 pursuant to section 501 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 791).

(c) Responsibility for implementation and operation of this section is vested in the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity.

(d)(1) A complete complaint under this section may be filed by any person who believes that he or she or any specific class of persons of which he or she is a member has been subjected to discrimination prohibited by this part. The complaint may also be filed by an authorized representative of any such person.

(2) The complaint must be filed within 180 days of the alleged act of discrimination unless the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity extends the time period for good cause.

(3) The complaint must be addressed to the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity, Federal Trade Commission, 6th and Pennsylvania Ave. NW., Washington, DC 20580.

(e) If the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity receives a complaint over which the Commission does not have jurisdiction, he or she shall promptly notify the complainant and shall make reasonable efforts to refer the complaint to the appropriate Government entity.

(f) The Director of Equal Employment Opportunity shall notify the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board upon receipt of any complaint alleging that a building or facility that is subject to the Architectural Barriers Act of 1968, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4151–4157) is not readily accessible to and usable by individuals with handicaps.

(g)(1) The Director of Equal Employment Opportunity shall accept and investigate a complete complaint that is filed in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section and over which the Commission has jurisdiction.

(2) If the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity receives a complaint that is not complete (see § 6.103), he or she shall, within 30 days thereafter, notify the complainant that additional information is needed. If the complainant fails to complete the complaint within 30 days of the date of the Director's notice, the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity may dismiss the complaint without prejudice.

(h) Within 180 days of the receipt of a complete complaint over which the Commission has jurisdiction, the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity shall notify the complainant of the results of the investigation in a letter containing—

(1) Findings of fact and conclusions of law;

(2) A description of a remedy for each violation found; and

(3) A notice of the right to appeal to the Commission's General Counsel.

(i)(1) An appeal under this section must be filed within 90 days of the complainant's receipt of the letter under paragraph (h) of this section unless the General Counsel extends the time period for good cause.

(2) The appeal must be addressed to the General Counsel, Federal Trade

Commission, 6th and Pennsylvania Ave. NW., Washington, DC 20580.

(3) The appeal shall specify the questions raised by the appeal and the arguments on the points of fact and law relied upon in support of the position taken on each question; and it shall include copies of the complaint filed under paragraph (d) of this section and the letter by the Director of Equal Employment Opportunity under paragraph (h) of this section as well as any other material relied upon in support of the appeal.

(j) The General Counsel shall notify the complainant of the results of the appeal within 60 days of the receipt of the appeal. If the General Counsel determines that additional information is needed from the complainant, the General Counsel shall have 60 days from the date of receipt of the additional information to make a final determination on the appeal. The General Counsel may submit the appeal to the Commission for final determination provided that any final determination of the appeal is made by the Commission within the 60-day period specified by this paragraph.

(k) The time limits specified by paragraphs (h) and (j) of this section may be extended by the Chairman for good cause.

(l) The Commission may delegate its authority for conducting complaint investigations to other Federal agencies, except that the authority for making the final determination may not be delegated.

**§§6.171–6.999 [Reserved]**

## PART 14—ADMINISTRATIVE INTERPRETATIONS, GENERAL POLICY STATEMENTS, AND ENFORCEMENT POLICY STATEMENTS

Sec.

14.9 Requirements concerning clear and conspicuous disclosures in foreign language advertising and sales materials.
14.12 Use of secret coding in marketing research.
14.15 In regard to comparative advertising.
14.16 Interpretation of Truth-in-Lending Orders consistent with amendments to the Truth-in-Lending Act and Regulation Z.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

### §14.9 Requirements concerning clear and conspicuous disclosures in foreign language advertising and sales materials.

The Federal Trade Commission has noted that, with increasing intensity, advertisers are making special efforts to reach foreign language-speaking consumers. As part of this special effort, advertisements, brochures and sales documents are being printed in foreign languages. In recent years the Commission has issued various cease-and-desist orders as well as rules, guides and other statements, which require affirmative disclosures in connection with certain kinds of representations and business activities. Generally, these disclosures are required to be ''clear and conspicuous.'' Because questions have arisen as to the meaning and application of the phrase ''clear and conspicuous'' with respect to foreign language advertisements and sales materials, the Commission deems it appropriate to set forth the following enforcement policy statement:

(a) Where cease-and-desist orders as well as rules, guides and other statements require ''clear and conspicuous'' disclosure of certain information, that disclosure must be in the same language as that principally used in the advertisements and sales materials involved.

(b) Any respondent who fails to comply with this requirement may be the subject of a civil penalty proceeding for violating the terms of a Commission cease-and-desist order.

(Sec. 5, 38 Stat. 719, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 45)

[38 FR 21494, Aug. 9, 1973]

### §14.12 Use of secret coding in marketing research.

(a) The Federal Trade Commission has determined to close its industry-wide investigation of marketing research firms that was initiated in November 1975, to determine if the firms were using questionnaires with invisible coding that could be used to reveal a survey respondent's identity. After a thorough investigation, the Commission has determined that invisible coding has been used by the marketing research industry, but it is neither a

commonly used nor widespread practice. Moreover, use of the practice appears to have diminished in recent years. For these reasons, the Commission has determined that further action is not warranted at this time.

(b) However, for the purpose of providing guidance to the marketing research industry, the Commission is issuing the following statement with regard to its future enforcement intentions. The Commission has reason to believe that it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice, violative of section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 45) to induce consumers to provide information about themselves by expressly or implicitly promising that such information is being provided anonymously, when, in fact, a secret or invisible code is used on the survey form or return envelope that allows identification of the consumer who has provided the information.

(c) While the Commission has made no final determination regarding the legality of the foregoing practice, the Commission will take appropriate enforcement action should it discover the practice to be continuing in the future, and in the event that it may be causing substantial consumer injury. Among the circumstances in which the Commission believes that the use of secret coding may cause significant consumer harm are those in which:

(1) A misleading promise of anonymity is used to obtain highly sensitive information about a consumer that such consumer would not choose to disclose if he or she were informed that a code was being used that would allow his or her name to be associated with the response; and

(2) Information of any sort is used for purposes other than those of the market survey.

[43 FR 42742, Sept. 21, 1978]

### § 14.15 In regard to comparative advertising.

(a) *Introduction.* The Commission's staff has conducted an investigation of industry trade associations and the advertising media regarding their comparative advertising policies. In the course of this investigation, numerous industry codes, statements of policy, interpretations and standards were examined. Many of the industry codes and standards contain language that could be interpreted as discouraging the use of comparative advertising. This Policy Statement enunciates the Commission's position that industry self-regulation should not restrain the use by advertisers of truthful comparative advertising.

(b) *Policy Statement.* The Federal Trade Commission has determined that it would be of benefit to advertisers, advertising agencies, broadcasters, and self-regulation entities to restate its current policy concerning comparative advertising.[1] Commission policy in the area of comparative advertising encourages the naming of, or reference to competitiors, but requires clarity, and, if necessary, disclosure to avoid deception of the consumer. Additionally, the use of truthful comparative advertising should not be restrained by broadcasters or self-regulation entities.

(c) The Commission has supported the use of brand comparisions where the bases of comparision are clearly identified. Comparative advertising, when truthful and nondeceptive, is a source of important information to consumers and assists them in making rational purchase decisions. Comparative advertising encourages product improvement and innovation, and can lead to lower prices in the marketplace. For these reasons, the Commission will continue to scrutinize carefully restraints upon its use.

(1) *Disparagement.* Some industry codes which prohibit practices such as ''disparagement,'' ''disparagement of competitors,'' ''improper disparagement,'' ''unfairly attaching,'' ''discrediting,'' may operate as a restriction on comparative advertising. The Commission has previously held that disparaging advertising is permissible so long as it is truthful and not deceptive. In *Carter Products, Inc.,* 60 F.T.C. 782, *modified,* 323 F.2d 523 (5th Cir. 1963), the Commission narrowed an order recommended by the hearing examiner

[1] For purposes of this Policy Statement, comparative advertising is defined as advertising that compares alternative brands on objectively measurable attributes or price, and identifies the alternative brand by name, illustration or other distinctive information.

which would have prohibited respondents from disparaging competing products through the use of false or misleading pictures, depictions, or demonstrations, ''or otherwise'' disparaging such products. In explaining why it eliminated ''or otherwise'' from the final order, the Commission observed that the phrase would have prevented:

> respondents from making truthful and non-deceptive statements that a product has certain desirable properties or qualities which a competing product or products do not possess. Such a comparison may have the effect of disparaging the competing product, but we know of no rule of law which prevents a seller from honestly informing the public of the advantages of its products as opposed to those of competing products. 60 F.T.C. at 796.

Industry codes which restrain comparative advertising in this manner are subject to challenge by the Federal Trade Commission.

(2) *Substantiation*. On occasion, a higher standard of substantiation by advertisers using comparative advertising has been required by self-regulation entities. The Commission evaluates comparative advertising in the same manner as it evaluates all other advertising techniques. The ultimate question is whether or not the advertising has a tendency or capacity to be false or deceptive. This is a factual issue to be determined on a case-by-case basis. However, industry codes and interpretations that impose a higher standard of substantiation for comparative claims than for unilateral claims are inappropriate and should be revised.

(Sec. 5, 38 Stat. 719, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 45)

[44 FR 47328, Aug. 13, 1979]

### §14.16 Interpretation of Truth-in-Lending Orders consistent with amendments to the Truth-in-Lending Act and Regulation Z.

*Introduction*

The Federal Trade Commission (FTC) has determined that there is a need to clarify the compliance responsibilities under the Truth-in-Lending Act (TILA) (Title I, Consumer Credit Protection Act, 15 U.S.C. 1601 *et seq.*), as amended by the Truth-in-Lending Simplification and Reform Act of 1980 (Pub. L. 96–221, 94 Stat. 168), and under revised Regulation Z (12 CFR part 226, 46 FR 20848), and subsequent amendments to the TILA and Regulation Z, of those creditors and advertisers who are subject to final cease and desist orders that require compliance with provisions of the Truth-in-Lending statute or Regulation Z. Clarification is necessary because the Truth-in-Lending Simplification and Reform Act and revised Regulation Z significantly relaxed prior Truth-in-Lending requirements on which provisions of numerous outstanding orders were based. The Policy Statement provides that the Commission will interpret and enforce Truth-in-Lending provisions of all orders so as to impose no greater or different disclosure obligations on creditors and advertisers named in such orders than are required generally of creditors and advertisers under the TILA and Regulation Z, and subsequent amendments to the TILA and Regulation Z.

*Policy Statement*

(a) All cease and desist orders issued by the FTC that require compliance with provisions of the Truth-in-Lending Act and Regulation Z (12 CFR part 226) will be interpreted and enforced consistent with the amendments to the TILA incorporated by the Truth-in-Lending Simplification and Reform Act of 1980, and the revision of Regulation Z implementing the same, promulgated on April 1, 1981 by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (46 FR 20848), and by subsequent amendments to the TILA and Regulation Z. Likewise, the Federal Reserve Board staff commentary to revised Regulation Z (46 FR 50288, October 9, 1981), and subsequent revisions to the Federal Reserve Board staff commentary to Regulation Z, will be considered in interpreting the requirements of existing orders.

(b) After an amendment to Regulation Z becomes effective, compliance with the revised credit disclosure requirements will be considered compliance with the existing order, and:

(1) To the extent that revised Regulation Z deletes disclosure requirements imposed by any Commission order, compliance with these requirements will no longer be required; however,

(2) To the extent that revised Regulation Z imposes additional disclosure or format requirements, a failure to comply with the added requirements will be considered a violation of the TILA.

(c) A creditor or advertiser must continue to comply with all provisions of the order which do not relate to Truth-in-Lending Act requirements or are unaffected by Regulation Z. These provisions are not affected by this policy statement and will remain in full force and effect.

*Staff Clarifications*

The Commission intends that this Enforcement Policy Statement obviate the need for any creditor or advertiser to file a petition to reopen and modify any affected order under section 2.51 of the Commission's rules of practice (16 CFR 2.51). However, the Commission recognizes that the policy statement may not provide clear guidance to every creditor or advertiser under order. The staff of the Division of Enforcement, Bureau of Consumer Protection, will respond to written requests for clarification of any order affected by this policy statement.

[60 FR 42033, Aug. 15, 1995]

## PART 16—ADVISORY COMMITTEE MANAGEMENT

Sec.
16.1 Purpose and scope.
16.2 Definitions.
16.3 Policy.
16.4 Advisory Committee Management Officer.
16.5 Establishment of advisory committees.
16.6 Charter.
16.7 Meetings.
16.8 Closed meetings.
16.9 Notice of meetings.
16.10 Minutes and transcripts of meetings.
16.11 Annual comprehensive review.
16.12 Termination of advisory committees.
16.13 Renewal of advisory committees.
16.14 Amendments.
16.15 Reports of advisory committees.
16.16 Compensation.

AUTHORITY: Federal Advisory Committee Act, 5 U.S.C. App. I Section 8(a).

SOURCE: 51 FR 30055, Aug. 22, 1986, unless otherwise noted.

### § 16.1 Purpose and scope.

(a) The regulations in this part implement the Federal Advisory Committee Act, 5 U.S.C. App. I.

(b) These regulations shall apply to any advisory committee, as defined in paragraph (b) of § 16.2 of this part. However, to the extent that an advisory committee is subject to particular statutory provisions that are inconsistent with the Federal Advisory Committee Act, these regulations do not apply.

### § 16.2 Definitions.

For purposes of this part:

(a) *Administrator* means the Administrator of the General Services Administration.

(b) *Advisory committee,* subject to exclusions described in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, means any committee, board, commission, council, panel, task force, or other similar group, or any subcommittee or other subgroup thereof, which is established or utilized by the Commission for the purpose of obtaining advice or recommendations for the Commission or other agency or officer of the Federal Government on matters that are within the scope of the Commission's jurisdiction.

(1) Where a group provides some advice to the Commission but the group's advisory function is incidental and inseparable from other (e.g., operational or management) functions, the provisions of this part do not apply. However, if the advisory function is separable, the group is subject to this part to the extent that the group operates as an advisory committee.

(2) Groups excluded from the effect of the provisions of this part include:

(i) Any committee composed wholly of full-time officers or employees of the Federal Government;

(ii) Any committee, subcommittee or subgroup that is exclusively operational in nature (e.g., has functions that include making or implementing decisions, as opposed to the offering of advice or recommendations);

(iii) Any inter-agency advisory committee unless specifically made applicable by the establishing authority.

(c) *Commission* means the Federal Trade Commission.

(d) *GSA* means the General Services Administration.

(e) *Secretariat* means the Committee Management Secretariat of the General Services Administration.

(f) *Sunshine Act* means the Government in the Sunshine Act, 5 U.S.C. 552b.

**§16.3 Policy.**

(a) The Commission's policy shall be to:

(1) Establish an advisory committee only when it is essential to the conduct of agency business;

(2) Insure that adequate information is provided to the Congress and the public regarding advisory committees, and that there are adequate opportunities for access by the public to advisory committee meetings;

(3) Insure that the membership of the advisory committee is balanced in terms of the points of view represented and the functions to be performed; and

(4) Terminate an advisory committee whenever the stated objectives of the committee have been accomplished; the subject matter or work of the advisory committee has become obsolete; the cost of operating the advisory committee is excessive in relation to the benefits accruing to the Commission; or the advisory committee is otherwise no longer a necessary or appropriate means to carry out the purposes for which it was established.

(b) No advisory committee may be used for functions that are not solely advisory unless specifically authorized to do so by law. The Commission shall be solely responsible for making policy decisions and determining action to be taken with respect to any matter considered by an advisory committee.

**§16.4 Advisory Committee Management Officer.**

(a) The Commission shall designate the Executive Director as the Advisory Committee Management Officer who shall:

(1) Exercise control and supervision over the establishment, procedures, and accomplishments of the advisory committees established by the Commission;

(2) Assemble and maintain the reports, records, and other papers of any advisory committee during its existence;

(3) Carry out, on behalf of the Commission, the provisions of the Freedom of Information Act, 5 U.S.C. 552, with respect to such reports, records, and other papers;

(4) Maintain in a single location a complete set for the charters and membership lists of each of the Commission's advisory committees;

(5) Maintain information on the nature, functions, and operations of each of the Commission's advisory committees; and

(6) Provide information on how to obtain copies of minutes of meetings and reports of each of the Commission's advisory committees.

(b) The name of the Advisory Committee Management Officer designated in accordance with this part, and his or her agency address and telephone number, shall be provided to the Secretariat.

**§16.5 Establishment of advisory committees.**

(a) No advisory committee shall be established under this part unless such establishment is:

(1) Specifically authorized by statute; or

(2) Determined as a matter of formal record by the Commission, after consultation with the Administrator, to be in the public interest in connection with the performance of duties imposed on the Commission by law.

(b) In establishing an advisory committee, the Commission shall:

(1) Prepare a proposed charter for the advisory committee in accordance with §16.6 of this part; and

(2) Submit an original and one copy of a letter to the Administrator requesting concurrence in the Commission's proposal to establish an advisory committee. The letter from the Commission shall describe the nature and purpose of the proposed advisory committee, including an explanation of why establishment of the advisory committee is essential to the conduct of agency business and in the public interest and why the functions of the proposed committee could not be performed by the Commission, by an existing committee, or through other means. The letter shall also describe

the Commission's plan to attain balanced membership on the proposed advisory committee in terms of points of view to be represented and functions to be performed. The letter shall be accompanied by two copies of the proposed charter.

(c) Upon the receipt of notification from the Administrator of his or her concurrence or nonconcurrence, the Commission shall notify the Administrator in writing that either:

(1) The advisory committee is being established. The filing of an advisory committee charter as specified in § 16.6 of this part shall be deemed appropriate written notification in this instance; or

(2) The advisory committee is not being established.

(d) If the Commission determines that an advisory committee should be established in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section, the Commission shall publish notice to that effect in the FEDERAL REGISTER at least fifteen days prior to the filing of the advisory committee's charter unless the Administrator authorizes publication of such notice within a shorter period of time. The notice shall identify the name and purpose of the advisory committee, state that the committee is necessary and in the public interest, and identify the name and address of the Commission official to whom the public may submit comments.

(e) The Commission may issue regulations or guidelines as may be necessary to operate and oversee a particular advisory committee.

### § 16.6 Charter.

(a) No advisory committee established, utilized, reestablished or renewed by the Commission under this part shall meet or take any action until its charter has been filed by the Commission with the standing committees of the Senate and House of Representatives having legislative jurisdiction over the Commission.

(b) The charter required by paragraph (a) of this section shall include the following information:

(1) The committee's official designation;

(2) The committee's objectives and the scope of its activity;

(3) The period of time necessary for the committee to carry out its purposes;

(4) The Commission component or official to whom the committee reports;

(5) The agency or official responsible for providing the necessary support for the committee;

(6) A description of the duties for which the committee is responsible, and, if such duties are not solely advisory, a specification of the authority for such functions;

(7) The estimated annual operating cost in dollars and man-years for the committee;

(8) The estimated number and frequency of committee meetings;

(9) The committee's termination date, if less than two years from the date of committee's establishment; and

(10) The date the charter is filed.

(c) A copy of the charter required by paragraph (a) of this section shall also be furnished at the time of filing to the Secretariat and the Library of Congress.

(d) The requirements of this section shall also apply to committees utilized as advisory committees, even though not expressly established for that purpose.

### § 16.7 Meetings.

(a) The Commission shall designate an officer or employee of the Federal Government as the Designated Federal Officer for the advisory committee. The Designated Federal Officer shall attend the meetings of the advisory committee, and shall adjourn committee meetings whenever he or she determines that adjournment is in the public interest. The Commission, in its discretion, may authorize the Designated Federal Officer to chair meetings of the advisory committee.

(b) No meeting of any advisory committee shall be held except at the call of, or with the advance approval of, the Designated Federal Officer and with an agenda approved by such official.

(c) The agenda required by paragraph (b) of this section shall identify, in general terms, matters to be considered at the meeting and shall indicate whether any part of the meeting will concern matters that the General Counsel has determined to be covered by one or

more of the exemptions of the Sunshine Act.

(d) Timely notice of each meeting of the advisory committee shall be provided in accordance with §16.9 of this part.

(e) Subject to the provisions of §16.8 of this part, each meeting of an advisory committee as defined in §16.2(b) of this part shall be open to the public. Subcommittees and subgroups that are not utilized by the Commission for the purpose of obtaining advice or recommendations do not constitute advisory committees within the meaning of §16.2(b) and are not subject to the meeting and other requirements of this part.

(f) Meetings that are completely or partly open to the public shall be held at reasonable times and at places that are reasonably accessible to members of the public. The size of the meeting room shall be sufficient to accommodate members of the public who can reasonably be expected to attend.

(g) Any member of the public shall be permitted to file a written statement with the committee concerning any matter to be considered in a meeting. Interested persons may be permitted by the committee chairman to speak at such meetings in accordance with procedures established by the committee and subject to the time constraints under which the meeting is to be conducted.

(h) No meeting of any advisory committee shall be held in the absence of a quorum. Unless otherwise established by statute or in the charter of the committee, a quorum shall consist of a majority of the committee's authorized membership.

### §16.8 Closed meetings.

(a) Paragraphs (e), (f), and (g) of §16.7 of this part, which require that meetings shall be open to the public and that the public shall be afforded an opportunity to participate in such meetings, shall not apply to any advisory committee meeting (or any portion thereof) which the Commission determines is concerned with any matter covered by one or more of the exemptions set forth in paragraph (c) of the Sunshine Act, 5 U.S.C. section 552b(c).

(b) An advisory committee that seeks to have all or part of its meeting closed shall notify the Commission at least thirty days before the scheduled date of the meeting. The notification shall be in writing and shall identify the specific provisions of the Sunshine Act which justify closure. The Commission may waive the thirty-day requirement when a lesser period of time is requested and justified by the advisory committee.

(c) The General Counsel shall review all requests to close meetings and shall advise the Commission on the disposition of each such request.

(d) If the Commission determines that the request is consistent with the policies of the Sunshine Act and the Federal Advisory Committee Act, it shall issue a determination that all or part of the meeting may be closed. A copy of the Commission's determination shall be made available to the public upon request.

(e) The advisory committee shall issue, on an annual basis, a report that sets forth a summary of its activities in meetings closed pursuant to this section, addressing those related matters as would be informative to the public and consistent with the policy of the Sunshine Act and of this part. Notice of the availability of such annual reports shall be published in accordance with §16.15 of this part.

### §16.9 Notice of meetings.

(a) Notice of each advisory committee meeting, whether open or closed to the public, shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER at least 15 days before the meeting date. Such notice shall include the exact name of the advisory committee as chartered; the time, date, place and purpose of the meeting; and a summary of the meeting agenda. Notice shall also state that the meeting is open to the public or closed in whole or in part, and, if closed, cite the specific exemptions of the Sunshine Act as the basis for closure. The Commission may permit the advisory committee to provide notice of less than fifteen days in extraordinary situations, provided that the reasons for doing so are included in the meeting notice.

(b) In addition to the notice required by paragraph (a) of this section, other forms of notice such as press releases and notices in professional journals may be used to inform interested members of the public of advisory committee meetings.

### § 16.10 Minutes and transcripts of meetings.

(a) Detailed minutes of each advisory committee meeting shall be kept. The minutes shall reflect the time, date and place of the meeting; and accurate summary of each matter that was discussed and each conclusion reached; and a copy of each report or other document received, issued, or approved by the advisory committee. In addition, the minutes shall include a list of advisory committee members and staff and full-time Federal employees who attended the meeting; a list of members of the public who presented oral or written statements; and an estimated number of members of the public who were present at the meeting. The minutes shall describe the extent to which the meeting was open to the public and the nature and extent of any public participation. If it is impracticable to attach to the minutes of the meeting any document received, issued, or approved by the advisory committee, then the minutes shall describe the document in sufficient detail to enable any person who may request the document to identify it readily.

(b) The accuracy of all minutes shall be certified to by the chairperson of the advisory committee.

(c) Minutes need not be kept if a verbatim transcript is made.

### § 16.11 Annual comprehensive review.

(a) The Commission shall conduct an annual comprehensive review of the activities and responsibilities of each advisory committee to determine:

(1) Whether such committee is carrying out its purpose;

(2) Whether, consistent with the provisions of applicable statutes, the responsibilities assigned to it should be revised;

(3) Whether it should be merged with any other advisory committee or committees; or

(4) Whether it should be abolished.

(b) Pertinent factors to be considered in the comprehensive review required by paragraph (a) of this section include the following:

(1) The number of times the committee has met in the past year;

(2) The number of reports or recommendations submitted by the committee;

(3) An evaluation of the substance of the committee's reports or recommendations with respect to the Commission's programs or operations;

(4) An evaluation (with emphasis on the preceding twelve month period of the committee's work) of the history of the Commission's utilization of the committee's recommendations in policy formulation, program planning, decision making, more effective achievement of program objectives, and more economical accomplishment of programs in general.

(5) Whether information or recommendations could be obtained from sources within the Commission or from another advisory committee already in existence;

(6) The degree of duplication of effort by the committee as compared with that of other parts of the Commission or other advisory committees; and

(7) The estimated annual cost of the committee.

(c) The annual review required by this section shall be conducted on a fiscal year basis, and results of the review shall be included in the annual report to the GSA required by § 16.15 of this part. The report shall contain a justification of each advisory committee which the Commission determines should be continued, making reference, as appropriate, to the factors specified in paragraph (b) of this section.

### § 16.12 Termination of advisory committees.

Any advisory committee shall automatically terminate not later than two years after it is established, reestablished, or renewed, unless:

(a) Its duration is otherwise provided by law;

(b) It is renewed in accordance with § 16.13 of this part; or

(c) The Commission terminates it before that time.

**§16.13 Renewal of advisory committees.**

(a) Any advisory committee established under this part may be renewed by appropriate action of the Commission and the filing of a new charter. An advisory committee may be continued by such action for successive two-year periods.

(b) Before it renews an advisory committee in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section, the Commission will inform the Administrator by letter, not more than sixty days nor less than thirty days before the committee expires, of the following:

(1) Its determination that a renewal is necessary and in the public interest;

(2) The reasons for its determination;

(3) The Commission's plan to maintain balanced membership on the committee;

(4) An explanation of why the committee's functions cannot be performed by the Commission or by an existing advisory committee.

(c) Upon receipt of the Administrator's notification of concurrence or nonconcurrence, the Commission shall publish a notice of the renewal in the FEDERAL REGISTER, which shall certify that the renewal of the advisory committee is in the public interest and shall include all the matters set forth in paragraph (b) of this section. The Commission shall cause a new charter to be prepared and filed in accordance with the provisions of §§16.5 and 16.6 of this part.

(d) No advisory committee that is required under this section to file a new charter for the purpose of renewal shall take any action, other than preparation and filing of such charter, between the date the new charter is required and the date on which such charter is actually filed.

**§16.14 Amendments.**

(a) The charter of an advisory committee may be amended when the Commission determines that the existing charter no longer accurately describes the committee itself or its goals or procedures. Changes may be minor, such as revising the name of the advisory committee, or may be major, to the extent that they deal with the basic objectives or composition of the committee.

(1) To make a minor amendment to an advisory committee charter, the Commission shall:

(i) Amend the charter language as necessary; and

(ii) File the amended charter in accordance with the provisions of §16.6 of this part.

(2) To make a major amendment to an advisory committee charter, the Commission shall:

(i) Amend the charter language as necessary;

(ii) Submit the proposed amended charter with a letter to the Administrator requesting concurrence in the amended language and an explanation of why the changes are essential and in the public interest; and

(iii) File the amended charter in accordance with the provisions of §16.6 of this part.

(b) Amendment of an existing charter does not constitute renewal of the advisory committee under §16.13 of this part.

**§16.15 Reports of advisory committees.**

(a) The Commission shall furnish, on a fiscal year basis, a report of the activities of each of its advisory committees to the GSA.

(b) Results of the annual comprehensive review of the advisory committee made under §16.11 shall be included in the annual report.

(c) The Commission shall notify the GSA, by letter, of the termination of, changes in the membership of, or other significant developments with respect to, an advisory committee.

**§16.16 Compensation.**

(a) *Committee members.* Unless otherwise provided by law, the Commission shall not compensate advisory committee members for their service on an advisory committee. In the exceptional case where the Commission is unable to meet the need for technical expertise or the requirement for balanced membership solely through the appointment of noncompensated members, the Commission may contract for or authorize the advisory committee to contract for the services of a specific

consultant who may be appointed as a member of the advisory committee. In such a case, the Commission shall follow the procedures set forth in paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) *Consultants.* Prior to hiring or authorizing the advisory committee to hire a consultant to an advisory committee, the Commission shall determine that the expertise or viewpoint to be offered by the consultant is not otherwise available without cost to the Commission. The compensation to be paid to such consultant may not exceed the maximum rate of pay authorized by 5 U.S.C. section 3109. Hiring of consultants shall be in accordance with OMB Circular A–120 and applicable statutes, regulations, and Executive Orders.

(c) *Staff members.* The Commission may fix the pay of each advisory committee staff member at a rate of the General Schedule, General Management Schedule, or Senior Executive Service in which the Staff member's position would appropriately be placed (5 U.S.C. chapter 51). The Commission may not fix the pay of a staff member at a rate higher than the daily equivalent of the maximum rate for GS–15, unless the Commission has determined that under the General Schedule, General Management Schedule, or Senior Executive Service classification system, the staff member's position would appropriately be placed at a grade higher than GS–15. The Commission shall review this determination annually.

# SUBCHAPTER B—GUIDES AND TRADE PRACTICE RULES

## PART 17—APPLICATION OF GUIDES IN PREVENTING UNLAWFUL PRACTICES

NOTE: Industry guides are administrative interpretations of laws administered by the Commission for the guidance of the public in conducting its affairs in conformity with legal requirements. They provide the basis for voluntary and simultaneous abandonment of unlawful practices by members of industry. Failure to comply with the guides may result in corrective action by the commission under applicable statutory provisions. Guides may relate to a practice common to many industries or to specific practices of a particular industry.

(Sec. 6(g), 38 Stat. 722; (15 U.S.C. 46(g))

[44 FR 11176, Feb. 27, 1979]

## PART 18—GUIDES FOR THE NURSERY INDUSTRY

Sec.
18.0 Definitions.
18.1 Deception (general).
18.2 Deception through use of names.
18.3 Substitution of products.
18.4 Size and grade designations.
18.5 Deception as to blooming, fruiting, or growing ability.
18.6 Plants collected from the wild state.
18.7 Misrepresentation as to character of business.
18.8 Deception as to origin or source of industry products.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6 FTC Act; 38 Stat. 719, 721; 15 U.S.C. 45, 46.

SOURCE: 44 FR 11177, Feb. 27, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

### § 18.0 Definitions.

*Industry products.* As used in this part, the term *industry products* includes all types of trees, small fruit plants, shrubs, vines, ornamentals, herbaceous annuals, biennials and perennials, bulbs, corms, rhizomes, and tubers which are offered for sale or sold to the general public. Included are products propagated sexually or asexually and whether grown in a commercial nursery or collected from the wild state. Such products are customarily used for outdoor planting. Not included are florists' or greenhouse plants solely for inside culture or use and annual vegetable plants.

*Industry members.* Any person, firm, corporation, or organization engaged in the sale, offering for sale, or distribution in commerce of industry products, as defined above.

*Lining-out stock.* Includes all plant material coming from propagating houses, beds, or frames, and young material such as seedlings rooted or unrooted cuttings, grafts or layers, of suitable size to transplant either in the nursery row or in containers for ''growing on.''

*Nursery-propagated.* Reproduced and grown under cultivation, including reproduced and grown under cultivation from plants, seeds or cuttings lawfully collected from the wild state.

*Propagated.* Reproduced from seeds, cuttings, callus or other plant tissue, spores or other propagules under a controlled environment that is intensely manipulated by human intervention for the purpose of producing selected species or hybrids.

[44 FR 11177, Feb. 27, 1979, as amended at 59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994]

### § 18.1 Deception (general).

(a) It is an unfair or deceptive act or practice to sell, offer for sale, or distribute industry products by any method or under any circumstance or condition that misrepresents directly or by implication to purchasers or prospective purchasers the products with respect to quantity, size, grade, kind, species, age, maturity, condition, vigor, hardiness, number of times transplanted, growth ability, growth characteristics, rate of growth or time required before flowering or fruiting, price, origin or place where grown, or any other material aspect of the industry product.

(b) The inhibitions of this section shall apply to every type of advertisement or method of representation, whether in newspaper, periodical, sales catalog, circular, by tag, label or insignia, by radio or television, by sales representatives, or otherwise.

(c) Among practices inhibited by the foregoing are direct or indirect representations:

(1) That plants have been propagated by grafting or bud selection methods, when such is not the fact.

(2) That industry products are healthy, will grow anywhere without the use of fertilizer, or will survive and produce without special care, when such is not the fact.

(3) That plants will bloom the year round, or will bear an extraordinary number of blooms of unusual size or quality, when such is not the fact.

(4) That an industry product is a new variety, when in fact it is a standard variety to which the industry member has given a new name.

(5) That an industry product cannot be purchased through usual retail outlets, or that there are limited stocks available, when such is not the fact.

(6) That industry products offered for sale will be delivered in time for the next (or any specified) seasonal planting when the industry member is aware of factors which make such delivery improbable.

(7) That the appearance of an industry product as to size, color, contour, foliage, bloom, fruit or other physical characteristic is normal or usual when the appearance so represented is in fact abnormal or unusual.

(8) That the root system of any plant is larger in depth or diameter than that which actually exists, whether accomplished by excessive packaging material, or excessive balling, or other deceptive or misleading practice.

(9) That bublets are bulbs.

(10) That an industry product is a rare or unusual item when such is not the fact. [Guide 1]

[44 FR 11177, Feb. 27, 1979, as amended at 59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994]

### § 18.2 Deception through use of names.

(a) In the sale, offering for sale, or distribution of an industry product, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for any industry member to use a name for such product that misrepresents directly or by implication to purchasers or prospective purchasers its true identity.

(b) Subject to the foregoing:

(1) When an industry product has a generally recognized and well-established common name, it is proper to use such name as a designation therefor, either alone or in conjunction with the correct botanical name of the product.

(2) When an industry product has a generally recognized and well-established common name, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for an industry member to adopt and use a new name for the product unless such new name is immediately accompanied by the generally recognized and well-established common name, or by the correct botanical name, or by a description of the nature and properties of the product which is of sufficient detail to prevent confusion and deception of purchasers or prospective purchasers as to the true identity of the product.

(3) When an industry product does not have a generally recognized and well-established common name, and a name other than the correct botanical name of the product is applied thereto, such other name shall be immediately accompanied by either the correct botanical name of the product, or a description of the nature and properties of the product which is of sufficient detail as to prevent confusion and deception of purchasers and prospective purchasers as to the true identity of the product.

NOTE: *Industry recommendation.* The industry recommends that in administering the guide in this section the Commission give consideration to the use of plant names listed in such works as Checklist of Woody Ornamental Plants of California, 1977, University of California; Hillier's Manual of Trees and Shrubs, 1971, Hillier & Sons; Manual of Cultivated Conifers, 1965, P. Den Ouden & B. K. Boom; Hortus III, 1976, L. H. Bailey Hortorium; Naming and Registering New Cultivars, 1974, American Association of Nurserymen, Inc.; and to plant name lists periodically published by the plant societies and the horticultural organizations selected as international and national cultivar registration authorities as enumerated in Appendix of Naming and Registering New Cultivars.

[Guide 2]

[44 FR 11177, Feb. 27, 1979, as amended at 59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994]

### §18.3 Substitution of products.

With respect to industry products offered for sale by an industry member, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for any member of the industry:

(a) To ship or deliver industry products which do not conform to representations made prior to securing the order or to specifications upon which the sale is consummated, without advising the purchaser of the substitution and obtaining the purchaser's consent thereto prior to making shipment or delivery, where failure to advise would be misleading to purchasers; or

(b) To falsely represent the reason for making a substitution: *Provided, however,* That nothing in this section is intended to inhibit the shipment of products different from those ordered, prior to obtaining the purchaser's consent to such substitution, when the order is received by the industry member near the close of the planting season for the products ordered and the substitution involved relates but to a product or products the total price of which is comparatively small, and when:

(1) At the commencement of the planting season for the products ordered the industry member had a supply of such products sufficient to meet normal and reasonably expected orders therefor, and such supply has been exhausted; and

(2) The products substituted are of similar variety and of equal or greater value to those ordered by the purchaser and no additional charge is made therefor; and

(3) Notice of the substitution, with adequate identification of the substituted item or items, and with commitment of the industry member to refund any purchase price received for the substituted products if such products are not acceptable to the purchaser and to compensate the purchaser for any expense involved in the return of the substituted products if refund is conditioned on the return thereof, is given the purchaser at the time of his receipt of such products: *And provided further,* That nothing in this section is to be construed as sanctioning the dissemination of an advertisement of an industry product or products or the personal solicitation of orders therefor unless at the time of such dissemination or solicitation the industry member has a supply of such product or products sufficient to meet normal and reasonably expected orders therefor. [Guide 3]

[44 FR 11177, Feb. 27, 1979, as amended at 59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994]

### §18.4 Size and grade designations.

(a) In the sale, offering for sale, or distribution of industry products, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for an industry member to use any term, designation, number, letter, mark, or symbol as a size or grade designation for any industry product in a manner or under any circumstance that misrepresents directly or by implication to purchasers or prospective purchasers the actual size or grade of such products.

(b) Under this section industry members offering lining-out stock for sale shall specify conspicuously and accurately the size and age of such stock when failure to do so may misrepresent directly or by implication such stock to purchasers or prospective purchasers.

(c) Nothing in this section is to be construed as inhibiting the designation of the size or grade of an industry product by use of a size or grade designation for which a standard has been established which is generally recognized in the industry when the identity of such standard is conjunctively disclosed, the product qualifies for the designation under such standard, and no deception of purchasers or prospective purchasers results in the use of such designation.

NOTE: It is the consensus of the industry that the grade and size standard set forth in the current edition of American Standard for Nursery Stock, ANSI Z60.1, as approved by the American National Standard Institute, Inc., is generally recognized in the industry, and that use of the size and grade designation therein set forth, in accordance with the requirements of the standard for the designations, in the marketing of industry products to which such standard relates, will prevent deception and confusion of purchasers and prospective purchasers of such products. [Guide 4]

[44 FR 11177, Feb. 27, 1979, as amended at 59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994]

### § 18.5 Deception as to blooming, fruiting, or growing ability.

In the sale, offering for sale, or distribution of industry products, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for any industry member to misrepresent directly or by implication to purchasers or prospective purchasers the ability of such products:

(a) To bloom, flower, or fruit within a specified period of time; or

(b) To produce crops within a specified period of time, or to give multiple crops each year, or to produce crops in unfavorable climatic regions; or

(c) To bear fruit through self-pollinization; or

(d) To grow, flourish, and survive irrespective of the climatic conditions, the care exercised in or after planting, or the soil characteristics of the locality in which they are to be planted.

NOTE 1: Under this section, when flower bulbs are of such immaturity as not reasonably to be expected to bloom and flower the first season of their planting, such fact shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed in all advertisements and sales promotional literature relating to such products: *Provided, however,* That such disclosure need not be made when sales are confined to nurseries and commercial growers for their use as planting stock.

NOTE 2: Under this section, in order to avoid deception of purchasers and prospective purchasers thereof, when rose bushes have been used in a greenhouse for the commercial production of cut flowers, they shall be tagged or labeled so as to clearly, adequately and conspicuously disclose such fact, and such tags and labels shall be so attached thereto as to remain thereon until consummation of consumer sale. A similar disclosure shall be made in all advertising and sales promotional literature relating to such products. And when, by reason of such previous greenhouse use or their condition at the time of removal therefrom or their handling during or subsequent thereto, there is probability that such rose bushes will not satisfactorily thrive and produce flowers when replanted outdoors, or will satisfactorily thrive and produce flowers outdoors only if given special treatment and attention during and after their replanting, such fact shall also be clearly, conspicuously, and nondeceptively disclosed in close conjunction with, and in the same manner as, the aforesaid required disclosure that such products have been used in a greenhouse for the commercial production of cut flowers. [Guide 5]

[44 FR 11177, Feb. 27, 1979, as amended at 59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994]

### § 18.6 Plants collected from the wild state.

It is an unfair or deceptive act or practice to sell, offer for sale, or distribute industry products collected from the wild state without disclosing that they were collected from the wild state; *provided, however,* that plants propagated in nurseries from plants lawfully collected from the wild state may be designated as ''nursery-propagated.'' [Guide 6]

[59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994]

### § 18.7 Misrepresentation as to character of business.

(a) In the sale, offering for sale, or distribution of industry products, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for any industry member to represent itself directly or by implication to be a grower or propagator of such products, or any portion thereof, or to have any other experience or qualification either relating to the growing or propagation of such products or enabling the industry member to be of assistance to purchasers or prospective purchasers in the selection by them of the kinds or types of products, or the placement thereof, when such is not the fact, or in any other manner to misrepresent directly or by implication the character, nature, or extent of the industry member's business.

NOTE: Among practices subject to the inhibitions of this section is a representation by an industry member to the effect that he is a landscape architect when his training, experience, and knowledge do not qualify him for such representation.

(b) It is also an unfair or deceptive act or practice for an industry member to use the word ''guild,'' ''club,'' ''association,'' ''council,'' ''society,'' ''foundation,'' or any other word of similar import or meaning, as part of a trade name, or otherwise, in such a manner or under such circumstances as to indicate or imply that its business is other than a commercial enterprise operated for profit, unless such be true in fact,

or so as to deceive purchasers or prospective purchasers in any other material respect. [Guide 7]

[59 FR 64549, Dec. 14, 1994]

### §18.8 Deception as to origin or source of industry products.

(a) It is an unfair or deceptive act or practice to sell, offer for sale, or advertise an industry product by misrepresenting directly or by implication the origin or source of such product to purchasers or prospective purchasers (e.g., by use of the term *Holland* to describe bulbs grown in the U.S.A.); *provided, however*, that when a plant has an accepted common name that incorporates a geographical term and such term has lost its geographical significance as so used, the mere use of such common names does not constitute a misrepresentation as to source or origin (e.g., ''Colorado Blue Spruce,'' ''Arizona Cypress,'' ''Black Hills Spruce,'' ''California Privet,'' ''Japanese Barberry,'' etc.).

(b) It is also an unfair or deceptive act or practice to advertise, sell, or offer for sale an industry product of foreign origin without adequate and non-deceptive disclosure of the name of the foreign country from which it came, where the failure to make such disclosure would be misleading to purchasers or prospective purchasers. [Guide 8]

[59 FR 64550, Dec. 14, 1994]

## PART 20—GUIDES FOR THE REBUILT, RECONDITIONED AND OTHER USED AUTOMOBILE PARTS INDUSTRY

Sec.

20.0 Definitions.
20.1 Deception as to previous use of products.
20.2 Deception as to identity of rebuilder, remanufacturer, reconditioner or reliner.
20.3 Misrepresentation as to condition of products and misuse of the terms ''rebuilt,'' ''factory rebuilt,'' ''remanufactured,'' etc.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 6, 5, 38 Stat. 721, 719; 15 U.S.C. 46, 45.

SOURCE: 44 FR 11182, Feb. 27, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

### §20.0 Definitions.

*Industry member.* Any person, firm, corporation or organization engaged in the sale or distribution of any industry product as defined below.

*Industry products.* Industry products are automotive parts and automotive assemblies which have been used or which contain used parts, whether such parts or assemblies have been rebuilt, remanufactured, reconditioned, relined, or otherwise. The term *automotive assemblies* as herein used mean any part or assembly designed for an automobile, truck, motorcycle, tractor or similar self-propelled vehicle. Industry products include, but are not limited to, armatures, generators, starters, carburetors, clutches, distributors, connecting rods, crankshafts, cylinder blocks, engine assemblies, fuel pumps, brakes, master and wheel brake cylinders, power brakes, shock absorbers, starter drives, solenoids, automatic transmissions, regulators, spark plugs, springs, windshield wiper motors and water pumps. Automobile tires are not products of the industry.

### §20.1 Deception as to previous use of products.

(a) It is an unfair trade practice to represent, directly or by implication, that any industry product is new or unused, or that any part of an industry product is new or unused when such is not the fact, or to misrepresent the extent of previous use thereof.

(b) It is an unfair trade practice for an industry member to offer for sale or sell any industry product unless a clear and conspicuous disclosure that such product has been used or contains used parts is made in all the industry member's advertising, sales promotional literature and invoices concerning the product, on the container in which the product is packed and if the product has been rebuilt, remanufactured, reconditioned or has the appearance of being new, on the product with sufficient permanency to remain thereon after installation for a reasonable period of time under ordinary conditions of use, and in such manner that said disclosure cannot be easily removed or obliterated.

(1) *Form of disclosure.* The disclosure that an industry product has been used

or contains used parts as required by this section may be made by use of a word such as, but not limited to, ''Used,'' ''Secondhand,'' ''Repaired,'' ''Remanufactured,'' ''Reconditioned,'' ''Rebuilt,'' or ''Relined,'' whichever is applicable to the product involved. On invoices to the trade only the disclosure required by this section may be made by use of any number, mark, or other symbol which is clearly understood by all purchasers receiving such invoices as meaning that the products, or parts thereof, identified on the invoices have been used.

(2) *Conspicuousness of disclosure.* The disclosure required by this section shall be of such size or color contrast and so placed as to be readily noticeable to purchasers or prospective purchasers reading advertising, sales promotional literature, or invoices containing same, or reading any representation as to content on the container in which an industry product is packed, or inspecting an industry product before installation, or with a minimum of disassembly after installation.

(c) It is an unfair trade practice to place any means or instrumentality in the hands of others whereby they may mislead purchasers or prospective purchasers as to the previous use of industry products or parts thereof. [Guide 1]

### § 20.2 Deception as to identity of rebuilder, remanufacturer, reconditioner or reliner.

(a) It is an unfair trade practice to misrepresent the identity of the rebuilder, remanufacturer, reconditioner or reliner of an industry product.

(b) In connection with the sale or offering for sale of an industry product if the identity of the original manufacturer of the product, or the identity of the manufacturer for which the product was originally made, is revealed and the product was rebuilt, remanufactured, reconditioned or relined by other than the manufacturer so identified, it is an unfair trade practice to fail to disclose such fact wherever either of said manufacturers is identified in advertising and sales promotional literature concerning the product, on the container in which the product is packed, and on the product, in close conjunction with, and of the same permanency and conspicuousness as, the disclosure of previous use of the product required by this section. Examples of disclosures considered to be in compliance with the requirements of this section are as follows:

(1) Disclosure of the identity of the rebuilder as, for example:

Rebuilt by John Doe Co.

(2) Disclosure that the product was rebuilt by an independent rebuilder as, for example:

Rebuilt by an Independent Rebuilder

(3) Disclosure that the product was rebuilt by other than the manufacturer so identified as, for example:

Rebuilt by other than XYZ Motors

(4) Disclosure that the product was rebuilt for the identified manufacturer, if such is the case, as for example:

Rebuilt for XYZ Motors

[Guide 2]

### § 20.3 Misrepresentation as to condition of products and misuse of the terms "rebuilt," "factory rebuilt," "remanufactured," etc.

(a) It is an unfair trade practice to use, or cause or promote the use of, any statement or representation in advertising, on containers, on industry products, or elsewhere, which has the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading or deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers as to the condition of an industry product, or the extent that an industry product has been repaired or reconstructed.

(b) It is an unfair trade practice to use the words ''Rebuilt,'' ''Remanufactured,'' or words of similar import, as descriptive of an industry product which, since it was last subjected to any use, has not been dismantled and reconstructed as necessary, all of its internal and external parts cleaned and made free from rust and corrosion, all impaired, defective or substantially worn parts restored to a sound condition or replaced with new, rebuilt[1] or

[1] In accord with the provisions of this paragraph (b).

unimpaired used parts, all missing parts replaced with new, rebuilt[1] or unimpaired used parts, and such rewinding or machining and other operations performed as are necessary to put the industry product in sound working condition.

(c) It is an unfair trade practice to represent an industry product as ''Factory Rebuilt'' unless the product was rebuilt as described in paragraph (b) of this section at a factory generally engaged in the rebuilding of such products. (See also § 20.2) [Guide 3]

## PART 23—GUIDES FOR THE JEWELRY, PRECIOUS METALS, AND PEWTER INDUSTRIES

Sec.
23.0 Scope and application.
23.1 Deception (general).
23.2 Misleading illustrations.
23.3 Misuse of the terms ''hand-made,'' ''hand-polished,'' etc.
23.4 Misrepresentation as to gold content.
23.5 Misuse of the word ''vermeil.''
23.6 Misrepresentation as to silver content.
23.7 Misuse of the words ''platinum,'' ''iridium,'' ''palladium,'' ''ruthenium,'' ''rhodium,'' and ''osmium.''
23.8 Misrepresentation as to content of pewter.
23.9 Additional guidance for the use of quality marks.
23.10 Misuse of ''corrosion proof,'' ''noncorrosive,'' ''corrosion resistant,'' ''rust proof,'' ''rust resistant,'' etc.
23.11 Definition and misuse of the word ''diamond.''
23.12 Misuse of the words ''flawless,'' ''perfect,'' etc.
23.13 Disclosing existence of artificial coloring, infusing, etc.
23.14 Misuse of the term ''blue white.''
23.15 Misuse of the term ''properly cut,'' etc.
23.16 Misuse of the words ''brilliant'' and ''full cut.''
23.17 Misrepresentation of weight and ''total weight.''
23.18 Definitions of various pearls.
23.19 Misuse of the word ''pearl.''
23.20 Misuse of terms such as ''cultured pearl,'' ''seed pearl,'' ''Oriental pearl,'' ''natura,'' ''kultured,'' ''real,'' ''gem,'' ''synthetic,'' and regional designations.
23.21 Misrepresentation as to cultured pearls.
23.22 Deception as to gemstones.
23.23 Misuse of the words ''ruby,'' ''sapphire,'' ''emerald,'' ''topaz,'' ''stone,'' ''birthstone,'' ''gemstone,'' etc.
23.24 Misuse of the words ''real,'' ''genuine,'' ''natural,'' ''precious,'' etc.
23.25 Misuse of the word ''gem.''
23.26 Misuse of the words ''flawless,'' ''perfect,'' etc.
APPENDIX TO PART 23—EXEMPTIONS RECOGNIZED IN THE ASSAY FOR QUALITY OF GOLD ALLOY, GOLD FILLED, GOLD OVERLAY, ROLLED GOLD PLATE, SILVER, AND PLATINUM INDUSTRY PRODUCTS.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 6, 5, 38 Stat. 721, 719; 15 U.S.C. 46, 45.

SOURCE: 61 FR 27212, May 30, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

### § 23.0 Scope and application.

(a) These guides apply to jewelry industry products, which include, but are not limited to, the following: gemstones and their laboratory-created and imitation substitutes; natural and cultured pearls and their imitations; and metallic watch bands not permanently attached to watches.[1] These guides also apply to articles, including optical frames, pens and pencils, flatware, and hollowware, fabricated from precious metals (gold, silver and platinum group metals), precious metal alloys, and their imitations. These guides also apply to all articles made from pewter. For the purposes of these guides, all articles covered by these guides are defined as ''industry products.''

(b) These guides apply to persons, partnerships, or corporations, at every level of the trade (including but not limited to manufacturers, suppliers, and retailers) engaged in the business of offering for sale, selling, or distributing industry products.

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (B): To prevent consumer deception, persons, partnerships, or corporations in the business of appraising, identifying, or grading industry products should utilize the terminology and standards set forth in the guides.

(c) These guides apply to claims and representations about industry products included in labeling, advertising, promotional materials, and all other forms of marketing, whether asserted directly or by implication, through

[1] The Guides for the Watch Industry, 16 CFR part 245, address watchcases and permanently attached watchbands.

words, symbols, emblems, logos, illustrations, depictions, product brand names, or through any other means.

### § 23.1 Deception (general).

It is unfair or deceptive to misrepresent the type, kind, grade, quality, quantity, metallic content, size, weight, cut, color, character, treatment, substance, durability, serviceability, origin, price, value, preparation, production, manufacture, distribution, or any other material aspect of an industry product.

NOTE 1 TO § 23.1: If, in the sale or offering for sale of an industry product, any representation is made as to the grade assigned the product, the identity of the grading system used should be disclosed.

NOTE 2 TO § 23.1: To prevent deception, any qualifications or disclosures, such as those described in the guides, should be sufficiently clear and prominent. Clarity of language, relative type size and proximity to the claim being qualified, and an absence of contrary claims that could undercut effectiveness, will maximize the likelihood that the qualifications and disclosures are appropriately clear and prominent.

### § 23.2 Misleading illustrations.

It is unfair or deceptive to use, as part of any advertisement, packaging material, label, or other sales promotion matter, any visual representation, picture, televised or computer image, illustration, diagram, or other depiction which, either alone or in conjunction with any accompanying words or phrases, misrepresents the type, kind, grade, quality, quantity, metallic content, size, weight, cut, color, character, treatment, substance, durability, serviceability, origin, preparation, production, manufacture, distribution, or any other material aspect of an industry product.

NOTE TO § 23.2: An illustration or depiction of a diamond or other gemstone that portrays it in greater than its actual size may mislead consumers, unless a disclosure is made about the item's true size.

### § 23.3 Misuse of the terms "handmade," "hand-polished," etc.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to represent, directly or by implication, that any industry product is hand-made or hand-wrought unless the entire shaping and forming of such product from raw materials and its finishing and decoration were accomplished by hand labor and manually-controlled methods which permit the maker to control and vary the construction, shape, design, and finish of each part of each individual product.

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (A): As used herein, ''raw materials'' include bulk sheet, strip, wire, and similar items that have not been cut, shaped, or formed into jewelry parts, semi-finished parts, or blanks.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to represent, directly or by implication, that any industry product is hand-forged, hand-engraved, hand-finished, or hand-polished, or has been otherwise hand-processed, unless the operation described was accomplished by hand labor and manually-controlled methods which permit the maker to control and vary the type, amount, and effect of such operation on each part of each individual product.

### § 23.4 Misrepresentation as to gold content.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to misrepresent the presence of gold or gold alloy in an industry product, or the quantity or karat fineness of gold or gold alloy contained in the product, or the karat fineness, thickness, weight ratio, or manner of application of any gold or gold alloy plating, covering, or coating on any surface of an industry product or part thereof.

(b) The following are examples of markings or descriptions that may be misleading:[2]

(1) Use of the word ''Gold'' or any abbreviation, without qualification, to describe all or part of an industry product, which is not composed throughout of fine (24 karat) gold.

(2) Use of the word ''Gold'' or any abbreviation to describe all or part of an industry product composed throughout of an alloy of gold, unless a correct designation of the karat fineness of the alloy immediately precedes the word ''Gold'' or its abbreviation, and such fineness designation is of at least equal conspicuousness.

[2] See § 23.4(c) for examples of acceptable markings and descriptions.

(3) Use of the word ''Gold'' or any abbreviation to describe all or part of an industry product that is not composed throughout of gold or a gold alloy, but is surface-plated or coated with gold alloy, unless the word ''Gold'' or its abbreviation is adequately qualified to indicate that the product or part is only surface-plated.

(4) Use of the term ''Gold Plate,'' ''Gold Plated,'' or any abbreviation to describe all or part of an industry product unless such product or part contains a surface-plating of gold alloy, applied by any process, which is of such thickness and extent of surface coverage that reasonable durability is assured.

(5) Use of the terms ''Gold Filled,'' ''Rolled Gold Plate,'' ''Rolled Gold Plated,'' ''Gold Overlay,'' or any abbreviation to describe all or part of an industry product unless such product or part contains a surface-plating of gold alloy applied by a mechanical process and of such thickness and extent of surface coverage that reasonable durability is assured, and unless the term is immediately preceded by a correct designation of the karat fineness of the alloy that is of at least equal conspicuousness as the term used.

(6) Use of the terms ''Gold Plate,'' ''Gold Plated,'' ''Gold Filled,'' ''Rolled Gold Plate,'' ''Rolled Gold Plated,'' ''Gold Overlay,'' or any abbreviation to describe a product in which the layer of gold plating has been covered with a base metal (such as nickel), which is covered with a thin wash of gold, unless there is a disclosure that the primary gold coating is covered with a base metal, which is gold washed.

(7) Use of the term ''Gold Electroplate,'' ''Gold Electroplated,'' or any abbreviation to describe all or part of an industry product unless such product or part is electroplated with gold or a gold alloy and such electroplating is of such karat fineness, thickness, and extent of surface coverage that reasonable durability is assured.

(8) Use of any name, terminology, or other term to misrepresent that an industry product is equal or superior to, or different than, a known and established type of industry product with reference to its gold content or method of manufacture.

(9) Use of the word ''Gold'' or any abbreviation, or of a quality mark implying gold content (e.g., 9 karat), to describe all or part of an industry product that is composed throughout of an alloy of gold of less than 10 karat fineness.

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (B) §23.4: The provisions regarding the use of the word ''Gold,'' or any abbreviation, as described above, are applicable to ''Duragold,'' ''Diragold,'' ''Noblegold,'' ''Goldine,'' ''Layered Gold,'' or any words or terms of similar meaning.

(c) The following are examples of markings and descriptions that are consistent with the principles described above:

(1) An industry product or part thereof, composed throughout of an alloy of gold of not less than 10 karat fineness, may be marked and described as ''Gold'' when such word ''Gold,'' wherever appearing, is immediately preceded by a correct designation of the karat fineness of the alloy, and such karat designation is of equal conspicuousness as the word ''Gold'' (for example, ''14 Karat Gold,'' ''14 K. Gold,'' or ''14 Kt. Gold''). Such product may also be marked and described by a designation of the karat fineness of the gold alloy unaccompanied by the word ''Gold'' (for example, ''14 Karat,'' ''14 Kt.,'' or ''14 K.'').

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (C)(1): Use of the term ''Gold'' or any abbreviation to describe all or part of a product that is composed throughout of gold alloy, but contains a hollow center or interior, may mislead consumers, unless the fact that the product contains a hollow center is disclosed in immediate proximity to the term ''Gold'' or its abbreviation (for example, ''14 Karat Gold-Hollow Center,'' or ''14 K. Gold Tubing,'' when of a gold alloy tubing of such karat fineness). Such products should not be marked or described as ''solid'' or as being solidly of gold or of a gold alloy. For example, when the composition of such a product is 14 karat gold alloy, it should not be described or marked as either ''14 Kt. Solid Gold'' or as ''Solid 14 Kt. Gold.''

(2) An industry product or part thereof, on which there has been affixed on all significant surfaces, by any process, a coating, electroplating, or deposition by any means, of gold or gold alloy of not less than 10 karat fineness that is

of substantial thickness,[3] and the minimum thickness throughout of which is equivalent to one-half micron (or approximately 20 millionths of an inch) of fine gold,[4] may be marked or described as ''Gold Plate'' or ''Gold Plated,'' or abbreviated, as, for example, G.P. The exact thickness of the plate may be marked on the item, if it is immediately followed by a designation of the karat fineness of the plating which is of equal conspicuousness as the term used (as, for example, ''2 microns 12 K. gold plate'' or ''2μ 12 K. G.P.'' for an item plated with 2 microns of 12 karat gold.)

NOTE PARAGRAPH (C)(2) TO PARAGRAPH (B): If an industry product has a thicker coating or electroplating of gold or gold alloy on some areas than others, the minimum thickness of the plate should be marked.

(3) An industry product or part thereof on which there has been affixed on all significant surfaces by soldering, brazing, welding, or other mechanical means, a plating of gold alloy of not less than 10 karat fineness and of substantial thickness[5] may be marked or described as ''Gold Filled,'' ''Gold Overlay,'' ''Rolled Gold Plate,'' or an adequate abbreviation, when such plating constitutes at least 1/20th of the weight of the metal in the entire article and when the term is immediately preceded by a designation of the karat fineness of the plating which is of equal conspicuousness as the term used (for example, ''14 Karat Gold Filled,'' ''14 Kt. Gold Filled,'' ''14 Kt. G.F.,'' ''14 Kt. Gold Overlay,'' or ''14K. R.G.P.''). When conforming to all such requirements except the specified minimum of 1/20th of the weight of the metal in the entire article, the terms ''Gold Overlay'' and ''Rolled Gold Plate'' may be used when the karat fineness designation is immediately preceded by a fraction accurately disclosing the portion of the weight of the metal in the entire article accounted for by the plating, and when such fraction is of equal conspicuousness as the term used (for example, ''1/40th 12 Kt. Rolled Gold Plate'' or ''1/40 12 Kt. R.G.P.'').

(4) An industry product or part thereof, on which there has been affixed on all significant surfaces by an electrolytic process, an electroplating of gold, or of a gold alloy of not less than 10 karat fineness, which has a minimum thickness throughout equivalent to .175 microns (approximately 7/1,000,000ths of an inch) of fine gold, may be marked or described as ''Gold Electroplate'' or ''Gold Electroplated,'' or abbreviated, as, for example, ''G.E.P.'' When the electroplating meets the minimum fineness but not the minimum thickness specified above, the marking or description may be ''Gold Flashed'' or ''Gold Washed.'' When the electroplating is of the minimum fineness specified above and of a minimum thickness throughout equivalent to two and one half (2½) microns (or approximately 100 1,000,000ths of an inch) of fine gold, the marking or description may be ''Heavy Gold Electroplate'' or ''Heavy Gold Electroplated.'' When electroplatings qualify for the term ''Gold Electroplate'' (or ''Gold Electroplated''), or the term ''Heavy Gold Electroplate'' (or ''Heavy Gold Electroplated''), and have been applied by use of a particular kind of electrolytic process, the marking may be accompanied by identification of the process used, as for example, ''Gold Electroplated (X Process)'' or ''Heavy Gold Electroplated (Y Process).''

(d) The provisions of this section relating to markings and descriptions of industry products and parts thereof are subject to the applicable tolerances of the National Stamping Act or any amendment thereof.[6]

[3] The term *substantial thickness* means that all areas of the plating are of such thickness as to assure a durable coverage of the base metal to which it has been affixed. Since industry products include items having surfaces and parts of surfaces that are subject to different degrees of wear, the thickness of plating for all items or for different areas of the surface of individual items does not necessarily have to be uniform.

[4] A product containing 1 micron (otherwise known as 1μ) of 12 karat gold is equivalent to one-half micron of 24 karat gold.

[5] *See* footnote 3.

[6] Under the National Stamping Act, articles or parts made of gold or of gold alloy that contain no solder have a permissible tolerance of three parts per thousand. If the part tested contains solder, the permissible tolerance is seven parts per thousand. For full text, see 15 U.S.C. 295, *et seq.*

NOTE 4 TO PARAGRAPH (D): Exemptions recognized in the assay of karat gold industry products and in the assay of gold filled, gold overlay, and rolled gold plate industry products, and not to be considered in any assay for quality, are listed in the appendix.

### §23.5 Misuse of the word "vermeil."

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to represent, directly or by implication, that an industry product is ''vermeil'' if such mark or description misrepresents the product's true composition.

(b) An industry product may be described or marked as ''vermeil'' if it consists of a base of sterling silver coated or plated on all significant surfaces with gold, or gold alloy of not less than 10 karat fineness, that is of substantial thickness[7] and a minimum thickness throughout equivalent to two and one half (2½) microns (or approximately $^{100}/_{1,000,000}$ths of an inch) of fine gold.

NOTE 1 TO §23.5: It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''vermeil'' to describe a product in which the sterling silver has been covered with a base metal (such as nickel) plated with gold unless there is a disclosure that the sterling silver is covered with a base metal that is plated with gold.

NOTE 2 TO §23.5: Exemptions recognized in the assay of gold filled, gold overlay, and rolled gold plate industry products are listed in the appendix.

### §23.6 Misrepresentation as to silver content.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to misrepresent that an industry product contains silver, or to misrepresent an industry product as having a silver content, plating, electroplating, or coating.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to mark, describe, or otherwise represent all or part of an industry product as ''silver,'' ''solid silver,'' ''Sterling Silver,'' ''Sterling,'' or the abbreviation ''Ster.'' unless it is at least $^{925}/_{1,000}$ths pure silver.

(c) It is unfair or deceptive to mark, describe, or otherwise represent all or part of an industry product as ''coin'' or ''coin silver'' unless it is at least $^{900}/_{1,000}$ths pure silver.

(d) It is unfair or deceptive to mark, describe, or otherwise represent all or part of an industry product as being plated or coated with silver unless all significant surfaces of the product or part contain a plating or coating of silver that is of substantial thickness.[8]

(e) The provisions of this section relating to markings and descriptions of industry products and parts thereof are subject to the applicable tolerances of the National Stamping Act or any amendment thereof.[9]

NOTE 1 TO §23.6: The National Stamping Act provides that silverplated articles shall not ''be stamped, branded, engraved or imprinted with the word 'sterling' or the word 'coin,' either alone or in conjunction with other words or marks.'' 15 U.S.C. 297(a).

NOTE 2 TO §23.6: Exemptions recognized in the assay of silver industry products are listed in the appendix.

### §23.7 Misuse of the words "platinum," "iridium," "palladium," "ruthenium," "rhodium," and "osmium."

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to use the words ''platinum,'' ''iridium,'' ''palladium,'' ''ruthenium,'' ''rhodium,'' and ''osmium,'' or any abbreviation to mark or describe all or part of an industry product if such marking or description misrepresents the product's true composition. The Platinum Group Metals (PGM) are Platinum, Iridium, Palladium, Ruthenium, Rhodium, and Osmium.

(b) The following are examples of markings or descriptions that may be misleading:[10]

(1) Use of the word ''Platinum'' or any abbreviation, without qualification, to describe all or part of an industry product that is not composed throughout of 950 parts per thousand pure Platinum.

(2) Use of the word ''Platinum'' or any abbreviation accompanied by a number indicating the parts per thousand of pure Platinum contained in the

[7] *See* footnote 3.

[8] *See* footnote 3.

[9] Under the National Stamping Act, sterling silver articles or parts that contain no solder have a permissible tolerance of four parts per thousand. If the part tested contains solder, the permissible tolerance is ten parts per thousand. For full text, see 15 U.S.C. 294, *et seq.*

[10] See paragraph (c) of this section for examples of acceptable markings and descriptions.

product without mention of the number of parts per thousand of other PGM contained in the product, to describe all or part of an industry product that is not composed throughout of at least 850 parts per thousand pure platinum, for example, ''600Plat.''

(3) Use of the word ''Platinum'' or any abbreviation thereof, to mark or describe any product that is not composed throughout of at least 500 parts per thousand pure Platinum.

(c) The following are examples of markings and descriptions that are not considered unfair or deceptive:

(1) The following abbreviations for each of the PGM may be used for quality marks on articles: ''Plat.'' or ''Pt.'' for Platinum; ''Irid.'' or ''Ir.'' for Iridium; ''Pall.'' or ''Pd.'' for Palladium; ''Ruth.'' or ''Ru.'' for Ruthenium; ''Rhod.'' or ''Rh.'' for Rhodium; and ''Osmi.'' or ''Os.'' for Osmium.

(2) An industry product consisting of at least 950 parts per thousand pure Platinum may be marked or described as ''Platinum.''

(3) An industry product consisting of 850 parts per thousand pure Platinum, 900 parts per thousand pure Platinum, or 950 parts per thousand pure Platinum may be marked ''Platinum,'' provided that the Platinum marking is preceded by a number indicating the amount in parts per thousand of pure Platinum (for industry products consisting of 950 parts per thousand pure Platinum, the marking described in § 23.7(b)(2) above is also appropriate). Thus, the following markings may be used: ''950Pt.,'' ''950Plat.,'' ''900Pt.,'' ''900Plat.,'' ''850Pt.,'' or ''850Plat.''

(4) An industry product consisting of at least 950 parts per thousand PGM, and of at least 500 parts per thousand pure Platinum, may be marked ''Platinum,'' provided that the mark of each PGM constituent is preceded by a number indicating the amount in parts per thousand of each PGM, as for example, ''600Pt.350Ir.,'' ''600Plat.350Irid.,'' or ''550Pt.350Pd.50Ir.,''
''550Plat.350Pall.50Irid.''

NOTE TO § 23.7: Exemptions recognized in the assay of platinum industry products are listed in appendix A of this part.

[62 FR 16675, Apr. 8, 1997]

## § 23.8 Misrepresentation as to content of pewter.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to mark, describe, or otherwise represent all or part of an industry product as ''Pewter'' or any abbreviation if such mark or description misrepresents the product's true composition.

(b) An industry product or part thereof may be described or marked as ''Pewter'' or any abbreviation if it consists of at least 900 parts per 1000 Grade A Tin, with the remainder composed of metals appropriate for use in pewter.

## § 23.9 Additional guidance for the use of quality marks.

As used in these guides, the term *quality mark* means any letter, figure, numeral, symbol, sign, word, or term, or any combination thereof, that has been stamped, embossed, inscribed, or otherwise placed on any industry product and which indicates or suggests that any such product is composed throughout of any precious metal or any precious metal alloy or has a surface or surfaces on which there has been plated or deposited any precious metal or precious metal alloy. Included are the words ''gold,'' ''karat,'' ''carat,'' ''silver,'' ''sterling,'' ''vermeil,'' ''platinum,'' ''iridium,'' ''palladium,'' ''ruthenium,'' ''rhodium,'' or ''osmium,'' or any abbreviations thereof, whether used alone or in conjunction with the words ''filled,'' ''plated,'' ''overlay,'' or ''electroplated,'' or any abbreviations thereof. Quality markings include those in which the words or terms ''gold,'' ''karat,'' ''silver,'' ''vermeil,'' ''platinum'' (or platinum group metals), or their abbreviations are included, either separately or as suffixes, prefixes, or syllables.

(a) *Deception as to applicability of marks.* (1) If a quality mark on an industry product is applicable to only part of the product, the part of the product to which it is applicable (or inapplicable) should be disclosed when, absent such disclosure, the location of the mark misrepresents the product or part's true composition.

(2) If a quality mark is applicable to only part of an industry product, but not another part which is of similar surface appearance, each quality mark

should be closely accompanied by an identification of the part or parts to which the mark is applicable.

(b) *Deception by reason of difference in the size of letters or words in a marking or markings.* It is unfair or deceptive to place a quality mark on a product in which the words or letters appear in greater size than other words or letters of the mark, or when different markings placed on the product have different applications and are in different sizes, when the net impression of any such marking would be misleading as to the metallic composition of all or part of the product. (An example of improper marking would be the marking of a gold electroplated product with the word ''electroplate'' in small type and the word ''gold'' in larger type, with the result that purchasers and prospective purchasers of the product might only observe the word ''gold.'')

NOTE 1 TO §23.9: Legibility of markings. If a quality mark is engraved or stamped on an industry product, or is printed on a tag or label attached to the product, the quality mark should be of sufficient size type as to be legible to persons of normal vision, should be so placed as likely to be observed by purchasers, and should be so attached as to remain thereon until consumer purchase.

NOTE 2 TO §23.9: Disclosure of identity of manufacturers, processors, or distributors. The National Stamping Act provides that any person, firm, corporation, or association, being a manufacturer or dealer subject to section 294 of the Act, who applies or causes to be applied a quality mark, or imports any article bearing a quality mark ''which indicates or purports to indicate that such article is made in whole or in part of gold or silver or of an alloy of either metal'' shall apply to the article the trademark or name of such person. 15 U.S.C. 297.

### §23.10 Misuse of "corrosion proof," "noncorrosive," "corrosion resistant," "rust proof," "rust resistant," etc.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to:

(1) Use the terms ''corrosion proof,'' ''noncorrosive,'' ''rust proof,'' or any other term of similar meaning to describe an industry product unless all parts of the product will be immune from rust and other forms of corrosion during the life expectancy of the product; or

(2) Use the terms ''corrosion resistant,'' ''rust resistant,'' or any other term of similar meaning to describe an industry product unless all parts of the product are of such composition as to not be subject to material damage by corrosion or rust during the major portion of the life expectancy of the product under normal conditions of use.

(b) Among the metals that may be considered as corrosion (and rust) resistant are: Pure nickel; Gold alloys of not less than 10 Kt. fineness; and Austenitic stainless steels.

### §23.11 Definition and misuse of the word "diamond."

(a) A diamond is a natural mineral consisting essentially of pure carbon crystallized in the isometric system. It is found in many colors. Its hardness is 10; its specific gravity is approximately 3.52; and it has a refractive index of 2.42.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the unqualified word ''diamond'' to describe or identify any object or product not meeting the requirements specified in the definition of diamond provided above, or which, though meeting such requirements, has not been symmetrically fashioned with at least seventeen (17) polished facets.

NOTE 1 TO PARAGRAPH (B): It is unfair or deceptive to represent, directly or by implication, that industrial grade diamonds or other non-jewelry quality diamonds are of jewelry quality.

(c) The following are examples of descriptions that are not considered unfair or deceptive:

(1) The use of the words ''rough diamond'' to describe or designate uncut or unfaceted objects or products satisfying the definition of diamond provided above; or

(2) The use of the word ''diamond'' to describe or designate objects or products satisfying the definition of diamond but which have not been symmetrically fashioned with at least seventeen (17) polished facets when in immediate conjunction with the word ''diamond'' there is either a disclosure of the number of facets and shape of the diamond or the name of a type of diamond that denotes shape and that usually has less than seventeen (17) facets (e.g., ''rose diamond'').

NOTE 2 TO PARAGRAPH (C): Additional guidance about imitation and laboratory-created diamond representations and misuse of words ''gem,'' ''real,'' ''genuine,'' ''natural,'' etc., are set forth in §§ 23.23, 23.24, and 23.25.

### § 23.12 Misuse of the words "flawless," "perfect," etc.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''flawless'' to describe any diamond that discloses flaws, cracks, inclusions, carbon spots, clouds, internal lasering, or other blemishes or imperfections of any sort when examined under a corrected magnifier at 10-power, with adequate illumination, by a person skilled in diamond grading.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''perfect,'' or any representation of similar meaning, to describe any diamond unless the diamond meets the definition of ''flawless'' and is not of inferior color or make.

(c) It is unfair or deceptive to use the words ''flawless'' or ''perfect'' to describe a ring or other article of jewelry having a ''flawless'' or ''perfect'' principal diamond or diamonds, and supplementary stones that are not of such quality, unless there is a disclosure that the description applies only to the principal diamond or diamonds.

### § 23.13 Disclosing existence of artificial coloring, infusing, etc.

If a diamond has been treated by artificial coloring, tinting, coating, irradiating, heating, by the use of nuclear bombardment, or by the introduction or the infusion of any foreign substance, it is unfair or deceptive not to disclose that the diamond has been treated and that the treatment is not or may not be permanent.

### § 23.14 Misuse of the term "blue white."

It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''blue white'' or any representation of similar meaning to describe any diamond that under normal, north daylight or its equivalent shows any color or any trace of any color other than blue or bluish.

### § 23.15 Misuse of the term "properly cut," etc.

It is unfair or deceptive to use the terms ''properly cut,'' ''proper cut,'' ''modern cut,'' or any representation of similar meaning to describe any diamond that is lopsided, or is so thick or so thin in depth as to detract materially from the brilliance of the stone.

NOTE TO § 23.15: Stones that are commonly called ''fisheye'' or ''old mine'' should not be described as ''properly cut,'' ''modern cut,'' etc.

### § 23.16 Misuse of the words "brilliant" and "full cut."

It is unfair or deceptive to use the unqualified expressions ''brilliant,'' ''brilliant cut,'' or ''full cut'' to describe, identify, or refer to any diamond except a round diamond that has at least thirty-two (32) facets plus the table above the girdle and at least twenty-four (24) facets below.

NOTE TO § 23.16: Such terms should not be applied to single or rose-cut diamonds. They may be applied to emerald-(rectangular) cut, pear-shaped, heart-shaped, oval-shaped, and marquise-(pointed oval) cut diamonds meeting the above-stated facet requirements when, in immediate conjunction with the term used, the form of the diamond is disclosed.

### § 23.17 Misrepresentation of weight and "total weight."

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to misrepresent the weight of a diamond.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''point'' or any abbreviation in any representation, advertising, marking, or labeling to describe the weight of a diamond, unless the weight is also stated as decimal parts of a carat (e.g., 25 points or .25 carat).

NOTE 1 TO PARAGRAPH (B): A carat is a standard unit of weight for a diamond and is equivalent to 200 milligrams (⅕ gram). A point is one one hundredth (1/100) of a carat.

(c) If diamond weight is stated as decimal parts of a carat (e.g., .47 carat), the stated figure should be accurate to the last decimal place. If diamond weight is stated to only one decimal place (e.g., .5 carat), the stated figure should be accurate to the second decimal place (e.g., ''.5 carat'' could represent a diamond weight between .495–.504).

(d) If diamond weight is stated as fractional parts of a carat, a conspicuous disclosure of the fact that the diamond weight is not exact should be

made in close proximity to the fractional representation and a disclosure of a reasonable range of weight for each fraction (or the weight tolerance being used) should also be made.

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (D): When fractional representations of diamond weight are made, as described in paragraph d of this section, in catalogs or other printed materials, the disclosure of the fact that the actual diamond weight is within a specified range should be made conspicuously on every page where a fractional representation is made. Such disclosure may refer to a chart or other detailed explanation of the actual ranges used. For example, ''Diamond weights are not exact; see chart on p.X for ranges.''

### §23.18 Definitions of various pearls.

As used in these guides, the terms set forth below have the following meanings:

(a) *Pearl:* A calcareous concretion consisting essentially of alternating concentric layers of carbonate of lime and organic material formed within the body of certain mollusks, the result of an abnormal secretory process caused by an irritation of the mantle of the mollusk following the intrusion of some foreign body inside the shell of the mollusk, or due to some abnormal physiological condition in the mollusk, neither of which has in any way been caused or induced by humans.

(b) *Cultured Pearl:* The composite product created when a nucleus (usually a sphere of calcareous mollusk shell) planted by humans inside the shell or in the mantle of a mollusk is coated with nacre by the mollusk.

(c) *Imitation Pearl:* A manufactured product composed of any material or materials that simulate in appearance a pearl or cultured pearl.

(d) *Seed Pearl:* A small pearl, as defined in (a), that measures approximately two millimeters or less.

### §23.19 Misuse of the word "pearl."

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to use the unqualified word ''pearl'' or any other word or phrase of like meaning to describe, identify, or refer to any object or product that is not in fact a pearl, as defined in §23.18(a).

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''pearl'' to describe, identify, or refer to a cultured pearl unless it is immediately preceded, with equal conspicuousness, by the word ''cultured'' or ''cultivated,'' or by some other word or phrase of like meaning, so as to indicate definitely and clearly that the product is not a pearl.

(c) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''pearl'' to describe, identify, or refer to an imitation pearl unless it is immediately preceded, with equal conspicuousness, by the word ''artificial,'' ''imitation,'' or ''simulated,'' or by some other word or phrase of like meaning, so as to indicate definitely and clearly that the product is not a pearl.

(d) It is unfair or deceptive to use the terms ''faux pearl,'' ''fashion pearl,'' ''Mother of Pearl,'' or any other such term to describe or qualify an imitation pearl product unless it is immediately preceded, with equal conspicuousness, by the word ''artificial,'' ''imitation,'' or ''simulated,'' or by some other word or phrase of like meaning, so as to indicate definitely and clearly that the product is not a pearl.

### §23.20 Misuse of terms such as "cultured pearl," "seed pearl," "Oriental pearl," "natura," "kultured," "real," "gem," "synthetic," and regional designations.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''cultured pearl,'' ''cultivated pearl,'' or any other word, term, or phrase of like meaning to describe, identify, or refer to any imitation pearl.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''seed pearl'' or any word, term, or phrase of like meaning to describe, identify, or refer to a cultured or an imitation pearl, without using the appropriate qualifying term ''cultured'' (e.g., ''cultured seed pearl'') or ''simulated,'' ''artificial,'' or ''imitation'' (e.g., ''imitation seed pearl'').

(c) It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''Oriental pearl'' or any word, term, or phrase of like meaning to describe, identify, or refer to any industry product other than a pearl taken from a salt water mollusk and of the distinctive appearance and type of pearls obtained from mollusks inhabiting the Persian Gulf and recognized in the jewelry trade as Oriental pearls.

(d) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''Oriental'' to describe, identify,

or refer to any cultured or imitation pearl.

(e) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''natura,'' ''natural,'' ''nature's,'' or any word, term, or phrase of like meaning to describe, identify, or refer to a cultured or imitation pearl. It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''organic'' to describe, identify, or refer to an imitation pearl, unless the term is qualified in such a way as to make clear that the product is not a natural or cultured pearl.

(f) It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''kultured,'' ''semi-cultured pearl,'' ''cultured-like,'' ''part-cultured,'' ''pre-mature cultured pearl,'' or any word, term, or phrase of like meaning to describe, identify, or refer to an imitation pearl.

(g) It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''South Sea pearl'' unless it describes, identifies, or refers to a pearl that is taken from a salt water mollusk of the Pacific Ocean South Sea Islands, Australia, or Southeast Asia. It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''South Sea cultured pearl'' unless it describes, identifies, or refers to a cultured pearl formed in a salt water mollusk of the Pacific Ocean South Sea Islands, Australia, or Southeast Asia.

(h) It is unfair or deceptive to use the term ''Biwa cultured pearl'' unless it describes, identifies, or refers to cultured pearls grown in fresh water mollusks in the lakes and rivers of Japan.

(i) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''real,'' ''genuine,'' ''precious,'' or any word, term, or phrase of like meaning to describe, identify, or refer to any imitation pearl.

(j) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''gem'' to describe, identify, or refer to a pearl or cultured pearl that does not possess the beauty, symmetry, rarity, and value necessary for qualification as a gem.

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (J): Use of the word ''gem'' with respect to cultured pearls should be avoided since few cultured pearls possess the necessary qualifications to properly be termed ''gems.'' Imitation pearls should not be described as ''gems.''

(k) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''synthetic'' or similar terms to describe cultured or imitation pearls.

(l) It is unfair or deceptive to use the terms ''Japanese Pearls,'' ''Chinese Pearls,'' ''Mallorca Pearls,'' or any regional designation to describe, identify, or refer to any cultured or imitation pearl, unless the term is immediately preceded, with equal conspicuousness, by the word ''cultured,'' ''artificial,'' ''imitation,'' or ''simulated,'' or by some other word or phrase of like meaning, so as to indicate definitely and clearly that the product is a cultured or imitation pearl.

### § 23.21 Misrepresentation as to cultured pearls.

It is unfair or deceptive to misrepresent the manner in which cultured pearls are produced, the size of the nucleus artificially inserted in the mollusk and included in cultured pearls, the length of time that such products remained in the mollusk, the thickness of the nacre coating, the value and quality of cultured pearls as compared with the value and quality of pearls and imitation pearls, or any other material matter relating to the formation, structure, properties, characteristics, and qualities of cultured pearls.

### § 23.22 Deception as to gemstones.

It is unfair or deceptive to fail to disclose that a gemstone has been treated in any manner that is not permanent or that creates special care requirements, and to fail to disclose that the treatment is not permanent, if such is the case. The following are examples of treatments that should be disclosed because they usually are not permanent or create special care requirements: coating, impregnation, irradiating, heating, use of nuclear bombardment, application of colored or colorless oil or epoxy-like resins, wax, plastic, or glass, surface diffusion, or dyeing. This disclosure may be made at the point of sale, except that disclosure should be made in any solicitation where the product can be purchased without viewing (e.g., direct mail catalogs, online services), and in the case of televised shopping programs, on the air. If special care requirements for a gemstone arise because the gemstone has been treated, it is recommended that the seller disclose the special care requirements to the purchaser.

### § 23.23 Misuse of the words "ruby," "sapphire," "emerald," "topaz," "stone," "birthstone," "gemstone," etc.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to use the unqualified words ''ruby,'' ''sapphire,'' ''emerald,'' ''topaz,'' or the name of any other precious or semi-precious stone to describe any product that is not in fact a natural stone of the type described.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''ruby,'' ''sapphire,'' ''emerald,'' ''topaz,'' or the name of any other precious or semi-precious stone, or the word ''stone,'' ''birthstone,'' ''gemstone,'' or similar term to describe a laboratory-grown, laboratory-created, [manufacturer name]-created, synthetic, imitation, or simulated stone, unless such word or name is immediately preceded with equal conspicuousness by the word ''laboratory-grown,'' ''laboratory-created,'' ''[manufacturer name]-created,'' ''synthetic,'' or by the word ''imitation'' or ''simulated,'' so as to disclose clearly the nature of the product and the fact it is not a natural gemstone.

NOTE TO PARAGRAPH (H): The use of the word ''faux'' to describe a laboratory-created or imitation stone is not an adequate disclosure that the stone is not natural.

(c) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''laboratory-grown,'' ''laboratory-created,'' ''[manufacturer name]-created,'' or ''synthetic'' with the name of any natural stone to describe any industry product unless such industry product has essentially the same optical, physical, and chemical properties as the stone named.

### § 23.24 Misuse of the words "real," "genuine," "natural," "precious," etc.

It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''real,'' ''genuine,'' ''natural,'' ''precious,'' ''semi-precious,'' or similar terms to describe any industry product that is manufactured or produced artificially.

### § 23.25 Misuse of the word "gem."

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''gem'' to describe, identify, or refer to a ruby, sapphire, emerald, topaz, or other industry product that does not possess the beauty, symmetry, rarity, and value necessary for qualification as a gem.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''gem'' to describe any laboratory-created industry product unless the product meets the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section and unless such word is immediately accompanied, with equal conspicuousness, by the word ''laboratory-grown,'' ''laboratory-created,'' or ''[manufacturer-name]-created,'' ''synthetic,'' or by some other word or phrase of like meaning, so as to clearly disclose that it is not a natural gem.

NOTE TO § 23.25: In general, use of the word ''gem'' with respect to laboratory-created stones should be avoided since few laboratory-created stones possess the necessary qualifications to properly be termed ''gems.'' Imitation diamonds and other imitation stones should not be described as ''gems.'' Not all diamonds or natural stones, including those classified as precious stones, possess the necessary qualifications to be properly termed ''gems.''

### § 23.26 Misuse of the words "flawless," "perfect," etc.

(a) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''flawless'' as a quality description of any gemstone that discloses blemishes, inclusions, or clarity faults of any sort when examined under a corrected magnifier at 10-power, with adequate illumination, by a person skilled in gemstone grading.

(b) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''perfect'' or any representation of similar meaning to describe any gemstone unless the gemstone meets the definition of ''flawless'' and is not of inferior color or make.

(c) It is unfair or deceptive to use the word ''flawless,'' ''perfect,'' or any representation of similar meaning to describe any imitation gemstone.

## APPENDIX TO PART 23—EXEMPTIONS RECOGNIZED IN THE ASSAY FOR QUALITY OF GOLD ALLOY, GOLD FILLED, GOLD OVERLAY, ROLLED GOLD PLATE, SILVER, AND PLATINUM INDUSTRY PRODUCTS

(a) Exemptions recognized in the industry and not to be considered in any assay for quality of a karat gold industry product include springs, posts, and separable backs of lapel buttons, posts and nuts for attaching interchangeable ornaments, metallic parts

completely and permanently encased in a nonmetallic covering, field pieces and bezels for lockets,[1] and wire pegs or rivets used for applying mountings and other ornaments, which mountings or ornaments shall be of the quality marked.

NOTE: Exemptions recognized in the industry and not to be considered in any assay for quality of a karat gold optical product include: the hinge assembly (barrel or other special types such as are customarily used in plastic frames); washers, bushings, and nuts of screw assemblies; dowels; springs for spring shoe straps; metal parts permanently encased in a non-metallic covering; and for oxfords,[2] coil and joint springs.

(b) Exemptions recognized in the industry and not to be considered in any assay for quality of a gold filled, gold overlay and rolled gold plate industry product, other than watchcases, include joints, catches, screws, pin stems, pins of scarf pins, hat pins, etc., field pieces and bezels for lockets, posts and separate backs of lapel buttons, bracelet and necklace snap tongues, springs, and metallic parts completely and permanently encased in a nonmetallic covering.

NOTE: Exemptions recognized in the industry and not to be considered in any assay for quality of a gold filled, gold overlay and rolled gold plate optical product include: screws; the hinge assembly (barrel or other special types such as are customarily used in plastic frames); washers, bushings, tubes and nuts of screw assemblies; dowels; pad inserts; springs for spring shoe straps, cores and/or inner windings of comfort cable temples; metal parts permanently encased in a nonmetallic covering; and for oxfords, the handle and catch.

(c) Exemptions recognized in the industry and not to be considered in any assay for quality of a silver industry product include screws, rivets, springs, spring pins for wrist watch straps; posts and separable backs of lapel buttons; wire pegs, posts, and nuts used for applying mountings or other ornaments, which mountings or ornaments shall be of the quality marked; pin stems (e.g., of badges, brooches, emblem pins, hat pins, and scarf pins, etc.); levers for belt buckles; blades and skeletons of pocket knives; field pieces and bezels for lockets; bracelet and necklace snap tongues; any other joints, catches, or screws; and metallic parts completely and permanently encased in a nonmetallic covering.

(d) Exemptions recognized in the industry and not to be considered in any assay for quality of an industry product of silver in combination with gold include joints, catches, screws, pin stems, pins of scarf pins, hat pins, etc., posts and separable backs of lapel buttons, springs, and metallic parts completely and permanently encased in a nonmetallic covering.

(e) Exemptions recognized in the industry and not to be considered in any assay for quality of a platinum industry product include springs, winding bars, sleeves, crown cores, mechanical joint pins, screws, rivets, dust bands, detachable movement rims, hatpin stems, and bracelet and necklace snap tongues. In addition, the following exemptions are recognized for products marked in accordance with section 23.8(b)(5) of these Guides (i.e., products that are less than 500 parts per thousand platinum): pin tongues, joints, catches, lapel button backs and the posts to which they are attached, scarf-pin stems, hat pin sockets, shirt-stud backs, vest-button backs, and ear-screw backs, provided such parts are made of the same quality platinum as is used in the balance of the article.

[1] Field pieces of lockets are those inner portions used as frames between the inside edges of the locket and the spaces for holding pictures. Bezels are the separable inner metal rings to hold the pictures in place.

[2] Oxfords are a form of eyeglasses where a flat spring joins the two eye rims and the tension it exerts on the nose serves to hold the unit in place. Oxfords are also referred to as pince nez.

## PART 24—GUIDES FOR SELECT LEATHER AND IMITATION LEATHER PRODUCTS

Sec.
24.0 Scope and purpose of guides.
24.1 Deception (general).
24.2 Deception as to composition.
24.3 Misuse of the terms ''waterproof,'' ''dustproof,'' ''warpproof,'' ''scuffproof,'' ''scratchproof,'' ''scuff resistant,'' or ''scratch resistant.''

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 45, 46.

SOURCE: 61 FR 51583, Oct. 3, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

### § 24.0 Scope and purpose of guides.

(a) The Guides in this part apply to the manufacture, sale, distribution, marketing, or advertising of all kinds or types of leather or simulated-leather trunks, suitcases, traveling bags, sample cases, instrument cases, brief cases, ring binders, billfolds, wallets, key cases, coin purses, card cases, French purses, dressing cases, stud boxes, tie cases, jewel boxes, travel kits, gadget bags, camera bags, ladies' handbags, shoulder bags, purses, pocketbooks, footwear, belts (when not sold as part

of a garment) and similar articles (hereinafter, ''industry products'').

(b) These Guides represent administrative interpretations of laws administered by the Federal Trade Commission for the guidance of the public in conducting its affairs in conformity with legal requirements. These Guides specifically address the application of section 5 of the FTC Act (15 U.S.C. 45) to the manufacture, sale, distribution, marketing, and advertising of industry products listed in paragraph (a) of this section. They provide the basis for voluntary compliance with such laws by members of industry. Conduct inconsistent with the positions articulated in these Guides may result in corrective action by the Commission under section 5 if, after investigation, the Commission has reason to believe that the behavior falls within the scope of conduct declared unlawful by the statute.

### §24.1 Deception (general).

It is unfair or deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, the kind, grade, quality, quantity, material content, thickness, finish, serviceability, durability, price, origin, size, weight, ease of cleaning, construction, manufacture, processing, distribution, or any other material aspect of an industry product.

### §24.2 Deception as to composition.

It is unfair or deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, the composition of any industry product or part thereof. It is unfair or deceptive to use the unqualified term ''leather'' or other unqualified terms suggestive of leather to describe industry products unless the industry product so described is composed in all substantial parts of leather.[1] This section includes, but is not limited to, the following:

(a) *Imitation or simulated leather.* If all or part of an industry product is made of non-leather material that appears to be leather, the fact that the material is not leather, or the general nature of the material as something other than leather, should be disclosed. For example: Not leather; Imitation leather; Simulated leather; Vinyl; Vinyl coated fabric; or Plastic.

(b) *Embossed or processed leather.* The kind and type of leather from which an industry product is made should be disclosed when all or part of the product has been embossed, dyed, or otherwise processed so as to simulate the appearance of a different kind or type of leather. For example:

(1) An industry product made wholly of top grain cowhide that has been processed so as to imitate pigskin may be represented as being made of Top Grain Cowhide.

(2) Any additional representation concerning the simulated appearance of an industry product composed of leather should be immediately accompanied by a disclosure of the kind and type of leather in the product. For example: Top Grain Cowhide With Simulated Pigskin Grain.

(c) *Backing material.* (1) The backing of any material in an industry product with another kind of material should be disclosed when the backing is not apparent upon casual inspection of the product, or when a representation is made which, absent such disclosure, would be misleading as to the product's composition. For example: Top Grain Cowhide Backed With Vinyl.

(2) The composition of the different backing material should be disclosed if it is visible and consists of non-leather material with the appearance of leather, or leather processed so as to simulate a different kind of leather.

(d) *Misuse of trade names, etc.* A trade name, coined name, trademark, or other word or term, or any depiction or device should not be used if it misrepresents, directly or by implication, that an industry product is made in whole or in part from animal skin or hide, or that material in an industry product is leather or other material. This includes, among other practices, the use of a stamp, tag, label, card, or other device in the shape of a tanned

[1] For purposes of these Guides, footwear is composed of three parts: the upper, the lining and sock, and the outersole. These three parts are defined as follows: (1) The upper is the outer face of the structural element which is attached to the outersole; (2) the lining and sock are the lining of the upper and the insole, constituting the inside of the footwear article; and (3) the outersole is the bottom part of the footwear article subjected to abrasive wear and attached to the upper.

hide or skin or in the shape of a silhouette of an animal, in connection with any industry product that has the appearance of leather but that is not made wholly or in substantial part from animal skin or hide.

(e) *Misrepresentation that product is wholly of a particular composition.* A misrepresentation should not be made, directly or by implication, that an industry product is made wholly of a particular composition. A representation as to the composition of a particular part of a product should clearly indicate the part to which the representation applies.[2] Where a product is made principally of leather but has certain non-leather parts that appear to be leather, the product may be described as made of leather so long as accompanied by clear disclosure of the non-leather parts. For example:

(1) An industry product made of top grain cowhide except for frame covering, gussets, and partitions that are made of plastic but have the appearance of leather may be described as: Top Grain Cowhide With Plastic Frame Covering, Gussets and Partitions; or Top Grain Cowhide With Gussets, Frame Covering and Partitions Made of Non-Leather Material.

(2) An industry product made throughout, except for hardware, of vinyl backed with cowhide may be described as: Vinyl Backed With Cowhide (See also disclosure provision concerning use of backing material in paragraph (c) of this section).

(3) An industry product made of top grain cowhide except for partitions and stay, which are made of plastic-coated fabric but have the appearance of leather, may be described as: Top Grain Cowhide With Partitions and Stay Made of Non-leather Material; or Top Grain Cowhide With Partitions and Stay Made of Plastic-Coated Fabric.

(f) *Ground, pulverized, shredded, reconstituted, or bonded leather.* A material in an industry product that contains ground, pulverized, shredded, reconstituted, or bonded leather and thus is not wholly the hide of an animal should not be represented, directly or by implication, as being leather. This provision does not preclude an accurate representation as to the ground, pulverized, shredded, reconstituted, or bonded leather content of the material. However, if the material appears to be leather, it should be accompanied by either:

(1) An adequate disclosure as described by paragraph (a) of this section; or

(2) If the terms ''ground leather,'' ''pulverized leather,'' ''shredded leather,'' ''reconstituted leather,'' or ''bonded leather'' are used, a disclosure of the percentage of leather fibers and the percentage of non-leather substances contained in the material. For example: An industry product made of a composition material consisting of 60% shredded leather fibers may be described as: Bonded Leather Containing 60% Leather Fibers and 40% Non-leather Substances.

(g) *Form of disclosures under this section.* All disclosures described in this section should appear in the form of a stamping on the product, or on a tag, label, or card attached to the product, and should be affixed so as to remain on or attached to the product until received by the consumer purchaser. All such disclosures should also appear in all advertising of such products irrespective of the media used whenever statements, representations, or depictions appear in such advertising which, absent such disclosures, serve to create a false impression that the products, or parts thereof, are of a certain kind of composition. The disclosures affixed to products and made in advertising should be of such conspicuousness and clarity as to be noted by purchasers and prospective purchasers casually inspecting the products or casually reading, or listening to, such advertising. A disclosure necessitated by a particular representation should be in close conjunction with the representation.

[2] With regard to footwear, it is sufficient to disclose the presence of non-leather materials in the upper, the lining and sock, or the outersole, provided that the disclosure is made according to predominance of materials. For example, if the majority of the upper is composed of manmade material: Upper of manmade materials and leather.

### §24.3 Misuse of the terms "waterproof," "dustproof," "warpproof," "scuffproof," "scratchproof," "scuff resistant," and "scratch resistant."

It is unfair or deceptive to:

(a) Use the term ''Waterproof'' to describe all or part of an industry product unless the designated product or material prevents water from contact with its contents under normal conditions of intended use during the anticipated life of the product or material.

(b) Use the term ''Dustproof'' to describe an industry product unless the product is so constructed that when it is closed dust cannot enter it.

(c) Use the term ''Warpproof'' to describe all or part of an industry product unless the designated product or part is such that it cannot warp.

(d) Use the term ''Scuffproof,'' ''Scratchproof,'' or other terms indicating that the product is not subject to wear in any other respect, to describe an industry product unless the outside surface of the product is immune to scratches or scuff marks, or is not subject to wear as represented.

(e) Use the term ''Scuff Resistant,'' ''Scratch Resistant,'' or other terms indicating that the product is resistant to wear in any other respect, unless there is a basis for the representation and the outside surface of the product is meaningfully and significantly resistant to scuffing, scratches, or to wear as represented.

## PARTS 25–227 [RESERVED]

## PART 228—TIRE ADVERTISING AND LABELING GUIDES

Sec.

228.0 ''Industry Product'' and ''Industry Member'' defined.
228.0–1 Use of guide principles.
228.1 Tire description.
228.2 Designations of grade, line, level, or quality.
228.3 Deceptive designations.
228.4 Original equipment.
228.5 Comparative quality and performance claims.
228.6 Ply count, plies, ply rating.
228.7 Cord materials.
228.8 ''Change-Overs,'' ''New Car Take Offs,'' etc.
228.9 Retreaded and used tires.
228.10 Disclosure that products are obsolete or discontinued models.
228.11 Blemished, imperfect, defective, etc., products.
228.12 Pictorial misrepresentations.
228.13 Racing claims.
228.14 Bait advertising.
228.15 Deceptive pricing.
228.16 Guarantees.
228.17 Safety or performance features.
228.18 Other claims and representations.
228.19 Snow tire advertising.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 38 Stat. 719, as amended, 721; 15 U.S.C. 45, 46.

SOURCE: 32 FR 15525, Nov. 8, 1967, unless otherwise noted.

### §228.0 "Industry Product" and "Industry Member" defined.

As used in this part, the terms *Industry Product* or *Product* shall mean pneumatic tires for use on passenger automobiles, station wagons, and similar vehicles, or the materials used therein. The term *Industry Member* shall mean: All persons or firms who are engaged in the manufacture, sale or distribution of industry products as above defined whether under the manufacturer's or a private brand; and the manufacturers of passenger automobiles, station wagons, and similar vehicles for which industry products are provided as original equipment.

### §228.0–1 Use of guide principles.

The following general principles will be used in determining whether terminology and other direct or indirect representations subject to the Commission's jurisdiction regarding industry products conform to laws administered by the Commission.

### §228.1 Tire description.

(a) The purchase of tires for a motor vehicle is an extremely important matter to the consumer. Not only are substantial economic factors involved, but in most instances the purchaser will entrust the safety of himself and others to the performance of the product.

(b) To avoid being deceived, the consumer must have certain basic information. Certain of this information should be provided before the purchaser makes his choice but other is essential throughout the life of the tire.

(1) *Disclosure before the sale.* The following information should be disclosed in point of sale material which is

prominently displayed and of easy access, on the premises where the purchase is to be made in order to appraise the consumer:

(i) *Load-carrying capacity of the tire.* This information is essential to assure the purchaser that the tires he selects are capable of safely carrying the intended load. This information should consist of the maximum load-carrying capacity as related to various recommended air pressures and may include data which indicates the effect such varying pressures will have on the operation of the automobile. All such information shall be based on actual tests utilizing adequate and technically sound procedures. The test procedures and results shall be in writing and available for inspection.

(ii) *Generic name of cord material.* Different cord materials can have performance characteristics that will affect the consumer's selection of tires. These various characteristics are widely advertised, and the consumer is aware of the distinctions. Without a disclosure of the generic name of the cord material, the consumer is unable to consider this factor in his purchase.

(iii) *Actual number of plies.* Consumers have preference for industry products of a stated type of construction (e.g., 2 ply v. 4 ply). Without adequate disclosure the consumer is denied the basis for considering this factor in his selection.

NOTE: Where the tire is of radial construction the ply count disclosure will be satisfied by the statement ''radial ply.''

(2) *Disclosure on the tire.* The following information should be clearly disclosed in a permanent manner on the outside wall of the tire:

(i) *Size.* Size is extremely important not only to insure that the tire will fit the vehicle wheel, but because it also is a determining factor as to the load-carrying capacity of the vehicle.

(ii) *Whether tire is tubeless or tube type.*

(iii) *Actual number of plies.*

NOTE: Where the tire is of radial construction the ply count disclosure will be satisfied by the statement ''radial ply.''

(3) *Other disclosures*—(i) *Generic name of cord material used in ply.* A disclosure of the generic name of the cord material used in the ply of the tire should be made on a label or tag prominently displayed on the tire itself, and affixed in such a fashion that it cannot be easily removed prior to sale.

(ii) *Load-carrying capacity and inflation pressure.* One of the most important factors in obtaining tire performance is proper care and use. Included in such care is inflating the tire to the required level as related to load-carrying capacity and use. To insure that such pressures are maintained by the user and the tire is not overloaded beyond its safe capacity, a table or chart should be provided for retention by the purchaser. This will apprise the purchaser of the load-carrying capacity of the tires as related to the range of recommended air pressures and use. It may also supply data which indicate the effect such varying pressures will have on the operation of the automobile.

NOTE: Automobile manufacturers who provide tires as original equipment with new automobiles should incorporate such information in the owner's manual given to new car purchasers.

[Guide 1]

[32 FR 15525, Nov. 8, 1967, as amended at 33 FR 982, Jan. 26, 1968]

### § 228.2 Designations of grade, line, level, or quality.

(a) There exists today no industry-wide, government or other accepted system of quality standards or grading of industry products. Within the industry, however, a variety of trade terminology has developed which, when used in conjunction with consumer transactions, has the tendency to suggest that a system of quality standards or grading does in fact exist. Typical of such terminology are the expressions ''line,'' ''level,'' and ''premium.'' The exact meaning of such terminology may vary from one industry member to another. Therefore, the ''1st line'' or ''100 level'' or ''premium'' tire of one industry member may be grossly inferior to the ''1st line'' or ''100 level'' or ''premium'' tire of another member since in the absence of an accepted system of grading or quality standards, each member can determine what ''line,'' ''level,'' or ''premium'' classification to attach to a tire.

(b) The consumer does not understand the significance of the absence of accepted grading or quality standards and is likely to assume that the expressions ''line,'' ''level,'' and ''premium'' connote valid criteria. Since the consumer is likely to misinterpret the meaning of such terminology, he may be deceived into purchasing an inferior product because it has been given such designation.

(c) In the absence of an accepted system of grading or quality standards for industry products, it is improper to represent, either through the use of such expressions as ''line,'' ''level,'' ''premium'' or in any other manner, that such a system exists, unless the representation is accompanied by a clear and conspicuous disclosure:

(1) That no industrywide or other accepted system of quality standards or grading of industry products currently exists, and

(2) That representations as to grade, line, level, or quality, relate only to the private standard of the marketer of the tire so described (e.g., ''XYZ first line'').

(d) Additionally, products should not be described as being ''first line'' unless the products so described are the best products, exclusive of premium quality products embodying special features, of the manufacturer or brand name distributor applying such designation. [Guide 2]

### §228.3 Deceptive designations.

In the advertising or labeling of products, industry members should not use designations for grades of products they offer to the public:

(a) Which have the capacity to deceive purchasers into believing that such products are equal or superior to a better grade or grades of their products when such conclusion would be contrary to fact (for example, if the ''first line'' tire of a manufacturer is designated as ''Standard,'' ''High Standard,'' or ''Deluxe High Standard,'' the tires of that manufacturer which are of lesser quality should not be designated or described as ''Super Standard,'' ''Supreme High Standard,'' ''Super Deluxe High Standard,'' or ''Premium''), or

(b) Which are otherwise false or misleading.

NOTE: When a manufacturer applies a designation to a product which falsely represents or implies the product is equal or superior in quality to its better grade or grades of products, it is responsible for any resulting deception whether it is a direct result of the designation or a result of the placing in the hands of others a means and instrumentality for the creation by them of a false and deceptive impression with respect to the comparative quality of products made by that manufacturer.

[Guide 3]

### §228.4 Original equipment.

Original equipment tires are understood to mean the same brand and quality tires used generally as original equipment on new current models of vehicles of domestic manufacture. A tire which was formerly but is not currently used as ''Original Equipment,'' should not be described as ''Original Equipment'' without clear and conspicuous disclosure in close conjunction with the term, of the latest actual year such tire was used as ''Original Equipment.'' [Guide 4]

### §228.5 Comparative quality and performance claims.

Representations and claims made by industry members that their products are superior in quality or performance to other products should not be made unless:

(a) The representation or claim is based on an actual test utilizing adequate and technically sound procedures of the performance of the advertised product and of the product with which it is compared; the test procedure, results of which are in writing and available for inspection; and

(b) The basis of the comparison is clearly stated and the comparison is based on identical conditions of use. Dangling comparatives should not be used.

(c) Claims or representations that one tire is comparable or identical to another should not be used unless the advertiser is able to establish that such tires are comparable not only as respects the molds in which the tires are made, but also as respects all significant materials used in their construction. [Guide 5]

**§ 228.6 Ply count, plies, ply rating.**

A ply is a layer of rubberized fabric contained in the body of the tire and extending from one bead of the tire to the other bead of the tire. The consumer is interested in, and is entitled to know, certain information in regard to plies in tires. However, a great deal of terminology connected with plies which is utilized in advertising has the tendency to confuse and deceive the public and is accordingly inappropriate.

(a) It is improper to utilize any statement or depiction which denotes or implies that tires possess more plies than they in fact actually possess. Phrases such as ''Super 6'' or ''Deluxe 8'' as descriptive of tires of less than 6 or 8 plies, respectively, should not be used.

(b) The actual number of plies in a tire is not necessarily determinative of the ultimate strength, performance or quality of the product. Variations in the amount and type of fabric utilized in the ply and other construction features of the tire will determine the ultimate strength, performance or quality of the product. Through variations in these construction aspects, a tire of a stated number of plies may be inferior in strength, quality, and performance to another tire of lesser actual ply count. Accordingly, it is improper to represent in advertising, or otherwise, that solely because a product has more plies than another, it is superior.

(c)(1) The expression ''ply rating'' as used in the trade is an index of tire strength. Each manufacturer, however, has his own system of computing ''ply rating.'' Thus, a product of one industry member of a stated ''ply rating'' is not necessarily of the same strength as the product of another member with the identical rating. While the expression ''ply rating'' may have significance to industry members, in the absence of a publicized system of standardized ratings, the use of such expressions in connection with sales to the general public may be deceptive.

(2) To avoid deception, the expression ''ply rated'' or ''ply rating'' or any similar language should not be used unless said claim is based on actual tests utilizing adequate and technically sound procedures, the results of which are in writing and available for inspection. Further, certain disclosures must be made when such expressions are used in connection with consumer transactions.

(3) When ply rating is stated on the tire itself, it must be accompanied in immediate conjunction therewith, and in identical size letters, the disclosure of the actual ply count. In addition, there must be a tag or label attached to the tire or its packaging, of such permanency that it cannot easily be removed prior to sale to the consumer, which tag or label contains a clear and conspicuous disclosure:

(i) That there is no industrywide definition of ply rating; and

(ii) Of the basis of comparison of the claimed rating. (For example, ''2-ply tire, 4-ply rating means this 2-ply tire is equivalent to our current or most recent 4-ply nylon cord tire.'')

(4) When ply rating is used in advertising or in other sales or promotional materials, in addition to the disclosure of actual ply count as indicated, it must be accompanied by the disclosure:

(i) That there is no industrywide definition of ply rating; and

(ii) Of the basis of comparison of the claimed rating. (For example, ''2-ply tire, 4-ply rating means this 2-ply tire is equivalent to our current or most recent 4-ply nylon cord tire.'') [Guide 6]

**§ 228.7 Cord materials.**

(a) The fabric that is utilized in the ply is known as the cord material. The use of a particular type of cord material may be determined by the use to which the tire will be placed. One type of cord material may provide one desired characteristic, but not be used because of other characteristics which may be unfavorable.

(b) The type of cord material utilized in a tire is not necessarily determinative of its ultimate quality, performance or strength. Through variations in the denier of the material, the amount to be used and other construction aspects of the tire, the ultimate quality, performance, and strength is determined.

(c) It is improper to represent in advertising, or otherwise, that solely because a particular type of cord material is utilized in the construction of a tire, it is superior to tires constructed

with other types of cord material. Such advertising is deceptive for it creates that impression in the consumer's mind whereas in fact it does not take into consideration the other variable aspects of tire construction.

(d) When the type of cord material is referred to in advertising, it must be made clear that it is only the cord that is of the particular material and not the entire tire. For example, it would be improper to refer to a product as ''Nylon Tire.'' The proper description is ''Nylon Cord Tire.'' Similarly, when the manufacturer of the cord material is mentioned, it should be made clear that he did not manufacture the tire. For example, a tire should be described as ''Brand X Nylon Cord Material'' and not ''Brand X Nylon Tire.''

(e) Cord material should be identified by its generic name when referred to in advertising. [Guide 7]

### §228.8 "Change-Overs," "New Car Take Offs," etc.

Industry products should not be represented as ''Change-Overs'' or ''New Car Take Offs'' unless the products so described have been subjected to but insignificant use necessary in moving new vehicles prior to delivery of such vehicles to franchised distributor or retailer. ''Change-Overs'' or ''New Car Take Offs'' should not be described as new. Advertisements of such products should include a clear and conspicuous disclosure that ''Change-Overs'' or ''New Car Take Offs'' have been subjected to previous use. [Guide 8]

### §228.9 Retreaded and used tires.

Advertisements of used or retreaded products should clearly and conspicuously disclose that same are not new products. Unexplained terms, such as ''New Tread,'' ''Nu-Tread'' and ''Snow Tread'' as descriptive of such tires do not constitute adequate disclosure that tires so described are not new. Any terms disclosing that tires are not new also shall not misrepresent the performance, the type of manufacture, or any other attribute of such tires. See §228.18. [Guide 9]

[32 FR 15525, Nov. 8, 1967, as amended at 58 FR 64882, Dec. 10, 1993]

### §228.10 Disclosure that products are obsolete or discontinued models.

Advertisements should clearly and conspicuously disclose that the products offered are discontinued models or designs or are obsolete when such is the fact.

NOTE: The words ''model'' and ''design'' used in connection with tires include width, depth, and pattern of the tread as well as other aspects of their construction.

[Guide 10]

### §228.11 Blemished, imperfect, defective, etc., products.

Advertisements of products which are blemished, imperfect, or which for any reason are defective, should contain conspicuous disclosure of that fact. In addition, such products should have permanently stamped or molded thereon or affixed thereto and to the wrappings in which they are encased a plain and conspicuous legend or statement to the effect that such products are blemished, imperfect, or defective. Such markings by a legend such as ''XX'' or by a color marking or by any other code designation which is not generally understood by the public are not considered to be an adequate disclosure. [Guide 11]

### §228.12 Pictorial misrepresentations.

(a) It is improper to utilize in advertising, any picture or depiction of an industry product other than the product offered for sale. Where price is featured in advertising, any picture or depiction utilized in connection therewith should be the exact tire offered for sale at the advertised price.

(b) For example, it would be improper to depict a white side wall tire with a designated price when the price is applicable to black wall tires. Such practice would be improper even if a disclosure is made elsewhere in the advertisement that the featured price is not for the depicted whitewalls. [Guide 12]

### §228.13 Racing claims.

(a) Advertising in connection with racing, speed records, or similar events should clearly and conspicuously disclose that the tires on the vehicle are not generally available all purpose tires, unless such is the fact.

(b) The requirement of this section is applicable also to special purpose racing tires, which although available for such special purpose, are not the advertiser's general purpose product.

(c) Similarly, designations should not be utilized in conjunction with any industry product which falsely suggest, directly or indirectly, that such product is the identical one utilized in racing events or in a particular event. [Guide 13]

### § 228.14 Bait advertising.

(a) Bait advertising is an alluring but insincere offer to sell a product which the advertiser in truth does not intend or want to sell. Its purpose is to obtain leads as to persons interested in buying industry products and to induce them to visit the member's premises. After the person visits the premises, the primary effort is to switch him from buying the advertised product in order to sell something else, usually at a higher price.

(b) No advertisement containing an offer to sell a product should be published when the offer is not a bona fide effort to sell the advertised product. Among the acts and practices which will be considered in determining if an advertisement is bona fide are:

(1) The advertising of a product at a price applicable only to unusual or off size tires or for special purpose tires;

(2) The refusal to show or sell the product offered in accordance with the terms of the offer;

(3) The failure to have available at all outlets listed in the advertisement a sufficient quantity of the advertised product to meet reasonably anticipated demands, unless the advertisement clearly and adequately discloses that the supply is limited and/or the merchandise is available only at designated outlets;

(4) The disparagement by acts or words of the advertised product or the disparagement of the guarantee, credit terms, or in any other respect in connection with it;

(5) Use of a sales plan or method of compensation for salesmen or penalizing salesmen, designed to prevent or discourage them from selling the advertised product. [Guide 14]

### § 228.15 Deceptive pricing.

(a) *Former price comparisons.* One form of advertising in the replacement market is the offering of reductions or savings from the advertiser's former price. This type of advertising may take many forms, of which the following are examples:

Formerly $_____ Reduced to $_____.
50% Off—Sale Priced at $_____.

Such advertising is valid where the basis of comparison, that is, the price on which the represented savings are based, is the actual bona fide price at which the advertiser recently and regularly sold the advertised tire to the public for a reasonably substantial period of time prior to the advertised sale. However, where the basis of comparison (1) is not the advertiser's actual selling price, (2) is a price which was not used in the recent past but at some remote period in the past, or (3) is a price which has been used for only a short period of time and a reduction is claimed therefrom, the claimed savings or reduction is fictitious and the purchaser deceived. Following are examples illustrating the application of this provision:

*Example 1.* Dealer A advertises a tire as follows: ''Memorial Day Sale—Regular price of tire, $15.95—Reduced to $13.95.'' During the preceding 6 months Dealer A has conducted numerous ''sales'' at which the tire was sold in large quantities at the $13.95 price. The tire was sold at $15.95 only during periods between the so-called ''sales.'' In these circumstances, the advertised reduction from a ''regular'' price of $15.95 would be improper, since that was not the price at which the tire was recently and regularly sold to the public for a reasonably substantial period of time prior to the advertised sale.

*Example 2.* Dealer B engaged in sale advertising weekly on the last 3 days of the week. It was his practice during the selling week to offer a particular line of tires at $24.95 on Monday, Tuesday, and Wednesday, and advertise the same line as ''Sale Priced $19.95'' on the final 3 days of the selling week. Use of the price for only 3 days prior to the reduction, even though the higher price is resumed after 3 days of ''sale'' advertising would not constitute a basis for claiming a price reduction. The higher price was not the regular selling price for a reasonably substantial period of time. Furthermore, when the higher price is used only for the first 3 days of the week and another price is used for the final 3 days, the higher price has not

been established as a regular price, especially when most sales are made at the lower price during the final 3-day period.

(b) *Trade area price comparisons.* (1) Another recognized form of bargain advertising is to offer tires at prices lower than those being charged by others for the same tires in the area where the advertiser is doing business. Examples of this type of advertising where used in connection with the advertiser's own price are:

Sold Elsewhere at $_____.
Retail Value $_____.

(2) The tire market, because of its nature, requires that special care and precaution be exercised before this type of advertising is used. Trade area price comparisons are understood by purchasers to mean that the represented bargain is a reduction or saving from the price being charged by representative retail outlets for the same tires at the time of the advertisement.

(3) If a tire manufacturer decides to conduct a promotion of a particular tire, reduces the price in his wholly owned stores and independent dealers follow the promotion price, the ''sale'' price has become the retail price in the area and it would be deceptive to represent that this ''sale'' price is reduced from that charged by others. In most circumstances where a promotion is sponsored by the manufacturer and is followed by the wholly owned stores and most of the independent dealers in the area, such trade area price comparisons would be improper.

(4) A trade area price comparison would be valid where an individual dealer, acting on his own, decides to lower the price of a tire significantly below that being charged by others in his area. In this situation, he would be honestly offering a genuine reduction from the price charged by others in his area.

(5) When using a retail price comparison great care should be exercised to make the advertising clear that the basis of the reduction or saving is the price being charged by others and not the advertiser's own former selling price.

(c) *Substantiality of reduction or savings.* In order for an advertiser to represent that a price is reduced or offers savings to purchasers without specifying the extent thereof, it is necessary that the represented reduction or savings be significant. When the amount of the reduction or savings is not stated in advertising and is not substantial enough to attract and influence prospective purchasers if they knew the true facts, the representation is deceptive.

*Example* Dealer C advertises a Fourth of July sale featuring X brand tires at a claimed reduction in price. The sale price in the advertisement is stated as $14.75 per tire. The advertisement does not state the former price of the tire. The tire previously had been sold at $14.95. Under the circumstances, the advertisement would be deceptive. The 20-cent reduction in price is insignificant when compared with the actual selling price of the tire. Purchasers generally, if they knew the amount of the reduction, would not be influenced sufficiently thereby to cause them to purchase the tire at the reduced price.

(d) *Representations of specific price reductions and savings.* (1) Advertisements which offer a specified amount or percentage of price reduction or savings should not be used where there is no determinable regular selling price, whether it be the advertiser's former price or the retail price in the area.

(2) The lack of a determinable actual selling price does not preclude all ''sale'' advertising. For example, if a dealer desires to offer a tire at a price which represents a significant reduction from the lowest price in the range of prices at which he has actually sold the tire in the recent regular course of his business, it would not be deceptive to advertise the tire with such representations as ''Sale Priced,'' ''Reduced'' or ''Save.''

(3) However, an advertiser is not precluded from offering specific savings from the lowest price at which he has actually sold tires, provided that the advertising clearly states that the offered savings are a reduction from the lowest previous selling price and not from the advertiser's regular selling price.

(e) *No trade-in prices.* (1) The most common device used in advertising is to offer a purported reduction or savings from a so-called ''no trade-in'' price. Prospective purchasers are entitled to believe this to mean that they would realize a savings from the price they would have had to pay for the tire

prior to the ''Sale,'' either in cash or in cash plus the fair value of a traded-in tire. If this is not true, purchasers are deceived. Where a significant number of sales in relation to a seller's total sales is not made at the so-called ''no trade-in'' price and such price appreciably exceeds the price purchasers would normally pay the seller (including the fair value of any trade-in), use of the price as a basis for claiming a reduction or savings would be deceptive and contrary to this part.

(2) Representations of high trade-in allowances are sometimes used in combination with fictitious ''no trade-in'' prices to deceive purchasers. These may take the form of direct representations that a specified amount (usually significantly higher than the value of the tire carcass) will be allowed for a trade-in tire, or, representations of specific savings in the purchase of a new tire when a tire is traded in during a ''sale.'' In either case, the purchaser is given the illusion of a bargain in the guise of a high trade-in allowance which he does not in fact receive if the amount of the allowance is deducted from a fictitiously high ''no trade-in'' price.

*Example 1.* An advertisement offers a 25 percent reduction during a May tire sale. The body of the advertisement sets forth a ''no trade-in'' price as the price from which the represented 25 percent reduction is made. However, such price represents the price at which only 15 percent of the advertiser's total sales were made and which was appreciably higher than the price at which the tire usually sold with a trade-in even with the addition of an amount representing a reasonable, bona fide trade-in allowance. Use of the ''no trade-in'' price in the advertisement is deceptive.

*Example 2.* Dealer D advertises, ''Now Get $4 to $10 Per Tire Trade-In Allowance'' in connection with the sale of a certain tire. Dealer D has regularly sold the tire for $12 to customers having a good recappable tire to offer in trade. During the regular course of Dealer D's business he has granted allowances ranging from 50 cents to $3, depending upon the condition of the tire taken in trade. During the advertised sale, however, Dealer D sells all of the tires at the manufacturer's suggested ''no trade-in'' price of $22 and deducts from that price the inflated trade-in allowances. Under the circumstances, the advertisement would be deceptive. Dealer D has not granted the allowances in connection with his regular selling price but has used instead the fictitious ''no trade-in'' price as a basis for offering the inflated allowances. The consumer has been led to believe that his old tire is worth far more than its actual value and Dealer D receives what has been his regular selling price or, in some instances, an amount in excess of the regular price, depending upon the allowance granted.

(f) *Combination offers.* (1) Frequent use is made in the tire market of purported bargain advertising which offers ''free'' or at a represented reduced price a tire, some other article of merchandise or a service, with the purchase of one or more tires at a specified price. The following are typical examples of this type of offer:

Buy 3, get four at no additional cost.
Buy one tire at $____, get second tire at 50% off.
Get a wheel free with purchase of each snow tire.
Free wheel alignment with purchase of two new tires.

Such advertising is understood by purchasers to mean that the price charged by the advertiser for the initial tire or tires to be purchased is the price at which they have been regularly sold by the advertiser for a reasonably substantial period of time prior to the sale, and that the amount of the purported reduction or the value of the so-called ''free'' article or service represents actual savings. If the price of the tires to be purchased is not the advertiser's regular selling price, purchasers are deceived.

*Example.* Dealer E advertises ''2nd Tire ½ Off When You Buy First Tire At Price Listed Below—No Trade-In Needed!'' In the body of the advertisement the first tire is listed as costing $25.15 and the second tire $12.57. The figure listed as the price for the first tire is not Dealer E's regular selling price, but the manufacturer's suggested ''no trade-in'' price. E's regular selling price prior to the so-called sale had been $18.85 per tire. Under the circumstances, the ''½ Off'' offer would be deceptive. The basis for the advertised offer is not the advertiser's actual selling price for the tire. While consumers are led to believe that they are being afforded substantial savings by purchasing a second tire, in fact they are paying Dealer E's regular selling price for two tires.

(g) *Federal Excise Tax.* Since the Federal Excise Tax on tires is assessed on the manufacturer and is based on the weight of the materials used and not the retail selling price, the tax should be included in the price quoted for a

particular tire, or the amount of the tax set out in immediate conjunction with the tire price. For example, assuming the tax on a particular tire to be $1 and the advertised selling price $9.95, the price should be stated as ''$10.95'' or ''$9.95 plus $1 Federal Excise Tax'' and not ''$9.95 plus Federal Excise Tax.''

(h) *Advertising furnished by tire manufacturers.* It is the practice of some tire manufacturers to supply advertising to independent as well as to wholly owned retail outlets in local trade areas. A tire manufacturer providing advertising material to be used in local trade areas by either wholly owned or independent outlets is responsible for the representations made in such advertising and should base price and savings claims on conditions actually existing in the particular areas. In view of price fluctuations at the local level, the general dissemination (i.e., in more than one trade area) to independent retail outlets of advertising material containing stated prices or reduction claims results in deception[1] and is, accordingly, contrary to this part. [Guide 15]

**§ 228.16 Guarantees.**

(a) In general, any advertising containing a guarantee representation shall clearly and conspicuously disclose:

(1) *The nature and extent of the guarantee.* (i) The general nature of the guarantee should be disclosed. If the guarantee is, for example, against defects in material or workmanship, this should be clearly revealed.

(ii) Disclosure should be made of any material conditions or limitations in the guarantee. This would include any limitation as to the duration of a guarantee, whether stated in terms of treadwear, time, mileage, or otherwise. Exclusion of tire punctures also would constitute a material limitation. If the guarantor's performance is conditioned on the return of the tire to the dealer who made the original sale, this fact should be revealed.

(iii) When a tire is represented as ''guaranteed for life'' or as having a ''lifetime guarantee,'' the meaning of the term *life* or *lifetime* should be explained.

(iv) Guarantees which under normal conditions are impractical of fulfillment or for such a period of time or number of miles as to mislead purchasers into the belief the tires so guaranteed have a greater degree of serviceability or durability than is true in fact, should not be used.

(2) *The manner in which the guarantor will perform.* This consists generally of a statement of what the guarantor undertakes to do under the guarantee. Types of performance would be repair of the tire, refund of purchase price or replacement of the tire. If the guarantor has an option as to the manner of the performance, this should be expressly stated.

(3) *The identity of the guarantor.* The identity of the guarantor should be clearly revealed in all advertising, as well as in any documents evidencing the guarantee. Confusion of purchasers often occurs when it is not clear whether the manufacturer or the retailer is the guarantor.

(4) *Pro rata adjustment of guarantees*—(i) *Disclosure in advertising.* Many guarantees provide that in the event of tire failure during the guarantee period a credit will be allowed on the purchase price of a replacement tire, the amount of the credit being in proportion to the treadwear or time remaining under the guarantee. All advertising of the guarantee should clearly disclose the pro rata nature of the guarantee and the price basis upon which adjustments will be made.

(ii) *Price basis for adjustments.* Usually under this type of guarantee the same predetermined amount is used as a basis for the prorated credit and the purchase price of the replacement tire. If this so-called ''adjustment'' price is not the actual selling price but is an artificial, inflated price the purchaser does not receive the full value of his guarantee. This is illustrated by the following example:

''A'' purchases a tire which is represented as being guaranteed for the life of the tread.

[1] This part does not deal with the question of whether such practice may be improper as contributing to unlawful restraints of trade connected with the enforcement of the Antitrust Laws and the Federal Trade Commission Act.

After 75 percent of the tread is worn, the tire fails. The dealer from whom ''A'' seeks an adjustment under his guarantee is currently selling the tire for $15 but the ''adjustment'' price of the tire is $20. ''A'' receives a credit of 25 percent or $5 toward the price of the replacement tire. This credit is applied not on the actual selling price but on the artificial ''adjustment'' price of $20. Thus, ''A'' pays $15 for the new tire which is the current selling price of the tire.

Under the facts described in this illustration the guarantee was worthless as the purchaser could have purchased a new tire at the same price without a guarantee. If 50 percent of the tread remained when the adjustment was made, the purchaser would have received a credit of $10 toward the $20 replacement price. He must still pay $10 for a replacement tire. Had the adjustment been made on the basis of the actual selling price he would have obtained a new tire for $7.50. Thus, while deriving some value from his guarantee he did not receive the value he had reason to expect under the guarantee.

(b) Accordingly, to avoid deception of purchasers as to the value of guarantees, adjustments should be made on the basis of a price which realistically reflects the actual selling price of the tire. The following would be considered appropriate price bases for making guarantee adjustments:

(1) The original purchase price of the guaranteed tire; or

(2) The adjusting dealer's actual current selling price at the time of adjustment; or

(3) A predetermined price which fairly represents the actual selling price of the tire.

Whenever an advertisement for tires includes reference to a guarantee, the advertisement should also disclose, clearly and conspicuously, the price basis on which adjustments will be made. Such disclosure of the price basis for adjustments should be in terms of actual purchase or selling price, e.g., original purchase price, adjusting dealer's current selling price, etc. A mere reference to a guarantor's ''adjustment price,'' for example, would not satisfy this disclosure requirement. In addition, written material disclosing the basis for adjustments should be made available to prospective purchasers at the point of sale, and if the third method of adjustment is chosen, such written material should include the actual price on which guarantee adjustments will be made. [Guide 16]

### § 228.17 Safety or performance features.

Absolute terms such as ''skidproof,'' ''blowout proof,'' ''blow proof,'' ''puncture proof'' should not be unqualifiedly used unless the product so described affords complete and absolute protection from skidding, blowouts, or punctures, as the case may be, under any and all driving conditions. [Guide 17]

### § 228.18 Other claims and representations.

(a) No claim or representation should be made concerning an industry product which directly, by implication, or by failure to adequately disclose additional relevant information, has the capacity or tendency or effect of deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers in any material respect. This prohibition includes, but is not limited to, representations or claims relating to the construction, durability, safety, strength, condition or life expectancy of such products.

(b) Also included among the prohibitions of this section are claims or representations by members of this industry or by distributors of any component parts of materials used in the manufacture of industry products, concerning the merits or comparative merits (as to strength, safety, cooler running, wear, or resistance to shock, heat, moisture, etc.) of such products, components or materials, which are not true in fact or which are otherwise false or misleading. [Guide 18]

### § 228.19 Snow tire advertising.

Many manufacturers are now offering winter tread tires with metal spikes. Certain States, or other jurisdictions, however, prohibit the use of such tires because of possible road damage. Accordingly, in the advertising of such products, a clear and conspicuous statement should be made that the use of such tires is illegal in certain States or jurisdictions. Further, when such tires are locally advertised in areas where their use is prohibited, a clear

and conspicuous statement to this effect must be included. [Guide 19]

## PART 233—GUIDES AGAINST DECEPTIVE PRICING

Sec.
233.1 Former price comparisons.
233.2 Retail price comparisons; comparable value comparisons.
233.3 Advertising retail prices which have been established or suggested by manufacturers (or other nonretail distributors).
233.4 Bargain offers based upon the purchase of other merchandise.
233.5 Miscellaneous price comparisons.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 38 Stat. 719, as amended, 721; 15 U.S.C. 45, 46.

SOURCE: 32 FR 15534, Nov. 8, 1967, unless otherwise noted.

### §233.1 Former price comparisons.

(a) One of the most commonly used forms of bargain advertising is to offer a reduction from the advertiser's own former price for an article. If the former price is the actual, bona fide price at which the article was offered to the public on a regular basis for a reasonably substantial period of time, it provides a legitimate basis for the advertising of a price comparison. Where the former price is genuine, the bargain being advertised is a true one. If, on the other hand, the former price being advertised is not bona fide but fictitious—for example, where an artificial, inflated price was established for the purpose of enabling the subsequent offer of a large reduction—the ''bargain'' being advertised is a false one; the purchaser is not receiving the unusual value he expects. In such a case, the ''reduced'' price is, in reality, probably just the seller's regular price.

(b) A former price is not necessarily fictitious merely because no sales at the advertised price were made. The advertiser should be especially careful, however, in such a case, that the price is one at which the product was openly and actively offered for sale, for a reasonably substantial period of time, in the recent, regular course of his business, honestly and in good faith—and, of course, not for the purpose of establishing a fictitious higher price on which a deceptive comparison might be based. And the advertiser should scrupulously avoid any implication that a former price is a selling, not an asking price (for example, by use of such language as, ''Formerly sold at $_____''), unless substantial sales at that price were actually made.

(c) The following is an example of a price comparison based on a fictitious former price. John Doe is a retailer of Brand X fountain pens, which cost him $5 each. His usual markup is 50 percent over cost; that is, his regular retail price is $7.50. In order subsequently to offer an unusual ''bargain'', Doe begins offering Brand X at $10 per pen. He realizes that he will be able to sell no, or very few, pens at this inflated price. But he doesn't care, for he maintains that price for only a few days. Then he ''cuts'' the price to its usual level—$7.50—and advertises: ''Terrific Bargain: X Pens, Were $10, Now Only $7.50!'' This is obviously a false claim. The advertised ''bargain'' is not genuine.

(d) Other illustrations of fictitious price comparisons could be given. An advertiser might use a price at which he never offered the article at all; he might feature a price which was not used in the regular course of business, or which was not used in the recent past but at some remote period in the past, without making disclosure of that fact; he might use a price that was not openly offered to the public, or that was not maintained for a reasonable length of time, but was immediately reduced.

(e) If the former price is set forth in the advertisement, whether accompanied or not by descriptive terminology such as ''Regularly,'' ''Usually,'' ''Formerly,'' etc., the advertiser should make certain that the former price is not a fictitious one. If the former price, or the amount or percentage of reduction, is not stated in the advertisement, as when the ad merely states, ''Sale,'' the advertiser must take care that the amount of reduction is not so insignificant as to be meaningless. It should be sufficiently large that the consumer, if he knew what it was, would believe that a genuine bargain or saving was being offered. An advertiser who claims that an item has been ''Reduced to $9.99,'' when the former price

was $10, is misleading the consumer, who will understand the claim to mean that a much greater, and not merely nominal, reduction was being offered. [Guide I]

### § 233.2 Retail price comparisons; comparable value comparisons.

(a) Another commonly used form of bargain advertising is to offer goods at prices lower than those being charged by others for the same merchandise in the advertiser's trade area (the area in which he does business). This may be done either on a temporary or a permanent basis, but in either case the advertised higher price must be based upon fact, and not be fictitious or misleading. Whenever an advertiser represents that he is selling below the prices being charged in his area for a particular article, he should be reasonably certain that the higher price he advertises does not appreciably exceed the price at which substantial sales of the article are being made in the area—that is, a sufficient number of sales so that a consumer would consider a reduction from the price to represent a genuine bargain or saving. Expressed another way, if a number of the principal retail outlets in the area are regularly selling Brand X fountain pens at $10, it is not dishonest for retailer Doe to advertise: ''Brand X Pens, Price Elsewhere $10, Our Price $7.50''.

(b) The following example, however, illustrates a misleading use of this advertising technique. Retailer Doe advertises Brand X pens as having a ''Retail Value $15.00, My Price $7.50,'' when the fact is that only a few small suburban outlets in the area charge $15. All of the larger outlets located in and around the main shopping areas charge $7.50, or slightly more or less. The advertisement here would be deceptive, since the price charged by the small suburban outlets would have no real significance to Doe's customers, to whom the advertisement of ''Retail Value $15.00'' would suggest a prevailing, and not merely an isolated and unrepresentative, price in the area in which they shop.

(c) A closely related form of bargain advertising is to offer a reduction from the prices being charged either by the advertiser or by others in the advertiser's trade area for other merchandise of like grade and quality—in other words, comparable or competing merchandise—to that being advertised. Such advertising can serve a useful and legitimate purpose when it is made clear to the consumer that a comparison is being made with other merchandise and the other merchandise is, in fact, of essentially similar quality and obtainable in the area. The advertiser should, however, be reasonably certain, just as in the case of comparisons involving the same merchandise, that the price advertised as being the price of comparable merchandise does not exceed the price at which such merchandise is being offered by representative retail outlets in the area. For example, retailer Doe advertises Brand X pen as having ''Comparable Value $15.00''. Unless a reasonable number of the principal outlets in the area are offering Brand Y, an essentially similar pen, for that price, this advertisement would be deceptive. [Guide II]

### § 233.3 Advertising retail prices which have been established or suggested by manufacturers (or other nonretail distributors).

(a) Many members of the purchasing public believe that a manufacturer's list price, or suggested retail price, is the price at which an article is generally sold. Therefore, if a reduction from this price is advertised, many people will believe that they are being offered a genuine bargain. To the extent that list or suggested retail prices do not in fact correspond to prices at which a substantial number of sales of the article in question are made, the advertisement of a reduction may mislead the consumer.

(b) There are many methods by which manufacturers' suggested retail or list prices are advertised: Large scale (often nationwide) mass-media advertising by the manufacturer himself; preticketing by the manufacturer; direct mail advertising; distribution of promotional material or price lists designed for display to the public. The mechanics used are not of the essence. This part is concerned with any means employed for placing such prices before the consuming public.

(c) There would be little problem of deception in this area if all products were invariably sold at the retail price set by the manufacturer. However, the widespread failure to observe manufacturers' suggested or list prices, and the advent of retail discounting on a wide scale, have seriously undermined the dependability of list prices as indicators of the exact prices at which articles are in fact generally sold at retail. Changing competitive conditions have created a more acute problem of deception than may have existed previously. Today, only in the rare case are all sales of an article at the manufacturer's suggested retail or list price.

(d) But this does not mean that all list prices are fictitious and all offers of reductions from list, therefore, deceptive. Typically, a list price is a price at which articles are sold, if not everywhere, then at least in the principal retail outlets which do not conduct their business on a discount basis. It will not be deemed fictitious if it is the price at which substantial (that is, not isolated or insignificant) sales are made in the advertiser's trade area (the area in which he does business). Conversely, if the list price is significantly in excess of the highest price at which substantial sales in the trade area are made, there is a clear and serious danger of the consumer being misled by an advertised reduction from this price.

(e) This general principle applies whether the advertiser is a national or regional manufacturer (or other nonretail distributor), a mail-order or catalog distributor who deals directly with the consuming public, or a local retailer. But certain differences in the responsibility of these various types of businessmen should be noted. A retailer competing in a local area has at least a general knowledge of the prices being charged in his area. Therefore, before advertising a manufacturer's list price as a basis for comparison with his own lower price, the retailer should ascertain whether the list price is in fact the price regularly charged by principal outlets in his area.

(f) In other words, a retailer who advertises a manufacturer's or distributor's suggested retail price should be careful to avoid creating a false impression that he is offering a reduction from the price at which the product is generally sold in his trade area. If a number of the principal retail outlets in the area are regularly engaged in making sales at the manufacturer's suggested price, that price may be used in advertising by one who is selling at a lower price. If, however, the list price is being followed only by, for example, small suburban stores, house-to-house canvassers, and credit houses, accounting for only an insubstantial volume of sales in the area, advertising of the list price would be deceptive.

(g) On the other hand, a manufacturer or other distributor who does business on a large regional or national scale cannot be required to police or investigate in detail the prevailing prices of his articles throughout so large a trade area. If he advertises or disseminates a list or preticketed price in good faith (i.e., as an honest estimate of the actual retail price) which does not appreciably exceed the highest price at which substantial sales are made in his trade area, he will not be chargeable with having engaged in a deceptive practice. Consider the following example:

(h) Manufacturer Roe, who makes Brand X pens and sells them throughout the United States, advertises his pen in a national magazine as having a ''Suggested Retail Price $10,'' a price determined on the basis of a market survey. In a substantial number of representative communities, the principal retail outlets are selling the product at this price in the regular course of business and in substantial volume. Roe would not be considered to have advertised a fictitious ''suggested retail price.'' If retailer Doe does business in one of these communities, he would not be guilty of a deceptive practice by advertising, ''Brand X Pens, Manufacturer's Suggested Retail Price, $10, Our Price, $7.50.''

(i) It bears repeating that the manufacturer, distributor or retailer must in every case act honestly and in good faith in advertising a list price, and not with the intention of establishing a basis, or creating an instrumentality, for a deceptive comparison in any local or other trade area. For instance, a

manufacturer may not affix price tickets containing inflated prices as an accommodation to particular retailers who intend to use such prices as the basis for advertising fictitious price reductions. [Guide III]

### § 233.4 Bargain offers based upon the purchase of other merchandise.

(a) Frequently, advertisers choose to offer bargains in the form of additional merchandise to be given a customer on the condition that he purchase a particular article at the price usually offered by the advertiser. The forms which such offers may take are numerous and varied, yet all have essentially the same purpose and effect. Representative of the language frequently employed in such offers are ''Free,'' ''Buy One—Get One Free,'' ''2-For-1 Sale,'' ''Half Price Sale,'' ''1¢ Sale,'' ''50% Off,'' etc. Literally, of course, the seller is not offering anything ''free'' (i.e., an unconditional gift), or ½ free, or for only 1¢, when he makes such an offer, since the purchaser is required to purchase an article in order to receive the ''free'' or ''1¢'' item. It is important, therefore, that where such a form of offer is used, care be taken not to mislead the consumer.

(b) Where the seller, in making such an offer, increases his regular price of the article required to be bought, or decreases the quantity and quality of that article, or otherwise attaches strings (other than the basic condition that the article be purchased in order for the purchaser to be entitled to the ''free'' or ''1¢'' additional merchandise) to the offer, the consumer may be deceived.

(c) Accordingly, whenever a ''free,'' ''2-for-1,'' ''half price sale,'' ''1¢ sale,'' ''50% off'' or similar type of offer is made, all the terms and conditions of the offer should be made clear at the outset. [Guide IV]

### § 233.5 Miscellaneous price comparisons.

The practices covered in the provisions set forth above represent the most frequently employed forms of bargain advertising. However, there are many variations which appear from time to time and which are, in the main, controlled by the same general principles. For example, retailers should not advertise a retail price as a ''wholesale'' price. They should not represent that they are selling at ''factory'' prices when they are not selling at the prices paid by those purchasing directly from the manufacturer. They should not offer seconds or imperfect or irregular merchandise at a reduced price without disclosing that the higher comparative price refers to the price of the merchandise if perfect. They should not offer an advance sale under circumstances where they do not in good faith expect to increase the price at a later date, or make a ''limited'' offer which, in fact, is not limited. In all of these situations, as well as in others too numerous to mention, advertisers should make certain that the bargain offer is genuine and truthful. Doing so will serve their own interest as well as that of the public. [Guide V]

## PART 235—GUIDES AGAINST DECEPTIVE LABELING AND ADVERTISING OF ADHESIVE COMPOSITIONS

Sec.

235.1 Metal composition products.
235.2 Use of the term ''solder'' or ''weld.''
235.3 Use of the word ''porcelain.''
235.4 Epoxy adhesives.
235.5 Use of the word ''rubber,'' etc.
235.6 Misrepresentation (general).
235.7 Guarantees, warranties, etc.
235.8 Placing deceptive material in the hands of others.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 38 Stat. 719, as amended, 721; 15 U.S.C. 45, 46.

SOURCE: 32 FR 15538, Nov. 8, 1967, unless otherwise noted.

### § 235.1 Metal composition products.

Products which do not, after application, have the same physical and chemical properties of metal, or of a particular represented metal, shall not be represented as metal or as having the intrinsic characteristics of metal, or of the particular metal indicated. Thus, neither the term *metal* nor the terms *iron, steel, aluminum* or other names of metal shall be used to designate in brand names or otherwise any product of the kind herein described. While this

section does not prohibit truthful representations in advertising and labeling of the percentage of content of any metallic substances in such products (e.g., contains 20 percent powdered aluminum) it does prohibit with respect thereto the use of representations such as, but not limited to, the following:

''Plastic Steel.''
''Dries to steel.''
''Hardens into metal.''
''Steel in paste form.''
''Liquid aluminum.''
''Instant aluminum.''
''Real metallic putty.''
''Fluid Steel.''

[Guide 1]

### §235.2 Use of the term "solder" or "weld."

Products which, when used, do not form a metallic seal or bond, shall not be represented as solders or as welding products unless it is clearly disclosed in connection therewith that they are nonmetallic, as for example, ''Plastic Solder'' or ''Plastic Weld.'' A ''solder'' or ''weld'' product which is nonmetallic shall not be represented as producing a metallic seal or bond. This section does not prohibit an accurate representation of the percentage of metallic substance contained in a product. [Guide 2]

### §235.3 Use of the word "porcelain."

(a) The word ''porcelain'' shall not be used to designate in brand names or otherwise any product which, after application, does not possess all of the chemical and physical properties of porcelain. Under this section products of the type herein described shall not be represented as being, among other things:

''Porcelain.''
''Porcelain Glaze.''
''Liquid Porcelain.''
''Porcelain in Paste Form.''
''Plastic Porcelain.''
''Porcelain restorer.''
''Porcelain renewer.''

(b) This section does not prohibit truthful representations of the actual percentage of porcelain contained in an industry product as, for example,

''Contains 25% powdered porcelain.''

[Guide 3]

### §235.4 Epoxy adhesives.

(a) No product shall be represented as being an epoxy adhesive unless the epoxy component thereof is derived from an epoxide or oxirane which, when applied in use, chemically reacts with a hardener or curing agent to form a substantially infusible and insoluble bond.

(b) No product containing an epoxy shall be represented as having the characteristics and capabilities of an epoxy adhesive, where the epoxy component present in the product is in an amount not sufficient to produce the characteristics and capabilities represented.

(c) No representation shall be made that the epoxy component in an industry product is present to produce the characteristics and capabilities of an epoxy adhesive where such component is not productive of such characteristics and capabilities, but is present for a different purpose and use. [Guide 4]

### §235.5 Use of the word "rubber," etc.

(a) The word ''rubber'' or other words denominating rubber shall not be used to designate, in brand names or otherwise, any product which, after application, does not possess the essential characteristics of rubber. Under this section such a product shall not be represented as, for example, ''Rubber,'' ''Plastic Rubber,'' ''Liquid Rubber,'' etc.

(b) This section does not prohibit truthful representation of the actual percentage of rubber contained in a product. [Guide 5]

### §235.6 Misrepresentation (general).

(a) No representation shall be made in any manner respecting any adhesive products to which this part is applicable which is likely to mislead or deceive purchasers as to their nature, composition, characteristics, uses, effectiveness, capabilities, durability, toughness, hardness, adhesive strength, lasting effect, thermal or electrical properties, resistance to water, steam, gas, or chemicals, or in any other material respect.

(b) Among the representations prohibited by this section are the following:

(1) Representations that a product will seal, repair or mend ''anything'' when, in fact, there are certain materials which it cannot seal, repair or mend.

(2) Representations that a product is proof against or will withstand any specified temperature when in fact the product is adversely affected in any way when subjected to such temperature for any period of time.

(3) Representations that a product will effect permanent repairs if, in fact, the repairs made by use of the product will not last as long as the product so repaired.

(4) Representations that a product makes any product like new if it does not actually restore the part thereof repaired to its original new condition. [Guide 6]

### § 235.7 Guarantees, warranties, etc.

Industry members shall not represent in advertising or otherwise that a product is ''guaranteed'' without a clear and conspicuous disclosure in close conjunction with such representation of:

(a) The nature and extent of the guarantee; and

(b) Any material conditions or limitations in the guarantee which are imposed by the guarantor; and

(c) The manner in which the guarantor will perform thereunder; and

(d) The identity of the guarantor.

NOTE: The Commission's April 26, 1960 Guides Against Deceptive Advertising of Guarantees (25 FR 3772) furnish additional guidance respecting guarantee representations and are to be considered as supplementing this section. Copies are available upon request.

[Guide 7]

### § 235.8 Placing deceptive material in the hands of others.

Manufacturers and distributors shall not place in the hands of wholesalers, jobbers, retailers, or others, promotional material by or through which they may deceive or mislead the purchasing and consuming public concerning any product. [Guide 8]

## PART 238—GUIDES AGAINST BAIT ADVERTISING

Sec.
238.0 Bait advertising defined.
238.1 Bait advertisement.
238.2 Initial offer.
238.3 Discouragement of purchase of advertised merchandise.
238.4 Switch after sale.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 38 Stat. 719, as amended, 721; 15 U.S.C. 45, 46.

SOURCE: 32 FR 15540, Nov. 8, 1967, unless otherwise noted.

### § 238.0 Bait advertising defined.[1]

Bait advertising is an alluring but insincere offer to sell a product or service which the advertiser in truth does not intend or want to sell. Its purpose is to switch consumers from buying the advertised merchandise, in order to sell something else, usually at a higher price or on a basis more advantageous to the advertiser. The primary aim of a bait advertisement is to obtain leads as to persons interested in buying merchandise of the type so advertised.

### § 238.1 Bait advertisement.

No advertisement containing an offer to sell a product should be published when the offer is not a bona fide effort to sell the advertised product. [Guide 1]

### § 238.2 Initial offer.

(a) No statement or illustration should be used in any advertisement which creates a false impression of the grade, quality, make, value, currency of model, size, color, usability, or origin of the product offered, or which may otherwise misrepresent the product in such a manner that later, on disclosure of the true facts, the purchaser may be switched from the advertised product to another.

(b) Even though the true facts are subsequently made known to the buyer, the law is violated if the first contact or interview is secured by deception. [Guide 2]

[1] For the purpose of this part ''advertising'' includes any form of public notice however disseminated or utilized.

### §238.3 Discouragement of purchase of advertised merchandise.

No act or practice should be engaged in by an advertiser to discourage the purchase of the advertised merchandise as part of a bait scheme to sell other merchandise. Among acts or practices which will be considered in determining if an advertisement is a bona fide offer are:

(a) The refusal to show, demonstrate, or sell the product offered in accordance with the terms of the offer,

(b) The disparagement by acts or words of the advertised product or the disparagement of the guarantee, credit terms, availability of service, repairs or parts, or in any other respect, in connection with it,

(c) The failure to have available at all outlets listed in the advertisement a sufficient quantity of the advertised product to meet reasonably anticipated demands, unless the advertisement clearly and adequately discloses that supply is limited and/or the merchandise is available only at designated outlets,

(d) The refusal to take orders for the advertised merchandise to be delivered within a reasonable period of time,

(e) The showing or demonstrating of a product which is defective, unusable or impractical for the purpose represented or implied in the advertisement,

(f) Use of a sales plan or method of compensation for salesmen or penalizing salesmen, designed to prevent or discourage them from selling the advertised product. [Guide 3]

### §238.4 Switch after sale.

No practice should be pursued by an advertiser, in the event of sale of the advertised product, of ''unselling'' with the intent and purpose of selling other merchandise in its stead. Among acts or practices which will be considered in determining if the initial sale was in good faith, and not a strategem to sell other merchandise, are:

(a) Accepting a deposit for the advertised product, then switching the purchaser to a higher-priced product,

(b) Failure to make delivery of the advertised product within a reasonable time or to make a refund,

(c) Disparagement by acts or words of the advertised product, or the disparagement of the guarantee, credit terms, availability of service, repairs, or in any other respect, in connection with it,

(d) The delivery of the advertised product which is defective, unusable or impractical for the purpose represented or implied in the advertisement. [Guide 4]

NOTE: *Sales of advertised merchandise.* Sales of the advertised merchandise do not preclude the existence of a bait and switch scheme. It has been determined that, on occasions, this is a mere incidental byproduct of the fundamental plan and is intended to provide an aura of legitimacy to the overall operation.

## PART 239—GUIDES FOR THE ADVERTISING OF WARRANTIES AND GUARANTEES

Sec.
239.1 Purpose and scope of the guides.
239.2 Disclosures in warranty or guarantee advertising.
239.3 ''Satisfaction Guarantees'' and similar representations in advertising; disclosure in advertising that mentions ''satisfaction guarantees'' or similar representations.
239.4 ''Lifetime'' and similar representations.
239.5 Performance of warranties or guarantees.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 38 Stat. 719 as amended, 721; 15 U.S.C. 45, 46.

SOURCE: 50 FR 18470, May 1, 1985, unless otherwise noted.

### §239.1 Purpose and scope of the guides.

The Guides for the Advertising of Warranties and Guarantees are intended to help advertisers avoid unfair or deceptive practices in the advertising of warranties or guarantees. The Guides are based upon Commission cases, and reflect changes in circumstances brought about by the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act (15 U.S.C. 2301 *et seq.*) and the FTC Rules promulgated pursuant to the Act (16 CFR parts 701 and 702). The Guides do not purport to anticipate all possible unfair or deceptive acts or practices in

the advertising of warranties or guarantees and the Guides should not be interpreted to limit the Commission's authority to proceed against such acts or practices under section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act. The Commission may bring an action under section 5 against any advertiser who misrepresents the product or service offered, who misrepresents the terms or conditions of the warranty offered, or who employs other deceptive or unfair means.

Section 239.2 of the Guides applies only to advertisements for written warranties on consumer products, as ''written warranty'' and ''consumer product'' are defined in the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. 2301, that are covered by the Rule on Pre-Sale Availability or Written Warranty Terms, 16 CFR part 702. The other sections of the Guides apply to the advertising of any warranty or guarantee.

[50 FR 18470, May 1, 1985; 50 FR 20899, May 21, 1985]

### § 239.2 Disclosures in warranty or guarantee advertising.

(a) If an advertisement mentions a warranty or guarantee that is offered on the advertised product, the advertisement should disclose, with such clarity and prominence as will be noticed and understood by prospective purchasers, that prior to sale, at the place where the product is sold, prospective purchasers can see the written warranty or guarantee for complete details of the warranty coverage.[1]

*Examples:* The following are examples of disclosures sufficient to convey to prospective purchasers that, prior to sale, at the place where the product is sold, they can see the written warranty or guarantee for complete details of the warranty coverage. These examples are for both print and broadcast advertising. These examples are illustrative, not exhaustive. In each example, the portion of the advertisement that mentions the warranty or guarantee is in regular type and the disclosure is in italics.

A. ''The XYZ washing machine is backed by our limited 1 year warranty. *For complete details, see our warranty at a dealer near you.''*

B. ''The XYZ bicycle is warranted for 5 years. *Some restrictions may apply. See a copy of our warranty wherever XYZ products are sold.''*

C. ''We offer the best guarantee in the business. *Read the details and compare wherever our fine products are sold.''*

D. *''See our full 2 year warranty at the store nearest you.''*

E. ''Don't take our word—take our warranty. *See our limited 2 year warranty where you shop.''*

(b) If an advertisement in any catalogue, or in any other solicitation[2] for mail order sales or for telephone order sales mentions a warranty or guarantee that is offered on the advertised product, the advertisement should disclose, with such clarity and prominence as will be noticed and understood by prospective purchasers, that prospective purchasers can obtain complete details of the written warranty or guarantee free from the seller upon specific written request or from the catalogue or other solicitation (whichever is applicable).

*Examples:* The following are examples of disclosures sufficient to convey to consumers how they can obtain complete details of the written warranty or guarantee prior to placing a mail or telephone order. These examples are illustrative, not exhaustive. In each example, the portion of the advertisement that mentions the warranty or guarantee is in regular typeface and the disclosure is in italics.

A. ''ABC quality cutlery is backed by our 10 year warranty. *Write to us for a free copy at: (address).''*

B. ''ABC power tools are guaranteed. *Read about our limited 90 day warranty in this catalogue.''*

C. *''Write to us for a free copy of our full warranty.* You'll be impressed how we stand behind our product.''

[50 FR 20899, May 21, 1985]

### § 239.3 "Satisfaction Guarantees" and similar representations in advertising; disclosure in advertising that mentions "satisfaction guarantees" or similar representations.

(a) A seller or manufacturer should use the terms ''Satisfaction Guarantee,'' ''Money Back Guarantee,'' ''Free

[1] In television advertising, the Commission will regard any disclosure of the pre-sale availability of warranties as complying with this Guide if the advertisement makes the necessary disclosure simultaneously with or immediately following the warranty claim and the disclosure is made in the audio portion, or, if in the video portion, it remains on the screen for at least five seconds.

[2] See note 1.

Trial Offer,'' or similar representations in advertising only if the seller or manufacturer, as the case may be, refunds the full purchase price of the advertised product at the purchaser's request.

(b) An advertisement that mentions a ''Satisfaction Guarantee'' or a similar representation should disclose, with such clarity and prominence as will be noticed and understood by prospective purchasers, any material limitations or conditions that apply to the ''Satisfaction Guarantee'' or similar representation.

*Examples:* These examples are for both print and broadcast advertising. These examples are illustrative, not exhaustive.

*Example A:* (In an advertisement mentioning a satisfaction guarantee that is conditioned upon return of the unused portion within 30 days) ''We guarantee your satisfaction. If not completely satisfied with Acme Spot Remover, return the unused portion within 30 days for a full refund.''

*Example B:* (In an advertisement mentioning a money back guarantee that is conditioned upon return of the product in its original packaging) ''Money Back Guarantee! Just return the ABC watch in its original package and ABC will fully refund your money.''

### §239.4 "Lifetime" and similar representations.

If an advertisement uses ''lifetime,'' ''life,'' or similar representations to describe the duration of a warranty or guarantee, then the advertisement should disclose, with such clarity and prominence as will be noticed and understood by prospective purchasers, the life to which the representation refers.

*Examples:* These examples are for both print and broadcast advertising. These examples are illustrative, not exhaustive.

*Example A:* (In an advertisement mentioning a lifetime guarantee on an automobile muffler where the duration of the guarantee is measured by the life of the car in which it is installed) ''Our lifetime guarantee on the Whisper Muffler protects you for as long as your car runs—even if you sell it, trade it, or give it away!''

*Example B:* (In an advertisement mentioning a lifetime guarantee on a battery where the duration of the warranty is for as long as the original purchaser owns the car in which it was installed) ''Our battery is backed by our lifetime guarantee. Good for as long as you own the car!''

### §239.5 Performance of warranties or guarantees.

A seller or manufacturer should advertise that a product is warranted or guaranteed only if the seller or manufacturer, as the case may be, promptly and fully performs its obligations under the warranty or guarantee.

## PART 240—GUIDES FOR ADVERTISING ALLOWANCES AND OTHER MERCHANDISING PAYMENTS AND SERVICES

Sec.

240.1 Purpose of the Guides.
240.2 Applicability of the law.
240.3 Definition of seller.
240.4 Definition of customer.
240.5 Definition of competing customers.
240.6 Interstate commerce.
240.7 Services or facilities.
240.8 Need for a plan.
240.9 Proportionally equal terms.
240.10 Availability to all competing customers.
240.11 Wholesaler or third party performance of seller's obligations.
240.12 Checking customer's use of payments.
240.13 Customer's and third party liability.
240.14 Meeting competition.
240.15 Cost justification.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 38 Stat. 719, as amended, 721; 15 U.S.C. 45, 46; 49 Stat. 1526; 15 U.S.C. 13, as amended.

SOURCE: 55 FR 33663, Aug. 17, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

### §240.1 Purpose of the Guides.

The purpose of these Guides is to provide assistance to businesses seeking to comply with sections 2 (d) and (e) of the Robinson-Patman Act (the ''Act''). The guides are based on the language of the statute, the legislative history, administrative and court decisions, and the purposes of the Act. Although the Guides are consistent with the case law, the Commission has sought to provide guidance in some areas where no definitive guidance is provided by the case law. The Guides are what their name implies—guidelines for compliance with the law. They do not have the force of law.

### § 240.2 Applicability of the law.

(a) The substantive provisions of section 2 (d) and (e) apply only under certain circumstances. Section 2(d) applies only to:

(1) A seller of products

(2) Engaged in interstate commerce

(3) That either directly or through an intermediary

(4) Pays a customer for promotional services or facilities provided by the customer

(5) In connection with the resale (not the initial sale between the seller and the customer) of the seller's products

(6) Where the customer is in competition with one or more of the seller's other customers also engaged in the resale of the seller's products of like grade and quality.

(b) Section 2(e) applies only to:

(1) A seller of products

(2) Engaged in interstate commerce

(3) That either directly or through an intermediary

(4) Furnishes promotional services or facilities to a customer

(5) In connection with the resale (not the initial sale between the seller and the customer) of the seller's products

(6) Where the customer is in competition with one or more of the seller's other customers also engaged in the resale of the seller's products of like grade and quality.

(c) Additionally, section 5 of the FTC Act may apply to buyers of products for resale or to third parties. See § 240.13 of these Guides.

### § 240.3 Definition of seller.

*Seller* includes any person (manufacturer, wholesaler, distributor, etc.) who sells products for resale, with or without further processing. For example, selling candy to a retailer is a sale for resale without processing. Selling corn syrup to a candy manufacturer is a sale for resale with processing.

### § 240.4 Definition of customer.

A *customer* is any person who buys for resale directly from the seller, or the seller's agent or broker. In addition, a ''customer'' is any buyer of the seller's product for resale who purchases from or through a wholesaler or other intermediate reseller. The word ''customer'' which is used in section 2(d) of the Act includes ''purchaser'' which is used in section 2(e).

NOTE: There may be some exceptions to this general definition of ''customer.'' For example, the purchaser of distress merchandise would not be considered a ''customer'' simply on the basis of such purchase. Similarly, a retailer or purchasing solely from other retailers, or making sporadic purchases from the seller or one that does not regularly sell the seller's product, or that is a type of retail outlet not usually selling such products (e.g., a hardware store stocking a few isolated food items) will not be considered a ''customer'' of the seller unless the seller has been put on notice that such retailer is selling its product.

*Example 1:* A manufacturer sells to some retailers directly and to others through wholesalers. Retailer A purchases the manufacturer's product from a wholesaler and resells some of it to Retailer B. Retailer A is a customer of the manufacturer. Retailer B is not a customer unless the fact that it purchases the manufacturer's product is known to the manufacturer.

*Example 2:* A manufacturer sells directly to some independent retailers, to the headquarters of chains and of retailer-owned cooperatives, and to wholesalers. The manufacturer offers promotional services or allowances for promotional activity to be performed at the retail level. With respect to such services and allowances, the direct-buying independent retailers, the headquarters of the chains and retailer-owned cooperatives, and the wholesaler's independent retailer customers are customers of the manufacturer. Individual retail outlets of the chains and the members of the retailer-owned cooperatives are not customers of the manufacturer.

*Example 3:* A seller offers to pay wholesalers to advertise the seller's product in the wholesalers' order books or in the wholesalers' price lists directed to retailers purchasing from the wholesalers. The wholesalers and retailer-owned cooperative headquarters and headquarters of other bona-fide buying groups are customers. Retailers are not customers for purposes of this promotion.

### § 240.5 Definition of competing customers.

*Competing customers* are all businesses that compete in the resale of the seller's products of like grade and quality at the same functional level of distribution regardless of whether they purchase directly from the seller or through some intermediary.

*Example 1:* Manufacturer A, located in Wisconsin and distributing shoes nationally,

sells shoes to three competing retailers that sell only in the Roanoke, Virginia area. Manufacturer A has no other customers selling in Roanoke or its vicinity. If Manufacturer A offers its promotion to one Roanoke customer, it should include all three, but it can limit the promotion to them. The trade area should be drawn to include retailers who compete.

*Example 2:* A national seller has direct-buying retailing customers reselling exclusively within the Baltimore area, and other customers within the area purchasing through wholesalers. The seller may lawfully engage in a promotional campaign confined to the Baltimore area, provided that it affords all of its retailing customers within the area the opportunity to participate, including those that purchase through wholesalers.

*Example 3:* B manufactures and sells a brand of laundry detergent for home use. In one metropolitan area, B's detergent is sold by a grocery store and a discount department store. If these stores compete with each other, any allowance, service or facility that B makes available to the grocery store should also be made available on proportionally equal terms to the discount department store.

### §240.6 Interstate commerce.

The term *interstate commerce* has not been precisely defined in the statute. In general, if there is any part of a business which is not wholly within one state (for example, sales or deliveries of products, their subsequent distribution or purchase, or delivery of supplies or raw materials), the business may be subject to sections 2(d) and 2(e) of the Act. (The commerce standard for sections 2 (d) and (e) is at least as inclusive as the commerce standard for section 2(a).) Sales or promotional offers within the District of Columbia and most United States possessions are also covered by the Act.

### §240.7 Services or facilities.

The terms *services* and *facilities* have not been exactly defined by the statute or in decisions. One requirement, however, is that the services or facilities be used primarily to promote the resale of the seller's product by the customer. Services or facilities that relate primarily to the original sale are covered by section 2(a). The following list provides some examples—the list is not exhaustive—of promotional services and facilities covered by sections 2 (d) and (e):

Cooperative advertising;
Handbills;
Demonstrators and demonstrations;
Catalogues;
Cabinets;
Displays;
Prizes or merchandise for conducting promotional contests;
Special packaging, or package sizes.

### §240.8 Need for a plan.

A seller who makes payments or furnishes services that come under the Act should do so according to a plan. If there are many competing customers to be considered or if the plan is complex, the seller would be well advised to put the plan in writing. What the plan should include is describe in more detail in the remainder of these Guides. Briefly, the plan should make payments or services functionally available to all competing customers on proportionally equal terms. (See §240.9 of this part.) Alternative terms and conditions should be made available to customers who cannot, in a practical sense, take advantage of some of the plan's offerings. The seller should inform competing customers of the plans available to them, in time for them to decide whether to participate. (See §240.10 of this part.)

### §240.9 Proportionally equal terms.

(a) Promotional services and allowances should be made available to all competing customers on proportionally equal terms. No single way to do this is prescribed by law. Any method that treats competing customers on proportionally equal terms may be used. Generally, this can be done most easily by basing the payments made or the services furnished on the dollar volume or on the quantity of the product purchased during a specified period. However, other methods that result in proportionally equal allowances and services being offered to all competing customers are acceptable.

(b) When a seller offers more than one type of service, or payments for more than one type of service, all the services or payments should be offered on proportionally equal lterms. The seller may do this by offering all the payments or services at the same rate per unit or amount purchased. Thus, a

seller might offer promotional allowances of up to 12 cents a case purchased for expenditures on either newspaper advertising or handbills.

*Example 1:* A seller may offer to pay a specified part (e.g., 50 percent) of the cost of local advertising up to an amount equal to a specified percentage (e.g., 5 percent) of the dollar volume of purchases during a specified period of time.

*Example 2:* A seller may place in reserve for each customer a specified amount of money for each unit purchased, and use it to reimburse these customers for the cost of advertising the seller's product.

*Example 3:* A seller should not provide an allowance or service on a basis that has rates graduated with the amount of goods purchased, as, for instance, 1 percent of the first $1,000 purchased per month, 2 percent of the second $1,000 per month, and 3 percent of all over that.

*Example 4:* A seller should not identify or feature one or a few customers in its own advertising without making the same service available on proportionally equal terms to customers competing with the identified customer or customers.

*Example 5:* A seller who makes employees available or arranges with a third party to furnish personnel for purposes of performing work for a customer should make the same offer available on proportionally equal terms to all other competing customers or offer useable and suitable services or allowances on proportionally equal terms to competing customers for whom such services are not useable and suitable.[1]

*Example 6:* A seller should not offer to pay a straight line rate for advertising if such payment results in a discrimination between competing customers; e.g., the offer of $1.00 per line for advertising in a newspaper that charges competing customers different amounts for the same advertising space. The straight line rate is an acceptable method for allocating advertising funds if the seller offers small retailers that pay more than the lowest newspaper rate an alternative that enables them to obtain the same percentage of their advertising cost as large retailers. If the $1.00 per line allowance is based on 50 percent of the newspaper's lowest contract rate of $2.00 per line, the seller should offer to pay 50 percent of the newspaper advertising cost of smaller retailers that establish, by invoice or otherwise, that they paid more than that contract rate.

[1] The discriminatory purchase of display or shelf space, whether directly or by means of so-called allowances, may violate the Act, and may be considered an unfair method of competition in violation of section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

*Example 7:* A seller offers each customer promotional allowances at the rate of one dollar for each unit of its product purchased during a defined promotional period. If Buyer A purchases 100 units, Buyer B 50 units, and Buyer C 25 units, the seller maintains proportional equality by allowing $100 to Buyer A, $50 to Buyer B, and $25 to Buyer C, to be used for the Buyers' expenditures on promotion.

### § 240.10 Availability to all competing customers.

(a) Functional availability:

(1) The seller should take reasonable steps to ensure that services and facilities are useable in a practical sense by all competing customers. This may require offering alternative terms and conditions under which customers can participate. When a seller provides alternatives in order to meet the availability requirement, it should take reasonable steps to ensure that the alternatives are proportionally equal, and the seller should inform competing customers of the various alternative plans.

(2) The seller should insure that promotional plans or alternatives offered to retailers do not bar any competing retailers from participation, whether they purchase directly from the seller or through a wholesaler or other intermediary.

(3) When a seller offers to competing customers alternative services or allowances that are proportionally equal and at least one such offer is useable in a practical sense by all competing customers, and refrains from taking steps to prevent customers from participating, it has satisfied its obligation to make services and allowances ''functionally available'' to all customers. Therefore, the failure of any customer to participate in the program does not place the seller in violation of the Act.

*Example 1:* A manufacturer offers a plan for cooperative advertising on radio, TV, or in newspapers of general circulation. Because the purchases of some of the manufacturer's customers are too small this offer is not useable in a practical sense by them. The manufacturer should offer them alternative(s) on proportionally equal terms that are useable in a practical sense by them.

*Example 2:* A seller furnishes demonstrators to large department store customers. The seller should provide alternatives useable in a practical sense on proportionally equal terms to those competing customers who

cannot use demonstrators. The alternatives may be services useable in a practical sense that are furnished by the seller, or payments by the seller to customers for their advertising or promotion of the seller's product.

*Example 3:* A seller offers to pay 75 percent of the cost of advertising in daily newspapers, which are the regular advertising media of the seller's large or chain store customers, but a lesser amount, such as only 50 percent of the cost, or even nothing at all, for advertising in semi-weekly, weekly, or other newspapers or media that may be used by small retail customers. Such a plan discriminates against particular customers or classes of customers. To avoid that discrimination, the seller in offering to pay allowances for newspaper advertising should offer to pay the same percent of the cost of newspaper advertising for all competing customers in a newspaper of the customer's choice, or at least in those newspapers that meet the requirements for second class mail privileges. While a small customer may be offered, as an alternative to advertising in daily newspapers, allowances for other media and services such as envelope stuffers, handbills, window banners, and the like, the small customer should have the choice to use its promotional allowance for advertising similar to that available to the larger customers, if it can practicably do so.

*Example 4:* A seller offers short term displays of varying sizes, including some which are useable by each of its competing customers in a practical business sense. The seller requires uniform, reasonable certification of performance by each customer. Because they are reluctant to process the required paper work, some customers do not participate. This fact does not place the seller in violation of the functional availability requirement and it is under no obligation to provide additional alternatives.

(b) Notice of available services and allowances: The seller has an obligation to take steps reasonably designed to provide notice to competing customers of the availability of promotional services and allowances. Such notification should include enough details of the offer in time to enable customers to make an informed judgment whether to participate. When some competing customers do not purchase directly from the seller, the seller must take steps reasonably designed to provide notice to such indirect customers. Acceptable notification may vary. The following is a non-exhaustive list of acceptable methods of notification:

(1) By providing direct notice to customers;

(2) When a promotion consists of providing retailers with display materials, by including the materials within the product shipping container;

(3) By including brochures describing the details of the offer in shipping containers;

(4) By providing information on shipping containers or product packages of the availability and essential features of an offer, identifying a specific source for further information;

(5) By placing at reasonable intervals in trade publications of general and widespread distribution announcements of the availability and essential features of promotional offers, identifying a specific source for further information; and

(6) If the competing customers belong to an identifiable group on a specific mailing list, by providing relevant information of promotional offers to customers on that list. For example, if a product is sold lawfully only under Government license (alcoholic beverages, etc.), the seller may inform only its customers holding licenses.

(c) A seller may contract with intermediaries or other third parties to provide notice. See § 240.11.

*Example 1:* A seller has a plan for the retail promotion of its product in Philadelphia. Some of its retailing customers purchase directly and it offers the plan to them. Other Philadelphia retailers purchase the seller's product through wholesalers. The seller may use the wholesalers to reach the retailing customers that buy through them, either by having the wholesalers notify these retailers, or by using the wholesalers' customer lists for direct notification by the seller.

*Example 2:* A seller that sells on a direct basis to some retailers in an area, and to other retailers in the area through wholsesalers, has a plan for the promotion of its product at the retail level. If the seller directly notifies competing direct purchasing retailers, and competing retailers purchasing through the wholesalers, the seller is not required to notify its wholesalers.

*Example 3:* A seller regularly promotes its product at the retail level and during the year has various special promotional offers. The seller's competing customers include large direct-purchasing retailers and smaller retailers that purchase through wholesalers. The promotions offered can best be used by the smaller retailers if the funds to which they are entitled are pooled and used by the wholesalers on their behalf (newspaper advertisements, for example). If retailers purchasing through a wholesaler designate that

wholesaler as their agent for receiving notice of, collecting, and using promotional allowances for them, the seller may assume that notice of, and payment under, a promotional plan to such wholesaler constitutes notice and payment to the retailer. The seller must have a reasonable basis for concluding that the retailers have designated the wholesaler as their agent.

### § 240.11 Wholesaler or third party performance of seller's obligations.

A seller may contract with intermediaries, such as wholesalers, distributors, or other third parties, to perform all or part of the seller's obligations under sections 2(d) and (e). The use of intermediaries does not relieve a seller of its responsibility to comply with the law. Therefore, in contracting with an intermediary, a seller should ensure that its obligations under the law are in fact fulfilled.

### § 240.12 Checking customer's use of payments.

The seller should take reasonable precautions to see that the services the seller is paying for are furnished and that the seller is not overpaying for them. The customer should expend the allowance solely for the purpose for which it was given. If the seller knows or should know that what the seller is paying for or furnishing is not being properly used by some customers, the improper payments or services should be discontinued.

### § 240.13 Customer's and third party liability.

(a) Customer's liability: Sections 2 (d) and (e) apply to sellers and not to customers. However, the Commission may proceed under section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act against a customer who knows, or should know, that it is receiving a discriminatory price through services or allowances not made available on proportionally equal terms to its competitors engaged in the resale of a seller's product. Liability for knowingly receiving such a discrimination may result whether the discrimination takes place directly through payments or services, or indirectly through deductions from purchase invoices or other similar means.

*Example 1:* A customer should not induce or receive advertising allowances for special promotion of the seller's product in connection with the customer's anniversary sale or new store opening when the customer knows or should know that such allowances, or suitable alternatives, are not available on proportionally equal terms to all other customers competing with it in the distribution of the seller's product.

*Example 2:* Frequently the employees of sellers or third parties, such as brokers, perform in-store services for their grocery retailer customers, such as stocking of shelves, building of displays and checking or rotating inventory, etc. A customer operating a retail grocery business should not induce or receive such services when the customer knows or should know that such services (or usable and suitable alternative services) are not available on proportionally equal terms to all other customers competing with it in the distribution of the seller's product.

*Example 3:* Where a customer has entered into a contract, understanding, or arrangement for the purchase of advertising with a newspaper or other advertising medium that provides for a deferred rebate or other reduction in the price of the advertising, the customer should advise any seller from whom reimbursement for the advertising is claimed that the claimed rate of reimbursement is subject to a deferred rebate or other reduction in price. In the event that any rebate or adjustment in the price is received, the customer should refund to the seller the amount of any excess payment or allowance.

*Example 4:* A customer should not induce or receive an allowance in excess of that offered in the seller's advertising plan by billing the seller at ''vendor rates'' or for any other amount in excess of that authorized in the seller's promotional program.

(b) Third party liability: Third parties, such as advertising media, may violate section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act through double or fictitious rates or billing. An advertising medium, such as a newspaper, broadcast station, or printer of catalogues, that publishes a rate schedule containing fictitious rates (or rates that are not reasonably expected to be applicable to a representative number of advertisers), may violate section 5 if the customer uses such deceptive schedule or invoice for a claim for an advertising allowance, payment or credit greater than that to which it would be entitled under the seller's promotional offering. Similarly, an advertising medium that furnishes a customer with an invoice that does not reflect the customer's actual net advertising cost

may violate section 5 if the customer uses the invoice to obtain larger payments than it is entitled to receive.

*Example 1:* A newspaper has a ''national'' rate and a lower ''local'' rate. A retailer places an advertisement with the newspaper at the local rate for a seller's product for which the retailer will seek reimbursement under the seller's cooperative advertising plan. The newspaper should not send the retailer two bills, one at the national rate and another at the local rate actually charged.

*Example 2:* A newspaper has several published rates. A large retailer has in the past earned the lowest rate available. The newspaper should not submit invoices to the retailer showing a high rate by agreement between them unless the invoice discloses that the retailer may receive a rebate and states the amount (or approximate amount) of the rebate, if known, and if not known, the amount of rebate the retailer could reasonably anticipate.

*Example 3:* A radio station has a flat rate for spot announcements, subject to volume discounts. A retailer buys enough spots to qualify for the discounts. The station should not submit an invoice to the retailer that does not show either the actual net cost or the discount rate.

*Example 4:* An advertising agent buys a large volume of newspaper advertising space at a low, unpublished negotiated rate. Retailers then buy the space from the agent at a rate lower than they could buy this space directly from the newspaper. The agent should not furnish the retailers invoices showing a rate higher than the retailers actually paid for the space.

### §240.14 Meeting competition.

A seller charged with discrimination in violation of sections 2 (d) and (e) may defend its actions by showing that particular payments were made or services furnished in good faith to meet equally high payments or equivalent services offered or supplied by a competing seller. This defense is available with respect to payments or services offered on an area-wide basis, to those offered to new as well as old customers, and regardless of whether the discrimination has been caused by a decrease or an increase in the payments or services offered. A seller must reasonably believe that its offers are necessary to meet a competitor's offer.

### §240.15 Cost justification.

It is no defense to a charge of unlawful discrimination in the payment of an allowance or the furnishing of a service for a seller to show that such payment or service could be justified through savings in the cost of manufacture, sale or delivery.

## PART 241—GUIDES FOR THE DOG AND CAT FOOD INDUSTRY

Sec.
241.1 Definitions.
241.2 Misuse of terms.
241.3 Misrepresentation in general.
241.4 Misrepresenting composition, form, suitability, or quality in labeling.
241.5 Misrepresenting composition, form, suitability, or quality in advertising.
241.6 Misrepresentation of color in advertising.
241.7 Misrepresentation of flavor in advertising.
241.8 Diet and nutrient misrepresentation.
241.9 Misrepresentation of medicinal and therapeutic benefits.
241.10 Human food representation.
241.11 Misrepresentation of processing methods.
241.12 Defamation of competitors or false disparagement of their products.
241.13 Misrepresentation of the character and size of business, extent of testing, etc.
241.14 Deceptive endorsements, testimonials, and awards.
241.15 Bait advertising.
241.16 Guarantees, warranties, etc.
241.17 Deceptive pricing.

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

SOURCE: 34 FR 3619, Feb. 28, 1969, unless otherwise noted.

### §241.1 Definitions.

For the purpose of this part the following definitions shall apply:

(a) *Industry product* means a food for dogs or cats and includes all types of dry, semimoist, frozen, canned, and other commercial foods manufactured or marketed for consumption by domesticated dogs or cats. The term also includes special *candy* for such dogs and cats but does not include animal medicines or remedies.

(b) *Industry member* means a person, firm, corporation, or organization engaged in the importation, manufacture, sale or distribution of an industry product.

(c) *Ingredients* are the constituent materials making up a food for dogs or cats. Except as otherwise prescribed in this part the names and definitions of

ingredients adopted by the Association of American Feed Control Officials will be used in the administration of this part, except that with respect to products which have been certified by the Department of Agriculture under the provisions of 9 CFR 355.1–355.42, the definitions set forth in those regulations will be used. [Guide 1]

### § 241.2 Misuse of terms.

Industry products and their respective ingredients should be identified and designated in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (c) of § 241.1 of this part, or if no name or definition has been established for an ingredient, it should be designated or identified by its common or usual name. The names of ingredients should not be used in advertising, labeling, brand or trade name, or otherwise, so as to misrepresent directly or by implication the identity of an ingredient or the composition of an industry product. [Guide 2]

### § 241.3 Misrepresentation in general.

Industry members should not use or cause or promote the use of any promotional materials, advertising, labels, insignia, brand or trade names which have the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading or deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers:

(a) With respect to the composition, substance, content, identity, quantity, appearance, consistency, form, shape, color, flavor, cost, value, origin, grade, quality, suitability, nutritional properties, methods of manufacture, manner of processing, or novelty of an industry product or ingredient thereof; or

(b) In any other material respect. [Guide 3]

### § 241.4 Misrepresenting composition, form, suitability, or quality in labeling.

An industry member should not use on the label of an industry product a statement of identity, vignette, or any other representation, pictorial or otherwise, which has the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading or deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers with respect to the composition, form, suitability, quality, color, or flavor of the product or any of its ingredients. More specifically:

(a) A label should contain sufficient information to enable a purchaser or prospective purchaser to determine the nature and composition of the product and the purposes for which it is suitable. As a prospective purchaser usually cannot ascertain by inspection whether an industry product will satisfy all of the nutritional requirements of a dog or cat, labeling respecting a product which is suitable only for particular purposes, e.g., as an intermittent or supplemental food, a special food for puppies, a protein supplement, or as a maintenance food for mature dogs, or is otherwise not a complete food, should not contain direct or implied representations which are misleading with respect to the purposes for which the product is suitable. To avoid misleading prospective purchasers in this respect it is generally necessary to disclose clearly and conspicuously the particular purposes for which the product is suitable or that the product is not a complete food.

(b) When used as part of a product name or statement of identity, the name of a particular ingredient should not be set forth in such a manner as to mislead prospective purchasers into believing that there is a greater proportion of such ingredient in the product than there is in fact. For example, if a product is composed of 80 percent meat byproducts and 15 percent beef, and 5 percent other ingredients, and is designated as ''meat by-products and beef'', the word ''beef'' in the product name or statement of identity should not be more conspicuous than the words ''meat by-products.'' [Guide 4]

### § 241.5 Misrepresenting composition, form, suitability, or quality in advertising.

An industry member should not make any representation in an advertisement[1] which has the capacity and

[1] The word ''advertising'' or ''advertisement'' as used in this part includes any written or verbal statement, notice presentation, illustration, or depiction, other than labeiling, which is directly or indirectly designed to effect the sale of any industry

tendency or effect of deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers as to the composition, appearance, form, suitability or quality of an industry product or of any ingredient thereof. More specifically:

(a) A product should not be described in advertising as ''all meat'' or ''100 percent meat,'' or ''all tuna,'' or ''all chicken,'' or otherwise represented as being composed wholly of a named ingredient if it contains other ingredients such as the byproducts of meat, poultry, or fish. However, for the purpose of this provision, water sufficient for processing, required decharacterizing agents, and trace amounts of preservatives and condiments shall not be considered ingredients.

(b) The name or names of ingredients derived from animals, poultry or fish, such as ''meat,'' ''beef,'' ''tuna,'' or ''chicken and eggs'' should not be used as a complete description of the composition of an industry product unless the product contains at least 95 percent by weight of the named ingredient or combination of such ingredients. If the product contains more than one ingredient derived from animals, poultry, or fish, the name of a preferred ingredient should not be given precedence or undue prominence so as to create the impression that the product contains a greater amount of that ingredient than it does in fact. For example, if a product contains 70 percent eggs and 25 percent chicken it should be described as ''eggs and chicken.''

(c) The names of ingredients derived from animals, poultry or fish or words or terms suggestive thereof, or representations that a product contains such ingredients, should not be used in advertising respecting an industry product unless the ingredients so named, represented, or suggested are present in the product in substantial amounts and the name, word, term, or representation is accompanied by a clear and conspicuous disclosure of the nature of the other ingredients contained in the product. The disclosure contemplated by this provision does not necessitate a complete listing of ingredients but only such description as is necessary to remove any likelihood of deception as to the general nature and composition of the product. However, no ingredient should be given undue emphasis so as to create the impression that it is present in the product in a larger amount than is the fact. This provision is not intended to preclude the use of such names or terms as descriptive of the flavor of a product which has the flavor represented and is immediately followed by the word ''flavor'' (see § 241.7 of this part), or to affect the use in advertising of product names or statements of identity which conform to the provisions of § 241.4 of this part. The following are examples of appropriate disclosures under this paragraph:

(1) ''A meaty mixture of vegetables, cereals, and other nutritional ingredients.''

(2) ''Contains cereals, vegetables, and meat.''

(d) Such terms as ''stew,'' ''hash,'' or other human food terms should not be used to describe an industry product or an ingredient thereof which is not so constituted as to conform to Federal standards of identity established for such foods. However, the specified percentages of meat, poultry, or fish ingredients may properly be composed of the named ingredient or of a combination of that ingredient and the parts of poultry or fish, or the byproducts of animals, poultry, or fish from which the ingredient was derived. For example, a product described as ''Meat Stew for Dogs'' should contain not less than 25 percent meat and meat byproducts, or a product described as ''Chicken Stew for Dogs'' should contain not less than 25 percent chicken and chicken parts, or a product described as ''Pet Stew for Dogs'' should contain not less than 25 percent meat and meat byproducts, or poultry products, and a variety of vegetables and other nutritional ingredients.

(e) Representations that a product contains or is fortified with fresh eggs should not be made if the product in fact contains no fresh eggs or an inappreciable amount thereof, or only dried

product, or to create an interest in the purchase of any such product, whether same appears in a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical, in a catalog, letter, or sales promotional literature, in a radio or television broadcast, or in any other media.

or powdered eggs or egg yolks or egg whites, or only such eggs as may be found in the carcasses of poultry.

(f) Representations that an industry product contains whole fresh milk should not be made if the product in fact contains reconstituted milk, skimmed milk, buttermilk, or dry powdered whole or skimmed milk.

(g) Representations that a product or an ingredient thereof is ''moist in its own juices'' or otherwise that the moisture therein is the natural juices contained in the product or ingredients should not be made if water or other liquids have been added thereto.

(h) Vignettes and graphic and pictorial illustrations of an industry product or the contents, ingredients on immediate container thereof, which have the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading or deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers with respect to the appearance, substance, condition, or composition of the product or its ingredients should not be used. A pictorial or other depiction of a product which has the appearance of being composed entirely of meat or of other ingredients derived from animals, poultry or fish, but which in fact is not so composed, should be accompanied by a clear and conspicuous disclosure of the nature of the ingredients contained in the product.

(i) Terms such as ''burger,'' ''chunk,'' ''patty,'' ''cubes,'' ''loaf,'' ''croquettes,'' and others of similar import, should not be used to describe a product or an ingredient thereof which does not have substantially the shape or form so represented when it is sold to the retail purchaser. Terms denoting shape or form which also suggest ingredients derived from animals, poultry, or fish are subject to the provisions of this part relating to misrepresentation of content.

(j) The quality of an industry product from the nutritional standpoint is not necessarily dependent upon its meat content, or upon the amount or nature of other ingredients derived from animals, poultry or fish which it may contain. Accordingly, it is improper to represent that a dog or cat has a nutritional requirement for such an ingredient, or that solely because a particular industry product contains, for example, a specified percentage of meat it is nutritionally superior to products having a lesser quantity of meat, or to those which contain other and different ingredients. Such advertising is deceptive because it does not take into consideration the nutritional properties of various ingredients or combinations thereof used in the formulation and processing of industry products.

(k) Representations or claims by an industry member that a product is superior to other products from the standpoint of quality, composition, nutritional properties or method of manufacture should not be made unless the advertiser has established on the basis of accurate comparative analyses or scientifically valid tests that such is the fact. Comparatives such as ''meatier,'' ''higher meat protein,'' and ''greater meat content'' should not be used as descriptive of an industry product or an ingredient thereof without disclosing the basis of comparison, e.g., ''meatier than our other products.''

(l) It is deceptive to offer for sale or sell an industry product which is not suitable for use as a food for dogs or cats. As a prospective purchaser usually cannot ascertain by inspection whether an industry product will satisfy all of the nutritional requirements of a dog or cat, advertising respecting a product which is suitable only for particular purposes, e.g., as an intermittent or supplemental food, a special food for puppies, a protein supplement, or as a maintenance food for mature dogs, or is otherwise not a complete food, should not contain direct or implied representations which are misleading with respect to the purposes for which the product is suitable. To avoid misleading prospective purchasers in this respect it is generally necessary to disclose clearly and conspicuously the particular purposes for which the product is suitable or that the product is not a complete food. This disclosure is especially necessary where in the absence thereof purchasers would be led by the advertising to believe that the product is nutritionally complete.

(m) Advertising should not contain any representation with respect to the identity, composition, or suitability of any industry product or an ingredient thereof, which contradicts, negates or

is otherwise inconsistent with any representation, statement, direction for use, or other information which appears in the labeling of such a product.

(n) In advertisements pertaining to more than one of its products an industry member should use only such terms as are properly applicable to all of the products so advertised, unless the advertisement specifically identifies the particular products to which certain representations are applicable. For example, if ''Y Company'' has on the market an ''all meat'' product for dogs, an ''all tuna'' products for cats, and two separate, complete ration-type foods for dogs and cats respectively, it should not in a single advertisement represent that Y products are complete foods, or that they are ''all meat.'' [Guide 5]

### §241.6 Misrepresentation of color in advertising.

An industry member should not misrepresent directly or indirectly, in advertising, the actual color of an industry product. More specifically, it should not represent that the color of a product is its natural color when such color has been established by artificial means; or that a product does not contain an artificial coloring ingredient unless this is true in fact; or that the color of a product is of any particular significance to a dog or to a cat. [Guide 6]

### §241.7 Misrepresentation of flavor in advertising.

An industry member should not represent directly or indirectly, in advertising, that a product has a particular flavor unless the product has that flavor and the designated or named flavor is detectable by a recognized test method, or provides a characteristic distinguishable by the animal for which the product is intended. If the advertisement contains representations respecting flavor and the flavor has been derived from artificial sources that fact should be disclosed. [Guide 7]

### §241.8 Diet and nutrient misrepresentation.

An industry member should not represent directly or indirectly, in advertising, labeling, brand or tradename, or otherwise:

(a) That an industry product, or a recommended feeding thereof, is or meets the requisites of a complete, perfect, scientific, or balanced ration for dogs or cats unless such product or feeding:

(1) Contains ingredients in quantities sufficient to satisfy the estimated nutrient requirements established by a recognized authority on animal nutrition, such as The Committee on Animal Nutrition of the National Research Council of the National Academy of Sciences; or

(2) Contains a combination of ingredients which, when fed to a normal animal as the only source of nourishment, will provide satisfactorily for fertility of the male and female, gestation and lactation, normal growth from weaning to maturity without supplementary feeding and will maintain the normal weight of an adult animal whether working or at rest, and has had its capabilities in this regard demonstrated by adequate testing.

(b) That any listing of nutrients is equal to or exceeds the amounts recommended by a recognized authority on animal nutrition, such as the Committee on Animal Nutrition of the National Research Council of the National Academy of Sciences, unless such listing utilizes the same units of measure, and lists in equal or excess amounts all of the essential nutrients contained in the most recent nutrient list of that authority; or

(c) That a product or ingredient thereof contains vitamins, minerals, or other nutrients in excess of the actual content thereof, as for example, by comparing the vitamins, minerals, or other nutrients of a product or ingredient thereof with the nutrient content of a food deficient in such nutrients; or

(d) That any product or ingredient thereof provides ''super protein richness,'' or a complete source of protein in that it contains the essential body building amino acids, inferably in the proper amount and proportion for proper nutrition, when such is not the fact. [Guide 8]

**§ 241.9 Misrepresentation of medicinal and therapeutic benefits.**

An industry member should not represent directly or indirectly in advertising, labeling, brand or trade name, or otherwise, that a product or ingredient thereof will:

(a) Prevent, cure, correct, tend to correct, eliminate, remove, or provide resistance to any disease, condition, disorder, infection, or parasite, or in any way improve the health or condition of any animal, when such is not the fact; or

(b) Provide any therapeutic benefit which it is capable of providing only in instances where the consuming animal's ordinary diet is deficient in elements supplied by the product or ingredient, unless due notice or qualification is made to that effect. [Guide 9]

**§ 241.10 Human food representation.**

An industry member should not misrepresent directly or indirectly, in advertising, labeling, brand or trade name or otherwise, that a product is fit for human consumption or made under the same sanitary conditions as food for humans. [Guide 10]

**§ 241.11 Misrepresentation of processing methods.**

An industry member should not, in advertising, labeling or otherwise, misrepresent the methods used in the manufacture or processing of an industry product. More specifically: Representations that a product has been broiled, braised, baked, or otherwise cooked, preserved or processed in a specific manner should not be made unless such is the fact. As the word ''canned'' when applied to an industry product may constitute a representation as to the manner in which a product has been processed as well as to the nature of the container in which it is packaged, a product should not be described without qualification as ''canned'' unless it has been both thermally processed and packed in a can. [Guide 11]

**§ 241.12 Defamation of competitors or false disparagement of their products.**

An industry member should not directly or indirectly in advertising, labeling, or otherwise:

(a) Engage in the defamation of its competitors by falsely imputing to them dishonorable conduct, inability to perform contracts, questionable credit standing, or by making other false representations about them; or

(b) Falsely disparage the quality, grade, origin, appearance, composition, suitability, nutritional properties, cost, value, type, consistency, form, color, flavor, method of manufacture, manner of preparation, or lack of novelty of its competitors' products. [Guide 12]

**§ 241.13 Misrepresentation of the character and size of business, extent of testing, etc.**

An industry member should not misrepresent directly or indirectly in company, brand or trade name, or in advertising, labeling, or otherwise:

(a) The length of time it has been in business; or

(b) The extent of its sales; or

(c) Its rank in the industry as a producer or distributor of a product or type of product; or

(d) That it is a manufacturer or packer of industry products; or

(e) That it owns or operates a laboratory, breeding or experimental kennel, or that its products have been tested in any particular manner or for any period of time or with any particular results; or

(f) That a product, ingredient, or manufacturing process is new or exclusive; or

(g) Any other material aspect of its business or products. [Guide 13]

**§ 241.14 Deceptive endorsements, testimonials, and awards.**

An industry member should not deceptively represent directly or indirectly by endorsement, testimonial, award, advertising, labeling, brand or trade name, or otherwise:

(a) That a product or ingredient thereof has been prepared according to the formula, direction, or personal supervision of, or is prescribed by, or is the first choice of, or has been inspected, guaranteed, recognized, approved or used by; or meets or exceeds the specifications or standards of; or is otherwise endorsed by a particular individual or class of individuals, or by a

governmental or nongovernmental agency, or by professionals such as veterinarians, chemists, physicists, or psychiatrists, or by organizations, breeders, kennels, sportsmen, hunt clubs, or animal hospitals; or

(b) That a product is the recipient of a bona fide merit award or seal of approval; or

(c) That a product or an ingredient thereof has been inspected by the U.S. Government or any agency thereof and that it has passed that inspection. [Guide 14]

### §241.15 Bait advertising.

An industry member should not offer for sale any industry product when the offer is not a bona fide effort to sell the product so offered as advertised and at the advertised price.

NOTE: 1. In determining whether there has been compliance with this section, consideration will be given to acts or practices indicating that the offer was not made in good faith for the purpose of selling the advertised product, but was made for the purpose of contacting prospective purchasers and selling them a product or products other than the product offered. Among acts or practices which will be considered in making that determination are the following:

(a) The creation, through the initial offer or advertisement, or a false impression of the product offered in any material respect;

(b) The refusal to show, demonstrate or sell the product offered in accordance with the terms of the offer;

(c) The disparagement by acts or words of the product offered or the disparagement of the guarantee, or in any other respect in connection with it;

(d) The showing, demonstrating, and in the event of sale, the delivery of a product which is unsuitable for the purpose represented or implied in the offer;

(e) The failure, in the event of sale of the product offered, to deliver such product to the buyer within a reasonable time thereafter;

(f) The failure to have available a quantity of the advertised product at the advertised price sufficient to meet reasonably anticipated demands.

It is not necessary that each act or practice set forth above be present in order to establish that a particular offer does not comply with this section.

NOTE: 2. The Commission's Guides Against Bait Advertising furnish additional guidance respecting bait advertising. See 16 CFR part 238 for the Guides Against Bait Advertising. [Guide 15]

### §241.16 Guarantees, warranties, etc.

(a) An industry member should not represent in advertising or otherwise that a product is guaranteed without clear and conspicuous disclosure of:

(1) The nature and extent of the guarantee; and

(2) Any material conditions or limitations in the guarantee which are imposed by the guarantor; and

(3) The manner in which the guarantor will perform thereunder; and

(4) The identity of the guarantor. (The necessary disclosure requires that any guarantee made by the dealer or vendor which is not backed up by the manufacturer must make it clear that the guarantee is offered by the dealer or vendor only.)

(b) A seller or manufacturer should not advertise or represent that a product is guaranteed when he cannot or does not promptly and scrupulously fulfill his obligations under the guarantee.

(c) A specific example of refusal to perform obligations under the guarantee would arise in connection with the use of the phrase ''Satisfaction or your money back'' if the guarantor does not promptly make a full refund of the purchase price upon request, irrespective of the reason for such a request.

(d) This section has application not only to ''guarantees'' but also to ''warranties,'' to purported ''guarantees'' and ''warranties,'' and to any promise or representation in the nature of a ''guarantee'' or ''warranty.''

NOTE: The Commission's Guides Against Deceptive Advertising of Guarantees furnish additional guidance respecting guarantee representations. See 16 CFR part 239 for Guides Against Deceptive Advertising of Guarantees.

[Guide 16]

### §241.17 Deceptive pricing.

An industry member should not represent directly or indirectly in advertising or otherwise that an industry product may be purchased for a specified price, or at a saving, or at a reduced price, when such is not the fact; or otherwise deceive purchasers or prospective purchasers with respect to the price of any product offered for sale; or

furnish any means or instrumentality by which others engaged in the sale of industry products may make any such representation.

NOTE: The Commission's Guides Against Deceptive Pricing furnish additional guidance respecting price savings representations. See 16 CFR part 233 for the Guides Against Deceptive Pricing.

[Guide 17]

## PART 243—GUIDES FOR THE DECORATIVE WALL PANELING INDUSTRY

Sec.

243.0 Definitions.
243.1 Avoiding deception generally.
243.2 Describing wood and wood imitations.
243.3 Deceptive use of wood names.
243.4 Imitations of materials other than wood.
243.5 Misleading illustrations.
243.6 Deceptive use of trade or corporate names, coined names, trademarks, etc.
243.7 Passing off through imitation or simulation of trademarks, trade names, etc.
243.8 Disclosure of 'seconds'', ''rejected'', or ''defective'' products, etc.
243.9 Representations concerning washability, cleanability, etc.
243.10 Size markings and designations.
243.11 Removal, obliteration, or alteration of marks or labels.
243.12 Misrepresenting products as conforming to standard or specification.
243.13 Deception as to origin.
243.14 Other parts in this title 16 applicable to this industry.

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

SOURCE: 36 FR 23796, Dec. 15, 1971, unless otherwise noted.

### § 243.0 Definitions.

For the purpose of this part the following definitions shall apply:

(a) *Industry member.* Any person, firm, corporation, or organization engaged in the manufacture, sale or distribution of industry products as such products are hereinafter defined.

(b) *Industry products.* Industry products include all products, whether of domestic or foreign origin, which are suitable for use as interior decorative wall panels. Industry products may be composed of any material or combinations of materials including, but not limited to, solid wood, plywood, wood products, plastics, metals, etc., and may be textured, prefinished, partially finished, or unfinished.

(c) *Exposed surface, front or face.* An ''exposed surface'' of a decorative wall panel is the one prominently exposed to view when the product is placed in the generally accepted position for use. The ''exposed surface'' is often referred to as the ''front'' or ''face'', as contrasted to the back of a panel.

(d) *Back.* The back of a decorative wall panel is the surface reverse to the face. The back is not generally intended to provide an esthetically pleasing appearance and, therefore, is not considered an ''exposed surface'' under the definition immediately above. However, these definitions do not preclude unusual construction giving a panel two exposed surfaces or faces.

(e) *Veneer.* In this part, the term *veneer* is used in the sense most commonly understood by ordinary consumers—namely, to describe a thin layer of more valuable or beautiful wood used on the face of a panel for overlaying an inferior wood or other core material.

### § 243.1 Avoiding deception generally.

(a) *In general.* Industry members should not sell, offer for sale, or distribute industry products by any method, or under any representation, circumstance, or condition which has the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading purchasers or prospective purchasers as to the grade, type, kind, character, content, construction, composition, process, or technique used in preparation or fabrication, origin, size, thickness, quality, quantity, value, price, serviceability, resistance, performance, durability, color, finish, manufacture, or distribution of any product of the industry or component part of such product, or in any other respect.

(b) *Basis for affirmative disclosures of facts.* (1) Many of the following sections set forth specific examples as to when affirmative disclosures should be made in advertising and on labels. In order to prevent deception the Commission may require affirmative disclosure of material facts concerning merchandise which, if known to prospective purchasers, would influence their decisions of whether or not to purchase.

The failure to disclose such facts as may be required is an unfair trade practice violative of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(2) Two of the most prevalent situations in which disclosures should be made are (i) when the appearance of a wall panel could mislead purchasers or potential purchasers as to its true composition, and (ii) when a representation is made in any manner which is susceptible of at least one misleading interpretation unless it is clearly qualified. Representations which cannot be qualified without the qualification amounting to a contradiction should not be used.

(c) *Manner of making disclosures on products and in advertising.* (1) Retail dealers, manufacturers, and other suppliers must all assume the affirmative responsibility to provide detailed information to the public concerning the compositions of wall panels through informative advertising, promotional materials, and properly labeled products and samples thereof.

(2) When disclosures are necessary on industry products, they should appear on each product (except when sold and used for industrial purposes and the industrial purchaser is otherwise fully informed of the material facts involved). Such disclosures should be on the product, or on a tag or label attached thereto, and be of such permanency as to remain on, or attached to, the product until consummation of sale to the ultimate purchaser. Conspicuous disclosures may appear on backs of wall panels, but in instances where such disclosures would not be readily noticeable to casual observers, such as on certain point-of-sale display panels where the backs are not easily viewed, disclosures should be made on the front or face of panels.

(3) When disclosures are necessary in advertising, they should be made in any advertisement relating to an industry product irrespective of the form or media used whenever statements, representations or depictions appear therein which, in the absence of such disclosures, could serve to create a false impression that the product, or any part thereof, is of a certain kind, size, quality or composition.

(4) In all cases, disclosures should be in immediate conjunction with any representation, depiction, illustration, simulation, or display making it necessary, and should be of sufficient clarity and conspicuousness to be noted by prospective purchasers. The number of times a disclosure should be made will depend entirely upon the context in which it appears.

(5) When disclosures are necessary to describe composition, they may be accomplished by stating the true composition (e.g., ''mahogany grained hardboard'', ''walnut grain finish on plastic'', ''reproduction of wood grain on plastic overlay'' or ''printed vinyl overlay on plywood''), or by making a disclaimer of composition (e.g., ''imitation wood surface'', ''simulated wood finish'' or ''simulated grain design''). Of course, a representation concerning the composition of a product should clearly indicate the part to which the representation is properly applicable.

NOTE: For examples of when disclosures should be made, see the following sections.

[Guide 1]

### §243.2 Describing wood and wood imitations.

In connection with the sale of industry products made of wood, or which are not wood but have an appearance simulating wood, industry members should not use any display, exhibit, sample, sales method, depiction or representation which could have the capacity and tendency directly or indirectly to mislead purchasers or potential purchasers because of: A false statement; a half-truth; or the failure to disclose facts concerning composition when the appearance of a product could convey a misleading impression.[1]

(a) Examples of representations considered false include:

(1) Describing an oak panel as ''pecan'';

(2) Describing as ''solid birch'' or ''genuine birch'' a panel made with laminations of all birch plies. Proper descriptions would include ''birch plywood'' or ''birch plies'';

(3) Describing a particleboard, flakeboard, hardwood, fiberboard,

[1] See paragraphs (b) and (c) of §243.1.

chipcore or plywood panel as ''solid wood'';

(4) Describing as ''natural wood grain'' a simulated grain design which has been printed on, attached to or simulated in any other manner on the surface of an industry product;

(5) Describing a nonlumber product, such as particleboard, hardboard, fiberboard, flakeboard, and products of similar composition, as ''wood''. Although such products are composed of wood particles or wood fibers, they should not be represented without qualification as ''wood'' but may be described as ''particleboard'', ''hardboard'', ''fiberboard'', ''wood product'', or by any applicable nondeceptive word or term.

(b) Examples of representations considered likely to mislead because of a half-truth include:

(1) Describing as ''walnut'', ''in walnut'', ''genuine walnut'', ''walnut panel'' or ''walnut plywood'' a panel having only a face veneer of walnut. Proper descriptions would include ''walnut veneer face'', ''walnut veneer surface'', ''walnut veneer'' or ''walnut veneered plywood''.

NOTE: Unqualified terms such as ''walnut'', ''genuine walnut'' and ''in walnut'' imply that the product so described is solid walnut. Unqualified terms such as ''walnut plywood'' imply that all of the plies are walnut.

(2) Describing as ''walnut veneer'' a panel having a face veneer not entirely of walnut. If a wood name is used to describe a panel having more than one kind of wood in the face veneer then all of the woods in the face veneers should be named or otherwise identified (e.g., ''walnut and cherry veneers'' or ''walnut and other hardwood veneers'');

(3) Using unqualified phrases such as ''wood-pattern'' or ''woodgrain finish'' to describe a panel having a wood surface which has been stamped, rolled, pressed, or otherwise processed in such manner as to change the natural wood grain design. Proper descriptions would include ''simulated woodgrain finish'', ''imitation grain figure'' or ''simulated walnut grain finish on birch face veneer'';

(4) Describing as ''hardwood plywood'' a panel made of hardwood plywood but having a vinyl film surface simulating a wood finish. Proper descriptions would include ''hardwood plywood with simulated wood grain on vinyl overlay'' or ''simulated wood surface on plywood''.

(c) Examples of failure to disclose facts concerning composition when the appearance of industry products could convey a misleading impression include circumstances such as when a product, or part thereof, is: Wood but has the appearance of a different kind of wood; and Not wood but has an appearance simulating wood. For instance, when necessary to prevent possible deception an affirmative disclosure should be made of the facts concerning composition when an industry product, or part thereof:

(1) Has an exposed surface of plastic, metal, vinyl, hardboard, particle-board or other material not possessing a natural wood grain structure but which has an appearance simulating that of a wood grain. Depending on the composition, proper descriptions would include ''simulated walnut finish on plastic face'', ''vinyl surface with simulated pecan finish'', ''simulated birch finish on hardboard'' ''mahogany grained plastic'', or other nondeceptive phrases;

(2) Has a wood surface finished by means of staining, decalcomania, printing, paper coating or other process so as to have the appearance of a different kind of wood. Depending on the composition, proper descriptions would include ''mahogany finished gum plywood'', ''walnut stained plywood'', ''walnut finish on pecan veneer face'', or ''cherry grain design on hardwood plywood'';

(3) Has an appearance which could mislead potential purchasers in any material respect.

(d) Examples of wood names to describe color, grain design, etc.:

(1) When a wood name is used in advertising or labeling to describe the grain and/or color of a stain finish or other type of simulated finish which has been applied to a surface composed of something other than solid wood of the type named, it should be made clear that the wood name used is merely descriptive of the grain design and/or color or other simulated finish.

(2) Under this section, unqualified phrases such as ''walnut'', ''walnut finish'', ''in walnut'', ''fruitwood'', ''oak'', ''mahogany finish'', and other terms of similar import or meaning, will not be adequate. But statements such as ''walnut stain'', ''maple stain finish'', ''mahogany finish on gum'', ''photographically reproduced pecan grain'', ''printed pecan design'', ''fruitwood finish on selected hardwood veneer'', ''cherry grain finish on vinyl overlay'' and ''walnut finish on other hardwoods'' (or ''softwoods'', as the case may be) will satisfy this provision if such statements are factually correct and appear in contexts which are otherwise nondeceptive.[2] [Guide 2]

### §243.3 Deceptive use of wood names.

Industry members should not use any direct or indirect representation concerning the identity of the wood in industry products that is false or likely to mislead purchasers as to the actual wood composition.

(a) *Walnut*. The unqualified term *walnut* should not be used to describe wood other than genuine solid walnut (genus Juglans). The term *black walnut* should be applied only to the species Juglans nigra.

(b) *Mahogany*. (1) The unqualified term *mahogany* should not be used to describe wood other than genuine solid mahogany (genus Swietenia of the Meliaceae family). The woods of genus Swietenia may be described by the term ''mahogany'' with or without a prefix designating the country or region of its origin, such as ''Honduras mahogany''. ''Costa Rican mahogany''. ''Brazilian mahogany'' or ''Mexican mahogany''.

(2) The term ''mahogany'' may be used to describe solid wood of the genus Khaya of the Meliaceae family, but only when prefixed by the word ''African'' (e.g., ''African mahogany'').

(3) In naming or designating the seven nonmahogany Philippine woods Tanguile, Red Lauan, White Lauan, Tiaong, Almon, Mayapis, and Bagtikan, the term ''mahogany'' may be used but only when prefixed by the word ''Philippine'' (e.g., ''Philippine mahogany''), due to the long standing usage of that term. Examples of improper use of the term ''mahogany'' include reference to Red Lauan as ''Lauan mahogany'' or to White Lauan as ''Blond Lauan mahogany''. Such woods, however, may be described as ''Red Lauan'' or ''Lauan'' or ''White Lauan'', respectively. The term ''Philippine mahogany'' will be accepted as a name or designation of the seven woods named above. Such term shall not be applied to any other wood, whether or not grown on the Philippine Islands.

(4) The term ''mahogany'', with or without qualifications, should not be used to describe any other wood except as provided above. This applies also to any of the woods belonging to the Meliaceae family, other than genera Swietenia and Khaya.

(c) *Maple*. The terms *hard maple, rock maple, bird's-eye maple, Northern maple* or other terms of similar nature should not be used to describe woods other than those known under the lumber trade names of Black Maple (Acer nigrum) and Sugar Maple (Acer saccharum).

NOTE: Nothing in this section should be construed as prohibiting the nondeceptive use of wood names to describe the color, stain, simulated finish, or appearance of industry products; *Provided*, That appropriate qualifications are made in accordance with provisions in §243.2(d).

[Guide 3]

### §243.4 Imitations of materials other than wood.

Industry members should not misrepresent the composition of any industry product, or part thereof, or fail to disclose any material fact concerning the composition of an industry product when the failure to do so has the capacity and tendency or effect of deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers.[3] For example:

(a) A hardboard panel having an imitation marble finish should not be described without qualification as ''marble'', ''onyx'', ''travertine'' or ''travertine marble finish''. Proper descriptions would include ''simulated marble finish'', ''imitation marble-textured'',

[2] See paragraphs (b) and (c) of §243.1.

[3] See paragraphs (b) and (c) of §243.1.

''marble pattern on plastic faced hardboard'', ''simulated travertine on hardboard'', ''marble pattern on vinylfaced hardboard'' or other nondeceptive terms;

(b) A fiberboard panel having an imitation burlap finish should not be described without qualifications as ''burlap'' or ''burlap finish''. Proper descriptions would include ''imitation burlap weave finish'', ''simulated burlap design on fiberboard'', ''simulated burlap finish on fiberboard'', ''burlap pattern on embossed vinyl surface'' or other nondeceptive terms. [Guide 4]

### § 243.5 Misleading illustrations.

Industry members should not use any picture, illustration, diagram or other depiction, either alone or in conjunction with words or phrases, which would have the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading or deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers concerning any material fact relating to an industry product. For example, if an advertisement showed installed panels with the color and graining characteristic of walnut, but the paneling being offered was not genuine solid walnut, then the advertisement should contain a clear and conspicuous disclosure of the composition of the product being offered (e.g., ''walnut veneer plywood'', ''engraved walnut grain design on selected hardwood plywood'', or ''simulated walnut finish on hardboard'').[3] [Guide 5]

### § 243.6 Deceptive use of trade or corporate names, coined names, trademarks, etc.

Industry members should not use any trade name, product name, corporate name, coined name, trademark or other trade designation, which has the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading or deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers as to the character, name, nature, composition, or origin of any industry product, or of any material used therein, or which is false or misleading in any other material respect. [Guide 6]

### § 243.7 Passing off through imitation or simulation of trademarks, trade names, etc.

Industry members should not pass off the products of one industry member as and for those of another through the imitation or simulation of trademarks, trade names, brands, labels or otherwise. [Guide 7]

### § 243.8 Disclosure of "seconds", "rejected" or "defective" products, etc.

Industry products which are not of first quality should be legibly marked or labeled in a clear and conspicuous manner as ''second'', ''rejected'', ''defective'', or ''blemished'', as the case may be, or by some other term which clearly and conspicuously makes known to purchasers, or potential purchasers viewing the products, the fact that they are not of first quality. Also, such products should not be advertised in any manner without a clear and conspicuous disclosure that the products are not of first quality. Such disclosures should conform with provisions of paragraphs (b) and (c) of § 243.1 of this part. [Guide 8]

### § 243.9 Representations concerning washability, cleanability, etc.

Industry members should not directly or indirectly misrepresent the manner in which the exposed surfaces of prefinished industry products may be washed, cleaned, or otherwise maintained, or fail to clearly and conspicuously disclose the manner in which exposed surfaces may be washed, cleaned, or otherwise maintained without adverse effects whenever representations are made concerning such matters. [Guide 9]

### § 243.10 Size markings and designations.[4]

Industry members should not:

[4] Officially established Commercial Standards and Product Standards concerning the various industry products are recognized as giving proper guidance for determining dimensions of industry products (e.g., CS157–56; CS176–58; CS35–61; CS251–63; CS236–66; and PS1–66; and amendments or revisions thereof).

(a) Mark or otherwise represent, directly or by implication, an industry product as being of a certain size unless it has the dimensions represented; or

(b) Fail to disclose in advertising and on industry products the true size thereof when the failure to make such disclosure has the capacity and tendency or effect of deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers as to the size of such products. For example, consumers generally assume that decorative wall panels are 4′×8′×¼″ when advertised without disclosure of dimensions. Therefore, if the dimensions of advertised panels are less than 4′×8′×¼″, an affirmative disclosure of the correct size should be made.[5] [Guide 10]

### § 243.11 Removal, obliteration, or alteration of marks or labels.

Industry members should not:

(a) Remove, obliterate, deface, change, alter, conceal, or make illegible any information this part provides be disclosed on industry products, without replacing the same before sale, resale or distribution for sale with a proper mark or label meeting the provisions of this part; or

(b) Sell, resell, or distribute any industry product without its being marked or labeled and described in accordance with the provisions of this part. [Guide 11]

### § 243.12 Misrepresenting products as conforming to standard or specification.

Members of the industry should not misrepresent in advertising, labeling, or otherwise, that any product conforms to any applicable standard or specification. [Guide 12]

### § 243.13 Deception as to origin.

(a) Industry members should not make any direct or indirect representation which is false or likely to mislead prospective purchasers concerning the origin of either domestic or foreign industry products, or any substantial parts thereof.

(b) Industry members should clearly and conspicuously disclose that industry products, or any substantial parts thereof, were produced or manufactured in an identified foreign country when the failure to make such disclosure has the capacity and tendency or effect of deceiving prospective purchasers. Such disclosures should be in the form of a legible mark, stamp or label on the product, and any samples thereof, and should be of such size, conspicuousness and permanency as to remain noticeable and legible upon casual inspection until consumer purchase. [Guide 13]

### § 243.14 Other parts in this title 16 applicable to this industry.

The Commission has adopted Guides Against Deceptive Pricing, part 233, Guides Against Deceptive Advertising of Guarantees, part 239, and Guides Against Bait Advertising, part 238, all of which have general application and furnish additional guidance for members of the Decorative Wall Paneling Industry. Members of this industry should comply with those parts.

## PART 245—GUIDES FOR THE WATCH INDUSTRY

Sec.
245.1 Definitions.
245.2 Misrepresentation in general.
245.3 Misrepresentation of metallic composition of watchcases and certain watch bands.
245.4 Misrepresentation as to durability or suitability.
245.5 Misrepresentation of protective features.
245.6 Deception as to jewels.
245.7 Misrepresentation of accessories.
245.8 Deceptive selling of used, rebuilt, or secondhand products.
245.9 Deceptive imitation, obliteration, or concealment of trade names, trademarks, and marks.
245.10 Disclosure of foreign origin of watch movements, movement parts, and related matters.
245.11 Deceptive pricing.
245.12 Commercial bribery.
245.13 Coercing purchase of one product as a prerequisite to the purchase of other products.
245.14 Misrepresentation of the character and size of business, extent of testing, etc.
245.15 Guarantees, warranties, etc.
245.16 Use of the word ‘‘free’’.
APPENDIX TO PART 245

[5] See paragraphs (b) and (c) of § 243.1.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 38 Stat. 719, as amended, 721; 15 U.S.C. 45, 46.

SOURCE: 33 FR 10332, July 19, 1968, unless otherwise noted.

### § 245.1 Definitions.

For the purpose of this part the following definitions shall apply:

(a) The term *watch* means a timepiece or time-keeping device for measuring or indicating time which is designed to be worn on or about the person.

(b) The term *watchcase* or *case* means any metal case, covering, or housing of any quality or description for a watch as defined above and shall include the back, center, lugs, bezel, pendant, crown, bow, cap, and other parts thereof, including a watch band which has been permanently affixed thereto; and unless otherwise stated, either term as used in this part applies to the case whether marketed separately or together with the movement or works.

(c) The term *accessories* means products, other than watch bands, which are affixed to and sold in combination with watchcases or watches, such as, for example, bracelets, pins, pendants, brooches, or ornaments.

NOTE: Metallic watch bands of the detachable type are subject to the provisions of the Trade Practice Rules for the Metallic Watch Band Industry, promulgated June 30, 1962, and amended June 16, 1964.

(d) The term *mark* means any letter, figure, numeral, symbol, sign, word, or term, or any combination thereof, which has been stamped, embossed, inscribed, or otherwise placed, on any industry product for the purpose of disclosing its metallic composition or any other material information.

(e) The term *plate* or *plated* means that a sheet or shell of metal has been applied by soldering, brazing, welding, or other mechanical means to the outer surfaces of foundation metal stock.

(f) The term *electroplate* or *electroplated* means that a coating of metal has been applied by the electrolytic method to the outer surfaces of foundation metal stock.

(g) The term *industry product* means a watch, watchcase, accessory or a part thereof.

(h) The term *industry member* means a person, firm, corporation, or organization engaged in the importation, manufacture, sale, or distribution of any industry product. [Guide 1]

### § 245.2 Misrepresentation in general.

Industry members should not use, or cause or promote the use of any promotional materials, advertising, labels, tags, marks, insignia, brand or trade names, depictions or packaging which bear, contain, or constitute representations which have the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading or deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers:

(a) With respect to the grade, quality, estimated life, appearance, substance, size, construction, novelty, composition, accuracy, dependability, imperviousness, repairability, conformance to standards, or methods of manufacture, of industry products; or

(b) With respect to the country of origin of industry products or parts thereof; or

(c) In any other material respect. [Guide 2]

### § 245.3 Misrepresentation of metallic composition of watchcases and certain watch bands.

Industry members should not directly or indirectly, in advertising, marking, labeling, in a brand or trade name, or otherwise, misrepresent the metallic composition of a watchcase. With respect to cases having an exposed surface or surfaces which are, or have the appearance of being, metal, the metallic composition of the cases should be clearly and conspicuously disclosed in accordance with the methods and terminology set forth below:

(a) *Exclusions.* In determining the metallic composition of watchcases, parts which are necessarily required to be of steel or some other base metal may be excluded, namely, the springs, hinge pins for jointed cases, spring pins for straps or bands, separate inside movement holding rings, and crown cores.

(b) *Gold.* Watchcases which are not composed entirely of fine (24 karat)[1]

[1] Subject to the tolerances applicable thereto under the National Stamping Act (15 U.S.C., section 294, et seq.).

gold should not be marked with the unqualified word ''gold'' or an abbreviation thereof.

(c) *Gold alloy*. Watchcases composed entirely of an alloy of gold of not less than 10 karat fineness[1] should be marked as ''gold'' or by an abbreviation thereof, and such word or abbreviation should be immediately preceded with a correct designation of the karat fineness[1] of the alloy, for example, ''10 Karat Gold,'' ''14 Kt Gold,'' ''10 Kt.''

(d) *Gold filled*. Watchcases which have been plated by mechanical means with gold, or with an alloy of gold of not less than 10 karat fineness,[1] and the plating is of a thickness throughout of not less than three one-thousandths[2] of an inch after completion of all finishing operations, should be marked ''Gold Filled'', or by an abbreviation thereof, and such term or abbreviation should be immediately preceded by a correct designation of the karat fineness[1] of the gold alloy of which the plating is composed, as, for example, ''12 Karat Gold Filled'', ''12 K.G.F.''

(e) *Rolled gold plate*. Watchcases which have been plated by mechanical means with gold, or with an alloy of gold of not less than 10 karat fineness,[1] and the plating is of a thickness throughout of not less than one and one-half one thousandths[2] of an inch upon completion of all finishing operations, should be marked ''gold plate'' or ''rolled gold plate'' or by an abbreviation thereof and such term or abbreviation should be immediately preceded by a correct designation of the karat fineness[1] of the gold alloy of which the plating is composed, as, for example, ''10 Karat Gold Plate,'' ''10 Karat Rolled Gold Plate,'' ''10 K.R.G.P.''

(f) *Gold electroplate*. (1) Watchcases which have been electroplated with gold or with an alloy of gold of not less than 10 karat fineness,[1] to a thickness throughout of not less than three-fourths one thousandths[2] of an inch upon completion of all finishing operations and which can successfully withstand the tests set forth in paragraph 2 of the appendix, should be marked ''gold electroplate'' or ''gold electroplated'' and such term may be immediately preceded by a correct designation of the karat fineness[1] of the gold alloy of which such coating is composed, e.g., ''16 Karat Gold Electroplate.'' If the thickness of such gold electroplate is one and one-half one thousandths[2] of an inch or greater, it may be described as ''Heavy Gold Electroplate,'' and such term may be immediately preceded by a correct designation of the karat fineness[1] of the gold alloy of which such plating is composed. Gold electroplated products which satisfy the provisions in this paragraph may also be marked with an accurate disclosure of the actual thickness of the electroplate, e.g., ''1/1000'' gold electroplate.''

(2) Watches which have cases marked ''gold electroplate'' or ''gold electroplated'' in conformity with this section should, when sold to the ultimate consumer within the 18-month period immediately following the operative date of this section, be accompanied by an appropriate statement explaining the meaning of the marking and providing sufficient information to enable the consumer to make an informed judgment regarding the quality of the coating. The statement should not purport to compare the merits of electroplated coatings with the merits of coatings applied by other processes. The statement should be made on any point of sale material describing or referring to the watch and on a label or tag firmly affixed to the watch.

(g) *Silver*. Watchcases which are composed entirely of pure silver or of an alloy of silver of not less than nine-hundred twenty-five one thousandths fineness[1] should be marked as ''silver,'' ''sterling'' or ''sterling silver'' or by an abbreviation thereof. Cases which are composed entirely of a silver alloy of at least nine-hundred one thousandths fineness[1] should be marked ''coin silver.''

(h) *Silver plate*. Watchcases which have been plated or electroplated with silver, should be marked as ''silver plate'' or ''silver plated'', if after the completion of all finishing operations, such plating is of sufficient thickness to withstand normal use and last

[1] See footnote on previous page.

[2] Subject to permissible tolerances set forth in paragraph 1 of the appendix.

throughout the estimated life of the watch.

(i) *Other precious metals.* Watchcases which are composed in whole or in part of a precious metal other than gold or silver, or of an alloy of such a metal, or which have been plated or electroplated with such a metal or alloy thereof, should be marked so as to disclose the kind of precious metal or alloy so used and the manner of its use.

(j) *Base metals.* Watchcases or parts thereof which do not meet the minimum requirements set forth in paragraphs (b) through (i) of this section should be marked as ''Base Metal'' or so as to identify clearly the kind or kinds of metal of which they are composed, e.g., ''Aluminum,'' ''Stainless Steel,'' ''Chromium Plated Steel,'' and under these circumstances the mark should not contain the names of or abbreviations for any precious metal.

(k) *Combination of metals.* Watchcases which are composed of parts having different metallic compositions, should be marked in the manner prescribed in paragraphs (b) through (j) of this section with an accompanying explanation of the part or parts to which such markings or descriptions apply, e.g., ''Base Metal Back,'' ''14 K Gold Filled Bezel.''

(l) *Substantiality.* A watchcase should not be composed of metals or alloys, or have coatings of either base metal or precious metals, which are not of sufficient thickness and substantiality as to render lasting and effective service, with due regard to the estimated life of the watch of which it is a part, unless the fact that such case will not render such service is clearly and conspicuously disclosed on a tag, label, or in other printed material which accompanies the watch when it is sold to the ultimate consumer.

(m) *Placement of markings and abbreviations.* All markings on watchcases as provided in this part should be of a permanent type and made on the exterior, exposed surface of the back, and be so placed and of such a size that they will be readily apparent to purchasers of the product. Provided that markings, respecting the metallic composition of watch bands which are part of the cases, may be placed on the bands or on the cases. All markings should be stated in the English language and printed in letters or figures of the same size and conspicuousness as that used for words or abbreviations descriptive of any precious metal content, i.e., ''gold,'' ''silver,'' or ''karat''. When using abbreviations in markings as provided by this section, ''G'' may be used for the word ''Gold,'' ''K'' or ''Kt'' for the word ''Karat,'' and ''Chr'' for the word ''Chromium''. In addition ''G.F.'' may be used for ''Gold Filled,'' and ''R.G.P.'' for ''Rolled Gold Plate.'' The terms ''electroplate'' and ''electroplated'' should not be abbreviated. The word ''filled'' and the word ''plate'' should not be abbreviated in marks containing the word ''gold'' unless the word ''gold'' is abbreviated by use of the letter ''G''.

(n) *Misuse of terms.* The words ''gold,'' ''karat,'' ''silver,'' ''sterling,'' ''coin,'' or any abbreviation thereof either alone or in conjunction with other words such as ''solid,'' ''plate,'' ''plated,'' ''filled,'' ''electroplate,'' or ''electroplated'' or any abbreviation thereof should not be used as a marking or as descriptive of a watchcase or part thereof in labeling, advertising, trade names or otherwise in a manner inconsistent with the provisions of this section.

(o) *Disclosures in advertising.* All disclosures which are placed on industry products in conformity with this section should also appear in all advertising or other promotional material pertaining to such products, irrespective of the media used, whenever statements, representations, or depictions are made or appear therein, which in the absence of such disclosures serve to create a false impression that the products or parts thereof, are of a certain metallic composition. The disclosure so made should be of such conspicuousness and clarity as to be noted by purchasers and prospective purchasers casually reading, or listening to, such advertising, and the words and terms therein which are descriptive of metallic composition should not be used except as provided in this section. [Guide 3]

**§245.4 Misrepresentation as to durability or suitability.**

Industry members should not misrepresent directly or indirectly, in advertising, labeling, marking, brand or trade name, depictions, or otherwise the characteristics of a product or the ability of a product to resist or withstand damage from stated causes, or of its suitability for particular uses. Illustratively, industry members should not, under this section: Falsely designate or describe a watch as a chronometer or use such terms as ''skin divers,'' ''navigators,'' or ''railroad'' as descriptive of industry products which do not possess the characteristics, e.g., ruggedness, accuracy, dependability, or other features, required of watches used by persons engaged in those activities. [Guide 4]

**§245.5 Misrepresentation of protective features.**

(a) Industry members should not misrepresent directly or indirectly, in advertising, other promotional material, labeling, brand or trade name, or marking, or otherwise, the ability of a product to withstand or resist damage or other harmful effects from stated causes. Illustratively, under this section a product should not be described or designated as ''shockproof,'' ''waterproof,'' ''nonmagnetic,'' or ''all proof,'' even if such term or terms are qualified by words or phrases, e.g., ''waterproof when case, crown, and crystal are intact.'' In addition a product should not be described or designated as ''shock resistant,'' ''water resistant,'' or ''antimagnetic'' unless it conforms to the applicable provisions set forth below:

(1) *Shock resistant.* A product may be properly described or designated as ''shock resistant'' or ''shock absorbing'' if it possesses a level of resistance to damage from shock sufficient to insure that it will successfully withstand the test described in paragraph 3 of the appendix to this part.

(2) *Water resistant.* An industry product may be properly described or designated as ''water resistant'' if it is sufficiently impervious to water or moisture so as to insure that at the time of its sale to the ultimate consumer it will successfully withstand the test described in paragraph 4 of the appendix to this part.

(3) *Antimagnetic.* A product may properly be described or designated as ''antimagnetic'' if it is so designed and constructed as to provide a substantial degree of protection against magnetism, and the product will successfully withstand the test described in paragraph 5 of the appendix to this part.

(b) Whenever a product described or designated as ''shock resistant,'' ''water resistant,'' or ''antimagnetic'' in conformity with this section is sold to the ultimate consumer, the designation should be accompanied by an appropriate statement explaining the meaning of the term and the care and maintenance ordinarily required to preserve the described qualities. The statement should be made on any point of sale material describing or referring to the watch having the designation in question and on a label or tag firmly affixed to the watch bearing the designation. [Guide 5]

**§245.6 Deception as to jewels.**

Industry members should not misrepresent directly or indirectly, in advertising, labeling, marking, brand or trade name, or otherwise, the number of jewels contained in a watch, or that a watch is ''jeweled'' or that a watch contains a jeweled movement. Illustratively, industry members should not:

(a) Represent or describe a watch as ''jeweled'' or as containing a jeweled movement unless the watch movement contains at least seven jewels each of which serves the purpose of protecting against wear from friction by providing a mechanical contact with a moving part at a point of wear;

(b) Refer to the number of jewels contained in a watch unless each and every one of these jewels serves the purpose of protecting against wear from friction by providing a mechanical contact with a moving part at a point of wear. [Guide 6]

**§245.7 Misrepresentation of accessories.**

Industry members should not misrepresent directly or indirectly, in advertising, labeling, marking, brand or

trade name, or otherwise, the composition, quality, or any other material fact respecting accessories. Illustratively, industry members should not, under this section: use terms, representations of metallic composition, words or names associated with precious, semiprecious, synthetic, and imitation stones, and quality marks in a manner inconsistent with the provisions of the Commission's Trade Practice Rules for the Jewelry Industry, promulgated June 28, 1957, and amended November 17, 1959. [Guide 7]

### § 245.8 Deceptive selling of used, rebuilt, or secondhand products.

An industry product which in whole or in part is used, secondhand, rebuilt, repaired, refinished, or which contains parts that are used, secondhand, rebuilt, repaired or refinished, should not be sold, offered for sale or distributed unless the fact that such product or parts are not new, or are used, secondhand, rebuilt, or repaired, or refinished, is fully and nondeceptively disclosed in all advertising of the product, on the product itself or on a label firmly affixed thereto, and on the immediate container in which the product is sold to the ultimate consumer. [Guide 8]

### § 245.9 Deceptive imitation, obliteration, or concealment of trade names, trademarks, and marks.

Industry members should not imitate or simulate the trade names or trademarks of competitors, or obliterate, conceal, or remove tags, labels, marks, or other disclosures placed on an industry product or on the package in which it is sold to the ultimate consumer under circumstances having the capacity and tendency of deceiving the ultimate consumer as to the identity of the manufacturer, origin of the product, or in any other material respect. [Guide 9]

### § 245.10 Disclosure of foreign origin of watch movements, movement parts, and related matters.

(a) Watches having movements of foreign origin or movements which contain parts of foreign origin should not be offered for sale or sold unless they are accompanied by a clear and conspicuous disclosure of the country or countries of origin of the movement.

(b) The countries of origin of a watch movement are the country in which the movement has been assembled and the country in which its substantial and significant parts have been manufactured. For purposes of this section, if parts constituting 50 percent or more of the cost to the assembler of all the parts of the movement are manufactured in a single country, those parts shall be presumed to be the substantial and significant parts of the movement.

(1) If the movement has been assembled in the same foreign country in which parts constituting 50 percent or more of the cost to the assembler of all the parts of the movement have been manufactured, the name of that country alone should be used to designate the origin of the movement. Appropriate forms of disclosure would include ''Swiss Made'', or ''Japan''.

(2) If the watch movement has been assembled in one country and parts constituting 50 percent or more of the cost to the assembler of all the parts of the movement have been manufactured in a single other country, the names of both such countries, and no other, should be used to designate the origin of the movement. Appropriate forms of disclosure would include ''Assembled in France from Swiss parts'', or ''Japanese parts, assembled in the United States''.

(3) If the watch movement has been assembled in one country but parts constituting 50 percent or more of the cost to the assembler of all the parts of the movement have not been manufactured in a single other country, only the name of the country of assembly should be used, accompanied by a disclosure that the parts are partially foreign, imported or domestic, as the case may be. Appropriate forms of disclosure would include ''Movement assembled in the United States from domestic and imported parts'' or ''Movements assembled in France from foreign parts'' or ''Assembled in Germany with parts from foreign countries''.

(4) For purposes of this section, the United States includes only the States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the American Virgin Islands, Guam and American Samoa.

(c) In making the disclosures under the circumstances set forth in paragraphs (b) (2) and (3) of this section, care should be exercised to insure that the form selected does not imply directly or indirectly that the movement is solely a product of the country from which its substantial and significant parts were obtained, or that it is solely a product of the country in which the movement was assembled.

(d) The disclosures provided for in this section should be permanently marked on an exposed surface of the watch or on a label or tag affixed thereto which has such a degree of permanency as to remain thereon until consummation of the consumer sale of the watch and be of such size and conspicuousness that they will be readily apparent to purchasers or prospective purchasers making a casual inspection of the watch. [Guide 10]

[35 FR 13122, Aug. 18, 1970]

### §245.11 Deceptive pricing.

Members of the industry should not represent directly or indirectly in advertising or otherwise that an industry product may be purchased for a specified price, or at a saving, or at a reduced price, when such is not the fact; or otherwise deceive purchasers or prospective purchasers with respect to the price of any product offered for sale; or furnish any means or instrumentality by which others engaged in the sale of industry products may make any such representation.

NOTE: The Commission's January 8, 1964, Guides Against Deceptive Pricing furnish additional guidance respecting price savings representations and are to be considered as supplementing this section. Copies are available upon request.

[Guide 11]

### §245.12 Commercial bribery.

Members of the industry should not give, offer to give, or permit or cause to be given, directly or indirectly, money or anything of value to employees or agents of customers or prospective customers, without the knowledge of their employers or principals, as an inducement to influence or cause their employers or principals to purchase or contract to purchase the products of such industry members, or to refrain from purchasing products from competitors of such members. [Guide 12]

### §245.13 Coercing purchase of one product as a prerequisite to the purchase of other products.

Members of the industry should not coerce a customer or prospective customer to purchase one or more products as a prerequisite to the purchase of one or more other products, where the effect may be substantially to lessen competition, or tend to create a monopoly or to unreasonably restrain trade. [Guide 13]

### §245.14 Misrepresentation of the character and size of business, extent of testing, etc.

Industry members should not falsely represent, directly or indirectly, in company, brand, or trade name, or in advertising, labeling or otherwise:

(a) The length of time they have been in business;

(b) The extent of their sales;

(c) Their rank in the industry as producers or distributors of a product or type of product;

(d) That they are manufacturers of industry products or own or control a factory engaged in the manufacture of such products;

(e) That they own or operate a laboratory, or that their products have been tested in any particular manner or for any period of time, or with any particular results;

(f) That a product or manufacturing process is new or exclusive; or

(g) Any other material aspect of their business or products. [Guide 14]

### §245.15 Guarantees, warranties, etc.

(a) Industry members should not represent in advertising or otherwise that a product is ''guaranteed'' without clear and conspicuous disclosure in close conjunction with such representation of:

(1) The nature and extent of the guarantee, and

(2) Any material conditions or limitations in the guarantee which are imposed by the guarantor, and

(3) The manner in which the guarantor will perform thereunder, and

(4) The identity of the guarantor.

(b) A seller or manufacturer should not advertise or represent that a product is guaranteed when he cannot or does not promptly and scrupulously fulfill his obligations under the guarantee.

(c) A specific example of nonperformance of an obligation under the guarantee would arise in connection with the use of the phrase, ''Satisfaction or your money back'' if the guarantor does not promptly make a full refund of the purchase price upon request, irrespective of the reason for such request.

(d) Guarantees should not be used which under normal conditions are impractical of fulfillment or which are for such a period of time or are otherwise of such nature as to have the capacity and tendency of misleading purchasers or prospective purchasers into the belief that the product so guaranteed has a greater degree of serviceability, durability or performance capability in actual use than is true in fact.

(e) This section has application not only to ''guarantees'' but also to ''warranties'', to purported ''guarantees'' and ''warranties'', and to any promise or representation in the nature of a ''guarantee'' or ''warranty.''

NOTE: The Commission's April 26, 1960, Guides Against Deceptive Advertising of Guarantees furnish additional guidance respecting guarantee representations and are to be considered as supplementing this section. Copies are available upon request.

[Guide 15]

### § 245.16 Use of the word "free".

In connection with the sale, offering for sale, or distribution of industry products, industry members should not use the word ''free'' or any other word or words of similar import, in advertisements or in other offers to the public, as descriptive of an article of merchandise, or service, which is not an unconditional gift, under the following circumstances:

(a) When all the conditions, obligations, or other prerequisites to the receipt and retention of the ''free'' article of merchandise or service offered are not clearly and conspicuously set forth at the outset so as to leave no reasonable probability that the terms of the offer will be misunderstood; and regardless of such disclosure:

(b) When, with respect to any article of merchandise required to be purchased in order to obtain the ''free'' article or service, the offerer (1) increases the ordinary and usual price of such article of merchandise, or (2) reduces its quantity, or (3) reduces the quantity or size thereof.

NOTE 1: The disclosure provided by paragraph (a) of this section should appear in close conjunction with the word ''free'' (or other word or words of similar import) wherever such word first appears in each advertisement or offer. A disclosure in the form of a footnote, to which reference is made by use of an asterisk or other symbol placed next to the word ''free'', will not be regarded as compliance.

NOTE 2: Provisions of outstanding Cease and Desist Orders pertaining to subject matter covered by this part will not be construed by the Commission as prohibiting or requiring more than the relevant provisions of this part.

[Guide 16]

[33 FR 10332, July 19, 1968, as amended at 33 FR 15021, Oct. 8, 1968]

## APPENDIX TO PART 245

Set forth in this appendix are the thickness tolerances, and tests referred to in the foregoing Guides in this part.

1. *Thickness tolerances: plated and electroplated cases.* The minimum thicknesses specified in paragraphs (d), (e), and (f) of § 245.3 for the coatings of gold or gold alloy on watchcases shall mean that the coating of precious metal affixed to the surface of the metal stock shall be throughout the surface and at the thinnest point not less than the thickness specified after the completion of all finishing operations, including polishing, except, however, for such deviations therefrom, not exceeding 20 percent (minus) of the stated thickness, as may be proved by the manufacturer to have resulted from unavoidable variations in manufacturing processes and despite the exercise of due care, which deviation so proved shall be allowed if and when the quantity of precious metal remaining plated on the outside of the case is sufficient to equal the quantity necessary to provide the specified minimum thickness at all points on such watchcase including the thinnest point.

2. *Gold electroplate: standards and tests.* The gold electroplated surface coating of a watchcase should be free of cracks, blisters, pits or other flaws, and capable of successfully undergoing the following tests:

a. *Adhesion.* The watchcase should be heated to a temperature of not less than 360° nor more than 400 °C. and maintained at that

temperature for not less than 5 minutes. At the end of that time such surface coating should show no signs of blistering, flaking, peeling, or similar defects.

b. *Hardness.* Such surface coating should undergo a Knoop hardness test with a 25 gram load and achieve a rating of not less than 130.

c. *Porosity.* After such surface coating has been thoroughly cleaned and freed of any foreign material, the case should be:

(1) Immersed in a solution of one part concentrated nitric acid (sp.gr. 1.42) and one part water at room temperature for 5 minutes; and

(2) Exposed to fumes of concentrated nitric acid (sp.gr. 1.42) in a closed vessel for 3 hours at room temperature.

At the conclusion of each of the foregoing porosity tests, the surface coating should show no signs of having been attacked. Any discoloration or pitting should be considered as signs of an attack. The nitric acid solution in which the watchcase was immersed should be tested for the presence of metal by making it slightly alkaline with ammonium hydroxide and by adding a solution of ammonium or sodium sulfide. The formation of a black precipitate indicates that the coating has been attacked.

3. *Test for shock resistance.* A watch should be tested for shock resistance in a room having a temperature between 18° and 25 °C. which does not vary by more than 2° during the test. A wrist watch which does not have a permanently affixed band should be tested without the band or strap.

The test should be conducted as follows:

a. One hour after the watch has been fully wound, its daily rate in each of the following three positions should be determined by observing it for 2 minutes in each position:

(1) Position HB (horizontal with the dial facing down);

(2) Position VC (vertical with 3 o'clock to the watch's left);

(3) Position VB (vertical with 3 o'clock pointed downwards).

b. Shocks equal to that which the watch would receive if it were dropped from a height of 3 feet onto a horizontal hardwood surface should be applied as follows:

(1) The first shock should be applied to the middle of the watch at a position directly opposite the crown and in a direction which is parallel to the plane of the watch;

(2) The second shock should be applied to the crystal, and in a direction which is perpendicular to the plane of the watch.

c. Five minutes after the last shock, the daily rate of the watch in each of the three positions described in a. above should be determined by observing it for 2 minutes in each position. The differences in daily rate before and after the shock should be determined for each position. The residual effect of the shocks will be equal to the greatest of these differences.

A watch will be considered to have passed the foregoing test, if after application of the shocks, it does not stop; the residual effect does not exceed 60 seconds per day; and an examination of the watch does not disclose any physical damage which would affect its operation or appearance, e.g., hands bent or out of position, cracked crystal, or automatic or calendar devices inoperable or out of alignment.

4. *Test for water resistance.* A watch should be tested for water resistance by immersing it completely for at least 5 minutes in water under atmospheric pressure of 15 pounds per square inch and for at least another 5 minutes in water under an additional pressure of at least 35 pounds per square inch (total pressure of 50 pounds per square inch). If the watch does not admit any water or moisture it will be considered to have passed the test.

5. *Test for antimagnetic qualities.* A watch should be tested for its resistance to magnetism by placing it in a demagnetized condition in an electrical field of not less than 60 Gauss for at least 5 seconds in a vertical position and for at least 5 seconds in a horizontal position. If the daily rate of the watch has not been changed by more than 15 seconds as a result of the foregoing exposure, it shall be considered to have passed the test.

## PART 250—GUIDES FOR THE HOUSEHOLD FURNITURE INDUSTRY

Sec.

250.0 Definitions.
250.1 Avoiding deception and making disclosures.
250.2 Describing wood and wood imitations.
250.3 Identity of woods.
250.4 Leather and leather imitations.
250.5 Outer coverings.
250.6 Stuffing (including filling, padding, etc.).
250.7 Origin and style of furniture.
250.8 Deception as to being ''new''.
250.9 Misuse of the terms ''floor sample'', ''discontinued model'', etc.
250.10 Passing off through imitation or simulation of trademarks, trade names, etc.
250.11 Misrepresentation as to character of business.
250.12 Commercial bribery.
250.13 Other parts in this title 16 applicable to this industry.

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended (15 U.S.C. 41–58).

SOURCE: 38 FR 34992, Dec. 21, 1973, unless otherwise noted.

**§ 250.0 Definitions.**

(a) *Industry member.* Any person, firm, corporation or organization engaged in the manufacture, offering for sale, sale or distribution of industry products as such products are hereinafter defined.

(b) *Industry products.* Articles of utility, convenience or decoration which are suitable for use as furniture in a house, apartment, or other dwelling place. Such articles include, but are not limited to, all kinds and types of chairs, tables, cabinets, desks, sofas, bedsteads, chests and mirror frames. The following products, covered by sets of trade practice rules heretofore promulgated, are not to be considered as coming within the purview of this definition: bed mattresses, bedsprings, metal cots, cedar chests, mirror glass, musical instruments, radio and television receiving sets and venetian blinds. Also excluded from the purview of this part are pictures, lamps, clocks, rugs, draperies as well as appliances and fixtures such as refrigerators and air conditioners.

(c) *Exposed surfaces.* Those parts and surfaces exposed to view when furniture is placed in the generally accepted position for use. Included in this definition are visible backs of such items of furniture as open bookcases, hutches, etc.

**§ 250.1 Avoiding deception and making disclosures.**

(a) *In general.* Industry members should not sell, offer for sale, or distribute any industry product under any representation or circumstance, including failure to disclose material facts, that has the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading or deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers with respect to its utility, construction, composition, durability, design, style, quality, quantity or number of items, model, origin, manufacture, price, grade, or in any other material respect.

(b) *Affirmative disclosures.* Material facts concerning merchandise which, if known to prospective purchasers, would influence their decision of whether or not to purchase should be disclosed. This includes situations where deception may result from the appearance alone which in the absence of affirmative disclosures, could have the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading or deceiving. For example, veneered construction, use of plastic with simulated wood appearance, use of materials or products that simulate other materials or products used in the manufacture of furniture, or use of simulated finish or grain design, are considered to be material facts and a failure to disclose such information may be an unfair trade practice violative of section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(1) *Where disclosures should be made.* Unless otherwise provided, any affirmative disclosure which should be made under this part, should be on the industry product, or on a tag or label prominently attached thereto, and should be of such permanency as to remain on or attached to the product until consummation of sale to the consumer. Also, affirmative disclosures should appear in all advertising relating to industry products, irrespective of the media used, whenever statements, representations or depictions are used which could create an impression that the furniture is of a certain construction or composition and which, in the absence of such disclosures, could have the capacity to mislead purchasers or prospective purchasers.

(2) *The manner of disclosure.* In all cases in which the disclosure is necessary, it should be made in *close conjunction* with the representation or depiction to be qualified and should be of sufficient clarity, conspicuousness, and audibility (when spoken), as to be noted by prospective purchasers. The number of times a disclosure should be made will depend entirely upon the format and context in which it appears. As a general proposition, in catalogs and brochures advertising a suite or line of furniture it will be sufficient to make appropriately conspicuous disclosures once at the outset; however, additional disclosures should be made on any page where additional descriptive words are used which should be qualified under this part.

(3) *The form of disclosure with respect to composition.* Whenever an affirmative disclosure regarding composition should be made under this part, it may be accomplished by either describing

the true composition of the product or parts thereof (''plastic'', ''vinyl'', ''marble particles with binder'') or by stating that the material is not what it appears to be (''simulated wood'', ''imitation leather'', ''simulated marble''). Terms such as ''molded components'', ''walnut plastic'' or ''carved effect'' will not suffice to disclose that exposed surfaces are plastic, or that they are not wood.

(4)(i) *Trade names, coined names, trademarks, etc. suggestive of composition.* Any trade name, coined name, trademark, depiction, symbol or other word or term which is susceptible of more than one interpretation, one or more of which could be misleading, should be immediately qualified to remove clearly and conspicuously the misleading implication(s). For instance, a trade name such as ''Durahyde'', if used to describe a fabric-backed vinyl upholstery covering which simulates leather, should be immediately qualified to disclose (A) the true composition of the product (e.g., ''fabric-backed vinyl'') or (B) that the product is not leather (e.g., ''simulated leather'', ''not leather'' or ''imitation leather'').

(ii) Trade designations or other representations which cannot be qualified without the qualification amounting to a contradiction should not be used. A trade designation consisting in whole or in part of a word which denotes a kind or type of material of which the product is not in fact composed should not be used. For example, the words ''hide'', ''skin'' and ''leather'' should not be used in trade names denoting nonleather products, although homophones of those words such as ''hyde'' may be used if qualified as provided above. Similarly, the word ''wood'' should not be used in a trade name of a product which does not contain wood.

(iii) Also, ambiguous or imprecise trade designations will not be sufficient to satisfy the disclosure provisions of this part. For example, the coined name ''Hardiclad'' used to describe molded plastic drawer fronts having the appearance of wood, is not sufficient to disclose that such parts are plastic or that they are not wood.

(c) *Illustrative examples of affirmative disclosure of composition or appearance.* The following examples are among those which, if factually correct, will meet the provisions of this section with respect to affirmative disclosures:

(1) *Disclosure of veneered construction.* ''Veneered construction'', ''[wood name] solids and veneers'', ''[wood name] veneered tops, fronts and end panels'' or ''[wood name] veneered 5-ply construction with solid parts of [wood name]'';

(2) *Disclosure of the use of plastics or other materials having the appearance of wood.* ''High impact polystyrene'', ''door panels of polystyrene'', ''legs of rigid polyurethane'', ''walnut grained plastic tops'', ''parts of the exposed surfaces are of simulated wood'' (to describe minor parts of the exposed surfaces of furniture), ''imitation wood'', ''carved effects of simulated wood'', ''simulated wood components'', ''wood grained vinyl veneer'', ''walnut grained hardboard'' or ''simulated wood effect on plastic'';

(3) *Simulated leather, slate, or marble.* ''Vinyl'', ''leather look on vinyl'', ''simulated leather'', ''slate effect on plastic tops'', ''simulated slate'', ''simulated marble'' or ''marble dust and polyester binder'';

(4) *Simulated wood grain design.* ''Simulated wood grain design'', ''cherry grained maple'', ''simulated mahogany crotch on mahogany veneer'', ''Simulated Carpathian Elm burl'' or ''engraved cathedral walnut grain on hardboard'';

(5) *Simulated carvings.* ''Carved effect in plastic'', ''simulated wood carvings'' or ''molded polystyrene with carved look'';

(6) *Hang tags or labels disclosing the use of veneers, plastic simulating wood, or simulated wood grain.* ''Veneered construction, heat and stain resistant plastic tops, drawer fronts and decorative parts of rigid polyurethane'', or ''This furniture is made of selected hardwoods and veneers with matching plastic tops and decorative carved effects of polystyrene in dark oak finish'', or ''This suite is constructed of selected walnut veneers and solid pecan, and has simulated wood panels on drawers, doors, and headboards'', or ''Walnut veneer end panels and tops, polystyrene drawer and door fronts, and selected solid hardwood'', or ''This

furniture is constructed of selected handwood solids and veneers, with certain veneered surfaces having simulated grain finish to enhance their appearance'' or ''Solid and Veneered hardwoods with carved effects in simulated wood and simulated grain design on veneered tops in matching pecan finish''.

(d) *Removal of tags or labels.* Members of the industry should not:

(1) Remove, obliterate, deface, change, alter, conceal, or make illegible any information this part provides be disclosed on industry products, such as on tags or labels attached thereto, without replacing the same with a proper disclosure meeting the provisions of this part before offering for sale, sale, or distribution; or

(2) Sell, resell, distribute, or offer for sale an industry product without it being marked, tagged, or labeled and described in accordance with the provisions of this part. [Guide 1]

### § 250.2 Describing wood and wood imitations.

(a) *Solid wood construction.* Industry members should not use unqualified wood names to describe furniture unless all of the exposed surfaces are constructed of solid wood of the type named. If more than one type of solid wood is used and one of the woods is named, then all of the principal woods should be disclosed, or the extent of the use of the wood named should be indicated. In lieu of naming the specific woods, a general designation of the type of wood, such as ''hardwood'' or ''softwood'' may be used. For example, the following representations, if factually correct, will be acceptable: ''solid maple'', ''solid African mahogany'', ''walnut and pecan'', ''solid oak fronts'', ''walnut'', ''maple and other selected hardwoods'', ''fine hardwoods'' and ''selected hardwoods''.

(b) *Wood veneers.* (1) When the exposed surfaces of furniture are of veneered and solid construction, and wood names are used to describe such furniture, the wood names should be qualified to disclose the fact of veneered construction. For example, ''walnut solids and veneers'' or ''mahogany veneered construction'' may be used when all the exposed surfaces of furniture are constructed of solid and veneered wood of the type named. When such terms as ''walnut veneered construction'' or ''oak veneered construction'' are used, it is understood that the exposed solid parts are composed of the same wood.

(2) When solid parts of furniture are of woods other than those used in veneered surfaces, either the use of such other woods should be disclosed or the location of the veneers stated. Examples: ''walnut veneers and pecan solids'', ''mahogany veneers and African mahogany solids'', ''walnut veneered tops, fronts and end panels'', ''table tops of mahogany veneers'' or ''cherry veneers and selected solid hardwoods''.

(c) *Wood products.* Wood names or names suggesting wood should not be used to refer to materials which, while produced from wood particles or fibers, do not possess a natural wood growth structure. Such materials, however, may be referred to by their generally accepted names, if otherwise nondeceptive, such as ''hardboard'', ''particleboard'', ''chipcore'' or ''fiberboard'', or may be referred to as ''wood products''.

(d) *Color or grain design finish.* When wood names are used merely to describe a color of a stain finish and/or grain design or other simulated finish applied to the exposed surfaces of furniture that is composed of something other than solid wood of the types named, *it must be made clear* that the wood names are merely descriptive of the color and/or grain design or other simulated finish. Terms such as ''walnut finish'' or ''fruitwood finish'' will not suffice. However, terms such as ''walnut color'', ''fruitwood stain finish'', ''maple finish on birch solids and veneers'', ''walnut finish on walnut veneers and selected solid hardwoods'', ''cherry grained maple drawer fronts'', ''walnut finish plastic top'' or ''maple stained hardwoods'' will be considered acceptable when factually correct and in contexts otherwise nondeceptive.

(e) *Materials simulating wood.* No wood names should be used to describe any materials simulating wood without disclosures making it clear that the wood names used are merely descriptive of the color and/or grain design or other simulated finish; nor should any trade

names or coined names be employed which may suggest that such materials are some kind of wood. [Guide 2]

### §250.3 Identity of woods.

Industry members should not use any direct or indirect representation concerning the identity of the wood in industry products that is false or likely to mislead purchasers as to the actual wood composition.

(a) *Walnut*. The unqualified term *walnut* should not be used to describe wood other than genuine solid walnut (genus Juglans). The term *black walnut* should be applied only to the species Juglans nigra.

(b) *Mahogany*. (1) The unqualified term *mahogany* should not be used to describe wood other than genuine solid mahogany (genus Swietenia of the Meliaceae family). The woods of genus Swietenia may be described by the term ''mahogany'' with or without a prefix designating the country or region of its origin, such as ''Honduras mahogany'', ''Costa Rican mahogany'', ''Brazilian mahogany'' or ''Mexican mahogany''.

(2) The term ''mahogany'' may be used to describe solid wood of the genus Khaya of the Meliaceae family, *but only* when prefixed by the word ''African'' (e.g., ''African mahogany desk'').

(3) In naming or designating the seven non-mahogany Philippine woods Tanguile, Red Lauan, White Lauan, Tiaong, Almon, Mayapis, and Bagtikan, the term ''mahogany'' may be used *but only* when prefixed by the word ''Philippine'' (e.g., ''Philippine mahogany table''), due to the long standing usage of that term. Examples of improper use of the term ''mahogany'' include reference to Red Lauan as ''Lauan mahogany'' or to White Lauan as ''Blond Lauan mahogany''. Such woods, however, may be described as ''Red Lauan'' or ''Lauan'' or ''White Lauan'', respectively. The term ''Philippine mahogany'' will be accepted as a name or designation of the seven woods named above. Such term shall not be applied to any other wood, whether or not grown on the Philippine Islands.

(4) The term ''mahogany'', with or without qualifications, should not be used to describe any other wood except as provided above. This applies also to any of the woods belonging to the Meliaceae family, other than genera Swietenia and Khaya.

(c) *Maple*. The terms ''hard maple'', ''rock maple'', ''bird's-eye maple'', ''Northern maple'' or other terms of similar nature should not be used to describe woods other than those known under the lumber trade names of Black Maple (Acer nigrum) and Sugar Maple (Acer saccharum).

NOTE: Nothing in this section should be construed as prohibiting the nondeceptive use of wood names to describe the color, stain, simulated finish or appearance of industry products, provided that appropriate qualifications are made in accordance with provisions in §250.2(d).

[Guide 3]

### §250.4 Leather and leather imitations.

(a) Members of the industry should not make any direct or indirect representation concerning furniture or parts thereof covered with leather, or other material which simulates leather, which is false or misleading.

(b) Practices which should not be used under this section include, but are not limited to, the use of any trade name, coined name, trademark,[1] or other word or term, or any depiction or device, which could have the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading prospective purchasers into believing that furniture is covered in whole or in part with the skin or hide of an animal, or that the covering of furniture is leather, top grain leather, or split leather, when such is not the case. When a furniture covering is made from ground, shredded, pulverized or powdered leather, industry members should affirmatively disclose, in a manner provided for under §250.1 of this part, either the true composition thereof, or the fact that it is not leather.

(c) In the case of non-leather material having the appearance of leather, industry members should conspicuously disclose facts concerning the composition thereof either by identifying the composition of the product (e.g., ''vinyl covering'', ''fabric-backed vinyl'', ''upholstered in plastic'') or by

[1] See §250.1(b)(4).

a disclosure that the product is not leather (e.g., ''imitation leather'', ''not leather''), as provided for under § 250.1 of this part. [Guide 4]

### § 250.5 Outer coverings.[2]

(a) In connection with the sale of furniture, members of the industry should not use any direct or indirect representation concerning the outer covering thereof which:

(1) Is false (e.g., using the term *Mohair* to describe a fabric not produced from fibers derived from the angora goat); or

(2) Has the capacity and tendency or effect of deceiving furniture purchasers (e.g., by telling a half-truth, such as using the unqualified word ''Nylon'' to describe a blend of nylon and other fibers).

(b) When (if) any identifying reference is made in *advertising* to an outer covering made of a mixture of different kinds of fibers, each constituent fiber present in substantial quantity (at least 5 percent) should be designated in the order of its predominance by weight (e.g., ''cotton and nylon'') in a manner provided for in § 250.1 of this part. If a fiber so designated is not present in a substantial quantity (less than 5 percent) the percentage thereof should be stated (e.g., ''cotton, rayon, 3 percent nylon'').

(c) When (if) any identifying reference is made on a tag or label to an outer covering made of a mixture of different kinds of fibers; each and every kind of fiber present in such outer covering should be identified by showing the fiber content with percentages of the respective fibers in order of their predominance by weight (e.g., ''55 percent Cotton, 45 percent Rayon''). In the case of pile fabrics, identification of the fiber content should be made on a tag or label by stating:

(1) The fiber content of the face or pile and of the back or base, with percentages of the respective fibers in order of their predominance by weight and the respective percentages of the face and back showing the ratio between face and back (e.g., ''Face 60 percent Rayon, 40 percent Nylon—Back 100 percent Cotton; Back constitutes 80 percent of fabric and face 20 percent''); or

(2) The percentages of the fibers of the face or pile and the back or base in relation to the total weight of the fabric (e.g., ''40 percent Cotton, 40 percent Rayon, 20 percent Nylon'' to describe a fabric having an all nylon pile constituting 20 percent of the total weight backed by a 50 percent—50 percent blend of cotton and rayon).

(d) No representation should be made, directly or by implification, that an upholstery fabric has been tested unless:

(1) Actual tests have been conducted by persons qualified to perform and evaluate tests on upholstery fabrics; and

(2) Such tests were devised and conducted so as to constitute a reasonable basis for evaluating the fabric for use as a furniture covering; and

(3) Such representation is accompanied by a conspicuous and accurate statement, in layman's language, of the actual test results. (See Note following paragraph (e) of this section.)

(e) No direct or indirect representation should be made concerning any performance characteristic of any upholstery fabric unless at the time such representation is made the advertiser has in his possession a reasonable basis therefor, which may consist of competent scientific tests and/or other appropriate substantiating materials.

NOTE: On demand by the Commission, any advertiser who makes representations concerning tests or performance characteristics of fabrics should submit documentation of such tests, studies, and other data (as he had in his possession prior to the time the claims were made), which purport to substantiate the truth of such representations. Accurate records of all such documentation should be maintained for three years from the date such representations were last disseminated.

[2] Section 12(a)(2) of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act (72 Stat. 1717; 15 U.S.C. 70) specifically exempts ''outer coverings of furniture'' from the application of the Act. Section 14 of the same Act provides that the Act ''shall be held to be in addition to, and not in substitution for or limitation of, the provisions of any other Act of the United States.'' Therefore, corrective action involving deceptive practices in the sale of furniture would be initiated under the authority of Section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act which prohibits ''unfair methods of competition in commerce and unfair or deceptive acts or practices in commerce.''

[Guide 5]

[38 FR 34992, Dec. 21, 1973; 39 FR 1833, Jan. 15, 1974]

### §250.6 Stuffing (including filling, padding, etc.).

Members of the industry should not make any direct or indirect representation relating to the stuffing of furniture which:

(a) Is false (e.g., describing cotton stuffing as ''wool'', or urethane foam as ''latex foam rubber''): or

(b) Has the capacity and tendency or effect of deceiving or misleading (e.g., by telling a half-truth, such as describing shredded or flaked foam rubber stuffing as ''foam rubber'' without disclosing, in a manner provided for under §250.1 of this part, that it is shredded or flaked, or describing any non-latex foam cushion as ''foam'' without disclosing the kind of foam used, such as ''urethane foam'').

(1) The unqualified terms ''Foam'', ''Latex'' or ''Latex Foam Rubber'' or other terms of similar import, should not be used as descriptive of any part of the filling of an upholstery which does not consist of one or more homogeneous pads of latex foam rubber.

(2) When an upholstered industry product contains filling material consisting of a top layer of homogeneous latex foam rubber, or of other type of stuffing which is of substantial thickness, and another layer or layers of other material, terms such as ''latex foam rubber'', ''polyurethane foam'' or other terms which accurately describe the composition of such top layer may be used as descriptive thereof, *provided, however,* That in immediate conjunction therewith, nondeceptive disclosure is made of the fact that only a part of such filling material is of latex foam rubber or such other type of designated stuffing.

(3) When the filling is composed, in whole or in part, of latex foam rubber, polyurethane foam, or other type of stuffing which has been shredded, flaked, or ground, full and nondeceptive disclosure should be made of such fact in immediate conjunction with any such term irrespective of whether the pieces or shreds of latex foam rubber, polyurethane foam, or other type of stuffing are in loose form or are held together by glue or some other adhesive agent.

NOTE: This section is promulgated under the Federal Trade Commission Act for the purposes of interpreting requirements of such Act and to assist in the general enforcement of the Act. The section is not to be construed as relieving industry members from full compliance with applicable State and local legal requirements.

[Guide 6]

### §250.7 Origin and style of furniture.

(a) Industry members should not make any direct or indirect representation which is false or likely to deceive prospective purchasers of furniture as to its origin, either domestic or foreign. For example:

(1) Furniture manufactured in the United States should not be unqualifiedly described as ''Danish'', ''Spanish'', ''Italian'', ''English'', or by any other unqualified terms suggesting foreign origin, unless the fact that such furniture was manufactured in the United States is clearly and conspicuously disclosed in advertising and on the furniture by means of such statements as ''Made in U.S.A.'' or ''manufactured by'' followed by the name and address of the domestic manufacturer.

(2) When appropriate, furniture may be described by such terms as ''Danish Style'', ''Italian Design'', ''Spanish Influence'', ''English Tradition'' or by any other terms accurately descriptive of a generally recognized furniture style.

(3) Because of general understanding by the furniture buying public, terms such as ''French Provincial'', ''Italian Provincial'', ''Chinese Chippendale'' and ''Mediterranean'' are considered to have acquired a secondary meaning as descriptive of the styles of furniture so described. Thus, unqualified use of such terminology, when appropriate, would not be considered deceptive.

(4) Furniture should not be represented by trade name or otherwise as being manufactured in the Grand Rapids (Michigan) area, or in any other furniture producing area, when such is not the fact.

(b) In connection with the sale of furniture of foreign manufacture, members of the industry should clearly and

conspicuously disclose the foreign country of origin, when the failure to make such disclosure has the capacity and tendency or effect of deceiving purchasers of such products. The disclosure of foreign origin, when required, should be in the form of a legible marking, stamping, or labeling on the outside of the furniture, and shall be of such size, conspicuousness and degree of permanency, as to be and remain noticeable and legible upon casual inspection until consumer purchase. [Guide 7]

### § 250.8 Deception as to being "new".

(a) Industry members should not make any direct or indirect representation that an industry product is new unless such product has not been used and is composed entirely of unused materials and parts.

(b) In connection with the sale of furniture which has the appearance of being new but which contains used materials or parts, such as springs, latex foam rubber stuffing, or hardware, members of the industry should conspicuously disclose, in a manner provided for in § 250.1 of this part, such fact (e.g., ''cushions made from reused shredded latex foam rubber'').

(NOTE: See also § 250.9.)

[Guide 8]

### § 250.9 Misuse of the terms "floor sample", "discontinued model", etc.

(a) Representations that furniture is a ''floor sample'', ''demonstration piece'', etc., should not be used to describe ''trade-in'', repossessed, rented, or any furniture except that displayed for inspection by prospective purchasers at the place of sale for the purpose of determining their preference and its suitability for their use.

(b) Furniture should not be described as ''discontinued'' or ''discontinued model'' unless the manufacturer has in fact discontinued its manufacture or the industry member offering it for sale will discontinue offering it entirely after clearance of his existing inventories of furniture so described. [Guide 9]

### § 250.10 Passing off through imitation or simulation of trademarks, trade names, etc.

Members of the industry should not mislead or deceive purchasers by passing off the products of one industry member as and for those of another through the imitation or simulation of trademarks, trade names, brands, or labels. [Guide 10]

### § 250.11 Misrepresentation as to character of business.

Members of the industry should not represent, directly or by implication, in advertising or otherwise, that they produce or manufacture products of the industry, or that they own or control a factory making such products, when such is not the fact, or that they are a manufacturer, wholesale distributor or a wholesaler when such is not the fact, or in any other manner misrepresent the character, extent, or type of their business. [Guide 11]

### § 250.12 Commercial bribery.

Members of the industry should not give, or offer to give, or permit or cause to be given, directly or indirectly, money or anything of value to agents, employees, or representatives of customers or prospective customers, or to agents, employees, or representatives of competitors' customers or prospective customers, without the knowledge of their employers or principals, as an inducement to influence their employers or principals to purchase or contract to purchase products manufactured or sold by such industry member or the maker of such gift or offer, or to influence such employers or principals to refrain from dealing in the products of competitors or from dealing or contracting to deal with competitors. [Guide 12]

### § 250.13 Other parts in this title 16 applicable to this industry.

The Commission has adopted Guides Against Deceptive Pricing, part 233, Guides Against Deceptive Advertising of Guarantees, part 239, and Guides Against Bait Advertising, part 238, all of which have general application and

furnish additional guidance for members of the Household Furniture Industry. Members of this industry should comply with those parts.

## PART 251—GUIDE CONCERNING USE OF THE WORD ''FREE'' AND SIMILAR REPRESENTATIONS

### §251.1 The guide.

(a) *General.* (1) The offer of ''Free'' merchandise or service is a promotional device frequently used to attract customers. Providing such merchandise or service with the purchase of some other article or service has often been found to be a useful and valuable marketing tool.

(2) Because the purchasing public continually searches for the best buy, and regards the offer of ''Free'' merchandise or service to be a special bargain, all such offers must be made with extreme care so as to avoid any possibility that consumers will be misled or deceived. Representative of the language frequently used in such offers are ''Free'', ''Buy 1-Get 1 Free'', ''2-for-1 Sale'', ''50% off with purchase of Two'', ''1¢ Sale'', etc. (Related representations that raise many of the same questions include ''___ Cents-Off'', ''Half-Price Sale'', ''½ Off'', etc. See the Commission's ''Fair Packaging and Labeling Regulation Regarding 'Cents-Off' and Guides Against Deceptive Pricing.'')

(b) *Meaning of ''Free''.* (1) The public understands that, except in the case of introductory offers in connection with the sale of a product or service (See paragraph (f) of this section), an offer of ''Free'' merchandise or service is based upon a regular price for the merchandise or service which must be purchased by consumers in order to avail themselves of that which is represented to be ''Free''. In other words, when the purchaser is told that an article is ''Free'' to him if another article is purchased, the word ''Free'' indicates that he is paying nothing for that article and no more than the regular price for the other. Thus, a purchaser has a right to believe that the merchant will not directly and immediately recover, in whole or in part, the cost of the free merchandise or service by marking up the price of the article which must be purchased, by the substitution of inferior merchandise or service, or otherwise.

(2) The term *regular* when used with the term *price,* means the price, in the same quantity, quality and with the same service, at which the seller or advertiser of the product or service has openly and actively sold the product or service in the geographic market or trade area in which he is making a ''Free'' or similar offer in the most recent and regular course of business, for a reasonably substantial period of time, i.e., a 30-day period. For consumer products or services which fluctuate in price, the ''regular'' price shall be the lowest price at which any substantial sales were made during the aforesaid 30-day period. Except in the case of introductory offers, if no substantial sales were made, in fact, at the ''regular'' price, a ''Free'' or similar offer would not be proper.

(c) *Disclosure of conditions.* When making ''Free'' or similar offers all the terms, conditions and obligations upon which receipt and retention of the ''Free'' item are contingent should be set forth clearly and conspicuously at the outset of the offer so as to leave no reasonable probability that the terms of the offer might be misunderstood. Stated differently, all of the terms, conditions and obligations should appear in close conjunction with the offer of ''Free'' merchandise or service. For example, disclosure of the terms of the offer set forth in a footnote of an advertisement to which reference is made by an asterisk or other symbol placed next to the offer, is not regarded as making disclosure at the outset. However, mere notice of the existence of a ''Free'' offer on the main display panel of a label or package is not precluded provided that (1) the notice does not constitute an offer or identify the item being offered ''Free'', (2) the notice informs the customer of the location, elsewhere on the package or label, where the disclosures required by this section may be found, (3) no purchase or other such material affirmative act is required in order to discover the terms and conditions of the offer, and (4) the notice and the offer are not otherwise deceptive.

(d) *Supplier's responsibilities.* Nothing in this section should be construed as authorizing or condoning the illegal setting or policing of retail prices by a supplier. However, if the supplier knows, or should know, that a ''Free'' offer he is promoting is not being passed on by a reseller, or otherwise is being used by a reseller as an instrumentality for deception, it is improper for the supplier to continue to offer the product as promoted to such reseller. He should take appropriate steps to bring an end to the deception, inlcuding the withdrawal of the ''Free'' offer.

(e) *Resellers' participation in supplier's offers.* Prior to advertising a ''Free'' promotion, a supplier should offer the product as promoted to all competing resellers as provided for in the Commission's ''Guides for Advertising Allowances and Other Merchandising Payments and Services.'' In advertising the ''Free'' promotion, the supplier should identify those areas in which the offer is not available if the advertising is likely to be seen in such areas, and should clearly state that it is available only through participating resellers, indicating the extent of participation by the use of such terms as ''some'', ''all'', ''a majority'', or ''a few'', as the case may be.

(f) *Introductory offers.* (1) No ''Free'' offer should be made in connection with the introduction of a new product or service offered for sale at a specified price unless the offeror expects, in good faith, to discontinue the offer after a limited time and to commence selling the product or service promoted, separately, at the same price at which it was promoted with the ''Free'' offer.

(2) In such offers, no representation may be made that the price is for one item and that the other is ''Free'' unless the offeror expects, in good faith, to discontinue the offer after a limited time and to commence selling the product or service promoted, separately, at the same price at which it was promoted with a ''Free'' offer.

(g) *Negotiated sales.* If a product or service usually is sold at a price arrived at through bargaining, rather than at a regular price, it is improper to represent that another product or service is being offered ''Free'' with the sale. The same representation is also improper where there may be a regular price, but where other material factors such as quantity, quality, or size are arrived at through bargaining.

(h) *Frequency of offers.* So that a ''Free'' offer will be special and meaningful, a single size of a product or a single kind of service should not be advertised with a ''Free'' offer in a trade area for more than 6 months in any 12-month period. At least 30 days should elapse before another such offer is promoted in the same trade area. No more than three such offers should be made in the same area in any 12-month period. In such period, the offeror's sale in that area of the product in the size promoted with a ''Free'' offer should not exceed 50 percent of the total volume of his sales of the product, in the same size, in the area.

(i) *Similar terms.* Offers of ''Free'' merchandise or services which may be deceptive for failure to meet the provisions of this section may not be corrected by the substitution of such similar words and terms as ''gift'', ''given without charge'', ''bonus'', or other words or terms which tend to convey the impression to the consuming public that an article of merchandise or service is ''Free''.

(38 Stat. 717, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 41–58)

[36 FR 21517, Nov. 10, 1971]

## PART 253—GUIDES FOR THE FEATHER AND DOWN PRODUCTS INDUSTRY

Sec.

253.1 Definitions.
253.2 Misrepresentation in general.
253.3 Use of trade names, symbols, depictions, etc.
253.4 Misuse of the term ''Tan-O-Quil-QM''.
253.5 Disclosure of filling material.
253.6 Tolerances in filling material.
253.7 Crushed feathers.
253.8 Damaged feathers.
253.9 Secondhand filling material.
253.10 Cleanliness of filling material.
253.11 Disclosure as to size.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 38 Stat. 719, as amended 721; 15 U.S.C. 45, 46.

SOURCE: 36 FR 20744, Oct. 29, 1971, unless otherwise noted.

**§253.1 Definitions.**

(a) *Industry products.* For the purposes of this part the term *industry products* means and includes all pillows, cushions, comforters, sleeping bags, wearing apparel, and similar products which are wholly or partially filled with feathers or down, and all bulk stocks of processed feathers or down intended for use or used in the manufacture of such products.

(b) *Industry members.* All persons, firms, corporations, and organizations engaged in the processing, manufacture, distribution, or marketing of any industry product are considered to be industry members.

(c) *Filling material.* Means the contents of an industry product including feathers and down of any kind or type.

(d) *Down.* Means the undercoating of waterfowl, consisting of clusters of light, fluffy filaments, i.e., barbs, growing from the quill point but without any quill shafts.

(e) *Plumules.* Means downy waterfowl plumage with under developed soft and flaccid quill with barbs indistinguishable from those of down.

(f) *Down fibers.* Means the detached barbs from down and plumules and the detached barbs from the basal end of waterfowl quill shaft which are indistinguishable from the barbs of down.

(g) *Feathers.* Means the plumage or out-growth forming the contour and external covering of fowl which are whole in structure and which have not been processed in any manner other than by washing, dusting, chemical treatment, and sanitizing.

(h) *Waterfowl feathers.* Means feathers derived from ducks and geese.

(i) *Nonwaterfowl feathers or landfowl feathers.* Means feathers derived from chickens, turkeys, and other landfowl.

(j) *Quill feathers.* Means feathers which are over 4 inches in length or which have a quill point exceeding six-sixteenths of an inch in length.

(k) *Feather fiber.* Means the detached barbs of feathers which are not joined or attached to each other.

(l) *Crushed feathers.* Means feathers which have been processed by a curling, crushing, or chopping machine which has changed the original form of the feathers without removing the quill. The term also includes the fiber resulting from such processing.

(m) *Damaged feathers.* Means feathers which have been broken, damaged by insects, or otherwise materially injured.

(n) *Residue.* Means quill pith, quill fragments, trash or foreign matter. [Guide 1]

**§253.2 Misrepresentation in general.**

(a) An industry product should not be labeled, advertised, or otherwise represented in any manner which may have the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading or deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers concerning its filling material, covering, composition, quality, processing, testing, manufacture, durability, size, weight, maintenance, cleanliness, construction, warmth, moisture resistance, color, guarantee, origin, price, or any other feature of such product.

(b) Coverings of industry products should be labeled in accordance with the requirements of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act and the Wool Products Labeling Act. [Guide 2]

**§253.3 Use of trade names, symbols, depictions, etc.**

A trade name, symbol, depiction, or any other kind of representation, should not be used in labeling, in advertising, or in any other kind of promotion relating to an industry product, when such representation has the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading or deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers into believing that the product is composed:

(a) In whole or in part of feathers and down, or feathers, or down, when such is not the fact; or

(b) In whole or in part of feathers or down from a particular type of fowl when such is not the fact; or

(c) That the product has been given chemical treatment to improve its physical or chemical properties when such is not the fact. [Guide 3]

**§253.4 Misuse of the term "Tan-O-Quil-QM".**

(a) The term *Tan-O-Quil-QM* or any words or phrases suggestive thereof should not be used in any labeling or advertising respecting an industry

product in any manner which may have the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading or deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers into believing that the product or any of its filling material has been treated by the Tan-O-Quil-QM process unless in fact all of the filling material in that product has been treated by the Tan-O-Quil-QM process developed by the Clothing and Organic Materials Laboratory, U.S. Army Natick Laboratories, Natick, Mass., in accordance with applicable U.S. Government specifications (this process is described in Technical Report 69–37–CM, ''Tan-O-Quil-QM Treatment for Feathers and Down,'' dated August 1968).

(b) When the Tan-O-Quil-QM treatment has been applied to all of the filling materials contained in an industry product, the term ''Tan-O-Quil-QM'' may be used on the label, and the label should include a statement that the product has been so treated in accordance with the applicable U.S. Government specification showing the number thereof. [Guide 4]

### § 253.5 Disclosure of filling material.

(a) *Labeling.* An industry product should be labeled as to the kind or type of filling material contained therein and when the filling material consists of a mixture of more than one kind or type, then the proportion of each should be disclosed in the order of predominance, the largest proportion first.

(b) *Advertising.* Disclosure of the kind or type of filling material contained in an industry product need not be made in advertising unless in the absence of disclosure a purchaser or prospective purchaser may likely be deceived. Thus, if advertising contains any representation, whether affirmative or implied, concerning the nature of the filling material, then disclosure should be made in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) *Bulk stocks.* Invoices pertaining to bulk stocks of processed feathers and down should disclose the kind or type of feathers and down contained therein, and if more than one kind or type is contained in the bulk stock then the proportion of each should be disclosed in the order of predominance, the largest proportion first.

(d) *Manner and form of disclosures.* The disclosures described in paragraphs (a), (b), and (c) of this section should be made in accordance with the following instructions.

(1) Disclosures with respect to the kind or type of feathers and down by use of any of the terms listed and defined above will be considered proper provided such products conform to the definitions set forth for such term, except that if the term *nonwaterfowl* or *landfowl* is used, it should be accompanied by the name of the fowl from which the products were obtained, e.g., ''chicken'' or ''turkey.''

(2) Disclosures made in accordance with this part should be clear and conspicuous, and labels bearing such disclosures should be attached to the product with sufficient permanency so as to remain thereon until after sale to the ultimate purchaser.

(3) The proportion or percentage of a particular kind or type of feathers or down in an industry product should be determined by the relationship between the avoirdupois weight that the particular kind or type bears to the total avoirdupois weight of the filling material in the product. [Guide 5]

### § 253.6 Tolerances in filling material.

(a) *Down products.* The term *down* may be used to designate any industry product containing the following filling material:

| | Percent |
|---|---|
| (1) Down, plumules, and down fiber (minimum) | 80 |
| Consisting of: | |
| Down and plumules (minimum) | 70 |
| Down fiber (maximum) | 10 |
| (2) Remainder | 20 |
| Consisting of: | |
| Down fiber, waterfowl feather fiber, and waterfowl feathers, and— | |
| Nonwaterfowl feathers and nonwaterfowl feather fiber (maximum) | 2 |
| Residue (maximum) | 2 |

(b) *Waterfowl feather products.* The term *waterfowl feathers* may be used to designate any plumage product containing the following filling material which is free of quill and crushed feathers:

| | Percent |
|---|---|
| Waterfowl feathers (minimum) | 80 |
| Nonwaterfowl feathers (maximum) | 8 |
| Residue (maximum) | 2 |

(c) *Percentage claims.* An industry member should not misrepresent directly or indirectly the percentage of down contained in an industry product. Illustratively,

(1) A product should not be designated as ''100 percent down,'' ''all down,'' ''pure down,'' or by other terms of similar import unless it in fact contains only down without regard to the tolerance set forth in this section.

(2) A product should not be represented to contain a certain percentage of feathers or down unless it in fact contains the stated percentage with due regard to the tolerances set forth in this section.

(d) *Designation of species.* An industry product may be designated by the name of a waterfowl species if a minimum of 90 percent of the waterfowl plumage contained therein is of that species.

(e) *Testing.* Tests to determine the composition of the filling material in an industry product should be conducted in accordance with Federal Standard 148a, dated December 10, 1964, entitled ''Classification, Identification, and Testing of Feather Filling Material.''

(f) *Adulteration.* The tolerances set forth in this section are not to be construed to permit intentional adulteration. [Guide 6]

### §253.7 Crushed feathers.

An industry product which contains crushed feathers should be labeled with a clear and conspicuous disclosure of that fact. A crushed feather product should not contain residue in excess of 5 percent of the weight of the crushed feathers contained therein. [Guide 7]

### §253.8 Damaged feathers.

An industry product which contains damaged feathers in an amount in excess of 2 percent of the total weight of the filling material should be labeled with a clear and conspicuous disclosure that it contains damaged feathers. [Guide 8]

### §253.9 Secondhand filling material.

(a) An industry product which contains any filling material which has previously been used should not be offered for sale unless a clear and conspicuous disclosure of that fact is made on the label thereof and in all advertising and invoices relating to such product.

(b) In making the disclosure referred to in paragraph (a) of this section the term *secondhand* may be used. However, such terms as *reworked, reprocessed,* or terms of similar import should not be used unless they are accompanied by a clear and conspicuous statement that such material is not new or has previously been used. [Guide 9]

### §253.10 Cleanliness of filling material.

(a) An industry product which contains filling materials which have not been cleaned so as to meet the standard set forth in paragraph (b) of this section should not be offered for sale or sold.

(b) A test such as that reflected in Federal Standard 148a, dated December 10, 1964, entitled ''Classification, Identification, and Testing of Feather Filling Material,'' should be used to determine whether feathers and down have been properly cleaned. Feather and down material having an oxygen number exceeding 20 grams of oxygen per 100,000 grams of sample should be presumed not to have been properly cleaned. [Guide 10]

### §253.11 Disclosure as to size.

(a) *Sleeping bags.* The sizes of sleeping bags should be disclosed by labeling and such sizes should be expressed in terms of the finished length and width measurements of the bag in inches qualified by the words ''Finished Size''. If any representation of the ''Cut Size'' or the dimension of the materials used in the construction of sleeping bags, are made in labeling, advertising, marking, or otherwise, the provisions of the Commission's Trade Regulation Rule on the ''Advertising and Labeling as to Size of Sleeping Bags'' should be followed (see part 400 of this chapter).

(b) *Comforters, etc.* The sizes of comforters and other similar industry

products should be disclosed by labeling and such sizes should be expressed in terms of the finished length and width measurements in inches exclusive of any fringe ornamentation.

(c) *Pillows, cushions, etc.* The sizes of pillows, cushions, and other similar industry products, when disclosed by labeling, should be expressed in terms of finished measurements in inches qualified by the words ''Finished Size.'' This statement may be followed in parentheses by a notation of product measurement in inches prior to finishing, such parenthetical expression to include the phrase ''Cut Size.'' Thus, an example of proper size marking when a pillow has a finished size of 21″×27″ and a cut size of 22″×28″, and disclosure is made of the cut size, would be:

Finished Size 21″×27″ (Cut Size 22″×28″).

[Guide 11]

## PART 254—GUIDES FOR PRIVATE VOCATIONAL AND HOME STUDY SCHOOLS

Sec.
254.1 Definitions.
254.2 Deceptive trade or business names.
254.3 Misrepresentation of extent or nature of accreditation or approval.
254.4 Misrepresentation of facilities, services, qualifications of instructors, and status.
254.5 Misrepresentation of enrollment qualifications or limitations.
254.6 Deceptive use of diplomas, degrees, or certificates.
254.7 Deceptive sales practices.
254.8 Deceptive pricing and misuse of the word ''free.''
254.9 Deceptive or unfair collection and credit practices.
254.10 Affirmative disclosure prior to enrollment.

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

SOURCE: 37 FR 9665, May 16, 1972, unless otherwise noted.

### § 254.1 Definitions.

(a) *Industry member.* Any person, firm, corporation, or organization engaged in the operation of a privately owned school which offers resident or correspondence courses or training or instruction purporting to prepare or qualify individuals for employment in any occupation or trade or in work requiring mechanical, technical, artistic, business, or clerical skills or which is for the purpose of enabling a person to improve his appearance, social aptitude, personality, or other attributes is considered to be an industry member. However, the term *industry member* shall not include resident primary or secondary schools or institutions of higher education which offer at least a 2-year program of accredited college level studies for resident students which is generally acceptable for credit toward a bachelor's degree.

(b) *Accredited.* For the purpose of this part the term *accredited* means that a course or school to which the term is applied has been evaluated and found to meet established criteria by an accrediting agency or association recognized by the U.S. Commissioner of Education of the U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, as reliable authority as to the quality of the training offered.

(c) *Approved.* For the purpose of this part, the term *approved* means that a school or course has been recognized by a State or Federal agency as meeting educational standards or other related qualifications as prescribed by that agency for the school or course to which the term is applied. It is not and should not be used interchangeably with ''accredited,'' and the term ''approved'' is not justified by the mere grant of a corporate charter to operate or license to do business as a school and should not be used unless the represented ''approval'' has in fact been affirmatively required or authorized by State or Federal law. [Guide 1]

### § 254.2 Deceptive trade or business names.

(a) An industry member should not use any trade or business name, label, insignia, or designation which has the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading or deceiving prospective students, or student with respect to the nature of the school, its accreditation, programs of instruction or methods of teaching, or any other material fact.

(b) An industry member should not falsely represent directly or indirectly by the use of a trade or business name or in any other manner that:

(1) It is a part of or connected with a branch, bureau, or agency of the U.S. Government, or of any State, or civil service commission;

(2) It is an employment agency or that it is an employment agent or authorized training facility for another industry or member of such industry, or otherwise deceptively conceal the fact that it is a school.

(c) If an industry member conducts its instruction wholly by correspondence or home study, a clear and conspicuous disclosure should be made in immediate conjunction with its trade or business name that it is a correspondence or home study school. An industry member which offers both resident and correspondence or home study instruction should clearly and conspicuously identify in all advertisements and promotional materials, except in those pertaining solely to its resident program, the programs or courses to be offered in whole or in part by correspondence or home study. [Guide 2]

### §254.3 Misrepresentation of extent or nature of accreditation or approval.

(a) An industry member should not misrepresent directly or indirectly the extent or nature of any approval its school may have received from a State agency or the extent or nature of its accreditation by a nationally recognized accrediting agency, or association. Illustratively, an industry member should not:

(1) Unqualifiedly represent that its school is accredited unless all of its programs of instruction have in fact been accredited by an accrediting agency recognized by the U.S. Commissioner of Education of the U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare. If an accredited school offers courses or programs of instruction which have not been accredited, all advertisements or promotional materials pertaining to such courses or programs should contain a clear and conspicuous disclosure that they are not accredited if any reference is made in the advertisements or promotional materials to the accreditation of the school.

(2) Represent that its school or a course is approved, unless the nature, extent, and purpose of that approval are disclosed.

(3) Represent that students successfully completing a course or program of instruction may transfer credit therefor to an accredited institution of higher education unless such is the fact.

(b) An industry member should not represent that a course of instruction has been approved by a particular industry, or that successful completion thereof qualifies the student for admission to a labor union or similar organization, or for the receipt of a State or Federal license to perform certain functions, unless such is the fact.

(c) An industry member should not represent that its courses are recommended by vocational counselors, high schools, colleges, educational organizations, employment agencies, or members or officials of a particular industry, or that it has been the subject of unsolicited testimonials or endorsements from former students or anyone else unless such is the fact. Testimonials or endorsements which do not accurately reflect current practices of the school, or current conditions or employment opportunities in the industry or occupation to which the training pertains, should not be used. [Guide 3]

### §254.4 Misrepresentation of facilities, services, qualifications of instructors, and status.

(a) An industry member should not misrepresent directly or indirectly in its advertising, promotional materials, or in any manner the size, location, facilities, or equipment of its school or the number or educational qualifications of its faculty and other personnel. Illustratively, an industry member should not:

(1) Use or refer to fictional organization divisions or position titles or make any representation which has the tendency or capacity to mislead or deceive students or prospective students, as to the size or importance of the school, its divisions, faculty, personnel, or officials, or in any other material respect.

(2) Misrepresent directly or indirectly the size, importance, location, facilities, or equipment of the school

through use of photographs, illustrations, or any other depictions in catalogs, advertisements, or other promotional materials. For example, photographs or illustrations which purport to show school equipment should not be used if the school does not use such equipment in the conduct of its courses.

(3) Represent that the school owns, operates, or supervises a dormitory, eating, or other living accommodations unless such is the fact.

(4) Falsely or deceptively represent the location or locations at which its courses will be conducted.

(5) Misrepresent the nature, or efficacy, of its courses, training devices, methods or equipment or the number, qualifications, training, or experience of its faculty or personnel, whether by means of endorsements or otherwise.

(6) Falsely represent that it will provide or arrange for part or full-time employment while the student is undergoing instruction; or misrepresent in any manner, directly or by implication, the availability of such employment or any other form of financial assistance.

(7) Deceptively represent the nature of any relationship which the school or any of its officers, employees, or instructors may have with the U.S. Government or any of its agencies or any agency of a State or local government, or that by virtue of such a relationship or any prior relationship its students will receive preferred consideration in obtaining employment with such a government or any of its agencies.

(8) Represent directly or indirectly that certain individuals or classes of individuals are bona fide working members of its faculty, or are members of its advisory board, or have played an active part in the preparation of its instruction materials, unless such is the fact, or misrepresent in any manner, directly or by implication, the extent or nature of the association of any person with the school or the courses offered.

(9) Misrepresent the nature and extent of any personal instruction, guidance, assistance, or other attention it will provide for its students either during a course or after completion of a course.

(b) An industry member should not represent directly or indirectly that it is a nonprofit organization unless such is the fact.

(c) An industry member should not falsely represent that it is affiliated with or otherwise connected with a public or private religious or charitable organization.

(d) An industry member should not falsely or deceptively represent that a course has been recently revised, or that it has a revision system or service, or misrepresent in any manner, its facilities, procedures, or ability to keep a course current. [Guide 4]

### § 254.5 Misrepresentation of enrollment qualifications or limitations.

(a) An industry member should not misrepresent the nature or extent of any prerequisites it has established for enrollment in a course or program of instruction. For example, it should not:

(1) Represent that a course is available only to those having a high school diploma or other specific educational qualifications, unless the sale of such a course is limited to persons possessing generally acceptable evidence of such a diploma or educational qualifications.

(2) Represent that only those who make an acceptable grade or complete successfully a certain test or examination will be admitted, if in fact enrollments are not thus limited.

(3) Falsely represent that it will accept for enrollment only a limited number of persons or a limited number of persons from a certain geographical area.

(4) Falsely represent that applications for enrollment will be considered for only a limited period of time, or that they must be submitted by a certain date.

(b) An industry member should not falsely represent that the lack of a high school education or prior training or experience is not a handicap or impediment to successful completion of a course.

(c) An industry member should endeavor to establish the qualifications which an applicant should have to assimilate successfully the subject matter of the course. Applicants should be informed of these prerequisites, and

those who are not so qualified should not be enrolled. [Guide 5]

### §254.6 Deceptive use of diplomas, degrees, or certificates.

(a) An industry member should not issue a degree, diploma, certificate of completion, or any document of similar import, which misrepresents directly or indirectly the subject matter, substance or content of the course of study or any other material fact concerning the course for which it was awarded or the accomplishments of the student to whom its was awarded.

(b) An industry member should not offer or confer an academic, professional, or occupational degree, if the award of such degree has not been authorized by the appropriate State educational agency or approved by a nationally recognized accrediting agency, unless it clearly and conspicuously discloses in all advertising and promotional materials which contain a reference to such degree that its award has not been authorized or approved by such an agency.

(c) An industry member should not offer or confer a high school diploma unless the program of instruction to which it pertains is substantially equivalent to that offered by a resident secondary school, and unless the student is informed by means of a clear and conspicuous disclosure in writing prior to his enrollment, that the industry member cannot guarantee or otherwise control the recognition which will be accorded the diploma by institutions of higher education, other schools or by prospective employers, and that the degree to which it is recognized is a matter solely within the discretion of those agencies. [Guide 6]

### §254.7 Deceptive sales practices.

(a) In obtaining leads to prospective students, an industry member should not use advertisements or promotional material which is classified, designated or captioned, ''Men wanted to train for * * *'', ''Help Wanted'', ''Employment'', ''Business Opportunities'' or by words or terms of similar import, so as to represent directly or by implication that employment is being offered.

(b) An industry member should not deceptively designate or refer to its sales representatives as ''registrars'', ''counselors'', ''advisors'', or by words of similar import or misrepresent in any other manner, the titles, qualifications, training, experience or status of its salesmen, agents, employees, or other representatives.

(c) The advertising or promotional materials of an industry member which are used to provide leads to prospective students should include the full name and address of the school (a local address is permissible in the case of a multilocational school) and disclose the fact that it is a school if such is not apparent from its name. In addition, a person who responds to such an advertisement or promotional material should not be visited by a salesman unless the advertisement or material contains a clear and conspicuous disclosure that a salesman may call or unless consent to such a visit is first obtained by mail or telephone.

(d) In obtaining leads to prospective students, an industry member should not represent that it is conducting a talent hunt, contest, or similar test, unless such is the fact and such representation is accompanied by a clear and conspicuous disclosure of the industry member's name and address and the fact that it is a school if such is not apparent from its name. An industry member which conducts a talent hunt, contest, or similar test among prospective students should keep accurate records concerning the results thereof. [Guide 7]

### §254.8 Deceptive pricing and misuse of the word "free."

(a) An industry member should not represent directly or indirectly in advertising or otherwise that a course or courses may be taken for a specified price, or at a saving, or at a reduced price, when such is not the fact; or otherwise deceive students or prospective students with respect to the cost of a course or any equipment, books, or supplies associated therewith or furnish any means or instrumentality by which others engaged in obtaining enrollments may make such representations. Illustratively, an industry member should not represent:

(1) That veterans or other stated classes of persons may be enrolled at a

reduced or special rate unless such is the fact;

(2) That a specific amount is its usual and customary price for a course unless such amount is the price at which the course has been usually and customarily sold in the recent regular course of business;

(3) That any saving is afforded in the price of a course from the member's regular price unless the price at which the course is offered constitutes a reduction from the price at which the course has been usually and customarily sold in the recent regular course of business;

(4) That books, training materials, or training aids are furnished at reduced rates,

(i) Unless the prices therefor have been reduced from the prices at which they were usually and customarily sold by the member in the recent and regular course of business; or

(ii) Unless the prices therefor have been reduced from the prices at which they were usually and customarily sold at retail by principal outlets in the trade area.

(b) An industry member should not misrepresent the total cost of the course to a prospective student or falsely represent that it offers scholarships which pay for all or part of the course.

NOTE: The Commission's Guides Against Deceptive Pricing (part 233 of this chapter) afford further guidance in this area.

(c) An industry member which represents that any course material, training device, or service is free should comply with the provisions of the Commission's Guide Concerning Use of the Word ''Free'' and Similar Representations (part 251 of this chapter). [Guide 8]

### § 254.9 Deceptive or unfair collection and credit practices.

(a) An industry member should not use any deceptive representations or deceptive means to collect or attempt to collect tuition or other charges from its students. For example, an industry member should not represent that a delinquent account has been or will be referred to an independent collection agency or to an attorney unless such is the fact.

(b) An industry member should not seek to enforce or obtain a judgment or otherwise attempt to collect on any contract or other instrument between itself and a student, or transfer or assign such contract or other instrument to a third party for the purpose of collection or of enforcing or obtaining a judgment on said contract or instrument, if the member or its employees or representatives misrepresented the nature or the terms of said contract or instrument at the time or prior to the time the contract or instrument was signed.

NOTE: The Commission's Guides Against Debt Collection Deception (part 237 of this chapter) afford further guidance in this area.

[Guide 9]

### § 254.10 Affirmative disclosure prior to enrollment.

Before obtaining the signature of a prospective student or of his parent or guardian on an enrollment contract or contract of sale, an industry member should furnish in writing to that person or persons the following information:

(a) The member's policy and regulations relative to make-up work, delay or delinquency in meeting course requirements, and standards required of the student for achieving satisfactory progress, including class attendance if applicable.

(b) If the member recommends, suggests, or requires that the student have or secure any additional texts, equipment, or materials other than usual student supplies such as paper and pencils, or utilize any supplementary services offered by the member, and the cost thereof is not included in the contract price of the course, an itemized list of such items and services showing the price thereof.

(c) In the case of courses to be taught in residence, a description of the school's physical facilities, and equipment to be used in teaching the class, and the usual class size.

(d) If the member represents that it offers a placement service to its graduates or will otherwise secure or assist them to find employment, a detailed and explicit description of the extent and nature of this service or assistance.

(e) Any other material facts concerning the school and the program of instruction or course which are reasonably likely to affect the decision of the student to enroll therein. [Guide 10]

# PART 255—GUIDES CONCERNING USE OF ENDORSEMENTS AND TESTIMONIALS IN ADVERTISING

Sec.
255.0 Definitions.
255.1 General considerations.
255.2 Consumer endorsements.
255.3 Expert endorsements.
255.4 Endorsements by organizations.
255.5 Disclosure of material connections.

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

## §255.0 Definitions.

(a) The Commission intends to treat endorsements and testimonials identically in the context of its enforcement of the Federal Trade Commission Act and for purposes of this part. The term *endorsements* is therefore generally used hereinafter to cover both terms and situations.

(b) For purposes of this part, an *endorsement* means any advertising message (including verbal statements, demonstrations, or depictions of the name, signature, likeness or other identifying personal characteristics of an individual or the name or seal of an organization) which message consumers are likely to believe reflects the opinions, beliefs, findings, or experience of a party other than the sponsoring advertiser. The party whose opinions, beliefs, findings, or experience the message appears to reflect will be called the endorser and may be an individual, group or institution.

(c) For purposes of this part, the term *product* includes any product, service, company or industry.

(d) For purposes of this part, an *expert* is an individual, group or institution possessing, as a result of experience, study or training, knowledge of a particular subject, which knowledge is superior to that generally acquired by ordinary individuals.

*Example 1:* A film critic's review of a movie is excerpted in an advertisement. When so used, the review meets the definition of an endorsement since it is viewed by readers as a statement of the critic's own opinions and not those of the film producer, distributor or exhibitor. Therefore, any alteration in or quotation from the text of the review which does not fairly reflect its substance would be a violation of the standards set by this part.

*Example 2:* A TV commercial depicts two women in a supermarket buying a laundry detergent. The women are not identified outside the context of the advertisement. One comments to the other how clean her brand makes her family's clothes, and the other then comments that she will try it because she has not been fully satisfied with her own brand. This obvious fictional dramatization of a real life situation would not be an endorsement.

*Example 3:* In an advertisement for a pain remedy, an announcer who is not familiar to consumers except as a spokesman for the advertising drug company praises the drug's ability to deliver fast and lasting pain relief. He purports to speak, not on the basis of his own opinions, but rather in the place of and on behalf of the drug company. Such an advertisement would not be an endorsement.

*Example 4:* A manufacturer of automobile tires hires a well known professional automobile racing driver to deliver its advertising message in television commercials. In these commercials, the driver speaks of the smooth ride, strength, and long life of the tires. Even though the message is not expressly declared to be the personal opinion of the driver, it may nevertheless constitute an endorsement of the tires. Many consumers will recognize this individual as being primarily a racing driver and not merely a spokesman or announcer for the advertiser. Accordingly, they may well believe the driver would not speak for an automotive product unless he/she actually believed in what he/she was saying and had personal knowledge sufficient to form that belief. Hence they would think that the advertising message reflects the driver's personal views as well as those of the sponsoring advertiser. This attribution of the underlying views to the driver brings the advertisement within the definition of an endorsement for purposes of this part.

*Example 5:* A television advertisement for golf balls shows a prominent and well-recognized professional golfer hitting the golf balls. This would be an endorsement by the golfer even though he makes no verbal statement in the advertisement.

[40 FR 22128, May 21, 1975, as amended at 45 FR 3872, Jan. 18, 1980]

## §255.1 General considerations.

(a) Endorsements must always reflect the honest opinions, findings, beliefs, or experience of the endorser. Furthermore, they may not contain any representations which would be deceptive,

or could not be substantiated if made directly by the advertiser. [*See* Example 2 to Guide 3 (§ 255.3) illustrating that a valid endorsement may constitute all or part of an advertiser's substantiation.]

(b) The endorsement message need not be phrased in the exact words of the endorser, unless the advertisement affirmatively so represents. However, the endorsement may neither be presented out of context nor reworded so as to distort in any way the endorser's opinion or experience with the product. An advertiser may use an endorsement of an expert or celebrity only as long as it has good reason to believe that the endorser continues to subscribe to the views presented. An advertiser may satisfy this obligation by securing the endorser's views at reasonable intervals where reasonableness will be determined by such factors as new information on the performance or effectiveness of the product, a material alteration in the product, changes in the performance of competitors' products, and the advertiser's contract commitments.

(c) In particular, where the advertisement represents that the endorser uses the endorsed product, then the endorser must have been a bona fide user of it at the time the endorsement was given, Additionally, the advertiser may continue to run the advertisement only so long as he has good reason to believe that the endorser remains a bona fide user of the product. [*See* § 255.1(b) regarding the ''good reason to believe'' requirement.]

*Guide 1, Example 1:* A building contractor states in an advertisement that he specifies the advertiser's exterior house paint because of its remarkable quick drying properties and its durability. This endorsement must comply with the pertinent requirements of Guide 3. Subsequently, the advertiser reformulates its paint to enable it to cover exterior surfaces with only one coat. Prior to continued use of the contractor's endorsement, the advertiser must contact the contractor in order to determine whether the contractor would continue to specify the paint and to subscribe to the views presented previously.

*Example 2:* A television advertisment portrays a woman seated at a desk on which rest five unmarked electric typewriters. An announcer says ''We asked Mrs. X, an executive secretary for over ten years, to try these five unmarked typewriters and tell us which one she liked best.''

The advertisement portrays the secretary typing on each machine, and then picking the advertiser's brand. The announcer asks her why, and Mrs. X gives her reasons. Assuming that consumers would perceive this presentation as a ''blind'' test, this endorsement would probably not represent that Mrs. X actually uses the advertiser's machines in her work. In addition, the endorsement may also be required to meet the standards of Guide 3 on Expert Endorsements.

[Guide 1]

[45 FR 3872, Jan. 18, 1980]

### § 255.2 Consumer endorsements.

(a) An advertisement employing an endorsement reflecting the experience of an individual or a group of consumers on a central or key attribute of the product or service will be interpreted as representing that the endorser's experience is representative of what consumers will generally achieve with the advertised product in actual, albeit variable, conditions of use. Therefore, unless the advertiser possesses and relies upon adequate substantiation for this representation, the advertisement should either clearly and conspicuously disclose what the generally expected performance would be in the depicted circumstances or clearly and conspicuously disclose the limited applicability of the endorser's experience to what consumers may generally expect to achieve. The Commission's position regarding the acceptance of disclaimers or disclosures is described in the preamble to these Guides published in the FEDERAL REGISTER on January 18, 1980.

(b) Advertisements presenting endorsements by what are represented, directly or by implication, to be ''actual consumers'' should utilize actual consumers, in both the audio and video or clearly and conspicuously disclose that the persons in such advertisements are not actual consumers of the advertised product.

(c) Claims concerning the efficacy of any drug or device as defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 55, shall not be made in lay endorsements unless (1) the advertiser has adequate scientific substantiation for such claims and (2) the claims are not inconsistent with any determination that has been made by the Food

and Drug Administration with respect to the drug or device that is the subject of the claim.

*Guide 2, Example 1:* An advertisement presents the endorsement of an owner of one of the advertiser's television sets. The consumer states that she has needed to take the set to the shop for repairs only one time during her 2-year period of ownership and the costs of servicing the set to date have been under $10.00. Unless the advertiser possesses and relied upon adequate substantiation for the implied claim that such performance reflects that which a significant proportion of consumers would be likely to experience, the advertiser should include a disclosure that either states clearly and conspicuously what the generally expectable performance would be or clearly and conspicuously informs consumers that the performance experienced by the endorser is not what they should expect to experience. The mere disclosure that ''not all consumers will get this result'' is insufficient because it can imply that while all consumers cannot expect the advertised results, a substantial number can expect them. [See the cross reference in Guide 2(a) regarding the acceptability of disclaimers or disclosures.]

*Example 2:* An advertiser presents the results of a poll of consumers who have used the advertiser's cake mixes as well as their own recipes. The results purport to show that the majority believed that their families could not tell the difference between the advertised mix and their own cakes baked from scratch. Many of the consumers are actually pictured in the advertisement along with relevant, quoted portions of their statements endorsing the product. This use of the results of a poll or survey of consumers probably represents a promise to consumers that this is the typical result that ordinary consumers can expect from the advertiser's cake mix.

*Example 3:* An advertisement purports to portray a ''hidden camera'' situation in a crowded cafeteria at breakfast time. A spokesperson for the advertiser asks a series of actual patrons of the cafeteria for their spontaneous, honest opinions of the advertiser's recently introduced breakfast cereal. Even though the words ''hidden camera'' are not displayed on the screen, and even though none of the actual patrons is specifically identified during the advertisement, the net impression conveyed to consumers may well be that these are actual customers, and not actors. If actors have been employed, this fact should be disclosed.

[Guide 2]

[45 FR 3872, Jan. 18, 1980]

## §255.3 Expert endorsements.

(a) Whenever an advertisement represents, directly or by implication, that the endorser is an expert with respect to the endorsement message, then the endorser's qualifications must in fact give him the expertise that he is represented as possessing with respect to the endorsement.

(b) While the expert may, in endorsing a product, take into account factors not within his expertise (e.g., matters of taste or price), his endorsement must be supported by an actual exercise of his expertise in evaluating product features or characteristics with respect to which he is expert and which are both relevant to an ordinary consumer's use of or experience with the product and also are available to the ordinary consumer. This evaluation must have included an examination or testing of the product at least as extensive as someone with the same degree of expertise would normally need to conduct in order to support the conclusions presented in the endorsement. Where, and to the extent that, the advertisement implies that the endorsement was based upon a comparison such comparison must have been included in his evaluation; and as a result of such comparison, he must have concluded that, with respect to those features on which he is expert and which are relevant and available to an ordinary consumer, the endorsed product is at least equal overall to the competitors' products. Moreover, where the net impression created by the endorsement is that the advertised product is superior to other products with respect to any such feature or features, then the expert must in fact have found such superiority.

*Example 1:* An endorsement of a particular automobile by one described as an ''engineer'' implies that the endorser's professional training and experience are such that he is well acquainted with the design and performance of automobiles. If the endorser's field is, for example, chemical engineering, the endorsement would be deceptive.

*Example 2:* A manufacturer of automobile parts advertises that its products are approved by the ''American Institute of Science.'' From its very name, consumers would infer that the ''American Institute of Science'' is a bona fide independent testing

organization with expertise in judging automobile parts and that, as such, it would not approve any automobile part without first testing its efficacy by means of valid scientific methods. Even if the American Institute of Science is such a bona fide expert testing organization, as consumers would expect, the endorsement may nevertheless be deceptive unless the Institute has conducted valid scientific tests of the advertised products and the test results support the endorsement message.

*Example 3:* A manufacturer of a non-prescription drug product represents that its product has been selected in preference to competing products by a large metropolitan hospital. The hospital has selected the product because the manufacturer, unlike its competitors, has packaged each dose of the product separately. This package form is not generally available to the public. Under the circumstances, the endorsement would be deceptive because the basis for the choice of the manufacturer's product, convenience of packaging, is neither relevant nor available to consumers.

*Example 4:* The president of a commercial ''home cleaning service'' states in a television advertisement that the service uses a particular brand of cleanser in its business. Since the cleaning service's professional success depends largely upon the performance of the cleansers it uses, consumers would expect the service to be expert with respect to judging cleansing ability, and not be satisfied using an inferior cleanser in its business when it knows of a better one available to it. Accordingly, the cleaning service's endorsement must at least conform to those consumer expectations. The service must, of course, actually use the endorsed cleanser. Additionally, on the basis of its expertise, it must have determined that the cleansing ability of the endorsed cleanser is at least equal (or superior, if such is the net impression conveyed by the advertisement) to that of competing products with which the service has had experience and which remain reasonably available to it. Since in this example, the cleaning service's president makes no mention that the endorsed cleanser was ''chosen,'' ''selected,'' or otherwise evaluated in side-by-side comparisons against its competitors, it is sufficient if the service has relied solely upon its accumulated experience in evaluating cleansers without having to have performed side-by-side or scientific comparisons.

*Example 5:* An association of professional athletes states in an advertisement that it has ''selected'' a particular brand of beverages as its ''official breakfast drink''. As in Example 4, the association would be regarded as expert in the field of nutrition for purposes of this section, because consumers would expect it to rely upon the selection of nutritious foods as part of its business needs. Consequently, the association's endorsement must be based upon an expert evaluation of the nutritional value of the endorsed beverage. Furthermore, unlike Example 4, the use of the words ''selected'' and ''official'' in this endorsement imply that it was given only after direct comparisions had been performed among competing brands. Hence, the advertisement would be deceptive unless the association has in fact performed such comparisons between the endorsed brand and its leading competitors in terms of nutritional criteria, and the results of such comparisons conform to the net impression created by the advertisement.

[Guide 3]

[40 FR 22128, May 21, 1975]

### § 255.4 Endorsements by organizations.

Endorsements by organizations, especially expert ones, are viewed as representing the judgment of a group whose collective experience exceeds that of any individual member, and whose judgments are generally free of the sort of subjective factors which vary from individual to individual. Therefore an organization's endorsement must be reached by a process sufficient to ensure that the endorsement fairly reflects the collective judgment of the organization. Moreover, if an organization is represented as being expert, then, in conjunction with a proper exercise of its expertise in evaluating the product under § 255.3 of this part (Expert endorsements), it must utilize an expert or experts recognized as such by the organization or standards previously adopted by the organization and suitable for judging the relevant merits of such products.

*Example:* A mattress seller advertises that its product is endorsed by a chiropractic association. Since the association would be regarded as expert with respect to judging mattresses, its endorsement must be supported by an expert evaluation by an expert or experts recognized as such by the organization, or by compliance with standards previously adopted by the organization and aimed at measuring the performance of mattresses in general and not designed with the particular attributes of the advertised mattress in mind. (See also § 255.3, Example 5.)

[Guide 4]

[40 FR 22128, May 21, 1975]

### § 255.5 Disclosure of material connections.

When there exists a connection between the endorser and the seller of the advertised product which might materially affect the weight or credibility of the endorsement (i.e., the connection is not reasonably expected by the audience) such connection must be fully disclosed. An example of a connection that is ordinarily expected by viewers and need not be disclosed is the payment or promise of payment to an endorser who is an expert or well known personality, as long as the advertiser does not represent that the endorsement was given without compensation. However, when the endorser is neither represented in the advertisement as an expert nor is known to a significant portion of the viewing public, then the advertiser should clearly and conspicuously disclose either the payment or promise of compensation prior to and in exchange for the endorsement or the fact that the endorser knew or had reasons to know or to believe that if the endorsement favors the advertised product some benefit, such as an appearance on TV, would be extended to the endorser.

*Example 1:* A drug company commissions research on its product by a well-known research organization. The drug company pays a substantial share of the expenses of the research project, but the test design is under the control of the research organization. A subsequent advertisement by the drug company mentions the research results as the ''findings'' of the well-known research organization. The advertiser's payment of expenses to the research organization need not be disclosed in this advertisement. Application of the standards set by Guides 3 and 4 provides sufficient assurance that the advertiser's payment will not affect the weight or credibility of the endorsement.

*Example 2:* A film star endorses a particular food product. The endorsement regards only points of taste and individual preference. This endorsement must of course comply with § 255.1; but even though the compensation paid the endorser is substantial, neither the fact nor the amount of compensation need be revealed.

*Example 3:* An actual patron of a restaurant, who is neither known to the public nor presented as an expert, is shown seated at the counter. He is asked for his ''spontaneous'' opinion of a new food product served in the restaurant. Assume, first, that the advertiser had posted a sign on the door of the restaurant informing all who entered that day that patrons would be interviewed by the advertiser as part of its TV promotion of its new soy protein ''steak''. This notification would materially affect the weight or credibility of the patron's endorsement, and, therefore, viewers of the advertisement should be clearly and conspicuously informed of the circumstances under which the endorsement was obtained.

Assume, in the alternative, that the advertiser had not posted a sign on the door of the restaurant, but had informed all interviewed customers of the ''hidden camera'' only after interviews were completed and the customers had no reason to know or believe that their response was being recorded for use in an advertisement. Even if patrons were also told that they would be paid for allowing the use of their opinions in advertising, these facts need not be disclosed.

[Guide 5]

[45 FR 3873, Jan. 18, 1980]

## PART 256—GUIDES FOR THE LAW BOOK INDUSTRY

Sec.
256.0 Definitions.
256.1 General disclosures.
256.2 Disclosures relative to supplementation.
256.3 Disclosures relative to texts and treatises.
256.4 New revisions or replacement sets or series.
256.5 Representations, express or implied, describing a work as ''new'', ''current'' or ''up-to-date''.
256.6 Disclosures relative to misleading titles of texts and treatises.
256.7 Representations relative to works not yet published.
256.8 Representations relative to jurisdictional designations.
256.9 Catalogs.
256.10 Subscription renewal notices.
256.11 Disclosures on publications.
256.12 Jurisdictional designations of publications.
256.13 Disclosures on supplements.
256.14 Upkeep service.
256.15 Billing practices.
256.16 Added materials—germane subject matter.
256.17 Misrepresentations (general).

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended; (15 U.S.C. 41–58).

SOURCE: 40 FR 33436, Aug. 8, 1975, unless otherwise noted.

### § 256.0 Definitions.

(a) *Industry product.* Any law book, case book, publication, series, service, law research materials, supplements and other printed materials of similar nature as well as materials appearing in microform, film, tape or other nonprint format designed primarily for use by members of the law profession and by law schools, excluding second-hand or used law materials.

(b) *Treatise or text.* An exposition—critical, evaluative, interpretive or informative—which analyzes one or more areas of the law. Generally, a legal treatise is more exhaustive in scope than an encyclopedia, and is considered a secondary aid.

(c) *Set.* A group of books published as a unit by virtue of such unifying characteristics as common authorship, editorship, relevance, or subject.

(d) *Series.* A number of separate works or sets, usually related to one another in subject or otherwise, issued in succession, normally by the same publisher or in uniform style, with a collective title.

(e) *Looseleaf* (*binder*). A law book or series of law books that consist of ring or post-bound (compression-type) binders used to hold separate looseleaf sheets as opposed to the bound book format wherein pages are permanently attached to the binder.

[40 FR 33436, Aug. 8, 1975; 40 FR 36116, Aug. 19, 1975]

### § 256.1 General disclosures.

Direct-mail promotional materials[1] or oral representations soliciting the sale of specific industry products should clearly and conspicuously disclose:

(a) Name and address of publisher;

(b) Full title including any sub-titles, and edition name or number if not the first;

(c) Surname and given name or initials of authors, editors or compilers or designate if authored, edited or compiled by publisher's editorial staff;

(d) Latest copyright date and whether supplemented; or in the event of a looseleaf or post-bound (compression-type) publication, other appropriate identification of currency (latest copyright date not necessary for open-ended, ongoing type works such as reports and digests);

(e) In the case of a reprint by other than the original publisher, the publisher and copyright date of the original work, name and address of the reprint publisher and reprint dates;

(f) Whether part of a set or series and, if so, the full title of said set or series;

(g) Where the title of the advertised industry product is general, when in fact coverage therein is more limited than the title implies, a synoptic description of the limited coverage of subject matter, except in cases where chapter headings are listed and adequately reflect the limited subject matter;

(h) Type of binding (e.g., permanently bound with pocket parts, looseleaf including post-bound, compression-binder type or paperback);

(i) Where the price of the industry product appears, a description of what the price includes (e.g., the number of volumes in a set) and whether there are any extra charges such as postage, handling, shipping or other surcharges. [Guide 1]

### § 256.2 Disclosures relative to supplementation.

Direct mail promotional materials or oral representations soliciting the sale of specific industry products should, where an industry product is being supplemented, or supplementation is being contemplated, clearly and conspicuously disclose:

(a) The general type of supplementation currently being supplied, a description of what is included in that supplementation (e.g., pocket part supplements [bound, unbound or pamphlet type], replacement pages, cumulative

[1] Where the direct-mail advertising of specific industry products consists of a promotional package containing more than one advertising piece (e.g., a brochure and/or cover letter, order form, and/or reply card), the disclosures required by §§ 256.1–256.3, 256.5–256.8 and 256.17 must appear clearly and conspicuously in the place where they are most likely to be noticed, on at least one piece of the promotional advertising package.

supplements, revised volumes, split volumes, replacement volumes), and the anticipated frequency of supplementation (e.g., annually or monthly);

(b) Any charge for the latest pocket parts or supplements, and the clearly identified period of time within which supplementation will be supplied without additional charge;

(c) The specific nature of any offer of credit or discount for supplements in connection with the original purchase, and the clearly identified period of time for said offer;

(d) Whether supplementation to the industry product has been abandoned, or is knowingly to be abandoned within 1 year after issuance of the solicitation, and the date or approximate date for abandonment of supplementation;

(e) Minimum supplementation cost for each of the past 2 calendar years, or such shorter period in which the publication has been available. [Guide 2]

### §256.3 Disclosures relative to texts and treatises.

Direct-mail promotional materials or oral representations soliciting the sale of specific texts and treatises should clearly and conspicuously disclose:

(a) For a multivolume set the number or estimated number of volumes which are anticipated to complete the set, and the estimated publication schedule;

(b) Where offer is of a set, a general description of subjects covered under said set title;

NOTE: Industry member should clearly indicate general scope of the work, e.g., set may be titled *Encyclopedia of Hawaiian Law*. If the work is not a full encyclopedic treatment of Hawaiian law, it should be disclosed that it covers only certain areas which are to be clearly identified.

[Guide 3]

### §256.4 New revisions or replacement sets or series.

Where a publisher sells an industry product whose replacement or substantial revision is scheduled to be offered for sale within 1 year following the date of sale of the precursor work, such publisher should notify the purchaser, prior to consummating the sale, that the industry product will be replaced or revised and the approximate date of such replacement or revision. If the purchaser has not been so notified, the publisher should offer to the purchaser either:

(a) Full refund for the obsolete work within the 1 year period, less reasonable charges for the period of use of the work, or

(b) Full credit on the obsolete work within the 1 year period towards purchase of the new work, less reasonable charges for the period of use of the obsolete work.

NOTE: This section does not apply when the publisher continues full supplementation of the precursor set or series.

[Guide 4]

[40 FR 33436, Aug. 8, 1975; 40 FR 36116, Aug. 19, 1975]

### §256.5 Representations, express or implied, describing a work as "new", "current" or "up-to-date".

No direct-mail promotional materials or oral representations soliciting the sale of specific industry products should:

(a) Expressly or impliedly represent that the industry product is new when said industry product was first distributed more than 18 months prior to the time of the offer or dissemination of the advertisement (some examples, but not all inclusive, of terms suggesting new publications are: ''Announcing'', ''newly revised'', ''New 8th Edition'', ''Up-to-date'', ''New'');

(b) Represent an industry product as current or up-to-date unless the work itself, or the supplementation thereto, is current or up-to-date, considering the amount and nature of legal activity in the particular area of law covered on the date of issuance of the advertisement; but in no event should any representation be made that the industry product is current or up-to-date when either the copyright date, printing date or end of coverage date for supplementation of such industry product is more than 18 months from the date of issuance of the advertisement.

NOTE: Some areas of the law and thus some works may require monthly supplementation to be considered current while others may be

kept sufficiently current by annual or, in exceptional cases, even less frequent supplementation. In some exceptional cases, for example, where legislatures only meet on a biannual basis, supplementation based thereon may be designated as current and up-to-date.

[Guide 5]

[40 FR 33436, Aug. 8, 1975; 40 FR 36116, Aug. 19, 1975]

### § 256.6 Disclosures relative to misleading titles of texts and treatises.

Direct-mail promotional materials or oral representations soliciting the sale of specific texts or treatises should clearly and conspicuously disclose:

(a) Where a title contains the name of a person who did not author or edit or only partially authored or edited the actual texts or treatises, the names of authors or editors who contributed substantial parts of an industry product. The names of such authors or editors should appear at least once in immediate conjunction with the title where it most prominently appears in the advertisement;

(b) Other or prior titles and last copyright date where the advertised industry product or substantially the same industry product is or was published separately and/or as part of a set or as part of two or more sets, under identical or different titles (e.g., ''Smith on Mortgages'' is also published as Volume 9 of ''The Symposium on Real Property Law'' (1980); or * * * Smith on Mortgages is substantially the same book as * * * or is based on * * * or is composed of material also found in * * * Volume 9 of ''The Symposium on Real Property Law'' (1980) [or words to that effect]);

(c) Other or prior titles and last copyright date where the industry product or substantially the same industry product is or was published elsewhere and/or in another format under identical or different titles (e.g., ''Brown on Leases,'' Revised Edition, published under the title of ''Landlord & Tenant'' (1980); or ''Brown on Leases,'' Revised Edition, is composed primarily of materials from Landlord & Tenant (1980) [or words to that effect]);

(d) The identity of any sources, by title and last copyright date or other identification of currency, where the material in the industry product is substantially extracted from such sources [e.g., chapter 1 of this book is based on the author's article in ''97 Harvard Law Review 283'' (1980)];

(e) For 5 years after issuance of a revision or a new edition of another title, the original title and last copyright date or other identification of currency of the precursor industry product.

NOTE: Where an industry product is composed of innumerable, short excerpts from other sources, such as a lawyer's desk aid and lawyer's almanac, then disclosure that the work is such a compilation will suffice without identifying all sources of the material therein.

[Guide 6]

### § 256.7 Representations relative to works not yet published.

Representations soliciting the sale of specific industry products should not expressly or impliedly hold out a publication as having been printed or published at the time of the offer when such is not the fact. Solicitations relative to works not yet published should clearly and conspicuously disclose that the publication is being planned or contemplated and that inquiries or orders are being solicited to determine demand for the publication, or words to that effect. [Guide 7]

### § 256.8 Representations relative to jurisdictional designations.

Representations soliciting the sale of an industry product should not expressly or impliedly describe such product as being designed for a particular jurisdiction unless the contents of said industry product are designed primarily for and contain significant amounts of materials for use in the jurisdiction so designated. Nor shoud the promotional materials for an industry product have a designation or title that expresses or implies that a broader or more general jurisdiction is covered when in fact the industry product is designed primarily for a jurisdiction more limited in scope (e.g., ''The New Rules of Evidence'' is actually a work which applies to new evidence rules enacted in one State only). [Guide 8]

### § 256.9 Catalogs.

Catalog listings and descriptions of law publications should conform to §§ 256.1 to 256.3, 256.5 to 256.8, and 256.17 of this part, and such catalogs should clearly and conspicuously disclose the printing or coverage dates on the front cover. [Guide 9]

### § 256.10 Subscription renewal notices.

(a) A subscription renewal notice for industry products should not be sent to any person, firm, library, or entity, where the recipient thereof is not currently subscribing to the industry product to which the renewal notice refers or relates.

(b) A subscription renewal notice should clearly designate the number of the notice (e.g., ''First Renewal Notice'' or ''Second Renewal Notice''). [Guide 10]

### § 256.11 Disclosures on publications.

Texts or treatises, separately published or published in sets or series, should clearly and conspicuously disclose on the title page or pages, half title page and/or verso of title page:

(a) Full title of the book, including any sub-titles;

(b) If part of a set or series, the title of same;

(c) The number of the edition if not the first;

(d) For 5 years after issuance of a revision or a new edition of another title, the original title and last copyright date or other identification of currency of the precursor industry product;

(e) Unambiguous identification of authors, editors or compilers; or whether authored, edited or compiled by the publisher's editorial staff. However, if authors, editors or compilers are listed in the table of contents or credits, this paragraph need not apply;

(f) Name, city and State of publisher;

(g) Where the industry product or substantially the same industry product is or was published separately or as part of one or more sets under identical or different titles, or is or was published in various places or formats under identical or different titles, the prior titles and the place and date of previous publication. However, if such disclosures appear in the table of contents or credits, this paragraph need not apply;

(h) When the industry product is substantially extracted from other sources, the identity of sources by titles and copyright dates unless such disclosures appear in the table of contents or credits;

(i) Where the title contains the name of a person who did not author or edit, or only partially authored or edited the industry product, the names of authors, editors or publisher's editorial staff who contributed substantial parts of the industry product, and such disclosures should appear on the title page in conspicuous type or print. [Guide 11]

[40 FR 33436, Aug. 8, 1975; 40 FR 36116, Aug. 19, 1975]

### § 256.12 Jurisdictional designations of publications.

No industry product should be titled with a jurisdictional designation (e.g., ''Maryland Edition''; or ''Montana Real Estate Law'') unless the contents of said industry product are designed primarily for and contain significant amounts of material for use in that jurisdiction. Nor should an industry product have a title which expresses or implies that a broader or more general jurisdiction is covered when in fact the industry product is designed primarily for a jurisdiction more limited in scope (e.g., ''The New Rules of Evidence'' is actually a work which applies to new evidence rules enacted in one State only). [Guide 12]

### § 256.13 Disclosures on supplements.

Supplements issued to industry products should clearly and conspicuously disclose:

(a) On title page or verso of pocket parts and of stapled or bound supplemental units and on cover page or pages or their versos for replacement or supplemental pages:

(1) Full title of the industry product; and where part of a set or series, title of said set or series;

(2) Surname and given name of authors, editors or compilers of the titled industry product or if prepared by the publisher's editorial staff;

(3) Surname and given name of authors, editors or compilers of supplement if different from that of the titled book;

(4) Coverage date or date of issuance for the supplement.

(b) On each replacement sheet, the month and year of issuance. [Guide 13]

### § 256.14 Upkeep service.[2]

Prior to the formation of any contract, or other agreement, whether written or oral, for the purchase of industry products containing provisions for subsequent automatic shipment of materials for upkeep purposes, the seller should:

(a) Clearly and conspicuously define the nature and extent of basic upkeep service. Basic upkeep service should include only those parts of upkeep which are absolutely essential and without which a set cannot remain functional (this might include such parts as pocket part supplements, replacement pages, releases and inserts, advance sheets, and replacement, revised, recompiled or split volumes); and

(b) Make available for purchase such basic upkeep service on an automatic shipment basis without requiring the purchase of other additional upkeep services whether on an automatic basis or otherwise.

---

[2] Upkeep service is also sometimes referred to as ''Standing Order'', ''Continuations'', ''Subscription'', or ''Subscription Upkeep''.

Once a customer invests in a work, his investment serves as a compelling factor in his decision of whether or not to continue future upkeep. Financial practicality and limited choices offered by sellers of particular types of works in a heavily concentrated industry tend to keep the buyer confined to the work in which he has already invested; therefore, the buyer will not or is reluctant to switch to a competitive work (if there is one) when he cannot purchase the type of upkeep he wants or needs.

Customers have varied needs and wants relating to upkeep. For example, the customer may want to enter his subscription or order for automatic upkeep of supplements (i.e., pocket part supplements, replacement pages, releases, inserts), advance sheets, replacement, revised, recompiled or split volumes, but he may want to be notified of and given the opportunity to order any additional, companion or related volumes, series or sets, new editions, or any related titles.

NOTE 1: Nothing in this section is meant to preclude a seller from offering to buyers the option of ordering and receiving all parts of upkeep on an automatic basis, including basic supplementation and all other extra parts of supplementation, or any other method of upkeep such as alternate year supplementation, as long as other requirements of this section are met.

NOTE 2: The purpose of this section is to furnish the seller and buyer with a clear understanding of what is being ordered. There has been dissension and confusion in the lawbook industry as to what constitutes upkeep service and as to what the customer expects to receive or thinks he ordered under the upkeep provision, and as to which parts or units of the upkeep service the customer considers necessary or unnecessary for his particular requirements.

NOTE 3: Where a customer chooses to purchase individual parts of the upkeep service on a non-automatic basis [see paragraph (b) of this section], the total price for each part so ordered should not exceed the cost of such parts when ordered automatically [see Note 1 of this section], unless any increased charges are based upon the actual increased costs to the seller directly attributable to such sale and/or delivery.

NOTE 4: The Federal Trade Commission Act will be enforced in accordance with Section 3009 of the Postal Reorganization Act which designates that ''(a) * * * the mailing of unordered merchandise or of communications prohibited by paragraph (c) of this section constitutes an unfair method of competition and an unfair trade practice. * * *

''(b) Any merchandise mailed in violation of paragraph (a) of this section, or within the exceptions contained therein, may be treated as a gift by the recipient, who shall have the right to retain, use, discard, or dispose of it in any manner he sees fit without any obligation whatsoever to the sender. All such merchandise shall have attached to it a clear and conspicuous statement informing the recipient that he may treat the merchandise as a gift to him and has the right to retain, use, discard, or dispose of it in any manner he sees fit without any obligation whatsoever to the sender.

''(c) No mailer of any merchandise mailed in violation of paragraph (a) of this section, or within the exceptions contained therein, shall mail to any recipient of such merchandise a bill for such merchandise or any dunning communications.''

[Guide 14]

### § 256.15 Billing practices.

(a) Sellers of industry products should notify all customers in a clear and conspicuous manner:

(1) To mark conspicuously their account numbers (if any) or other appropriate identifying data on all correspondence and payments, including checks, sent by customers to the seller;

(2) That, upon request for clarification of an account, any customer may receive a statement of accounts, showing each purchase, payment or credit itemized for the current or all pertinent, preceding months;

(3) That, where the seller can apply payments to specific items under its billing procedures, to indicate or identify to the seller or payee the item or items to which any payment is to be applied.

(b) The publisher or seller of industry products should:

(1) When receiving communications showing account numbers, have the responsibility of applying all correspondence and payments to the correct account, and where there is any question, notify the customer before entering the pertinent data into the computer system;

(2) Provide a statement of accounts when requested by the customer;

(3) Where seller can apply payments to specific items under its billing procedures, apply payments or credits as designated by the buyer or payor.

(c) The seller of industry products, in oral or written communications with the buyer, should not use fictitious names, but should use names of live persons who are actively participating in the business.

(d) Billing statements to purchasers of industry products should show:

(1) Date and customer's account number, if any;

(2) Invoice numbers or, where items are listed, a clear and readable description of each item or unit. If abbreviations are used which are not readily understandable, the statement should have thereon or attached thereto a clear interpretation of said abbreviations (e.g., a table);

(3) A price for each item, or invoice totals, or the total of invoice totals;

(4) Penalty, interest, or carrying charges, if any, clearly and separately identified;

(5) Purchases sent on approval, if any, clearly and separately identified.

(e) All industry product invoices should:

(1) Be dated, numbered or adequately identified, and should show customer's account number, if any;

(2) Show a clear and readable description of each item or unit. If abbreviations are used which are not readily understandable, the invoice should have thereon or attached thereto a clear interpretation of said abbreviations;

(3) Show a price for each item, and clearly state terms of sale and amount of discount, if any;

(4) Clearly show the time period for approval orders, by showing specific opening and termination dates.

NOTE: This section is meant to suggest some basic information that should be provided for the billing process although the seller may prefer to use some other system or method which furnishes essentially the same information as provided by this section. Further, this section does not relieve an industry member of his responsibilities to comply with the Fair Credit Billing Act, 15 U.S.C. 1601, and law book sellers should note with particularity section 161 of that Act dealing with ''Correction of Billing Errors''.

[Guide 15]

### § 256.16 Added materials—germane subject matter.

The adding of volumes or other materials, the overall content of which is not substantially germane to the subject matter of the basic work, constitutes an unfair trade practice. [Guide 16]

### § 256.17 Misrepresentations (general).

An industry product should not be advertised, published or otherwise represented in any manner which may have the capacity and tendency or effect of misleading or deceiving purchasers or prospective purchasers concerning the grade, quality, material, size, contents, authorship, editorship, use, value, price, origin, preparation, manufacture or date of publication or copyright of any industry product or of any supplementation thereto, or the current or up-to-date character thereof, or concerning any service offered in connection therewith, or in any other material respect. [Guide 17]

NOTE. If a fixed fee per period is charged for a current topic reporting upkeep service which is supplemented monthly or more frequently, §§256.2, 256.3, 256.13(a) and 256.14 do not apply.

# PART 259—GUIDE CONCERNING FUEL ECONOMY ADVERTISING FOR NEW AUTOMOBILES

Sec.
259.1 Definitions.
259.2 Advertising disclosures.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

## §259.1 Definitions.

For the purposes of this part, the following definitions shall apply:

(a) *New automobile.* Any passenger automobile or light truck for which a fuel economy label is required under the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (42 U.S.C. 6201 *et seq.*) or rules promulgated thereunder, the equitable or legal title to which has never been transferred by a manufacturer, distributor, or dealer to an ultimate purchaser. The term *manufacturer* shall mean any person engaged in the manufacturing or assembling of new automobiles, including any person importing new automobiles for resale and any person who acts for and is under control of such manufacturer, assembler, or importer in connection with the distribution of new automobiles. The term *dealer* shall mean any person, resident or located in the United States or any territory thereof, engaged in the sale or distribution of new automobiles to the ultimate purchaser. The term *ultimate purchaser* means, for purposes of this part, the first person, other than a dealer purchasing in his or her capacity as a dealer, who in good faith purchases such new automobile for purposes other than resale, including a person who leases such vehicle for his or her personal use.

(b) *Estimated city mpg.* The gasoline consumption or mileage of new automobiles as determined in accordance with the city test procedure employed and published by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency as described in 40 CFR 600.209–85 and expressed in miles-per-gallon, to the nearest whole mile-per-gallon, as measured, reported, published, or accepted by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

(c) *Estimated highway mpg.* The gasoline consumption or mileage of new automobiles as determined in accordance with the highway test procedure employed and published by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency as described in 40 CFR 600.209–85 and expressed in miles-per-gallon, to the nearest whole mile-per-gallon, as measured, reported, published, or accepted by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

(d) *Vehicle configuration.* The unique combination of automobile features, as defined in 40 CFR 600.002–85(24).

(e) *Estimated in-use fuel economy range.* The estimated range of city and highway fuel economy of the particular new automobile on which the label is affixed, as determined in accordance with procedures employed by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency as described in 40 CFR 600.311 (for the appropriate model year), and expressed in miles-per-gallon, to the nearest whole mile-per-gallon, as measured, reported or accepted by the U.S. Environment Protection Agency.

(f) *Range of estimated fuel economy values for the class of new automobiles.* The estimated city and highway fuel economy values of the class of automobile (e.g., compact) as determined by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency pursuant to 40 CFR 600.315 (for the appropriate model year) and expressed in miles-per-gallon, to the nearest whole mile-per-gallon.

[60 FR 56231, Nov. 8, 1995]

## §259.2 Advertising disclosures.

(a) No manufacturer or dealer shall make any express or implied representation in advertising concerning the fuel economy of any new automobile[1] unless such representation is accompanied by the following clear and conspicuous disclosures:

(1) If the advertisement makes:

[1] The Commission will regard as an express or implied fuel economy representation one which a reasonable consumer, upon considering the representation in the context of the entire advertisement, would understand as referring to the fuel economy performance of the vehicle or vehicles advertised.

(i) Both a city and a highway fuel economy representation, both the ''estimated city mpg'' and the ''estimated highway mpg'' of such new automobile,[2] must be disclosed;

(ii) A representation regarding only city or only highway fuel economy, only the corresponding EPA estimate must be disclosed;[3]

(iii) A general fuel economy claim without reference to either city or highway, or if the representation refers to any combined fuel economy number, the ''estimated city mpg'' must be disclosed;[4] and

(2) That the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency is the source of the ''estimated city mpg'' and ''estimated highway mpg'' and that the numbers are estimates.[5]

(b) If an advertisement for a new automobile cites:

(1) The ''estimated in-use fuel economy range,'' the advertisement must state with equal prominence both the upper and lower number of the range, an explanation of the meaning of the numbers (i.e., city mpg range or highway mpg range or both), and that the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency is the source of the figures.

(2) The ''range of estimated fuel economy values for the class of new automobiles'' as a basis for comparing the fuel economy of two or more automobiles, such comparison must be made to the same type of range (i.e., city or highway).[6]

(c) Fuel economy estimates derived from a non-EPA test may be disclosed provided that:

(1) The advertisement also discloses the ''estimated city mpg'' and/or the ''estimated highway mpg,'' as required by § 259.2(a), and the disclosure required by § 259.2(a), and gives the ''estimated city mpg'' and/or the ''estimated highway mpg'' figure(s) substantially more prominence than any other estimate;[7] provided, however, for radio and television advertisements in which any other estimate is used only in the

---

[2] For purposes of § 259.2(a), the ''estimated city mpg'' and the ''estimated highway mpg'' must be those applicable to the specific nameplate being advertised. Fuel economy estimates assigned to ''unique nameplates'' (see 40 CFR 600.207–86(a)(2)) apply only to such unique car lines. For example, if a manufacturer has a model named the ''XZA'' that has fuel economy estimates assigned to it and a derivative model named the ''Econo-XZA'' that has separate, higher fuel economy estimates assigned to it, these higher numbers assigned to the ''Econo-XZA'' cannot be used in advertisements for the ''XZA.''

[3] For example, if the representation clearly refers only to highway fuel economy, only the ''estimated highway mpg'' need be disclosed.

[4] Nothing in this section should be construed as prohibiting disclosure of both the city and highway estimates.

[5] The Commission will regard the following as the minimum disclosure necessary to comply with § 259.2(a)(2), regardless of the media in which the advertisement appears: ''EPA estimate(s).''

For television, if the estimated mpg appears in the video, the disclosure must appear in the video; if the estimated mpg is audio, the disclosure must be audio.

[6] For example, an advertisement could not state that ''according to EPA estimates new automobiles in this class get as little as X mpg (citing a figure from the city range) while EPA estimates that this automobile gets X + mpg (citing the EPA highway estimates or a number from the EPA estimated in-use fuel economy highway range for the automobile).

[7] The Commission will regard the following as constituting ''substantially more prominence:''

For television only: If the estimated city and/or highway mpg and any other mileage estimate(s) appear only in the visual portion, the estimated city and/or highway mpg must appear in numbers twice as large as those used for any other estimate, and must remain on the screen at least as long as any other estimate. If the estimated city and highway mpg appear in the audio portion, visual broadcast of any other estimate must be accompanied by the simultaneous, at least equally prominent, visual broadcast of the estimated city and/or highway mpg. Each visual estimated city and highway mpg must be broadcast against a solid color background that contrasts easily with the color used for the numbers when viewed on both color and black and white television.

For print only: The estimated city and/or highway mpg must appear in clearly legible type at least twice as large as that used for any other estimate. Alternatively, if the estimated city and highway mpg appear in type of the same size as such other estimate, they must be clearly legible and conspicuously circled. The estimated city and highway mpg must appear against a solid color, contrasting background. They may not appear in a footnote unless all references to fuel economy appear in a footnote.

audio, equal prominence must be given the ''estimated city mpg'' and/or the ''estimated highway mpg'' figure(s);[8]

(2) The source of the non-EPA test is clearly and conspicuously identified;

(3) The driving conditions and variables simulated by the test which differ from those used to measure the ''estimated city mpg'' and/or the ''estimated highway mpg,'' and which result in a change in fuel economy, are clearly and conspicuously disclosed.[9] Such conditions and variables may include, but are not limited to, road or dynamometer test, average speed, range of speed, hot or cold start, and temperature; and

(4) The advertisement clearly and conspicuously discloses any distinctions in ''vehicle configuration'' and other equipment affecting mileage performance (e.g., design or equipment differences which distinguish subconfigurations as defined by EPA) between the automobiles tested in the non-EPA test and the EPA tests.

[60 FR 56231, Nov. 8, 1995]

# PART 260—GUIDES FOR THE USE OF ENVIRONMENTAL MARKETING CLAIMS

Sec.

260.1 Statement of purpose.
260.2 Scope of guides.
260.3 Structure of the guides.
260.4 Review procedure.
260.5 Interpretation and substantiation of environmental marketing claims.
260.6 General principles.
260.7 Environmental marketing claims.
260.8 Environmental assessment.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

SOURCE: 61 FR 53316, Oct. 11, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

## § 260.1 Statement of purpose.

The guides in this part represent administrative interpretations of laws administered by the Federal Trade Commission for the guidance of the public in conducting its affairs in conformity with legal requirements. These guides specifically address the application of Section 5 of the FTC Act to environmental advertising and marketing practices. They provide the basis for voluntary compliance with such laws by members of industry. Conduct inconsistent with the positions articulated in these guides may result in corrective action by the Commission under Section 5 if, after investigation, the Commission has reason to believe that the behavior falls within the scope of conduct declared unlawful by the statute.

## § 260.2 Scope of guides.

These guides apply to environmental claims included in labeling, advertising, promotional materials and all other forms of marketing, whether asserted directly or by implication, through words, symbols, emblems, logos, depictions, product brand names, or through any other means. The guides apply to any claim about the environmental attributes of a product or package in connection with the sale, offering for sale, or marketing of such product or package for personal, family or household use, or for commercial, institutional or industrial use.

Because the guides are not legislative rules under Section 18 of the FTC Act, they are not themselves enforceable regulations, nor do they have the force and effect of law. The guides themselves do not preempt regulation of other federal agencies or of state and local bodies governing the use of environmental marketing claims. Compliance with federal, state or local law and regulations concerning such claims, however, will not necessarily

[8] The Commission will regard the following as constituting equal prominence. For radio and television when any other estimate is used in the audio: The estimated city and/or highway mpg must be stated, either before or after each disclosure of such other estimate at least as audibly as such other estimate.

[9] For dynamometer tests any difference between the EPA and non-EPA tests must be disclosed. For in-use tests, the Commission realizes that it is impossible to duplicate the EPA test conditions, and that in-use tests may be designed to simulate a particular driving situation. It must be clear from the context of the advertisement what driving situation is being simulated (e.g., cold weather driving, highway driving, heavy load conditions). Furthermore, any driving or vehicle condition must be disclosed if it is significantly different from that which an appreciable number of consumers (whose driving condition is being simulated) would expect to encounter.

preclude Commission law enforcement action under Section 5.

### §260.3 Structure of the guides.

The guides are composed of general principles and specific guidance on the use of environmental claims. These general principles and specific guidance are followed by examples that generally address a single deception concern. A given claim may raise issues that are addressed under more than one example and in more than one section of the guides. In many of the examples, one or more options are presented for qualifying a claim. These options are intended to provide a ''safe harbor'' for marketers who want certainty about how to make environmental claims. They do not represent the only permissible approaches to qualifying a claim. The examples do not illustrate all possible acceptable claims or disclosures that would be permissible under Section 5. In addition, some of the illustrative disclosures may be appropriate for use on labels but not in print or broadcast advertisements and vice versa. In some instances, the guides indicate within the example in what context or contexts a particular type of disclosure should be considered.

### §260.4 Review procedure.

The Commission will review the guides as part of its general program of reviewing all industry guides on an ongoing basis. Parties may petition the Commission to alter or amend these guides in light of substantial new evidence regarding consumer interpretation of a claim or regarding substantiation of a claim. Following review of such a petition, the Commission will take such action as it deems appropriate.

### §260.5 Interpretation and substantiation of environmental marketing claims.

Section 5 of the FTC Act makes unlawful deceptive acts and practices in or affecting commerce. The Commission's criteria for determining whether an express or implied claim has been made are enunciated in the Commission's Policy Statement on Deception.[1] In addition, any party making an express or implied claim that presents an objective assertion about the environmental attribute of a product or package must, at the time the claim is made, possess and rely upon a reasonable basis substantiating the claim. A reasonable basis consists of competent and reliable evidence. In the context of environmental marketing claims, such substantiation will often require competent and reliable scientific evidence, defined as tests, analyses, research, studies or other evidence based on the expertise of professionals in the relevant area, conducted and evaluated in an objective manner by persons qualified to do so, using procedures generally accepted in the profession to yield accurate and reliable results. Further guidance on the reasonable basis standard is set forth in the Commission's 1983 Policy Statement on the Advertising Substantiation Doctrine. 49 FR 30999 (August 2, 1984); *appended to Thompson Medical Co.*, 104 F.T.C. 648 (1984). The Commission has also taken action in a number of cases involving alleged deceptive or unsubstantiated environmental advertising claims. A current list of environmental marketing cases and/or copies of individual cases can be obtained by calling the FTC Public Reference Branch at (202) 326–2222.

[61 FR 53316, Oct. 11, 1996; 61 FR 67109, Dec. 19, 1996]

### §260.6 General principles.

The following general principles apply to all environmental marketing claims, including, but not limited to, those described in §260.7. In addition, §260.7 contains specific guidance applicable to certain environmental marketing claims. Claims should comport with all relevant provisions of these guides, not simply the provision that seems most directly applicable.

---

[1] *Cliffdale Associates, Inc.*, 103 F.T.C. 110, at 176, 176 n.7, n.8, Appendix, reprinting letter dated Oct. 14, 1983, from the Commission to The Honorable John D. Dingell, Chairman, Committee on Energy and Commerce, U.S. House of Representatives (1984) (''Deception Statement'').

(a) *Qualifications and disclosures:* The Commission traditionally has held that in order to be effective, any qualifications or disclosures such as those described in the guides in this part should be sufficiently clear and prominent to prevent deception. Clarity of language, relative type size and proximity to the claim being qualified, and an absence of contrary claims that could undercut effectiveness, will maximize the likelihood that the qualifications and disclosures are appropriately clear and prominent.

(b) *Distinction between benefits of product and package:* An environmental marketing claim should be presented in a way that makes clear whether the environmental attribute or benefit being asserted refers to the product, the product's packaging or to a portion or component of the product or packaging. In general, if the environmental attribute or benefit applies to all but minor, incidental components of a product or package, the claim need not be qualified to identify that fact. There may be exceptions to this general principle. For example, if an unqualified ''recyclable'' claim is made and the presence of the incidental component significantly limits the ability to recycle the product, then the claim would be deceptive.

*Example 1:* A box of aluminum foil is labeled with the claim ''recyclable,'' without further elaboration. Unless the type of product, surrounding language, or other context of the phrase establishes whether the claim refers to the foil or the box, the claim is deceptive if any part of either the box or the foil, other than minor, incidental components, cannot be recycled.

*Example 2:* A soft drink bottle is labeled ''recycled.'' The bottle is made entirely from recycled materials, but the bottle cap is not. Because reasonable consumers are likely to consider the bottle cap to be a minor, incidental component of the package, the claim is not deceptive. Similarly, it would not be deceptive to label a shopping bag ''recycled'' where the bag is made entirely of recycled material but the easily detachable handle, an incidental component, is not.

(c) *Overstatement of environmental attribute:* An environmental marketing claim should not be presented in a manner that overstates the environmental attribute or benefit, expressly or by implication. Marketers should avoid implications of significant environmental benefits if the benefit is in fact negligible.

*Example 1:* A package is labeled, ''50% more recycled content than before.'' The manufacturer increased the recycled content of its package from 2 percent recycled material to 3 percent recycled material. Although the claim is technically true, it is likely to convey the false impression that the advertiser has increased significantly the use of recycled material.

*Example 2:* A trash bag is labeled ''recyclable'' without qualification. Because trash bags will ordinarily not be separated out from other trash at the landfill or incinerator for recycling, they are highly unlikely to be used again for any purpose. Even if the bag is technically capable of being recycled, the claim is deceptive since it asserts an environmental benefit where no significant or meaningful benefit exists.

*Example 3:* A paper grocery sack is labeled ''reusable.'' The sack can be brought back to the store and reused for carrying groceries but will fall apart after two or three reuses, on average. Because reasonable consumers are unlikely to assume that a paper grocery sack is durable, the unqualified claim does not overstate the environmental benefit conveyed to consumers. The claim is not deceptive and does not need to be qualified to indicate the limited reuse of the sack.

*Example 4:* A package of paper coffee filters is labeled ''These filters were made with a chlorine-free bleaching process.'' The filters are bleached with a process that releases into the environment a reduced, but still significant, amount of the same harmful byproducts associated with chlorine bleaching. The claim is likely to overstate the product's benefits because it is likely to be interpreted by consumers to mean that the product's manufacture does not cause any of the environmental risks posed by chlorine bleaching. A claim, however, that the filters were ''bleached with a process that substantially reduces, but does not eliminate, harmful substances associated with chlorine bleaching'' would not, if substantiated, overstate the product's benefits and is unlikely to be deceptive.

(d) *Comparative claims:* Environmental marketing claims that include a comparative statement should be presented in a manner that makes the basis for the comparison sufficiently clear to avoid consumer deception. In addition, the advertiser should be able to substantiate the comparison.

*Example 1:* An advertiser notes that its shampoo bottle contains ''20% more recycled content.'' The claim in its context is ambiguous. Depending on contextual factors, it could be a comparison either to the advertiser's immediately preceding product or to a

competitor's product. The advertiser should clarify the claim to make the basis for comparison clear, for example, by saying ''20% more recycled content than our previous package.'' Otherwise, the advertiser should be prepared to substantiate whatever comparison is conveyed to reasonable consumers.

*Example 2:* An advertiser claims that ''our plastic diaper liner has the most recycled content.'' The advertised diaper does have more recycled content, calculated as a percentage of weight, than any other on the market, although it is still well under 100% recycled. Provided the recycled content and the comparative difference between the product and those of competitors are significant and provided the specific comparison can be substantiated, the claim is not deceptive.

*Example 3:* An ad claims that the advertiser's packaging creates ''less waste than the leading national brand.'' The advertiser's source reduction was implemented sometime ago and is supported by a calculation comparing the relative solid waste contributions of the two packages. The advertiser should be able to substantiate that the comparison remains accurate.

## §260.7 Environmental marketing claims.

Guidance about the use of environmental marketing claims is set forth below. Each guide is followed by several examples that illustrate, but do not provide an exhaustive list of, claims that do and do not comport with the guides. In each case, the general principles set forth in §260.6 should also be followed.[2]

(a) *General environmental benefit claims:* It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a product or package offers a general environmental benefit. Unqualified general claims of environmental benefit are difficult to interpret, and depending on their context, may convey a wide range of meanings to consumers. In many cases, such claims may convey that the product or package has specific and far-reaching environmental benefits. As explained in the Commission's Ad Substantiation Statement, every express and material, implied claim that the general assertion conveys to reasonable consumers about an objective quality, feature or attribute of a product must be substantiated. Unless this substantiation duty can be met, broad environmental claims should either be avoided or qualified, as necessary, to prevent deception about the specific nature of the environmental benefit being asserted.

*Example 1:* A brand name like ''Eco-Safe'' would be deceptive if, in the context of the product so named, it leads consumers to believe that the product has environmental benefits which cannot be substantiated by the manufacturer. The claim would not be deceptive if ''Eco-Safe'' were followed by clear and prominent qualifying language limiting the safety representation to a particular product attribute for which it could be substantiated, and provided that no other deceptive implications were created by the context.

*Example 2:* A product wrapper is printed with the claim ''Environmentally Friendly.'' Textual comments on the wrapper explain that the wrapper is ''Environmentally Friendly because it was not chlorine bleached, a process that has been shown to create harmful substances.'' The wrapper was, in fact, not bleached with chlorine. However, the production of the wrapper now creates and releases to the environment significant quantities of other harmful substances. Since consumers are likely to interpret the ''Environmentally Friendly'' claim, in combination with the textual explanation, to mean that no significant harmful substances are currently released to the environment, the ''Environmentally Friendly'' claim would be deceptive.

*Example 3:* A pump spray product is labeled ''environmentally safe.'' Most of the product's active ingredients consist of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) that may cause smog by contributing to ground-level ozone formation. The claim is deceptive because, absent further qualification, it is likely to convey to consumers that use of the product will not result in air pollution or other harm to the environment.

*Example 4:* A lawn care pesticide is advertised as ''essentially non-toxic'' and ''practically non-toxic.'' Consumers would likely interpret these claims in the context of such a product as applying not only to human health effects but also to the product's environmental effects. Since the claims would likely convey to consumers that the product does not pose any risk to humans or the environment, if the pesticide in fact poses a significant risk to humans or environment, the claims would be deceptive.

*Example 5:* A product label contains an environmental seal, either in the form of a globe icon, or a globe icon with only the text ''Earth Smart'' around it. Either label is

[2] These guides do not address claims based on a ''lifecycle'' theory of environmental benefit. Such analyses are still in their infancy and thus the Commission lacks sufficient information on which to base guidance at this time.

likely to convey to consumers that the product is environmentally superior to other products. If the manufacturer cannot substantiate this broad claim, the claim would be deceptive. The claims would not be deceptive if they were accompanied by clear and prominent qualifying language limiting the environmental superiority representation to the particular product attribute or attributes for which they could be substantiated, provided that no other deceptive implications were created by the context.

*Example 6:* A product is advertised as ''environmentally preferable.'' This claim is likely to convey to consumers that this product is environmentally superior to other products. If the manufacturer cannot substantiate this broad claim, the claim would be deceptive. The claim would not be deceptive if it were accompanied by clear and prominent qualifying language limiting the environmental superiority representation to the particular product attribute or attributes for which it could be substantiated, provided that no other deceptive implications were created by the context.

(b) *Degradable/biodegradable/photodegradable:* It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a product or package is degradable, biodegradable or photodegradable. An unqualified claim that a product or package is degradable, biodegradable or photodegradable should be substantiated by competent and reliable scientific evidence that the entire product or package will completely break down and return to nature, i.e., decompose into elements found in nature within a reasonably short period of time after customary disposal. Claims of degradability, biodegradability or photodegradability should be qualified to the extent necessary to avoid consumer deception about:

(1) The product or package's ability to degrade in the environment where it is customarily disposed; and

(2) The rate and extent of degradation.

*Example 1:* A trash bag is marketed as ''degradable,'' with no qualification or other disclosure. The marketer relies on soil burial tests to show that the product will decompose in the presence of water and oxygen. The trash bags are customarily disposed of in incineration facilities or at sanitary landfills that are managed in a way that inhibits degradation by minimizing moisture and oxygen. Degradation will be irrelevant for those trash bags that are incinerated and, for those disposed of in landfills, the marketer does not possess adequate substantiation that the bags will degrade in a reasonably short period of time in a landfill. The claim is therefore deceptive.

*Example 2:* A commercial agricultural plastic mulch film is advertised as ''Photodegradable'' and qualified with the phrase, ''Will break down into small pieces if left uncovered in sunlight.'' The claim is supported by competent and reliable scientific evidence that the product will break down in a reasonably short period of time after being exposed to sunlight and into sufficiently small pieces to become part of the soil. The qualified claim is not deceptive. Because the claim is qualified to indicate the limited extent of breakdown, the advertiser need not meet the elements for an unqualified photodegradable claim, i.e., that the product will not only break down, but also will decompose into elements found in nature.

*Example 3:* A soap or shampoo product is advertised as ''biodegradable,'' with no qualification or other disclosure. The manufacturer has competent and reliable scientific evidence demonstrating that the product, which is customarily disposed of in sewage systems, will break down and decompose into elements found in nature in a short period of time. The claim is not deceptive.

*Example 4:* A plastic six-pack ring carrier is marked with a small diamond. Many state laws require that plastic six-pack ring carriers degrade if littered, and several state laws also require that the carriers be marked with a small diamond symbol to indicate that they meet performance standards for degradability. The use of the diamond, by itself, does not constitute a claim of degradability.[3]

(c) *Compostable.* It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a product or package is compostable. An unqualified claim that a product or package is compostable should be substantiated by competent and reliable scientific evidence that all the materials in the product or package will break down into, or otherwise become part of, usable compost (e.g., soil-conditioning material, mulch) in a safe and timely manner in an appropriate composting program or facility, or in a home compost pile or device. Claims of compostability should be qualified to the extent necessary to avoid consumer deception. An unqualified claim may be deceptive.

[3] The guides' treatment of unqualified degradable claims is intended to help prevent consumer deception and is not intended to establish performance standards for laws intended to ensure the degradability of products when littered.

(1) If municipal composting facilities are not available to a substantial majority of consumers or communities where the package is sold;

(2) If the claim misleads consumers about the environmental benefit provided when the product is disposed of in a landfill; or

(3) If consumers misunderstand the claim to mean that the package can be safely composted in their home compost pile or device, when in fact it cannot.

*Example 1:* A manufacturer indicates that its unbleached coffee filter is compostable. The unqualified claim is not deceptive provided the manufacturer can substantiate that the filter can be converted safely to usable compost in a timely manner in a home compost pile or device, as well as in an appropriate composting program or facility.

*Example 2:* A lawn and leaf bag is labeled as ''Compostable in California Municipal Yard Waste Composting Facilities.'' The bag contains toxic ingredients that are released into the compost material as the bag breaks down. The claim is deceptive if the presence of these toxic ingredients prevents the compost from being usable.

*Example 3:* A manufacturer indicates that its paper plate is suitable for home composting. If the manufacturer possesses substantiation for claiming that the paper plate can be converted safely to usable compost in a home compost pile or device, this claim is not deceptive even if no municipal composting facilities exist.

*Example 4:* A manufacturer makes an unqualified claim that its package is compostable. Although municipal composting facilities exist where the product is sold, the package will not break down into usable compost in a home compost pile or device. To avoid deception, the manufacturer should disclose that the package is not suitable for home composting.

*Example 5:* A nationally marketed lawn and leaf bag is labeled ''compostable.'' Also printed on the bag is a disclosure that the bag is not designed for use in home compost piles. The bags are in fact composted in municipal yard waste composting programs in many communities around the country, but such programs are not available to a substantial majority of consumers where the bag is sold. The claim is deceptive since reasonable consumers living in areas not served by municipal yard waste programs may understand the reference to mean that composting facilities accepting the bags are available in their area. To avoid deception, the claim should be qualified to indicate the limited availability of such programs, for example, by stating, ''Appropriate facilities may not exist in your area.'' Other examples of adequate qualification of the claim include providing the approximate percentage of communities or the population for which such programs are available.

*Example 6:* A manufacturer sells a disposable diaper that bears the legend, ''This diaper can be composted where municipal solid waste composting facilities exist. There are currently [X number of] municipal solid waste composting facilities across the country.'' The claim is not deceptive, assuming that composting facilities are available as claimed and the manufacturer can substantiate that the diaper can be converted safely to usable compost in municipal solid waste composting facilities.

*Example 7:* A manufacturer markets yard waste bags only to consumers residing in particular geographic areas served by county yard waste composting programs. The bags meet specifications for these programs and are labeled, ''Compostable Yard Waste Bag for County Composting Programs.'' The claim is not deceptive. Because the bags are compostable where they are sold, no qualification is required to indicate the limited availability of composting facilities.

(d) *Recyclable.* It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a product or package is recyclable. A product or package should not be marketed as recyclable unless it can be collected, separated or otherwise recovered from the solid waste stream for use in the form of raw materials, in the manufacture or assembly of a new package or product. Unqualified claims of recyclability for a product or package may be made if the entire product or package, excluding minor incidental components, is recyclable. For products or packages that are made of both recyclable and non-recyclable components, the recyclable claim should be adequately qualified to avoid consumer deception about which portions or components of the product or package are recyclable. Claims of recyclability should be qualified to the extent necessary to avoid consumer deception about any limited availability of recycling programs and collection sites. If an incidental component significantly limits the ability to recycle the product, the claim would be deceptive. A product or package that is made from recyclable material, but, because of its shape, size or some other attribute, is not accepted in recycling programs for such material, should not be marketed as recyclable.

*Example 1:* A packaged product is labeled with an unqualified claim, ''recyclable.'' It is unclear from the type of product and other context whether the claim refers to the product or its package. The unqualified claim is likely to convey to reasonable consumers that all of both the product and its packaging that remain after normal use of the product, exempt for minor, incidental components, can be recycled. Unless each such message can be substantiated, the claim should be qualified to indicate what portions are recyclable.

*Example 2:* A plastic package is labeled on the bottom with the Society of the Plastics Industry (SPI) code, consisting of a design of arrows in a triangular shape containing a number and abbreviation identifying the component plastic resin. Without more, the use of the SPI symbol (or similar industry codes) on the bottom of the package, or in a similarly inconspicuous location, does not constitute a claim of recyclability.

*Example 3:* A container can be burned in incinerator facilities to produce heat and power. It cannot, however, be recycled into new products or packaging. Any claim that the container is recyclable would be deceptive.

*Example 4:* A nationally marketed bottle bears the unqualified statement that it is ''recyclable.'' Collection sites for recycling the material in question are not available to a substantial majority of consumers or communities, although collection sites are established in a significant percentage of communities or available to a significant percentage of the population. The unqualified claim is deceptive since, unless evidence shows otherwise, reasonable consumers living in communities not served by programs may conclude that recycling programs for the material are available in their area. To avoid deception, the claim should be qualified to indicate the limited availability of programs, for example, by stating, ''Check to see if recycling facilities exist in your area.'' Other examples of adequate qualifications of the claim include providing the approximate percentage of communities or the population to whom programs are available.

*Example 5:* A soda bottle is marketed nationally and labeled, ''Recyclable where facilities exist.'' Recycling programs for material of this type and size are available in a significant percentage of communities or to a significant percentage of the population, but are not available to a substantial majority of consumers. The claim is deceptive since, unless evidence shows otherwise, reasonable consumers living in communities not served by programs may understand this phrase to mean that programs are available in their area. To avoid deception, the claim should be further qualified to indicate the limited availability of programs, for example, by using any of the approaches set forth in Example 4 above.

*Example 6:* A plastic detergent bottle is marketed as follows: ''Recyclable in the few communities with facilities for colored HDPE bottles.'' Collection sites for recycling the container have been established in a half-dozen major metropolitan areas. This disclosure illustrates one approach to qualifying a claim adequately to prevent deception about the limited availability of recycling programs where collection facilities are not established in a significant percentage of communities or available to a significant percentage of the population. Other examples of adequate qualification of the claim include providing the number of communities with programs, or the percentage of communities or the population to which programs are available.

*Example 7:* A label claims that the package ''includes some recyclable material.'' The package is composed of four layers of different materials, bonded together. One of the layers is made from the recyclable material, but the others are not. While programs for recycling this type of material are available to a substantial majority of consumers, only a few of those programs have the capability to separate out the recyclable layer. Even though it is technologically possible to separate the layers, the claim is not adequately qualified to avoid consumer deception. An appropriately qualified claim would be, ''includes material recyclable in the few communities that collect multi-layer products.'' Other examples of adequate qualification of the claim include providing the number of communities with programs, or the percentage of communities or the population to which programs are available.

*Example 8:* A product is marketed as having a ''recyclable'' container. The product is distributed and advertised only in Missouri. Collection sites for recycling the container are available to a substantial majority of Missouri residents, but are not yet available nationally. Because programs are generally available where the product is marketed, the unqualified claim does not deceive consumers about the limited availability of recycling programs.

(e) *Recycled content:* A recycled content claim may be made only for materials that have been recovered or otherwise diverted from the solid waste stream, either during the manufacturing process (pre-consumer), or after consumer use (post-consumer). To the extent the source of recycled content includes pre-consumer material, the manufacturer or advertiser must have substantiation for concluding that the pre-consumer material would otherwise have entered the solid waste

stream. In asserting a recycled content claim, distinctions may be made between pre-consumer and post-consumer materials. Where such distinctions are asserted, any express or implied claim about the specific pre-consumer or post-consumer content of a product or package must be substantiated. It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a product or package is made of recycled material. Unqualified claims of recycled content may be made only if the entire product or package, excluding minor, incidental components, is made from recycled material. For products or packages that are only partially made of recycled material, a recycled claim should be adequately qualified to avoid consumer deception about the amount, by weight, of recycled content in the finished product or package.

*Example 1:* A manufacturer routinely collects spilled raw material and scraps left over from the original manufacturing process. After a minimal amount of reprocessing, the manufacturer combines the spills and scraps with virgin material for use in further production of the same product. A claim that the product contains recycled material is deceptive since the spills and scraps to which the claim refers are normally reused by industry within the original manufacturing process, and would not normally have entered the waste stream.

*Example 2:* A manufacturer purchases material from a firm that collects discarded material from other manufacturers and resells it. All of the material was diverted from the solid waste stream and is not normally reused by industry within the original manufacturing process. The manufacturer includes the weight of this material in its calculations of the recycled content of its products. A claim of recycled content based on this calculation is not deceptive because, absent the purchase and reuse of this material, it would have entered the waste stream.

*Example 3:* A greeting card is composed 30% by fiber weight of paper collected from consumers after use of a paper product, and 20% by fiber weight of paper that was generated after completion of the paper-making process, diverted from the solid waste stream, and otherwise would not normally have been reused in the original manufacturing process. The marketer of the card may claim either that the product ''contains 50% recycled fiber,'' or may identify the specific pre-consumer and/or post-consumer content by stating, for example, that the product ''contains 50% total recycled fiber, including 30% post-consumer.''

*Example 4:* A paperboard package with 20% recycled fiber by weight is labeled as containing ''20% recycled fiber.'' Some of the recycled content was composed of material collected from consumers after use of the original product. The rest was composed of overrun newspaper stock never sold to customers. The claim is not deceptive.

*Example 5:* A product in a multi-component package, such as a paperboard box in a shrink-wrapped plastic cover, indicates that it has recycled packaging. The paperboard box is made entirely of recycled material, but the plastic cover is not. The claim is deceptive since, without qualification, it suggests that both components are recycled. A claim limited to the paperboard box would not be deceptive.

*Example 6:* A package is made from layers of foil, plastic, and paper laminated together, although the layers are indistinguishable to consumers. The label claims that ''one of the three layers of this package is made of recycled plastic.'' The plastic layer is made entirely of recycled plastic. The claim is not deceptive provided the recycled plastic layer constitutes a significant component of the entire package.

*Example 7:* A paper product is labeled as containing ''100% recycled fiber.'' The claim is not deceptive if the advertiser can substantiate the conclusion that 100% by weight of the fiber in the finished product is recycled.

*Example 8:* A frozen dinner is marketed in a package composed of a cardboard box over a plastic tray. The package bears the legend, ''package made from 30% recycled material.'' Each packaging component amounts to one-half the weight of the total package. The box is 20% recycled content by weight, while the plastic tray is 40% recycled content by weight. The claim is not deceptive, since the average amount of recycled material is 30%.

*Example 9:* A paper greeting card is labeled as containing 50% recycled fiber. The seller purchases paper stock from several sources and the amount of recycled fiber in the stock provided by each source varies. Because the 50% figure is based on the annual weighted average of recycled material purchased from the sources after accounting for fiber loss during the production process, the claim is permissible.

*Example 10:* A packaged food product is labeled with a three chasing arrows symbol without any further explanatory text as to its meaning. By itself, the symbol is likely to convey that the packaging is both ''recyclable'' and is made entirely from recycled material. Unless both messages can be substantiated, the claim should be qualified as to whether it refers to the package's recyclability and/or its recycled content. If a ''recyclable claim'' is being made, the label may need to disclose the limited availability of recycling programs for the package. If a

recycled content claim is being made and the packaging is not made entirely from recycled material, the label should disclose the percentage of recycled content.

(f) *Source reduction:* It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a product or package has been reduced or is lower in weight, volume or toxicity. Source reduction claims should be qualified to the extent necessary to avoid consumer deception about the amount of the source reduction and about the basis for any comparison asserted.

*Example 1:* An ad claims that solid waste created by disposal of the advertiser's packaging is ''now 10% less than our previous package.'' The claim is not deceptive if the advertiser has substantiation that shows that disposal of the current package contributes 10% less waste by weight or volume to the solid waste stream when compared with the immediately preceding version of the package.

*Example 2:* An advertiser notes that disposal of its product generates ''10% less waste.'' The claim is ambiguous. Depending on contextual factors, it could be a comparison either to the immediately preceding product or to a competitor's product. The ''10% less waste'' reference is deceptive unless the seller clarifies which comparison is intended and substantiates that comparison, or substantiates both possible interpretations of the claim.

(g) *Refillable:* It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a package is refillable. An unqualified refillable claim should not be asserted unless a system is provided for the collection and return of the package for refill or the later refill of the package by consumers with product subsequently sold in another package. A package should not be marketed with an unqualified refillable claim, if it is up to the consumer to find new ways to refill the package.

*Example 1:* A container is labeled ''refillable x times.'' The manufacturer has the capability to refill returned containers and can show that the container will withstand being refilled at least x times. The manufacturer, however, has established no collection program. The unqualified claim is deceptive because there is no means for collection and return of the container to the manufacturer for refill.

*Example 2:* A bottle of fabric softener states that it is in a ''handy refillable container.'' The manufacturer also sells a large-sized container that indicates that the consumer is expected to use it to refill the smaller container. The manufacturer sells the large-sized container in the same market areas where it sells the small container. The claim is not deceptive because there is a means for consumers to refill the smaller container from larger containers of the same product.

(h) *Ozone safe and ozone friendly:* It is deceptive to misrepresent, directly or by implication, that a product is safe for or ''friendly'' to the ozone layer or the atmosphere. For example, a claim that a product does not harm the ozone layer is deceptive if the product contains an ozone-depleting substance.

*Example 1:* A product is labeled ''ozone friendly.'' The claim is deceptive if the product contains any ozone-depleting substance, including those substances listed as Class I or Class II chemicals in Title VI of the Clean Air Act Amendments of 1990, Public Law 101–549, and others subsequently designated by EPA as ozone-depleting substances. Chemicals that have been listed or designated as Class I are chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), halons, carbon tetrachloride, 1,1,1-trichloroethane, methyl bromide and hydrobromofluorocarbons (HBFCs). Chemicals that have been listed as Class II are hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs).

*Example 2:* An aerosol air freshener is labeled ''ozone friendly.'' Some of the product's ingredients are volatile organic compounds (VOCs) that may cause smog by contributing to ground-level ozone formation. The claim is likely to convey to consumers that the product is safe for the atmosphere as a whole, and is therefore, deceptive.

*Example 3:* The seller of an aerosol product makes an unqualified claim that its product ''Contains no CFCs.'' Although the product does not contain CFCs, it does contain HCFC–22, another ozone depleting ingredient. Because the claim ''Contains no CFCs'' may imply to reasonable consumers that the product does not harm the ozone layer, the claim is deceptive.

*Example 4:* A product is labeled ''This product is 95% less damaging to the ozone layer than past formulations that contained CFCs.'' The manufacturer has substituted HCFCs for CFC–12, and can substantiate that this substitution will result in 95% less ozone depletion. The qualified comparative claim is not likely to be deceptive.

[57 FR 36363, Aug. 13, 1992, as amended at 61 FR 53318, Oct. 11, 1996; 61 FR 67109, Dec. 19, 1996]

## § 260.8 Environmental assessment.

National Environmental Policy Act. In accordance with § 1.83 of the FTC's Procedures and Rules of Practice[4] and

[4] 16 CFR 1.83.

§ 1501.3 of the Council on Environmental Quality's regulations for implementing the procedural provisions of National Environmental Policy Act, 42 U.S.C. 4321 *et seq.* (1969),[5] the Commission prepared an environmental assessment when the guides were issued in July 1992 for purposes of providing sufficient evidence and analysis to determine whether issuing the Guides for the Use of Environmental Marketing Claims required preparation of an environmental impact statement or a finding of no significant impact. After careful study, the Commission concluded that issuance of the Guides would not have a significant impact on the environment and that any such impact ''would be so uncertain that environmental analysis would be based on speculation.''[6] The Commission concluded that an environmental impact statement was therefore not required. The Commission based its conclusions on the findings in the environmental assessment that issuance of the guides would have no quantifiable environmental impact because the guides are voluntary in nature, do not preempt inconsistent state laws, are based on the FTC's deception policy, and, when used in conjunction with the Commission's policy of case-by-case enforcement, are intended to aid compliance with section 5(a) of the FTC Act as that Act applies to environmental marketing claims.

The Commission has concluded that modifications to the guides in this part will not have a significant effect on the environment, for the same reasons that the issuance of the original guides in 1992 was deemed not to have a significant effect on the environment. Therefore, the Commission concludes that an environmental impact statement is not required in conjunction with the 1996 modifications to the Guides for the Use of Environmental Marketing Claims.

[5] 40 CFR 1501.3.
[6] 16 CFR 1.83(a).

# SUBCHAPTER C—REGULATIONS UNDER SPECIFIC ACTS OF CONGRESS

## PART 300—RULES AND REGULATIONS UNDER THE WOOL PRODUCTS LABELING ACT OF 1939

DEFINITIONS

Sec.
300.1 Terms defined.

LABELING

300.2 General requirement.
300.3 Required label information.
300.4 Registered identification number.
300.5 Required label and method of affixing.
300.6 Labels to be avoided.
300.7 English language requirement.
300.8 Use of fiber trademark and generic names.
300.9 Abbreviations, ditto marks, and asterisks.
300.10 Arrangement of label information.
300.11 Improper methods of labeling.
300.12 Labeling of pairs or products containing two or more units.
300.13 Name or other identification required to appear on labels.
300.14 Substitute label requirement.
300.15 Labeling of containers or packaging of wool products.
300.16 Ornamentation.
300.17 Use of the term ''all'' or ''100%''.
300.18 Use of name of specialty fiber.
300.19 Use of terms ''mohair'' and ''cashmere''.
300.20 Use of the terms ''virgin'' or ''new''.
300.21 Use of separate label for name or registered identification number.
300.22 Marking of samples, swatches, or specimens.
300.23 Sectional disclosure of content.
300.24 Linings, paddings, stiffening, trimmings and facings.
300.25 Representations as to fiber content.
300.25a Country where wool products are processed or manufactured.
300.25b Country of origin in mail order advertising.
300.26 Pile fabrics and products composed thereof.
300.27 Wool products containing superimposed or added fibers.
300.28 Undetermined quantities of reclaimed fibers.
300.29 Garments or products composed of or containing miscellaneous cloth scraps.
300.30 Deceptive labeling in general.

MANUFACTURERS' RECORDS

300.31 Maintenance of records.

GUARANTEES

300.32 Form of separate guaranty.
300.33 Continuing guaranty filed with Federal Trade Commission.
300.34 Reference to existing guaranty on labels not permitted.

GENERAL

300.35 Hearings under section 4(d) of the act.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 68 *et seq.* and 15 U.S.C. 70 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 6 FR 3426, July 15, 1941, unless otherwise noted.

DEFINITIONS

### § 300.1 Terms defined.

(a) The term *Act* means the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939 (approved October 14, 1940, Public No. 850, 76th Congress, Third Session, 54 Stat. 1128, 15 U.S.C. 68 et. seq. as amended by Pub. L. 96–242, 94 Stat. 344).

(b) The terms *rule, rules, regulations* and *rules and regulations* mean the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission pursuant to the Act.

(c) The term *ornamentation* means any fibers or yarns imparting a visibly discernible pattern or design to a yarn or fabric.

(d) The term *fiber trademark* means a word or words used by a person to identify a particular fiber produced or sold by him and to distinguish it from fibers of the same generic class produced or sold by others. Such term shall not include any trademark, product mark, house mark, trade name or other name which does not identify a particular fiber.

(e) The terms *required information* or *information required* mean such information as is required to be disclosed on the required stamp, tag, label or other means of identification under the Act and regulations.

(f) The definitions of terms contained in section 2 of the Act shall be applicable also to such terms when used in rules promulgated under the Act.

(g) The term *United States* means the several States, the District of Columbia, and the territories and possessions of the United States.

(h) The terms *mail order catalog* and *mail order promotional material* mean any printed materials used in the direct sale or direct offering for sale of wool products that are distributed or shown to ultimate consumers and solicit the ultimate consumers to purchase such wool products by mail, telephone or some other method without examining the actual product purchased.

(i) The terms *label, labels, labeled,* and *labeling* mean the stamp, tag, label, or other means of identification, or authorized substitute therefore, required to be on or affixed to wool products by the Act or Regulations and on which the information required is to appear.

[29 FR 6623, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44261, July 1, 1980; 50 FR 15105, Apr. 17, 1985]

LABELING

### §300.2 General requirement.

Each and every wool product subject to the act shall be marked by a stamp, tag, label, or other means of identification, in conformity with the requirements of the act and the rules and regulations thereunder.

### §300.3 Required label information.

(a) The marking of wool products under the Act shall be in the form of a stamp, tag, label or other means of identification, showing and displaying upon the product the required information legibly, conspicuously, and nondeceptively. The information required to be shown and displayed upon the product in the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification, shall be that which is required by the Act and the rules and regulations thereunder, including the following:

(1) The fiber content of the product specified in section 4(a)(2)(A) of the Act. The generic names and percentages by weight of the constituent fibers present in the wool product, exclusive of permissive ornamentation, shall appear on such label with any percentage of fiber or fibers designated as ''other fiber'' or ''other fibers'' as provided by section 4(a)(2)(A)(5) of the Act appearing last.

(2) The maximum percentage of the total weight of the wool product of any nonfibrous loading, filling or adulterating matter as prescribed by section 4(a)(2)(B) of the Act.

(3) The name or registered identification number issued by the Commission of the manufacturer of the wool product or the name or registered identification number of one or more persons subject to section 3 of the Act with respect to such wool product.

(4) The name of the country where the wool product was processed or manufactured.

(b) In disclosing the constituent fibers in information required by the Act and regulations or in any non-required information, no fiber present in the amount of less than five percentum shall be designated by its generic name or fiber trademark but shall be designated as ''other fiber,'' except that the percentage of wool or recycled wool shall always be stated, in accordance with section 4(a)(2)(A) of the Act. Where more than one of such fibers, other than wool or recycled wool, are present in amounts of less than five per centum, they shall be designated in the aggregate as ''other fibers.'' Provided, however, that nothing contained herein shall prevent the disclosure of any fiber present in the product which has a clearly established and definite functional significance where present in the amount stated and the functional significance of such fiber is clearly and non-deceptively stated on the label in conjunction with such disclosure.

[29 FR 6623, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44261, July 1, 1980; 50 FR 15105, Apr. 17, 1985]

### §300.4 Registered identification number.

(a) A registered identification number assigned by the Federal Trade Commission under and in accordance with the provisions of this section may be used upon the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification required under the Act to be affixed to a wool product, as and for the name of the person to whom such number has been assigned.

(b) Any manufacturer of a wool product or person subject to section 3 of the Act with respect to such wool product, residing in the United States, may make application to the Federal Trade

Commission for a registered identification number, or such numbers as the Commission may deem appropriate, for use by the applicant on the required stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification under the Act, as and for his name with fully as binding effect.

(c) Registered identification numbers shall be used only by the person or concern to whom they are issued, and such numbers are not transferable or assignable. Registered identification numbers shall be subject to cancellation whenever any such number was procured or has been used improperly or contrary to the requirement of the Acts administered by the Federal Trade Commission, and regulations promulgated thereunder, or when otherwise deemed necessary in the public interest.

(d) Registered identification numbers assigned under this section may be used on labels required in labeling products subject to the provisions of the Fur Products Labeling Act and Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, and numbers previously assigned by the Commission under such Acts may be used as and for the required name in labeling under this Act. When so used by the person or firm to whom assigned, the use of the numbers shall be construed as identifying and binding the applicant as fully and in all respects as though assigned under the specific Act for which it is used.

(e) Form of application for registered identification numbers (Form to be used by all applicants):

**APPLICATION FOR A REGISTERED IDENTIFICATION NUMBER**

Approved by OMB
3084—0038
Expires: 11/1/84

1. LEGAL NAME OF APPLICANT FIRM

2. NAME UNDER WHICH APPLICANT DOES BUSINESS, IF DIFFERENT FROM LEGAL NAME

3. TYPE OF COMPANY

☐ PROPRIETORSHIP ☐ PARTNERSHIP ☐ CORPORATION

4. ADDRESS OF PRINCIPAL OFFICE OR PLACE OF BUSINESS (*Include Zip Code*)

5. TYPE OF BUSINESS (*Put an 'X' in all the boxes that apply*)

☐ MANUFACTURING ☐ IMPORTING ☐ WHOLESALING

☐ OTHER (*Please specify*) _____

6. LIST PRODUCTS

7. CERTIFICATION

The products listed in item six (6) above are subject to one or more of the following Acts: The Textile Fiber Products Identification Act (15 U.S.C. §§ 70-70k), The Wool Products Labeling Act (15 U.S.C. §§ 68-68j), or the Fur Products Labeling Act (15 U.S.C. §§ 69-69k). By filing this form with the Federal Trade Commisssion the company named above applies for a registered identification number to use on labels required by these Acts.

Under penalty of perjury, I certify that the information supplied on this form is true and correct.

*SIGNATURE OF PROPRIETOR, PARTNER, OR CORPORATE OFFICIAL*

| 8. NAME (*Please print or type*) | 9. TITLE | 10. DATE |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

**INSTRUCTIONS**

The Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, The Wool Products Labeling Act, or the Fur Products Labeling Act provide that any marketer or manufacturer of fibrous or fur products covered by those Acts may apply for a registered identification number. Companies can then use the registered identification number, instead of the name under which the Company does business, on the labels, tags, tickets, or stamps that those Acts require to be attached to covered products.

In completing this application, please observe the following:

(a) All blanks must be filled in. Include your Zip Code in Item 4.

(b) In Item 7 if the applicant firm is a partnership, a principal partner should sign. If a corporation, one of its principal officers should sign, giving his/her title in Item 9.

(c) Send **one** completed copy to:

Federal Trade Commission
Los Angeles Regional Office
11000 Wilshire Blvd., Suite 13209
Los Angeles, CA 90024

A registered identification number (RN) issued by the Commission continues in effect until revoked. The holder of the assigned number must immediately notify the Los Angeles Regional Office in writing of any change in business status. Any change in the address of the holder's principal office and place of business must also be promptly reported.

[29 FR 6623, May 21, 1964, as amended at 48 FR 12516, Mar. 25, 1983]

## §300.5 Required label and method of affixing.

(a) A label is required to be affixed to each wool product and, where required, to its package or container in a secure manner. Such label shall be conspicuous and shall be of such durability as to remain attached to the product and its package throughout any distribution, sale, resale and until sold and delivered to the ultimate consumer.

(b) Each wool product with a neck must have the label affixed to the inside center of the neck midway between the shoulder seams *provided,* however, that the required label may appear in close proximity to another label affixed to the inside center of the neck as long as the required label remains conspicuous to the consumer and, *provided further,* that if the country of origin is disclosed on a label affixed to the inside center of the neck or in close proximity, the label containing the country of origin, fiber content and RN or name of the company may appear in another conspicuous location on the inside or on the outside of the garment. All other wool products shall have the label affixed to a conspicuous spot on the inner side of the product or in a conspicuous place on the outside of the product.

(c) In the case of hosiery products, this section does not require affixing a label to each hosiery product contained in a package if, (1) such hosiery products are intended for sale to the ultimate consumer in such package, (2) such package has affixed to it a label bearing the required information for the hosiery products contained in the package, and (3) the information on the label affixed to the package is equally applicable to each wool product contained therein.

[50 FR 15105, Apr. 17, 1985]

### § 300.6 Labels to be avoided.

Stamps, tags, labels, or other marks of identification, which are insecurely attached, or which in the course of offering the product for sale, selling, reselling, transporting, marketing, or handling incident thereto are likely to become detached, indistinct, obliterated, illegible, mutilated, inaccessible, or inconspicuous, shall not be used.

### § 300.7 English language requirement.

All words, statements and other information required by or under authority of the Act and the rules and regulations thereunder to appear on the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification, shall appear in the English language. If the product bears any stamp, tag, label, or mark of identification which contains any of the required information in a language other than English, all of the required information shall appear both in such other language and in the English language.

### § 300.8 Use of fiber trademark and generic names.

(a) Except where another name is required or permitted under the Act or regulations, the respective common generic name of the fiber shall be used when naming fibers in the required information; as for example, ''wool,'' ''recycled wool,'' ''cotton,'' ''rayon,'' ''silk,'' ''linen,'' ''acetate,'' ''nylon,'' ''polyester.''

(b) The generic names of manufactured fibers as heretofore or hereafter established in § 303.7 of this part (Rule 7) of the regulations promulgated under the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act (72 Stat. 1717; 15 U.S.C. 70) shall be used in setting forth the required fiber content information as to wool products.

(c) A non-deceptive fiber trademark may be used on a label in conjunction with the generic name of the fiber to which it relates. Where such a trademark is placed on a label in conjunction with the required information, the generic name of the fiber must appear in immediate conjunction therewith, and such trademark and generic name must appear in type or lettering of equal size and conspicuousness.

(d) Where a generic name or a fiber trademark is used on any label, whether required or nonrequired, a full and complete fiber content disclosure with percentages shall be made on such label in accordance with the Act and regulations.

(e) If a fiber trademark is not used in the required information, but is used elsewhere on the label as nonrequired information, the generic name of the fiber shall accompany the fiber trademark in legible and conspicuous type or lettering the first time the trademark is used.

(f) No fiber trademark or generic name or word, coined word, symbol or depiction which connotes or implies any fiber trademark or generic name shall be used on any label or elsewhere on the product in such a manner as to be false, deceptive, or misleading as to fiber content, or to indicate directly or

indirectly that a wool product is composed wholly or in part of a particular fiber, when such is not the case.

(g) The term *fur fiber* may be used to describe the hair or fur fiber or mixtures thereof of any animal or animals other than the sheep, lamb, Angora goat, Cashmere goat, camel, alpaca, llama and vicuna. If the name, symbol, or depiction of any animal producing the hair or fur fiber is used on the stamp, tag, label, or other means of identification applied or affixed to the wool product, the percentage by weight of such hair or fur fiber in the total fiber weight of the wool product shall be separately stated in the required fiber content disclosure: *Provided,* That no such name, symbol or depiction shall be used where such hair or fur fiber is present in the amount of less than five per centum of the total fiber weight. No such name, symbol or depiction shall be used in such a way as to imply in any manner that a wool product contains the fur or hair of an animal when the hair or fur fiber of such animal is not present in the product in the amount of five per centum or more of the total fiber weight. The following are examples of fiber content disclosures under this paragraph:

60% Wool
40% Fur Fiber
or
60% Wool
30% Fur Fiber
10% Angora Rabbit

[29 FR 6624, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44261, July 1, 1980]

### §300.9 Abbreviations, ditto marks, and asterisks.

(a) In disclosing required information, words or terms shall not be designated by ditto marks or appear in footnotes referred to by asterisks or other symbols in required information, and shall not be abbreviated.

(b) Where the generic name of a textile fiber is required to appear in immediate conjunction with a fiber trademark, a disclosure of the generic name by means of a footnote, to which reference is made by use of an asterisk or other symbol placed next to the fiber trademark, shall not be sufficient in itself to constitute compliance with the Act and regulations.

[29 FR 6624, May 21, 1964]

### §300.10 Arrangement of label information.

(a) The required information may appear on any label attached to the product, provided all the pertinent requirements of the Act and Regulations are met and so long as the combination of required information and non-required information is not misleading. All parts of the information required to be displayed in the label of the product shall be set forth in immediate conjunction with each other, and in type or lettering plainly legible and conspicuous, and all parts of the required fiber content information shall appear in type or lettering of equal size and conspicuousness; such as for example:

Distributed by:
John Q. Doe Co., Inc.,
New York, NY.
Made of
60% WOOL
40% RECYCLED WOOL
EXCLUSIVE OF ORNAMENTATION
Made in U.S.A.

*Provided, however,* that the required name or registered identification number may appear on the reverse side of the label if it is plainly legible, conspicuous and accessible, and *provided further,* that the required name or registered identification number may be conspicuously set out on a separate label which is prominently and conspicuously displayed in immediate conjunction with, or in close proximity to the label containing the other required information, in accordance with the requirements of §300.21. Where only one end of a cloth label is sewn to the product in such a manner that both sides of the label are readily accessible to the prospective purchaser, the required fiber content information may appear on the reverse side of the label if the front side of such label clearly and conspicuously shows the wording *Fiber Content on Reverse Side.* On products as to which sectional disclosure is used, an additional non-deceptive label may be used showing the complete fiber content information with percentages as to a particular section or area of the

product and specifying the section or area referred to.

(b) Subject to the provisions of § 300.8 of this part (Rule 8), if nonrequired information or representations are placed on the label or elsewhere on the product, such nonrequired information or representations shall be set forth separate and apart from the required information and shall not interfere with, minimize, detract from, or conflict with such required information, nor shall such nonrequired information in any way be false, deceptive or misleading.

[29 FR 6624, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44261, July 1, 1980; 50 FR 15105, Apr. 17, 1985; 53 FR 31314, Aug. 18, 1988]

### § 300.11 Improper methods of labeling.

The stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification required under the act, or the required information contained therein, shall not be minimized, rendered obscure or inconspicuous, or be so placed as likely to be unnoticed or unseen by purchasers and purchaser-consumers when the product is offered or displayed for sale or sold to purchasers or the consuming public, by reason of, among others:

(a) Small or indistinct type.

(b) Failure to use letters and numerals of equal size and conspicuousness in naming all fibers and percentages of such fibers as required by the act.

(c) Insufficient background contrast.

(d) Crowding, intermingling, or obscuring with designs, vignettes, or other written, printed or graphic matter.

### § 300.12 Labeling of pairs or products containing two or more units.

(a) Where a wool product consists of two or more parts, units, or items of different fiber content, a separate label containing the required information shall be affixed to each of such parts, units, or items showing the required information as to such part, unit, or item, provided that where such parts, units, or items, are marketed or handled as a single product or ensemble and are sold and delivered to the ultimate consumer as a single product or ensemble, the required information may be set out on a single label in such a manner as to separately show the fiber composition of each part, unit, or item.

(b) Where garments, wearing apparel, or other wool products are marketed or handled in pairs or ensembles of the same fiber content, only one unit of the pair or ensemble need be labeled with the required information when sold and delivered to the ultimate consumer.

(c) Where parts or units of wool products of the types referred to in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section are sold separately, such parts or units shall be labeled with the information required by the Act and regulations.

[29 FR 6624, May 21, 1964]

### § 300.13 Name or other identification required to appear on labels.

(a) The name required by the Act to be used on labels shall be the name under which the manufacturer of the wool product or other person subject to section 3 of the Act with respect to such product is doing business. Trade names, trade marks or other names which do not constitute the name under which such person is doing business shall not be used for required identification purposes.

(b) Registered identification numbers, as provided for in § 300.4 of this part (Rule 4), may be used for identification purposes in lieu of the required name.

[29 FR 6625, May 21, 1964]

### § 300.14 Substitute label requirement.

When necessary to avoid deception, the name of any person other than the manufacturer of the product appearing on the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification affixed to such product shall be accompanied by appropriate words showing that the product was not manufactured by such person; as for example:

Manufactured for: _____
Distributed by: _____
_____ Distributors

### § 300.15 Labeling of containers or packaging of wool products.

When wool products are marketed and delivered in a package which is intended to remain unbroken and intact until after delivery to the ultimate

consumer, each wool product in the package, except hosiery, and the package shall be labeled with the required information. If the package is transparent to the extent it allows for a clear reading of the required information on the wool product, the package is not required to be labeled.

[50 FR 15106, Apr. 17, 1985]

### §300.16 Ornamentation.

(a) Where the wool product contains fiber ornamentation not exceeding 5 percent of the total fiber weight of the product and the stated percentages of fiber content of the product are exclusive of such ornamentation, the stamp, tag, label, or other means of identification shall contain a phrase or statement showing such fact; as for example:

50% Wool
25% Recycled Wool
25% Cotton
Exclusive of Ornamentation

The fiber content of such ornamentation may be disclosed where the percentage of the ornamentation in relation to the total fiber weight of the principal fiber or blend of fibers is shown; as for example:

70% Recycled Wool
30% Acetate
Exclusive of 4% Metallic Ornamentation

(b) Where the fiber ornamentation exceeds five per centum it shall be included in the statement of required percentages of fiber content.

(c) Where the ornamentation constitutes a distinct section of the product, sectional disclosure may be made in accordance with §300.23 of this part (Rule 23).

[29 FR 6625, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44261, July 1, 1980]

### §300.17 Use of the term "all" or "100%."

Where the fabric or product to which the stamp, tag, label, or mark of identification applies is composed wholly of one kind of fiber, either the word *all* or the term *100%* may be used with the correct fiber name; as for example ''100% Wool,'' ''All Wool,'' ''100% Recycled Wool,'' ''All Recycled Wool.'' If any such product is composed wholly of one fiber with the exception of fiber ornamentation not exceeding 5%, such term ''all'' or ''100%'' as qualifying the name of the fiber may be used, provided it is immediately followed by the phrase ''exclusive of ornamentation,'' or by a phrase of like meaning; such as, for example:

All Wool—Exclusive of Ornamentation
or
100% Wool—Exclusive of Ornamentation.

[45 FR 44261, July 1, 1980]

### §300.18 Use of name of specialty fiber.

(a) In setting forth the required fiber content of a product containing any of the specialty fibers named in Section 2(b) of the Act, the name of the specialty fiber present may be used in lieu of the word ''wool,'' provided the percentage of each named specialty fiber is given, and provided further that the name of the specialty fiber so used is qualified by the word ''recycled'' when the fiber referred to is ''recycled wool'' as defined in the Act. The following are examples of fiber content designation permitted under this rule:

55% Alpaca—45% Camel Hair
50% Recycled Camel Hair—50% Wool
60% Recycled Alpaca—40% Rayon
35% Recycled Llama—35% Recycled Vicuna—30% Cotton
60% Cotton—40% Recycled Llama.

(b) Where an election is made to use the name of a specialty fiber in lieu of the word ''wool'' in describing such specialty fiber, such name shall be used at any time reference is made to the specialty fiber either in required or nonrequired information. The name of the specialty fiber or any word, coined word, symbol or depiction connoting or implying the presence of such specialty fiber shall not be used in nonrequired information on the required label or on any secondary or auxiliary label attached to the wool product if the name of such specialty fiber does not appear in the required fiber content disclosure.

[29 FR 6625, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44262, July 1, 1980]

### §300.19 Use of terms "mohair" and "cashmere."

(a) In setting forth the required fiber content of a product containing hair of

the Angora goat known as mohair or containing hair or fleece of the Cashmere goat known as cashmere, the term *mohair* or *cashmere,* respectively, may be used for such fiber in lieu of the word ''wool,'' provided the respective percentage of each such fiber designated as ''mohair'' or ''cashmere'' is given, and provided further that such term ''mohair'' or ''cashmere'' where used is qualified by the word ''recycled'' when the fiber referred to is ''recycled wool'' as defined in the Act. The following are examples of fiber content designations permitted under this rule:

50% Mohair—50% Wool
60% Recycled Mohair—40% Cashmere
60% Cotton—40% Recycled Cashmere.

(b) Where an election is made to use the term ''mohair'' or ''cashmere'' in lieu of the term *wool* as permitted by this section, the appropriate designation of ''mohair'' or ''cashmere'' shall be used at any time reference is made to such fiber in either required or nonrequired information. The term ''mohair'' or ''cashmere'' or any words, coined words, symbols or depictions connoting or implying the presence of such fibers shall not be used in nonrequired information on the required label or on any secondary or auxiliary label attached to the wool product if the term ''mohair'' or ''cashmere'' as the case may be does not appear in the required fiber content disclosure.

[29 FR 6625, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44262, July 1, 1980]

### § 300.20 Use of the terms "virgin" or "new."

The terms ''virgin'' or ''new'' as descriptive of a wool product, or any fiber or part thereof, shall not be used when the product or part so described is not composed wholly of new or virgin fiber which has never been reclaimed from any spun, woven, knitted, felted, braided, bonded, or otherwise manufactured or used product.

[29 FR 6625, May 21, 1964]

### § 300.21 Use of separate label for name or registered identification number.

The name or registered identification number of the manufacturer or person subject to section 3 of the Act with respect to the wool product may be set forth on a label or mark separate from that which contains the statement of fiber and material content of the product provided that the label or mark bearing said name or registered identification number and the name or registered identification number itself are prominently and conspicuously displayed either in immediate conjunction with, or in close proximity to, such other label or mark and in such manner as will fully inform purchasers and purchaser-consumers of the required information.

[29 FR 6625, May 21, 1964]

### § 300.22 Marking of samples, swatches or specimens.

Where samples, swatches or specimens of wool products subject to the act were used to promote or effect sales of such wool products in commerce, said samples, swatches and specimens, as well as the products themselves, shall be labeled or marked to show their respective fiber contents and other information required by law.

### § 300.23 Sectional disclosure of content.

(a) *Permissive.* Where a wool product is composed of two or more sections which are of different fiber composition, the required information as to fiber content may be separated on the same label in such manner as to show the fiber composition of each section.

(b) *Mandatory.* The disclosure as above provided shall be made in all instances where such form of marking is necessary to avoid deception.

[29 FR 6626, May 21, 1964]

### § 300.24 Linings, paddings, stiffening, trimmings and facings.

(a) In labeling or marking garments or articles of apparel which are wool products, the fiber content of any linings, paddings, stiffening, trimmings or facings of such garments or articles of apparel shall be given and shall be set forth separately and distinctly in the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification of the products.

(1) If such linings, trimmings or facings contain, purport to contain or are represented as containing wool, or recycled wool; or

(2) If such linings are metallically coated, or coated or laminated with any substance for warmth, or if such linings are composed of pile fabrics, or any fabrics incorporated for warmth or represented directly or by implication as being incorporated for warmth, which articles the Commission finds constitute a class of articles which is customarily accompanied by express or implied representations of fiber content; or

(3) If any express or implied representations of fiber content of any of such linings, paddings, stiffening, trimmings or facings are customarily made.

(b) In the case of garments which contain interlinings, the fiber content of such interlinings shall be set forth separately and distinctly as part of the required information on the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification of such garment. For purposes of this paragraph (b) the term *interlining* means any fabric or fibers incorporated into a garment or article of wearing apparel as a layer between an outershell and an inner lining.

(c) In the case of wool products which are not garments or articles of apparel, but which contain linings, paddings, stiffening, trimmings, or facings, the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification of the product shall show the fiber content of such linings, paddings, stiffening, trimmings or facings, set forth separately and distinctly in such stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification.

(d) Wool products which are or have been manufactured for sale or sold for use as linings, interlinings, paddings, stiffening, trimmings or facings, but not contained in a garment, article of apparel, or other product, shall be labeled or marked with the required information as in the case of other wool products.

[29 FR 6626, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44262, July 1, 1980]

### §300.25 Representations as to fiber content.

(a) Words, coined words, symbols, or depictions which constitute or imply the name or designation of a fiber which is not present in the product shall not appear on labels. Any word or coined word which is phonetically similar to the name or designation of a fiber or which is only a slight variation in spelling from the name or designation of a fiber shall not be used in such a manner as to represent or imply that such fiber is present in the product when the fiber is not present as represented.

(b) Where a word, coined word, symbol or depiction which connotes or implies the presence of a fiber is used on any label, whether required or nonrequired, a full and complete fiber content disclosure with percentages shall be made on such label in accordance with the Act and regulations.

[29 FR 6626, May 21, 1964, as amended at 50 FR 15106, Apr. 17, 1985]

### §300.25a Country where wool products are processed or manufactured.

(a) In addition to the other information required by the Act and Regulations:

(1) Each imported wool product shall be labeled with the name of the country where such imported product was processed or manufactured;

(2) Each wool product completely made in the United States of materials that were made in the United States shall be labeled using the term *Made in U.S.A.* or some other clear and equivalent term.

(3) Each wool product made in the United States, either in whole or part, of imported materials shall contain a label disclosing these facts; for example:

''Made in USA of imported fabric''

or

''Knitted in USA of imported yarn'' and

(4) Each wool product partially manufactured in a foreign country and partially manufactured in the United States shall contain on the label the following information:

(i) The manufacturing process in the foreign country and in the USA; for example:

''Imported cloth, finished in USA'',

or

''Sewn in USA of imported components''

or

''Made in (foreign country), finished in USA''

(ii) When the U.S. Customs Service requires an origin label on the unfinished product, the manufacturing processes as required in paragraph (a)(4)(i) of this section or the name of the foreign country required by Customs, for example:

''Made in (foreign country)''

(b) For the purpose of determining whether a product should be marked under paragraphs (a) (2), (3), or (4) of this section, a manufacturer needs to consider the origin of only those materials that are covered under the Act and that are one step removed from that manufacturing process. For example, a yarn manufacturer must identify fiber if it is imported, a cloth manufacturer must identify imported yarn and a household product manufacturer must identify imported cloth or imported yarn for household products made directly from yarn, or imported fiber used as filling for warmth.

(c) The term country means the political entity known as a nation. Except for the United States, colonies, possessions or protectorates outside the boundaries of the mother country shall be considered separate countries, and the name thereof shall be deemed acceptable in designating the country where the wool product was processed or manufactured unless the Commission shall otherwise direct.

(d) The country where the imported wool product was principally made shall be considered to be the country where such wool product was processed or manufactured. Further work or material added to the wool product in another country must effect a basic change in form in order to render such other country the place where such wool product was processed or manufactured.

(e) The English name of the country where the imported wool product was processed or manufactured shall be used. The adjectival form of the name of the country will be accepted as the name of the country where the wool product was processed or manufactured, provided the adjectival form of the name does not appear with such other words so as to refer to a kind of species of product. Variant spellings which clearly indicate the English name of the country, such as Brasil for Brazil and Italie for Italy, are acceptable. Abbreviations which unmistakenly indicate the name of a country, such as *Gt. Britain* for *Great Britain,* are acceptable.

(f) Nothing in this Rule shall be construed as limiting in any way the information required to be disclosed on labels under the provisions of any Tariff Act of the United States or regulations prescribed by the Secretary of the Treasury.

[50 FR 15106, Apr. 17, 1985]

### § 300.25b Country of origin in mail order advertising.

When a wool product is advertised in any mail order catalog or mail order promotional material, the description of such product shall contain a clear and conspicuous statement that the product was either made in U.S.A., imported, or both. Other words or phrases with the same meaning may be used. The statement of origin required by this section shall not be inconsistent with the origin labeling of the product being advertised.

[50 FR 15106, Apr. 17, 1985]

### § 300.26 Pile fabrics and products composed thereof.

The fiber content of pile fabrics or products made thereof may be stated in the label or mark of identification in such segregated form as will show the fiber content of the face or pile and of the back or base, with the percentages of the respective fibers as they exist in the face or pile and in the back or base: *Provided,* That in such disclosure the respective percentages of the face and the back be given in such manner as will show the ratio between the face and the back. Examples of the form of marking pile fabrics as to fiber content provided for in this section are as follows:

100% Wool Pile
100% Cotton Back
(Back constitutes 60% of fabric and pile 40%)
Pile—60% Recycled Wool, 40% Wool
Back—70% Cotton, 30% Rayon
(Pile constitutes 60% of fabric and back 40%).

[6 FR 3426, July 15, 1941, as amended at 45 FR 44262, July 1, 1980]

### §300.27 Wool products containing superimposed or added fibers.

Where a wool product is made wholly of one fiber or a blend of fibers with the exception of an additional fiber in minor proportion superimposed or added in certain separate and distinct areas or sections for reinforcing or other useful purposes, the product may be designated according to the fiber content of the principal fiber or blend of fibers, with an excepting naming the superimposed or added fiber, giving the percentage thereof in relation to the total fiber weight of the principal fiber or blend of fibers, and indicating the area or section which contains the superimposed or added fiber. An example of this type of fiber content disclosure, as applied to products having reinforcing fibers added to a particular area or section, is as follows:

55% Recycled Wool
45% Rayon
Except 5% Nylon added to toe and heel

[29 FR 6626, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44262, July 1, 1980]

### §300.28 Undetermined quantities of reclaimed fibers.

(a) Where a wool product is composed in part of various man-made fibers recovered from textile products containing underdetermined qualities of such fibers, the percentage content of the respective fibers recovered from such products may be disclosed on the required stamp, tag, or label, in aggregate form as ''man-made fibers'' followed by the naming of such fibers in the order of their predominance by weight, as for example:

60% Wool
40% Man-made fibers
Rayon
Acetate
Nylon

(b) Where a wool product is composed in part of wool, or recycled wool and in part of unknown and, for practical purposes, undeterminable non-woolen fibers reclaimed from any spun, woven, knitted, felted, braided, bonded or otherwise manufactured or used product, the required fiber content disclosure may, when truthfully applicable, in lieu of the fiber content disclosure otherwise required by the Act and regulations, set forth (1) the percentages of wool or recycled wool, and (2) the generic names and the percentages of all other fibers whose presence is known or practically ascertainable and (3) the percentage of the unknown and undeterminable reclaimed fibers, designating such reclaimed fibers as ''unknown reclaimed fibers'' or ''undetermined reclaimed fibers,'' as for example:

75% Recycled Wool—25% Unknown Reclaimed Fibers.
35% recycled Wool—30% Acetate—15% Cotton—20% Undetermined Reclaimed Fibers.

In making the required fiber content disclosure any fibers referred to as ''unknown reclaimed fibers'' or ''undetermined reclaimed fibers'' shall be listed last.

(c) The terms *unknown recycled fibers* and *undetermined recycled fibers* may be used in describing the unknown and undeterminable reclaimed fibers referred to in paragraph (b) of this rule in lieu of the terms specified therein, provided, however, That the same standard is used in determining the applicability of the term *recycled* as is used in defining ''recycled wool'' in section 2(c) of the Act.

(d) For purposes of this rule undetermined or unascertained amounts of wool or recycled wool may be classified and designated as recycled wool.

(e) Nothing contained in this rule shall excuse a full and accurate disclosure of fiber content with correct percentages if the same is known or practically ascertainable, or permit a deviation from the requirements of section 4(a)(2)(A) of the Act with respect to products not labeled under the provisions of this rule or permit a higher classification of wool or recycled wool than that provided by Section 2 of the Act.

[29 FR 6626, May 21, 1964, as amended at 45 FR 44262, July 1, 1980; 45 FR 49542, July 25, 1980]

### §300.29 Garments or products composed of or containing miscellaneous cloth scraps.

(a) For wool products which consist of, or are made from, miscellaneous cloth scraps comprising manufacturing

by-products and containing various fibers of undetermined percentages, the following form of disclosure as to fiber content of such wool products, where truthfully appliable and with appropriate percentage figure inserted, may be used in the stamp, tag, label, or mark of identification of such product:

(1) Where the product contains chiefly cotton as well as woolen fibers in the minimum percentage designated for recycled wool:

Made of Miscellaneous Cloth Scraps Composed Chiefly of Cotton With Minimum of ___% Recycled Wool.

(2) Where the product contains chiefly rayon as well as woolen fibers in the minimum percentage designated for recycled wool:

Made of Miscellaneous Cloth Scraps Composed Chiefly of Rayon With Minimum of ___% Recycled Wool.

(3) Where the product is composed chiefly of a mixture of cotton and rayon as well as woolen fibers in the minimum percentage designated for recycled wool:

Made of Miscellaneous Cloth Scraps Composed Chiefly of Cotton and Rayon With Minimum of ___% Recycled Wool.

(4) Where the product contains chiefly woolen fibers with the balance of undetermined mixtures of cotton, rayon or other non-woolen fibers:

Made of Miscellaneous Cloth Scraps Containing Cotton, Rayon and Other Non-Woolen Fibers, With Minimum of ___% Recycled Wool.

(b) Where the cotton or rayon content or the non-woolen fiber content mentioned in such forms of disclosure is not known to comprise as much as 50% of the fiber content of the product, the word ''chiefly'' in the respective form of disclosure specified in this section shall be omitted.

(c) The words ''Contents are'' may be used in the above-mentioned forms of marking in lieu of the words ''Made of'' where appropriate to the nature of the product.

(d) For purposes of this rule, undetermined or unascertained amounts of wool or recycled wool which may be contained in the product may be classified and designated as recycled wool.

[6 FR 3426, July 15, 1941, as amended at 45 FR 44262, July 1, 1980]

### § 300.30 Deceptive labeling in general.

Products subject to the act shall not bear, nor have used in connection therewith, any stamp, tag, label, mark or representation which is false, misleading or deceptive in any respect.

MANUFACTURERS' RECORDS

### § 300.31 Maintenance of records.

(a) Pursuant to the provisions of section 6 of the Act, every manufacturer of a wool product subject to the Act, irrespective of whether any guaranty has been given or received, shall maintain records showing the information required by the Act and Regulations with respect to all such wool products made by such manufacturer. Such records shall show:

(1) The fiber content of the product specified in section 4(a)(2)(A) of the Act.

(2) The maximum percentage of the total weight of the wool product of any non-fibrous loading, filling or adulterating matter as prescribed by section 4(a)(2)(B) of the Act.

(3) The name, or registered identification number issued by the Commission, of the manufacturer of the wool product or the name or registered identification number of one or more persons subject to section 3 of the Act with respect to such wool product.

(4) The name of the country where the wool product was processed or manufactured as prescribed by sections 300.25a and/or .25b.

(b) Any person substituting labels shall keep such records as will show the information on the label removed and the name or names of the person or persons from whom the wool product was received.

(c) The purpose of these records is to permit a determination that the requirements of the Act and Regulations have been met and to establish a traceable line of continuity from raw material through processing to finished

product. The records shall be preserved for at least three years.

[53 FR 31314, Aug. 18, 1988]

GUARANTIES

### §300.32 Form of separate guaranty.

(a) The following are suggested forms of separate guaranties under section 9 of the Act which may be used by a guarantor residing in the United States on or as part of an invoice or other paper relating to the marketing or handling of any wool products listed and designated therein and showing the date of such invoice or other paper and the signature and address of the guarantor:

(1) *General form.*

We guarantee that the wool products specified herein are not misbranded under the provisions of the Wool Products Labeling Act and rules and regulations thereunder.

(2) *Guaranty based on guaranty.*

Based upon a guaranty received, we guarantee that the wool products specified herein are not misbranded under the provisions of the Wool Products Labeling Act and rules and regulations thereunder.

NOTE: The printed name and address on the invoice or other paper will suffice to meet the signature and address requirements.

(b) The mere disclosure of required information including the fiber content of wool products on a label or on an invoice or other paper relating to its marketing or handling shall not be considered a form of separate guaranty.

[29 FR 6627, May 21, 1964]

### §300.33 Continuing guaranty filed with Federal Trade Commission.

(a)(1) Under section 9 of the Act any person residing in the United States and marketing or handling wool products may file a continuing guaranty with the Federal Trade Commission.

(2) When filed with the Commission a continuing guaranty shall be fully executed in duplicate. Forms for use in preparing continuing guaranties will be supplied by the Commission upon request.

(3) Continuing guaranties filed with the Commission shall continue in effect until revoked. The guarantor shall promptly report any change in business status to the Commission.

(b) Prescribed form of continuing guaranty:

**CONTINUING GUARANTY**

Approved by OMB
3084–0036
Expires: 11/1/84

1. LEGAL NAME OF GUARANTOR FIRM

2. NAME UNDER WHICH GUARANTOR FIRM DOES BUSINESS, IF DIFFERENT FROM LEGAL NAME

3. TYPE OF COMPANY

☐ PROPRIETORSHIP ☐ PARTNERSHIP ☐ CORPORATION

4. ADDRESS OF PRINCIPAL OFFICE OR PLACE OF BUSINESS *(Include Zip Code)*

5. LAW UNDER WHICH THE CONTINUING GUARANTY IS TO BE FILED *(Put an 'X' in the appropriate boxes)*

☐ Under the **Textile Fiber Products Identification Act** (15 U.S.C. §§ 70-70k): The company named above, which manufactures, markets, or handles textile fiber products, guaranties that when it ships or delivers any textile fiber product, the product will not be misbranded, falsely or deceptively invoiced, or falsely or deceptively advertised, within the meaning of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act and the rules and regulations under that Act.

☐ Under the **Wool Products Labeling Act** (15 U.S.C. §§ 68-68j): The company named above, which manufactures, markets, or handles wool products, guaranties that when it ships or delivers any wool product, the product will not be misbranded within the meaning of the Wool Products Labeling Act and the rules and regulations under that Act.

☐ Under the **Fur Products Labeling Act** (15 U.S.C. §§ 69-69k): The company named above, which manufactures, markets, or handles fur products, guaranties that when it ships or delivers any fur product, the product will not be misbranded, falsely or deceptively invoiced, or falsely or deceptively advertised, within the meaning of the Fur Products Labeling Act and the rules and regulations under that Act.

6. CERTIFICATION

Under penalty of perjury, I certify that the information supplied on this form is true and correct.

*SIGNATURE OF PROPRIETOR, PRINCIPAL PARTNER, OR CORPORATE OFFICIAL*

7. NAME *(Please print or type)*

8. TITLE

9. CITY AND STATE WHERE SIGNED

10. DATE

**INSTRUCTIONS**

The Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, the Wool Products Labeling Act, and the Fur Products Labeling Act provide that any marketer or manufacturer of fibrous or fur products or furs covered by those Acts may file a continuing guaranty with the Federal Trade Commission. A continuing guaranty on file assures customer firms that the guarantor's products are in conformance with the Act(s) under which the guarantor has filed. Customer firms rely on the continuing guaranties for protection from liability if violations occur.

In completing this form, please observe the following:

(a) All appropriate blanks on the form should be filled in. Include your Zip Code in Item 4.

(b) In Item 6, if the guarantor firm is a partnership, a principal partner should sign. If a corporation, one of its principal officers should sign, giving his/her title in Item 8.

(c) Send two completed copies to:

Federal Trade Commission
Los Angeles Regional Office
11000 Wilshire Blvd., Suite 13209
Los Angeles, CA 90024

Continuing guaranties filed with the Commission continue in effect until revoked. The guarantor must immediately notify the Los Angeles Regional Office in writing of any change in business status. Any change in the address of the guarantor's principal office or place of business must also be promptly reported.

DO NOT USE THIS SPACE

Filed _____ 19 ____

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

FTC Form 31-A (rev. 12-82)

(c) Any person who has a continuing guaranty on file with the Commission may, during the effective dates of the guaranty, give notice of such fact by setting forth on the invoice or other paper covering the marketing or handling of the product guaranteed the following:

Continuing Guaranty under the Wool Products Labeling Act filed with the Federal Trade Commission.

(d) Any person who falsely represents that he has a continuing guaranty on file with the Federal Trade Commission shall be deemed to have furnished

a false guaranty under section 9(b) of the Act.

[29 FR 6627, May 21, 1964, as amended at 48 FR 12517, Mar. 25, 1983]

### §300.34 Reference to existing guaranty on labels not permitted.

No representation or suggestion that a wool product is guaranteed under the act by the Government, or any branch thereof shall be made on or in the stamp, tag, label, or other mark of identification, applied or affixed to wool products.

GENERAL

### §300.35 Hearings under section 4(d) of the act.

Hearings under section 4(d) of the act will be held when deemed by the Commission to be in the public interest. Interested persons may file applications for such hearings. Such applications shall be filed in quadruplicate and shall contain a detailed technical description of the class or classes of articles or products regarding which applicant requests a determination and announcement by the Commission concerning express or implied representations of fiber content of articles or concerning insignificant or inconsequential textile content of products.

(Sec. 4(d), 54 Stat. 1129; 15 U.S.C. 68b(d))

## PART 301—RULES AND REGULATIONS UNDER FUR PRODUCTS LABELING ACT

NAME GUIDE

Sec.
301.0 Fur products name guide.

REGULATIONS

301.1 Terms defined.
301.2 General requirements.
301.3 English language requirements.
301.4 Abbreviations or ditto marks prohibited.
301.5 Use of Fur Products Name Guide.
301.6 Animals not listed in Fur Products Name Guide.
301.7 Describing furs by certain breed names prohibited.
301.8 Use of terms ''Persian Lamb,'' ''Broadtail Lamb,'' and ''Persian-broadtail Lamb'' permitted.
301.9 Use of terms ''Mouton Lamb'' and ''Shearling Lamb'' permitted.
301.10 Use of term ''Broadtail-processed Lamb'' permitted.
301.11 Fictitious or non-existing animal designations prohibited.
301.12 Country of origin of imported furs.
301.13 Fur products having furs with different countries of origin.
301.14 Country of origin of used furs.
301.15 Designation of section producing domestic furs permitted.
301.16 Disclosure of origin of certain furs raised or taken in United States.
301.17 Misrepresentation of origin of furs.
301.18 Passing off domestic furs as imported furs prohibited.
301.19 Pointing, dyeing, bleaching or otherwise artificially coloring.
301.20 Fur products composed of pieces.
301.21 Disclosure of used furs.
301.22 Disclosure of damaged furs.
301.23 Second-hand fur products.
301.24 Repairing, restyling and remodeling fur products for consumer.
301.25 Name required to appear on labels. and invoices.
301.26 Registered identification number.
301.27 Label and method of affixing.
301.28 Labels to be avoided.
301.29 Requirements in respect to disclosure on label.
301.30 Arrangement of required information on label.
301.31 Labeling of fur products consisting of two or more units.
301.32 Fur product containing material other than fur.
301.33 Labeling of samples.
301.34 Misbranded or falsely invoiced fur products.
301.35 Substitution of labels.
301.36 Sectional fur products.
301.37 Manner of invoicing furs and fur products.
301.38 Advertising of furs and fur products.
301.39 Exempted fur products.
301.40 Item number or mark to be assigned to each fur product.
301.41 Maintenance of records.
301.42 Deception as to nature of business.
301.43 Use of deceptive trade or corporate names, trademarks or graphic representations prohibited.
301.44 Misrepresentation of prices.
301.45 Representations as to construction of fur products.
301.46 Reference to guaranty by Government prohibited.
301.47 Form of separate guaranty.
301.48 Continuing guaranties.
301.48a Guaranties not received in good faith.
301.49 Deception in general.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 69 *et seq.*

NAME GUIDE

### §301.0 Fur products name guide.

NAME GUIDE

| Name | Order | Family | Genus-species |
|---|---|---|---|
| Alpaca | Ungulata | Camelidae | Lama pacos. |
| Antelope | do | Bovidae | Hippotragus niger and Antilope cervicapra. |
| Badger | Carnivora | Mustelidae | Taxida sp. and Meles sp. |
| Bassarisk | do | Procyonidae | Bassariscus astutus. |
| Bear | do | Ursidae | Ursus sp. |
| Bear, Polar | do | do | Thalarctos sp. |
| Beaver | Rodentia | Castoridae | Castor canadensis. |
| Burunduk | do | Sciuridae | Eutamias asiaticus. |
| Calf | Ungulata | Bovidae | Bos taurus. |
| Cat, Caracal | Carnivora | Felidae | Caracal caracal. |
| Cat, Domestic | do | do | Felis catus. |
| Cat, Lynx | do | do | Lynx refus. |
| Cat, Manul | do | do | Felis manul. |
| Cat, Margay | do | do | Felis wiedii. |
| Cat, Spotted | do | do | Felis sp. (South America). |
| Cat, Wild | do | do | Felis catus and Felis lybica. |
| Cheetah | do | do | Acinonyx jubatus. |
| Chinchilla | Rodentia | Chinchillidae | Chinchilla chinchilla. |
| Chipmunk | do | Sciuridae | Eutamias sp. |
| Civet | Carnivora | Viverridae | Viverra sp., Viverricula sp., Paradoxurus sp., Paguma sp., and Herpestes sp. |
| Desman | Insectivora | Talpidae | Desmana moschata and Galemys pyrenaicus. |
| Dog | Carnivora | Canidae | Canis familiaris. |
| Ermine | do | Mustelidae | Mustela erminea. |
| Fisher | do | do | Martes pennanti. |
| Fitch | do | do | Mustela putorius. |
| Fox | do | Canidae | Vulpes fulva, Vulpes, vulpes, and Vulpes macrotis. |
| Fox, Blue | do | do | Alopex sp. |
| Fox, Grey | do | do | Urocyon cinereoargenteus and Urocyon littoralis. |
| Fox, Kit | do | do | Vulpes velox. |
| Fox, White | Carnivora | Canidae | Alpoex sp. |
| Genet | do | Viverridae | Genetta genetta. |
| Goat | Ungulata | Bovidae | Cpara prisca. |
| Guanaco, or its young, the Guanaquito.. | do | Camelidae | Lama guanicoe. |
| Hamster | Rodentia | Cricetidae | Cricetus cricetus. |
| Hare | do | Leporidae | Lepus sp. and Lepus europaeus occidentalis. |
| Jackal | Carnivora | Canidae | Canis aureus and Canis adustus. |
| Jackal, Cape | do | do | Canis mesomelas. |
| Jaguar | do | Felidae | Felis onca. |
| Jaguarondi | do | do | Felis yagouaroundi. |
| Kangaroo | Marsupialia | Macropodidae | Macropus sp. |
| Kangaroo-rat | do | do | Bettongia sp. |
| Kid | Ungulata | Bovidae | Capra prisca. |
| Kinkajou | Carnivora | Procyonidae | Potos flavus. |
| Koala | Marsupialia | Phasocolarctidae | Phascolarctos cinereus. |
| Kolinsky | Carnivora | Mustelidae | Mustela sibirica. |
| Lamb | Ungulata | Bovidae | Ovis aries. |
| Leopard | Carnivora | Felidae | Felis pardus. |
| Llama | Ungulata | Cemelidae | Lama glama. |
| Lynx | Carnivora | Felidae | Lynx canadensis and Lynx lynx. |
| Marmot | Rodentia | Scinridae | Marmota bobak. |
| Marten, American | Carnivora | Mustelidae | Martes americana and Martes caurina. |
| Marten, Baum | do | do | Martes martes. |
| Marten, Japanese | do | do | Martes melampus. |
| Marten, Stone | do | do | Martes foina. |
| Mink | do | do | Mustela vison and Mustela lutreola. |
| Mole | Insectivora | Talpidae | Talpa sp. |
| Monkey | Primates | Colobidae | Colobus polykomos. |
| Muskrat | Rodentia | Muridae | Ondatra zibethicus. |
| Nutria | do | Capromyidae | Myocastor coypus. |
| Ocelot | Carnivora | Felidae | Felis pardalis. |
| Opossum | Marsupialia | Didelphiidae | Didelphis sp. |
| Oppossum, Australian | do | Phalangeridae | Trichosurus vulpecula. |
| Opossum, Ring-tail | do | do | Pseudocheirus sp. |
| Oppossum, South American. | do | Didelphiidae | Lutreolina crassicaudata. |
| Opossum, Water | do | do | Chironectes minimus. |
| Otter | Carnivora | Mustelidae | Lutra canadensis, Pteronura brasitionsis, Lutra annectens and Lutra lutra. |
| Otter, Sea | do | do | Enhydra lutris. |
| Pahmi | do | do | Helictis moschata and Helictis personata. |
| Panda | do | Procyonidae | Ailurus fulgens. |

NAME GUIDE—Continued

| Name | Order | Family | Genus-species |
|---|---|---|---|
| Peschanik | Rodentia | Sciuridae | Citellus fulvus. |
| Pony | Ungulata | Equidae | Equus caballus. |
| Rabbit | Rodentia | Leporidae | Oryctolagus cuniculus. |
| Raccoon | Carnivora | Procyonidae | Procyon lotor and Procyon cancrivorus. |
| Raccoon, Asiatic | .....do | Canidae | Nyctereutes procyonoidos. |
| Raccoon, Mexican | .....do | .....do | Nasua sp. |
| Reindeer | Ungulata | Cervidae | Rangifer tarandus. |
| Sable | Carnivora | Mustelidae | Martes zibellina. |
| Sable, American | .....do | .....do | Martes americana and Martes caurina. |
| Seal, Fur | Pinnipedia | Otariidae | Callorhinus ursinus and Arctocephalus sp. |
| Seal, Hair | .....do | Phocidae | Phoca sp. |
| Seal, Roc | .....do | Otariidae | Otaria flavescens. |
| Sheep | Ungulata | Bovidae | Ovis aries. |
| Skunk | Carnivora | Mustelidae | Mephitis mephitis, Mephitis macroura, Conepatus semistriatus and Conepatus sp. |
| Skunk, Spotted | .....do | .....do | Spilogale sp. |
| Squirrel | Rodentia | Sciuridae | Sciurus vulgaris. |
| Squirrel, Flying | .....do | .....do | Eupetaurus cinereus, Pteromys volans and Petaurista leucogenys. |
| Susilk | .....do | .....do | Citellus citellus, Citellus rufescens and Citellus suslica. |
| Vicuna | Ungulata | Camelidae | Vicugna vicugna. |
| Viscacha | Rodentia | Chinchillidae | Ligidium viscacia. |
| Wallaby | Marsupialia | Macropodidae | Wallabia sp., Petrogale sp., and Thylogale sp. |
| Weasel | Carnivora | Mustelidae | Mustela frenata. |
| Weasel, Chinese | .....do | .....do | Mustela sibirica. |
| Weasel, Japanese | .....do | .....do | Mustela itatsi (also classified as Mustela sibirica itatsi). |
| Weasel, Manchurian | Carnivora | Mustelidae | Mustela altaica and Mustela rixosa. |
| Wolf | .....do | Canidae | Canis lupus and Canis niger. |
| Wolverine | .....do | Mustelidae | Gulo luscus and Gulo gulo. |
| Wombat | Marsupialia | Vombatidae | Vombatus sp. |
| Woodchuck | Rodentia | Sciuridae | Marmota monax. |

(Secs. 7, 8, 65 Stat. 179; 15 U.S.C. 69e, 69f)
[17 FR 1205, Feb. 3, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 10446, Nov. 4, 1961; 32 FR 6023, Apr. 15, 1967]

## REGULATIONS

SOURCE: 17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, unless otherwise noted.

### § 301.1 Terms defined.

(a) As used in this part, unless the context otherwise specifically requires:

(1) The term *act* means the *Fur Products Labeling Act* (approved Aug. 8, 1951, Pub. L. 110, 82d Cong., 1st Sess.; 15 U.S.C.A. sec. 69; 65 Stat. 179).

(2) The terms *rule, rules, regulations,* and *rules and regulations,* mean the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission pursuant to section 8 (b) of the act.

(3) The definitions of terms contained in section 2 of the act shall be applicable also to such terms when used in rules promulgated under the act.

(4) The terms *Fur Products Name Guide* and *Name Guide* mean the register of names of hair fleece and fur bearing animals issued by the Commission on February 8, 1952, pursuant to the provisions of section 7 (a) of the act.

(5) The terms *required information* and *information required* mean the information required to be disclosed on labels, invoices and in advertising under the act and rules and regulations, and such further information as may be permitted by the regulations, when and if used.

(b) The term *wearing apparel* as used in the definition of a fur product in section 2(d) of the Act means (1) Any articles of clothing or covering for any part of the body; and (2) shall include any assembled furs, used furs, or waste furs, in attached form, including mats, plates or garment shells or furs flat off the board, and furs which have been dyed, tip-dyed, bleached or artificially colored, intended for use as or in wearing apparel: *Provided, however,* That the provisions of section 4(2) of the Act shall not be applicable to those fur

products set out in paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3186, Apr. 14, 1961; 61 FR 67709, Dec. 24, 1996]

### § 301.2 General requirements.

(a) Each and every fur product, except those exempted under § 301.39 of this part, shall be labeled and invoiced in conformity with the requirements of the act and rules and regulations.

(b) Each and every fur shall be invoiced in conformity with the requirements of the act and rules and regulations.

(c) Any advertising of fur products or furs shall be in conformity with the requirements of the act and rules and regulations.

### § 301.3 English language requirements.

All information required under the act and rules and regulations to appear on labels, invoices, and in advertising, shall be set out in the English language. If labels, invoices or advertising matter contain any of the required information in a language other than English, all of the required information shall appear also in the English language. The provisions of this section shall not apply to advertisements in foreign language newspapers or periodicals, but such advertising shall in all other respects comply with the act and regulations.

### § 301.4 Abbreviations or ditto marks prohibited.

In disclosing required information in labeling and advertising, words or terms shall not be abbreviated or designated by the use of ditto marks but shall be spelled out fully, and in invoicing the required information shall not be abbreviated but shall be spelled out fully.

### § 301.5 Use of Fur Products Name Guide.

(a) The Fur Products Name Guide (§ 301.0 of this part) is set up in four columns under the headings of Name, Order, Family and Genus-Species. The applicable animal name appearing in the column headed ''Name'' shall be used in the required information in labeling, invoicing and advertising of fur products and furs. The scientific names appearing under the columns headed Order, Family, and Genus-Species are furnished for animal identification purposes and shall not be used.

(b) Where the name of the animal appearing in the Name Guide consists of two separate words the second word shall precede the first in designating the name of the animal in the required information; as for example: ''Fox, Black'' shall be disclosed as ''Black Fox.''

### § 301.6 Animals not listed in Fur Products Name Guide.

(a) All furs are subject to the act and regulations regardless of whether the name of the animal producing the fur appears in the Fur Products Name Guide.

(b) Where fur is obtained from an animal not listed in the Fur Products Name Guide it shall be designated in the required information by the true English name of the animal or in the absence of a true English name, by the name which properly identifies such animal in the United States.

### § 301.7 Describing furs by certain breed names prohibited.

If the fur of an animal is described in any manner by its breed, species, strain or coloring, irrespective of former usage, such descriptive matter shall not contain the name of another animal either in the adjective form or otherwise nor shall such description (subject to any exception contained in this part or animal names appearing in the Fur Products Name Guide) contain a name in an adjective form or otherwise which connotes a false geographic origin of the animal. For example, such designations as ''Sable Mink,'' ''Chinchilla Rabbit,'' and ''Aleutian Mink'' shall not be used.

### § 301.8 Use of terms "Persian Lamb," "Broadtail Lamb," and "Persian-broadtail Lamb" permitted.

(a) The term *Persian Lamb* may be used to describe the skin of the young lamb of the Karakul breed of sheep or top-cross breed of such sheep, having hair formed in knuckled curls.

(b) The term *Broadtail Lamb* may be used to describe the skin of the prematurely born, stillborn, or very young

lamb of the Karakul breed of sheep or top-cross breed of such sheep, having flat light-weight fur with a moire pattern.

(c) The term *Persian-broadtail Lamb* may be used to describe the skin of the very young lamb of the Karakul breed of sheep or top-cross breed of such sheep, having hair formed in flattened knuckled curls with a moire pattern.

(d) The terms ''Persian Lamb'', ''Broadtail Lamb'', or ''Persian-broadtail Lamb'' shall not be used to describe: (1) The so-called Krimmer, Bessarabian, Rumanian, Shiraz, Salzfelle, Metis, Dubar, Meshed, Caracul, Iranian, Iraqi, Chinese, Mongolian, Chekiang, or Indian lamb skins, unless such lamb skins conform with the requirements set out in paragraph (a), (b), or (c) of this section respectively; or (2) any other lamb skins having hair in a wavy or open curl pattern.

### §301.9 Use of terms "Mouton Lamb" and "Shearling Lamb" permitted.

(a) The term *Mouton Lamb* may be used to describe the skin of a lamb which has been sheared, the hair straightened, chemically treated, and thermally set to produce a moisture repellant finish; as for example:

Dyed Mouton Lamb

(b) The term *Shearling Lamb* may be used to describe the skin of a lamb which has been sheared and combed.

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3186, Apr. 14, 1961]

### §301.10 Use of term "Broadtail-processed Lamb" permitted.

The term *Broadtail-processed Lamb* may be used to describe the skin of a lamb which has been sheared, leaving a moire hair pattern on the pelt having the appearance of the true fur pattern of ''Broadtail Lamb''; as for example:

Dyed Broadtail-processed Lamb
Fur origin: Argentina

### §301.11 Fictitious or non-existing animal designations prohibited.

No trade names, coined names, nor other names or words descriptive of a fur as being the fur of an animal which is in fact fictitious or non-existent shall be used in labeling, invoicing or advertising of a fur or fur product.

### §301.12 Country of origin of imported furs.

(a)(1) In the case of furs imported into the United States from a foreign country, the country of origin of such furs shall be set forth as a part of the information required by the act in invoicing and advertising.

(2) In the case of fur products imported into the United States from a foreign country, or fur products made from furs imported into the United States from a foreign country, the country of origin of the furs contained in such products shall be set forth as a part of the information required by the act in labeling, invoicing and advertising.

(b) The term *country* means the political entity known as a nation. Colonies, possessions or protectorates outside the boundaries of the mother country shall be considered separate countries and the name thereof shall be deemed acceptable in designating the ''country of origin'' unless the Commission shall otherwise direct.

(c) The country in which the animal producing the fur was raised, or if in a feral state, was taken, shall be considered the ''country of origin.''

(d) When furs are taken within the territorial waters of a country, such country shall be considered the ''country of origin.'' Furs taken outside such territorial waters, or on the high seas, shall have as their country of origin the country having the nearest mainland.

(e)(1) The English name of the country of origin shall be used. Abbreviations which unmistakably indicate the name of a country, such as ''Gt. Britain'' for ''Great Britain,'' are acceptable. Abbreviations such as ''N.Z.'' for ''New Zealand'' are not acceptable.

(2) The name of the country of origin, when used as a part of the required information in labeling shall be preceded by the term *fur origin;* as for example:

Dyed Muskrat
Fur Origin: Russia
or
Dyed China Mink
Fur Origin: China

(3) In addition to the required disclosure of country of origin the name of

the country may also appear in adjective form in connection with the name of the animal; as for example:

Tip-dyed Canadian American Sable
Fur Origin: Canada
or
Russian Sable
Fur Origin: Russia

(f) Nothing in this section shall be construed as limiting in any way the information required to be disclosed on labels under the provisions of any Tariff Act of the United States or regulations prescribed by the Secretary of the Treasury.

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3186, Apr. 14, 1961; 61 FR 67709, Dec. 24, 1996]

### § 301.13 Fur products having furs with different countries of origin.

When a fur product is composed of furs with different countries of origin the names of such countries shall be set forth in the required information in the order of predominance by surface areas of the furs in the fur product.

### § 301.14 Country of origin of used furs.

When the country of origin of used furs is unknown, and no representations are made directly or by implication with respect thereto, this fact shall be set out as a part of the required information in lieu of the country of origin as ''Fur origin: Unknown.''

### § 301.15 Designation of section producing domestic furs permitted.

In the case of furs produced in the United States the name of the section or area producing the furs used in the fur product may be set out in connection with the name of the animal; as for example:

Dyed Fur Seal
Fur origin: Alaska
or
Dyed Muskrat
Fur origin: Minnesota

### § 301.16 Disclosure of origin of certain furs raised or taken in United States.

If the name of any animal set out in the Fur Products Name Guide or term permitted by the regulations to be used in connection therewith connotes foreign origin and such animal is raised or taken in the United States, furs obtained therefrom shall be described in disclosing the required information as having the United States as the country of origin; as for example:

Dyed Persian Lamb
Fur origin: United States
or
Mexican Raccoon
Fur origin: United States

### § 301.17 Misrepresentation of origin of furs.

No misleading nor deceptive statements as to the geographical or zoological origin of the animal producing a fur shall be used directly or indirectly in labeling, invoicing or advertising furs or fur products.

### § 301.18 Passing off domestic furs as imported furs prohibited.

No domestic furs nor fur products shall be labeled, invoiced or advertised in such a manner as to represent directly or by implication that they have been imported.

### § 301.19 Pointing, dyeing, bleaching or otherwise artificially coloring.

(a) Where a fur or fur product is pointed or contains or is composed of bleached, dyed or otherwise artificially colored fur, such facts shall be disclosed as a part of the required information in labeling, invoicing and advertising.

(b) The term *pointing* means the process of inserting separate hairs into furs or fur products for the purpose of adding guard hairs, either to repair damaged areas or to simulate other furs.

(c) The term *bleaching* means the process for producing a lighter shade of a fur, or removing off-color spots and stains by a bleaching agent.

(d) The term *dyeing* (which includes the processes known in the trade of tipping the hair or fur, feathering, and beautifying) means the process of applying dyestuffs to the hair or fur, either by immersion in a dye bath or by application of the dye by brush, feather, spray, or otherwise, for the purpose of changing the color of the fur or hair, or to accentuate its natural color. When dyestuff is applied by immersion in a dye bath or by application of the dye by brush, feather, or spray, it may

respectively be described as ''vat dyed'', ''brush dyed'', ''feather dyed'', or ''spray dyed'', as the case may be. When dyestuff is applied only to the ends of the hair or fur, by feather or otherwise, it may also be described as ''tip-dyed''. The application of dyestuff to the leather or the skin (known in the trade as ''tipping'', as distinguished from tip-dyeing the hair or fur as above described) and which does not affect a change of, nor accentuate the natural color of the hair or fur, shall not be considered as ''dyeing''. When fluorescent dye is applied to a fur or fur product it may be described as ''brightener added''.

(e) The term *artificial coloring* means any change or improvement in color of a fur or fur product in any manner other than by pointing, bleaching, dyeing, or tip-dyeing, and shall be described in labeling, invoicing and advertising as ''color altered'' or ''color added''.

(f) The term *blended* shall not be used as a part of the required information to describe the pointing, bleaching, dyeing, tip-dyeing, or otherwise artificially coloring of furs.

(g) Where a fur or fur product is not pointed, bleached, dyed, tip-dyed, or otherwise artificially colored it shall be described as ''natural''.

(h) Where any fur or fur product is dressed, processed or treated with a solution or compound containing any metal and such compound or solution effects any change or improvement in the color of the hair, fleece or fur fiber, such fur or fur product shall be described in labeling, invoicing and advertising as ''color altered'' or ''color added''.

(i)(1) Any person dressing, processing or treating a fur pelt in such a manner that it is required under paragraph (e) or (h) of this section to be described as ''color altered'' or ''color added'' shall place a black stripe at least one half inch (1.27 cm) in width across the leather side of the skin immediately above the rump or place a stamp with a solid black center in the form of either a two inch (5.08 cm) square or a circle at least two inches (5.08 cm) in diameter on the leather side of the pelt and shall use black ink for all other stamps or markings on the leather side of the pelt.

(2) Any person dressing, processing or treating a fur pelt which after processing is considered natural under paragraph (g) of this section shall place a white stripe at least one half inch (1.27 cm) in width across the leather side of the skin immediately above the rump or place a stamp with a solid white center in the form of either a two inch (5.08 cm) square or a circle at least two inches (5.08 cm) in diameter on the leather side of the pelt and shall use white ink for all other stamps or markings on the leather side of the pelt.

(3) Any person dressing, processing or treating a fur pelt in such a manner that it is considered dyed under paragraph (d) of this section shall place a yellow stripe at least one half inch (1.27 cm) in width across the leather side immediately above the rump or place a stamp with a solid yellow center in the form of either a two inch (5.08 cm) square or a circle at least two inches (5.08 cm) in diameter on the leather side of the pelt and shall use yellow ink for all other stamps or markings on the leather side of the pelt.

(4) In lieu of the marking or stamping otherwise required by paragraphs (i) (1), (2), and (3) of this section, any person dressing, processing or treating a fur pelt so as to be subject to the stamping or marking requirements of this paragraph may stamp the leather side of the pelt with the appropriate truthful designation ''dyed'', ''color altered'', ''color added'', or ''natural'', as the case may be, in such manner that the stamp will not be obliterated or mutilated by further processing and will remain clearly legible until the finished fur product reaches the ultimate consumer.

(5) Where, after assembling, fur garment shells, mats, plates or other assembled furs are processed or treated in such a manner as to fall within the stamping or marking provisions of this paragraph, such assembled furs, in lieu of the stamping or marking of each individual pelt or piece, may be appropriately stamped on the leather side as provided in this paragraph in such a manner that the stamp will remain on the finished fur product and clearly legible until it reaches the ultimate

consumer and will not be mutilated or obliterated by further processing.

(j) Any person who shall process a fur pelt in such a manner that after such processing it is no longer considered as natural shall clearly, conspicuously and legibly stamp on the leather side of the pelt and on required invoices relating thereto a lot number or other identifying number which relates to such records of the processor as will show the source and disposition of the pelts and the details of the processing performed. Such person shall also stamp his name or registered identification number on the leather side of the pelt.

(k) Any person who possesses fur pelts of a type which are always considered as dyed under paragraph (d) of this section after processing or any person who processes fur pelts which are always natural at the time of sale to the ultimate consumer, which pelts for a valid reason cannot be marked or stamped as provided in this section, may file an affidavit with the Federal Trade Commission's Bureau of Consumer Protection setting forth such facts as will show that the pelts are always dyed or natural as the case may be and that the stamping of such pelts cannot be reasonably accomplished. If the Bureau of Consumer Protection is satisfied that the public interest will be protected by the filing of the affidavit, it may accept such affidavit and advise the affiant that marking of the fur pelts themselves as provided in this section will be unnecessary until further notice. Any person filing such an affidavit shall promptly notify the Commission of any change in circumstances with respect to its operations.

(l) Any person subject to this section who incorrectly marks or fails to mark fur pelts as provided in paragraphs (i) and (j) of this section shall be deemed to have misbranded such products under section 4(l) of the Act. Any person subject to this section who furnishes a false or misleading affidavit under paragraph (k) of this section or fails to give the notice required by paragraph (k) of this section shall be deemed to have neglected and refused to maintain the records required by section 8(d) of the Act.

(1) In connection with paragraph (h) of this section, the following method may be used for detection of parts per million of iron and copper in hairs from fur pelts including hairs from mink pelts. Procedure for detection of parts per million of iron and copper in hairs from fur pelts including mink hairs.

(2) A recommended method for preparation of samples would be: Carefully pluck hair samples from 10 to 15 different representative sites on the pelt or garment. This can best be accomplished by using a long nose stainless steel pliers with a tip diameter of 1/16 inch (1.59 mm). The pliers should be inserted at the same angle as the guard hairs with the tip opened to 1/4 inch (6.35 mm). After contact with the hide, the tip should be raised about 1/4 inch (6.35 mm), closed tightly and pulled quickly and firmly to remove the hair.

(3) Place an accurately weighed sample of approximately .1000 grams of mink hair into a beaker with 20 ml. concentrated nitric acid. Evaporate just to dryness on a hot plate.

(4) If there is any organic matter still present, add 10 ml. of concentrated nitric acid (see paragraph 7) and again evaporate just to dryness on a hot plate. This step should be repeated until the nitric acid solution becomes clear to light green. Add 10 ml. of 1% hydrochloric acid to the dried residue in the beaker. Warm on a hot plate to insure complete solution of the residue.

(5) A recommended analytical procedure would be atomic absorption spectrophotometry. In testing for iron, the atomic absorption instrument must have the capability of a 2 angstrom band pass at the 2483 A line. When analyzing for iron the air-acetylene flame should be as lean as possible.

(6) A reagent blank should be carried through the entire procedure as outlined above and the final results corrected for the amounts of iron and copper found in the reagent blank.

(7) If facilities are available for handling perchloric acid, a preferred alternate to the additional nitric acid treatment would be to add 2 ml. of perchloric acid and 8 ml. of nitric acid, cover the beaker with a watch glass and allow the solutions to become clear to light green before removal of the

watch glass and evaporation just to dryness.

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3186, Apr. 14, 1961; 34 FR 381, Jan. 10, 1969; 36 FR 5689, Mar. 26, 1971; 41 FR 2636, Jan. 19, 1976; 53 FR 31314, Aug. 18, 1988; 61 FR 67709, Dec. 24, 1996]

### §301.20 Fur products composed of pieces.

(a) Where fur products, or fur mats and plates, are composed in whole or in substantial part of paws, tails, bellies, sides, flanks, gills, ears, throats, heads, scrap pieces, or waste fur, such fact shall be disclosed as a part of the required information in labeling, invoicing and advertising. Where a fur product is made of the backs of skins such fact may be set out in labels, invoices and advertising.

(b) Where fur products, or fur mats and plates, are composed wholly or substantially of two or more of the parts set out in paragraph (a) of this section or one or more of such parts and other fur, disclosure in respect thereto shall be made by naming such parts or other fur in order of predominance by surface area.

(c) The terms *substantial part* and *substantially* mean ten per centum (10 percent) or more in surface area.

(d) The term *assembled* shall not be used in lieu of the terms set forth in paragraph (a) of this section to describe fur products or fur mats and plates composed of such parts.

### §301.21 Disclosure of used furs.

(a) When fur in any form has been worn or used by an ultimate consumer it shall be designated ''used fur'' as a part of the required information in invoicing and advertising.

(b) When fur products or fur mats and plates are composed in whole or in part of used fur, such fact shall be disclosed as a part of the required information in labeling, invoicing and advertising; as for example:

Leopard
Used Fur
or
Dyed Muskrat
Contains Used Fur

### §301.22 Disclosure of damaged furs.

(a) The term *damaged fur,* as used in this part, means a fur, which, because of a known or patent defect resulting from natural causes or from processing, is of such a nature that its use in a fur product would decrease the normal life and durability of such product.

(b) When damaged furs are used in a fur product, full disclosure of such fact shall be made as a part of the required information in labeling, invoicing, or advertising such product; as for example:

Mink
Fur origin: Canada
Contains Damaged Fur

### §301.23 Second-hand fur products.

When a fur product has been used or worn by an ultimate consumer and is subsequently marketed in its original, reconditioned, or rebuilt form with or without the addition of any furs or used furs, the requirements of the act and regulations in respect to labeling, invoicing and advertising of such product shall be applicable thereto, subject, however, to the provisions of §301.14 of this part as to country of origin requirement, and in addition, as a part of the required information such product shall be designated ''Second-hand'', ''Reconditioned-Second-hand'', or ''Rebuilt-Second-hand'', as the case may be.

### §301.24 Repairing, restyling and remodeling fur products for consumer.

When fur products owned by and to be returned to the ultimate-consumer are repaired, restyled or remodeled and used fur or fur is added thereto, labeling of the fur product shall not be required. However, the person adding such used fur or fur to the fur product, or who is responsible therefor, shall give to the owner an invoice disclosing the information required under the act and regulations respecting the used fur or fur added to the fur product, subject, however, to the provisions of §301.14 of this part as to country of origin requirements.

**§ 301.25 Name required to appear on labels and invoices.**

The name required by the act to be used on labels and invoices shall be the full name under which the person is doing business, and no trade-mark, trade name nor other name which does not constitute such full name shall be used in lieu thereof.

**§ 301.26 Registered identification number.**

(a) Registered numbers for use as the required identification in lieu of the name on fur product labels as provided in section 4(2)(E) of the act will be issued by the Commission to qualified persons residing in the United States upon receipt of an application duly executed in the form set out in paragraph (d) of this section.

(b)(1) Registered identification numbers shall be used only by the person or concern to whom they are issued, and such numbers are not transferable or assignable.

(2) Any change in name, business address, or legal business status of a person to whom a registered identification number has been assigned shall be reported promptly to the Federal Trade Commission.

(3) Registered identification numbers shall be subject to cancellation whenever any such number was procured or has been used improperly or contrary to the requirements of the act and regulations, or when otherwise deemed necessary in the public interest.

(c) Registered identification numbers assigned under this rule may be used on labels required in labeling products subject to the provisions of the Wool Products Labeling Act and Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, and numbers previously assigned or to be assigned by the Commission under such Acts may be used as and for the required name in labeling under this Act. When so used by the person or firm to whom assigned, the use of the numbers shall be construed as identifying and binding the applicant as fully and in all respects as though assigned under the specific Act for which it is used.

(d) Form of application for registered identification number (printed forms are available upon request at the offices of the Commission):

**APPLICATION FOR A REGISTERED IDENTIFICATION NUMBER**

Approved by OMB
3084–0038
Expires: 11/1/84

1. LEGAL NAME OF APPLICANT FIRM

2. NAME UNDER WHICH APPLICANT DOES BUSINESS, IF DIFFERENT FROM LEGAL NAME

3. TYPE OF COMPANY
☐ PROPRIETORSHIP ☐ PARTNERSHIP ☐ CORPORATION

4. ADDRESS OF PRINCIPAL OFFICE OR PLACE OF BUSINESS (*Include Zip Code*)

5. TYPE OF BUSINESS (*Put an 'X' in all the boxes that apply*)
☐ MANUFACTURING ☐ IMPORTING ☐ WHOLESALING

☐ OTHER (*Please specify*) _____

6. LIST PRODUCTS

7. CERTIFICATION

The products listed in item six (6) above are subject to one or more of the following Acts: The Textile Fiber Products Identification Act (15 U.S.C. §§ 70-70k), The Wool Products Labeling Act (15 U.S.C. §§ 68-68j), or the Fur Products Labeling Act (15 U.S.C. §§ 69-69k). By filing this form with the Federal Trade Commisssion the company named above applies for a registered identification number to use on labels required by these Acts.

Under penalty of perjury, I certify that the information supplied on this form is true and correct.

*SIGNATURE OF PROPRIETOR, PARTNER, OR CORPORATE OFFICIAL*

| 8. NAME (*Please print or type*) | 9. TITLE | 10. DATE |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

**INSTRUCTIONS**

The Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, The Wool Products Labeling Act, or the Fur Products Labeling Act provide that any marketer or manufacturer of fibrous or fur products covered by those Acts may apply for a registered identification number. Companies can then use the registered identification number, instead of the name under which the Company does business, on the labels, tags, tickets, or stamps that those Acts require to be attached to covered products.

In completing this application, please observe the following:

(a) All blanks must be filled in. Include your Zip Code in Item 4.

(b) In Item 7 if the applicant firm is a partnership, a principal partner should sign. If a corporation, one of its principal officers should sign, giving his/her title in Item 9.

(c) Send one completed copy to:
Federal Trade Commission
Los Angeles Regional Office
11000 Wilshire Blvd., Suite 13209
Los Angeles, CA 90024

A registered identification number (RN) issued by the Commission continues in effect until revoked. The holder of the assigned number must immediately notify the Los Angeles Regional Office in writing of any change in business status. Any change in the address of the holder's principal office and place of business must also be promptly reported.

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3187, Apr. 14, 1961; 48 FR 12516, Mar. 25, 1983]

## §301.27 Label and method of affixing.

At all times during the marketing of a fur product the required label shall have a minimum dimension of one and three-fourths (1¾) inches by two and three-fourths (2¾) inches (4.5 cm×7 cm). Such label shall be of a material of sufficient durability and shall be conspicuously affixed to the product in a secure manner and with sufficient permanency to remain thereon

throughout the sale, resale, distribution and handling incident thereto, and shall remain on or be firmly affixed to the respective product when sold and delivered to the purchaser and purchaser-consumer thereof.

[61 FR 67710, Dec. 24, 1996]

### § 301.28 Labels to be avoided.

Labels which are insecurely or inconspicuously attached, or which in the course of offering the fur product for sale, selling, transporting, marketing, or handling incident thereto, are likely to become detached, indistinct, obliterated, illegible, mutilated, inaccessible or inconspicuous shall not be used.

### § 301.29 Requirements in respect to disclosure on label.

(a) The required information shall be set out on the label in a legible manner and in not smaller than pica or twelve (12) point type, and all parts of the required information shall be set out in letters of equal size and conspicuousness. All of the required information with respect to the fur product shall be set out on one side of the label and no other information shall appear on such side except the lot or style designation and size. The lot or style designation may include non-deceptive terms indicating the type of garment, color of fur, and brand name for fur. The other side of the label may be used to set out any nonrequired information which is true and non-deceptive and which is not prohibited by the Act and regulations, but in all cases the animal name used shall be that set out in the Name Guide.

(b) The required information may be set out in hand printing provided it conforms to the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section, and is set out in indelible ink in a clear, distinct, legible and conspicuous manner. Handwriting shall not be used in setting out any of the required information on the label.

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3187, Apr. 14, 1961]

### § 301.30 Arrangement of required information on label.

(a) The applicable parts of the information required with respect to the fur to appear on labels affixed to fur products shall be set out in the following sequence:

(1) That the fur product contains or is composed of natural, pointed, bleached, dyed, tip-dyed or otherwise artificially colored fur, when such is the fact;

(2) That the fur product contains fur which has been sheared, plucked, or letout, when such is the fact;

(3) That the fur contained in the fur product originated in a particular country (when so used the name of the country should be stated in the adjective form), when such is the fact;

(4) The name or names (as set forth in the Fur Products Name Guide) of the animal or animals that produced the fur;

(5) That the fur product is composed in whole of backs or in whole or in substantial part of paws, tails, bellies, sides flanks, gills, ears, throats, heads, scrap pieces, or waste fur, when such is the fact;

(6) The name of the country of origin of any imported furs used in the fur product;

(7) Any other information required or permitted by the Act and regulations with respect to the fur.

NOTE: The information set out in paragraphs (a) (2) and (3) of this section and the term *backs* set out in paragraph (a)(5) of this section are not mandatory, but when and if used, shall be set out in the sequence noted.

(b) That part of the required information with respect to the name or registered identification number of the manufacturer or dealer may precede or follow the required information set out in paragraph (a) of this section.

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3187, Apr. 14, 1961]

### § 301.31 Labeling of fur products consisting of two or more units.

(a) The label shall be attached to and appear upon each garment or separate article of wearing apparel subject to the act irrespective of whether two or more garments or articles may be sold or marketed together or in combination with each other.

(b) In the case of fur products manufactured for use in pairs or groups, only one label will be required if all units in the pair or group are of the same fur

and have the same country of origin, and are firmly attached to each other when marketed and delivered in the channels of trade and to the purchaser-consumer and the information set out on the label is clearly applicable to each unit in the pair or group and supplies the information required under the act and rules and regulations.

### §301.32 Fur product containing material other than fur.

(a) Where a fur product contains a material other than fur the content of which is required to be disclosed on labels under other statutes administered by the Commission, such information may be set out on the same side of the label and in immediate conjunction with the information required under this Act; as for example:

100% Wool
Interlining—100% Recycled Wool
Trim—Dyed Muskrat
Fur Origin: Canada
or
Body: 100% Cotton
Lining: 100% Nylon
Collar: Dyed Mouton Lamb
Fur Origin: Argentina

(b) Information which may be desirable or necessary to fully inform the purchaser of other material content of a fur product may be set out on the same side of the label as used for disclosing the information required under the Act and rules and regulations; as for example:

Body—Leather
Trim—Dyed Mink

[26 FR 3187, Apr. 14, 1961, as amended at 45 FR 44263, July 1, 1980]

### §301.33 Labeling of samples.

Where samples of furs or fur products subject to the act are used to promote or effect sales of fur products, said samples, as well as the fur products purchased therefrom, shall be labeled to show the information required under the act and regulations.

### §301.34 Misbranded or falsely invoiced fur products.

(a) If a person subject to section 3 of the Act with respect to a fur product finds that a fur product is misbranded he shall correct the label or replace same with a substitute containing the required information.

(b) If a person subject to section 3 of the Act with respect to a fur or fur product finds that the invoice issued to him is false or deceptive, he shall, in connection with any invoice issued by him in relation to such fur or fur product correctly set forth all of the information required by the Act and regulations in relation to such fur or fur product.

[26 FR 3187, Apr. 14, 1961]

### §301.35 Substitution of labels.

(a) Persons authorized under the provisions of section 3(e) of the act to substitute labels affixed to fur products may do so, provided the substitute label is complete and carries all the information required under the act and rules and regulations in the same form and manner as required in respect to the original label. The substitute label need not, however, show the name or registered number appearing on the original label if the name or registered number of the person who affixes the substitute appears thereon.

(b) The original label may be used as a substitute label provided the name or registered number of the person making the substitution, together with the item number or mark assigned by such person to said fur product for record purposes is inserted thereon without interfering with or obscuring in any manner other required information. In connection with such substitution the name or registered number as well as any record numbers appearing on the original label may be removed.

(c) Persons substituting labels under the provision of this section shall maintain the records required under §301.41 of this part.

### §301.36 Sectional fur products.

(a) Where a fur product is composed of two or more sections containing different animal furs the required information with respect to each section shall be separately set forth in labeling, invoicing or advertising; as for example:

Dyed Rabbit
Fur origin: France
Trimming: Dyed Mouton-processed Lamb

Fur origin: Argentina
or
Body: Dyed Kolinsky
Fur origin: Russia
Tail: Dyed Mink
Fur origin: Canada

(b) The provisions of this section shall not be interpreted so as to require the disclosure of very small amounts of different animal furs added to complete a fur product or skin such as the ears, snoot, or under part of the jaw.

### § 301.37 Manner of invoicing furs and fur products.

(a) In the invoicing of furs and fur products, all of the required information shall be set out in a clear, legible, distinct and conspicuous manner. The invoice shall be issued at the time of the sale or other transaction involving furs or fur products, but the required information need not be repeated in subsequent periodic statements of account respecting the same furs or fur products.

(b) Non-required information or representations appearing in the invoicing of furs and fur products shall in no way be false or deceptive nor include any names, terms or representations prohibited by the act and regulations. Nor shall such information or representations be set forth or used in such manner as to interfere with the required information.

### § 301.38 Advertising of furs and fur products.

(a)(1) In advertising furs or fur products, all parts of the required information shall be stated in close proximity with each other and, if printed, in legible and conspicuous type of equal size.

(2) Non-required information or representations appearing in the advertising of furs and fur products shall in no way be false or deceptive nor include any names, terms or representations prohibited by the act and regulations. Nor shall such information or representations be set forth or used in such manner as to interfere with the required information.

(b)(1) In general advertising of a group of fur products composed in whole or in part of imported furs having various countries of origin, the disclosure of such countries of origin may, by reference, be made through the use of the following statement in the advertisement in a clear and conspicuous manner:

Fur products labeled to show country of origin of imported furs

(2) The provisions of this paragraph shall not be applicable in the case of catalogue, mail order, or other types of advertising which solicit the purchase of fur products in such a manner that the purchaser or prospective purchaser would not have the opportunity of viewing the product and attached label prior to delivery thereof.

(c) In advertising of an institutional type referring only to the general nature or kind of business conducted or to the general classification of the types or kinds of furs or fur products manufactured or handled, and which advertising is not intended to aid, promote, or assist directly or indirectly in the sale or offering for sale of any specific fur products or furs, the required information need not be set forth: *Provided, however,* That if reference is made in the advertisement to a color of the fur which was caused by dyeing, bleaching or other artificial coloring, such facts shall be disclosed in the advertising, and provided further, that when animal names are used in such advertising, such names shall be those set forth in the Fur Products Name Guide. For example, the kind of advertising contemplated by this paragraph is as follows:

X Fur Company
Famous for its Black Dyed Persian Lamb Since 1900
or
X Company
Manufacturers of Fine Muskrat Coats, Capes and Stoles

### § 301.39 Exempted fur products.

(a) Where the cost of any fur trim or other manufactured fur or furs contained in a fur product, exclusive of any costs incident to its incorporation therein, does not exceed twenty dollars ($20) to the manufacturer of the finished fur product, or where a manufacturer's selling price of a fur product does not exceed twenty dollars ($20) and the provisions of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section are met, the fur products shall be exempted from the

requirements of the Act and regulations; provided, however, that if the fur product is made of or contains any used fur, or if the fur product itself is or purports to be the whole skin of an animal with the head, ears, paws and tail, such as a choker or scarf, the fur product is to be labeled, invoiced and advertised in accordance with the requirements of the Act and regulations regardless of cost of the fur used in the fur product or manufacturer's selling price. The exemption provided for herein shall not be applicable (1) If any false, deceptive or misleading representations as to the fur contained in the fur product are made; or (2) if any representations as to the fur are made in labeling, invoicing or advertising without disclosing: (i) In the case of labels, the information required to be disclosed under section 4(2) (A), (C), and (D) of the Act; (ii) in the case of advertising, the information required to be disclosed under section 5(a) (1), (3), and (4) of the Act; and (iii) in the case of invoicing, the information required to be disclosed under section 5(b)(1) (A), (C), and (D) of the Act.

(b) Where a fur product is exempt under this section from the requirements of the act and regulations, the manufacturer thereof shall maintain, in addition to the other records required under the act and regulations, adequate records showing the cost of the fur used in such fur product, or copies of invoices showing the manufacturer's selling price of the fur product, provided such price is used as the basis for exemption. Such records shall be preserved for at least three years.

(c) Where a fur product is exempt under this section and the manufacturer's selling price exceeds seven dollars ($7.00), the manufacturer's or wholesaler's invoice shall carry information indicating such fur product is exempt from the provisions of the Act and regulations; as for example: ''FPL EXEMPT.''

[17 FR 6075, July 8, 1952, as amended at 26 FR 3187, Apr. 14, 1961; 26 FR 3771, May 2, 1961; 34 FR 381, Jan. 10, 1969]

### §301.40 Item number or mark to be assigned to each fur product.

(a) For the purpose of identification, each fur product shall be assigned a separate item number or mark by the manufacturer thereof: *Provided, however,* That where all of the furs used in a group of fur products are obtained through the same purchase and from the same source and all of the required information with respect to such furs is identical, then a single item number or mark may be assigned to identify all of the fur products in such group. Each number or mark so assigned shall appear on the required label and invoice pertaining to such product and used for the identification thereof in the records required by §301.41 of this part.

(b) Any subsequent dealer in fur products may assign to each fur product handled a different item number or mark to be used on the required label and invoice pertaining to such product, in lieu of that of the manufacturer or other supplier, and for the identification of such fur product in the records required by §301.41 of this part.

### §301.41 Maintenance of records.

(a) Pursuant to section 3(e) and section 8(d)(1), of the Act, each manufacturer or dealer in fur products or furs (including dressers, dyers, bleachers and processors), irrespective of whether any guaranty has been given or received, shall maintain records showing all of the required information relative to such fur products or furs in such manner as will readily identify each fur or fur product manufactured or handled. Such records shall show:

(1) That the fur product contains or is composed of natural, pointed, bleached, dyed, tip-dyed or otherwise artificially colored fur, when such is the fact;

(2) That the fur product contains used fur, when such is the fact;

(3) The name or names (as set forth in the Fur Products Name Guide) of the animal or animals that produced the fur;

(4) That the fur product is composed in whole or in substantial part of paws, tails, bellies, sides, flanks, gills, ears, throats, heads, scrap pieces, or waste fur, when such is the fact;

(5) The name of the country of origin of any imported furs used in the fur products;

(6) The name, or other identification issued and registered by the Commission, of one or more of the persons who manufacture, import, sell, advertise, offer, transport or distribute the fur product in commerce.

(7) The item number assigned, or reassigned, to each fur or fur product as set out in § 301.40

(b) The purpose of the records is to permit a determination that the requirements of the Act and Regulations have been met and to establish a traceable line of continuity from raw material through processing to finished product. The records shall be preserved for at least three years.

[53 FR 31315, Aug. 18, 1988]

### § 301.42 Deception as to nature of business.

When necessary to avoid deception, the name of any person other than the manufacturer of the fur product appearing on the label or invoice shall be accompanied by appropriate words showing that the fur product was not manufactured by such person; as for example:

Distributed by _____ or _____
Wholesalers

### § 301.43 Use of deceptive trade or corporate names, trademarks or graphic representations prohibited.

No person shall use in labeling, invoicing or advertising any fur or fur product a trade name, corporate name, trademark or other trade designation or graphic representation which misrepresents directly or by implication to purchasers, prospective purchasers or the consuming public:

(a) The character of the product including method of construction;

(b) The name of the animal producing the fur;

(c) The method or manner of distribution; or

(d) The geographical or zoological origin of the fur.

[61 FR 67710, Dec. 24, 1996]

### § 301.44 Misrepresentation of prices.

(a) No person shall, with respect to a fur or fur product, advertise such fur or fur product at alleged wholesale prices or at alleged manufacturers cost or less, unless such representations are true in fact; nor shall any person advertise a fur or fur product at prices purported to be reduced from what are in fact fictitious prices, nor at a purported reduction in price when such purported reduction is in fact fictitious.

(b) No person shall, with respect to a fur or fur product, advertise such fur or fur product with comparative prices and percentage savings claims except on the basis of current market values or unless the time of such compared price is given.

(c) No person shall, with respect to a fur or fur product, advertise such fur or fur product as being ''made to sell for'', being ''worth'' or ''valued at'' a certain price, or by similar statements, unless such claim or representation is true in fact.

(d) No person shall, with respect to a fur or fur product, advertise such fur or fur product as being of a certain value or quality unless such claims or representations are true in fact.

(e) Persons making pricing claims or representations of the types described in paragraphs (a), (b), (c) and (d) of this section shall maintain full and adequate records disclosing the facts upon which such claims or representations are based.

(f) No person shall, with respect to a fur or fur product, advertise such fur or fur product by the use of an illustration which shows such fur or fur product to be a higher priced product than the one so advertised.

(g) No person shall, with respect to a fur or fur product, advertise such fur or fur product as being ''bankrupt stock'', ''samples'', ''show room models'', ''Hollywood Models'', ''Paris Models'', ''French Models'', ''Parisian Creations'', ''Furs Worn by Society Women'', ''Clearance Stock'', ''Auction Stock'', ''Stock of a business in a state of liquidation'', or similar statements, unless such representations or claims are true in fact.

### § 301.45 Representations as to construction of fur products.

(a) No misleading nor deceptive statements as to the construction of fur products shall be used directly or

indirectly in labeling, invoicing or advertising such products. (For example, a fur product made by the skin-on-skin method should not be represented as having been made by the letout method.)

(b) Where a fur product is made by the method known in the trade as letting-out, or is made of fur which has been sheared or plucked, such facts may be set out in labels, invoices and advertising.

### §301.46 Reference to guaranty by Government prohibited.

No representation nor suggestion that a fur or fur product is guaranteed under the act by the Government, or any branch thereof, shall be made in the labeling, invoicing or advertising in connection therewith.

### §301.47 Form of separate guaranty.

The following is a suggested form of separate guaranty under section 10 of the Act which may be used by a guarantor residing in the United States, on and as part of an invoice in which the merchandise covered is listed and specified and which shows the date of such document, the date of shipment of the merchandise and the signature and address of the guarantor:

We guarantee that the fur products or furs specified herein are not misbranded nor falsely nor deceptively advertised or invoiced under the provisions of the Fur Products Labeling Act and rules and regulations thereunder.

### §301.48 Continuing guaranties.

(a)(1) Under section 10 of the Act any person residing in the United States and handling fur or fur products may file a continuing guaranty with the Federal Trade Commission. When filed with the Commission a continuing guaranty shall be fully executed in duplicate. Forms for use in preparing continuing guaranties shall be supplied by the Commission upon request.

(2) Continuing guaranties filed with the Commission shall continue in effect until revoked. The guarantor shall promptly report any change in business status to the Commission.

(3) The following is the prescribed form of continuing guaranty:

## CONTINUING GUARANTY

Approved by OMB
3084–0036
Expires: 11/1/84

1. LEGAL NAME OF GUARANTOR FIRM

2. NAME UNDER WHICH GUARANTOR FIRM DOES BUSINESS, IF DIFFERENT FROM LEGAL NAME

3. TYPE OF COMPANY

☐ PROPRIETORSHIP ☐ PARTNERSHIP CORPORATION

4. ADDRESS OF PRINCIPAL OFFICE OR PLACE OF BUSINESS *(Include Zip Code)*

5. LAW UNDER WHICH THE CONTINUING GUARANTY IS TO BE FILED *(Put an 'X' in the appropriate boxes)*

☐ Under the **Textile Fiber Products Identification Act** (15 U.S.C. §§ 70-70k): The company named above, which manufactures, markets, or handles textile fiber products, guaranties that when it ships or delivers any textile fiber product, the product will not be misbranded, falsely or deceptively invoiced, or falsely or deceptively advertised, within the meaning of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act and the rules and regulations under that Act.

☐ Under the **Wool Products Labeling Act** (15 U.S.C. §§ 68-68j): The company named above, which manufactures, markets, or handles wool products, guaranties that when it ships or delivers any wool product, the product will not be misbranded within the meaning of the Wool Products Labeling Act and the rules and regulations under that Act.

☐ Under the **Fur Products Labeling Act** (15 U.S.C. §§ 69-69k): The company named above, which manufactures, markets, or handles fur products, guaranties that when it ships or delivers any fur product, the product will not be misbranded, falsely or deceptively invoiced, or falsely or deceptively advertised, within the meaning of the Fur Products Labeling Act and the rules and regulations under that Act.

6. CERTIFICATION

Under penalty of perjury, I certify that the information supplied on this form is true and correct.

*SIGNATURE OF PROPRIETOR, PRINCIPAL PARTNER, OR CORPORATE OFFICIAL*

7. NAME *(Please print or type)*

8. TITLE

9. CITY AND STATE WHERE SIGNED

10. DATE

**INSTRUCTIONS**

The Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, the Wool Products Labeling Act, and the Fur Products Labeling Act provide that any marketer or manufacturer of fibrous or fur products or furs covered by those Acts may file a continuing guaranty with the Federal Trade Commission. A continuing guaranty on file assures customer firms that the guarantor's products are in conformance with the Act(s) under which the guarantor has filed. Customer firms rely on the continuing guaranties for protection from liability if violations occur.

In completing this form, please observe the following:

(a) All appropriate blanks on the form should be filled in. Include your Zip Code in Item 4.

(b) In Item 6, if the guarantor firm is a partnership, a principal partner should sign. If a corporation, one of its principal officers should sign, giving his/her title in Item 8.

(c) Send **two** completed copies to:

Federal Trade Commission
Los Angeles Regional Office
11000 Wilshire Blvd., Suite 13209
Los Angeles, CA 90024

Continuing guaranties filed with the Commission continue in effect until revoked. The guarantor must immediately notify the Los Angeles Regional Office in writing of any change in business status. Any change in the address of the guarantor's principal office or place of business must also be promptly reported.

DO NOT USE THIS SPACE

Filed _____ 19 ____

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

FTC Form 31-A (rev. 12/82)

(b) Any person who has a continuing guaranty on file with the Commission may, during the effective date of the guaranty, give notice of such fact by setting forth on the invoice or other paper covering the marketing or handling of the product guaranteed the following: "Continuing guaranty under the Fur Products Labeling Act filed with the Federal Trade Commission."

(c) Any person who falsely represents in writing that he has a continuing guaranty on file with the Federal Trade Commission when such is not a

fact shall be deemed to have furnished a false guaranty under section 10(b) of the Act.

[26 FR 3188, Apr. 14, 1961, as amended at 48 FR 12517, Mar. 25, 1983]

### § 301.48a Guaranties not received in good faith.

A guaranty shall not be deemed to have been received in good faith within the meaning of section 10(a) of the Act:

(a) Unless the recipient of such guaranty shall have examined the required label, required invoice and advertisement relating to the fur product or fur so guaranteed;

(b) If the recipient of the guaranty has knowledge that the fur or fur product guaranteed is misbranded, falsely invoiced or falsely advertised.

[26 FR 3188, Apr. 14, 1961]

### § 301.49 Deception in general.

No furs nor fur products shall be labeled, invoiced, or advertised in any manner which is false, misleading or deceptive in any respect.

## PART 303—RULES AND REGULATIONS UNDER THE TEXTILE FIBER PRODUCTS IDENTIFICATION ACT[1]

Sec.

303.1 Terms defined.
303.2 General requirements.
303.3 Fibers present in amounts of less than 5 percent.
303.4 English language requirement.
303.5 Abbreviations, ditto marks, and asterisks prohibited.
303.6 Generic names of fibers to be used.
303.7 Generic names and definitions for manufactured fibers.
303.8 Procedure for establishing generic names for manufactured fibers.
303.9 Use of fur-bearing animal names and symbols prohibited.
303.10 Fiber content of special types of products.
303.11 Floor coverings containing backings, fillings, and paddings.
303.12 Trimmings of household textile articles.
303.13 Sale of remnants and products made of remnants.
303.14 Products containing unknown fibers.
303.15 Required label and method of affixing.
303.16 Arrangement and disclosure of information on labels.
303.17 Use of fiber trademarks and generic names on labels.
303.18 Terms implying fibers not present.
303.19 Name or other identification required to appear on labels.
303.20 Registered identification numbers.
303.21 Marking of samples, swatches, or specimens and products sold therefrom.
303.22 Products containing linings, interlinings, fillings, and paddings.
303.23 Textile fiber products containing superimposed or added fibers.
303.24 Pile fabrics and products composed thereof.
303.25 Sectional disclosure of content.
303.26 Ornamentation.
303.27 Use of the term ''All'' or ''100%.''
303.28 Products contained in packages.
303.29 Labeling of pairs or products containing two or more units.

[1] The Federal Trade Commission on May 20, 1959, announced its policy with regard to section 15 of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, which states in part that ''The Commission shall provide for the exception of any textile fiber product acquired prior to the effective date of this Act.'' The announcement reads:

''The exception provided by section 15 of the Act shall apply to textile fiber products acquired prior to the effective date of the Act (March 3, 1960) where such products are marketed or handled on or after March 3, 1960 in the same basic form as that in which they were acquired, but shall not apply to textile fiber products manufactured or processed on or after March 3, 1960, from other textile fiber products acquired prior to that date where such manufacturing or processing changes the basic form of the textile fiber product to the extent that it becomes a different type of product. For example, the exception would apply to yarns, fabrics or garments acquired prior to March 3, 1960, which are marketed or handled on or after that date as yarns, fabrics or garments, respectively, without any change in the form of such products, but such exception would not apply to fabrics manufactured on or after March 3, 1960, from yarns or fibers acquired prior to that date, or to garments manufactured on or after March 3, 1960, from fabrics acquired prior to that date. Fabrics acquired in the greige before March 3, 1960, but processed or finished after that date would not lose their right to exception as a result of such processing or finishing operation.

''On or after March 3, 1960, any person who desires to claim the exception provided by section 15 of the Act must be able to establish by records or other competent means that the products as to which he claims the exception were acquired in the same basic form prior to March 3, 1960, and that he is entitled to the exception claimed.''

303.30 Textile fiber products in form for consumer.
303.31 Invoice in lieu of label.
303.32 Products containing reused stuffing.
303.33 Country where imported textile fiber products are processed or manufactured.
303.34 Country of origin in mail order advertising.
303.35 Use of terms ''virgin'' or ''new.''
303.36 Form of separate guaranty.
303.37 Form of continuing guaranty from seller to buyer.
303.38 Continuing guaranty filed with Federal Trade Commission.
303.39 Maintenance of records.
303.40 Use of terms in written advertisements which imply presence of a fiber.
303.41 Use of fiber trademarks and generic names in advertising.
303.42 Arrangement of information in advertising textile fiber products.
303.43 Fiber content tolerances.
303.44 Products not intended for uses subject to the act.
303.45 Exclusions from the act.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 70 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, unless otherwise noted.

### § 303.1 Terms defined.

As used in this part, unless the context otherwise specifically requires:

(a) The term *Act* means the *Textile Fiber Products Identification Act* (approved September 2, 1958, 85th Congress, 2d Sess.; 15 U.S.C. 70, 72 Stat. 1717).

(b) The terms *rule, rules, regulations,* and *rules and regulations* mean the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission pursuant to section 7(c) of the Act.

(c) The definition of terms contained in section 2 of the Act shall be applicable also to such terms when used in rules promulgated under the Act.

(d) The term *United States* means the several States, the District of Columbia, and the Territories and possessions of the United States.

(e) The terms *required information* and *information required* mean such information as is required to be disclosed on labels or invoices and in advertising under the Act and regulations.

(f) The terms *label, labels, labeled,* and *labeling* mean the stamp, tag, label, or other means of identification, or authorized substitute therefor, required to be on or affixed to textile fiber products by the Act and regulations and on which the information required is to appear.

(g) The terms *marketing or handling* and *marketed or handled,* when applied to textile fiber products, mean any one or all of the transactions set forth in section 3 of the Act.

(h) The terms *invoice* and *invoice or other paper* mean a written account, order, memorandum, list, or catalogue, which is issued to a purchaser, consignee, bailee, correspondent, agent, or any other person, in connection with the marketing or handling of any textile fiber product transported or delivered to such person.

(i) The term *outer coverings of furniture, mattresses, and box springs* means those coverings as are permanently incorporated in such articles.

(j) The term *wearing apparel* means any costume or article of clothing or covering for any part of the body worn or intended to be worn by individuals.

(k) The term *beddings* means sheets, covers, blankets, comforters, pillows, pillowcases, quilts, bedspreads, pads, and all other textile fiber products used or intended to be used on or about a bed or other place for reclining or sleeping but shall not include furniture, mattresses or box springs.

(l) The term *headwear* means any textile fiber product worn exclusively on or about the head or face by individuals.

(m) The term *backings,* when applied to floor coverings, means that part of a floor covering to which the pile, face, or outer surface is woven, tufted, hooked, knitted, or otherwise attached, and which provides the structural base of the floor covering. The term *backing* shall also include fabrics attached to the structural base of the floor covering in such a way as to form a part of such structural base, but shall not include the pile, face, or outer surface of the floor covering or any part thereof.

(n) The term *elastic material* means a fabric composed of yarn consisting of an elastomer or a covered elastomer.

(o) The term *coated fabric* means any fabric which is coated, filled, impregnated, or laminated with a continuous-film-forming polymeric composition in such a manner that the weight added to the base fabric is at least 35 percent

of the weight of the fabric before coating, filling, impregnation, or lamination.

(p) The term *upholstered product* means articles of furniture containing stuffing and shall include mattresses and box springs.

(q) The term *ornamentation* means any fibers or yarns imparting a visibly discernible pattern or design to a yarn or fabric.

(r) The term *fiber trademark* means a word or words used by a person to identify a particular fiber produced or sold by him and to distinguish it from fibers of the same generic class produced or sold by others. Such term shall not include any trade mark, product mark, house mark, trade name or other name which does not identify a particular fiber.

(s) The term *wool* means the fiber from the fleece of the sheep or lamb or hair of the Angora or Cashmere goat (and may include the so-called specialty fibers from the hair of the camel, alpaca, llama, and vicuna) which has never been reclaimed from any woven or felted wool product.

(t) The term *recycled wool* means (1) the resulting fiber when wool has been woven or felted into a wool product which, without ever having been utilized in any way by the ultimate consumer, subsequently has been made into a fibrous state, or (2) the resulting fiber when wool or reprocessed wool has been spun, woven, knitted, or felted into a wool product which, after having been used in any way by the ultimate consumer, subsequently has been made into a fibrous state.

(u) The terms *mail order catalog* and *mail order promotional material* mean any printed materials used in the direct sale or direct offering for sale of textile products that are distributed or shown to ultimate consumers and solicit the ultimate consumers to purchase such textile products by mail, telephone or some other method without examining the actual product purchased.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 45 FR 44263, July 1, 1980; 50 FR 15106, Apr. 17, 1985]

### §303.2 General requirements.

(a) Each textile fiber product, except those exempted or excluded under section 12 of the Act, shall be labeled or invoiced in conformity with the requirements of the Act and regulations.

(b) Any advertising of textile fiber products subject to the Act shall be in conformity with the requirements of the Act and regulations.

(c) The requirements of the Act and regulations shall not be applicable to products required to be labeled under the Wool Products Labeling Act of 1939 (Pub. L. 76–850, 15 U.S.C. 68, 54 Stat. 1128).

(d) Any person marketing or handling textile fiber products who shall cause or direct a processor or finisher to label, invoice, or otherwise identify any textile fiber product with required information shall be responsible under the Act and regulations for any failure of compliance with the Act and regulations by reason of any statement or omission in such label, invoice, or other means of identification utilized in accordance with his direction: *Provided*, That nothing herein shall relieve the processor or finisher of any duty or liability to which he may be subject under the Act and regulations.

### §303.3 Fibers present in amounts of less than 5 percent.

(a) Except as permitted in paragraph (b) of this section and sections 4(b)(1) and 4(b)(2) of the Act, as amended, no fiber present in the amount of less than 5 per centum of the total fiber weight shall be designated by its generic name or fiber trademark in disclosing the constituent fibers in required information, but shall be designated as ''other fiber.'' Where more than one of such fibers are present in a product they shall be designated in the aggregate as ''other fibers.''

(b) Where a textile fiber present in a textile fiber product in the amount of less than 5 per centum of the total fiber weight of the product has a clearly established and definite functional significance where present in the product in the amount contained in such product so as to fall within the provisions of sections 4(b)(1) and 4(b)(2) of the Act, as amended, relating to the disclosure of fibers having such functional significance and it is desired to disclose the presence of such fiber by generic name or fiber trademark name,

the generic name of such fiber, the percentage by weight of the fiber in the total fiber content of the product, and the functional significance of the fiber shall be set out in the required fiber content disclosure, as for example:

96 percent Acetate.
4 percent Spandex for elasticity.

In making such disclosure all of the provisions of the Act and regulations setting forth the manner and form of disclosure of fiber content information including the provisions of §§ 303.17 of this part (Rule 17) and 303.41 of this part (Rule 41) relating to the use of generic names and fiber trademarks shall be applicable.

[30 FR 14253, Nov. 13, 1965]

### § 303.4 English language requirement.

All required information shall be set out in the English language. If the required information appears in a language other than English, it also shall appear in the English language. The provisions of this section shall not apply to advertisements in foreign language newspapers or periodicals, but such advertising shall in all other respects comply with the Act and regulations.

### § 303.5 Abbreviations, ditto marks, and asterisks prohibited.

(a) In disclosing required information, words or terms shall not be designated by ditto marks or appear in footnotes referred to by asterisks or other symbols in required information, and shall not be abbreviated except as permitted in § 303.33(d) of this part.

(b) Where the generic name of a textile fiber is required to appear in immediate conjunction with a fiber trademark in advertising, labeling, or invoicing, a disclosure of the generic name by means of a footnote, to which reference is made by use of an asterisk or other symbol placed next to the fiber trademark, shall not be sufficient in itself to constitute compliance with the Act and regulations.

### § 303.6 Generic names of fibers to be used.

(a) Except where another name is permitted under the Act and regulations, the respective generic names of all fibers present in the amount of 5 per centum or more of the total fiber weight of the textile fiber product shall be used when naming fibers in the required information; as for example: ''cotton,'' ''rayon,'' ''silk,'' ''linen,'' ''nylon,'' etc.

(b) Where a textile fiber product contains the hair or fiber of a fur-bearing animal present in the amount 5 per centum or more of the total fiber weight of the product, the name of the animal producing such fiber may be used in setting forth the required information, provided the name of such animal is used in conjunction with the words ''fiber,'' ''hair,'' or ''blend;'' as for example:

80 percent Rabbit hair.
20 percent Nylon.
or
80 percent Silk.
20 percent Mink fiber.

(c) The term *fur fiber* may be used to describe the hair or fur fiber or mixtures thereof of any animal or animals other than the sheep, lamb, Angora goat, Cashmere goat, camel, alpaca, llama or vicuna where such hair or fur fiber or mixture is present in the amount of 5 per centum or more of the total fiber weight of the textile fiber product and no direct or indirect representations are made as to the animal or animals from which the fiber so designated was obtained; as for example:

60 percent Cotton.
40 percent Fur fiber.
or
50 percent Nylon.
30 percent Mink hair.
20 percent Fur fiber.

(d) Where textile fiber products subject to the Act contain (1) wool or (2) recycled wool in amounts of five per centum or more of the total fiber weight, such fibers shall be designated and disclosed as wool or recycled wool as the case may be.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 45 FR 44263, July 1, 1980]

### § 303.7 Generic names and definitions for manufactured fibers.

Pursuant to the provisions of section 7(c) of the Act, the following generic

names for manufactured fibers, together with their respective definitions, are hereby established:

(a) *Acrylic.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 85 percent by weight of acrylonitrile units

$$(-CH_2-\underset{\underset{CN}{|}}{CH}-).$$

(b) *Modacrylic.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of less than 85 percent but at least 35 percent by weight of acrylonitrile units

$$(-CH_2-\underset{\underset{CN}{|}}{CH}-),$$

except fibers qualifying under paragraph (j)(2) of this section and fibers qualifying under paragraph (q) of this section. (Sec. 7, 72 Stat. 1717; 15 U.S.C. section 70e)

(c) *Polyester.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 85% by weight of an ester of a substituted aromatic carboxylic acid, including but not restricted to substituted terephthalate units,

$$p(-R-O-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-C_6H_4-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-O-),$$

and para substituted hydroxy-benzoate units,

$$p(-R-O-C_6H_4-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-O-).$$

(d) *Rayon*—A manufactured fiber composed of regenerated cellulose, as well as manufactured fibers composed of regenerated cellulose in which substituents have replaced not more than 15% of the hydrogens of the hydroxyl groups. Where the fiber is composed of cellulose precipitated from an organic solution in which no substitution of the hydroxyl groups takes place and no chemical intermediates are formed, the term *lyocell* may be used as a generic description of the fiber.

(e) *Acetate.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is cellulose acetate. Where not less than 92 percent of the hydroxyl groups are acetylated, the term triacetate may be used as a generic description of the fiber.

(f) *Saran.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 80 percent by weight of vinylidene chloride units ($-CH_9-CCl_2-$).

(g) *Azlon.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is composed of any regenerated naturally occurring proteins.

(h) *Nytril.* A manufactured fiber containing at least 85 percent of a long chain polymer of vinylidene dinitrile ($-CH_2-C(CN)_2-$) where the vinylidene dinitrile content is no less than every other unit in the polymer chain.

(i) *Nylon.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a long-chain synthetic polyamide in which less than 85 percent of the amide

$$\left(-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-NH-\right)$$

linkages are attached directly to two aromatic rings.

(j) *Rubber.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is comprised of natural or synthetic rubber, including the following categories:

(1) A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a hydrocarbon such as natural rubber, polyisoprene, polybutadiene, copolymers of dienes and hydrocarbons, or amorphous (noncrystalline) polyolefins.

(2) A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a copolymer of acrylonitrile and a diene (such as butadiene) composed of not more than 50 percent but at least 10 percent by weight of acrylonitrile units

$$(-CH_2-\underset{\underset{CN}{|}}{CH}-)$$

The term *lastrile* may be used as a generic description for fibers falling within this category.

(3) A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a polychloroprene or a copolymer of chloroprene in which at least 35 percent by weight of the fiber-forming substance is composed of chloroprene units

$$(-CH_2-\underset{\underset{Cl}{|}}{C}=CH-CH_2-).$$

(k) *Spandex.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a long chain synthetic polymer comprised of at least 85 percent of a segmented polyurethane.

(l) *Vinal.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 50 percent by weight of vinyl alcohol units ($-CH_2-CHOH-$), and in which the total of the vinyl alcohol units and any one or more of the various acetal units is at least 85 percent by weight of the fiber.

(m) *Olefin.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 85 percent by weight of ethylene, propylene, or other olefin units, except amorphous (noncrystalline) polyolefins qualifying under paragraph (j)(1) of this section [Rule 7].

(n) *Vinyon.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 85 percent by weight of vinyl chloride units ($-CH_2-CHCl-$).

(o) *Metallic.* A manufactured fiber composed of metal, plastic-coated metal, metal-coated plastic, or a core completely covered by metal.

(p) *Glass.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is glass.

(q) *Anidex.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 50 percent by weight of one or more esters of a monohydric alcohol and acrylic acid, $CH_2=CH—COOH$.

(r) *Novoloid.* A manufactured fiber containing at least 85 percent by weight of a cross-linked novolac.

(s) *Aramid.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a long-chain synthetic polyamide in which at least 85 percent of the amide

$$\left(\begin{matrix}-C-NH-\\ \|\\ O\end{matrix}\right)$$

linkages are attached directly to two aromatic rings.

(t) *Sulfar.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a long chain synthetic polysulfide in which at least 85% of the sulfide (—S—) linkages are attached directly to two (2) aromatic rings.

(u) *PBI.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a long chain aromatic polymer having reoccurring imidazole groups as an integral part of the polymer chain.

(v) *Elastoester.* A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is a long-chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 50% by weight of aliphatic polyether and at least 35% by weight of polyester, as defined in 16 CFR 303.7(c).

(Sec. 6, 72 Stat. 1717; 15 U.S.C. 70e)

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959; 24 FR 5737, July 17, 1959, as amended at 31 FR 2652, Feb. 11, 1966; 31 FR 3002, Feb. 22, 1966; 34 FR 14595, Sept. 19, 1969; 38 FR 21782, Aug. 13, 1973; 38 FR 34115, Dec. 11, 1973; 39 FR 1834, Jan. 15, 1974; 51 FR 20807, 20809, June 9, 1986; 61 FR 16387, Apr. 15, 1996; 62 FR 28344, May 23, 1997]

### § 303.8 Procedure for establishing generic names for manufactured fibers.

(a) Prior to the marketing or handling of a manufactured fiber for which no generic name has been established by the Commission, the manufacturer or producer thereof shall file a written application with the Commission, requesting the establishment of a generic name for such fibers, stating therein:

(1) The reasons why the applicant's fiber should not be identified by one of the generic names established by the Commission in § 303.7 of this part;

(2) The chemical composition of the fiber, including the fiber-forming substances and respective percentages thereof, together with samples of the fiber;

(3) Suggested names for consideration as generic, together with a proposed definition for the fiber;

(4) Any other information deemed by the applicant to be pertinent to the application, including technical data in the form of test methods;

(5) The earliest date on which the application proposes to market or handle the fiber in commerce for other than developmental or testing purposes.

(b) Upon receipt of the application, the Commission will, within sixty (60) days, either deny the application or assign to the fiber a numerical or alphabetical symbol for temporary use during further consideration of such application.

(c) After taking the necessary procedure in consideration of the application, the Commission in due course shall establish a generic name or advise the applicant of its refusal to grant the application and designate the proper existing generic name for the fiber.

### §303.9 Use of fur-bearing animal names and symbols prohibited.

(a) The advertising or the labeling of a textile fiber product shall not contain any names, words, depictions, descriptive matter, or other symbols which connote or signify a fur-bearing animal, unless such product or the part thereof in connection with which the names, words, depictions, descriptive matter, or other symbols are used is a fur product within the meaning of the Fur Products Labeling Act.

(b) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (a) of this section and §303.6 of this part, a textile fiber product shall not be described or referred to in any manner in an advertisement or label with:

(1) The name or part of the name of a fur-bearing animal, whether as a single word or a combination word, or any coined word which is phonetically similar to a fur-bearing animal name, or which is only a slight variation in spelling of a fur-bearing animal name or part of the name. As for example, such terms as ''Ermine,'' ''Mink,'' ''Persian,'' ''Broadtail,'' ''Beaverton,'' ''Marmink,'' ''Sablelon,'' ''Lam,'' ''Pershian,'' ''Minx,'' or similar terms shall not be used.

(2) Any word or name symbolic of a fur-bearing animal by reason of conventional usage or by reason of its close relationship with fur-bearing animals. As for example, such terms as ''guardhair,'' ''underfur,'' and ''mutation,'' or similar terms, shall not be used.

(c) Nothing contained herein shall prevent:

(1) The nondeceptive use of animal names or symbols in referring to a textile fiber product where the fur of such animal is not commonly or commercially used in fur products, as that term is defined in the Fur Products Labeling Act, as for example ''kitten soft'', ''Bear Brand'', etc.

(2) The nondeceptive use of a trademark or trade name containing the name, symbol, or depiction of a fur-bearing animal unless:

(i) The textile fiber product in connection with which such trademark or trade name is used simulates a fur or fur product; or

(ii) Such trademark or trade name is used in any advertisement of a textile fiber product together with any depiction which has the appearance of a fur or fur product; or

(iii) The use of such trademark or trade name is prohibited by the Fur Products Labeling Act.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 28 FR 722, Jan. 16, 1963]

### §303.10 Fiber content of special types of products.

(a) Where a textile product is made wholly of elastic yarn or material, with minor parts of non-elastic material for structural purposes, it shall be identified as to the percentage of the elastomer, together with the percentage of all textile coverings of the elastomer and all other yarns or materials used therein.

Where a textile fiber product is made in part of elastic material and in part of other fabric, the fiber content of such fabric shall be set forth sectionally by percentages as in the case of other fabrics. In such cases the elastic

material may be disclosed by describing the material as elastic followed by a listing in order of predominance by weight of the fibers used in such elastic, including the elastomer, where such fibers are present by 5 per centum or more with the designation ''other fiber'' or ''other fibers'' appearing last when fibers required to be so designated are present. An example of labeling under this paragraph is:

Front and back non-elastic sections:
50 percent Acetate.
50 percent Cotton.
Elastic: Rayon, cotton, nylon, rubber.

(b) Where drapery or upholstery fabrics are manufactured on hand-operated looms for a particular customer after the sale of such fabric has been consummated, and the amount of the order does not exceed 100 yards (91.44 m) of fabric, the required fiber content disclosure may be made by listing the fibers present in order of predominance by weight with any fiber or fibers required to be designated as ''other fiber'' or ''other fibers'' appearing last, as for example:

Rayon
Wool
Acetate
Metallic
Other fibers

(c)(1) Where a manufactured textile fiber is essentially a physical combination or mixture of two or more chemically distinct constituents or components combined at or prior to the time of extrusion, which components if separately extruded would each fall within different existing definitions of textile fibers as set forth in § 303.7 of this part (Rule 7), the fiber content disclosure as to such fiber, shall for all purposes under the regulations in this part (i) disclose such fact in the required fiber content information by appropriate nondeceptive descriptive terminology, such as ''biconstituent fiber'' or ''multiconstituent fiber,'' (ii) set out the components contained in the fiber by the appropriate generic name specified in § 303.7 of this part (Rule 7) in the order of their predominance by weight, and (iii) set out the respective percentages of such components by weight.

(2) If the components of such fibers are of a matrix-fibril configuration, the term *matrix-fibril fiber* or *matrix fiber* may be used in setting forth the information required by this paragraph.

(3) Examples of proper fiber content designations under this paragraph are:

100% Biconstituent Fiber
(65% Nylon, 35% Polyester)
80% Matrix Fiber (60% Nylon, 40% Polyester)
15% Polyester
5% Rayon

(4) All of the provisions as to fiber content disclosures contained in the Act and regulations, including the provisions relative to fiber content tolerances and disclosures of fibers present in amounts of less than 5 percentum of the total fiber weight, shall also be applicable to the designations and disclosures prescribed by this paragraph.

[25 FR 7044, July 26, 1960, as amended at 30 FR 14253, Nov. 13, 1965; 34 FR 12134 July 19, 1969; 61 FR 11544, Mar. 21, 1996]

### § 303.11 Floor coverings containing backings, fillings, and paddings.

In disclosing the required fiber content information as to floor coverings containing exempted backings, fillings, or paddings, the disclosure shall be made in such manner as to indicate that it relates only to the face, pile, or outer surface of the floor covering and not to the backing, filling, or padding. Examples of the form of marking these types of floor coverings as to fiber content are as follows:

100% Cotton Pile
Face—60% Rayon, 40% Cotton
Outer Surface—100% Wool

### § 303.12 Trimmings of household textile articles.

(a) Trimmings incorporated in articles of wearing apparel and other household textile articles may, among other forms of trim, include: (1) Rickrack, tape, belting, binding, braid, labels (either required or non-required), collars, cuffs, wrist bands, leg bands, waist bands, gussets, gores, welts, and findings, including superimposed garters in hosiery, and elastic materials and threads inserted in or added to the basic product or garment in minor proportion for holding, reinforcing or similar structural purposes; (2) decorative trim, whether applied by embroidery, overlay, applique, or attachment;

and (3) decorative patterns or designs which are an integral part of the fabric out of which the household textile article is made: *Provided,* That such decorative trim or decorative pattern or design, as specified in paragraphs (a) (2) and (3) of this section, does not exceed 15 percent of the surface area of the household textile article. If no representation is made as to the fiber content of the decorative trim or decoration, as provided for in paragraphs (a) (2) and (3) of this section, the fiber content designation of the basic fabric shall be followed by the statement ''exclusive of decoration.''

(b) The term *findings* may also include elastic material which constitutes a part of the basic fabric or material out of which the household textile article is made, where such elastic material does not exceed 20 percent of the surface area of the household textile article: *Provided,* That the required information as to fiber content of products subject to this paragraph is followed by the statement ''exclusive of elastic.''

### §303.13 Sale of remnants and products made of remnants.

(a) In disclosing the required fiber content information as to remnants of fabric which are for practical purposes of unknown or undeterminable fiber content:

(1) The fiber content disclosure of such remnants of fabrics may be designated in the required information as ''remnants of undetermined fiber content.''

(2) Where such remnants of fabrics are displayed for sale at retail, a conspicuous sign may, in lieu of individual labeling, be used in immediate conjunction with such display, stating with respect to required fiber content disclosure that the goods are ''remnants of undetermined fiber content.''

(3) Where textile fiber products are made of such remnants, the required fiber content information of the products may be disclosed as ''made of remnants of undetermined fiber content.'' If any representations as to fiber content are made with respect to such remnants, the provisions of this paragraph shall not apply.

(b) Where remnants of fabrics are marketed or handled in bales, bundles, or packages and are all of the same fiber content or are designated in the manner permitted by paragraph (a) of this section, the individual remnants need not be labeled if the bales, bundles, or packages containing such remnants are labeled with the required information including fiber content percentages or the designation permitted by paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) Where remnants of fabrics of the same fiber content are displayed for sale at retail, a conspicuous sign may, in lieu of individual labeling, be used in immediate conjunction with such display, stating the fiber content information with respect to such remnants; as for example: ''remnants, 100 percent cotton,'' ''remnants, 50 percent rayon, 50 percent acetate,'' etc.

### §303.14 Products containing unknown fibers.

(a) Where a textile fiber product is made from miscellaneous scraps, rags, odd lots, secondhand materials, textile by-products, or waste materials of unknown, and for practical purposes, undeterminable fiber content, the required fiber content disclosure may, when truthfully applicable, in lieu of the fiber content disclosure otherwise required by the Act and regulations, indicate that such product is composed of miscellaneous scraps, rags, odd lots, textile by-products, secondhand materials (in case of secondhand materials, words of like import may be used) or waste materials, as the case may be, of unknown or undetermined fiber content, as for example:

Made of miscellaneous scraps of undetermined fiber content
100% unknown fibers—rags
All undetermined fibers—textile by-products
100% miscellaneous odd lots of undetermined fiber content
Secondhand materials—fiber content unknown
Made of unknown fibers—waste materials

(b) Where a textile fiber product is made in part from miscellaneous scraps, rags, odd lots, textile by-products, second-hand materials or waste materials of unknown and, for practical purposes, undeterminable fiber content together with a percentage of

known or determinable fibers, the required fiber content disclosure may, when truthfully applicable, in lieu of the fiber content disclosure otherwise required by the Act and regulations, indicate the percentage of miscellaneous scraps, rags, odd lots, secondhand materials (in case of secondhand materials, words of like import may be used), textile by-products, or waste materials of unknown or undetermined fiber content and the percentage of known fibers, as for example:

45% Rayon
30% Acetate
25% Miscellaneous scraps of undetermined fiber content.

60% Cotton
40% Unknown fibers—waste materials.

40% Acrylic
20% Modacrylic
40% Undetermined fibers—odd lots.

50% Polyester
30% Cotton
20% Textile by-products of undetermined fiber content.

50% Rayon
50% Secondhand materials—fiber content unknown.

45% Acetate
30% Cotton
25% Miscellaneous rags—undetermined fiber content.

(c) No representation as to fiber content shall be made as to any textile product or any portion of a textile fiber product designated as composed of unknown or undetermined fibers. If any such representation is made, a full and complete fiber content disclosure shall be required.

(d) Nothing contained in this section shall excuse a full disclosure as to fiber content if the same is known or practically ascertainable.

[25 FR 4317, May 14, 1960]

### § 303.15 Required label and method of affixing.

(a) A label is required to be affixed to each textile product and, where required, to its package or container in a secure manner. Such label shall be conspicuous and shall be of such durability as to remain attached to the product and its package throughout any distribution, sale, resale and until sold and delivered to the ultimate consumer.

(b) Each textile fiber product with a neck must have the label affixed to the inside center of the neck midway between the shoulder seams *provided,* however, that the required label may appear in close proximity to another label affixed to the inside center of the neck as long as the required label remains conspicuous to the consumer and, *provided further,* that if the country of origin is disclosed on a label affixed to the inside center of the neck or in close proximity, the label containing the country of origin, fiber content, and RN or name of the company may appear in another conspicuous location on the inside or on the outside of the garment. All other textile products shall have the label affixed to a conspicuous spot on the inner side of the product or in a conspicuous place on the outside of the product.

(c) In the case of hosiery products, this section shall not be construed as requiring the affixing of a label to each hosiery product contained in a package if, (1) such hosiery products are intended for sale to the ultimate consumer in such package, (2) such package has affixed to it a label bearing the required information for the hosiery products contained in the package, and (3) the information on the label affixed to the package is equally applicable to each textile fiber product contained therein.

[50 FR 15106, Apr. 17, 1985]

### § 303.16 Arrangement and disclosure of information on labels.

(a) The information with respect to textile fiber products required to be shown and displayed upon the label shall be that which is required by the Act and Regulations. The required information may appear on any label attached to the textile fiber product, provided all the pertinent requirements of the Act and Regulations are met and so long as the combination of required information and non-required information is not misleading. The required information shall include the following:

(1) The generic names and percentages by weight of the constituent fibers present in the textile fiber product, exclusive of permissive ornamentation, in amounts of five per centum or more and any fibers disclosed in accordance

with §303.3(b) shall appear in order of predominance by weight with any percentage of fiber or fibers required to be designated as other fiber or other fibers appearing last.

(2) The name, provided for in §303.19, or registered identification number issued by the Commission, of the manufacturer or of one or more persons marketing or handling the textile fiber product.

(3) The name of the country where such product was processed or manufactured, as provided for in §303.33.

(b) All parts of the required information shall be conspicuously and separately set out on the same side of the label in such a manner as to be clearly legible and readily accessible to the prospective purchaser, and all parts of the fiber content information shall appear in type or lettering of equal size and conspicuousness: *Provided, however,* That the required name or registered identification number may appear on the reverse side of the label if it is conspicuous and accessible: *And provided further,* That the required name or registered identification number may be conspicuously set out on a separate label which is prominently and conspicuously displayed in close proximity to the label containing the other required information. Where only one end of a cloth label is sewn to the product in such a manner that both sides of the label are readily accessible to the prospective purchaser, the required fiber content information may appear on the reverse side of the label if the front side of such label clearly and conspicuously shows the wording ''Fiber Content on Reverse Side.'' On products as to which sectional disclosure is used, an additional nondeceptive label may be used showing the complete fiber content information as to a particular section or area of the product.

(c) Subject to the provisions of §303.17 of this part, if non-required information or representations are placed on the label or elsewhere on the product, such nonrequired information or representation shall be set forth separate and apart from the required information and shall not interfere with, minimize, detract from, or conflict with such required information, nor shall such non-required information in any way be false or deceptive as to fiber content.

(d) Non-deceptive terms which are properly and truthfully descriptive of a fiber may be used in conjunction with the generic name of such fiber; as for example: ''100 percent cross-linked rayon,'' ''100 percent solution dyed acetate,'' ''100 percent combed cotton,'' ''100 percent nylon 66,'' etc.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 25 FR 4317, May 14, 1960; 30 FR 14254, Nov. 13, 1965; 30 FR 15313, Dec. 11, 1965; 50 FR 15107, Apr. 17, 1985; 53 FR 31315, Aug. 18, 1988]

### §303.17 Use of fiber trademarks and generic names on labels.

(a) A non-deceptive fiber trademark may be used on a label in conjunction with the generic name of the fiber to which it relates. Where such a trademark is placed on a label in conjunction with the required information, the generic name of the fiber must appear in immediate conjunction therewith, and such trademark and generic name must appear in type or lettering of equal size and conspicuousness.

(b) Where a generic name or a fiber trademark is used on any label, whether required or non-required, a full and complete fiber content disclosure shall be made in accordance with the Act and regulations the first time the generic name or fiber trademark appears on the label.

(c) If a fiber trademark is not used in the required information, but is used elsewhere on the label as non-required information, the generic name of the fiber shall accompany the fiber trademark in legible and conspicuous type or lettering the first time the trademark is used.

(d) No fiber trademark or generic name shall be used in non-required information on a label in such a manner as to be false, deceptive, or misleading as to fiber content, or to indicate directly or indirectly that a textile fiber product is composed wholly or in part of a particular fiber, when such is not the case.

### §303.18 Terms implying fibers not present.

Words, coined words, symbols or depictions, (a) which constitute or imply the name or designation of a fiber

which is not present in the product, (b) which are phonetically similar to the name or designation of such a fiber, or (c) which are only a slight variation of spelling from the name or designation of such a fiber shall not be used in such a manner as to represent or imply that such fiber is present in the product.

[30 FR 13693, Oct. 28, 1965]

### § 303.19 Name or other identification required to appear on labels.

(a) The name required by the Act to be used on labels shall be the name under which the person is doing business. Where a person has a word trademark, used as a house mark, registered in the United States Patent Office, such word trademark may be used on labels in lieu of the name otherwise required: *Provided*, The owner of such word trademark furnishes the Commission a copy of the registration prior to its use. No trademark, trade names, or other names except those provided for above shall be used for required identification purposes.

(b) Registered identification numbers, as provided for in § 303.20 of this part, may be used for identification purposes in lieu of the required name.

### § 303.20 Registered identification numbers.

(a) Registered numbers for use as the required identification in lieu of the name on textile fiber product labels, as provided in section 4(b)(3) of the Act, will be issued by the Commission to qualified persons residing in the United States upon receipt of an application duly executed in the form set out in paragraph (d) of this section.

(b)(1) Registered identification numbers shall be used only by the person or concern to whom they are issued, and such numbers are not transferable or assignable.

(2) Registered identification numbers shall be subject to cancellation whenever any such number was procured or has been used improperly or contrary to the requirements of the Acts administered by the Federal Trade Commission, and regulations promulgated thereunder, or when otherwise deemed necessary in the public interest.

(c) Registered identification numbers assigned under this section may be used on labels required in labeling products subject to the provisions of the Wool Products Labeling Act and Fur Products Labeling Act, and numbers previously assigned by the Commission under such Acts may be used as and for the required name in labeling under this Act. When so used by the person or firm to whom assigned, the use of the numbers shall be construed as identifying and binding the applicant as fully and in all respects as though assigned under the specific Act for which it is used.

(d) Form of application for registered identification number (printed forms are available upon request at the offices of the Commission):

**APPLICATION FOR A REGISTERED IDENTIFICATION NUMBER**

Approved by OMB
3084–0038
Expires: 11/1/84

1. LEGAL NAME OF APPLICANT FIRM

2. NAME UNDER WHICH APPLICANT DOES BUSINESS, IF DIFFERENT FROM LEGAL NAME

3. TYPE OF COMPANY
☐ PROPRIETORSHIP ☐ PARTNERSHIP ☐ CORPORATION

4. ADDRESS OF PRINCIPAL OFFICE OR PLACE OF BUSINESS *(Include Zip Code)*

5. TYPE OF BUSINESS *(Put an 'X' in all the boxes that apply)*
☐ MANUFACTURING ☐ IMPORTING ☐ WHOLESALING

☐ OTHER *(Please specify)* _____

6. LIST PRODUCTS

7. CERTIFICATION

The products listed in item six (6) above are subject to one or more of the following Acts: The Textile Fiber Products Identification Act (15 U.S.C. §§ 70-70k), The Wool Products Labeling Act (15 U.S.C. §§ 68-68j), or the Fur Products Labeling Act (15 U.S.C. §§ 69-69k). By filing this form with the Federal Trade Commisssion the company named above applies for a registered identification number to use on labels required by these Acts.

Under penalty of perjury, I certify that the information supplied on this form is true and correct.

*SIGNATURE OF PROPRIETOR, PARTNER, OR CORPORATE OFFICIAL*

| 8. NAME *(Please print or type)* | 9. TITLE | 10. DATE |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

**INSTRUCTIONS**

The Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, The Wool Products Labeling Act, or the Fur Products Labeling Act provide that any marketer or manufacturer of fibrous or fur products covered by those Acts may apply for a registered identification number. Companies can then use the registered identification number, instead of the name under which the Company does business, on the labels, tags, tickets, or stamps that those Acts require to be attached to covered products.

In completing this application, please observe the following:

(a) All blanks must be filled in. Include your Zip Code in Item 4.

(b) In Item 7 if the applicant firm is a partnership, a principal partner should sign. If a corporation, one of its principal officers should sign, giving his/her title in Item 9.

(c) Send **one** completed copy to:
Federal Trade Commission
Los Angeles Regional Office
11000 Wilshire Blvd., Suite 13209
Los Angeles, CA 90024

A registered identification number (RN) issued by the Commission continues in effect until revoked. The holder of the assigned number must immediately notify the Los Angeles Regional Office in writing of any change in business status. Any change in the address of the holder's principal office and place of business must also be promptly reported.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 48 FR 12516, Mar. 25, 1983]

## §303.21 Marking of samples, swatches, or specimens and products sold therefrom.

(a) Where samples, swatches, or specimens of textile fiber products subject to the Act are used to promote or effect sales of such textile fiber products, the samples, swatches, or specimens, as well as the products themselves, shall be labeled to show their respective fiber contents and other required information: *Provided,* That

such samples, swatches or specimens need not be labeled:

(1) If the samples, swatches, or specimens are less than two square inches (12.9 $cm^2$) in area and the information otherwise required to appear on the label is clearly, conspicuously, and non-deceptively disclosed on accompanying promotional matter in accordance with the Act and regulations.

(2) If the samples, swatches, or specimens are keyed to a catalogue to which reference is necessary in order to complete the sale of the textile fiber products, and which catalogue at the necessary point of reference clearly, conspicuously, and non-deceptively discloses the information otherwise required to appear on the label in accordance with the Act and regulations; or

(3) If such samples, swatches, or specimens are not used to effect sales to ultimate consumers and are not in the form intended for sale or delivery to, or for use by, the ultimate consumer, and are accompanied by an invoice or other paper showing the required information.

(b) Where properly labeled samples, swatches, or specimens are used to effect the sale of articles of wearing apparel or other household textile articles which are manufactured specifically for a particular customer after the sale is consummated, the articles of wearing apparel or other household textile articles need not be labeled if they are of the same fiber content as the samples, swatches, or specimens from which the sale was effected and an invoice or other paper accompanies them showing the information otherwise required to appear on the label.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 61 FR 11544, Mar. 21, 1996]

### § 303.22 Products containing linings, interlinings, fillings, and paddings.

In disclosing the required information as to textile fiber products, the fiber content of any linings, interlinings, fillings, or paddings shall be set forth separately and distinctly if such linings, interlinings, fillings, or paddings are incorporated in the product for warmth rather than for structural purposes, or if any express or implied representations are made as to their fiber content. Examples are as follows:

100% Nylon
Interlining: 100% Rayon
Covering: 100% Rayon
Filling: 100% Cotton.

### § 303.23 Textile fiber products containing superimposed or added fibers.

Where a textile fiber product is made wholly of one fiber or a blend of fibers with the exception of an additional fiber in minor proportion superimposed or added in certain separate and distinct areas or sections for reinforcing or other useful purposes, the product may be designated according to the fiber content of the principal fiber or blend of fibers, with an exception naming the superimposed or added fiber, giving the percentage thereof in relation to the total fiber weight of the principal fiber or blend of fibers, and indicating the area or section which contains the superimposed or added fiber. Examples of this type of fiber content disclosure, as applied to products having reinforcing fibers added to a particular area or section, are as follows:

55% Cotton
45% Rayon
Except 5% Nylon added to toe and heel.
All Cotton except 1% Nylon added to neckband.

### § 303.24 Pile fabrics and products composed thereof.

The fiber content of pile fabrics or products composed thereof may be stated on the label in such segregated form as will show the fiber content of the face or pile and of the back or base, with percentages of the respective fibers as they exist in the face or pile and in the back or base: *Provided*, That in such disclosure the respective percentages of the face and back be given in such manner as will show the ratio between the face and the back. Examples of the form of marking pile fabric as to fiber content provided for in this section are as follows:

100% Nylon Pile
100% Cotton Back
(Back constitutes 60% of fabric and pile 40%).
Face—60% Rayon, 40% Nylon
Back—70% Cotton, 30% Rayon

(Face constitutes 60% of fabric and back 40%).

### §303.25 Sectional disclosure of content.

(a) *Permissive.* Where a textile fiber product is composed of two or more sections which are of different fiber composition, the required information as to fiber content may be separated in the same label in such manner as to show the fiber composition of each section.

(b) *Mandatory.* The disclosure as above provided shall be made in all instances where such form of marking is necessary to avoid deception.

### §303.26 Ornamentation.

(a)(1) Where the textile fiber product contains fiber ornamentation not exceeding five per centum of the total fiber weight of the product and the stated percentages of the fiber content are exclusive of such ornamentation, the label or any invoice used in lieu thereof shall contain a phrase or statement showing such fact; as for example:

60% Cotton
40% Rayon
Exclusive of Ornamentation;
or
All Cotton
Exclusive of Ornamentation.

(2) The fiber content of such ornamentation may be disclosed where the percentage of the ornamentation in relation to the total fiber weight of the principal fiber or blend of fibers is shown; as for example:

70% Nylon
30% Acetate
Exclusive of 4% Metallic Ornamentation;
or
100% Rayon
Exclusive of 3% Silk Ornamentation.

(b) Where the fiber ornamentation exceeds five per centum, it shall be included in the statement of required percentages of fiber content.

(c) Where the ornamentation constitutes a distinct section of the product, sectional disclosure may be made in accordance with §303.25 of this part.

### §303.27 Use of the term "All" or "100%."

Where a textile fiber product or part thereof is comprised wholly of one fiber, other than any fiber ornamentation, decoration, elastic, or trimming as to which fiber content disclosure is not required, either the word *All* or the term *100%* may be used in labeling, together with the correct generic name of the fiber and any qualifying phrase, when required; as for example: ''100% Cotton,'' ''All Rayon, Exclusive of Ornamentation,'' ''100% Acetate, Exclusive of Decoration,'' ''All Nylon, Exclusive of Elastic,'' etc.

### §303.28 Products contained in packages.

When textile products are marketed and delivered in a package which is intended to remain unbroken and intact until after delivery to the utlimate consumer, each textile product in the package, except hosiery, and the package shall be labeled with the required information. If the package is transparent to the extent it allows for a clear reading of the required information on the textile product, the package is not required to be labeled.

[50 FR 15107, Apr. 17, 1985]

### §303.29 Labeling of pairs or products containing two or more units.

(a) Where a textile fiber product consists of two or more parts, units, or items of different fiber content, a separate label containing the required information shall be affixed to each of such parts, units or items showing the required information as to such part, unit, or item: *Provided,* That where such parts, units, or items are marketed or handled as a single product or ensemble and are sold and delivered to the ultimate consumer as a single product or ensemble, the required information may be set out on a single label in such a manner as to separately show the fiber composition of each part, unit, or item.

(b) Where garments, wearing apparel, or other textile fiber products are marketed or handled in pairs or ensembles of the same fiber content, only one unit of the pair or ensemble need be labeled with the required information

when sold and delivered to the ultimate consumer.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 25 FR 4318, May 14, 1960]

### § 303.30 Textile fiber products in form for consumer.

A textile fiber product shall be considered to be in the form intended for sale or delivery to, or for use by, the ultimate consumer when the manufacturing or processing of the textile fiber product is substantially complete. The fact that minor or insignificant details of the manufacturing or processing have not been completed shall not excuse the labeling of such products as to the required information. For example, a garment must be labeled even though such matters as the finishing of a hem or cuff or the affixing of buttons thereto remain to be completed.

### § 303.31 Invoice in lieu of label.

Where a textile fiber product is not in the form intended for sale, delivery to, or for use by the ultimate consumer, an invoice or other paper may be used in lieu of a label, and such invoice or other paper shall show, in addition to the name and address of the person issuing the invoice or other paper, the fiber content of such product as provided in the Act and regulations as well as any other required information.

### § 303.32 Products containing reused stuffing.

Any upholstered product, mattress, or cushion which contains stuffing which has been previously used as stuffing in any other upholstered product, mattress, or cushion shall have securely attached thereto a substantial tag or label, at least 2 inches (5.08 cm) by 3 inches (7.62 cm) in size, and statements thereon conspicuously stamped or printed in the English language and in plain type not less than ⅓ inch (8.38 mm) high, indicating that the stuffing therein is composed in whole or in part of ''reused stuffing,'' ''secondhand stuffing,'' ''previously used stuffing,'' or ''used stuffing.''

[61 FR 11544, Mar. 21, 1996]

### § 303.33 Country where imported textile fiber products are processed or manufactured.

(a) In addition to the other information required by the Act and Regulations:

(1) Each imported textile fiber product shall be labeled with the name of the country where such imported product was processed or manufactured;

(2) Each textile fiber product completely made in the United States of materials that were made in the United States shall be labeled using the term *Made in U.S.A.* or some other clear and equivalent term.

(3) Each textile fiber product made in the United States, either in whole or part, of imported materials shall contain a label disclosing these facts; for example:

''Made in USA of imported fabric''
or
''Knitted in USA of imported yarn''

and

(4) Each textile product partially manufactured in a foreign country and partially manufactured in the United States shall contain on the label the following information:

(i) The manufacturing process in the foreign country and in the USA; for example:

''Imported cloth, finished in USA'',
or
''Sewn in USA of imported components'',
or
''Made in (foreign country), finished in USA''

(ii) When the U.S. Customs Service requires an origin label on the unfinished product, the manufacturing processes as required in paragraph (a)(4)(i) of this section or the name of the foreign country required by Customs, for example:

''Made in (foreign country)''

(b) For the purpose of determining whether a product should be marked under paragraphs (a) (2), (3), or (4) of this section, a manufacturer needs to consider the origin of only those materials that are covered under the Act and that are one step removed from that manufacturing process. For example, a yarn manufacturer must identify fiber if it is imported, a cloth manufacturer must identify imported yarn and

a household product manufacturer must identify imported cloth or imported yarn for household products made directly from yarn, or imported fiber used as filling for warmth.

(c) The term *country* means the political entity known as a nation. Except for the United States, colonies, possessions or protectorates outside the boundaries of the mother country shall be considered separate countries, and the name thereof shall be deemed acceptable in designating the country where the textile fiber product was processed or manufactured unless the Commission shall otherwise direct.

(d) The country where the imported textile fiber product was principally made shall be considered to be the country where such textile fiber product was processed or manufactured. Further work or material added to the textile fiber product in another country must effect a basic change in form in order to render such other country the place where such textile fiber product was processed or manufactured.

(e) The English name of the country where the imported textile fiber product was processed or manufactured shall be used. The adjectival form of the name of the country will be accepted as the name of the country where the textile fiber product was processed or manufactured, provided the adjectival form of the name does not appear with such other words so as to refer to a kind or species of product. Variant spellings which clearly indicate the English name of the country, such as Brasil for Brazil and Italie for Italy, are acceptable. Abbreviations which unmistakably indicate the name of a country, such as ''Gt. Britain'' for ''Great Britain,'' are acceptable.

(f) Nothing in this rule shall be construed as limiting in any way the information required to be disclosed on labels under the provisions of any Tariff Act of the United States or regulations prescribed by the Secretary of the Treasury.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 50 FR 15107, Apr. 17, 1985]

### §303.34 Country of origin in mail order advertising.

When a textile fiber product is advertised in any mail order catalog or mail order promotional material, the description of such product shall contain a clear and conspicuous statement that the product was either made in U.S.A., imported, or both. Other words or phrases with the same meaning may be used. The statement of origin required by this section shall not be inconsistent with the origin labeling of the product being advertised.

[50 FR 15107, Apr. 17, 1985]

### §303.35 Use of terms "virgin" or "new."

The terms *virgin* or *new* as descriptive of a textile fiber product, or any fiber or part thereof, shall not be used when the product or part so described is not composed wholly of new or virgin fiber which has never been reclaimed from any spun, woven, knitted, felted, bonded, or similarly manufactured product.

### §303.36 Form of separate guaranty.

(a) The following are suggested forms of separate guaranties under section 10 of the Act which may be used by a guarantor residing in the United States on or as part of an invoice or other paper relating to the marketing or handling of any textile fiber products listed and designated therein, and showing the date of such invoice or other paper and the signature and address of the guarantor.

(1) *General form.* We guarantee that the textile fiber products specified herein are not misbranded nor falsely nor deceptively advertised or invoiced under the provisions of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act and rules and regulations thereunder.

(2) *Guaranty based on guaranty.* Based upon a guaranty received, we guarantee that the textile fiber products specified herein are not misbranded nor falsely nor deceptively advertised or invoiced under the provisions of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act and rules and regulations thereunder.

NOTE: The printed name and address on the invoice or other paper will suffice to meet the signature and address requirements.

(b) The mere disclosure of required information including the fiber content of a textile fiber product on a label or on an invoice or other paper relating to

its marketing or handling shall not be considered a form of separate guaranty.

### § 303.37 Form of continuing guaranty from seller to buyer.

Under section 10 of the Act, a seller residing in the United States may give a buyer a continuing guaranty to be applicable to all textile fiber products sold or to be sold. The following is the prescribed form of continuing guaranty from seller to buyer.

We, the undersigned, guaranty that all textile fiber products now being sold or which may hereafter be sold or delivered to _____ are not, and will not be misbranded nor falsely nor deceptively advertised or invoiced under the provisions of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act and rules and regulations thereunder. This guaranty effective until _____.

Dated, signed, and certified this ___ day of ___, 19___, at _____ (City), _____ (State or Territory) _____ (name under which business is conducted.)

Under penalty of perjury, I certify that the information supplied in this form is true and correct.

_____

Signature of Proprietor, Principal Partner, or Corporate Official

_____

Name (Print or Type) Title

[48 FR 12518, Mar. 25, 1983]

### § 303.38 Continuing guaranty filed with Federal Trade Commission.

(a)(1) Under section 10 of the act any person residing in the United States and marketing or handling textile fiber products may file a continuing guaranty with the Federal Trade Commission. When filed with the Commission a continuing guaranty shall be fully executed in duplicate. Forms for use in preparing continuing guaranties will be supplied by the Commission upon request.

(2) Continuing guaranties filed with the Commission shall continue in effect until revoked. The guarantor shall promptly report any change in business status to the Commission.

(b) Prescribed form of continuing guaranty:

## CONTINUING GUARANTY

Approved by OMB
3084–0036
Expires: 11/1/84

1. LEGAL NAME OF GUARANTOR FIRM

2. NAME UNDER WHICH GUARANTOR FIRM DOES BUSINESS, IF DIFFERENT FROM LEGAL NAME

3. TYPE OF COMPANY

☐ PROPRIETORSHIP ☐ PARTNERSHIP ☐ CORPORATION

4. ADDRESS OF PRINCIPAL OFFICE OR PLACE OF BUSINESS *(Include Zip Code)*

5. LAW UNDER WHICH THE CONTINUING GUARANTY IS TO BE FILED *(Put an 'X' in the appropriate boxes)*

☐ Under the **Textile Fiber Products Identification Act** (15 U.S.C. §§ 70-70k): The company named above, which manufactures, markets, or handles textile fiber products, guaranties that when it ships or delivers any textile fiber product, the product will not be misbranded, falsely or deceptively invoiced, or falsely or deceptively advertised, within the meaning of the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act and the rules and regulations under that Act.

☐ Under the **Wool Products Labeling Act** (15 U.S.C. §§ 68-68j): The company named above, which manufactures, markets, or handles wool products, guaranties that when it ships or delivers any wool product, the product will not be misbranded within the meaning of the Wool Products Labeling Act and the rules and regulations under that Act.

☐ Under the **Fur Products Labeling Act** (15 U.S.C. §§ 69-69k): The company named above, which manufactures, markets, or handles fur products, guaranties that when it ships or delivers any fur product, the product will not be misbranded, falsely or deceptively invoiced, or falsely or deceptively advertised, within the meaning of the Fur Products Labeling Act and the rules and regulations under that Act.

6. CERTIFICATION

Under penalty of perjury, I certify that the information supplied on this form is true and correct.

*SIGNATURE OF PROPRIETOR, PRINCIPAL PARTNER, OR CORPORATE OFFICIAL*

7. NAME *(Please print or type)*

8. TITLE

9. CITY AND STATE WHERE SIGNED

10. DATE

**INSTRUCTIONS**

The Textile Fiber Products Identification Act, the Wool Products Labeling Act, and the Fur Products Labeling Act provide that any marketer or manufacturer of fibrous or fur products or furs covered by those Acts may file a continuing guaranty with the Federal Trade Commission. A continuing guaranty on file assures customer firms that the guarantor's products are in conformance with the Act(s) under which the guarantor has filed. Customer firms rely on the continuing guaranties for protection from liability if violations occur.

In completing this form, please observe the following:

(a) All appropriate blanks on the form should be filled in. Include your Zip Code in Item 4.

(b) In Item 6, if the guarantor firm is a partnership, a principal partner should sign. If a corporation, one of its principal officers should sign, giving his/her title in Item 8.

(c) Send **two** completed copies to:

Federal Trade Commission
Los Angeles Regional Office
11000 Wilshire Blvd., Suite 13209
Los Angeles, CA 90024

Continuing guaranties filed with the Commission continue in effect until revoked. The guarantor must immediately notify the Los Angeles Regional Office in writing of any change in business status. Any change in the address of the guarantor's principal office or place of business must also be promptly reported.

DO NOT USE THIS SPACE

Filed _____ 19 ____

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

FTC Form 31-A (rev. 12/82)

(c) Any person who has a continuing guaranty on file with the Commission may, during the effective dates of the guaranty, give notice of such fact by setting forth on the invoice or other paper covering the marketing or handling of the product guaranteed the following:

Continuing guaranty under the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act filed with the Federal Trade Commission.

(d) Any person who falsely represents in writing that he has a continuing guaranty on file with the Federal Trade Commission when such is not a fact shall be deemed to have furnished

a false guaranty under section 10(b) of the Act.

[24 FR 4486, June 2, 1959, as amended at 48 FR 12517, Mar. 25, 1983]

### § 303.39 Maintenance of records.

(a) Pursuant to the provisions of section 6 of the Act, every manufacturer of a textile fiber product subject to the Act, irrespective of whether any guaranty has been given or received, shall maintain records showing the information required by the Act and Regulations with respect to all such textile fiber products made by such manufacturer. Such records shall show:

(1) The generic names and percentages by weight of the constituent fibers present in the textile fiber product, exclusive of permissive ornamentation, in amounts of five per centum or more.

(2) The name, provided for in § 303.19, or registered identification number issued by the Commission, of the manufacturer or of one or more persons marketing or handling the textile fiber product.

(3) The name of the country where such product was processed or manufactured as provided for in § 303.33.

The purpose of the records is to permit a determination that the requirements of the Act and Regulations have been met and to establish a traceable line of continuity from raw material through processing to finished product.

(b) Any person substituting a stamp, tag, label, or other identification pursuant to section 5(b) of the Act shall keep such records as will show the information set forth on the stamp, tag, label, or other identification that he removed and the name or names of the person or persons from whom such textile fiber product was received.

(c) The records required to be maintained pursuant to the provisions of this rule shall be preserved for at least three years.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 53 FR 31315, Aug. 18, 1988]

### § 303.40 Use of terms in written advertisements which imply presence of a fiber.

The use of terms in written advertisements which are descriptive of a method of manufacture, construction, or weave, and which by custom and usage are also indicative of a textile fiber or fibers, or the use of terms in such advertisements which constitute or connote the name or presence of a fiber or fibers, shall be deemed to be an implication of fiber content under section 4(c) of the Act, except that the provisions of this section shall not be applicable to non-deceptive shelf or display signs in retail stores indicating the location of textile fiber products and not intended as advertisements.

### § 303.41 Use of fiber trademarks and generic names in advertising.

(a) In advertising textile fiber products, the use of a fiber trademark shall require a full disclosure of the fiber content information required by the Act and regulations in at least one instance in the advertisement.

(b) Where a fiber trademark is used in advertising textile fiber products containing more than one fiber, other than permissible ornamentation, such fiber trademark and the generic name of the fiber must appear in the required fiber content information in immediate proximity and conjunction with each other in plainly legible type or lettering of equal size and conspicuousness.

(c) Where a fiber trademark is used in advertising textile fiber products containing only one fiber, other than permissive ornamentation, such fiber trademark and the generic name of the fiber must appear in immediate proximity and conjunction with each other in plainly legible and conspicuous type or lettering at least once in the advertisement.

(d) Where a fiber trademark or generic name is used in non-required information in advertising, such fiber trademark or generic name, shall not be used in such a manner as to be false, deceptive, or misleading as to fiber content, or to indicate, directly or indirectly, that a textile fiber product is composed wholly or in part of a particular fiber, when such is not the case.

### § 303.42 Arrangement of information in advertising textile fiber products.

(a) Where a textile fiber product is advertised in such manner as to require disclosure of the information required

by the Act and regulations, all parts of the required information shall be stated in immediate conjunction with each other in legible and conspicuous type or lettering of equal size and prominence. In making the required disclosure of the fiber content of the product, the generic names of fibers present in an amount 5 per centum or more of the total fiber weight of the product together with any fibers disclosed in accordance with paragraph (b) of §303.3 of this part (Rule 3) shall appear in order of predominance by weight, to be followed by the designation ''other fiber'' or ''other fibers'' if a fiber or fibers required to be so designated be present.

(b) Non-required information or representations shall in no way be false, deceptive, or misleading as to fiber content and shall not include any names, terms, or representations prohibited by the Act and regulations. Such non-required information or representations shall not be set forth or so used as to interfere with, minimize, or detract from the required information.

(c) Non-deceptive terms which are properly and truthfully descriptive of a fiber may be used in conjunction with the generic name of such fiber; as for example: ''cross-linked rayon,'' ''solution dyed acetate,'' ''combed cotton,'' ''nylon 66,'' etc.

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 30 FR 14254, Nov. 13, 1965; 30 FR 15313, Dec. 11, 1965]

### §303.43 Fiber content tolerances.

(a) A textile fiber product which contains more than one fiber shall not be deemed to be misbranded as to fiber content percentages if the percentages by weight of any fibers present in the total fiber content of the product, exclusive of permissive ornamentation, do not deviate or vary from the percentages stated on the label in excess of 3 percent of the total fiber weight of the product. For example, where the label indicates that a particular fiber is present in the amount of 40 percent, the amount of such fiber present may vary from a minimum of 37 percent of the total fiber weight of such product to a maximum of 43 percent of the total fiber weight of such product.

(b) Where the percentage of any fiber or fibers contained in a textile fiber product deviates or varies from the percentage stated on the label by more than the tolerance or variation provided in paragraph (a) of this section, such product shall be misbranded unless the person charged proves that the entire deviation or variation from the fiber content percentages stated on the label resulted from unavoidable variations in manufacture and despite the exercise of due care.

(c) Where representations are made to the effect that a textile fiber product is composed wholly of one fiber, the tolerance provided in section 4(b)(2) of the Act and paragraph (a) of this section shall not apply, except as to permissive ornamentation where the textile fiber product is represented to be composed of one fiber ''exclusive of ornamentation.''

### §303.44 Products not intended for uses subject to the act.

Textile fiber products intended for uses not within the scope of the Act and regulations or intended for uses in other textile fiber products which are exempted or excluded from the Act shall not be subject to the labeling and invoicing requirements of the Act and regulations: *Provided,* An invoice or other paper covering the marketing or handling of such products is given, which indicates that the products are not intended for uses subject to the Textile Fiber Products Identification Act.

### §303.45 Exclusions from the act.

(a) Pursuant to section 12(b) of the Act, the Commission hereby excludes from the operation of the Act:

(1) All textile fiber products except:

(i) Articles of wearing apparel:

(ii) Handkerchiefs;

(iii) Scarfs;

(iv) Beddings;

(v) Curtains and casements;

(vi) Draperies;

(vii) Tablecloths, napkins, and doilies;

(viii) Floor coverings;

(ix) Towels;

(x) Wash cloths and dish cloths;

(xi) Ironing board covers and pads;

(xii) Umbrellas and parasols;

(xiii) Batts;

(xiv) Products subject to section 4(h) of the Act;

(xv) Flags with heading or more than 216 square inches (13.9 $dm^2$) in size;

(xvi) Cushions;

(xvii) All fibers, yarns and fabrics (including narrow fabrics except packaging ribbons);

(xviii) Furniture slip covers and other covers or coverlets for furniture;

(xix) Afghans and throws;

(xx) Sleeping bags;

(xxi) Antimacassars and tidies;

(xxii) Hammocks;

(xxiii) Dresser and other furniture scarfs.

(2) Belts, suspenders, arm bands, permanently knotted neckties, garters, sanitary belts, diaper liners, labels (either required or non-required) individually and in rolls, looper clips intended for handicraft purposes, book cloth, artists' canvases, tapestry cloth, and shoe laces.

(3) All textile fiber products manufactured by the operators of company stores and offered for sale and sold exclusively to their own employees as ultimate consumers.

(4) Coated fabrics and those portions of textile fiber products made of coated fabrics.

(5) Secondhand household textile articles which are discernibly secondhand or which are marked to indicate their secondhand character.

(6) Non-woven products of a disposable nature intended for one-time use only.

(7) All curtains, casements, draperies, and table place mats, or any portions thereof otherwise subject to the Act, made principally of slats, rods, or strips, composed of wood, metal, plastic, or leather.

(8) All textile fiber products in a form ready for the ultimate consumer procured by the military services of the United States which are bought according to specifications, but shall not include those textile fiber products sold and distributed through post exchanges, sales commissaries, or ship stores; provided, however, that if the military services sell textile fiber products for nongovernmental purposes the information with respect to the fiber content of such products shall be furnished to the purchaser thereof who shall label such products in conformity with the Act and regulations before such products are distributed for civilian use.

(9) All hand woven rugs made by Navajo Indians which have attached thereto the ''Certificate of Genuineness'' supplied by the Indian Arts and Crafts Board of the United States Department of Interior. The term *Navajo Indian* means any Indian who is listed on the register of the Navajo Indian Tribe or is eligible for listing thereon.

(b) The exclusions provided for in paragraph (a) of this section shall not be applicable (1) if any representations as to the fiber content of such products are made on any label or in any advertisement without making a full and complete fiber content disclosure on such label or in such advertisement in accordance with the Act and regulations with the exception of those products excluded by paragraph (a)(6) of this section, or (2) if any false, deceptive, or misleading representations are made as to the fiber content of such products.

(c) The exclusions from the Act provided in paragraph (a) of this section are in addition to the exemptions from the Act provided in section 12(a) of the Act and shall not affect or limit such exemptions.

(Sec. 12, 72 Stat. 1723; 15 U.S.C. 70j)

[24 FR 4480, June 2, 1959, as amended at 25 FR 4318, May 14, 1960; 25 FR 7044, July 26, 1960; 29 FR 48, Jan. 3, 1964; 61 FR 11544, Mar. 21, 1996]

## PART 304—RULES AND REGULATIONS UNDER THE HOBBY PROTECTION ACT

Sec.
304.1 Terms defined.
304.2 General requirement.
304.3 Applicability.
304.4 Application of other law or regulation.
304.5 Marking requirements for imitation political items.
304.6 Marking requirements for imitation numismatic items.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 2101 et seq.

SOURCE: 40 FR 5496, Feb. 6, 1975, unless otherwise noted.

### § 304.1 Terms defined.

(a) *Act* means the Hobby Protection Act (approved November 29, 1973; Pub. L. 93–167, 87 Stat. 686, (15 U.S.C. 2101 et seq.)).

(b) *Commerce* has the same meanings as such term has under the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(c) *Commission* means the Federal Trade Commission.

(d) *Imitation numismatic item* means an item which purports to be, but in fact is not, an original numismatic item or which is a reproduction, copy, or counterfeit of an original numismatic item. Such term includes an original numismatic item which has been altered or modified in such a manner that it could reasonably purport to be an original numismatic item other than the one which was altered or modified. The term shall not include any re-issue or re-strike of any original numismatic item by the United States or any foreign government.

(e) *Imitation political item* means an item which purports to be, but in fact is not, an original political item, or which is a reproduction, copy or counterfeit of an original item.

(f) *Original numismatic item* means anything which has been a part of a coinage or issue which has been used in exchange or has been used to commemorate a person, object, place, or event. Such term includes coins, tokens, paper money, and commemorative medals.

(g) *Original political item* means any political button, poster, literature, sticker, or any advertisement produced for use in any political cause.

(h) *Person* means any individual, group, association, partnership, or any other business entity.

(i) *Regulations* means any or all regulations prescribed by the Federal Trade Commission pursuant to the Act.

(j) *United States* means the States, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

(k) *Diameter of a reproduction* means the length of the longest possible straight line connecting two points on the perimeter of the reproduction.

[40 FR 5496, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 53 FR 38942, Oct. 4, 1988]

### §304.2 General requirement.

Imitation political or numismatic items subject to the Act shall be marked in conformity with the requirements of the Act and the regulations promulgated thereunder. Any violation of these regulations shall constitute a violation of the Act and of the Federal Trade Commission Act.

### §304.3 Applicability.

Any person engaged in the manufacturing, or importation into the United States for introduction into or distribution in commerce, of imitation political or imitation numismatic items shall be subject to the requirements of the Act and the regulations promulgated thereunder.

### §304.4 Application of other law or regulation.

The provisions of these regulations are in addition to, and not in substitution for or limitation of, the provisions of any other law or regulation of the United States (including the existing statutes and regulations prohibiting the reproduction of genuine currency) or of the law or regulation of any State.

### §304.5 Marking requirements for imitation political items.

(a) An imitation political item which is manufactured in the United States, or imported into the United States for introduction into or distribution in commerce, shall be plainly and permanently marked with the calendar year in which such item was manufactured.

(b) The calendar year shall be marked upon the item legibly, conspicuously and nondeceptively, and in accordance with the further requirements of these regulations.

(1) The calendar year shall appear in arabic numerals, shall be based upon the Gregorian calendar and shall consist of four digits.

(2) The calendar year shall be marked on either the obverse or the reverse surface of the item. It shall not be marked on the edge of the item.

(3) An imitation political item of incusable material shall be incused with the calendar year in sans-serif numerals. Each numeral shall have a vertical dimension of not less than two millimeters (2.0 mm) and a minimum depth of three-tenths of one millimeter (0.3 mm) or one-half (½) the thickness of the reproduction, whichever is the lesser. The minimum total horizontal

dimension for the four numerals composing the calendar year shall be six millimeters (6.0 mm).

(4) An imitation political button, poster, literature, sticker, or advertisement composed of nonincusable material shall be imprinted with the calendar year in sans-serif numerals. Each numeral shall have a vertical dimension of not less than two millimeters (2.0 mm). The minimum total horizontal dimension of the four numerals composing the calendar year shall be six millimeters (6.0 mm).

### § 304.6 Marking requirements for imitation numismatic items.

(a) An imitation numismatic item which is manufactured in the United States, or imported into the United States for introduction into or distribution in commerce, shall be plainly and permanently marked ''COPY''.

(b) The word ''COPY'' shall be marked upon the item legibly, conspicuously, and nondeceptively, and in accordance with the further requirements of these regulations.

(1) The word ''COPY'' shall appear in capital letters, in the English language.

(2) The word ''COPY'' shall be marked on either the obverse or the reverse surface of the item. It shall not be marked on the edge of the item.

(3) An imitation numismatic item of incusable material shall be incused with the word ''COPY'' in sans-serif letters having a vertical dimension of not less than two millimeters (2.0 mm) or not less than one-sixth of the diameter of the reproduction, and a minimum depth of three-tenths of one millimeter (0.3 mm) or to one-half (½) the thickness of the reproduction, whichever is the lesser. The minimum total horizontal dimension of the word ''COPY'' shall be six millimeters (6.0 mm) or not less than one-half of the diameter of the reproduction.

(4) An imitation numismatic item composed of nonincusable material shall be imprinted with the word ''COPY'' in sans-serif letters having a vertical dimension of not less than two millimeters (2.0 mm) or not less than one-sixth of the diameter of the reproduction. The minimum total horizontal dimension of the word ''COPY'' shall be six millimeters (6.0 mm) or not less than one-half of the diameter of the reproduction.

[40 FR 5496, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 53 FR 38942, Oct. 4, 1988]

## PART 305—RULE CONCERNING DISCLOSURES REGARDING ENERGY CONSUMPTION AND WATER USE OF CERTAIN HOME APPLIANCES AND OTHER PRODUCTS REQUIRED UNDER THE ENERGY POLICY AND CONSERVATION ACT (''APPLIANCE LABELING RULE'')

SCOPE

Sec.
305.1 Scope of the regulations in this part.

DEFINITIONS

305.2 Definitions.
305.3 Description of covered products.

GENERAL

305.4 Prohibited acts.

TESTING

305.5 Determinations of estimated annual energy consumption, estimated annual operating cost, and energy efficiency rating, and of water use rate.
305.6 Sampling.
305.7 Determinations of capacity.
305.8 Submission of data.

REPRESENTATIVE AVERAGE UNIT ENERGY COSTS

305.9 Representative average unit energy costs.
305.10 Ranges of estimated annual energy consumption and energy efficiency ratings.

REQUIRED DISCLOSURES

305.11 Labeling for covered products.
305.12 Additional information relating to energy consumption.
305.13 Promotional material displayed or distributed at point of sale.
305.14 Catalogs.

ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

305.15 Test data records.
305.16 Required testing by designated laboratory.

EFFECT OF THIS PART

305.17 Effect on other law.
305.18 Stayed or invalid parts.
APPENDIX A1 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATORS

WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST
APPENDIX A2 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATORS AND REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH MANUAL DEFROST
APPENDIX A3 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH PARTIAL AUTOMATIC DEFROST
APPENDIX A4 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH TOP-MOUNTED FREEZER WITHOUT THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE
APPENDIX A5 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH SIDE-MOUNTED FREEZER WITHOUT THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE
APPENDIX A6 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH BOTTOM-MOUNTED FREEZER WITHOUT THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE
APPENDIX A7 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH TOP-MOUNTED FREEZER WITH THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE
APPENDIX A8 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH SIDE-MOUNTED FREEZER WITH THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE
APPENDIX B1 TO PART 305—UPRIGHT FREEZERS WITH MANUAL DEFROST
APPENDIX B2 TO PART 305—UPRIGHT FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST
APPENDIX B3 TO PART 305—CHEST FREEZERS AND ALL OTHER FREEZERS
APPENDIX C TO PART 305—DISHWASHERS
APPENDIX D1 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—GAS
APPENDIX D2 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—ELECTRIC
APPENDIX D3 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—OIL
APPENDIX D4 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—INSTANTANEOUS—GAS
APPENDIX D5 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—INSTANTANEOUS—OIL
APPENDIX D6 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—HEAT PUMP
APPENDIX E TO PART 305—ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS
APPENDIX F TO PART 305—CLOTHES WASHERS
APPENDIX G1 TO PART 305—FURNACES—GAS
APPENDIX G2 TO PART 305—FURNACES—ELECTRIC
APPENDIX G3 TO PART 305—FURNACES—OIL
APPENDIX G4 TO PART 305—MOBIL HOME FURNACES
APPENDIX G5 TO PART 305—BOILERS—GAS (EXCEPT STEAM)
APPENDIX G6 TO PART 305—BOILERS—GAS (STEAM)
APPENDIX G7 TO PART 305—BOILERS—OIL
APPENDIX G8 TO PART 305—BOILERS—ELECTRIC
APPENDIX H TO PART 305—COOLING PERFORMANCE AND COST FOR CENTRAL AIR CONDITIONERS
APPENDIX I TO PART 305—HEATING PERFORMANCE AND COST FOR CENTRAL AIR CONDITIONERS
APPENDIX J1 TO PART 305—POOL HEATERS—GAS
APPENDIX J2 TO PART 305—POOL HEATERS—OIL
APPENDIX K TO PART 305—SUGGESTED DATA REPORTING FORMAT
APPENDIX L TO PART 305—SAMPLE LABELS

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 6294.

SOURCE: 52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, unless otherwise noted.

## SCOPE

### §305.1 Scope of the regulations in this part.

The rule in this part establishes requirements for consumer appliance products, as hereinafter described, in commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C. 6291, with respect to:

(a) Labeling and/or marking the products with information required by this part indicating their operating cost (or different useful measure of energy consumption) and related information, disclosing their water use rate and related information, or stating their compliance with applicable standards under section 325 of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295;

(b) Including in printed matter displayed or distributed at the point of sale of such products, or including in any catalog from which the products may be purchased, information concerning their water use or their energy consumption;

(c) Including on the labels, separately attaching to the products, or shipping with the products, additional information relating to energy consumption, energy efficiency, or energy cost; and

(d) Making representations, in writing or in broadcast advertising, respecting the water use, energy consumption, or energy efficiency of the products, or the cost of water used or energy consumed by the products.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 28034, July 5, 1989]

## DEFINITIONS

### §305.2 Definitions.

(a) *Act* means the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (Pub. L. 94–163), and amendments thereto.

(b) *Commission* means the Federal Trade Commission.

(c) *Manufacturer* means any person who manufactures, produces, assembles, or imports a consumer appliance product. Assembly operations which are solely decorative are not included.

(d) *Retailer* means a person to whom a consumer appliance product is delivered or sold, if such delivery or sale is for purposes of sale or distribution in commerce to purchasers who buy such product for purposes other than resale. The term *retailer* includes purchasers of appliances who install such appliances in newly constructed or newly rehabilitated housing, or mobile homes, with the intent to sell the covered appliances as part of the sale of such housing or mobile homes.

(e) *Distributor* means a person (other than a manufacturer or retailer) to whom a consumer appliance product is delivered or sold for purposes of distribution in commerce.

(f) *Private labeler* means an owner of a brand or trademark on the label of a consumer appliance product which bears a private label.

(g) *Range of comparability* means a group of models within a class of covered products, each model of which satisfies approximately the same consumer needs.

(h) *Estimated annual energy consumption and estimated annual operating cost*—(1) *Estimated annual energy consumption* means the energy or (for products described in sections 305.3(n)–(q)) water that is likely to be consumed annually in representative use of a consumer product, as determined in accordance with tests prescribed under section 323 of the Act (42 U.S.C. 6293).

(i) *Kilowatt-hour use per year*, or *kWh/yr.*, means estimated annual energy consumption expressed in kilowatt-hours of electricity.

(ii) *Therm use per year*, or *therms/yr.*, means estimated annual energy consumption expressed in therms of natural gas.

(iii) *Gallon use per year*, or *gallons/yr.*, means estimated annual energy consumption expressed in gallons of propane or No. 2 heating oil.

(2) *Estimated annual operating cost* means the aggregate retail cost of the energy that is likely to be consumed annually in representative use of a consumer product, as determined in accordance with tests prescribed under section 323 of the Act (42 U.S.C. 6293).

(i) *Energy efficiency rating* means the following product-specific energy usage descriptors: *annual fuel utilization efficiency (AFUE)* for furnaces; *energy efficiency ratio (EER)* for room air conditioners; *seasonal energy efficiency ratio (SEER)* for the cooling function of central air conditioners and heat pumps; *heating seasonal performance factor (HSPF)* for the heating function of heat pumps; and, *thermal efficiency (TE)* for pool heaters, as these descriptors are determined in accordance with tests prescribed under section 323 of the Act (42 U.S.C. 6293). These product-specific energy usage descriptors shall be used in satisfying all the requirements of this part.

(j) *Range of estimated annual energy consumption* means the range of estimated annual energy consumption per year of all models within a designated range of comparability.

(k) *Range of energy efficiency ratings* means the range of energy efficiency ratings for all models within a designated range of comparability.

(l) *New covered product*, as used in § 305.4, means a covered product the title of which has not passed to a purchaser who buys the product for purposes other than resale or leasing for a period in excess of one year.

(m) *Catalog* means printed material which contains the terms of sale, retail price, and instructions for ordering, from which a retail consumer can order a covered product.

(n) *Consumer product* means any article (other than an automobile, as ''automobile'' is defined in 15 U.S.C. 2001(1) [sec. 501(1) of the Motor Vehicle Information and Cost Savings Act]) of a type—

(1) which in operation consumes, or is designed to consume, energy or, with respect to showerheads, faucets, water closets, and urinals, water; and

(2) which, to any significant extent, is distributed in commerce for personal use or consumption by individuals;

without regard to whether such article or such type is in fact distributed in commerce for personal use or consumption by an individual, except that such

term includes fluorescent lamp ballasts, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, general service incandescent lamps (including incandescent reflector lamps), showerheads, faucets, water closets, and urinals distributed in commerce for personal or commercial use or consumption.

(o) *Consumer appliance product* means any of the following consumer products, excluding those products designed solely for use in recreational vehicles and other mobile equipment:

(1) Refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, and freezers which can be operated by alternating current electricity, excluding—

(i) any type designed to be used without doors; and

(ii) any type which does not include a compressor and condenser unit as an integral part of the cabinet assembly.

(2) Dishwashers.

(3) Water heaters.

(4) Room air conditioners.

(5) Clothes washers.

(6) Clothes dryers.

(7) Central air conditioners and central air conditioning heat pumps.

(8) Furnaces.

(9) Direct heating equipment.

(10) Pool heaters.

(11) Kitchen ranges and ovens.

(12) Television sets.

(13) Fluorescent lamp ballasts.

(14) General service fluorescent lamps.

(15) Medium base compact fluorescent lamps.

(16) General service incandescent lamps, including incandescent reflector lamps.

(17) Showerheads.

(18) Faucets.

(19) Water closets.

(20) Urinals.

(21) Any other type of consumer product which the Department of Energy classifies as a covered product under section 322(b) of the Act (42 U.S.C. 6292).

(p) *Covered product* means any consumer product or consumer appliance product described in § 305.3 of this part.

(q) *Luminaire* means a complete lighting unit consisting of a fluorescent lamp or lamps, together with parts designed to distribute the light, to position and protect such lamps, and to connect such lamps to the power supply through the ballast.

(r) *Ballast efficacy factor* means the relative light output divided by the power input of a fluorescent lamp ballast, as measured under test conditions specified in American National Standards Institute (''ANSI'') standard C82.2–1984, or as may be prescribed by the Secretary of Energy. Copies of ANSI standard C82.2–1984 may be obtained from the American National Standards Institute, 11 West 42nd St., New York, NY 10036.

(s) *Bulb shape* means the shape of the lamp, especially the glass portion.

(t) *Base* for lamps means the portion of the lamp which screws into the socket.

(u) *Color rendering index* or *CRI* for lamps means the measure of the degree of color shift objects undergo when illuminated by a light source as compared with the color of those same objects when illuminated by a reference source of comparable color temperature.

(v) *Correlated color temperature* for lamps means the absolute temperature of a blackbody whose chromaticity most nearly resembles that of the light source.

(w) *Lamp type* means all lamps designated as having the same electrical and lighting characteristics and made by one manufacturer.

(x) *Wattage* for lamps means the total electrical power consumed by a lamp in watts, after an initial seasoning period and including, for fluorescent lamps, arc watts plus cathode watts.

(y) *Light output* for lamps means the total luminous flux (power) of a lamp in lumens.

(z) *Life* and *lifetime* for lamps mean length of operating time of a statistically large group of lamps between first use and failure of 50 percent of the group.

(aa) *Lamp efficacy* means the light output of a lamp divided by its wattage, expressed in lumens per watt (LPW).

(bb) *Average lamp efficacy* means the lamp efficacy readings taken over a statistically significant period of manufacture with the readings averaged over that period.

(cc) *IES* means the Illuminating Engineering Society of North America and, as used herein, is the prefix for test procedures adopted by IES.

(dd) *ASME* means the American Society of Mechanical Engineers and, as used herein, is the prefix for national standards and codes adopted by ASME.

(ee) *ANSI* means the American National Standards Institute and, as used herein, is the prefix for national standards and codes adopted by ANSI.

(ff) *Water use* means the quantity of water flowing through a showerhead, faucet, water closet, or urinal at point of use, determined in accordance with test procedures under section 323 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6293.

(gg) *Flushometer valve* means a valve attached to a pressured water supply pipe and so designed that, when actuated, it opens the line for direct flow into the fixture at a rate and quantity to operate properly the fixture, and then gradually closes to provide trap reseal in the fixture in order to avoid water hammer. The pipe to which this device is connected is in itself of sufficient size that, when opened, will allow the device to deliver water at a sufficient rate of flow for flushing purposes.

(hh) *Flow restricting or controlling spout end device* means an aerator used in a faucet.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 59 FR 34031, July 1, 1994; 59 FR 49563, Sept. 28, 1994; 59 FR 67524, Dec. 29, 1994]

### § 305.3 Description of covered products.

(a) *Refrigerators and refrigerator-freezers.* (1) *Electric refrigerator* means a cabinet designed for the refrigerated storage of food at temperatures above 32 °F., and having a source of refrigeration requiring single phase, alternating current electric energy input only. An electric refrigerator may include a compartment for the freezing and storage of food at temperatures below 32 °F., but does not provide a separate low temperature compartment designed for the freezing and storage of food at temperatures below 8 °F. An ''all-refrigerator'' is an electric refrigerator which does not include a compartment for the freezing and long time storage of food at temperatures below 32 °F (0.0 °C). An ''all-refrigerator'' may include a compartment of 0.50 cubic capacity (14.2 liters) or less for the freezing and storage of ice.

(2) *Electric refrigerator-freezer* means a cabinet which consists of two or more compartments with at least one of the compartments designed for the refrigerated storage of food at temperatures above 32 °F. and with at least one of the compartments designed for the freezing and storage of food at temperatures below 8 °F. which may be adjusted by the user to a temperature of 0 °F. or below. The source of refrigeration requires single phase, alternating current electric energy input only.

(b) *Freezer* means a cabinet designed as a unit for the freezing and storage of food at temperatures of 0 °F. or below, and having a source of refrigeration requiring single phase, alternating current electric energy input only.

(c) *Dishwasher* means a cabinetlike appliance which, with the aid of water and detergent, washes, rinses, and dries (when a drying process is included) dishware, glassware, eating utensils and most cooking utensils by chemical, mechanical, and/or electrical means and discharges to the plumbing drainage system.

(1) *Water Heating Dishwasher* means a dishwasher which is designed for heating cold inlet water (nominal 50 °F.) or a dishwasher for which the manufacturer recommends operation with a nominal inlet water temperature of 120 °F. and may operate at either of these inlet water temperatures by providing internal water heating to above 120 °F. in at least one wash phase of the normal cycle.

(2) [Reserved]

(d)(1) *Water heater* means a product which utilizes oil, gas, or electricity to heat potable water for use outside the heater upon demand, including—

(i) Storage type units which heat and store water at a thermostatically controlled temperature, including gas storage water heaters with an input of 75,000 Btu per hour or less, oil storage water heaters with an input of 105,000 Btu per hour or less, and electric storage water heaters with an input of 12 kilowatts or less;

(ii) Instantaneous type units which heat water but contain no more than one gallon of water per 4,000 Btu per

hour of input, including gas instantaneous water heaters with an input of 200,000 Btu per hour or less, oil instantaneous water heaters with an input of 210,000 Btu per hour or less, and electric instantaneous water heaters with an input of 12 kilowatts or less; and

(iii) Heat pump type units, with a maximum current rating of 24 amperes at a voltage no greater than 250 volts, which are products designed to transfer thermal energy from one temperature level to a higher temperature level for the purpose of heating water, including all ancillary equipment such as fans, storage tanks, pumps, or controls necessary for the device to perform its function.

(2) The requirements of this part are limited to those water heaters for which the Department of Energy has adopted and published test procedures for measuring energy usage.

(e) *Room air conditioner* means a consumer product, other than a packaged terminal air conditioner, which is powered by a single phase electric current and which is an encased assembly designed as a unit for mounting in a window or through the wall for the purpose of providing delivery of conditioned air to an enclosed space. It includes a prime source of refrigeration and may include a means for ventilating and heating.

(f) *Clothes washer* means a consumer product designed to clean clothes, utilizing a water solution of soap and/or detergent and mechanical agitation or other movement, and must be one of the following classes: automatic clothes washers, semi-automatic clothes washers, and other clothes washers.

(1) *Automatic clothes washer* means a class of clothes washer which has a control system capable of scheduling a pre-selected combination of operations, such as regulation of water fill level, and performance of wash, rinse, drain and spin functions, without the need for the user to intervene subsequent to the initiation of machine operation. Some models may require user intervention to initiate these different segments of the cycle after the machine has begun operation, but they do not require the user to intervene to regulate the water temperature by adjusting the external water faucet valves.

(2) *Semi-automatic clothes washer* means a class of clothes washer that is the same as an automatic clothes washer except that the user must intervene to regulate the water temperature by adjusting the external water faucet valves.

(3) *Other clothes washer* means a class of clothes washer which is not an automatic or semi-automatic clothes washer.

(g) *Furnaces.* (1) *Furnace* means a product which utilizes only single-phase electric current, or single-phase electric current or DC current in conjunction with natural gas, propane, or home heating oil, and which—

(i) Is designed to be the principal heating sources for the living space of a residence;

(ii) Is not contained within the same cabinet with a central air conditioner whose rated cooling capacity is above 65,000 Btu per hour;

(iii) Is an electric central furnace, electric boiler, forced-air central furnace, gravity central furnace, or low pressure steam or hot water boiler; and

(iv) Has a heat input rate of less than 300,000 Btu per hour for electric boilers and low pressure steam or hot water boilers and less than 225,000 Btu per hour for forced-air central furnaces, gravity central furnaces, and electric central furnaces.

(2) *Electric central furnace* means a furnace designed to supply heat through a system of ducts with air as the heating medium, in which heat is generated by one or more electric resistance heating elements and the heated air is circulated by means of a fan or blower.

(3) *Forced air central furnace* means a gas or oil burning furnace designed to supply heat through a system of ducts with air as the heating medium. The heat generated by combustion of gas or oil is transferred to the air within a casing by conduction through heat exchange surfaces and is circulated through the duct system by means of a fan or blower.

(4) *Gravity central furnace* means a gas fueled furnace which depends primarily on natural convection for circulation of heated air and which is designed to

be used in conjunction with a system of ducts.

(5) *Electric boiler* means an electrically powered furnace designed to supply low pressure steam or hot water for space heating application. A low pressure steam boiler operates at or below 15 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) steam pressure; a hot water boiler operates at or below 160 psig water pressure and 250 °F. water temperature.

(6) *Low pressure steam or hot water boiler* means an electric, gas or oil burning furnace designed to supply low pressure steam or hot water for space heating application. A low pressure steam boiler operates at or below 15 pounds psig steam pressure; a hot water boiler operates at or below 160 psig water pressure and 250 °F. water temperature.

(7) *Outdoor furnace or boiler* is a furnace or boiler normally intended for installation out-of-doors or in an unheated space (such as an attic or a crawl space).

(8) *Weatherized warm air furnace or boiler* means a furnace or boiler designed for installation outdoors, approved for resistance to wind, rain, and snow, and supplied with its own venting system.

(h) *Central air conditioner* means a product, other than a packaged terminal air conditioner, which is powered by single phase electric current, air cooled, rated below 65,000 Btu per hour, not contained within the same cabinet as a furnace, the rated capacity of which is above 225,000 Btu per hour, and is a heat pump or a cooling only unit.

(1) *Condenser-evaporator coil combination* means a condensing unit made by one manufacturer and one of several evaporator coils, either manufactured by the same manufacturer or another manufacturer, intended to be combined with that particular condensing unit.

(2) *Condensing unit* means a component of a ''central air conditioner'' which is designed to remove heat absorbed by the refrigerant and to transfer it to the outside environment, and which consists of an outdoor coil, compressor(s), and air moving device.

(3) *Evaporator coil* means a component of a central air conditioner which is designed to absorb heat from an enclosed space and transfer the heat to a refrigerant.

(4) *Single package unit* means any central air conditioner in which all the major assemblies are enclosed in one cabinet.

(5) *Split system* means any central air conditioner in which one or more of the major assemblies are separate from the others.

(i) *Heat pump* means a product, other than a packaged terminal heat pump, which consists of one or more assemblies, powered by single phase electric current, rated below 65,000 Btu per hour, utilizing an indoor conditioning coil, compressor, and refrigerant-to-outdoor air heat exchanger to provide air heating, and may also provide air cooling, dehumidifying, humidifying, circulating, and air cleaning.

(j) *Fluorescent lamp ballast* means a device that is used to start and operate fluorescent lamps by providing a starting voltage and current and limiting the current during normal operation, and that is designed to operate at nominal input voltages of 120 or 277 volts with a frequency of 60 Hertz and is for use in connection with F40T12, F96T12 or F96T12HO lamps.

(k) *Fluorescent lamp:*

(1) means a low pressure mercury electric-discharge source in which a fluorescing coating transforms some of the ultra-violet energy generated by the mercury discharge into light, including only the following:

(i) Any straight-shaped lamp (commonly referred to as 4-foot medium bi-pin lamps) with medium bi-pin bases of nominal overall length of 48 inches and rated wattage of 28 or more;

(ii) Any U-shaped lamp (commonly referred to as 2-foot U-shaped lamps) with medium bi-pin bases of nominal overall length between 22 and 25 inches and rated wattage of 28 or more;

(iii) Any rapid start lamp (commonly referred to as 8-foot high output lamps) with recessed double contact bases of nominal overall length of 96 inches and 0.800 nominal amperes, as defined in ANSI C78.1–1978 and related supplements (copies of ANSI C78.1–1978 and related supplements may be obtained from the American National Standards Institute, 11 West 42nd St., New York, NY 10036); and

(iv) Any instant start lamp (commonly referred to as 8-foot slimline lamps) with single pin bases of nominal overall length of 96 inches and rated wattage of 52 or more, as defined in ANSI C78.3–1978 (R1984) and related supplement ANSI C78.3a–1985 (copies of ANSI C78.3–1978 (R1984) and related supplement ANSI C78.3a–1985 may be obtained from the American National Standards Institute, 11 West 42nd St., New York, NY 10036); but

(2) *Fluorescent lamp* does not mean any lamp excluded by the Department of Energy, by rule, as a result of a determination that standards for such lamp would not result in significant energy savings because such lamp is designed for special applications or has special characteristics not available in reasonably substitutable lamp types; and

(3) *General service fluorescent lamp* means a fluorescent lamp which can be used to satisfy the majority of fluorescent applications, but does not mean any lamp designed and marketed for the following nongeneral lighting applications:

(i) Fluorescent lamps designed to promote plant growth;

(ii) Fluorescent lamps specifically designed for cold temperature installations;

(iii) Colored fluorescent lamps;

(iv) Impact-resistant fluorescent lamps;

(v) Reflectorized or aperture lamps;

(vi) Fluorescent lamps designed for use in reprographic equipment;

(vii) Lamps primarily designed to produce radiation in the ultra-violet region of the spectrum; and

(viii) Lamps with a color rendering index of 82 or greater.

(l) *Medium base compact fluorescent lamp* means an integrally ballasted fluorescent lamp with a medium screw base and a rated input voltage of 115 to 130 volts and which is designed as a direct replacement for a general service incandescent lamp.

(m) *Incandescent lamp:*

(1) means a lamp in which light is produced by a filament heated to incandescence by an electric current, including only the following:

(i) Any lamp (commonly referred to as lower wattage nonreflector general service lamps, including any tungsten-halogen lamp) that has a rated wattage between 30 and 199 watts, has an E26 medium screw base, has a rated voltage or voltage range that lies at least partially within 115 and 130 volts, and is not a reflector lamp;

(ii) Any lamp (commonly referred to as a reflector lamp) which is not colored or designed for rough or vibration service applications, that contains an inner reflective coating on the outer bulb to direct the light, an R, PAR, or similar bulb shapes (excluding ER or BR) with E26 medium screw bases, a rated voltage or voltage range that lies at least partially within 115 and 130 volts, a diameter which exceeds 2.75 inches, and is either—

(A) a low(er) wattage reflector lamp which has a rated wattage between 40 and 205 watts; or

(B) a high(er) wattage reflector lamp which has a rated wattage above 205 watts;

(iii) Any general service incandescent lamp (commonly referred to as a high- or higher-wattage lamp) that has a rated wattage above 199 watts (above 205 watts for a high wattage reflector lamp); but

(2) *Incandescent lamp* does not mean any lamp excluded by the Secretary of Energy, by rule, as a result of a determination that standards for such lamp would not result in significant energy savings because such lamp is designed for special applications or has special characteristics not available in reasonably substitutable lamp types; and

(3) *General service incandescent lamp* means any incandescent lamp (other than a miniature or photographic lamp), including an incandescent reflector lamp, that has an E26 medium screw base, a rated voltage range at least partially within 115 and 130 volts, and which can be used to satisfy the majority of lighting applications, but does not include any lamp specifically designed for:

(i) traffic signal, or street lighting service;

(ii) airway, airport, aircraft, or other aviation service;

(iii) marine or marine signal service;

(iv) photo, projection, sound reproduction, or film viewer service;

(v) stage, studio, or television service;

(vi) mill, saw mill, or other industrial process service;

(vii) mine service;

(viii) headlight, locomotive, street railway, or other transportation service;

(ix) heating service;

(x) code beacon, marine signal, lighthouse, reprographic, or other communication service;

(xi) medical or dental service;

(xii) microscope, map, microfilm, or other specialized equipment service;

(xiii) swimming pool or other underwater service;

(xiv) decorative or showcase service;

(xv) producing colored light;

(xvi) shatter resistance which has an external protective coating; or

(xvii) appliance service; and

(4) *Incandescent reflector lamp* means a lamp described in paragraph (m)(1)(ii) of this section; and

(5) *Tungsten-halogen lamp* means a gas-filled tungsten filament incandescent lamp containing a certain proportion of halogens in an inert gas.

(n) *Showerhead* means any showerhead (including a handheld showerhead), except a safety shower showerhead.

(o) *Faucet* means a lavatory faucet, kitchen faucet, metering faucet, or replacement aerator for a lavatory or kitchen faucet.

(p) *Water closet* means a plumbing fixture having a water-containing receptor which receives liquid and solid body waste and, upon actuation, conveys the waste through an exposed integral trap seal into a gravity drainage system, except such term does not include fixtures designed for installation in prisons.

(q) *Urinal* means a plumbing fixture which receives only liquid body waste and, on demand, conveys the waste through a trap seal into a gravity drainage system, except such term does not include fixtures designed for installation in prisons.

(r) *Pool heater* means an appliance designed for heating nonpotable water contained at atmospheric pressure, including heating water in swimming pools, spas, hot tubs and similar applications. The requirements of this part are limited to those pool heaters for which the Department of Energy has adopted and published test procedures for measuring energy usage (see 10 CFR part 430, subpart B, appendix P).

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 59 FR 34031, 34032, July 1, 1994; 59 FR 49563, Sept. 28, 1994; 59 FR 67525, Dec. 29, 1994]

GENERAL

### § 305.4 Prohibited acts.

(a) It shall be unlawful and subject to the enforcement penalties of section 333 of the Act, as adjusted for inflation pursuant to § 1.98 of this chapter, for each unit of any new covered product to which the part applies:

(1) For any manufacturer or private labeler knowingly to distribute in commerce any new covered product unless such covered product is marked and/or labeled in accordance with § 305.11 with a marking, label, flap tag, hang tag, or energy fact sheet which conforms to the provisions of the Act and this part.

(2) For any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler knowingly to remove or render illegible any marking or label required to be provided with such product by this part.

(3) For any manufacturer or private labeler knowingly to distribute in commerce any new covered product, if there is not included (i) on the label, (ii) separately attached to the product, or (iii) shipped with the product, additional information relating to energy consumption or energy efficiency which conforms to the requirements in this part.

(b) It shall be unlawful and subject to the enforcement penalties of section 333 of the Act, as adjusted for inflation pursuant to § 1.98 of this chapter, for any manufacturer or private labeler knowingly to:

(1) Refuse a request by the Commission or its designated representative for access to, or copying of, records required to be supplied under this part.

(2) Refuse to make reports or provide upon request by the Commission or its designated representative any information required to be supplied under this part.

(3) Refuse upon request by the Commission or its designated representative to permit a representative designated by the Commission to observe any testing required by this part while such testing is being conducted or to inspect the results of such testing. This section shall not limit the Commission from requiring additional testing under this part.

(4) Refuse, when requested by the Commission or its designated representative, to supply at the manufacturer's expense, no more than two of each model of each covered product to any laboratory designated by the Commission for the purpose of ascertaining whether the information in catalogs or set out on the label or marked on the product as required by this part is accurate. This action will be taken only after review of a manufacturer's testing records and an opportunity to revalidate test data has been extended to the manufacturer.

(5) Distribute in commerce any catalog containing a listing for a covered product without the information required by § 305.14 of this part. This subsection shall also apply to distributors and retailers.

(c) Pursuant to section 333(c) of the Act, it shall be an unfair or deceptive act or practice in violation of section 5(a)(1) of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 45(a)(1)) for any manufacturer, distributor, retailer or private labeler in or affecting commerce to display or distribute at point of sale any printed material applicable to a covered product under this rule if such printed material does not contain the information required by § 305.13. This requirement does not apply to any broadcast advertisement or to any advertisement in a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical.

(d)(1) It shall be an unfair or deceptive act or practice in violation of section 5(a)(1) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 45(a)(1), for any manufacturer, distributor, retailer or private labeler to make any representation in or affecting commerce, in writing (including a representation on a label) or in any broadcast advertisement, with respect to the energy use or efficiency or, in the case of showerheads, faucets, water closets, and urinals, water use of a covered product to which a test procedure is applicable under section 323 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6293, or the cost of energy consumed by such product, unless such product has been tested in accordance with such test procedure and such representation fairly discloses the results of such testing.

(2) Effective 180 days after an amended or new test procedure applicable to a covered product is prescribed or established under section 323(b) of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6293(b), it shall be an unfair or deceptive act or practice in violation of section 5(a)(1) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 45(a)(1), for any manufacturer, distributor, retailer or private labeler to make any representation in or affecting commerce, in writing (including a representation on a label) or in any broadcast advertisement, with respect to the energy use or efficiency or, in the case of showerheads, faucets, water closets and urinals, water use of such product, or cost of energy consumed by such product, unless the product has been tested in accordance with such amended or new test procedures and such representation fairly discloses the results of such testing. This requirement is not limited to consumer appliance products covered by the labeling requirements of this part.

(3) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler may file a petition with the Commission not later than sixty (60) days before the expiration of the period involved for an extension of the 180 day period. If the Commission finds that the requirements would impose an undue hardship on the petitioner, the Commission may extend the 180 day period with respect to the petitioner up to an additional 180 days.

(e) This part shall not apply to:

(1) Any covered product if it is manufactured, imported, sold, or held for sale for export from the United States, so long as such product is not in fact distributed in commerce for use in the United States, and such covered product or the container thereof bears a stamp or label stating that such covered product is intended for export.

(2) Any covered product, other than central air conditioners, pulse combustion and condensing furnaces, fluorescent lamp ballasts, showerheads, faucets, water closets, urinals, pool heaters, instantaneous water heaters, heat pump water heaters, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, and general service incandescent lamps (including incandescent reflector lamps), if the manufacture of the product was completed prior to May 19, 1980. Any central air conditioner or any pulse combustion or condensing furnace if its manufacture was completed prior to June 7, 1988. Any fluorescent lamp ballast if its manufacture was completed prior to January 1, 1990. Any showerhead, faucet, water closet or urinal if its manufacture was completed prior to October 24, 1994. Any pool heater, instantaneous water heater, or heat pump water heater if its manufacture was completed prior to December 29, 1994. Any general service fluorescent lamp, medium base compact fluorescent lamp, or general service incandescent lamp (including any incandescent reflector lamp), if its manufacture was completed prior to May 15, 1995.

(3) Any catalog or point-of-sale printed material pertaining to any covered products that were manufactured prior to May 19, 1980; any catalog or point-of-sale printed material pertaining to any central air conditioners or pulse combustion or condensing furnaces manufactured prior to June 7, 1988; any catalog or point-of-sale printed material pertaining to any fluorescent lamp ballasts manufactured prior to June 23, 1989; any catalog or point-of-sale printed material pertaining to any showerheads, faucets, water closets or urinals manufactured prior to October 24, 1994; any catalog or point-of-sale printed material pertaining to any pool heaters, instantaneous water heaters, or heat pump water heaters manufactured prior to December 29, 1994; or any catalog or point-of-sale printed material pertaining to general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, or general service incandescent lamps (including incandescent reflector lamps), that were manufactured prior to May 15, 1995; except that any representations respecting the energy consumption, energy efficiency, or water use of any covered product or other consumer appliance product, or respecting the cost of energy consumed or water used by such product, are subject to the requirements of paragraph (d) of this section.

(f) As used in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the term *knowingly* means:

(1) The having of actual knowledge, or

(2) The presumed having of knowledge deemed to be possessed by a reasonable person who acts in the circumstances, including knowledge obtainable upon the exercise of due care.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 28035, July 5, 1989; 58 FR 54964, Oct. 25, 1993; 59 FR 49563, Sept. 28, 1994; 59 FR 67526, Dec. 29, 1994; 61 FR 54549, Oct. 21, 1996]

TESTING

### § 305.5 Determinations of estimated annual energy consumption, estimated annual operating cost, and energy efficiency rating, and of water use rate.

(a) Procedures for determining the estimated annual energy consumption, the estimated annual operating costs, the energy efficiency ratings and the efficacy factors of covered products are those found in 10 CFR part 430, subpart B, in the following sections:

(1) Refrigerators and refrigerator-freezers—§ 430.22(a).

(2) Freezers—§ 430.22(b).

(3) Dishwashers—§ 430.22(c).

(4) Water heaters—§ 430.22(e).

(5) Room air conditioners—§ 430.22(f).

(6) Clothes washers—§ 430.22(j).

(7) Central air conditioners and heat pumps—§ 430.22(m).

(8) Furnaces—§ 430.22(n).

(9) Pool Heaters—§ 430.22(p)

(10) Fluorescent lamp ballasts—§ 430.22(q).

(b) Manufacturers and private labelers of any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp, medium base compact fluorescent lamp, or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), must, for any representation of the design voltage, wattage, light output or life of such lamp or for any representation made by the encircled ''E'' that such a lamp is in compliance with

an applicable standard established by section 325 of the Act, possess and rely upon a reasonable basis consisting of competent and reliable scientific tests substantiating the representation. For representations of the light output and life ratings of any covered product that is a medium base compact fluorescent lamp or incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), the Commission will accept as a reasonable basis competent and reliable scientific tests conducted according to the following applicable IES test protocols that substantiate the representations:

| | |
|---|---|
| For measuring light output (in lumens): | |
| General Service Fluorescent .. | IES LM 9 |
| Compact Fluorescent ..... | IES LM 66 |
| General Service Incandescent (Other than Reflector Lamps). | IES LM 45 |
| General Service Incandescent (Reflector Lamps) ..... | IES LM 20 |
| For measuring laboratory life (in hours): | |
| General Service Fluorescent .. | IES LM 40 |
| Compact Fluorescent ..... | IES LM 65 |
| General Service Incandescent (Other than Reflector Lamps). | IES LM 49 |
| General Service Incandescent (Reflector Lamps) ..... | IES LM 49 |

(c) Procedures for determining the water use rates of covered products are those found in the following standards:

(1) Showerheads and faucets—- ASME A112.18.1M–1989, Plumbing Fixture Fittings. This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of ASME A112.18.1M may be obtained from the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017, or may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC, or at the Office of the Federal Register, suite 700, 800 North Capitol Street, N.W., Washington, DC.

(2) Water closets and urinals—ASME A112.19.2M–1990, Vitreous China Plumbing Fixtures. This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of ASME A112.19.2M may be obtained from the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017, or may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC, or at the Office of the Federal Register, suite 700, 800 North Capitol Street, N.W., Washington, DC.

[58 FR 54964, Oct. 25, 1993, as amended at 59 FR 34033, July 1, 1994; 59 FR 49564, Sept. 28, 1994; 59 FR 67527, Dec. 29, 1994]

### §305.6 Sampling.

(a) For any covered product (except general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, and general service incandescent lamps, including incandescent reflector lamps), any representation with respect to or based upon a measure or measures of energy consumption incorporated into §305.5 shall be based upon the sampling procedures set forth in §430.23 of 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

(b) For any covered product that is a medium base compact fluorescent lamp or a general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), any representation of design voltage, wattage, light output or life and, for any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp or incandescent reflector lamp, any representation made by the encircled ''E'' that such lamp is in compliance with an applicable standard established by section 325 of the Act shall be based upon tests using a competent and reliable scientific sampling procedure. The Commission will accept ''Military Standard 105—Sampling Procedures and Tables for Inspection by Attributes'' as such a sampling procedure.

[59 FR 67527, Dec. 29, 1994]

### §305.7 Determinations of capacity.

The capacity of covered products shall be determined as follows:

(a) *Refrigerators and refrigerator-freezers.* The capacity shall be the total refrigerated volume (VT) in cubic feet, rounded to the nearest one-tenth of a cubic foot, as determined according to appendix A1 to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

(b) *Freezers.* The capacity shall be the total refrigerated volume (VT) in cubic feet, rounded to the nearest one-tenth

of a cubic foot, as determined according to appendix B1 to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

(c) *Dishwashers.* The capacity shall be the place-setting capacity, determined according to appendix C to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

(d) *Water heaters.* The capacity shall be the first hour rating, as determined according to appendix E to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

(e) *Pool heaters.* The capacity shall be the heating capacity in Btu's per hour, rounded to the nearest 1,000 Btu's per hour, as determined according to appendix P to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

(f) *Room air conditioners.* The capacity shall be the cooling capacity in Btu's per hour, as determined according to appendix F to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B, but rounded to the nearest value ending in hundreds that will satisfy the relationship that the value of EER used in representations equals the rounded value of capacity divided by the value of input power in watts. If a value ending in hundreds will not satisfy this relationship, the capacity may be rounded to the nearest value ending in 50 that will.

(g) *Clothes washers.* The capacity shall be the tub capacity, rounded to the nearest gallon, as determined according to appendix J to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B, in the terms ''standard'' or ''compact'' as defined in appendix J.

(h) *Furnaces.* The capacity shall be the heating capacity in Btu's per hour, rounded to the nearest 1,000 Btu's per hour, as determined according to appendix N to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

(i) *Central air conditioners, cooling.* The capacity shall be the cooling capacity in Btu's per hour, as determined according to appendix M to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B, rounded to the nearest 100 Btu's per hour for capacities less than 20,000 Btu's per hour; to the nearest 200 Btu's per hour for capacities between 20,000 and 37,999 Btu's per hour; and to the nearest 500 Btu's per hour for capacities between 38,000 and 64,999 Btu's per hour.

(j) *Central air conditioners, heating.* The capacity shall be the heating capacity in Btu's per hour, as determined according to appendix M to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B, rounded to the nearest 100 Btu's per hour for capacities less than 20,000 Btu's per hour; to the nearest 200 Btu's per hour for capacities between 20,000 and 37,999 Btu's per hour; and to the nearest 500 Btu's per hour for capacities between 38,000 and 64,999 Btu's per hour.

(k) *Fluorescent lamp ballasts.* The capacity shall be the ballast input voltage, as determined according to appendix Q to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B.

[59 FR 34033, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 49564, Sept. 28, 1994]

### § 305.8 Submission of data.

(a)(1) Each manufacturer of a covered product (except manufacturers of fluorescent lamp ballasts, showerheads, faucets, water closets, urinals, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, or general service incandescent lamps including incandescent reflector lamps) shall submit annually to the Commission a report listing the estimated annual energy consumption (for refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, clothes washers, dishwashers and water heaters) or the energy efficiency rating (for room air conditioners, central air conditioners, heat pumps, furnaces, and pool heaters) for each basic model in current production, determined according to § 305.5 and statistically verified according to § 305.6. The report must also list, for each basic model in current production: the model numbers for each basic model; the total energy consumption, determined in accordance with § 305.5, used to calculate the estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency rating; the number of tests performed; and, its capacity, determined in accordance with § 305.7. For those models that use more than one energy source or more than one cycle, each separate amount of energy consumption or energy cost, measured in accordance with § 305.5, shall be listed in the report. appendix K illustrates a suggested reporting format. Starting serial numbers or other numbers identifying the date of manufacture of covered products shall be submitted whenever a new basic model is introduced on the market.

(2) Each manufacturer of a covered fluorescent lamp ballast shall submit annually to the Commission a report for each basic model of fluorescent

lamp ballast in current production. The report shall contain the following information:

(i) Name and address of manufacturer;

(ii) All trade names under which the fluorescent lamp ballast is marketed;

(iii) Model number;

(iv) Starting serial number, date code or other means of identifying the date of manufacture (date of manufacture information must be included with only the first submission for each basic model);

(v) Nominal input voltage and frequency;

(vi) Ballast efficacy factor; and

(vii) Type (F40T12, F96T12 or F96T12HO) and number of lamp or lamps with which the fluorescent lamp ballast is designed to be used.

(3) Each manufacturer of a covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp, medium base compact fluorescent lamp, or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), shall submit annually to the Commission a report for each lamp type in current production. The report shall contain the following information:

(i) Name and address of manufacturer;

(ii) All trade names under which the lamp is marketed;

(iii) Model number;

(iv) Starting serial number, date code or other means of identifying the date of manufacture (date of manufacture information must be included with only the first submission for each lamp type); and

(v) For all covered lamps, the test results for the lamp's wattage and light output ratings and, in addition, for all covered fluorescent lamps, the test results for the lamp's color rendering index.

(4) Each manufacturer of a covered showerhead, faucet, water closet or urinal shall submit annually to the Commission a report for each basic model of such products in current production. The report shall contain the following information:

(i) Name and address of manufacturer;

(ii) All trade names under which the product is marketed;

(iii) Model number;

(iv) Starting serial number, date code or other means of identifying the date of manufacture (date of manufacture information must be included with only the first submission for each basic model);

(v) The product's water use, expressed in gallons and liters per flush (gpf and Lpf) or gallons and liters per minute (gpm and L/min) or per cycle (gpc and L/cycle) as determined in accordance with § 305.5.

(b) All data required by § 305.8(a) except serial numbers shall be submitted to the Commission annually, on or before the following dates:

| Product category | Deadline for data submission |
|---|---|
| Refrigerators | Aug. 1 |
| Refrigerator-freezers | Aug. 1 |
| Freezers | Aug. 1 |
| Central air conditioners | July 1 |
| Heat pumps | July 1 |
| Dishwashers | June 1 |
| Water heaters | May 1 |
| Room air conditioners | May 1 |
| Furnaces | May 1 |
| Pool heaters | May 1 |
| Clothes washers | Mar. 1 |
| Fluorescent lamp ballasts | Mar. 1 |
| Showerheads | Mar. 1 |
| Faucets | Mar. 1 |
| Water closets | Mar. 1 |
| Urinals | Mar. 1 |
| Fluorescent lamps | Mar. 1 [Stayed] |
| Medium Base Compact Fluorescent Lamps | Mar. 1 [Stayed] |
| Incandescent Lamps, incl. Reflector Lamps | Mar. 1 [Stayed] |

All revisions to such data (both additions to and deletions from the preceding data) shall be submitted to the Commission as part of the next annual report period.

(c) All information required by paragraph (a) of this section must be submitted for new models prior to any distribution of such model. Models subject to design or retrofit alterations which change the data contained in any annual report shall be reported in the manner required for new models. Models which are discontinued shall be reported in the next annual report.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 28035, July 5, 1989; 59 FR 54965, Oct. 25, 1993; 59 FR 49564, Sept. 28, 1994; 59 FR 67527, Dec. 29, 1994; 60 FR 14210, Mar. 16, 1995]

REPRESENTATIVE AVERAGE UNIT ENERGY COSTS

### § 305.9 Representative average unit energy costs.

(a) Table 1 contains the representative unit energy costs to be utilized for all requirements of this part.

TABLE 1.—REPRESENTATIVE AVERAGE UNIT COSTS OF ENERGY FOR FIVE RESIDENTIAL ENERGY SOURCES (1998)

| Type of energy | In commonly used terms | As required by DOE test procedure | Dollars per million Btu [1] |
|---|---|---|---|
| Electricity ... | 8.42¢/kWh [2 3] ... | $0.0842/kWh .... | $24.68 |
| Natural Gas | 61.9¢/therm [4] or $6.36/MCF [5 6]. | $0.00000619/Btu. | 6.19 |
| No. 2 heating oil. | $.95/gallon [7] ..... | $0.00000685/Btu. | 6.85 |
| Propane ..... | $0.95/gallon [8] ... | $0.00001039/Btu. | 10.39 |
| Kerosene ... | $1.01/gallon [9] ... | $0.00000748/Btu. | 7.48 |

[1] Btu stands for British thermal unit.
[2] kWh stands for kilowatt hour.
[3] 1 kWh=3,412 Btu.
[4] 1 therm=100,000 Btu. Natural gas prices include taxes.
[5] MCF stands for 1,000 cubic feet.
[6] For the purposes of this table, 1 cubic foot of natural gas has an energy equivalence of 1,027 Btu.
[7] For the purposes of this table, 1 gallon of No. 2 heating oil has an energy equivalence of 138,690 Btu.
[8] For the purposes of this table, 1 gallon of liquid propane has an energy equivalence of 91,333 Btu.
[9] For the purposes of this table, 1 gallon of kerosene has an energy equivalence of 135,000 Btu.

(b) Table 1, above, will be revised on the basis of future information provided by the Secretary of the Department of Energy, but not more often than annually.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 59 FR 5700, Feb. 8, 1994; 59 FR 34033, July 1, 1994; 60 FR 9296, Feb. 17, 1995; 61 FR 5680, Feb. 14, 1996; 62 FR 67562, Dec. 29, 1997]

### § 305.10 Ranges of estimated annual energy consumption and energy efficiency ratings.

(a) The range of estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency ratings for each covered product (except fluorescent lamp ballasts, showerheads, faucets, water closets or urinals) shall be taken from the appropriate appendix to this rule in effect at the time the labels are affixed to the product. The Commission shall publish revised ranges annually in the FEDERAL REGISTER, if appropriate, or a statement that the specific prior ranges are still applicable for the new year. Ranges will be changed if the estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency ratings of the products within the range change in a way that would alter the upper or lower estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency rating limits of the range by 15% or more from that previously published. When a range is revised, all information disseminated after 90 days following the publication of the revision shall conform to the revised range. Products that have been labeled prior to the effective date of a modification under this section need not be relabeled.

(b) When the estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency rating of a given model of a covered product falls outside the limits of the current range for that product, which could result from the introduction of a new or changed model, the manufacturer shall

(1) Omit placement of such product on the scale, and

(2) Add one of the two sentences below, as appropriate, in the space just below the scale, as follows:

The estimated annual energy consumption of this model was not available at the time the range was published.

The energy efficiency rating of this model was not available at the time the range was published.

[59 FR 34033, July 1, 1994]

REQUIRED DISCLOSURES

### § 305.11 Labeling for covered products.

(a) *Labels for covered products other than fluorescent lamp ballasts, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, general service incandescent lamps (including incandescent reflector lamps), showerheads, faucets, water closets and urinals*—(1) *Layout.* All energy labels for each category of covered product shall use one size, similar colors and typefaces with consistent positioning of headline, copy and charts to maintain uniformity for immediate consumer recognition and readability. Trim size dimensions for all labels shall be as follows: width must be between 5¼ inches and 5½ inches (13.34 cm. and 13.97 cm.); length must be 7⅜ inches (18.73 cm.). Copy is to be set between 27 picas and 29 picas and copy page should be centered (right

to left and top to bottom). Depth is variable but should follow closely the prototype labels appearing at the end of this part illustrating the basis layout. All positioning, spacing, type sizes and line widths should be similar to and consistent with the prototype labels.

(2) *Type style and setting.* The Helvetica Condensed series typeface or equivalent shall be used exclusively on the label. Specific sizes and faces to be used are indicated on the prototype labels. No hyphenation should be used in setting headline or copy text. Positioning and spacing should follow the prototypes closely. Generally, text must be set flush left with two points leading except where otherwise indicated. Helvetica Condensed Regular shall be used for all copy except the large number indicating the estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency rating, which shall be in Helvetica Condensed Black, and all other numerals and letters used in immediate connection with the Energy Efficiency Scale, which shall be in Helvetica Condensed Bold. See the prototype labels for specific directions.

(3) *Colors.* The basic colors of all labels shall be process yellow or equivalent and process black. The label shall be printed full bleed process yellow. All type and graphics shall be print process black.

(4) *Paper stock*—(i) *Adhesive labels.* All adhesive labels should be applied so they can be easily removed without the use of tools or liquids, other than water, but should be applied with an adhesive with an adhesion capacity sufficient to prevent their dislodgment during normal handling throughout the chain of distribution to the retailer or consumer. The paper stock for pressure-sensitive or other adhesive labels shall have a basic weight of not less than 58 pounds per 500 sheets (25″ × 38″) or equivalent, exclusive of the release liner and adhesive. A minimum peel adhesion capacity for the adhesive of 12 ounces per square inch is suggested, but not required if the adhesive can otherwise meet the above standard. The pressure-sensitive adhesive shall be applied in no fewer than two strips not less than 0.5 inches (1.27 cm.) wide. The strips shall be within 0.25 inches (.64 cm.) of the opposite edges of the label. For a ''flap-tag'' label, the pressure-sensitive adhesive shall be applied in one strip not less that 0.5 inches (1.27 cm.) wide. The strip shall be within 0.25 inches (.64 cm.) of the top edge of the label.

(ii) *Hang tags.* The paper stock for hang tags shall have a basic weight of not less than 110 pounds per 500 sheets (25½″ × 30½″ index). When materials are used to attach the hang tags to appliance products, the materials shall be of sufficient strength to insure that if gradual pressure is applied to the hang tag by pulling it away from where it is affixed to the product, the hang tag will tear before the material used to affix the hang tag to the product breaks.

(5) *Contents*—(i) *Labels for refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, dishwashers, clothes washers, water heaters and room air conditioners.* (A) Headlines and texts, as illustrated in Figures 1 and 2, are standard for all labels.

(B) Name of manufacturer or private labeler shall, in the case of a corporation, be deemed to be satisfied only by the actual corporate name, which may be preceded or followed by the name of the particular division of the corporation. In the case of an individual, partnership, or association, the name under which the business is conducted shall be used. Inclusion of the name of the manufacturer or private labeler is optional at the discretion of the manufacturer or private labeler.

(C) Model number(s) will be the designation given by the manufacturer or private labeler.

(D) Capacity or size is that determined in accordance with § 305.7.

(E) Estimated annual energy consumption for refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, clothes washers, dishwashers and water heaters and energy efficiency ratings for room air conditioners are as determined in accordance with § 305.5.

(F) Ranges of comparability and of estimated annual energy consumption and energy efficiency ratings, as applicable, are found in the appropriate appendices accompanying this part.

(G) Placement of the labeled product on the scale shall be proportionate to

the lowest and highest estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency ratings forming the scale.

(H) Labels must contain a statement disclosing the product's estimated annual operating cost derived using the DOE National Average Representative Unit Cost for the appropriate fuel that was current when the label was printed. The statement must disclose the specific cost per unit for the fuel and the year DOE published it.

(*1*) For refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, and water heaters, the statement will read as follows (fill in the blanks with the appropriate appliance name, the operating cost, the year, and the energy cost figures):

[Refrigerators, or Freezers, or Water Heaters] using more energy cost more to operate.

This model's estimated yearly operating cost is: [Cost figure will be boxed] Based on a [Year] U.S. Government national average cost of $_____ per [kWh, therm, or gallon] for [electricity, natural gas, propane, or oil]. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

(*2*) For clothes washers and dishwashers, the statement will read as follows (fill in the blanks with the appropriate appliance name, the operating cost, the number of loads per week, the year, and the energy cost figures):

[Clothes Washers, or Dishwashers] using more energy cost more to operate.

This model's estimated yearly operating cost is: [Electric cost figure will be boxed] when used with an electric water heater [Gas cost figure will be boxed] when used with a natural gas water heater.

Based on [6 washloads a week for dishwashers, or 8 washloads a week for clothes washers], a [Year] U.S. Government national average cost of $_____ per kWh for electricity, and $_____ per therm for natural gas. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

(*3*) For room air conditioners, the statement will read as follows (fill in the blanks with the appropriate operating cost, the year, and the energy cost figures):

More efficient air conditioners cost less to operate.

This model's estimated yearly operating cost is: [Cost figure will be boxed] Based on a [Year] U.S. Government national average cost of $_____ per kWh for electricity. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

(I) The following statement shall appear at the bottom of the label:

''IMPORTANT

REMOVAL OF THIS LABEL BEFORE CONSUMER PURCHASE IS A VIOLATION OF FEDERAL LAW (42 U.S.C. 6302).''

(J) A statement that the estimated annual energy consumption and energy efficiency ratings, as applicable, are based on U.S. Government standard tests is required on all labels, as indicated in the prototype labels.

(K) No marks or information other than that specified in this part shall appear on or directly adjoining this label, except a part or publication number identification may be included on this label, as desired by the manufacturer, and the energy use disclosure labels required by the governments of Canada or Mexico may appear directly adjoining this label, as desired by the manufacturer. If a manufacturer elects to use a part or publication number, it must appear in the lower right-hand corner of the label and be set in 6-point type or smaller.

(ii) *Labels for furnaces and pool heaters.* (A) The headline, as illustrated in Figure 3, is standard for all labels.

(B) Name of manufacturer or private labeler shall, in the case of a corporation, be deemed to be satisfied only by the actual corporate name, which may be preceded or followed by the name of the particular division of the corporation. In the case of an individual, partnership, or association, the name under which the business is conducted shall be used. Inclusion of the name of the manufacturer or private labeler is optional at the discretion of the manufacturer or private labeler.

(C) The annual fuel utilization efficiency for furnaces and the thermal efficiency for pool heaters are determined in accordance with § 305.5.

(D) Each furnace and pool heater label shall contain a generic range consisting of the lowest and highest annual fuel utilization efficiencies (for furnaces) or thermal efficiencies (for pool heaters) for all furnaces or pool heaters that utilize the same energy source.

(E) Placement of the labeled product on the scale shall be proportionate to the lowest and highest annual fuel utilization efficiency ratings or thermal efficiency ratings forming the scale.

(F) The following statement shall appear on furnace labels beneath the range(s) in bold print:

Federal law requires the seller or installer of this appliance to make available a fact sheet or directory giving further information regarding the efficiency and operating cost of this equipment. Ask for this information.

(G) A statement that the annual fuel utilization efficiency ratings or thermal efficiency ratings are based on U.S. Government standard tests is required on all labels.

(H) The following statement shall appear at the bottom of the label:

IMPORTANT: REMOVAL OF THIS LABEL BEFORE CONSUMER PURCHASE IS A VIOLATION OF FEDERAL LAW (42 U.S.C. 6302).

(I) No marks or information other than that specified in this part shall appear on or directly adjoining this label, except a part or publication number identification may be included on this label, as desired by the manufacturer, and the energy use disclosure labels required by the governments of Canada or Mexico may appear directly adjoining this label, as desired by the manufacturer. If a manufacturer elects to use a part or publication number, it must appear in the lower right-hand corner of the label and be set in 6-point type or smaller.

(J) Manufacturers of boilers that are shipped without jackets must label their products with hang-tags that also have adhesive backing on them that complies with the specifications contained in § 305.11(a)(4).

(K) Manufacturers of boilers shipped with more than one input nozzle to be installed in the field must label such boilers with the AFUE of the system when it is set up with the nozzle that results in the lowest annual fuel utilization efficiency rating.

(L) Manufacturers that ship out boilers that may be set up as either steam or hot water units must label the boilers with the AFUE rating derived by conducting the required test on the boiler as a hot water unit.

(iii) *Labels for central air conditioners.* (A) The headline, as illustrated in Figures 4, 5 and 6, is standard for all labels.

(B) Name of manufacturer or private labeler shall, in the case of a corporation, be deemed to be satisfied only by the actual corporate name, which may be preceded or followed by the name of the particular division of the corporation. In the case of an individual, partnership, or association, the name under which the business is conducted shall be used. Inclusion of the name of the manufacturer or private labeler is optional at the discretion of the manufacturer or private labeler.

(C) The seasonal energy efficiency ratio for the cooling function of central air conditioners is determined in accordance with § 305.5. For the heating function, the heating seasonal performance factor shall be calculated for heating Region IV for the standardized design heating requirement nearest the capacity measured in the High Temperature Test in accordance with § 305.5. In addition, the energy efficiency rating(s) for split system condenser-evaporator coil combinations shall be either:

(*1*) The energy efficiency rating of the condenser-evaporator coil combination that is the particular manufacturer's most commonly sold combination for that condenser model; or

(*2*) The energy efficiency rating of the actual condenser-evaporator coil combination comprising the system to which the label is to be attached.

(D)(*1*) Each cooling only central air conditioner label shall contain a generic range consisting of the lowest and highest seasonal energy efficiency ratios for all cooling only central air conditioners.

(*2*) Each heat pump label, except as noted in paragraph (a)(5)(iii)(D)(*3*) of this section, shall contain two generic ranges. The first range shall consist of the lowest and highest seasonal energy efficiency ratios for the cooling side of all heat pumps. The second range shall consist of the lowest and highest heating seasonal performance factors for the heating side of all heat pumps.

(*3*) Each heating only heat pump label shall contain a generic range consisting of the lowest and highest heating seasonal performance factors for all heating only heat pumps.

(E) Placement of the labeled product on the scale shall be proportionate to the lowest and highest efficiency ratings forming the scale.

(F) The following statement shall appear on the label beneath the range(s) in bold print:

Federal law requires the seller or installer of this appliance to make available a fact sheet or directory giving further information regarding the efficiency and operating cost of this equipment. Ask for this information.

(G) A statement that the efficiency ratings are based on U.S. Government standard tests is required on all labels.

In addition, all labels disclosing energy efficiency ratings for the ''most common'' condenser-evaporator coil combinations must contain one of the following three statements:

(*1*) For labels disclosing the seasonal energy efficiency ratio for cooling, the statement should read:

This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating may vary slightly with different coils.

(*2*) For labels disclosing both the seasonal energy efficiency ratio for cooling and the heating seasonal performance factor for heating, the statement should read:

This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating will vary slightly with different coils and in different geographic regions.

(*3*) For labels disclosing the heating seasonal performance factor for heating, the statement should read:

This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating will vary slightly with different coils and in different geographic regions.

Central air conditioner labels disclosing the efficiency ratings for specific condenser/coil combinations do not have to contain any of the above three statements. They must contain only the general disclosure that the energy costs and efficiency ratings are based on U.S. Government tests.

(H) The following statement shall appear at the bottom of the label:

''IMPORTANT
REMOVAL OF THIS LABEL BEFORE CONSUMER PURCHASE IS A VIOLATION OF FEDERAL LAW (42 U.S.C. 6302).''

(*1*) No marks or information other than that specified in this part shall appear on or directly adjoining this label, except a part or publication number identification may be included on this label, as desired by the manufacturer, and the energy use disclosure labels required by the governments of Canada or Mexico may appear directly adjoining this label, as desired by the manufacturer. If a manufacturer elects to use a part or publication number, it must appear in the lower right-hand corner of the label and be set in 6-point type or smaller.

(6) *Placement.* Manufacturers shall affix a label to the exterior surface on covered products in such a position that it can easily be read while standing in front of the product as it is displayed for sale. The label should be generally located on the upper-right-front corner of the product, except that for low-standing products or products with configurations that make application in that location impractical, some other prominent location may be used. The top of the label should not exceed 74 inches from the base of taller products. The label in the form of a ''flap tag'' shall be adhered to the top of the appliance and bent (folded at 90°) to hang over the front, if this can be done with assurance that it will be readily visible. Labels for split system central air conditioners shall be affixed to the condensing unit.

(7) *Use of hang tags.* Information prescribed above for labels may be displayed in the form of a hang tag, which may be used in place of an affixed label. If a hang tag is used, it shall be affixed in such a position that it will be prominent to a consumer examining the product.

(b) *Fact sheets*—(1) *Distribution.* (i) Except as provided in Subsection c, manufacturers and private labelers must give distributors and retailers, including assemblers, fact sheets for the furnaces and central air conditioners they

sell to them. Distributors must give the fact sheets to the retailers, including assemblers, they supply. Each fact sheet must contain the information listed in § 305.11(b)(3).

(ii) Retailers, including assemblers, who sell furnaces or central air conditioners to consumers must have fact sheets for the furnaces and central air conditioners they sell. They must make the fact sheets available to their customers. The fact sheets may be made available to customers in any manner, as long as customers are likely to notice them. For example, they can be available in a display, where customers can take copies of them. They can be kept in a binder at a counter or service desk, with a sign telling customers where the fact sheets are. Retailers, including assemblers, who negotiate or make sales at a place other than their regular places of business must show the fact sheets to their customers and let them read the fact sheets before they agree to purchase the product.

(2) *Format.* All information required to be contained in fact sheets must be disclosed clearly and conspicuously.

(3) *Contents.* (i) ''Energy Guide'' headline is standard for all fact sheets, as for labels.

(ii) Name of manufacturer or private labeler shall, in the case of a corporation, be deemed to be satisfied only by the actual corporate name, which may be preceded or followed by the name of the particular division of the corporation. In the case of an individual, partnership, or association, the name under which the business is conducted shall be used.

(iii) Model number(s) will be the designation given by the manufacturer or private labeler.

(iv) Capacity or size is that determined in accordance with § 305.7.

(v) Energy efficiency rating is that determined in accordance with § 305.5.

(vi) Ranges of comparability and of energy efficiency ratings are found in section 1 of the appropriate appendices accompanying this part.

(vii) Placement of the labeled product on the scale shall be proportionate to energy efficiency ratings of the lowest and highest efficiency ratings forming the scale.

(viii) Yearly cost information text and tables are found in section 2 of Appendices G, H and I accompanying this part. Cost figures are to be determined in accordance with § 305.5 using the unit energy costs found in table 1 of § 305.9.

(ix) A statement that the energy costs and energy efficiency ratings are based on U.S. Government standard tests is required in all fact sheets.

(x) For central air conditioner fact sheets disclosing efficiency ratings for the ''most common'' condenser-evaporator coil combinations, the statement should be made in one of the following three ways:

(A) For fact sheets disclosing the seasonal energy efficiency ratio for cooling, the statement should read:

This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating may vary slightly with different coils.

(B) For fact sheets disclosing both the seasonal energy efficiency ratio for cooling and the heating seasonal performance factor for heating, the statement should read:

This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating will vary slightly with different coils and in different geographic regions.

(C) For fact sheets disclosing the heating seasonal performance factor for heating, the statement should read:

This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating will vary slightly with different coils and in different geographic regions.

(xi) Central air conditioner fact sheets disclosing the efficiency ratings for specific condenser/coil combinations do not have to contain any of the above three statements. Instead, they must contain a general disclosure that the energy costs and efficiency ratings are based on U.S. Government tests.

(c) Manufacturers of furnaces and central air conditioners may elect to disseminate information regarding the efficiencies and costs of operation of their products by means of a directory or similar publication, rather than on fact sheets, provided the publication meets the following criteria:

(1) *Distribution*. (i) It must be distributed to substantially all retailers and assemblers of central air conditioners and furnaces selling or assembling models listed in the directory.

(ii) It must be made available at cost to all other interested parties.

(2) *Format*. All required information must be disclosed clearly and conspicuously.

(3) *Contents*. (i) Model number(s) will be the designation given by the manufacturer or private labeler.

(ii) Capacity or size is that determined in accordance with § 305.7.

(iii) Efficiency rating is that determined in accordance with § 305.5.

(iv) Cost disclosures must be substantially equivalent to those required on fact sheets.

(v) A statement that the energy costs and efficiency ratings are based on U.S. Government standard tests.

(vi) Ranges of comparability and of energy efficiency ratings are found in section 1 of the appropriate appendices accompanying this part.

(d) *Fluorescent Lamp Ballasts and Luminaires*—(1) *Contents*. Fluorescent lamp ballasts that are ''covered products,'' as defined in § 305.2(o), and to which standards are applicable under section 325 of the Act, shall be marked conspicuously, in color-contrasting ink, with a capital letter ''E'' printed within a circle. Packaging for such fluorescent lamp ballasts, as well as packaging for luminaires into which they are incorporated, shall also be marked conspicuously with a capital letter ''E'' printed within a circle. For purposes of this section, the encircled capital letter ''E'' will be deemed ''conspicuous,'' in terms of size, if it is as large as either the manufacturer's name or another logo, such as the ''UL,'' ''CBM'' or ''ETL'' logos, whichever is larger, that appears on the fluorescent lamp ballast, the packaging for such ballast or the packaging for the luminaire into which the covered ballast is incorporated, whichever is applicable for purpose of labeling.

(2) *Product Labeling*. The encircled capital letter ''E'' on fluorescent lamp ballasts must appear conspicuously, in color-contrasting ink, (i.e., in a color that contrasts with the background on which the encircled capital letter ''E'' is placed) on the surface that is normally labeled. It may be printed on the label that normally appears on the fluorescent lamp ballast, printed on a separate label, or stamped indelibly on the surface of the fluorescent lamp ballast.

(3) *Package Labeling*. For purposes of labeling under this section, packaging for such fluorescent lamp ballasts and the luminaires into which they are incorporated consists of the plastic sheeting, or ''shrink-wrap,'' covering pallet loads of fluorescent lamp ballasts or luminaires as well as any containers in which such fluorescent lamp ballasts or the luminaires into which they are incorporated are marketed individually or in small numbers. The encircled capital letter ''E'' on packages containing fluorescent lamp ballasts or the luminaires into which they are incorporated must appear conspicuously, in color-contrasting ink, on the surface of the package on which printing or a label normally appears. If the package contains printing on more than one surface, the label must appear on the surface on which the product inside the package is described. The encircled capital letter ''E'' may be printed on the surface of the package, printed on a label containing other information, printed on a separate label, or indelibly stamped on the surface of the package. In the case of pallet loads containing fluorescent lamp ballasts or the luminaires into which they are incorporated, the encircled capital letter ''E'' must appear conspicuously, in color-contrasting ink, on the plastic sheeting, unless clear plastic sheeting is used and the encircled capital letter ''E'' is legible underneath this packaging. The encircled capital letter ''E'' must also appear conspicuously on any documentation that would normally accompany such a pallet load. The encircled capital letter ''E'' may appear on a label affixed to the sheeting or may be indelibly stamped on the sheeting. It may be printed on the documentation, printed on a separate label that is affixed to the documentation or indelibly stamped on the documentation.

(e) *Lamps*—(1)(i) Any covered product that is a compact fluorescent lamp or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector

lamp) shall be labeled clearly and conspicuously on the product's principal display panel with the following information:

(A) The number of lamps included in the package, if more than one;

(B) The design voltage of each lamp included in the package, if other than 120 volts;

(C) The light output of each lamp included in the package, expressed in average initial lumens;

(D) The electrical power consumed (energy used) by each lamp included in the package, expressed in average initial wattage;

(E) The life of each lamp included in the package, expressed in hours.

(ii) The light output, energy usage and life ratings of any covered product that is a medium base compact fluorescent lamp or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), shall appear in that order and with equal clarity and conspicuousness on the product's principal display panel. The light output, energy usage and life ratings shall be disclosed in terms of ''lumens,'' ''watts'' and ''hours'' respectively, with the lumens, watts and hours rating numbers each appearing in the same type style and size and with the words ''lumens,'' ''watts'' and ''hours'' each appearing in the same type style and size. The words ''light output,'' ''energy used'' and ''life'' shall precede and have the same conspicuousness as both the rating numbers and the words ''lumens,'' ''watts'' and ''hours,'' except that the letters of the words ''lumens,'' ''watts'' and ''hours'' shall be approximately 50% of the sizes of those used for the words ''light output,'' ''energy used'' and ''life'' respectively.

(iii) The light output, energy usage and life ratings of any covered product that is a medium base compact fluorescent lamp or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), shall be measured at 120 volts, regardless of the lamp's design voltage. If a lamp's design voltage is 125 volts or 130 volts, the disclosures of the wattage, light output and life ratings shall in each instance be:

(A) At 120 volts and followed by the phrase ''at 120 volts.'' In such case, the labels for such lamps also may disclose the lamp's wattage, light output and life at the design voltage (e.g., ''Light Output 1710 Lumens at 125 volts''); or

(B) At the design voltage and followed by the phrase ''at (125 volts/130 volts)'' if the ratings at 120 volts are disclosed clearly and conspicuously on another panel of the package, and if all panels of the package that contain a claimed light output, wattage or life clearly and conspicuously identify the lamp as ''(125 volt/130 volt),'' and if the principal display panel clearly and conspicuously discloses the following statement:

> This product is designed for (125/130) volts. When used on the normal line voltage of 120 volts, the light output and energy efficiency are noticeably reduced. See (side/back) panel for 120 volt ratings.

(iv) For any covered product that is an incandescent reflector lamp, the required disclosure of light output shall be given for the lamp's total forward lumens.

(v) For any covered product that is a compact fluorescent lamp, the required light output disclosure shall be measured at a base-up position; but, if the manufacturer or private labeler has reason to believe that the light output at a base-down position would be more than 5% different, the label also shall disclose the light output at the base-down position or, if no test data for the base-down position exist, the fact that at a base-down position the light output might be more than 5% less.

(vi) For any covered product that is a compact fluorescent lamp or a general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), there shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed on the principal display panel the following statement:

> To save energy costs, find the bulbs with the (beam spread and) light output you need, then choose the one with the lowest watts.''

(vii) For any covered product that is a general service incandescent lamp and operates with multiple filaments, the principal display panel shall disclose clearly and conspicuously, in the manner required by paragraph (e)(1)(i)–(iii) and (vi) of this section, the lamp's wattage and light output at each of the lamp's levels of light output and the

lamp's life measured on the basis of the filament that fails first.

(2) Any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp or an incandescent reflector lamp shall be labeled clearly and conspicuously with a capital letter ''E'' printed within a circle and followed by an asterisk. The label shall also clearly and conspicuously disclose, either in close proximity to that asterisk or elsewhere on the label, the following statement:

*[The encircled ''E''] means this bulb meets Federal minimum efficiency standards.

If the statement is not disclosed on the principal display panel, the asterisk shall be followed by the following statement:

*See [Back, Top, Side] panel for details.

(i) For purposes of this section of the Rule, the encircled capital letter ''E'' shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed in color-contrasting ink on the label of any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp and will be deemed ''conspicuous,'' in terms of size, if it appears in typeface at least as large as either the manufacturer's name or logo or another logo disclosed on the label, such as the ''UL'' or ''ETL'' logos, whichever is larger.

(ii) Instead of labeling any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp with the encircled ''E'' and with the statement described in paragraph (e)(2) of this section of the Rule, a manufacturer or private labeler who would not otherwise put a label on such a lamp may meet the disclosure requirements of that paragraph by permanently marking the lamp clearly and conspicuously with the encircled ''E.''

(3) Any manufacturer or private labeler who makes any representation on a label of any covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp, medium base compact fluorescent lamp, or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), regarding the cost of operation of such lamp shall clearly and conspicuously disclose in close proximity to such representation the assumptions upon which it is based, including, e.g., purchase price, unit cost of electricity, hours of use, patterns of use.

(4) Any cartons in which any covered products that are general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, or general service incandescent lamps (including incandescent reflector lamps), are shipped within the United States or imported into the United States shall disclose clearly and conspicuously the following statement:

These lamps comply with Federal energy efficiency labeling requirements.

(f) *Plumbing Fixtures*—(1) *Showerheads and Faucets.* Showerheads and faucets shall be marked and labeled as follows:

(i) Each showerhead and flow restricting or controlling spout end device shall bear a permanent legible marking indicating the flow rate, expressed in gallons per minute (gpm) or gallons per cycle (gpc), and the flow rate value shall be the actual flow rate or the maximum flow rate specified by the standards established in subsection (j) of section 325 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295(j). Except where impractical due to the size of the fitting, each flow rate disclosure shall also be given in liters per minute (L/min) or liters per cycle (L/cycle). For purposes of this section, the marking indicating the flow rate will be deemed ''legible,'' in terms of placement, if it is located in close proximity to the manufacturer's identification marking.

(ii) Each showerhead and faucet shall bear a permanent legible marking to identify the manufacturer. This marking shall be the trade name, trademark, or other mark known to identify the manufacturer. Such marking shall be located where it can be seen after installation.

(iii) Each showerhead and faucet shall be marked ''A112.18.1M'' to demonstrate compliance with the applicable ASME standard. The marking shall be by means of either a permanent mark on the product, a label on the product, or a tag attached to the product.

(iv) The package for each showerhead and faucet shall disclose the manufacturer's name and the model number.

(v) The package or any label attached to the package for each showerhead or faucet shall contain at least the following: ''A112.18.1M'' and the flow rate expressed in gallons per minute (gpm) or

gallons per cycle (gpc), and the flow rate value shall be the actual flow rate or the maximum flow rate specified by the standards established in subsection (j) of section 325 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295(j). Each flow rate disclosure shall also be given in liters per minute (L/min) or liters per cycle (L/cycle).

(2) *Water Closets and Urinals.* Water closets and urinals shall be marked and labeled as follows:

(i) Each such fixture (and flushometer valve associated with such fixture) shall bear a permanent legible marking indicating the flow rate, expressed in gallons per flush (gpf), and the water use value shall be the actual water use or the maximum water use specified by the standards established in subsection (k) of section 325 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295(k). Except where impractical due to the size of the fixture, each flow rate disclosure shall also be given in liters per flush (Lpf). For purposes of this section, the marking indicating the flow rate will be deemed ''legible,'' in terms of placement, if it is located in close proximity to the manufacturer's identification marking.

(ii) Each water closet (and each component of the water closet if the fixture is comprised of two or more components) and urinal shall be marked with the manufacturer's name or trademark or, in the case of private labeling, the name or registered trademark of the customer for whom the unit was manufactured. This mark shall be legible, readily identified, and applied so as to be permanent. The mark shall be located so as to be visible after the fixture is installed, except for fixtures built into or for a counter or cabinet.

(iii) Each water closet (and each component of the water closet if the fixture is comprised of two or more components) and urinal shall be marked at a location determined by the manufacturer with the designation ''ASME A112.19.2M'' to signify compliance with the applicable standard. This mark need not be permanent, but shall be visible after installation.

(iv) The package, and any labeling attached to the package, for each water closet and urinal shall disclose the flow rate, expressed in gallons per flush (gpf), and the water use value shall be the actual water use or the maximum water use specified by the standards established in subsection (k) of section 325 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295(k). Each flow rate disclosure shall also be given in liters per flush (Lpf).

(v) With respect to any gravity tank-type white 2-piece toilet offered for sale or sold before January 1, 1997, which has a water use greater than 1.6 gallons per flush (gpf), any printed matter distributed or displayed in connection with such product (including packaging and point-of-sale material, catalog material, and print advertising) shall include, in a conspicuous manner, the words ''For Commercial Use Only.''

(3) *Annual Operating Cost Claims for Covered Plumbing Products.* Until such time as the Commission has prescribed a format and manner of display for labels conveying estimated annual operating costs of covered showerheads, faucets, water closets, and urinals or ranges of estimated annual operating costs for the types or classes of such plumbing products, the Act prohibits manufacturers from making such representations on the labels of such covered products. 42 U.S.C. 6294(c)(8). If, before the Commission has prescribed such a format and manner of display for labels of such products, a manufacturer elects to provide for any such product a label conveying such a claim, it shall submit the proposed claim to the Commission so that a format and manner of display for a label may be prescribed.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 28035, July 5, 1989; 59 FR 54965, Oct. 25, 1993; 59 FR 34033–34035, July 1, 1994; 59 FR 49564, Sept. 28, 1994; 59 FR 67528, Dec. 29, 1994; 60 FR 14210, Mar. 16, 1995; 60 FR 31081, June 13, 1995; 61 FR 33653, June 28, 1996]

### §305.12 Additional information relating to energy consumption.

Additional information relating to energy consumption which must be included on labels, separately attached to the product, or shipped with the product will be published as a separate section 3 of the appendices accompanying this part. No additional information will be required without public notice and an opportunity for written comments.

**§ 305.13 Promotional material displayed or distributed at point of sale.**

(a)(1) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer or private labeler who prepares printed material for display or distribution at point of sale concerning a covered product (except fluorescent lamp ballasts, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, or general service incandescent lamps including incandescent reflector lamps, showerheads, faucets, water closets or urinals) shall clearly and conspicuously include in such printed material the following required disclosure:

Before purchasing this appliance, read important information about its estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency rating that is available from your retailer.

(2) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer or private labeler who prepares printed material for display or distribution at point of sale concerning a covered product that is a fluorescent lamp ballast to which standards are applicable under section 325 of the Act, shall disclose conspicuously in such printed material, in each description of such fluorescent lamp ballast, an encircled capital letter ''E''.

(3) Any manufacturer, distributer, retailer, or private labeler who prepares printed material for display or distribution at point of sale concerning a covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp, medium base compact fluorescent lamp, or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), and who makes any representation in such promotional material regarding the cost of operation of such lamp shall clearly and conspicuously disclose in close proximity to such representation the assumptions upon which it is based, including, e.g., purchase price, unit cost of electricity, hours of use, and patterns of use.

(4) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler who prepares printed material for display or distribution at point-of-sale concerning a covered product that is a showerhead, faucet, water closet, or urinal shall clearly and conspicuously include in such printed material the product's water use, expressed in gallons and liters per minute (gpm and L/min) or per cycle (gpc and L/cycle) or gallons and liters per flush (gpf and Lpf) as specified in § 305.11(f).

(b) This section shall not apply to:

(1) Written warranties.

(2) Use and care manuals, installation instructions, or other printed material containing primarily post-purchase information for the purchaser.

(3) Printed material containing only the identification of a covered product, pricing information and/or non-energy related representations concerning that product.

(4) Any printed material distributed prior to the effective date listed in § 305.4(e).

[59 FR 34036, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 67530, Dec. 29, 1994; 60 FR 14211, Mar. 16, 1995]

**§ 305.14 Catalogs.**

(a) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler who advertises in a catalog a covered product (except fluorescent lamp ballasts, general service fluorescent lamps, medium base compact fluorescent lamps, general service incandescent lamps including incandescent reflector lamps, showerheads, faucets, water closets or urinals) shall include in such catalog, on each page that lists the covered product, the following information required to be disclosed on the label:

(1) The capacity of the model.

(2) The estimated annual energy consumption for refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, freezers, clothes washers, dishwashers and water heaters.

(3) The energy efficiency rating for room air conditioners, central air conditioners, furnaces, and pool heaters.

(4) The range of estimated annual energy consumption or energy efficiency ratings, which shall be those that are current at the closing date for printing or the printing deadline of the catalog.

(b) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler who advertises fluorescent lamp ballasts that are ''covered products,'' as defined in § 305.2(o), and to which standards are applicable under section 325 of the Act, in a catalog, from which they may be purchased by cash, charge account or

credit terms, shall disclose conspicuously in such catalog, in each description of such fluorescent lamp ballasts, a capital letter ''E'' printed within a circle.

(c)(1) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler who advertises in a catalog a covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp, medium base compact fluorescent lamp, or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), shall disclose clearly and conspicuously in such catalog:

(i) On each page listing any covered product that is a compact fluorescent lamp or a general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), all the information concerning that lamp, except for the number of units in the package, required by §305.11(e)(1) of this part to be disclosed on the lamp's label; *provided, however,* that, for a catalog not distributed to consumers for making purchases for personal use or consumption by individuals, the disclosures need not comply with the format provisions of §305.11 (e)(1)(ii) of this part, but must be clear and conspicuous; and

(ii) On each page listing a covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp or an incandescent reflector lamp, all the information required by §305.11(e)(2) of this part to be disclosed on the lamp's label according to the following format:

(A) The encircled ''E'' shall appear with each lamp entry; and

(B) The accompanying statement shall appear at least once on the page.

(2) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler who advertises a covered product that is a general service fluorescent lamp, medium base compact fluorescent lamp, or general service incandescent lamp (including an incandescent reflector lamp), in a catalog who makes any representation in such catalog regarding the cost of operation of such lamp shall clearly and conspicuously disclose in close proximity to such representation the assumptions upon which it is based, including, e.g., purchase price, unit cost of electricity, hours of use, patterns of use.

(d) Any manufacturer, distributor, retailer, or private labeler who advertises a covered product that is a showerhead, faucet, water closet, or urinal in a catalog, from which it may be purchased, shall include in such catalog, on each page that lists the covered product, the product's water use, expressed in gallons and liters per minute (gpm and L/min) or per cycle (gpc and L/cycle) or gallons and liters per flush (gpf and Lpf) as specified in §305.11(f).

[59 FR 34036, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 49564, Sept. 28, 1994; 59 FR 67530, Dec. 29, 1994; 60 FR 14211, Mar. 16, 1995]

ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

### §305.15 Test data records.

(a) Test data shall be kept on file by the manufacturer of a covered product for a period of two years after production of that model has been terminated.

(b) Upon notification by the Commission or its designated representative, a manufacturer or private labeler shall provide, within 30 days of the date of such request, the underlying test data from which the water use or energy consumption rate, the energy efficiency rating, the estimated annual cost of using each basic model, or the light output, energy usage and life ratings and, for fluorescent lamps, the color rendering index, for each basic model or lamp type were derived.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987, as amended at 59 FR 67530, Dec. 29, 1994]

### §305.16 Required testing by designated laboratory.

Upon notification by the Commission or its designated representative, a manufacturer of a covered product shall supply, at the manufacturer's expense, no more than two of each model of each product to a laboratory, which will be identified by the Commission or its designated representative in the notice, for the purpose of ascertaining whether the estimated annual energy consumption, the estimated annual operating cost, or the energy efficiency rating, or the light output, energy usage and life ratings or, for general service fluorescent lamps, the color rendering index, disclosed on the label or fact sheet or in an industry directory, or, as required in a catalog, or

the representation made by the label that the product is in compliance with applicable standards in section 325 of the Act, 42 U.S.C. 6295, is accurate. Such a procedure will only be followed after the Commission or its staff has examined the underlying test data provided by the manufacturer as required by § 305.15(b) and after the manufacturer has been afforded the opportunity to reverify test results from which the estimated annual energy consumption, the estimated annual operating cost, or the energy efficiency rating for each basic model was derived, or the light output, energy usage and life ratings or, for general service fluorescent lamps, the color rendering index, for each basic model or lamp type was derived. A representative designated by the Commission shall be permitted to observe any reverification procedures required by this part, and to inspect the results of such reverification. The Commission will pay the charges for testing by designated laboratories.

[59 FR 67530, Dec. 29, 1994]

EFFECT OF THIS PART

### § 305.17 Effect on other law.

This regulation supersedes any State regulation to the extent required by section 327 of the Act. Pursuant to the Act, all State regulations that require the disclosure for any covered product of information with respect to energy consumption, other than the information required to be disclosed in accordance with this part, are superseded.

### § 305.18 Stayed or invalid parts.

If any section or portion of a section of this part is stayed or held invalid, the remainder of the part will not be affected.

[52 FR 46894, Dec. 10, 1987. Redesignated at 59 FR 34036, July 1, 1994]

APPENDIX A1 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATORS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST

[Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume in cubic feet | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| Less than 2.5 | 327 | 331 |
| 2.5 to 4.4 | 331 | 369 |
| 4.5 to 6.4 | 331 | 457 |
| 6.5 to 8.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 8.5 to 10.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 10.5 to 12.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 12.5 to 14.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 14.5 to 16.4 | 588 | 588 |
| 16.5 and over | 438 | 668 |

*No data submitted for units meeting Federal Maximum Energy Use Standards effective January 1, 1993.

[60 FR 56947, Nov. 13, 1995]

APPENDIX A2 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATORS AND REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH MANUAL DEFROST

[Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume in cubic feet | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| Less than 2.5 | 285 | 321 |
| 2.5 to 4.4 | 270 | 351 |
| 4.5 to 6.4 | 270 | 381 |
| 6.5 to 8.4 | 378 | 407 |
| 8.5 to 10.4 | 376 | 431 |
| 10.5 to 12.4 | 433 | 457 |
| 12.5 to 14.4 | 496 | 496 |
| 14.5 to 16.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 16.5 to 18.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 18.5 to 20.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 20.5 to 22.4 | (*) | (*) |

[Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume in cubic feet | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| 22.5 to 24.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 24.5 to 26.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 26.5 to 28.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 28.5 and over | (*) | (*) |

*No data submitted for units meeting Federal Maximum Energy Use Standards effective January 1, 1993.

[60 FR 56947, Nov. 13, 1995]

## APPENDIX A3 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH PARTIAL AUTOMATIC DEFROST

[Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume in cubic feet | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| Less than 10.5 | 419 | 489 |
| 10.5 to 12.4 | 454 | 522 |
| 12.5 to 14.4 | 562 | 562 |
| 14.5 to 16.4 | 573 | 573 |
| 16.5 to 18.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 18.5 to 20.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 20.5 to 22.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 22.5 to 24.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 24.5 to 26.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 26.5 to 28.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 28.5 and over | (*) | (*) |

*No data submitted for units meeting Federal Maximum Energy Use Standards effective January 1, 1993.

[60 FR 56947, Nov. 13, 1995]

## APPENDIX A4 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH TOP-MOUNTED FREEZER WITHOUT THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE

[Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume in cubic feet | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| Less than 10.5 | 511 | 741 |
| 10.5 to 12.4 | 525 | 572 |
| 12.5 to 14.4 | 496 | 624 |
| 14.5 to 16.4 | 514 | 653 |
| 16.5 to 18.4 | 518 | 697 |
| 18.5 to 20.4 | 533 | 732 |
| 20.5 to 22.4 | 555 | 767 |
| 22.5 to 24.4 | 680 | 800 |
| 24.5 to 26.4 | 609 | 834 |
| 26.5 to 28.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 28.5 and over | (*) | (*) |

*No data submitted for units meeting Federal Maximum Energy Use Standards effective January 1, 1993.

[60 FR 56947, Nov. 13, 1995]

## APPENDIX A5 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH SIDE-MOUNTED FREEZER WITHOUT THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE

[Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume in cubic feet | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| Less than 10.5 | 579 | 579 |
| 10.5 to 12.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 12.5 to 14.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 14.5 to 16.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 16.5 to 18.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 18.5 to 20.4 | 702 | 796 |
| 20.5 to 22.4 | 724 | 821 |
| 22.5 to 24.4 | 750 | 848 |
| 24.5 to 26.4 | 776 | 876 |
| 26.5 to 28.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 28.5 and over | 920 | 950 |

*No data submitted for units meeting Federal Maximum Energy Use Standards effective January 1, 1993.

[60 FR 56948, Nov. 13, 1995]

## APPENDIX A6 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH BOTTOM-MOUNTED FREEZER WITHOUT THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE

[Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume in cubic feet | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| Less than 10.5 | 463 | 463 |
| 10.5 to 12.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 12.5 to 14.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 14.5 to 16.4 | 666 | 666 |
| 16.5 to 18.4 | 709 | 709 |
| 18.5 to 20.4 | 612 | 612 |
| 20.5 to 22.4 | 524 | 789 |
| 22.5 to 24.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 24.5 to 26.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 26.5 to 28.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 28.5 and over | (*) | (*) |

*No data submitted for units meeting Federal Maximum Energy Use Standards effective January 1, 1993.

[60 FR 56948, Nov. 13, 1995]

## APPENDIX A7 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH TOP-MOUNTED FREEZER WITH THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE

[Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume in cubic feet | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| Less than 10.5 | (*) | (*) |
| 10.5 to 12.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 12.5 to 14.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 14.5 to 16.4 | 557 | 557 |
| 16.5 to 18.4 | 769 | 769 |
| 18.5 to 20.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 20.5 to 22.4 | 727 | 840 |
| 22.5 to 24.4 | 789 | 915 |
| 24.5 to 26.4 | 814 | 917 |
| 26.5 to 28.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 28.5 and over | (*) | (*) |

*No data submitted for units meeting Federal Maximum Energy Use Standards effective January 1, 1993.

[60 FR 56948, Nov. 13, 1995]

## APPENDIX A8 TO PART 305—REFRIGERATOR-FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST WITH SIDE-MOUNTED FREEZER WITH THROUGH-THE-DOOR ICE SERVICE

[Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume in cubic feet | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| Less than 10.5 | (*) | (*) |
| 10.5 to 12.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 12.5 to 14.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 14.5 to 16.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 16.5 to 18.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 18.5 to 20.4 | 710 | 935 |
| 20.5 to 22.4 | 561 | 967 |
| 22.5 to 24.4 | 750 | 1008 |
| 24.5 to 26.4 | 641 | 1041 |
| 26.5 to 28.4 | 658 | 1059 |
| 28.5 and over | 956 | 1144 |

*No data submitted for units meeting Federal Maximum Energy Use Standards effective January 1, 1993.

[60 FR 56948, Nov. 13, 1995]

## APPENDIX B1 TO PART 305—UPRIGHT FREEZERS WITH MANUAL DEFROST

[Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume in cubic feet | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| Less than 5.5 | 250 | 347 |
| 5.5 to 7.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 7.5 to 9.4 | 322 | 414 |
| 9.5 to 11.4 | 459 | 459 |
| 11.5 to 13.4 | 469 | 474 |
| 13.5 to 15.4 | 509 | 534 |
| 15.5 to 17.4 | 562 | 565 |
| 17.5 to 19.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 19.5 to 21.4 | 615 | 627 |
| 21.5 to 23.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 23.5 to 25.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 25.5 to 27.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 27.5 to 29.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 29.5 and over | (*) | (*) |

*No data submitted for units meeting Federal Maximum Energy Use Standards effective January 1, 1993.

[60 FR 56948, Nov. 13, 1995]

## APPENDIX B2 TO PART 305—UPRIGHT FREEZERS WITH AUTOMATIC DEFROST

[Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume in cubic feet | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| Less than 5.5 | 504 | 516 |
| 5.5 to 7.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 7.5 to 9.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 9.5 to 11.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 11.5 to 13.4 | 704 | 704 |
| 13.5 to 15.4 | 738 | 774 |
| 15.5 to 17.4 | 791 | 821 |
| 17.5 to 19.4 | 876 | 876 |
| 19.5 to 21.4 | 896 | 909 |
| 21.5 to 23.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 23.5 to 25.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 25.5 to 27.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 27.5 to 29.4 | (*) | (*) |

[Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume in cubic feet | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| 29.5 and over | (*) | (*) |

*No data submitted for units meeting Federal Maximum Energy Use Standards effective January 1, 1993.

[60 FR 56948, Nov. 13, 1995]

## APPENDIX B3 TO PART 305—CHEST FREEZERS AND ALL OTHER FREEZERS

[Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated total refrigerated volume in cubic feet | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| Less than 5.5 | 250 | 260 |
| 5.5 to 7.4 | 291 | 293 |
| 7.5 to 9.4 | 322 | 322 |
| 9.5 to 11.4 | 347 | 347 |
| 11.5 to 13.4 | 369 | 399 |
| 13.5 to 15.4 | 431 | 437 |
| 15.5 to 17.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 17.5 to 19.4 | 493 | 493 |
| 19.5 to 21.4 | 529 | 529 |
| 21.5 to 23.4 | 552 | 588 |
| 23.5 to 25.4 | 629 | 629 |
| 25.5 to 27.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 27.5 to 29.4 | (*) | (*) |
| 29.5 and over | (*) | (*) |

*No data submitted for units meeting Federal Maximum Energy Use Standards effective January 1, 1993.

[60 FR 56949, Nov. 13, 1995]

## APPENDIX C TO PART 305—DISHWASHERS

RANGE INFORMATION:

''Compact'' includes countertop dishwasher models with a capacity of fewer that eight (8) place settings.

''Standard'' includes portable or built-in dishwasher models with a capacity of eight (8) or more place settings.

Place settings shall be in accordance with appendix C to 10 CFR part 430, subpart B. Load patterns shall conform to the operating normal for the model being tested.

| Capacity | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| Compact | 302 | 302 |
| Standard | 344 | 699 |

[62 FR 44891, Aug. 25, 1997]

## APPENDIX D1 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—GAS

[Range Information]

| Capacity | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (therms/yr. and gallons/yr.) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| First hour rating | Natural gas therms/yr. | | Propane gallons/yr. | |
| | Low | High | Low | High |
| Less than 21 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |
| 21 to 24 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |

[Range Information]

| Capacity | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (therms/yr. and gallons/yr.) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| First hour rating | Natural gas therms/yr. | | Propane gallons/yr. | |
| | Low | High | Low | High |
| 25 to 29 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |
| 30 to 34 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |
| 35 to 40 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |
| 41 to 47 | 242 | 263 | 265 | 284 |
| 48 to 55 | 235 | 278 | 257 | 304 |
| 56 to 64 | 238 | 273 | 262 | 299 |
| 65 to 74 | 215 | 283 | 249 | 310 |
| 75 to 86 | 220 | 288 | 266 | 317 |
| 87 to 99 | 255 | 295 | 279 | 310 |
| 100 to 114 | 268 | 300 | 294 | 329 |
| 115 to 131 | 288 | 288 | 317 | 336 |
| Over 131 | 288 | 349 | 317 | 383 |

* No data submitted.

[59 FR 48797, Sept. 23, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 49564, Sept. 28, 1994]

## APPENDIX D2 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—ELECTRIC

[Range Information]

| Capacity | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| First hour rating | Low | High |
| Less than 21 | 4672 | 4672 |
| 21 to 24 | 4769 | 4769 |
| 25 to 29 | 4879 | 4879 |
| 30 to 34 | 4672 | 4939 |
| 35 to 40 | 4575 | 4939 |
| 41 to 47 | 4575 | 5109 |
| 48 to 55 | 4624 | 5109 |
| 56 to 64 | 4624 | 5109 |
| 65 to 74 | 4624 | 5231 |
| 75 to 86 | 4624 | 5352 |
| 87 to 99 | 4624 | 5352 |
| 100 to 114 | 4672 | 5631 |
| 115 to 131 | 5109 | 5704 |
| Over 131 | (*) | (*) |

*No data submitted.

[59 FR 48797, Sept. 23, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 49564, Sept. 28, 1994]

## APPENDIX D3 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—OIL

[Range Information]

| Capacity | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (gallons/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| First hour rating | Low | High |
| Less than 65 | (*) | (*) |
| 65 to 74 | (*) | (*) |
| 75 to 86 | (*) | (*) |
| 87 to 99 | (*) | (*) |
| 100 to 114 | 177 | 200 |
| 115 to 131 | 171 | 212 |
| Over 131 | 180 | 180 |

*No data submitted.

[59 FR 48797, Sept. 23, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 49564, Sept. 28, 1994]

## APPENDIX D4 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—INSTANTANEOUS—GAS

[Range Information]

| Capacity | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (therms/yr. and gallons/yr.) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| First hour rating | Natural gas therms/yr. | | Propane gallons/yr. | |
| | Low | High | Low | High |
| Less than 21 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |
| 21 to 24 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |
| 25 to 29 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |
| 30 to 34 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |
| 35 to 40 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |
| 41 to 47 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |
| 48 to 55 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |
| 56 to 64 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |
| 65 to 74 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |
| 75 to 86 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |
| 87 to 99 | 411 | 411 | 451 | 451 |
| 100 to 114 | 230 | 240 | 230 | 256 |
| 115 to 131 | (*) | (*) | (*) | (*) |
| Over 131 | 237 | 422 | 238 | 464 |

* No data submitted.

[61 FR 48622, Sept. 16, 1996]

## APPENDIX D5 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—INSTANTANEOUS—OIL

[Range Information]

| Capacity | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (gallons/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| First hour rating | Low | High |
| Less than 21 | (*) | (*) |
| 21 to 24 | (*) | (*) |
| 25 to 29 | (*) | (*) |
| 30 to 34 | (*) | (*) |
| 35 to 40 | (*) | (*) |
| 41 to 47 | (*) | (*) |
| 48 to 55 | (*) | (*) |
| 56 to 64 | (*) | (*) |
| 65 to 74 | (*) | (*) |
| 75 to 86 | (*) | (*) |
| 87 to 99 | (*) | (*) |
| 100 to 114 | (*) | (*) |
| 115 to 131 | (*) | (*) |
| Over 131 | (*) | (*) |

*No data submitted.

[60 FR 43369, Aug. 21, 1995]

## APPENDIX D6 TO PART 305—WATER HEATERS—HEAT PUMP

[Range Information]

| Capacity | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| First hour rating | Low | High |
| Less than 21 | (*) | (*) |
| 21 to 24 | (*) | (*) |
| 25 to 29 | (*) | (*) |
| 30 to 34 | (*) | (*) |
| 35 to 40 | (*) | (*) |
| 41 to 47 | (*) | (*) |
| 48 to 55 | (*) | (*) |
| 56 to 64 | 1756 | 2091 |
| 65 to 74 | (*) | (*) |
| 75 to 86 | (*) | (*) |

[Range Information]

| Capacity | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| First hour rating | Low | High |
| 87 to 99 | 1756 | 1996 |
| 100 to 114 | (*) | (*) |
| 115 to 131 | (*) | (*) |
| Over 131 | (*) | (*) |

*No data submitted.

[60 FR 43369, Aug. 21, 1995]

## APPENDIX E TO PART 305—ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS

[Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated cooling capacity in Btu's/yr. | Range of Energy Efficiency Ratios (EERs) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| Without Reverse Cycle and with Louvered Sides: | | |
| Less than 6,000 Btu | 8.0 | 10.0 |
| 6,000 to 7,999 Btu | 8.5 | 10.3 |
| 8,000 to 13,999 Btu | 9.0 | 12.0 |
| 14,000 to 19,999 Btu | 8.8 | 10.7 |
| 20,000 and more Btu | 8.2 | 10.0 |
| Without Reverse Cycle and without Louvered Sides: | | |
| Less than 6,000 Btu | (*) | (*) |
| 6,000 to 7,999 | 8.5 | 9.6 |
| 8,000 to 13,999 Btu | 8.5 | 9.2 |
| 14,000 to 19,999 Btu | (*) | (*) |
| 20,000 and more Btu | (*) | (*) |
| With Reverse Cycle and with Louvered Sides | 8.5 | 11.5 |
| With Reverse Cycle, without Louvered Sides | 8.0 | 9.0 |

*No data submitted for units meeting Federal Minimum Efficiency Standards effective January 1, 1990.

[60 FR 56949, Nov. 13, 1995]

## APPENDIX F TO PART 305—CLOTHES WASHERS

### RANGE INFORMATION

''Compact'' includes all household clothes washers with a tub capacity of less than 1.6 cu. ft. or 13 gallons of water.

''Standard'' includes all household clothes washers with a tub capacity of 1.6 cu. ft. or 13 gallons of water or more.

| Capacity | Range of estimated annual energy consumption (kWh/yr.) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| COMPACT: | | |
| Top Loading | 607 | 628 |
| Front Loading | (*) | (*) |
| STANDARD: | | |
| Top Loading | 312 | 1306 |
| Front Loading | 241 | 278 |

(*) No data submitted.

[62 FR 42209, Aug. 6, 1997]

## APPENDIX G1 TO PART 305—FURNACES—GAS

[1. Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.) | Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| All Capacities | 78 | 96.6 |

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

| Cost per kilowatt hour [1] | Btu heat loss of home (see chart below) |
|---|---|
| 4¢ | |
| 6¢ | |
| 8¢ | |
| 10¢ | |
| 12¢ | |
| 14¢ | |

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

| Manufacturers rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour) | Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour) | Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000 Btu's per hour) |
|---|---|---|
| 5,000 to 10,000 | 5 | 5 |
| 11,000 to 16,000 | 10 | 5, 10 |
| 17,000 to 25,000 | 15 | 10, 15 |
| 26,000 to 42,000 | 20 | 15, 20, 25 |
| 43,000 to 59,000 | 30 | 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| 60,000 to 76,000 | 40 | 35, 40, 45, 50 |
| 77,000 to 93,000 | 50 | 40, 45, 50, 60 |
| 94,000 to 110,000 | 60 | 50, 60, 70, 80 |
| 111,000 to 127,000 | 70 | 60, 70, 80, 90 |
| 128,000 to 144,000 | 80 | 70, 80, 90, 100 |
| 145,000 to 161,000 | 90 | 80, 90, 100, 110, 120 |
| 162,000 to 178,000 | 100 | 90, 100, 110, 120, 130 |
| 179,000 to 195,000 | 110 | 100, 110, 120, 130, 140 |
| 196,000 and over | 130 | 120, 130, 140, 150, 160 |

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

## APPENDIX G2 TO PART 305—FURNACES—ELECTRIC

[1. Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.) | Ranges of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| All Capacities | 100 | 100 |

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

| Cost per kilowatt hour [1] | Btu heat loss of home (see chart below) |
|---|---|
| 4¢ | |

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

| Cost per kilowatt hour [1] | Btu heat loss of home (see chart below) |
|---|---|
| 6¢ | |
| 8¢ | |
| 10¢ | |
| 12¢ | |
| 14¢ | |

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

| Manufacturers' rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour) | Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour) | Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000 Btu's per hour) |
|---|---|---|
| 5,000 to 10,000 | 5 | 5 |
| 11,000 to 16,000 | 10 | 5, 10 |
| 17,000 to 25,000 | 15 | 10, 15 |
| 26,000 to 42,000 | 20 | 15, 20, 25 |
| 43,000 to 59,000 | 30 | 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| 60,000 to 76,000 | 40 | 35, 40, 45, 50 |
| 77,000 to 93,000 | 50 | 40, 45, 50, 60 |
| 94,000 to 110,000 | 60 | 50, 60, 70, 80 |
| 111,000 to 127,000 | 70 | 60, 70, 80, 90 |
| 128,000 to 144,000 | 80 | 70, 80, 90, 100 |
| 145,000 to 161,000 | 90 | 80, 90, 100, 110, 120 |
| 162,000 to 178,000 | 100 | 90, 100, 110, 120, 130 |
| 179,000 to 195,000 | 110 | 100, 110, 120, 130, 140 |
| 196,000 and over | 130 | 120, 130, 140, 150, 160 |

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

## APPENDIX G3 TO PART 305—FURNACES—OIL

[1. Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.) | Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| All Capacities | 78 | 86.7 |

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

| Cost per kilowatt hour[1] | Btu heat loss of home (see chart below) |
|---|---|
| 4¢ | |
| 6¢ | |
| 8¢ | |
| 10¢ | |
| 12¢ | |
| 14¢ | |

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

| Manufacturers' rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour) | Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour) | Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000 Btu's per hour) |
|---|---|---|
| 5,000 to 10,000 | 5 | 5 |
| 11,000 to 16,000 | 10 | 5, 10 |
| 17,000 to 25,000 | 15 | 10, 15 |
| 26,000 to 42,000 | 20 | 15, 20, 25 |
| 43,000 to 59,000 | 30 | 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| 60,000 to 76,000 | 40 | 35, 40, 45, 50 |
| 77,000 to 93,000 | 50 | 40, 45, 50, 60 |
| 94,000 to 110,000 | 60 | 50, 60, 70, 80 |
| 111,000 to 127,000 | 70 | 60, 70, 80, 90 |
| 128,000 to 144,000 | 80 | 70, 80, 90, 100 |
| 145,000 to 161,000 | 90 | 80, 90, 100, 110, 120 |
| 162,000 to 178,000 | 100 | 90, 100, 110, 120, 130 |
| 179,000 to 195,000 | 110 | 100, 110, 120, 130, 140 |
| 196,000 and over | 130 | 120, 130, 140, 150, 160 |

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

## APPENDIX G4 TO PART 305—MOBILE HOME FURNACES

[1. Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.) | Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| All Capacities | 75 | 83.2 |

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

| Cost per kilowatt hour [1] | Btu heat loss of home (see chart below) |
|---|---|
| 4¢ | |
| 6¢ | |
| 8¢ | |
| 10¢ | |
| 12¢ | |
| 14¢ | |

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

| Manufacturers' rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour) | Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour) | Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000 Btu's per hour) |
|---|---|---|
| 5,000 to 10,000 | 5 | 5 |
| 5,000 to 10,000 | 5 | 5 |
| 11,000 to 16,000 | 10 | 5, 10 |
| 17,000 to 25,000 | 15 | 10, 15 |
| 26,000 to 42,000 | 20 | 15, 20, 25 |
| 43,000 to 59,000 | 30 | 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| 60,000 to 76,000 | 40 | 35, 40, 45, 50 |
| 77,000 to 93,000 | 50 | 40, 45, 50, 60 |

[Heat Loss Table]

| Manufacturers' rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour) | Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour) | Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000 Btu's per hour) |
|---|---|---|
| 94,000 to 110,000 | 60 | 50, 60, 70, 80 |
| 111,000 to 127,000 | 70 | 60, 70, 80, 90 |
| 128,000 to 144,000 | 80 | 70, 80, 90, 100 |
| 145,000 to 161,000 | 90 | 80, 90, 100, 110, 120 |
| 162,000 to 178,000 | 100 | 90, 100, 110, 120, 130 |
| 179,000 to 195,000 | 110 | 100, 110, 120, 130, 140 |
| 196,000 and over | 130 | 120, 130, 140, 150, 160 |

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

## APPENDIX G5 TO PART 305—BOILERS—GAS (EXCEPT STEAM)

[1. Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.) | Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| All Capacities | 80 | 90.6 |

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

| Cost per kilowatt hour [1] | Btu heat loss of home (see chart below) |
|---|---|
| 4¢ | |
| 6¢ | |
| 8¢ | |
| 10¢ | |
| 12¢ | |
| 14¢ | |

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

| Manufacturers' rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour) | Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour) | Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000 Btu's per hour) |
|---|---|---|
| 5,000 to 10,000 | 5 | 5 |
| 11,000 to 16,000 | 10 | 5, 10 |
| 17,000 to 25,000 | 15 | 10, 15 |
| 26,000 to 42,000 | 20 | 15, 20, 25 |
| 43,000 to 59,000 | 30 | 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| 60,000 to 76,000 | 40 | 35, 40, 45, 50 |
| 77,000 to 93,000 | 50 | 40, 45, 50, 60 |
| 94,000 to 110,000 | 60 | 50, 60, 70, 80 |
| 111,000 to 127,000 | 70 | 60, 70, 80, 90 |
| 128,000 to 144,000 | 80 | 70, 80, 90, 100 |
| 145,000 to 161,000 | 90 | 80, 90, 100, 110, 120 |
| 162,000 to 178,000 | 100 | 90, 100, 110, 120, 130 |
| 179,000 to 195,000 | 110 | 100, 110, 120, 130, 140 |
| 196,000 and over | 130 | 120, 130, 140, 150, 160 |

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in

place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

## APPENDIX G6 TO PART 305—BOILERS—GAS (STEAM)

[1. Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.) | Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| All Capacities | 75 | 83.5 |

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

| Cost per kilowatt hour [1] | Btu heat loss of home (see chart below) |
|---|---|
| 4¢ | |
| 6¢ | |
| 8¢ | |
| 10¢ | |
| 12¢ | |
| 14¢ | |

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢,¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

| Manufacturers' rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour) | Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour) | Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000 Btu's per hour) |
|---|---|---|
| 5,000 to 10,000 | 5 | 5 |
| 11,000 to 16,000 | 10 | 5, 10 |
| 17,000 to 25,000 | 15 | 10, 15 |
| 26,000 to 42,000 | 20 | 15, 20, 25 |
| 43,000 to 59,000 | 30 | 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| 60,000 to 76,000 | 40 | 35, 40, 45, 50 |
| 77,000 to 93,000 | 50 | 40, 45, 50, 60 |
| 94,000 to 110,000 | 60 | 50, 60, 70, 80 |
| 111,000 to 127,000 | 70 | 60, 70, 80, 90 |
| 128,000 to 144,000 | 80 | 70, 80, 90, 100 |
| 145,000 to 161,000 | 90 | 80, 90, 100, 110, 120 |
| 162,000 to 178,000 | 100 | 90, 100, 110, 120, 130 |
| 179,000 to 195,000 | 110 | 100, 110, 120, 130, 140 |
| 196,000 and over | 130 | 120, 130, 140, 150, 160 |

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

## APPENDIX G7 TO PART 305—BOILERS—OIL

[1. Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.) | Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| All Capacities | 80 | 88.7 |

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

| Cost per kilowatt hour [1] | Btu heat loss of home (see chart below) |
|---|---|
| 4¢ | |
| 6¢ | |
| 8¢ | |
| 10¢ | |
| 12¢ | |
| 14¢ | |

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

| Manufacturers' rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour) | Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour) | Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000) Btu's per hour) |
|---|---|---|
| 5,000 to 10,000 | 5 | 5 |
| 11,000 to 16,000 | 10 | 5, 10 |
| 17,000 to 25,000 | 15 | 10, 15 |
| 26,000 to 42,000 | 20 | 15, 20, 25 |
| 43,000 to 59,000 | 30 | 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| 60,000 to 76,000 | 40 | 35, 40, 45, 50 |
| 77,000 to 93,000 | 50 | 40, 45, 50, 60 |
| 94,000 to 110,000 | 60 | 50, 60, 70, 80 |
| 111,000 to 127,000 | 70 | 60, 70, 80, 90 |
| 128,000 to 144,000 | 80 | 70, 80, 90, 100 |
| 145,000 to 161,000 | 90 | 80, 90, 100, 110, 120 |
| 162,000 to 178,000 | 100 | 90, 100, 110, 120, 130 |
| 179,000 to 195,000 | 110 | 100, 110, 120, 130, 140 |
| 196,000 and over | 130 | 120, 130, 140, 150, 160 |

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

## APPENDIX G8 TO PART 305—BOILERS—ELECTRIC

[1. Range Information]

| Manufacturer's rated heating capacities (Btu's/hr.) | Range of annual fuel utilization efficiencies (AFUE's) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| All Capacities | 100 | 100 |

[2. Yearly Cost Information: Cost Grid]

| Cost per kilowatt hour [1] | Btu heat loss of home (see chart below) |
|---|---|
| 4¢ | |
| 6¢ | |
| 8¢ | |
| 10¢ | |
| 12¢ | |
| 14¢ | |

[1] For charts on natural gas, oil and propane gas, substitute the following cost figures:
a. Cost per therm—10¢, 20¢, 30¢, 40¢, 50¢, 60¢.
b. Cost per gallon (oil)—76¢, 79¢, 82¢, 85¢, 88¢, 91¢, 94¢, 97¢, $1.00.
c. Cost per gallon (propane)—35¢, 40¢, 45¢, 50¢, 55¢, 60¢.

The following table shows the heat loss values (in thousand Btu's/hr.) to be used in the cost grid:

[Heat Loss Table]

| Manufacturers' rated heat output of model to be labeled (Btu's per hour) | Design heat loss of model to be labeled (1,000 Btu's per hour) | Heat loss values to be used on the grid (1,000) Btu's per hour) |
|---|---|---|
| 5,000 to 10,000 | 5 | 5 |
| 11,000 to 16,000 | 10 | 5, 10 |
| 17,000 to 25,000 | 15 | 10, 15 |
| 26,000 to 42,000 | 20 | 15, 20, 25 |
| 43,000 to 59,000 | 30 | 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| 60,000 to 76,000 | 40 | 35, 40, 45, 50 |
| 77,000 to 93,000 | 50 | 40, 45, 50, 60 |
| 94,000 to 110,000 | 60 | 50, 60, 70, 80 |
| 111,000 to 127,000 | 70 | 60, 70, 80, 90 |
| 128,000 to 144,000 | 80 | 70, 80, 90, 100 |
| 145,000 to 161,000 | 90 | 80, 90, 100, 110, 120 |
| 162,000 to 178,000 | 100 | 90, 100, 110, 120, 130 |
| 179,000 to 195,000 | 110 | 100, 110, 120, 130, 140 |
| 196,000 and over | 130 | 120, 130, 140, 150, 160 |

Beside each cost in the cost grid, and below the appropriate heat loss value taken from the heat loss table, place the cost estimate for the model being labeled using the table costs in place of the national average cost and using the heat loss values in place of the design heat loss used in the table with the national average cost.

[59 FR 34042, July 1, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

## APPENDIX H TO PART 305—COOLING PERFORMANCE AND COST FOR CENTRAL AIR CONDITIONERS

1. *Range Information:*

| Manufacturer's rated cooling capacity (Btu's/hr.) | Range of SEER's | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| **Single Package Units** | | |
| Central Air Conditioners (Cooling Only): All capacities | 9.70 | 16.05 |
| Heat Pumps (Cooling Function): All capacities | 9.70 | 15.60 |
| **Split System Units** | | |
| Central Air Conditioners (Cooling Only): All capacities | 10.00 | 17.00 |
| Heat Pumps (Cooling Function): All capacities | 10.00 | 16.40 |

2. *Yearly Cost Information:*

For each model, display three annual operating costs, based on 8.31¢ per kilowatt hour, rounded to the nearest $10, corresponding to the three building heat gains from the chart below:

| Manufacturers rated cooling capacity (BTU/hr) | Building heat gain (in 1000's BTU's/hr) | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |
| Up to 9,000 | 3 | 6 | 9 |
| 9,100 to 15,000 | 9 | 12 | 15 |
| 15,100 to 21,000 | 15 | 18 | 21 |
| 21,100 to 27,000 | 21 | 24 | 27 |
| 27,200 to 33,000 | 27 | 30 | 33 |
| 33,200 to 39,000 | 33 | 36 | 39 |
| 39,500 to 45,000 | 39 | 42 | 45 |
| 45,500 to 51,000 | 45 | 48 | 51 |
| 51,500 to 57,000 | 51 | 54 | 57 |
| 57,500 to 63,000 | 57 | 60 | 63 |
| 63,500 and over | 63 | 66 | 69 |

The values of building heat gain are to be considered cooling capacities in the calculation of annual operating cost in accordance with 10 CFR 430.22 (m)(1)(i).

Include the following note on every fact sheet page that lists annual operating costs.

NOTE: These figures are based on U.S. Government standard tests and are for national averages of 1000 cooling load hours and 8.31¢/KWH. Your cost will vary depending on your local energy rate and how you use the product. A method for estimating your cost of operation is given [direct user to location].

The methodology referred to in the note is provided below. This information shall be included a least once in all compendiums of fact sheets. If separate fact sheets are prepared for individual distribution to consumers, this methodology must be provided on or with the unbound fact sheets.

HOW TO ESTIMATE YOUR COOLING COST

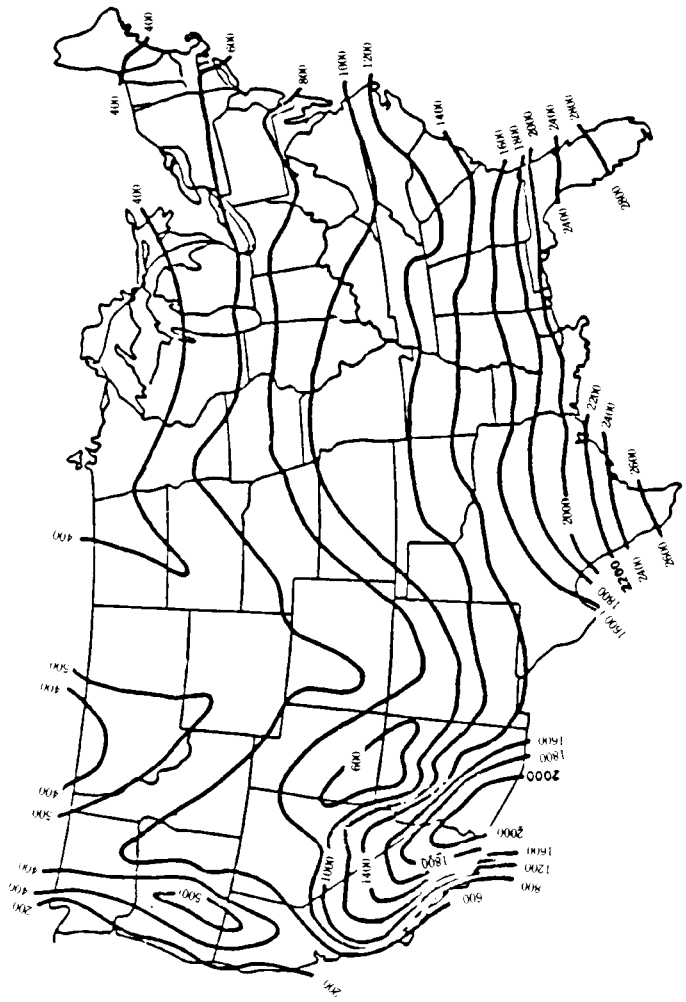
To estimate your actual cost of operation, find your cooling load hours from the map, your average annual operating cost from the National Average Annual Operating Cost Table, and determine your electrical rate in cents per kilowatt hour (KWH) from your electric bill.

$$\text{Your estimated cost} = \frac{\text{Listed average annual}}{\text{operating cost *}} \times \frac{\text{Your cooling load hours **}}{1{,}000} \times \frac{\text{Your electrical rate in cents per KWH}}{8.31¢}$$

*Example:* If your cooling load hours=1500, and your electric rate is 12.47¢/KWH and your listed annual operating cost is $100, then:,

Your estimated cost = $100 × 1,500/1,000 × 12.47¢/8.31¢
Your estimated cost = $100 × 1.5 × 1.5 = $225
Your estimated cost = $225

## Cooling Load Hour Map



| | Cooling Load Hours |
|---|---|
| Alaska | 0 |
| Canal Zone | 6,000 |
| Guam | 6,600 |
| Hawaii | 2,300 |
| Puerto Rico | 6,000 |
| Samoa | 6,600 |
| Virgin Island | 6,000 |

This map must be included at least once in all compendiums of fact sheets. If separate fact sheets are prepared for individual distribution to consumers, this map must be provided on or with the separate fact sheets.

[An example of a fact sheet for central air conditioners or for only the cooling function of heat pumps]

# ENERGYGUIDE

## Split System Central Air Conditioner (Cooling Only)

### Cooling Capacity:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Models** | XXX/C1 | 31,000 BTU/hr |
| | XXX/C2 | 31,400 BTU/hr |
| | YYY/C3 | 29,000 BTU/hr |
| | YYY/C6 | 29,400 BTU/hr |

### Cooling Performance:

**Model XXX/C1**
**12.7** SEER

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

**Least Efficient Model** 10.0 — **Most Efficient Model** 16.9

**Model XXX/C2**
**12.6** SEER

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

**Least Efficient Model** 10.0 — **Most Efficient Model** 16.9

**Model YYY/C3**
**13.0** SEER

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

**Least Efficient Model** 10.0 — **Most Efficient Model** 16.9

**Model YYY/C6**
**12.9** SEER

Energy efficiency range of all similar models

**Least Efficient Model** 10.0 — **Most Efficient Model** 16.9

This (or these) energy rating(s) is (or are) based on U.S. Government standard tests of this (or these) condenser model(s) combined with the most common coil(s). The ratings may vary slightly with different coils.

[This is Page 1 of Sample Fact Sheet]

* * * * *

NATIONAL AVERAGE ANNUAL OPERATING COST TABLE ($ PER YEAR)

| Model | Building Heat Gain (BTU/hour) | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 27,000 | 30,000 | 33,000 |
| XXX/C1 | $200 | $220 | $240 |

NATIONAL AVERAGE ANNUAL OPERATING COST TABLE ($ PER YEAR)—Continued

| Model | Building Heat Gain (BTU/hour) | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 27,000 | 30,000 | 33,000 |
| XXX/C2 | $200 | $220 | $240 |
| XXX/C3 | $190 | $210 | $230 |
| XXX/C6 | $190 | $210 | $230 |

NOTE: These figures are based on U.S. Goverment standard tests and are for national averages of 1000 cooling load hours and 8.31¢/KWH. Your cost will vary depending on your local energy rate and how you use the product. A method for estimating your cost of operation is provided on page 2 of this fact sheet.

HOW TO ESTIMATE YOUR COOLING COST

To estimate your actual cost of operation, find your actual cooling load hours from the map, your average annual operating cost from the National Average Annual Operating Cost Table, and determine your electrical rate in cents per kilowatt hour (KWH) from your electrical bill.

$$\text{Your estimated cost} = \frac{\text{Listed average annual}}{\text{operating cost*}} \times \frac{\text{Your cooling load hours**}}{1{,}000} \times \frac{\text{Your electrical rate in cents per KWH}}{8.31¢}$$

*Example:* If your cooling load hours are 1500, and your electric rate is 12.47¢/KWH, and your listed annual operating cost is $100, then:

Your estimated cost = $100 × 1,500/1,000 × 12.47¢/8.31¢
Your estimated cost = $100 × 1.5 × 1.5 = $225
Your estimated cost = $225

(This is page 2 of sample fact sheet)

[53 FR 19729, May 27, 1988, as amended at 54 FR 53318, Dec. 28, 1989; 55 FR 43093, Oct. 26, 1990; 56 FR 46728, Sept. 16, 1991; 57 FR 44332, Sept. 25, 1992; 59 FR 34049, July 1, 1994; 59 FR 39951 and 39952, Aug. 5, 1994; 60 FR 56949, Nov. 13, 1995; 61 FR 48622, Sept. 16, 1996; 62 FR 44891, Aug. 25, 1997]

## APPENDIX I TO PART 305—HEATING PERFORMANCE AND COST FOR CENTRAL AIR CONDITIONERS

1. *Range Information*

| Manufacturer's rated heating capacity (Btu's/hr.) | Range of HSPF's | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| **Single Package Units** | | |
| Heat Pumps (Heating Function): All capacities | 6.60 | 8.20 |
| **Split System Units** | | |
| Heat Pumps (Heating Function): All capacities | 6.80 | 10.20 |

The HSPF shall be the Region IV value based on the appropriate average design heat loss from the table below.

2. *Yearly Heating Cost Information:*

For each model, display a regional annual operating cost, based on 8.31¢ per kilowatt hour, rounded to the nearest $10, calculated according to 10 CFR 430.22(m)(3)(ii) for each region. The heat loss of home values given in the chart below are to be considered standardized design heating requirements in the calculation of annual operating cost in accordance with 10 CFR 430.22(m)(3)(ii).

| Capacity | Region | Average design heat loss (in 1000's Btu's/hr.) | Heat loss of home values used on the grid (in 1000's Btu's/hr.) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Up to 9,000 | 1 | 10 | 5, 10 |
| | 2 | | 5, 10, 15 |
| | 3 | | 5, 10, 15 |
| | 4 | | 10, 15, 20 |

| Capacity | Region | Average design heat loss (in 1000's Btu's/hr.) | Heat loss of home values used on the grid (in 1000's Btu's/hr.) |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 5 | | 10, 15, 20 |
| | 6 | | 5, 10, 15 |
| 9,100 to 15,000 | 1 | 20 | 5, 10, 15 |
| | 2 | | 5, 10, 15, 20 |
| | 3 | | 10, 15, 20, 25 |
| | 4 | | 10, 15, 20, 25, 30 |
| | 5 | | 10, 15, 20, 25, 30 |
| | 6 | | 5, 10, 15, 20 |
| 15,100 to 21,000 | 1 | 25 | 10, 15, 20 |
| | 2 | | 10, 15, 20, 25 |
| | 3 | | 15, 20, 25, 30 |
| | 4 | | 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| | 5 | | 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| | 6 | | 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35 |
| 21,100 to 27,000 | 1 | 30 | 10, 15, 20, 25 |
| | 2 | | 15, 20, 25, 30 |
| | 3 | | 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| | 4 | | 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 50 |
| | 5 | | 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 50, 60 |
| | 6 | | 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35 |
| 21,100 to 27,000 | 1 | 30 | 10, 15, 20, 25 |
| | 2 | | 15, 20, 25, 30 |
| | 3 | | 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| | 4 | | 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 50 |
| | 5 | | 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 50, 60 |
| | 6 | | 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| 27,100 to 33,000 | 1 | 35 | 15, 20, 25, 30 |
| | 2 | | 20, 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| | 3 | | 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 50 |
| | 4 | | 25, 30, 35, 40, 50, 60 |
| | 5 | | 25, 30, 35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80 |
| | 6 | | 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 50, 60 |
| 33,200 to 39,000 | 1 | 50 | 15, 20, 25, 30, 35 |
| | 2 | | 25, 30, 35, 40, 50 |
| | 3 | | 30, 35, 40, 50, 60 |
| | 4 | | 35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90 |
| | 5 | | 35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90 |
| | 6 | | 25, 30, 35, 40, 50 |
| 39,500 to 45,000 | 1 | 60 | 20, 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| | 2 | | 25, 30, 35, 40, 50, 60 |
| | 3 | | 30, 35, 40, 50, 60 |
| | 4 | | 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100 |
| | 5 | | 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110 |
| | 6 | | 25, 30, 35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80 |
| 45,500 to 51,000 | 1 | 70 | 20, 25, 30, 35, 40 |
| | 2 | | 30, 35, 40, 50, 60 |
| | 3 | | 35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80 |
| | 4 | | 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110 |
| | 5 | | 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 130 |
| | 6 | | 30, 35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 130 |
| 51,500 to 57,000 | 1 | 70 | 25, 30, 35, 40, 50 |
| | 2 | | 35, 40, 50, 60, 70 |
| | 3 | | 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90 |
| | 4 | | 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110 |
| | 5 | | 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100 ,110, 130 |
| | 6 | | 35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100 |
| 57,500 to 63,000 | 1 | 80 | 25, 30, 35, 40, 50 |
| | 2 | | 35, 40, 50, 60, 70 |
| | 3 | | 50, 60, 70, 80, 90 |
| | 4 | | 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110 |
| | 5 | | 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 130 |
| | 6 | | 35, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100 |
| 63,500 and over | 1 | 90 | 30, 35, 40, 50, 60 |
| | 2 | | 40, 50, 60, 70, 80 |
| | 3 | | 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100 |
| | 4 | | 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 130 |
| | 5 | | 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 130 |
| | 6 | | 40, 50, 60, 70, 80 |

Include the following note on every fact sheet page that lists annual operating costs.

NOTE: These annual heating costs are based on U.S. Government standard tests and on a national average cost of electricity of 8.31¢/KWH. Your cost will vary depending on your local energy rate and how you use the product. A method for estimating your cost of operation is given [direct user to location].

The methodology referred to in the note is provided below. This information shall be included at least once in all compendiums of fact sheets. If separate fact sheets are prepared for individual distribution to consumers, this methodology must be provided on or with the unbound fact sheets.

HOW TO ESTIMATE YOUR HEATING COSTS

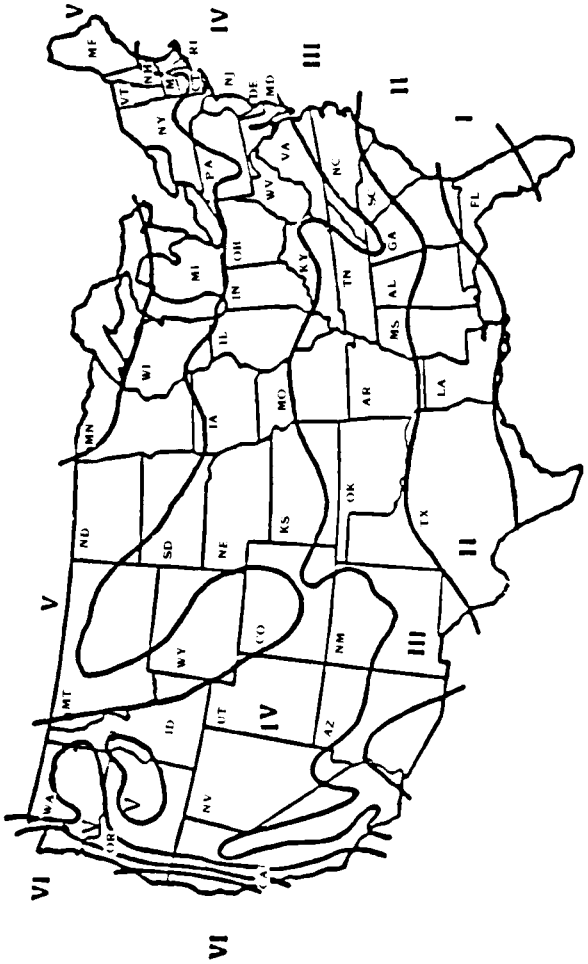
To estimate your heating cost, determine your cost of electricity in cents per kilowatt hour (KWH) from your electric bill, your listed average annual heating cost from the National Average Annual Heating Cost Table, and use that number in the following equation:

$$\text{Your estimated cost} = \text{Listed annual heating cost*} \times \frac{\text{Your electrical cost in cents per KWH}}{8.31¢/\text{KWH}}$$

*Example:* If your electric rate is 12.47¢/KWH and the annual heating cost listed in the chart is $200:

Your estimated cost = $200 × 12.47¢/8.31¢
Your estimated cost = $200 × 1.5 = $300
Your estimated cost = $300

# Heating Region Map




This map must be included at least once in all compendiums of fact sheets. If separate fact sheets are prepared for individual distribution to consumers, this map must be provided on or with the separate fact sheets.

[An example of a fact sheet showing only the heating function for heat pumps]

# ENERGYGUIDE

**Heating Capacity:**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Models** | XXX/C1 | 33,000 BTU/hr |
| | XXX/C2 | 35,000 BTU/hr |

**Heating Performance for Region IV**

**Model XXX/C1**
**7.9** HSPF

**Energy efficiency range of all similar models**

**Least Efficient Model** 6.8 — **Most Efficient Model** 10.2

**Model XXX/C2**
**8.9** HSPF

**Energy efficiency range of all similar models**

**Least Efficient Model** 6.8 — **Most Efficient Model** 10.2

This (or these) energy rating(s) is (or are) based on U.S. Government standard tests of this (or these) condenser model(s) combined with the most common coil(s). The ratings will vary slightly with different coils and in different geographic regions.

NATIONAL AVERAGE ANNUAL HEATING COST TABLE ($ per year)

| MODEL XXX/C1 | Heat Loss of Home (in 1000's Btu's/hr.) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 |
| * Region 1 | $60 | $80 | $100 | $120 | | | | | | |
| " 2 | | $140 | $170 | $200 | $240 | $280 | | | | |
| " 3 | | | $250 | $300 | $350 | $400 | $520 | | | |
| " 4 | | | $350 | $410 | $480 | $550 | $710 | $910 | $1110 | $1330 |
| " 5 | | | | $560 | $660 | $750 | $970 | $1200 | $1460 | $1720 |
| " 6 | | $300 | $370 | $430 | $500 | $590 | | | | |

| MODEL XXX/C2 | Heat Loss of Home (in 1000's Btu's/hr.) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 |
| * Region 1 | $50 | $70 | $90 | $110 | | | | | | |
| " 2 | | $130 | $160 | $190 | $220 | $260 | | | | |
| " 3 | | | $240 | $280 | $330 | $400 | $500 | | | |
| " 4 | | | $330 | $400 | $450 | $520 | $580 | $880 | $1020 | $1230 |
| " 5 | | | | $540 | $640 | $730 | $940 | $1100 | $1300 | $1620 |
| " 6 | | $300 | $350 | $400 | $470 | $560 | | | | |

*From Heating Region Map

(This is Page 1 of Sample Fact Sheet)

NOTE: These annual heating costs are based on U.S. Government standard tests and on a national average cost of electricity of 8.31¢/KWH. Your cost will vary depending on your local energy rate and how you use the product. A method for estimating your cost of operation is given below.

HOW TO ESTIMATE YOUR HEATING COST

To estimate your heating cost, determine your cost of electricity in cents per kilowatt hour (KWH) from your electric bill, your listed average annual heating cost from the National Average Annual Heating Cost Table, and substitute that number in the following equation:

$$\text{Your estimated cost} = \text{Listed annual heating cost*} \times \frac{\text{Your electrical cost in cents}}{8.31¢/\text{KWH}}$$

*Example:* If your electric cost is 12.47¢/KWH and the annual heating cost listed in the table is $200:

Your estimated cost = $200 × 12.47¢/8.31¢
Your estimated cost = $200 × 1.5 = $300
Your estimated cost = $300

(This is page 2 of sample fact sheet)

[53 FR 19729, May 27, 1988, as amended at 54 FR 53318, Dec. 28, 1989; 55 FR 43093, Oct. 26, 1990; 56 FR 46728, Sept. 16, 1991; 57 FR 44332, Sept. 25, 1992; 59 FR 34051, July 1, 1994; 59 FR 39952, Aug. 5, 1994; 60 FR 56949, Nov. 13, 1995; 61 FR 48623, Sept. 16, 1996; 62 FR 44891, Aug. 25, 1997]

## APPENDIX J1 TO PART 305—POOL HEATERS—GAS

RANGE INFORMATION

| Manufacturer's rated heating capacities | Range of thermal efficiencies (percent) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Natural gas | | Propane | |
| | Low | High | Low | High |
| All capacities | 78.4 | 97.0 | 78.4 | 97.0 |

[60 FR 43369, Aug. 21, 1995]

## APPENDIX J2 TO PART 305—POOL HEATERS—OIL

RANGE INFORMATION

| Manufacturer's rated heating capacities | Range of thermal efficiencies (percent) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Low | High |
| All capacities | 78.0 | 78.0 |

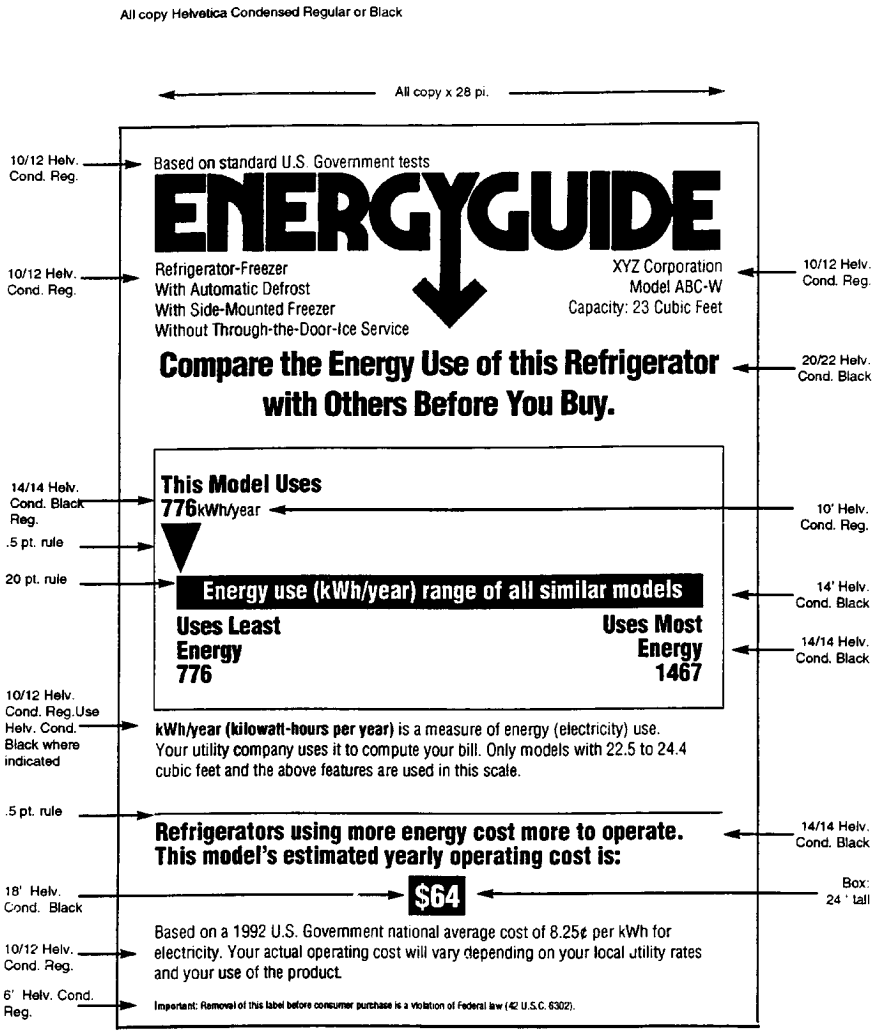
[60 FR 43370, Aug. 21, 1995]

## APPENDIX K TO PART 305—SUGGESTED DATA REPORTING FORMAT

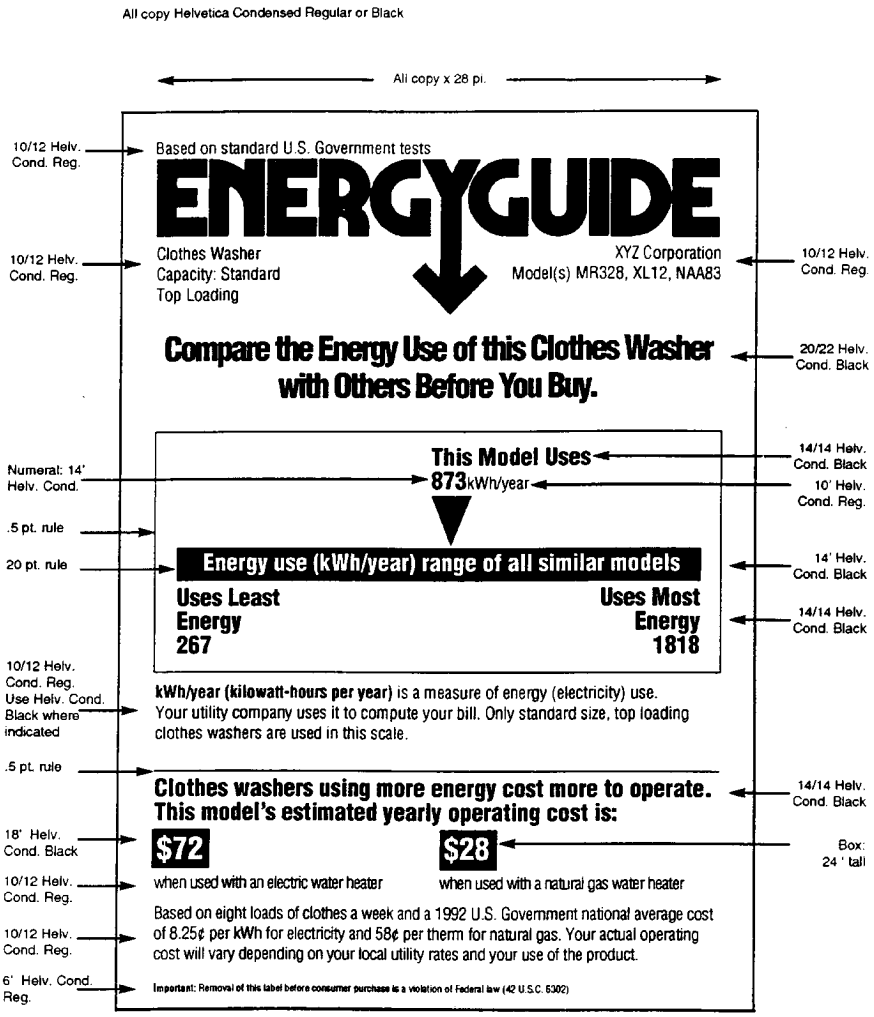
1. Date of Report _____
2. Company Name _____
3. City _____
4. State _____
5. Product _____
6. Energy Type (gas, oil, etc.) _____
7. Model Number _____
8. Estimated Annual Energy Consumption or Energy Efficiency Rating _____
9. Capacity _____
10. Number of Tests Performed _____
11. Total Energy Consumption (based on all tests performed) _____

[52 FR 49647, Dec. 31, 1987; as amended at 59 FR 34053, July 1, 1994. Redesignated at 59 FR 49565, Sept. 28, 1994]

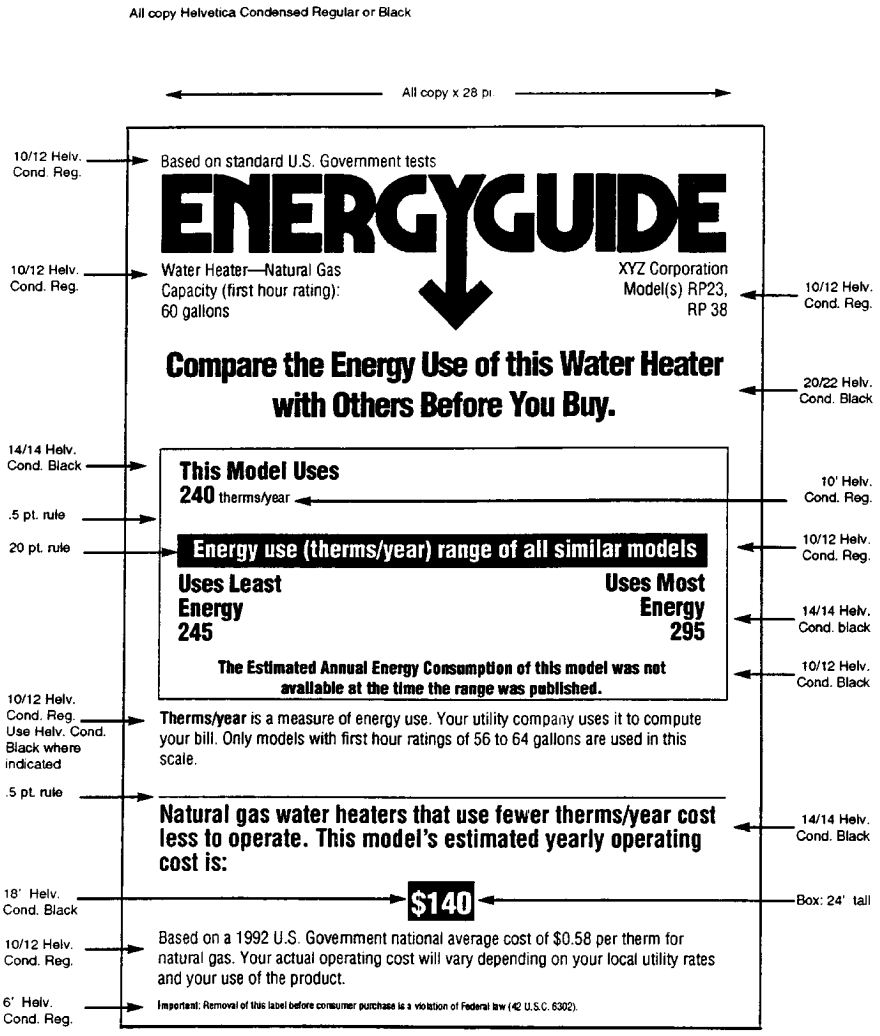
APPENDIX L TO PART 305—SAMPLE LABELS



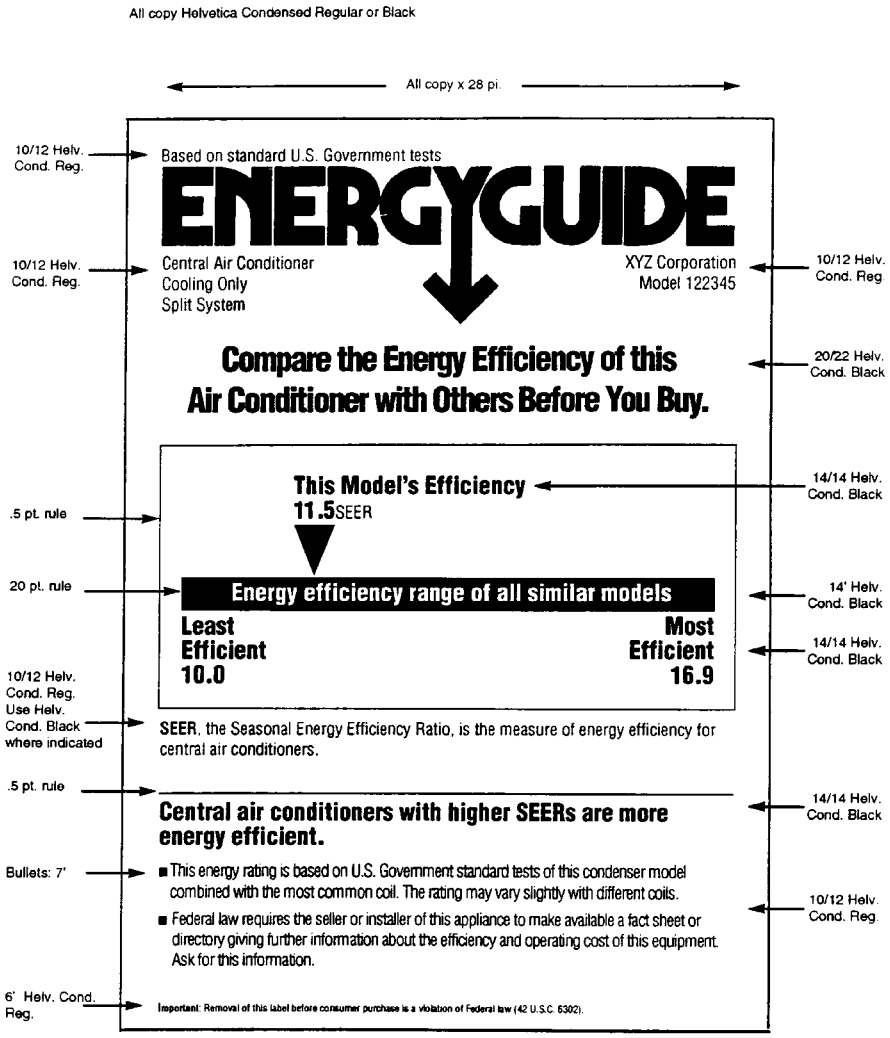

Prototype Label 1



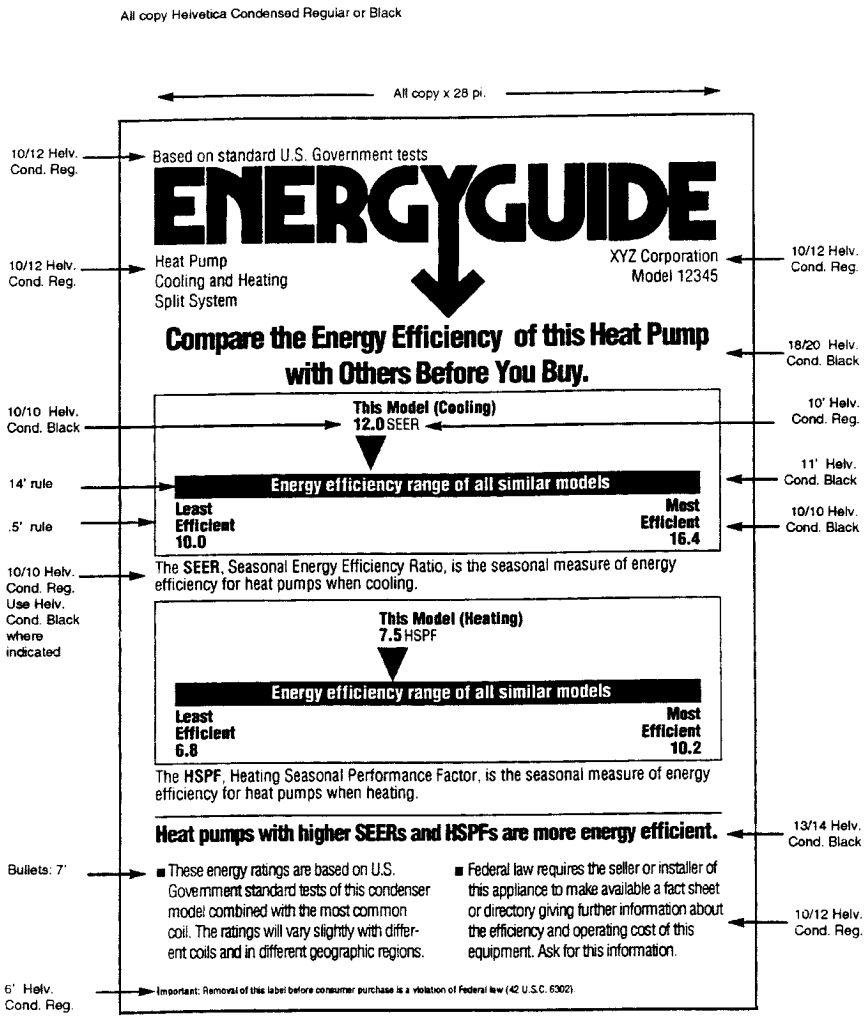

Prototype Label 2




Prototype Label 3




Prototype Label 4




Prototype Label 5

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

# ENERGYGUIDE

Refrigerator-Freezer
With Automatic Defrost
With Side-Mounted Freezer
Without Through-the-Door-Ice Service

XYZ Corporation
Model ABC-W
Capacity: 23 Cubic Feet

## Compare the Energy Use of this Refrigerator with Others Before You Buy.

**This Model Uses**
**776**kWh/year

**Energy use (kWh/year) range of all similar models**

| Uses Least Energy | Uses Most Energy |
|---|---|
| 776 | 1467 |

**kWh/year (kilowatt-hours per year)** is a measure of energy (electricity) use. Your utility company uses it to compute your bill. Only models with 22.5 to 24.4 cubic feet and the above features are used in this scale.

**Refrigerators using more energy cost more to operate. This model's estimated yearly operating cost is:**

**$64**

Based on a 1992 U.S. Government national average cost of 8.25¢ per kWh for electricity. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

**Important:** Removal of this label before consumer purchase is a violation of Federal law (42 U.S.C. 6302).

Sample Label 1

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

# ENERGYGUIDE

Freezer
Upright Type
With Manual Defrost

XYZ Corporation
Model(s) MR328, XL 12, NA83
Capacity: 21.2 Cubic Feet

## Compare the Energy Use of this Freezer with Others Before You Buy.

**This Model Uses**
**764** kWh/year

**Energy use (kWh/year) range of all similar models**

| Uses Least Energy | Uses Most Energy |
|---|---|
| 630 | 1079 |

**kWh/year (kilowatt-hours per year)** is a measure of energy (electricity) use. Your utility company uses it to compute your bill. Only models with 19.5 to 21.4 cubic feet with the above features are used in this scale.

**Freezers using more energy cost more to operate. This model's estimated yearly operating cost is:**

**$63**

Based on a 1992 U.S. Government national average cost of 8.25¢ per kWh for electricity. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

**Important:** Removal of this label before consumer purchase is a violation of Federal law (42 U.S.C. 6302).

Sample Label 2

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

# ENERGYGUIDE

Clothes Washer
Capacity: Standard
Top Loading

XYZ Corporation
Model(s) MR328, XL12, NAA83

## Compare the Energy Use of this Clothes Washer with Others Before You Buy.

**This Model Uses**
**873**kWh/year

**Energy use (kWh/year) range of all similar models**

| Uses Least Energy | Uses Most Energy |
|---|---|
| 267 | 1818 |

**kWh/year (kilowatt-hours per year)** is a measure of energy (electricity) use. Your utility company uses it to compute your bill. Only standard size, top loading clothes washers are used in this scale.

**Clothes washers using more energy cost more to operate. This model's estimated yearly operating cost is:**

| $72 | $28 |
|---|---|
| when used with an electric water heater | when used with a natural gas water heater |

Based on eight loads of clothes a week and a 1992 U.S. Government national average cost of 8.25¢ per kWh for electricity and 58¢ per therm for natural gas. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

**Important:** Removal of this label before consumer purchase is a violation of Federal law (42 U.S.C. 6302).

Sample Label 3

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

# ENERGYGUIDE

Dishwasher
Capacity: Standard

XYZ Corporation
Model(s) MR328, XL12, NAA83

## Compare the Energy Use of this Dishwasher with Others Before You Buy.

**This Model Uses**
**860**kWh/year

**Energy use (kWh/year) range of all similar models**

| Uses Least Energy | Uses Most Energy |
|---|---|
| 558 | 994 |

**kWh/year (kilowatt-hours per year)** is a measure of energy (electricity) use. Your utility company uses it to compute your bill. Only standard size dishwashers are used in this scale.

**Dishwashers using more energy cost more to operate. This model's estimated yearly operating cost is:**

| $71 | $39 |
|---|---|
| when used with an electric water heater | when used with a natural gas water heater |

Based on six washloads a week and a 1992 U.S. Government national average cost of 8.25¢ per kWh for electricity and 58¢ per therm for natural gas. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

**Important:** Removal of this label before consumer purchase is a violation of Federal law (42 U.S.C. 6302).

Sample Label 4

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

# ENERGYGUIDE

Water Heater—Natural Gas
Capacity (first hour rating):
60 gallons

XYZ Corporation
Model(s) RP23,
RP 38

## Compare the Energy Use of this Water Heater with Others Before You Buy.

**This Model Uses**
**240** therms/year

**Energy use (therms/year) range of all similar models**

| Uses Least Energy | Uses Most Energy |
|---|---|
| 245 | 295 |

**The Estimated Annual Energy Consumption of this model was not available at the time the range was published.**

**Therms/year** is a measure of energy use. Your utility company uses it to compute your bill. Only models with first hour ratings of 56 to 64 gallons are used in this scale.

**Natural gas water heaters that use fewer therms/year cost less to operate. This model's estimated yearly operating cost is:**

**$140**

Based on a 1992 U.S. Government national average cost of $0.58 per therm for natural gas. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

Important: Removal of this label before consumer purchase is a violation of Federal law (42 U.S.C. 6302).

Sample Label 5

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

# ENERGYGUIDE

Room Air Conditioner
Without Reverse Cycle
With Louvered Sides

XYZ Corporation
Model 122345
Capacity: 13,000 BTUs

## Compare the Energy Efficiency of this Air Conditioner with Others Before You Buy.

**This Model's Efficiency**
**10.0**EER

**Energy efficiency range of all similar models**

| Least Efficient | Most Efficient |
|---|---|
| 9.0 | 11.0 |

**EER**, the Energy Efficiency Ratio, is the measure of energy efficiency for room air conditioners. Only models between 8,000 and 13,000 BTUs with the above features are used in this scale.

**More efficient air conditioners cost less to operate. This model's estimated yearly operating cost is:**

**$80**

Based on a 1992 U.S. Government national average cost of 8.25¢ per kWh for electricity. Your actual operating cost will vary depending on your local utility rates and your use of the product.

**Important:** Removal of this label before consumer purchase is a violation of Federal law (42 U.S.C. 6302).

Sample Label 6

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

**ENERGYGUIDE**

Furnace—Natural Gas

XYZ Corporation
Model 2345X

**Compare the Energy Efficiency of this Furnace with Others Before You Buy.**

**This Model's Efficiency**
**80.7**AFUE

**Energy efficiency range of all similar models**

| **Least Efficient 78.0** | **Most Efficient 97.0** |
|---|---|

The **AFUE**, Annual Fuel Utilization Efficiency, is the measure of energy efficiency for furnaces and boilers. Only furnaces fueled by natural gas are used in this scale.

**Natural gas furnaces that have higher AFUEs are more energy efficient.**

Federal law requires the seller or installer of this appliance to make available a fact sheet or directory giving further information about the efficiency and operating cost of this equipment. Ask for this information.

**Important:** Removal of this label before consumer purchase is a violation of Federal law (42 U.S.C. 6302).

Sample Label 7

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

# ENERGYGUIDE

Central Air Conditioner
Cooling Only
Split System

XYZ Corporation
Model 122345

## Compare the Energy Efficiency of this Air Conditioner with Others Before You Buy.

**This Model's Efficiency**
**11.5**SEER

**Energy efficiency range of all similar models**

| Least Efficient | Most Efficient |
|---|---|
| 10.0 | 16.9 |

**SEER**, the Seasonal Energy Efficiency Ratio, is the measure of energy efficiency for central air conditioners.

## Central air conditioners with higher SEERs are more energy efficient.

- This energy rating is based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The rating may vary slightly with different coils.
- Federal law requires the seller or installer of this appliance to make available a fact sheet or directory giving further information about the efficiency and operating cost of this equipment. Ask for this information.

**Important:** Removal of this label before consumer purchase is a violation of Federal law (42 U.S.C. 6302).

Sample Label 8

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

# ENERGYGUIDE

Heat Pump
Cooling and Heating
Split System

XYZ Corporation
Model 12345

## Compare the Energy Efficiency of this Heat Pump with Others Before You Buy.

**This Model (Cooling)**
**12.0** SEER

**Energy efficiency range of all similar models**

**Least Efficient 10.0** — **Most Efficient 16.4**

The **SEER**, Seasonal Energy Efficiency Ratio, is the seasonal measure of energy efficiency for heat pumps when cooling.

**This Model (Heating)**
**7.5** HSPF

**Energy efficiency range of all similar models**

**Least Efficient 6.8** — **Most Efficient 10.2**

The **HSPF**, Heating Seasonal Performance Factor, is the seasonal measure of energy efficiency for heat pumps when heating.

**Heat pumps with higher SEERs and HSPFs are more energy efficient.**

- These energy ratings are based on U.S. Government standard tests of this condenser model combined with the most common coil. The ratings will vary slightly with different coils and in different geographic regions.
- Federal law requires the seller or installer of this appliance to make available a fact sheet or directory giving further information about the efficiency and operating cost of this equipment. Ask for this information.

**Important:** Removal of this label before consumer purchase is a violation of Federal law (42 U.S.C. 6302).

Sample Label 9

# Lamp Packaging Disclosures

## Specifications

- All required disclosures must be clear and conspicuous.
- The words "light output" must appear first in order, followed by the lumens number. The word "lumens" must be close to either "light output" or the lumens number.
- The words "energy used" must appear second in order, followed by the wattage number. The word "watts" must be close to either "energy used" or the wattage number.
- The word "life" must appear third in order, followed by the life in hours number. The word "hours" must be close to either "life" or the life in hours number.
- The numbers for light output, energy used, and life must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "light output," "energy used," and "life" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "lumens," "watts," and "hours" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle, but only approximately 50 percent of the size of the words "light output," "energy used," and "life."

## Illustration

*Note: This illustrates the elements and relative sizes of the required disclosures.*

### Principal Display Panel

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Light Output | 1710 Lumens | To save energy costs, find the bulbs with the light output you need, then choose the one with the lowest watts. |
| Energy Used | 100 Watts | |
| Life | 750 Hours | |

Incandescent (non-reflector) Lamp Illustration

# Lamp Packaging Disclosures

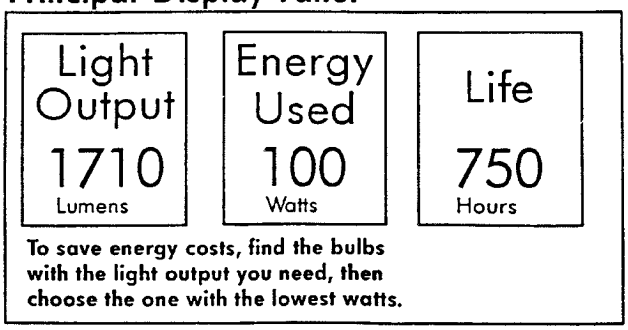
## Specifications

- All required disclosures must be clear and conspicuous.
- The words "light output" must appear first in order, followed by the lumens number. The word "lumens" must be close to either "light output" or the lumens number.
- The words "energy used" must appear second in order, followed by the wattage number. The word "watts" must be close to either "energy used" or the wattage number.
- The word "life" must appear third in order, followed by the life in hours number. The word "hours" must be close to either "life" or the life in hours number.
- The numbers for light output, energy used, and life must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "light output," "energy used," and "life" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "lumens," "watts," and "hours" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle, but only approximately 50 percent of the size of the words "light output," "energy used," and "life."

## Illustration

*Note: This illustrates the elements and relative sizes of the required disclosures.*

### Principal Display Panel




Incandescent (non-reflector) Lamp Illustration

# Lamp Packaging Disclosures

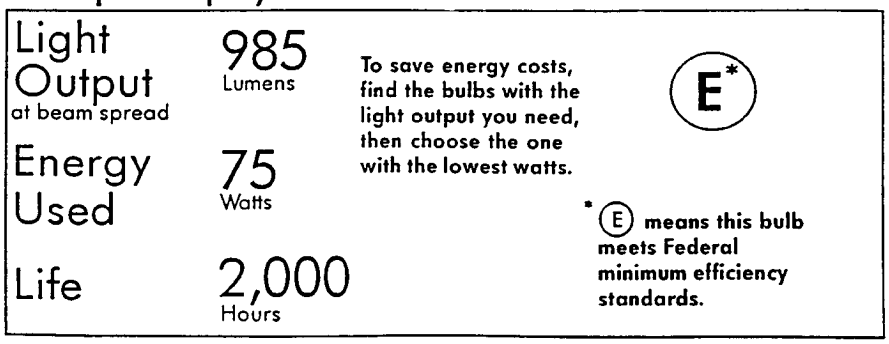
## Specifications

- All required disclosures must be clear and conspicuous.
- The words "light output" must appear first in order, followed by the lumens number. The word "lumens" must be close to either "light output" or the lumens number.
- The words "energy used" must appear second in order, followed by the wattage number. The word "watts" must be close to either "energy used" or the wattage number.
- The word "life" must appear third in order, followed by the life in hours number. The word "hours" must be close to either "life" or the life in hours number.
- The numbers for light output, energy used, and life must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "light output," "energy used," and "life" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "lumens," "watts," "hours," and "at beam spread" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle, but only approximately 50 percent of the size of the words "light output," "energy used," and "life."

## Illustration

***Note:*** *This illustrates the elements and relative sizes of the required disclosures.*

## Principal Display Panel




The explanatory statement next to the encircled "E" on the principal display panel above could be disclosed (clearly and conspicuously) on another panel, provided asterisks and the words "See [Back, Top, Side] panel for details" are used.

Incandescent Reflector Lamp Illustration

# Lamp Packaging Disclosures

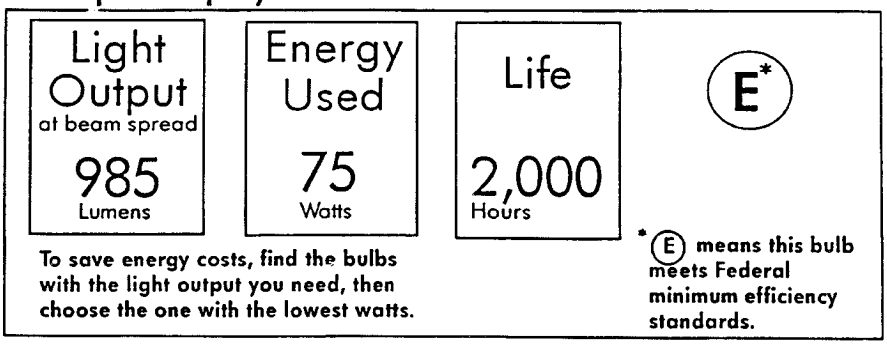
## Specifications

- All required disclosures must be clear and conspicuous.
- The words "light output" must appear first in order, followed by the lumens number. The word "lumens" must be close to either "light output" or the lumens number.
- The words "energy used" must appear second in order, followed by the wattage number. The word "watts" must be close to either "energy used" or the wattage number.
- The word "life" must appear third in order, followed by the life in hours number. The word "hours" must be close to either "life" or the life in hours number.
- The numbers for light output, energy used, and life must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "light output," "energy used," and "life" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "lumens," "watts," "hours," and "at beam spread" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle, but only approximately 50 percent of the size of the words "light output," "energy used," and "life."

## Illustration

*Note: This illustrates the elements and relative sizes of the required disclosures.*

### Principal Display Panel




The explanatory statement next to the encircled "E" on the principal display panel above could be disclosed (clearly and conspicuously) on another panel, provided asterisks and the words "See [Back, Top, Side] panel for details" are used.

Incandescent Reflector Lamp Illustration

# Lamp Packaging Disclosures

## Specifications

- All required disclosures must be clear and conspicuous.
- The words "light output" must appear first in order, followed by the lumens number. The word "lumens" must be close to either "light output" or the lumens number.
- The words "energy used" must appear second in order, followed by the wattage number. The word "watts" must be close to either "energy used" or the wattage number.
- The word "life" must appear third in order, followed by the life in hours number. The word "hours" must be close to either "life" or the life in hours number.
- The numbers for light output, energy used, and life must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "light output," "energy used," and "life" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "lumens," "watts," and "hours" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle, but only approximately 50 percent of the size of the words "light output," "energy used," and "life."

## Illustration

***Note:*** *This illustrates the elements and relative sizes of the required disclosures.*

### Principal Display Panel

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Light Output | 1200 Lumens | To save energy costs, find the bulbs with the light output you need, then choose the one with the lowest watts. |
| Energy Used | 20 Watts | |
| Life | 10,000 Hours | |

Compact Fluorescent Lamp Illustration

# Lamp Packaging Disclosures

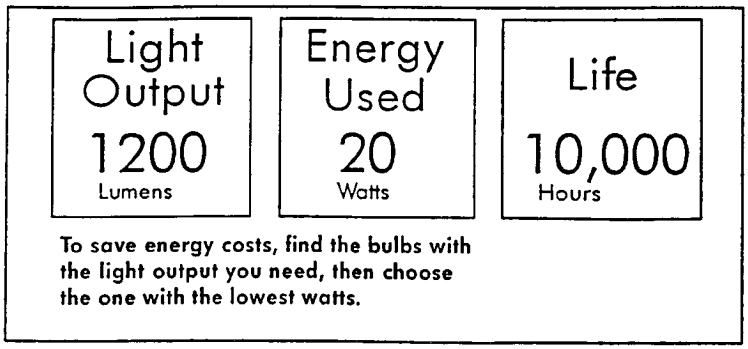
## Specifications

- All required disclosures must be clear and conspicuous.
- The words "light output" must appear first in order, followed by the lumens number. The word "lumens" must be close to either "light output" or the lumens number.
- The words "energy used" must appear second in order, followed by the wattage number. The word "watts" must be close to either "energy used" or the wattage number.
- The word "life" must appear third in order, followed by the life in hours number. The word "hours" must be close to either "life" or the life in hours number.
- The numbers for light output, energy used, and life must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "light output," "energy used," and "life" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle.
- The words "lumens," "watts," and "hours" must be of equal size and in the same typestyle, but only approximately 50 percent of the size of the words "light output," "energy used," and "life."

## Illustration

*Note: This illustrates the elements and relative sizes of the required disclosures.*

### Principal Display Panel




Compact Fluorescent Lamp Illustration

Based on standard U.S. Government tests

**ENERGYGUIDE**

Pool Heater
Natural Gas

ABC Corporation
Model 1428

**Compare the Energy Efficiency of this Pool Heater with Others Before You Buy.**

**This Model's Efficiency**
**80** Thermal Efficiency

**Energy efficiency range of all similar models**

| **Least Efficient 78** | **Most Efficient 97** |
|---|---|

The **Thermal Efficiency** (expressed as a percent) is the measure of energy efficiency for pool heaters. Only pool heaters fueled by natural gas are used in this scale.

**Natural gas pool heaters that have higher Thermal Efficiencies are more energy efficient.**

**Important**: Removal of this label before consumer purchase is a violation of Federal law (42 U.S.C. 6302).

Sample Label 10

[59 FR 25212, May 13, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 34053, July 1, 1994. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 49565, 49567, Sept. 28, 1994]

# PART 306—AUTOMOTIVE FUEL RATINGS, CERTIFICATION AND POSTING

GENERAL

Sec.
306.0 Definitions.
306.1 What this rule does.
306.2 Who is covered.
306.3 Stayed or invalid parts.
306.4 Preemption.

DUTIES OF REFINERS, IMPORTERS, AND PRODUCERS

306.5 Automotive fuel rating.
306.6 Certification.
306.7 Recordkeeping.

DUTIES OF DISTRIBUTORS

306.8 Certification.
306.9 Recordkeeping.

DUTIES OF RETAILERS

306.10 Automotive fuel rating posting.
306.11 Recordkeeping.

LABEL SPECIFICATIONS

306.12 Labels.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 2801 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 44 FR 19169, Mar. 30, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

GENERAL

## §306.0 Definitions.

As used in this part:

(a) *Octane rating* means the rating of the anti-knock characteristics of a grade or type of gasoline as determined by dividing by 2 the sum of the research octane number plus the motor octane number.

(b) *Research octane number* and *motor octane number* have the meanings given such terms in the specifications of the American Society for Testing and Materials (''ASTM'') entitled ''Standard Specification for Automotive Spark-Ignition Engine Fuel'' designated D4814–92c and, with respect to any grade or type of gasoline, are determined in accordance with test methods set forth in ASTM D2699–92, ''Standard Test Method for Knock Characteristics of Motor Fuels by the Research Method'' and ASTM D2700–92, ''Standard Test Method for Knock Characteristics of Motor and Aviation Fuels by the Motor Method.'' These incorporations by reference were approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of ASTM D4814–92c, ASTM D2699–92, and ASTM D2700–92 may be obtained from the American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA, 19103, or may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, Public Reference Room, room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC., or at the Office of the Federal Register, 800 North Capitol Street, NW., suite 700, Washington, DC.

(c) *Refiner* means any person engaged in the production or importation of automotive fuel.

(d) *Producer* means any person who purchases component elements and combines them to produce and market automotive fuel.

(e) *Distributor* means any person who receives automotive fuel and distributes such automotive fuel to another person other than the ultimate purchaser.

(f) *Retailer* means any person who markets automotive fuel to the general public for ultimate consumption.

(g) *Ultimate purchaser* means, with respect to any item, the first person who purchases such item for purposes other than resale.

(h) *Person*, for purposes of applying any provision of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 41 *et seq.*, with respect to any provision of this part, includes a partnership and a corporation.

(i) *Automotive fuel* means liquid fuel of a type distributed for use as a fuel in any motor vehicle, and the term includes, but is not limited to:

(1) Gasoline, an automotive spark-ignition engine fuel, which includes, but is not limited to, gasohol (generally a mixture of approximately 90% unleaded gasoline and 10% denatured ethanol) and fuels developed to comply with the Clean Air Act, 42 U.S.C. 7401 *et seq.*, such as reformulated gasoline and oxygenated gasoline; and

(2) alternative liquid automotive fuels, including, but not limited to:

(i) Methanol, denatured ethanol, and other alcohols;

(ii) Mixtures containing 85 percent or more by volume of methanol, denatured ethanol, and/or other alcohols (or such other percentage, but not less

than 70 percent, as determined by the Secretary of the United States Department of Energy, by rule, to provide for requirements relating to cold start, safety, or vehicle functions), with gasoline or other fuels;

(iii) Liquefied natural gas;

(iv) Liquefied petroleum gas;

(v) Coal-derived liquid fuels.

(j) *Automotive fuel rating* means—

(1) For gasoline, the octane rating; or

(2) For an alternative liquid automotive fuel, the commonly used name of the fuel with a disclosure of the amount, expressed as a minimum percentage by volume, of the principal component of the fuel. A disclosure of other components, expressed as a minimum percentage by volume, may be included, if desired.

[58 FR 41372, Aug. 3, 1993]

### § 306.1 What this rule does.

This rule deals with the certification and posting of automotive fuel ratings in or affecting commerce as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 41 *et seq.* It applies to persons, partnerships, and corporations. If you are covered by this regulation, breaking any of its rules is an unfair or deceptive act or practice under section 5 of that Act. You can be fined up to $10,000 (plus an adjustment for inflation, under § 1.98 of this chapter) each time you break a rule.

[58 FR 41373, Aug. 3, 1993, as amended at 61 FR 54549, Oct. 21, 1996; 61 FR 55840, Oct. 29, 1996]

### § 306.2 Who is covered.

You are covered by this rule if you are a refiner, importer, producer, distributor, or retailer of automotive fuel.

[58 FR 41373, Aug. 3, 1993]

### § 306.3 Stayed or invalid parts.

If any part of this rule is stayed or held invalid, the rest of it will stay in force.

[44 FR 19169, Mar. 30, 1979. Redesignated at 58 FR 41372, Aug. 3, 1993]

### § 306.4 Preemption.

The Petroleum Marketing Practices Act (''PMPA''), 15 U.S.C. 2801 *et seq.*, as amended, is the law that directs the FTC to enact this rule. Section 204 of PMPA, 15 U.S.C. 2824, provides:

(a) To the extent that any provision of this title applies to any act or omission, no State or any political subdivision thereof may adopt or continue in effect, except as provided in subsection (b), any provision of law or regulation with respect to such act or omission, unless such provision of such law or regulation is the same as the applicable provision of this title.

(b) A State or political subdivision thereof may provide for any investigative or enforcement action, remedy, or penalty (including procedural actions necessary to carry out such investigative or enforcement actions, remedies, or penalties) with respect to any provision of law or regulation permitted by subsection (a).

[58 FR 41373, Aug. 3, 1993]

## DUTIES OF REFINERS, IMPORTERS AND PRODUCERS

### § 306.5 Automotive fuel rating.

If you are a refiner, importer, or producer, you must determine the automotive fuel rating of all automotive fuel before you transfer it. You can do that yourself or through a testing lab.

(a) To determine the automotive fuel rating of gasoline, add the research octane number and the motor octane number and divide by two, as explained by the American Society for Testing and Materials (''ASTM'') in ASTM D4814–92c, entitled ''Standard Specifications for Automotive Spark-Ignition Engine Fuel.'' To determine the research octane number, use ASTM standard test method D2699–92, and to determine the motor octane number, use ASTM standard test method D2700–92.

(b) To determine automotive fuel ratings for alternative liquid automotive fuels, you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, for the percentage by volume of the principal component of the alternative liquid automotive fuel that you must disclose. You also must have a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, for the minimum percentages by volume of other components that you choose to disclose.

[58 FR 41373, Aug. 3, 1993]

### §306.6 Certification

In each transfer you make to anyone who is not a consumer, you must certify the automotive fuel rating of the automotive fuel consistent with your determination. You can do this in either of two ways:

(a) Include a delivery ticket or other paper with each transfer of automotive fuel. It may be an invoice, bill of lading, bill of sale, terminal ticket, delivery ticket, or any other written proof of transfer. It must contain at least these four items:

(1) Your name;

(2) The name of the person to whom the automotive fuel is transferred;

(3) The date of the transfer;

(4) The automotive fuel rating. Octane rating numbers may be rounded off to a whole or half number equal to or less than the number determined by you.

(b) Give the person a letter or other written statement. This letter must include the date, your name, the other person's name, and the automotive fuel rating of any automotive fuel you will transfer to that person from the date of the letter onwards. Octane rating numbers may be rounded to a whole or half number equal to or less than the number determined by you. This letter of certification will be good until you transfer automotive fuel with a lower automotive fuel rating. When this happens, you must certify the automotive fuel rating of the new automotive fuel either with a delivery ticket or by sending a new letter of certification.

(c) When you transfer automotive fuel to a common carrier, you must certify the automotive fuel rating of the automotive fuel to the common carrier, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper.

[58 FR 41373, Aug. 3, 1993, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

### §306.7 Recordkeeping.

You must keep records of how you determined automotive fuel ratings for one year. They must be available for inspection by Federal Trade Commission and Environmental Protection Agency staff members, or by people authorized by FTC or EPA.

[58 FR 41374, Aug. 3, 1993]

## DUTIES OF DISTRIBUTORS

### §306.8 Certification.

If you are a distributor, you must certify the automotive fuel rating of the automotive fuel in each transfer you make to anyone who is not a consumer.

(a) In the case of gasoline, if you do not blend the gasoline with other gasoline, you must certify the gasoline's octane rating consistent with the octane rating certified to you. If you blend the gasoline with other gasoline, you must certify consistent with your determination of the average, weighted by volume, of the octane ratings certified to you for each gasoline in the blend, or consistent with the lowest octane rating certified to you for any gasoline in the blend. Whether you blend gasoline or not, you may choose to certify the octane rating of the gasoline consistent with your determination of the octane rating according to the method in §306.5. In cases involving gasoline, the octane rating may be rounded to a whole or half number equal to or less than the number certified to you or determined by you.

(b) If you do not blend alternative liquid automotive fuels, you must certify consistent with the automotive fuel rating certified to you. If you blend alternative liquid automotive fuels, you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, for the automotive fuel rating that you certify for the blend.

(c) You may certify either by using a delivery ticket with each transfer of automotive fuel, as outlined in §306.6(a), or by using a letter of certification, as outlined in §306.6(b).

(d) When you transfer automotive fuel to a common carrier, you must certify the automotive fuel rating of the automotive fuel to the common carrier, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper. When you receive automotive fuel from a common carrier, you also must receive from the common carrier a certification of the automotive fuel rating of the automotive fuel, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper.

[58 FR 41374, Aug. 3, 1993, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

### § 306.9 Recordkeeping

You must keep for one year any delivery tickets or letters of certification on which you based your automotive fuel rating certifications. You must also keep for one year records of any automotive fuel rating determinations you made according to § 306.5. They must be available for inspection by Federal Trade Commission and Environmental Protection Agency staff members, or by persons authorized by FTC or EPA.

[58 FR 41374, Aug. 3, 1993]

DUTIES OF RETAILERS

### § 306.10 Automotive fuel rating posting.

(a) If you are a retailer, you must post the automotive fuel rating of all automotive fuel you sell to consumers. You must do this by putting at least one label on each face of each dispenser through which you sell automotive fuel. If you are selling two or more kinds of automotive fuel with different automotive fuel ratings from a single dispenser, you must put separate labels for each kind of automotive fuel on each face of the dispenser.

(b)(1) The label, or labels, must be placed conspicuously on the dispenser so as to be in full view of consumers and as near as reasonably practical to the price per unit of the automotive fuel.

(2) You may petition for an exemption from the placement requirements by writing the Secretary of the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. You must state the reasons that you want the exemption.

(c) In the case of gasoline, if you do not blend the gasoline with other gasoline, you must post the octane rating of the gasoline consistent with the octane rating certified to you. If you blend the gasoline with other gasoline, you must post consistent with your determination of the average, weighted by volume, of the octane ratings certified to you for each gasoline in the blend, or consistent with the lowest octane rating certified to you for any gasoline in the blend. Whether you blend gasoline or not, you may choose to post the octane rating of the gasoline consistent with your determination of the octane rating according to the method in § 306.5. In cases involving gasoline, the octane rating must be shown as a whole or half number equal to or less than the number certified to you or determined by you.

(d) If you do not blend alternative liquid automotive fuels, you must post consistent with the automotive fuel rating certified to you. If you blend alternative liquid automotive fuels, you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, for the automotive fuel rating that you post for the blend.

(e)(1) You must maintain and replace labels as needed to make sure consumers can easily see and read them.

(2) If the labels you have are destroyed or are unusable or unreadable for some unexpected reason, you can satisfy the law by posting a temporary label as much like the required label as possible. You must still get and post the required label without delay.

(f) The following examples of automotive fuel rating disclosures for some presently available alternative liquid automotive fuels are meant to serve as illustrations of compliance with this part, but do not limit the Rule's coverage to only the mentioned fuels:

(1) ''Methanol/Minimum _____% Methanol''

(2) ''Ethanol/Minimum _____% Ethanol''

(3) ''M–85/Minimum _____% Methanol''

(4) ''E–85/Minimum _____% Ethanol''

(5) ''LPG/Minimum _____% Propane'' or

''LPG/Minimum _____% Propane and _____% Butane''

(6) ''LNG/Minimum _____% Methane''

(g) When you receive automotive fuel from a common carrier, you also must receive from the common carrier a certification of the automotive fuel rating of the automotive fuel, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper.

[58 FR 41374, Aug. 3, 1993, as amended at 59 FR 48798, Sept. 23, 1994]

### § 306.11 Recordkeeping.

You must keep for one year any delivery tickets or letters of certification on which you based your posting of

automotive fuel ratings. You also must keep for one year records of any automotive fuel rating determinations you made according to § 306.5. These records may be kept at the retail outlet or at another, reasonably close location. They must be available for inspection by Federal Trade Commission and Environmental Protection Agency staff members or by persons authorized by FTC or EPA.

[58 FR 41374, Aug. 3, 1993]

LABEL SPECIFICATIONS

**§ 306.12 Labels.**

All labels must meet the following specifications:

(a) *Layout*—(1) *For gasoline labels.* The label is 3″ (7.62 cm) wide × 2½″ (6.35 cm) long. The illustrations appearing at the end of this rule are prototype labels that demonstrate the proper layout. ''Helvetica Black'' type is used throughout except for the octane rating number on octane labels, which is in Franklin gothic type. All type is centered. Spacing of the label is ¼″ (.64 cm) between the top border and the first line of text, ⅛″ (.32 cm) between the first and second line of text, ¼″ (.64 cm) between the octane rating and the line of text above it. All text and numerals are centered within the interior borders.

(2) *For alternative liquid automotive fuel labels (one principal component).* The label is 3″ (7.62 cm) wide × 2½″ (6.35 cm) long. ''Helvetica black'' type is used throughout. All type is centered. The band at the top of the label contains the name of the fuel. This band should measure 1″ (2.54 cm) deep. Spacing of the fuel name is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the top of the label and 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band, centered horizontally within the black band. The first line of type beneath the black band is ⅛″ (.32 cm) from the bottom of the black band. All type below the black band is centered horizontally, with ⅛″ (.32 cm) between each line. The bottom line of type is 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the label. All type should fall no closer than 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the side edges of the label. If you wish to change the dimensions of this single component label to accommodate a fuel descriptor that is longer than shown in the sample labels, you must petition the Federal Trade Commission. You can do this by writing to the Secretary of the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. You must state the size and contents of the label that you wish to use, and the reasons that you want to use it.

(3) *For alternative liquid automotive fuel labels (two components).* The label is 3″ (7.62 cm) wide × 2½″ (6.35 cm) long. ''Helvetica black'' type is used throughout. All type is centered. The band at the top of the label contains the name of the fuel. This band should measure 1″ (2.54 cm) deep. Spacing of the fuel name is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the top of the label and 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band, centered horizontally within the black band. The first line of type beneath the black band is 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band. All type below the black band is centered horizontally, with ⅛″ (.32 cm) between each line. The bottom line of type is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the bottom of the label. All type should fall no closer than 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the side edges of the label. If you wish to change the dimensions of this two component label to accommodate additional fuel components, you must petition the Federal Trade Commission. You can do this by writing to the Secretary of the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. You must state the size and contents of the label that you wish to use, and the reasons that you want to use it.

(b) *Type size and setting*—(1) *For gasoline labels.* The Helvetica series is used for all numbers and letters with the exception of the octane rating number. Helvetica is available in a variety of phototype setting systems, by linotype, and in a variety of computer desk-top and phototype setting systems. Its name may vary, but the type must conform in style and thickness to the sample provided here. The line ''Minimum Octane Rating'' is set in 12 point Helvetica Bold, all capitals, with letterspace set at 12½ points. The line ''(R+M)/2 METHOD'' is set in 10 point Helvetica Bold, all capitals, with letterspace set at 10½ points. The octane number is set in 96 point Franklin gothic condensed with ⅛″ (.32 cm) space between the numbers.

(2) *For alternative liquid automotive fuel lables (one principal component).* All type should be set in upper case (all caps) ''Helvetica Black'' throughout. Helvetica Black is available in a variety of computer desk-top and phototype setting systems. Its name may vary, but the type must conform in style and thickness to the sample provided here. The spacing between letters and words should be set as ''normal.'' The type for the fuel name is 50 point (½″ (1.27 cm) cap height) ''Helvetica Black,'' knocked out of a 1″ (2.54 cm) deep band. The type for the words ''MINIMUM'' and the principal component is 24 pt. (¼″ (.64 cm) cap height.) The type for percentage is 36 pt. (⅜″ (.96 cm) cap height).

(3) *For alternative liquid automotive fuel labels (two components).* All type should be set in upper case (all caps) ''Helvetica Black'' throughout. Helvetica Black is available in a variety of computer desk-top and phototype setting systems. Its name may vary, but the type must conform in style and thickness to the sample provided here. The spacing between letters and words should be set as ''normal.'' The type for the fuel name is 50 point (½″ 1.27 cm) cap height) ''Helvetica Black,'' knocked out of a 1″ (2.54 cm) deep band. All other type is 24 pt. (¼″ (.64 cm) cap height.)

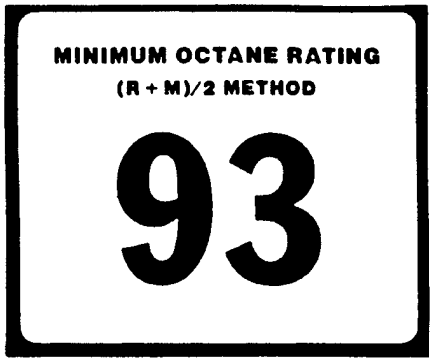
(c) *Colors*—(1) *For gasoline labels.* The basic color on all octane labels is process yellow. All type is process black. All borders are process black. All colors must be non-fade.

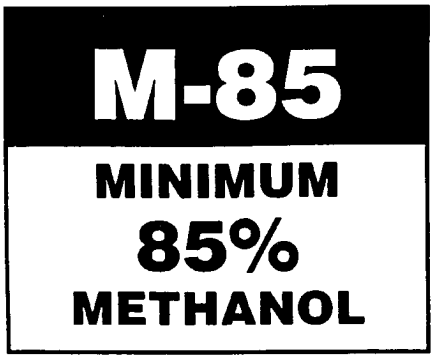
(2) *For alternative liquid automotive fuel labels.* The background color on all the labels is Orange: PMS 1495. The knock-out type within the black band is orange PMS 1495. All other type is process black. All borders are process black. All colors must be non-fade.

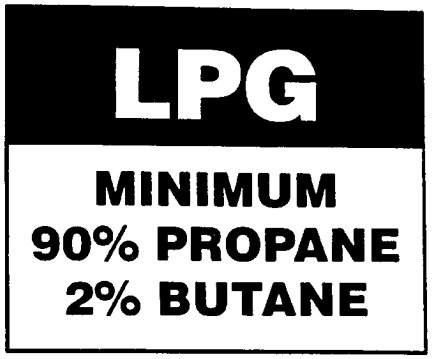
(d) *Contents.* Examples of the contents are shown in the sample labels. The proper octane rating for each gasoline must be shown. The proper automotive fuel rating for each alternative liquid automotive fuel must be shown. No marks or information other than that called for by this rule may appear on the labels.

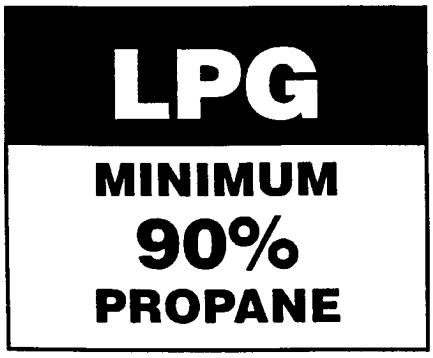
(e) *Special label protection.* All labels must be capable of withstanding extremes of weather conditions for a period of at least one year. They must be resistant to automotive fuel, oil, grease, solvents, detergents, and water.

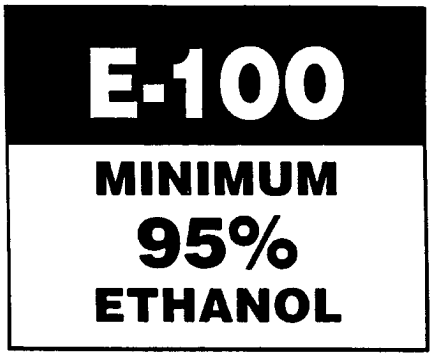
(f) *Illustrations of labels.* Labels should meet the specifications in this section, and should look like these examples, except the black print should be on the appropriately colored background.






[58 FR 41375, Aug. 3, 1993]

## PART 307—REGULATIONS UNDER THE COMPREHENSIVE SMOKELESS TOBACCO HEALTH EDUCATION ACT OF 1986

SCOPE

Sec.
307.1 Scope of regulations in this part.
307.2 Required warnings.

DEFINITIONS

307.3 Terms defined.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

307.4 Prohibited acts.
307.5 Language requirements.

LABEL DISCLOSURES

307.6 Requirements for disclosure on the label.

ADVERTISING DISCLOSURES

307.7 Requirements for disclosure in print advertising.
307.8 Requirements for disclosure in audio-visual and audio advertising.
307.9 Requirements for disclosure on utilitarian objects.
307.10 Cooperative advertising.

PLANS

307.11 Rotation, display, and distribution of warning statements on smokeless tobacco packages.
307.12 Rotation, display, and dissemination of warning statements in smokeless tobacco advertising.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 4401 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 51 FR 40015, Nov. 4, 1986, unless otherwise noted.

SCOPE

### § 307.1 Scope of regulations in this part.

These regulations implement the Comprehensive Smokeless Tobacco Health Education Act of 1986 *to be codified at* 15 U.S.C. 4401.

### § 307.2 Required warnings.

The Comprehensive Smokeless Tobacco Health Education Act of 1986 is the law that requires the enactment of these regulations. Section 7 of this law provides that no statement, other than the three warning statements required by the Act, shall be required by any Federal, State, or local statute or regulation to be included on the package or in the advertisement (unless the advertisement is an outdoor billboard) of a smokeless tobacco product. The warning statements required by the Act are as follows:

WARNING: THIS PRODUCT MAY CAUSE MOUTH CANCER
WARNING: THIS PRODUCT MAY CAUSE GUM DISEASE AND TOOTH LOSS
WARNING: THIS PRODUCT IS NOT A SAFE ALTERNATIVE TO CIGARETTES

DEFINITIONS

### § 307.3 Terms defined.

As used in this part, unless the context otherwise specifically requires:

(a) *Act* means the Comprehensive Smokeless Tobacco Health Education Act of 1986 (Pub. L. 99–252) and any amendments thereto.

(b) *Commission* means the Federal Trade Commission.

(c) *Regulation(s)* means regulations promulgated by the Commission pursuant to sections 3 and 5 of the Act.

(d) *Commerce* means (1) commerce between any State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Wake Island, Midway Islands, Kingman Reef, or Johnston Island and any place outside thereof; (2) commerce between points in any State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Wake Island, Midway Islands, Kingman Reef, or Johnston Island, but through any place outside thereof; or (3) commerce wholly within the District of Columbia, Guam, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Wake Island, Midway Islands, Kingman Reef, or Johnston Island.

(e) *United States*, when used in a geographical sense, means the several States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, Guam, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Wake Island, Midway Islands, Kingman Reef, Johnston Island, and installations of the Armed Forces.

(f) *Smokeless tobacco product* means any finely cut, ground, powered, or leaf tobacco that is intended to be placed in the oral cavity, including snuff, chewing tobacco, and plug tobacco.

(g) *Brand* means smokeless tobacco products that bear a common identifying name or mark, regardless of whether the products are differentiated by type of product, size, shape, packaging, or other characteristic, and, in the case of generic or private label smokeless tobacco products, means all products produced by a single manufacturer or its affiliates or imported by a single importer or its affiliates.

(h) *Package* means any pack, can, box, jar, carton, pouch, container, or wrapping in which any smokeless tobacco product is offered for sale, sold, or otherwise distributed to consumers, but for purposes of these regulations *package* does not include (1) any shipping container or wrapping used solely for transporting smokeless tobacco products in bulk or quantity to manufacturers, packagers, processors, wholesalers, or retailers unless the container or wrapping is intended for use as a retail display or (2) any wrapping or container that bears no written, printed, or graphic matter.

(i) *Label* means any written, printed, or graphic matter affixed to or appearing on any smokeless tobacco product or any package containing a smokeless tobacco product with the exception of any revenue stamp affixed to a smokeless tobacco product.

(j) *Billboard* means any outdoor sign with an area of more than 150 square feet.

(k) *Manufacturer* means any person who manufacturers, produces, or processes any smokeless tobacco product.

(l) *Packager* means any person who puts any smokeless tobacco product into packages to be offered for sale, sold, or distributed to consumers.

(m) *Importer* means any person who puts any smokeless tobacco product that was not manufactured inside the United States into commerce to be offered for sale, sold, or distributed to consumers.

(n) *Utilitarian objects* means items, other than smokeless tobacco products, that are sold or given or caused to be sold or given by any manufacturer, packager or importer to consumers for their personal use and that display the brand name, logo, or selling message of any smokeless tobacco product. Such items include, but are not limited to, pens, pencils, clothing or sporting goods.

[51 FR 40015, Nov. 4, 1986, as amended at 56 FR 11662, Mar. 20, 1991]

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**§307.4 Prohibited acts.**

(a) No manufacturer, packager, or importer of any smokeless tobacco product shall distribute, or cause to be distributed, in commerce any smokeless tobacco product in a package that, in accordance with the labeling requirements of the Act and these regulations, does not bear one of the following warning statements.

WARNING: THIS PRODUCT MAY CAUSE MOUTH CANCER
WARNING: THIS PRODUCT MAY CAUSE GUM DISEASE AND TOOTH LOSS
WARNING: THIS PRODUCT IS NOT A SAFE ALTERNATIVE TO CIGARETTES

Each smokeless tobacco product shall upon being prepared for distribution in commerce for retail sale, but before it is distributed to be offered for retail sale, be labeled in accordance with the Act and regulations in this part. In the case of an importer, the label statements may be affixed in the country of origin or after importation into the United States, but shall be affixed before the smokeless tobacco product is removed from bond for sale or distribution. This section does not apply to any smokeless tobacco product that is manufactured, packaged, or imported in the United States for export from the United States, if the product is not in fact distributed in commerce for use in the United States.

(b) No manufacturer, packager, or importer of any smokeless tobacco product shall advertise or cause to be advertised (other than through the use of billboard advertising) within the United States any smokeless tobacco product unless the advertising bears one of the warning statements as required by the Act and the regulations and set forth in §307.4(a). This requirement is not applicable to company and divisional names, when used as such, to signs on factories, plants, warehouses, and other facilities related to the manufacturer or factory storage of smokeless tobacco, to corporate or financial reports, to communications to security holders and others who customarily receive copies of these communications, to employment advertising, to advertising in tobacco trade publications, or to promotional materials that are distributed to smokeless tobacco wholesalers, dealers, or merchants, but not to consumers. In addition, this requirement does not apply to shelf-talkers and similar product locators with a display area of 12 square inches or less.

(c) No manufacturer, packager, or importer shall fail to submit a plan to the Commission which specifies the method that will be used to rotate, display, and distribute the statements required by the Act and regulations in this part. The Commission shall approve a plan if the plan provides for the rotation, display, and distribution of the statements in a manner that complies with the Act and these regulations. Authority to approve plans submitted by smokeless tobacco manufacturers, packagers, and importers has been delegated by the Commission to the Associate Director for Advertising Practices. Where significant issues not previously considered by the Commission are present, however, those plans will be referred by the Associate Director for Advertising Practices to the Commission in the first instance. This delegation is authorized by section 1(a) of the Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1961 in order to enhance the efficiency and result in expedited treatment of these plans. Pursuant to section 1(b) of the Reorganization Plan, the Commission

will retain the discretionary right to review the actions of the delegate. Any smokeless tobacco manufacturer, packager, or importer may within 30 days of the delegate's action file with the Secretary of the Commission a request for full Commission review of the action. If no review is sought by petition of the submitter of a plan or any intervenor or upon the Commission's own initiative within 30 days of the action, or if a review is sought and denied in this 30 day period, the delegate's action shall be deemed to be the action of the Commission.

(d) A manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products shall be deemed to be in compliance with the Act and these regulations if it has taken reasonable steps to:

(1) Provide, by written contract or other clear instructions, for the rotation of the label statements required by the Act;

(2) Give clear instructions and, if possible, furnish materials (such as film negatives, acetates, or other facsimiles) for the production of smokeless tobacco packages and advertising that contain the required warning statements; and

(3) Prevent and correct mistakes, errors, or omissions that have come to its attention.

In the event of the distribution of labels or the publication of advertisements that do not conform with the Act and these regulations, the burden of establishing that reasonable steps have been taken (including fulfilling the conditions described in paragraphs (d)(1) through (3) of this section) to comply shall rest with the manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco.

[51 FR 40015, Nov. 4, 1986, as amended at 56 FR 11662, Mar. 20, 1991]

### § 307.5 Language requirements.

The warning statement on the label of a smokeless tobacco product required by the Act and these regulations shall be set out in the English language. If the label of a smokeless tobacco product contains a required warning in a language other than English, the required warning must also appear in English. In the case of an advertisement for a smokeless tobacco product in a newspaper, magazine, periodical, or other publication that is not in English, the warning statement shall appear in the predominant language of the publication in which the advertisement appears. In the case of any other advertisement, the warning statement shall appear in the same language as that principally used in the advertisement.

LABEL DISCLOSURES

### § 307.6 Requirements for disclosure on the label.

(a) In the case of the label of a smokeless tobacco package, the warning statement required by the Act and these regulations must be in a conspicuous and prominent place on the package. A conspicuous and prominent place is a part of a label that is likely to be displayed, presented, shown, or examined. For example, in the case of the following types of packages, the following places shall be deemed to be conspicuous and prominent.

Cylindrical can—Side of the package

Pouch—Front of the package, provided that, in the case of a pouch with two identical face panels, the front of the pouch is the face panel upon which the warning is printed

Rectangular box of snuff, plug of chewing tobacco, or dispenser of individual packages of smokeless tobacco that may be purchased in its entirety—Any side of the package, provided that the side panel used does not bear any written or graphic matter other than the background color of the side panel and reasonable extensions of graphic matter from other panels

However, in the case of any package of smokeless tobacco, absent special circumstances, the required warning statement shall not be deemed to be in a conspicuous and prominent place if it appears on the bottom (that is, the underside) of the package or is printed on the tear line or on any other surface where it will be obliterated when the package is opened. However, in the case of a rectangular package that is wrapped in a continuous sheet of foil or plastic with randomly appearing label information, the required warning shall be deemed to be in a conspicuous and prominent place if it appears at least once in its entirety on any part of

the package that is not crimped or seamed.

(b) The label statement required by the Act and these regulations must also be in a conspicuous format and in a conspicuous and legible type in contrast with all other printed material on the package. The required warning statement shall be deemed to be in a conspicuous format if it appears in two to four lines that are parallel to each other as well as to the base of the package. However, in the case of a cylindrical package with a diameter of 1 and ¾ inches or less the required warning statement need not be parallel with the base of the package to be deemed to be in a conspicuous format. In the case of all packages the required warning statement shall be deemed to be in a conspicuous format if it is separated in every direction from other written or graphic matter on the label by the equivalent of at least twice the point size of the type in which the warning is printed or if it is the only written matter on the surface of the package. The required warning statement shall be deemed to be in a conspicuous and legible type if it appears in all capitals in Univers 57 normal or an equivalent type style. For example, in the case of the following types of packages with the specified capacity, the following type sizes shall be deemed to be conspicuous and legible.

1 and ½ ounce snuff can—Seven point type

2 to 4 ounce pouch or plug of chewing tobacco—Eight point type, provided that if the warning statement is printed in one line, it will be deemed to be conspicuous and legible in eleven point type

Can roll consisting of cans wrapped for sale as a single unit—Twelve point type, provided that, if the warning statements on the individual cans are completely visible no warning statement is required on the outer wrapping

Dispenser of individual packages of smokeless tobacco that may be purchased in its entirety—Twelve point type

The required warning statement shall be deemed to be in contrast with all other printed material on the package if it is printed in a color (including black and white) that is clearly visible against the background on which the warning appears.

ADVERTISING DISCLOSURES

### §307.7 Requirements for disclosure in print advertising.

(a) In the case of print advertisements for smokeless tobacco, including but not limited to, advertisements in newspapers, magazines, or other periodicals; point-of-sale promotional materials; non-point of sale promotional materials such as leaflets, pamphlets, coupons, direct mail circulars, or paperback book inserts; and posters and placards (other than outdoor billboard advertising), the warning statement required by the Act and these regulations must be in a conspicuous and prominent location, in conspicuous and legible type in contrast with all other printed material in the advertisement and must appear in capital letters in a circle and arrow format. A conspicuous and prominent location is anywhere within the trim area other than the margin in the case of an advertisement in a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical, and in all cases is not immediately next to other written matter or to any circular designs, elements, or similar geometric forms (other than a picture of a smokeless tobacco package such as a cylindrical snuff can). A circle and arrow will not be deemed to be conspicuous and prominent if it is included as an integral part of a specific design or illustration, such as a picture of the package, in the advertisement, unless at least 80 percent of the area of the advertisement is taken up by a picture of the package.

(b) The advertising warning statements required by the Act and these regulations must be in conspicuous and legible type in contrast with all other printed material in the advertisement and must appear in all capital letters in a circle and arrow format. The proportions of the circle and arrow shall be deemed to be conspicuous if they are such that the base of the arrow is equal to ¾ of the diameter of the circle; the neck of the arrow is equal to ⅛ of the diameter of the circle; the widest part of the head of the arrow is equal to the diameter of the circle; the tip of the arrow is centered at a point equal to ¾ of the diameter from the lowest point of the circle; and the distance between the tip of the arrow and the base of the

arrow is equal to ⅜ of the diameter of the circle. The statements shall be deemed to be conspicous if they are parallel to the foot of the advertisement and centered in the circle, and the word ''WARNING'' followed by a colon appears in the neck of the arrow.

(c) The required warning statement shall be deemed to be conspicuous if it is printed in all capitals in Univers 57 normal or an equivalent type style and:

(1) The rule and the statement are printed in a color (including black and white) that is clearly visible against the background upon which they appear; and

(2) The background field within the circle and arrow is clearly visible against the background of the advertisement; and

(3) The warning has the following minimum outside dimensions in relation to the size of the advertisement.

*1*
*Display Area:* ***Up to 15 square inches***
*Circle Diameter:* ***1/2"***
*Rule Width:* ***1 point***
*Type Size:* ***4 1/2 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 57***

*2*
*Display Area:* ***15 to 65 square inches***
*Circle Diameter:* ***1"***
*Rule Width:* ***1 1/2 point***
*Type Size:* ***8 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 57***

*3*
*Display Area:* ***65 to 110 square inches***
*Circle Diameter:* ***1 1/4"***
*Rule Width:* ***2 point***
*Type Size:* ***10 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 57***

*4*
*Display Area:* ***110 to 180 square inches***
*Circle Diameter:* ***1 1/2"***
*Rule Width:* ***2 1/2 point***
*Type Size:* ***12 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 57***

*5*
*Display Area:* ***180 to 360 square inches***
*Circle Diameter:* ***1 3/4"***
*Rule Width:* ***2 1/2 point***
*Type Size:* ***14 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 57***

*6*
*Display Area:* ***360 to 470 square inches***
*Circle Diameter:* ***2"***
*Rule Width:* ***2 1/2 point***
*Type Size:* ***16 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 57***

*7*
*Display Area:* ***470 to 720 square inches***
*Circle Diameter:* ***3 1/4"***
*Rule Width:* ***3 1/2 point***
*Type Size:* ***27 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 57***

*8*
*Display Area:* ***5 to 10 square feet***
*Circle Diameter:* ***3 3/4"***
*Rule Width:* ***3 1/2 point***
*Type Size:* ***30 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 57***

*9*
*Display Area:* ***10 to 20 square feet***
*Circle Diameter:* ***6"***
*Rule Width:* ***3 1/2 point***
*Type Size:* ***48 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 57***

*10*
*Display Area:* ***20 to 30 square feet***
*Circle Diameter:* ***7"***
*Rule Width:* ***7 point***
*Type Size:* ***58 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 57***

*11*
*Display Area:* ***30 to 40 square feet***
*Circle Diameter:* ***8 3/4"***
*Rule Width:* ***9 point***
*Type Size:* ***72 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 57***

*12*
*Display Area:* ***40 to 80 square feet***
*Circle Diameter:* ***11 3/4"***
*Rule Width:* ***12 point***
*Type Size:* ***96 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 57***

*13*
*Display Area:* ***Over 80 square feet***
*Circle Diameter:* ***1' 4 3/4"***
*Rule Width:* ***14 point***
*Type Size:* ***1 7/16" cap height, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 57***

A warning printed in black in a circle with a black rule and a white interior background shall be deemed a clearly visible color against a clearly visible background, except that any such black on white warning that appears against a uniform white background in an advertisement shall be deemed to be conspicuous only if it meets the size requirements of §307.7(d) of this section.

(d) As an alternative to the format specified in §307.7(c), the required

warning statement shall be deemed to be conspicuous if it is printed in all capitals in Univers 67 normal or an equivalent type style and

(1) The rule that forms the circle and arrow and the required statement are printed in a color (including black and white) that is clearly visible against the background upon which they appear,

(2) The background of the circle and arrow is a uniform color, and

(3) The warning has the following minimum outside dimensions in relation to the size of the advertisement.

*1*
*Display Area:* ***Up to 15 square inches***
*Circle Diameter:* ***5/8"***
*Rule Width:* ***1 point***
*Type Size:* ***5 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 67***

*2*
*Display Area:* ***15 to 65 square inches***
*Circle Diameter:* ***1 1/4"***
*Rule Width:* ***2 point***
*Type Size:* ***10 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 67***

*3*
*Display Area:* ***65 to 110 square inches***
*Circle Diameter:* ***1 5/8"***
*Rule Width:* ***2 1/2 point***
*Type Size:* ***12 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 67***

*4*
*Display Area:* ***110 to 180 square inches***
*Circle Diameter:* ***2"***
*Rule Width:* ***3 point***
*Type Size:* ***15 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 67***

*5*
*Display Area:* ***180 to 360 square inches***
*Circle Diameter:* ***2 1/4"***
*Rule Width:* ***3 point***
*Type Size:* ***17 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 67***

*6*
*Display Area:* ***360 to 470 square inches***
*Circle Diameter:* ***2 5/8"***
*Rule Width:* ***3 point***
*Type Size:* ***20 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 67***

*7*
*Display Area:* ***470 to 720 square inches***
*Circle Diameter:* ***4 1/4"***
*Rule Width:* ***4 point***
*Type Size:* ***34 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 67***

*8*
*Display Area:* ***5 to 10 square feet***
*Circle Diameter:* ***4 7/8"***
*Rule Width:* ***4 point***
*Type Size:* ***36 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 67***

*9*
*Display Area:* ***10 to 20 square feet***
*Circle Diameter:* ***7 3/4"***
*Rule Width:* ***6 point***
*Type Size:* ***57 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 67***

*10*
*Display Area:* ***20 to 30 square feet***
*Circle diameter:* ***9 1/8"***
*Rule Width:* ***9 point***
*Type Size:* ***76 point, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 67***

*11*
*Display Area* ***30 to 40 square feet***
*Circle Diameter:* ***11 3/8"***
*Rule Width* ***11 point***
*Type Size* ***94 point, set solid***
*Type Style* ***Univers 67***

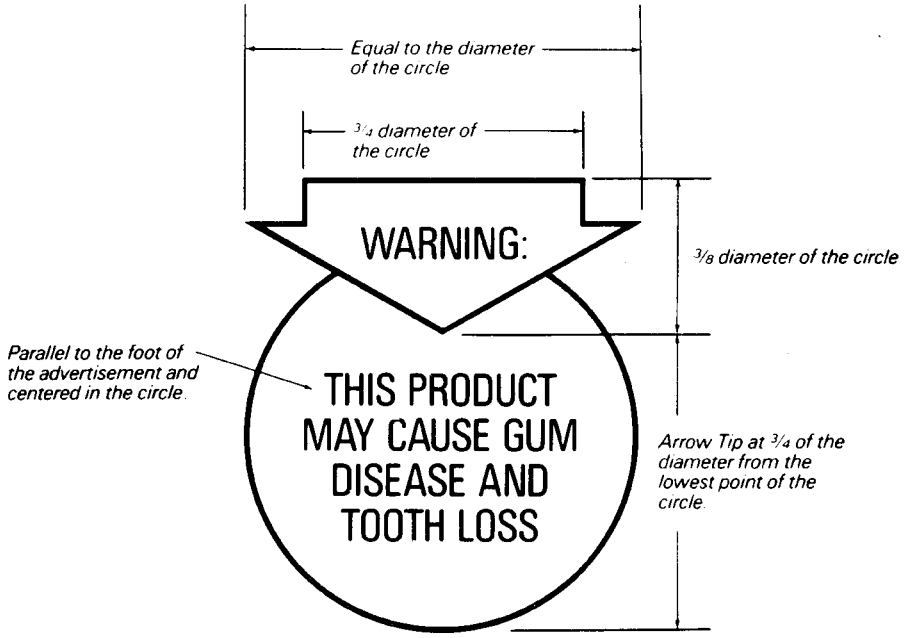
*12*
*Display Area:* ***40 to 80 square feet***
*Circle Diameter:* ***15 1/4"***
*Rule Width* ***15 point***
*Type Size:* ***1 5/16" cap height, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 67***

*13*
*Display Area:* ***Over 80 square feet***
*Circle Diameter:* ***1'9 3/4"***
*Rule Width:* ***17 point***
*Type Size:* ***1 13/16" cap height, set solid***
*Type Style:* ***Univers 67***

(e) An advertisement in a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical that occupies more than one page shall not be required to have more than one warning statement, but the dimensions of the circle and arrow shall be determined by the aggregate area of the entire advertisement, and the warning

statement shall appear on the page that contains most of the advertisement. Point-of-sale and non-point of sale promotional materials of more than one page in length shall not be required to have more than one warning statement, and the dimensions of the circle and arrow shall be determined by the size of the advertisement on the page on which most of the advertisement appears. Warning statements in circles and arrows that meet the specifications of this section and conform to the following diagram shall be deemed to be in a conspicuous format.

## *How to Conform to the Rule*




**§ 307.8 Requirements for disclosure in audiovisual and audio advertising.**

In the case of advertisements for smokeless tobacco on videotapes, casettes, or discs; promotional films or filmstrips; and promotional audiotapes or other types of sound recordings, the warning statement required by the Act and these regulations must be conspicuous and prominent. If the advertisement has a visual component, the warning statement shall be deemed to be conspicuous and prominent if it is superimposed on the screen in a circle and arrow format at the end of the advertisement for a length of time and in graphics so that it is easily legible. If the advertisement has an audio component, the warning statement shall be

deemed to be conspicuous and prominent if it is announced at the end of the advertisement in a manner that is clearly audible. If an advertisement has both a visual and an audio component, the warning statement shall be deemed to be conspicuous and prominent if it is superimposed on the screen in a circle and arrow format and announced simultaneously at the end of the advertisement in a manner that is easily legible and clearly audible. Provided, however, in the case of an audio advertisement in a retail store or other place where smokeless tobacco products are offered for sale, no warning shall be required, even if a manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products provides an incentive for disseminating the ad, so long as the announcement includes only the brand name or product identifier, the price, and the product's location in the store.

**§307.9 Requirements for disclosure on utilitarian objects.**

(a) In the case of advertisements for smokeless tobacco products on utilitarian objects, the warning statements required by the Act and these regulations must be in a conspicuous and legible type in contrast with all other printed material on the object and must appear within the circle and arrow format. The proportions of the circle and arrow shall be deemed to be conspicuous if in accordance with with those set forth in §307.7(b). The required warning statement shall be deemed conspicuous if it conforms to the requirements and proportions as set forth in §§307.7(c) and 307.7(d). For purposes of determining the size of the warning statement, the display area for an advertisement on a utilitarian object shall be the visible area on which the brand name, logo or selling message appears. For example, the display area for a t-shirt with a brand name, logo or selling message on the front or back is the entire front or back of the shirt, excluding any sleeves. For a t-shirt with a brand name, logo or selling message on the sleeve, the display area is the sleeve. However, in no case must the diameter of the circle exceed the longest line displayed in the brand name, logo or selling message. The Commission considers a logo to include any brand specific characteristics of a smokeless tobacco product, including but not limited to any recognizable pattern of colors or symbols associated with a particular brand.

(b) The warning statement required by the Act and these regulations must be printed, embossed, embroidered or otherwise affixed to the utilitarian object with a permanence and durability that is comparable to the permanence and durability of the brand name, logo, or selling message. For example, if a product brand name or logo is embroidered on a hat, and a legible warning cannot be embroidered in the proper size due to technological limitations, the warning may be affixed to the hat by another method, so long as its permanence and durability is comparable to that of the brand name, logo or selling message.

(c) The warning statement required by this Act and these regulations must be in a conspicuous and prominent location on the object. A conspicuous and prominent location on the object is one that is proximate to and on the same surface as the smokeless tobacco brand name, logo, or selling message, and is visible when the brand name, logo or selling message is visible. If the brand name, logo or selling message is displayed in more than one location on the utilitarian object, the warning must appear proximate to each brand name, logo or selling message. In the alternative, the warning may appear only once on the object; in that case, however, the advertising display area consists of the aggregate of all the surface areas on which any brand names, logos or selling messages appear.

(d) *Small Items.* For those utilitarian objects under 8 square inches which are viewed predominantly by the user, the warning statement required by this Act and by these regulations shall be deemed conspicuous and prominent when:

(1) Printed on the package of an item, if the item is disseminated in a package to the consumer. The entire surface area of the package would comprise the display area for purposes of determining warning size in accordance with §§307.7 (c) and (d) of the current regulations; or

(2) Placed in the form of a sticker or decal directly onto the item in the Number 1 warning size as set forth in §§ 307.7 (c) and (d) of the current regulations. The item should be packaged in such a way to ensure that the sticker cannot be removed before placement in the hands of the consumer.

(e) *Hats.* For fabric baseball style hats, the warning statement required by the Act and these regulations shall be deemed conspicuous and prominent in the Number 3 size as set forth in §§ 307.7 (c) and (d).

(f) Any manufacturer, packager or importer may apply to the Commission for an exemption from the warning requirements of the Act and these regulations for items such as food products to which the health warnings could logically apply. Authority to grant such exemptions has been delegated by the Commission to the Associate Director for Advertising Practices. Where significant issues not previously considered by the Commission are present, however, those plans will be referred by the Associate Director for Advertising Practices to the Commission in the first instance. This delegation is authorized by section 1(a) of the Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1961 in order to enhance the efficiency and result in expedited treatment of any request for an exemption. The Commission's discretionary right to review actions of the delegate, and the procedure by which a smokeless tobacco manufacturer, packager, or importer may request full Commission review of the delegate's action are as set forth in § 307.4(c) of these regulations.

[56 FR 11662, Mar. 20, 1991]

### § 307.10 Cooperative advertising.

The Act prohibits any manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products from advertising or causing to advertise any smokeless tobacco product within the United States without the required warning. Accordingly, all advertisements for smokeless tobacco products (including cooperative advertisement) paid for, directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, by a manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products must bear the required warning. Provided, however, in the case of a print advertisement for a smokeless tobacco product disseminated by a retailer of smokeless tobacco products, other than a manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products, with a display area of 4 square inches or less, no warning is required so long as the advertisement contains only the brand name or other product identifier and a price. In addition, no warning is required in the case of certain in-store audio announcements as described in § 307.8. Any advertisement of a smokeless tobacco product paid for entirely by a retailer or any person other than a manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products need not carry a warning statement.

[51 FR 40015, Nov. 4, 1986. Redesignated at 56 FR 11662, Mar. 20, 1991]

## PLANS

### § 307.11 Rotation, display, and distribution of warning statements on smokeless tobacco packages.

(a) In the case of the package of a smokeless tobacco product, each of the three warning statements required by the Act must (1) be displayed randomly by each manufacturer, packager, or importer of a smokeless tobacco product in each 12-month period in as equal a number of times as possible on each brand of the product and (2) be randomly distributed in all parts of the United States in which the product is marketed. The Commission will interpret the statutory language ''equal number of times as possible'' as permitting deviations of 4 percent or less in a 12-month period. Random distribution means that there is nothing in the production or distribution process of a smokeless tobacco product that would prevent the three warning statements on the package from being distributed evenly in all parts of the United States where the product is marketed.

(b) Each manufacturer, packager, or importer of a smokeless tobacco product shall submit to the Commission or its designated representative a plan that provides for the display of the three warning statements on the package of a smokeless tobacco product as required by the Act and these regulations. This plan shall be sufficiently detailed to enable the Commission to

determine whether the warning statements appear on the package in a manner consistent with the Act and these regulations. These requirements may be satisfied in a number of ways. For example, a plan may satisfy the equal display requirement by providing for the engraving or preparation of cylinders, plates, or equivalent production materials in a manner that results in the simultaneous printing of the three required warnings in as near an equal number of times as possible under the circumstances. Alternatively, a plan may satisfy the equal display requirement by providing that stickers bearing the three required warnings be printed in equal numbers and affixed randomly to packages of the product. Alternatively, a plan may satisfy the equal display requirement by providing for the preparation of separate cylinders, plates, and equivalent production materials and requiring that they be changed at fixed intervals in a manner that results in the display of the three required warnings in as near an equal number of times as possible under the circumstances during a 1-year period. In any event, nothing in these regulations requires the use of more than one warning statement on the label of any brand during a given 4-month period.

(c) A plan for the rotation, display, and distribution of warning statements on smokeless tobacco packages shall include representative samples of labels with each of the three warning statements required by the Act and these regulations. This provision does not require submission of a label with each of the required warning statements for every brand marketed by a manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products and shall be deemed to be satisfied by submission of labels for different types of smokeless tobacco products, such as moist snuff, scotch snuff, and loose-leaf and plug chewing tobacco, and a range of package sizes for each type of product.

[51 FR 40015, Nov. 4, 1986. Redesignated at 56 FR 11662, Mar. 20, 1991]

**§307.12 Rotation, display, and dissemination of warning statements in smokeless tobacco advertising.**

(a) In the case of advertising for a smokeless tobacco product, each of the three warning statements required by the Act must be rotated every 4 months by each manufacturer, packager, or importer of a smokeless tobacco product in an alternating sequence in the advertisement for each brand of the product. Any rotational system, however, may take into account practical constraints on the production and distribution of advertising.

(b) Each manufacturer, packager, or importer of a smokeless tobacco product must submit a plan to the Commission or its designated representative that ensures that the three warning statements are rotated every four (4) months in alternating sequence. There may be more than one system, however, that complies with the Act and these regulations. For example, a plan may require all brands to display the same warning during each four-month period or require each brand to display a different warning during a given four-month period. A plan shall describe the method of rotation and shall include a list of the designated warnings for each four-month period during the first year for each brand. A plan shall describe the method that will be used to ensure the proper rotation in different advertising media in sufficient detail to ensure compliance with the Act and these regulations, although a number of different methods may satisfy these requirements. For example, a satisfactory plan for advertising in newspapers, magazines, or other periodicals could provide for rotation according to either the cover or closing date of the publication. A satisfactory plan for posters and placards, other than billboard advertising, could provide for rotation according to either the scheduled or the actual appearance of the advertising. A satisfactory plan for point-of-sale and non-point-of-sale promotional materials such as leaflets, pamphlets, coupons, direct mail circulars, paperback book inserts, or non-print items, or for utilitarian objects, could provide for rotation according to the date the materials or objects are

ordered by the smokeless tobacco manufacturer, or the date the objects or materials are scheduled to be disseminated, provided that the production of such materials or objects is carried out in a manner consistent with customary business practices.

(c) A plan for the rotation, display, and dissemination of warning statements in smokeless tobacco advertising shall include a representative sample of each of the three warning statements required by the Act and these regulations. This provision does not require the submission of all advertising for each brand marketed by a manufacturer, packager, or importer of smokeless tobacco products and shall be deemed to be satisfied by submission of actual examples of different types of advertising materials for various brands, prototypes of actual advertising materials, the warning statement as it would appear in different sizes of advertisements, or acetates or other facsimiles for the warning statement as it would appear in different sizes of advertisements.

[51 FR 40015, Nov. 4, 1986. Redesignated and amended at 56 FR 11662, 11663, Mar. 20, 1991; 58 FR 4874, Jan. 15, 1993; 61 FR 45886, Aug. 30, 1996]

## PART 308—TRADE REGULATION RULE PURSUANT TO THE TELEPHONE DISCLOSURE AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION ACT OF 1992

Sec.

308.1 Scope of regulations in this part.
308.2 Definitions.
308.3 Advertising of pay-per-call services.
308.4 Special rule for infrequent publications.
308.5 Pay-per-call service standards.
308.6 Access to information.
308.7 Billing and collection for pay-per-call services.
308.8 Severability.
308.9 Rulemaking review.

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 102–556, 106 Stat. 4181 (15 U.S.C. 5701, et seq.)

SOURCE: 58 FR 42400, Aug. 9, 1993, unless otherwise noted.

### § 308.1 Scope of regulations in this part.

This rule implements titles II and III of the Telephone Disclosure and Dispute Resolution Act of 1992, to be codified in relevant part at 15 U.S.C. 5711–14, 5721–24.

### § 308.2 Definitions.

(a) *Bona fide educational service* means any pay-per-call service dedicated to providing information or instruction relating to education, subjects of academic study, or other related areas of school study.

(b) *Commission* means the Federal Trade Commission.

(c) *Pay-per-call service* has the meaning provided in section 228 of the Communications Act of 1934, 47 U.S.C. 228.[1]

(d) *Person* means any individual, partnership, corporation, association, government or governmental subdivision or agency, or other entity.

(e)(1) *Presubscription or comparable arrangement* means a contractual agreement in which

(i) The service provider clearly and conspicuously discloses to the consumer all material terms and conditions associated with the use of the service, including the service provider's name and address, a business telephone number which the consumer

[1] Section 228 of the Communications Act of 1934 states:

(1) The term *pay-per-call services* means any service—

(A) In which any person provides or purports to provide—

(i) Audio information or audio entertainment produced or packaged by such person;

(ii) Access to simultaneous voice conversation services; or

(iii) Any service, including the provision of a product, the charges for which are assessed on the basis of the completion of the call;

(B) For which the caller pays a per-call or per-time-interval charge that is greater than, or in addition to, the charge for transmission of the call; and

(C) Which is accessed through use of a 900 telephone number or other prefix or area code designated by the (Federal Communications) Commission in accordance with subsection (b)(5) (47 U.S.C. 228(b)(5)).

(2) Such term does not include directory services provided by a common carrier or its affiliate or by a local exchange carrier or its affiliate, or any service the charge for which is tariffed, or any service for which users are assessed charges only after entering into a presubcription or comparable arrangement with the provider of such service.

may use to obtain additional information or to register a complaint, and the rates for the service;

(ii) The service provider agrees to notify the consumer of any future rate changes;

(iii) The consumer agrees to utilize the service on the terms and conditions disclosed by the service provider; and

(iv) The service provider requires the use of an identification number or other means to prevent unauthorized access to the service by nonsubscribers.

(2) Disclosure of a credit card or charge card number, along with authorization to bill that number, made during the course of a call to a pay-per-call service shall constitute a presubscription or comparable arrangement if the credit or charge card is subject to the dispute resolution requirements of the Fair Credit Billing Act and the Truth in Lending Act, as amended. No other action taken by the consumer during the course of a call to a pay-per-call service can be construed as creating a presubscription or comparable arrangement.

(f) *Program-length commercial* means any commercial or other advertisement fifteen (15) minutes in length or longer or intended to fill a television or radio broadcasting or cablecasting time slot of fifteen (15) minutes in length or longer.

(g) *Provider of pay-per-call services* means any person who sells or offers to sell a pay-per-call service. A person who provides only transmission services or billing and collection services shall not be considered a provider of pay-per-call services.

(h) *Reasonably understandable volume* means at an audible level that renders the message intelligible to the receiving audience, and, in any event, at least the same audible level as that principally used in the advertisement or the pay-per-call service.

(i) *Service bureau* means any person, other than a common carrier, who provides, among other things, access to telephone service and voice storage to pay-per-call service providers.

(j) *Slow and deliberate manner* means at a rate that renders the message intelligible to the receiving audience, and, in any event, at a cadence or rate no faster than that principally used in the advertisement or the pay-per-call service.

(k) *Sweepstakes,* including games of chance, means a game or promotional mechanism that involves the elements of a prize and chance and does not require consideration.

**§308.3 Advertising of pay-per-call services.**

(a) *General requirements.* The following requirements apply to disclosures required in advertisements under §§308.3 (b)–(d), and (f):

(1) The disclosures shall be made in the same language as that principally used in the advertisement.

(2) Television video and print disclosures shall be of a color or shade that readily contrasts with the background of the advertisement.

(3) In print advertisements, disclosures shall be parallel with the base of the advertisement.

(4) Audio disclosures, whether in television or radio, shall be delivered in a slow and deliberate manner and in a reasonably understandable volume.

(5) Nothing contrary to, inconsistent with, or in mitigation of, the required disclosures shall be used in any advertisement in any medium; nor shall any audio, video or print technique be used that is likely to detract significantly from the communication of the disclosures.

(6) In any program-length commercial, required disclosures shall be made at least three times (unless more frequent disclosure is otherwise required) near the beginning, middle and end of the commercial.

(b) *Cost of the call.* (1) The provider of pay-per-call services shall clearly and conspicuously disclose the cost of the call, in Arabic numerals, in any advertisement for the pay-per-call service, as follows:

(i) If there is a flat fee for the call, the advertisement shall state the total cost of the call.

(ii) If the call is billed on a time-sensitive basis, the advertisement shall state the cost per minute and any minimum charges. If the length of the program can be determined in advance, the advertisement shall also state the

maximum charge that could be incurred if the caller listens to the complete program.

(iii) If the call is billed on a variable rate basis, the advertisement shall state, in accordance with §§ 308.3(b)(1)(i) and (ii), the cost of the initial portion of the call, any minimum charges, and the range of rates that may be charged depending on the options chosen by the caller.

(iv) The advertisement shall disclose any other fees that will be charged for the service.

(v) if the caller may be transferred to another pay-per-call service, the advertisement shall disclose the cost of the other call, in accordance with §§ 308.3(b)(1)(i), (ii), (iii), and (iv).

(2) For purposes of § 308.3(b), disclosures shall be made ''clearly and conspicuously'' as set forth in § 308.3(a) and as follows:

(i) In a television or videotape advertisement, the video disclosure shall appear adjacent to each video presentation of the pay-per-call number. However, in an advertisement displaying more than one pay-per-call number with the same cost, the video disclosure need only appear adjacent to the largest presentation of the pay-per-call number. Each letter or numeral of the video disclosure shall be, at a minimum, one-half the size of each letter or numeral of the pay-per-call number to which the disclosure is adjacent. In addition, the video disclosure shall appear on the screen for the duration of the presentation of the pay-per-call number. An audio disclosure shall be made at least once, simultaneously with a video presentation of the disclosure. However, no audio presentation of the disclosure is required in: (A) An advertisement fifteen (15) seconds or less in length in which the pay-per-call number is not presented in the audio portion, or (B) an advertisement in which there is no audio presentation of information regarding the pay-per-call service, including the pay-per-call number. In an advertisement in which the pay-per-call number is presented *only* in the audio portion, the cost of the call shall be delivered immediately following the first and last delivery of the pay-per-call number, except that in a program-length commercial, the disclosure shall be delivered immediately following each delivery of the pay-per-call number.

(ii) In a print advertisement, the disclosure shall be placed adjacent to each presentation of the pay-per-call number. However, in an advertisement displaying more than one pay-per-call number with the same cost, the disclosure need only appear adjacent to the largest presentation of the pay-per-call number. Each letter or numeral of the disclosure shall be, at a minimum, one-half the size of each letter or numeral of the pay-per-call number to which the disclosure is adjacent.

(iii) In a radio advertisement, the disclosure shall be made at least once, and shall be delivered immediately following the first delivery of the pay-per-call number. In a program-length commercial, the disclosure shall be delivered immediately following each delivery of the pay-per-call number.

(c) *Sweepstakes; games of chance.* (1) The provider of pay-per-call services that advertises a prize or award or a service or product at no cost or for a reduced cost, to be awarded to the winner of any sweepstakes, including games of chance, shall clearly and conspicuously disclose in the advertisement the odds of being able to receive the prize, award, service, or product at no cost or reduced cost. If the odds are not calculable in advance, the advertisement shall disclose the factors used in calculating the odds. Either the advertisement or the preamble required by § 308.5(a) for such service shall clearly and conspicuously disclose that no call to the pay-per-call service is required to participate, and shall also disclose the existence of a free alternative method of entry, and either instructions on how to enter, or a local or toll-free telephone number or address to which consumers may call or write for information on how to enter the sweepstakes. Any description or characterization of the prize, award, service, or product that is being offered at no cost or reduced cost shall be truthful and accurate.

(2) For purposes of § 308.3(c), disclosures shall be made ''clearly and conspicuously'' as set forth in § 308.3(a) and as follows:

(i) In a television or videotape advertisement, the disclosures may be made in either the audio or video portion of the advertisement. If the disclosures are made in the video portion, they shall appear on the screen in sufficient size and for sufficient time to allow consumers to read and comprehend the disclosures.

(ii) In a print advertisement, the disclosures shall appear in a sufficient size and prominence and such location to be readily noticeable, readable and comprehensible.

(d) *Federal programs.* (1) The provider of pay-per-call services that advertises a pay-per-call service that is not operated or expressly authorized by a Federal agency, but that provides information on a Federal program, shall clearly and conspicuously disclose in the advertisement that the pay-per-call service is not authorized, endorsed, or approved by any Federal agency. Advertisements providing information on a Federal program shall include, but not be limited to, advertisements that contain a seal, insignia, trade or brand name, or any other term or symbol that reasonably could be interpreted or construed as implying any Federal government connection, approval, or endorsement.

(2) For purposes of § 308.3(d), disclosures shall be made ''clearly and conspicuously'' as set forth in § 308.3(a) and as follows:

(i) In a television or videotape advertisement, the disclosure may be made in either the audio or video portion of the advertisement. If the disclosure is made in the video portion, it shall appear on the screen in sufficient size and for sufficient time to allow consumers to read and comprehend the disclosure. The disclosure shall begin within the first fifteen (15) seconds of the advertisement.

(ii) In a print advertisement, the disclosure shall appear in a sufficient size and prominence and such location to be readily noticeable, readable and comprehensible. The disclosure shall appear in the top one-third of the advertisement.

(iii) In a radio advertisement, the disclosure shall begin within the first fifteen (15) seconds of the advertisement.

(e) *Prohibition on advertising to children.* (1) The provider of pay-per-call services shall not direct advertisements for such pay-per-call services to children under the age of 12, unless the service is a bona fide educational service.

(2) For the purposes of this regulation, advertisements directed to children under 12 shall include: any pay-per-call advertisement appearing during or immediately adjacent to programming for which competent and reliable audience composition data demonstrate that more than 50% of the audience is composed of children under 12, and any pay-per-call advertisement appearing in a periodical for which competent and reliable readership data demonstrate that more than 50% of the readership is composed of children under 12.

(3) For the purposes of this regulation, if competent and reliable audience composition or readership data does not demonstrate that more than 50% of the audience or readership is composed of children under 12, then the Commission shall consider the following criteria in determining whether an advertisement is directed to children under 12:

(i) Whether the advertisement appears in a publication directed to children under 12, including, but not limited to, books, magazines and comic books;

(ii) Whether the advertisement appears during or immediately adjacent to television programs directed to children under 12, including, but not limited to, children's programming as defined by the Federal Communications Commission, animated programs, and after-school programs;

(iii) Whether the advertisement appears on a television station or channel directed to children under 12;

(iv) Whether the advertisement is broadcast during or immediately adjacent to radio programs directed to children under 12, or broadcast on a radio station directed to children under 12;

(v) Whether the advertisement appears on the same video as a commercially-prepared video directed to children under 12, or preceding a movie directed to children under 12 shown in a movie theater;

(vi) Whether the advertisement or promotion appears on product packaging directed to children under 12; and

(vii) Whether the advertisement, regardless of when or where it appears, is directed to children under 12 in light of its subject matter, visual content, age of models, language, characters, tone, message, or the like.

(f) *Advertising to individuals under the age of 18.* (1) The provider of pay-per-call services shall ensure that any pay-per-call advertisement directed primarily to individuals under the age of 18 shall contain a clear and conspicuous disclosure that all individuals under the age of 18 must have the permission of such individual's parent or legal guardian prior to calling such pay-per-call service.

(2) For purposes of § 308.3(f), disclosures shall be made ''clearly and conspicuously'' as set forth in § 308.3(a) and as follows:

(i) In a television or videotape advertisement, each letter or numeral of the video disclosure shall be, at a minimum, one-half the size of each letter or numeral of the largest presentation of the pay-per-call number. The video disclosure shall appear on the screen for sufficient time to allow consumers to read and comprehend the disclosure. An audio disclosure shall be made at least once, simultaneously with a video presentation of the disclosure. However, no audio presentation of the disclosure is required in: (A) An advertisement fifteen (15) seconds or less in length in which the pay-per-call number is not presented in the audio portion, or (B) an advertisement in which there is no audio presentation of information regarding the pay-per-call service, including the pay-per-call number.

(ii) In a print advertisement, each letter or numeral of the disclosure shall be, at a minimum, one-half the size of each letter or numeral of the largest presentation of the pay-per-call number.

(3) For the purposes of this regulation, advertisements directed primarily to individuals under 18 shall include: Any pay-per-call advertisement appearing during or immediately adjacent to programming for which competent and reliable audience composition data demonstrate that more than 50% of the audience is composed of individuals under 18, and any pay-per-call advertisement appearing in a periodical for which competent and reliable readership data demonstrate that more than 50% of the readership is composed of individuals under 18.

(4) For the purposes of this regulation, if competent and reliable audience composition or readership data does not demonstrate that more than 50% of the audience or readership is composed of individuals under 18, then the Commission shall consider the following criteria in determining whether an advertisement is directed primarily to individuals under 18:

(i) Whether the advertisement appears in publications directed primarily to individuals under 18, including, but not limited to, books, magazines and comic books;

(ii) Whether the advertisement appears during or immediately adjacent to television programs directed primarily to individuals under 18, including, but not limited to, mid-afternoon weekday television shows;

(iii) Whether the advertisement is broadcast on radio stations that are directed primarily to individuals under 18;

(iv) Whether the advertisement appears on a cable or broadcast television station directed primarily to individuals under 18;

(v) Whether the advertisement appears on the same video as a commercially-prepared video directed primarily to individuals under 18, or preceding a movie directed primarily to individuals under 18 shown in a movie theater; and

(vi) Whether the advertisement, regardless of when or where it appears, is directed primarily to individuals under 18 in light of its subject matter, visual content, age of models, language, characters, tone, massage, or the like.

(g) *Electronic tones in advertisements.* The provider of pay-per-call services is prohibited from using advertisements that emit electronic tones that can automatically dial a pay-per-call service.

(h) *Telephone solicitations.* The provider of pay-per-call services shall ensure that any telephone message that solicits calls to the pay-per-call service

discloses the cost of the call in a slow and deliberate manner and in a reasonably understandable volume, in accordance with §§308.3(b)(1)(i)-(v).

(i) *Referral to toll-free telephone numbers.* The provider of pay-per-call services is prohibited from referring in advertisements to an 800 telephone number, or any other telephone number advertised as or widely understood to be toll-free, if that number violates the prohibition concerning toll-free numbers set forth in §308.5(i).

**§308.4 Special rule for infrequent publications.**

(a) The provider of any pay-per-call service that advertises a pay-per-call service in a publication that meets the requirements set forth in §308.4(c) may include in such advertisement, in lieu of the cost disclosures required by §308.3(b), a clear and conspicuous disclosure that a call to the advertised pay-per-call service may result in a substantial charge.

(b) The provider of any pay-per-call service that places an alphabetical listing in a publication that meets the requirements set forth in §308.4(c) is not required to make any of the disclosures required by §§308.3 (b), (c), (d) and (f) in the alphabetical listing, provided that such listing does not contain any information except the name, address and telephone number of the pay-per-call provider.

(c) The publication referred to in §308.4(a) and (b) must be:

(1) Widely distributed;

(2) Printed annually or less frequently; and

(3) One that has an established policy of not publishing specific prices in advertisements.

**§308.5 Pay-per-call service standards.**

(a) *Preamble message.* The provider of pay-per-call services shall include, in each pay-per-call message, an introductory disclosure message (''preamble'') in the same language as that principally used in the pay-per-call message, that clearly, in a slow and deliberate manner and in a reasonably understandable volume:

(1) Identifies the name of the provider of the pay-per-call service and describes the service being provided;

(2) Specifies the cost of the service as follows:

(i) If there is a flat fee for the call, the preamble shall state the total cost of the call;

(ii) If the call is billed on a time-sensitive basis, the preamble shall state the cost per minute and any minimum charges; if the length of the program can be determined in advance, the preamble shall also state the maximum charge that could be incurred if the caller listens to the complete program;

(iii) If the call is billed on a variable rate basis, the preamble shall state, in accordance with §§308.5(a)(2)(i) and (ii), the cost of the initial portion of the call, any minimum charges, and the range of rates that may be charged depending on the options chosen by the caller;

(iv) Any other fees that will be charged for the service shall be disclosed, as well as fees for any other pay-per-call service to which the caller may be transferred;

(3) Informs the caller that charges for the call begin, and that to avoid charges the call must be terminated, three seconds after a clearly discernible signal or tone indicating the end of the preamble;

(4) Informs the caller that anyone under the age of 18 must have the permission of parent or legal guardian in order to complete the call; and

(5) Informs the caller, in the case of a pay-per-call service that is not operated or expressly authorized by a Federal agency but that provides information on a Federal program, or that uses a trade or brand name or any other term that reasonably could be interpreted or construed as implying any Federal government connection, approval or endorsement, that the pay-per-call service is not authorized, endorsed, or approved by any Federal agency.

(b) *No charge to caller for preamble message.* The provider of pay-per-call services is prohibited from charging a caller any amount whatsoever for such a service if the caller hangs up at any time prior to three seconds after the signal or tone indicating the end of the preamble described in §308.5(a). However, the three-second delay, and the

message concerning such delay described in § 308.5(a)(3), is not required if the provider of pay-per-call services offers the caller an affirmative means (such as pressing a key on a telephone keypad) of indicating a decision to incur the charges.

(c) *Nominal cost calls.* The preamble described in § 308.5(a) is not required when the entire cost of the pay-per-call service, whether billed as a flat rate or on a time sensitive basis, is $2.00 or less.

(d) *Data service calls.* The preamble described in § 308.5(a) is not required when the entire call consists of the non-verbal transmission of information.

(e) *Bypass mechanism.* The provider of pay-per-call services that offers to frequent callers or regular subscribers to such services the option of activating a bypass mechanism to avoid listening to the preamble during subsequent calls shall not be deemed to be in violation of § 308.5(a), *provided that* any such bypass mechanism shall be disabled for a period of no less than 30 days immediately after the institution of an increase in the price for the service or a change in the nature of the service offered.

(f) *Billing limitations.* The provider of pay-per-call services is prohibited from billing consumers in excess of the amount described in the preamble for those services and from billing for any services provided in violation of any section of this rule.

(g) *Stopping the assessment of time-based charges.* The provider of pay-per-call services shall stop the assessment of time-based charges immediately upon disconnection by the caller.

(h) *Prohibition on services to children.* The provider of pay-per-call services shall not direct such services to children under the age of 12, unless such service is a bona fide educational service. The Commission shall consider the following criteria in determining whether a pay-per-call service is directed to children under 12:

(1) Whether the pay-per-call service is advertised in the manner set forth in §§ 308.3(e)(2) and (3); and

(2) Whether the pay-per-call service, regardless of when or where it is advertised, is directed to children under 12, in light of its subject matter, content, language, featured personality, characters, tone, message, or the like.

(i) *Prohibition concerning toll-free numbers.* Any person is prohibited from using an 800 number or other telephone number advertised as or widely understood to be toll-free in a manner that would result in:

(1) The calling party being assessed, by virtue of completing the call, a charge for the call;

(2) The calling party being connected to an access number for, or otherwise transferred to, a pay-per-call service;

(3) The calling party being charged for information conveyed during the call unless the calling party has a presubscription or comparable arrangement to be charged for the information; or

(4) The calling party being called back collect for the provision of audio or data information services, simultaneous voice conversation services, or products.

(j) *Disclosure requirements for billing statements.* The provider of pay-per-call services shall ensure that any billing statement for such provider's charges shall:

(1) Display any charges for pay-per-call services in a portion of the consumer's bill that is identified as not being related to local and long distance telephone charges;

(2) For each charge so displayed, specify the type of service, the amount of the charge, and the date, time, and, for calls billed on a time-sensitive basis, the duration of the call; and

(3) Display the local or toll-free telephone number where consumers can obtain answers to their questions and information on their rights and obligations with regard to their use of pay-per-call services, and can obtain the name and mailing address of the provider of pay-per-call services.

(k) *Refunds to consumers.* The provider of pay-per-call services shall be liable for refunds or credits to consumers who have been billed for pay-per-call services, and who have paid the charges for such services, pursuant to pay-per-call programs that have been found to have violated any provision of this rule or any other Federal rule or law.

(l) *Service bureau liability*. A service bureau shall be liable for violations of the rule by pay-per-call services using its call processing facilities where it knew or should have known of the violation.

**§308.6 Access to information.**

Any common carrier that provides telecommunication services to any provider of pay-per-call services shall make available to the Commission, upon written request, any records and financial information maintained by such carrier relating to the arrangements (other than for the provision of local exchange service) between such carrier and any provider of pay-per-call services.

**§308.7 Billing and collection for pay-per-call services.**

(a) *Definitions*. For the purposes of this section, the following definitions shall apply:

(1) *Billing entity* means any person who transmits a billing statement to a customer for a telephone-billed purchase, or any person who assumes responsibility for receiving and responding to billing error complaints or inquiries.

(2) *Billing error* means any of the following:

(i) A reflection on a billing statement of a telephone-billed purchase that was not made by the customer nor made from the telephone of the customer who was billed for the purchase or, if made, was not in the amount reflected on such statement.

(ii) A reflection on a billing statement of a telephone-billed purchase for which the customer requests additional clarification, including documentary evidence thereof.

(iii) A reflection on a billing statement of a telephone-billed purchase that was not accepted by the customer or not provided to the customer in accordance with the stated terms of the transaction.

(iv) A reflection on a billing statement of a telephone-billed purchase for a call made to an 800 or other toll free telephone number.

(v) The failure to reflect properly on a billing statement a payment made by the customer or a credit issued to the customer with respect to a telephone-billed purchase.

(vi) A computation error or similar error of an accounting nature on a billing statement of a telephone-billed purchase.

(vii) Failure to transmit a billing statement for a telephone-billed purchase to a customer's last known address if that address was furnished by the customer at least twenty days before the end of the billing cycle for which the statement was required.

(viii) A reflection on a billing statement of a telephone-billed purchase that is not identified in accordance with the requirements of §308.5(j).

(3) *Customer* means any person who acquires or attempts to acquire goods or services in a telephone-billed purchase, or who receives a billing statement for a telephone-billed purchase charged to a telephone number assigned to that person by a providing carrier.

(4) *Preexisting agreement* means a ''presubscription or comparable arrangement,'' as that term is defined in §308.2(e).

(5) *Providing carrier* means a local exchange or interexchange common carrier providing telephone services (other than local exchange services) to a vendor for a telephone-billed purchase that is the subject of a billing error complaint or inquiry.

(6) *Telephone-billed purchase* means any purchase that is completed solely as a consequence of the completion of the call or a subsequent dialing, touch tone entry, or comparable action of the caller. Such term does not include:

(i) A purchase by a caller pursuant to a preexisting agreement with a vendor;

(ii) Local exchange telephone services or interexchange telephone services or any service that the Federal Communications Commission determines by rule—

(A) Is closely related to the provision of local exchange telephone services or interexchange telephone services; and

(B) Is subject to billing dispute resolution procedures required by Federal or state statute or regulation; or

(iii) The purchase of goods or services that is otherwise subject to billing dispute resolution procedures required by Federal statute or regulation.

(7) *Vendor* means any person who, through the use of the telephone, offers goods or services for a telephone-billed purchase.

(b) *Initiation of billing review.* A customer may initiate a billing review with respect to a telephone-billed purchase by providing the billing entity with notice of a billing error no later than 60 days after the billing entity transmitted the first billing statement that contains a charge for such telephone-billed purchase. If the billing error is the reflection on a billing statement of a telephone-billed purchase not provided to the customer in accordance with the stated terms of the transaction, the 60-day period shall begin to run from the date the goods or services are delivered or, if not delivered, should have been delivered, if such date is later than the date the billing statement was transmitted. A billing error notice shall:

(1) Set forth or otherwise enable the billing entity to identify the customer's name and the telephone number to which the charge was billed;

(2) Indicate the customer's belief that the statement contains a billing error and the type, date, and amount of such; and

(3) Set forth the reasons for the customer's belief, to the extent possible, that the statement contains a billing error.

(c) *Disclosure of method of providing notice; presumption if oral notice is permitted.* A billing entity shall clearly and conspicuously[2] disclose on each billing statement or on other material accompanying the billing statement the method (oral or written) by which the customer may provide notice to initiate review of a billing error in the manner set forth in § 308.7(b). If oral notice is permitted, any customer who orally communicates an allegation of a billing error to a billing entity shall be presumed to have properly initiated a billing review in accordance with the requirements of § 308.7(b).

(d) *Response to customer notice.* A billing entity that receives notice of a billing error as described in § 308.7(b) shall:

(1) Send a written acknowledgement to the customer including a statement that any disputed amount need not be paid pending investigation of the billing error. This shall be done no later than forty (40) days after receiving the notice, unless the action required by § 308.7(d)(2) is taken within such 40-day period; and

(2)(i) Correct the billing error and credit the customer's account for any disputed amount and any related charges, and notify the customer of the correction. The billing entity also shall disclose to the customer that collection efforts may occur despite the credit, and shall provide the names, mailing addresses, and business telephone numbers of the vendor and providing carrier, as applicable, that are the subject of the telephone-billed purchase, or provide the customer with a local or toll-free telephone number that the customer may call to obtain this information directly. However, the billing entity is not required to make the disclosure concerning collection efforts if the vendor, its agent, or the providing carrier, as applicable, will not collect or attempt to collect the disputed charge; or

(ii) Transmit an explanation to the customer, after conducting a reasonable investigation (including, where appropriate, contacting the vendor or providing carrier),[3] setting forth the reasons why it has determined that no

[2] The standard for ''clear and conspicuous'' as used in this section shall be the standard enunciated by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System in its Official Staff Commentary on Regulation Z, which requires simply that the disclosures be in a reasonably understandable form. *See* 12 CFR part 226, Supplement I, Comment 226.5(a)(1)–1.

[3] If a customer submits a billing error notice alleging either the nondelivery of goods or services or that information appearing on a billing statement has been reported incorrectly to the billing entity, the billing entity shall not deny the assertion unless it conducts a reasonable investigation and determines that the goods or services were actually delivered as agreed or that the information was correct. There shall be a rebuttable presumption that goods or services were actually delivered to the extent that a vendor or providing carrier produces documents prepared and maintained in the ordinary course of business showing the date on, and the place to, which the goods or services were transmitted or delivered.

billing error occurred or that a different billing error occurred from that asserted, make any appropriate adjustments to the customer's account, and, if the customer so requests, provide a written explanation and copies of documentary evidence of the customer's indebtedness.

(3) The action required by § 308.7(d)(2) shall be taken no later than two complete billing cycles of the billing entity (in no event later than ninety (90) days) after receiving the notice of the billing error and before taking any action to collect the disputed amount, or any part thereof. After complying with § 308.7(d)(2), the billing entity shall:

(i) If it is determined that any disputed amount is in error, promptly notify the appropriate providing carrier or vendor, as applicable, of its disposition of the customer's billing error and the reasons therefor; and

(ii) Promptly notify the customer in writing of the time when payment is due of any portion of the disputed amount determined not to be in error, which time shall be the longer of ten (10) days or the number of days the customer is ordinarily allowed (whether by custom, contract or state law) to pay undisputed amounts, and that failure to pay such amount may be reported to a credit reporting agency or subject the customer to a collection action, if that in fact may happen.

(e) *Withdrawal of billing error notice.* A billing entity need not comply with the requirements of § 308.7(d) if the customer has, after giving notice of a billing error and before the expiration of the time limits specified therein, agreed that the billing statement was correct or agreed to withdraw voluntarily the billing error notice.

(f) *Limitation on responsibility for billing error.* After complying with the provisions of § 308.7(d), a billing entity has no further responsibility under that section if the customer continues to make substantially the same allegation with respect to a billing error.

(g) *Customer's right to withhold disputed amount; limitation on collection action.* Once the customer has submitted notice of a billing error to a billing entity, the customer need not pay, and the billing entity, providing carrier, or vendor may not try to collect, any portion of any required payment that the customer reasonably believes is related to the disputed amount until the billing entity receiving the notice has complied with the requirements of § 308.7(d). The billing entity, providing carrier, or vendor are not prohibited from taking any action to collect any undisputed portion of the bill, or from reflecting a disputed amount and related charges on a billing statement, provided that the billing statement clearly states that payment of any disputed amount or related charges is not required pending the billing entity's compliance with § 308.7(d).

(h) *Prohibition on charges for initiating billing review.* A billing entity, providing carrier, or vendor may not impose on the customer any charge related to the billing review, including charges for documentation or investigation.

(i) *Restrictions on credit reporting*—(1) *Adverse credit reports prohibited.* Once the customer has submitted notice of a billing error to a billing entity, a billing entity, providing carrier, vendor, or other agent may not report or threaten directly or indirectly to report adverse information to any person because of the customer's withholding payment of the disputed amount or related charges, until the billing entity has met the requirements of § 308.7(d) and allowed the customer as many days thereafter to make payment as prescribed by § 308.7(d)(3)(ii).

(2) *Reports on continuing disputes.* If a billing entity receives further notice from a customer within the time allowed for payment under § 308.7(i)(1) that any portion of the billing error is still in dispute, a billing entity, providing carrier, vendor, or other agent may not report to any person that the customer's account is delinquent because of the customer's failure to pay that disputed amount unless the billing entity, providing carrier, vendor, or other agent also reports that the amount is in dispute and notifies the customer in writing of the name and address of each person to whom the vendor, billing entity, providing carrier, or other agent has reported the account as delinquent.

(3) *Reporting of dispute resolutions required.* A billing entity, providing carrier, vendor, or other agent shall report

in writing any subsequent resolution of any matter reported pursuant to § 308.7(i)(2) to all persons to whom such matter was initially reported.

(j) *Forfeiture of right to collect disputed amount.* Any billing entity, providing carrier, vendor, or other agent who fails to comply with the requirements of §§ 308.7(c), (d), (g), (h), or (i) forfeits any right to collect from the customer the amount indicated by the customer, under § 308.7(b)(2), to be in error, and any late charges or other related charges thereon, up to $50 per transaction.

(k) *Prompt notification of returns and crediting of refunds.* When a vendor other than the billing entity accepts the return of property or forgives a debt for services in connection with a telephone-billed purchase, the vendor shall, within seven (7) business days from accepting the return or forgiving the debt, either:

(1) Mail or deliver a cash refund directly to the customer's address, and notify the appropriate billing entity that the customer has been given a refund, or

(2) Transmit a credit statement to the billing entity through the vendor's normal channels for billing telephone-billed purchases. The billing entity shall, within seven (7) business days after receiving a credit statement, credit the customer's account with the amount of the refund.

(l) *Right of customer to assert claims or defenses.* Any billing entity or providing carrier who seeks to collect charges from a customer for a telephone-billed purchase that is the subject of a dispute between the customer and the vendor shall be subject to all claims (other than tort claims) and defenses arising out of the transaction and relating to the failure to resolve the dispute that the customer could assert against the vendor, if the customer has made a good faith attempt to resolve the dispute with the vendor or providing carrier (other than the billing entity). The billing entity or providing carrier shall not be liable under this paragraph for any amount greater than the amount billed to the customer for the purchase (including any related charges).

(m) *Retaliatory actions prohibited.* A billing entity, providing carrier, vendor, or other agent may not accelerate any part of the customer's indebtedness or restrict or terminate the customer's access to pay-per-call services solely because the customer has exercised in good faith rights provided by this section.

(n) *Notice of billing error rights*—(1) *Annual statement.* (i) A billing entity shall mail or deliver to each customer, with the first billing statement for a telephone-billed purchase mailed or delivered after the effective date of these regulations, a statement of the customer's billing rights with respect to telephone-billed purchases. Thereafter the billing entity shall mail or deliver the billing rights statement at least once per calendar year to each customer to whom it has mailed or delivered a billing statement for a telephone-billed purchase during the previous twelve months. The billing rights statement shall disclose that the rights and obligations of the customer and the billing entity, set forth therein, are provided under the federal Telephone Disclosure and Dispute Resolution Act. The statement shall describe the procedure that the customer must follow to notify the billing entity of a billing error and the steps that the billing entity must take in response to the customer's notice. If the customer is permitted to provide oral notice of a billing error, the statement shall disclose that a customer who orally communicates an allegation of a billing error is presumed to have provided sufficient notice to initiate a billing review. The statement shall also disclose the customer's right to withhold payment of any disputed amount, and that any action to collect any disputed amount will be suspended, pending completion of the billing review. The statement shall further disclose the customer's rights and obligations if the billing entity determines that no billing error occurred, including what action the billing entity may take if the customer continues to withhold payment of the disputed amount. Additionally, the statement shall inform the customer of the billing entity's obligation to forfeit any disputed amount (up to $50 per transaction) if the billing entity fails

to follow the billing and collection procedures prescribed by §308.7 of this rule.

(ii) A billing entity that is a common carrier may comply with §308.7(n)(1)(i) by, within 60 days after the effective date of these regulations, mailing or delivering the billing rights statement to all of its customers and, thereafter, mailing or delivering the billing rights statement at least once per calendar year, at intervals of not less than 6 months nor more than 18 months, to all of its customers.

(2) *Alternative summary statement.* As an alternative to §308.7(n)(1), a billing entity may mail or deliver, on or with each billing statement, a statement that sets forth the procedure that a customer must follow to notify the billing entity of a billing error. The statement shall also disclose the customer's right to withhold payment of any disputed amount, and that any action to collect any disputed amount will be suspended, pending completion of the billing review.

(3) *General disclosure requirements.* (i) The disclosures required by §308.7(n)(1) shall be made clearly and conspicuously on a separate statement that the customer may keep.

(ii) The disclosures required by §308.7(n)(2) shall be made clearly and conspicuously and may be made on a separate statement or on the customer's billing statement. If any of the disclosures are provided on the back of the billing statement, the billing entity shall include a reference to those disclosures on the front of the statement.

(iii) At the billing entity's option, additional information or explanations may be supplied with the disclosures required by §308.7(n), but none shall be stated, utilized, or placed so as to mislead or confuse the customer or contradict, obscure, or detract attention from the information required to be disclosed. The disclosures required by §308.7(n) shall appear separately and above any other disclosures.

(o) *Multiple billing entities.* If a telephone-billed purchase involves more than one billing entity, only one set of disclosures need by given, and the billing entities shall agree among themselves which billing entity must comply with the requirements that this regulation imposes on any or all of them. The billing entity designated to receive and respond to billing errors shall remain the only billing entity responsible for complying with the terms of §308.7(d). If a billing entity other than the one designated to receive and respond to billing errors receives notice of a billing error as described in §308.7(b), that billing entity shall either: (1) Promptly transmit to the customer the name, mailing address, and business telephone number of the billing entity designated to receive and respond to billing errors; or (2) transmit the billing error notice within fifteen (15) days to the billing entity designated to receive and respond to billing errors. The time requirements in §308.7(d) shall not begin to run until the billing entity designated to receive and respond to billing errors receives notice of the billing error, either from the customer or from the billing entity to whom the customer transmitted the notice.

(p) *Multiple customers.* If there is more than one customer involved in a telephone-billed purchase, the disclosures may be made to any customer who is primarily liable on the account.

### §308.8 Severability.

The provisions of this rule are separate and severable from one another. If any provision is stayed or determined to be invalid, it is the Commission's intention that the remaining provisions shall continue in effect.

### §308.9 Rulemaking review.

No later than four years after the effective date of this Rule, the Commission shall initiate a rulemaking review proceeding to evaluate the operation of the rule.

## PART 309—LABELING REQUIREMENTS FOR ALTERNATIVE FUELS AND ALTERNATIVE FUELED VEHICLES

### Subpart A—General

Sec.
309.1 Definitions.
309.2 What this part does.
309.3 Stayed or invalid portions.

309.4 Preemption.

Subpart B—Requirements for Alternative Fuels

DUTIES OF IMPORTERS, PRODUCERS, AND REFINERS OF NON-LIQUID ALTERNATIVE VEHICLE FUELS (OTHER THAN ELECTRICITY) AND OF MANUFACTURERS OF ELECTRIC VEHICLE FUEL DISPENSING SYSTEMS

309.10 Alternative vehicle fuel rating.
309.11 Certification.
309.12 Recordkeeping.

DUTIES OF DISTRIBUTORS OF NON-LIQUID ALTERNATIVE VEHICLE FUELS (OTHER THAN ELECTRICITY) AND OF ELECTRIC VEHICLE FUEL DISPENSING SYSTEMS

309.13 Certification.
309.14 Recordkeeping.

DUTIES OF RETAILERS

309.15 Posting of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel rating.
309.16 Recordkeeping.

LABEL SPECIFICATIONS

309.17 Labels.

Subpart C—Requirements for Alternative Fueled Vehicles

309.20 Labeling requirements for new covered vehicles.
309.21 Labeling requirements for used covered vehicles.
309.22 Determining estimated cruising range.
309.23 Recordkeeping.

APPENDIX A—FIGURES FOR PART 309

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 13232(a).

SOURCE: 60 FR 26955, May 19, 1995, unless otherwise noted.

## Subpart A—General

### § 309.1 Definitions.

As used in subparts B and C of this part:

(a) *Acquisition* includes either of the following:

(1) Acquiring the beneficial title to a covered vehicle; or

(2) Acquiring a covered vehicle for transportation purposes pursuant to a contract or similar arrangement for a period of 120 days or more.

(b) *Aftermarket conversion system* means any combination of hardware which allows a vehicle or engine to operate on a fuel other than the fuel which the vehicle or engine was originally certified to use.

(c) *Alternative fuel* means

(1) Methanol, denatured ethanol, and other alcohols;

(2) Mixtures containing 85 percent or more by volume of methanol, denatured ethanol, and/or other alcohols (or such other percentage, but not less than 70 percent, as determined by the Secretary, by rule, to provide for requirements relating to cold start, safety, or vehicle functions), with gasoline or other fuels;

(3) Natural gas;

(4) Liquefied petroleum gas;

(5) Hydrogen;

(6) Coal-derived liquid fuels;

(7) Fuels (other than alcohol) derived from biological materials;

(8) Electricity (including electricity from solar energy); and

(9) Any other fuel the Secretary determines, by rule, is substantially not petroleum and would yield substantial energy security benefits and substantial environmental benefits.

(d)(1) *Consumer* in subpart C means an individual, corporation, partnership, association, State, municipality, political subdivision of a State, and any agency, department, or instrumentality of the United States.

(2) *Consumer or ultimate purchaser* in subpart B means, with respect to any non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (including electricity), the first person who purchases such fuel for purposes other than resale.

(e) *Conventional fuel* means gasoline or diesel fuel.

(f) *Covered vehicle* means either of the following:

(1) A dedicated or dual fueled passenger car (or passenger car derivative) capable of seating 12 passengers or less; or

(2) A dedicated or dual fueled motor vehicle (other than a passenger car or passenger car derivative) with a gross vehicle weight rating less than 8,500 pounds which has a vehicle curb weight of less than 6,000 pounds and which has a basic vehicle frontal area of less than 45 square feet, which is:

(i) Designed primarily for purposes of transportation of property or is a derivation of such a vehicle; or

(ii) Designed primarily for transportation of persons and has a capacity of more than 12 persons.

(g) *Dedicated* means designed to operate solely on alternative fuel.

(h) *Distributor* means any person, except a common carrier, who receives non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) and distributes such fuel to another person other than the consumer. It also means any person, except a common carrier, who receives an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system and distributes such system to a retailer.

(i) *Dual fueled* means capable of operating on alternative fuel and capable of operating on conventional fuel.

(j) *Electric charging system equipment* means equipment that includes an electric battery charger and is used for dispensing electricity to consumers for the purpose of recharging batteries in an electric vehicle.

(k) *Electric vehicle* (''EV'') means a vehicle designed to operate exclusively on electricity stored in a rechargeable battery, multiple batteries, or battery pack.

(l) *Electric vehicle fuel dispensing system* means electric charging system equipment or an electrical energy dispensing system.

(m) *Electrical energy dispensing system* means equipment that does not include an electric charger and is used for dispensing electricity to consumers for the purpose of recharging batteries in an electric vehicle that contains an on-board electric battery charger.

(n) *Emission certification standard* means the emission standard to which a covered vehicle has been certified pursuant to 40 CFR parts 86 and 88.

(o) *Estimated cruising range* for non-EVs means a manufacturer's reasonable estimate of the number of miles a new covered vehicle will travel between refueling, expressed as a lower estimate (i.e., minimum estimated cruising range) and an upper estimate (i.e., maximum estimated cruising range), as determined by § 309.22. Estimated cruising range for EVs means a manufacturer's reasonable estimate of the number of miles a new covered EV will travel between recharging, expressed as a single estimate, as determined by § 309.22.

(p) *Fuel dispenser* means:

(1) For non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity), the dispenser through which a retailer sells the fuel to consumers.

(2) For electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems, the dispenser through which a retailer dispenses electricity to consumers for the purpose of recharging batteries in an electric vehicle.

(q) *Fuel rating* means:

(1) For non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity), including, but not limited to, compressed natural gas and hydrogen gas, the commonly used name of the fuel with a disclosure of the amount, expressed as a minimum molecular percentage, of the principal component of the fuel. A disclosure of other components, expressed as a minimum molecular percentage, may be included, if desired.

(2) For electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems, a common identifier (such as, but not limited to, ''electricity,'' ''electric charging system,'' ''electric charging station'') with a disclosure of the system's kilowatt (''kW'') capacity, voltage, whether the voltage is alternating current (''ac'') or direct current (''dc''), amperage, and whether the system is conductive or inductive.

(r) *Manufacturer* means the person who obtains a certificate of conformity that the vehicle complies with the standards and requirements of 40 CFR parts 86 and 88.

(s) *Manufacturer of an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system* means any person who manufactures or assembles an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system that is distributed specifically for use by retailers in dispensing electricity to consumers for the purpose of recharging batteries in an electric vehicle.

(t) *New covered vehicle* means a covered vehicle which has not been acquired by a consumer.

(u) *New vehicle dealer* means a person who is engaged in the sale or leasing of new covered vehicles.

(v) *New vehicle label* means a window sticker containing the information required by § 309.20(e).

(w) *Non-liquid alternative fueled vehicle* means a vehicle capable of operating on a non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel.

(x) *Non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel* means alternative fuel used for the purpose of powering a non-liquid alternative fueled vehicle, including, but not limited to, compressed natural gas (''CNG''), hydrogen gas (''hydrogen''), electricity, and any other non-liquid vehicle fuel the Secretary determines, by rule, is substantially not petroleum and would yield substantial energy benefits and substantial environmental benefits.

(y) *Person* means an individual, partnership, corporation, or any other business organization.

(z) *Producer* means any person who purchases component elements and combines them to produce and market non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity).

(aa) *Refiner* means any person engaged in the production or importation of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity).

(bb) *Retailer* means any person who offers for sale, sells, or distributes non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (including electricity) to consumers.

(cc) *Secretary* means the Secretary of the United States Department of Energy.

(dd) *Used covered vehicle* means a covered vehicle which has been acquired by a consumer, but does not include any vehicle sold only for scrap or parts (title documents surrendered to the State and a salvage certificate issued).

(ee) *Used vehicle dealer* means a person engaged in the sale or leasing of used covered vehicles who has sold or leased five or more used covered vehicles in the previous twelve months, but does not include a bank or financial institution, a business selling or leasing used covered vehicles to an employee of that business, or a lessor selling or leasing a leased vehicle by or to that vehicle's lessee or to an employee of the lessee.

(ff) *Used vehicle label* means a window sticker containing the information required by § 309.21(e).

(gg) *Vehicle fuel tank capacity* means the tank's usable capacity (i.e., the volume of fuel that can be pumped into the tank through the filler pipe with the vehicle on a level surface and with the unusable capacity already in the tank). The term does not include unusable capacity (i.e., the volume of fuel left at the bottom of the tank when the vehicle's fuel pump can no longer draw fuel from the tank), the vapor volume of the tank (i.e., the space above the fuel tank filler neck), or the volume of the fuel tank filler neck.

### § 309.2 What this part does.

This part establishes labeling requirements for non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels, and for certain vehicles powered in whole or in part by alternative fuels.

### § 309.3 Stayed or invalid portions.

If any portion of this part is stayed or held invalid, the rest of it will stay in force.

### § 309.4 Preemption.

Inconsistent state and local regulations are preempted to the extent they would frustrate the purposes of this part.

## Subpart B—Requirements for Alternative Fuels

DUTIES OF IMPORTERS, PRODUCERS, AND REFINERS OF NON-LIQUID ALTERNATIVE VEHICLE FUELS (OTHER THAN ELECTRICITY) AND OF MANUFACTURERS OF ELECTRIC VEHICLE FUEL DISPENSING SYSTEMS

### § 309.10 Alternative vehicle fuel rating.

(a) If you are an importer, producer, or refiner of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), you must determine the fuel rating of all non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) before you transfer it. You can do that yourself or through a testing lab. To determine fuel ratings, you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, for the minimum percentage of the principal component of the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) that you must disclose, and for the minimum percentages of other components that you choose to disclose. For the purposes of this section, fuel ratings for the minimum percentage of the principal component of compressed natural gas are to be determined in accordance

with test methods set forth in American Society for Testing and Materials (''ASTM'') D 1945–91, ''Standard Test Method for Analysis of Natural Gas by Gas Chromatography.'' For the purposes of this section, fuel ratings for the minimum percentage of the principal component of hydrogen gas are to be determined in accordance with test methods set forth in ASTM D 1946–90, ''Standard Practice for Analysis of Reformed Gas by Gas Chromatography.'' This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of D 1945–91 and D 1946–90 may be obtained from the American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103, or may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, Public Reference Room, room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW, Washington, DC, or at the Office of the Federal Register, 800 North Capitol Street NW., suite 700, Washington, DC.

(b) If you are a manufacturer of electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems, you must determine the fuel rating of the electric charge delivered by the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system before you transfer such systems. To determine the fuel rating of the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, for the following output information you must disclose: kilowatt (''kW'') capacity, voltage, whether the voltage is alternating current (''ac'') or direct current (''dc''), amperage, and whether the system is conductive or inductive.

### §309.11 Certification.

(a) For non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), in each transfer you make to anyone who is not a consumer, you must certify the fuel rating of the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) consistent with your determination. You can do this in either of two ways:

(1) Include a delivery ticket or other paper with each transfer of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity). It may be an invoice, bill of lading, bill of sale, terminal ticket, delivery ticket, or any other written proof of transfer. It must contain at least these four items:

(i) Your name;

(ii) The name of the person to whom the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) is transferred;

(iii) The date of the transfer; and

(iv) The fuel rating.

(2) Give the person a letter or written statement. This letter must include the date, your name, the other person's name, and the fuel rating of any non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) you will transfer to that person from the date of the letter onwards. This letter of certification will be good until you transfer non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) with a lower percentage of the principal component, or of any other component disclosed in the certification. When this happens, you must certify the fuel rating of the new non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) either with a delivery ticket or by sending a new letter of certification.

(b) For electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems, in each transfer you make to anyone who is not a consumer, you must certify the fuel rating of the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system consistent with your determination. You can do this in either of two ways:

(1) Include a delivery ticket or other paper with each transfer of an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system. It may be an invoice, bill of lading, bill of sale, delivery ticket, or any other written proof of transfer. It must contain at least these five items:

(i) Your name;

(ii) The name of the person to whom the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system is transferred;

(iii) The date of the transfer;

(iv) The model number, serial number, or other identifier of the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system; and

(v) The fuel rating.

(2) Make the required certification by placing clearly and conspicuously on the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system a permanent legible marking or permanently attached label that discloses the manufacturer's name, the model number, serial number, or other identifier of the system, and the fuel

rating. Such marking or label must be located where it can be seen after installation of the system. The marking or label will be deemed ''legible,'' in terms of placement, if it is located in close proximity to the manufacturer's identification marking. This marking or label must be in addition to, and not a substitute for, the label required to be posted on the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system by the retailer.

(c) When you transfer non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), or an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, to a common carrier, you must certify the fuel rating of the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) or electric vehicle fuel dispensing system to the common carrier, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper, or by a permanent marking or label attached to the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system by the manufacturer.

### § 309.12 Recordkeeping.

You must keep for one year records of how you determined fuel ratings. The records must be available for inspection by Federal Trade Commission staff members, or by people authorized by FTC.

DUTIES OF DISTRIBUTORS OF NON-LIQUID ALTERNATIVE VEHICLE FUELS (OTHER THAN ELECTRICITY) AND OF ELECTRIC VEHICLE FUEL DISPENSING SYSTEMS

### § 309.13 Certification.

(a) If you are a distributor of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), you must certify the fuel rating of the fuel in each transfer you make to anyone who is not a consumer. You may certify either by using a delivery ticket or other paper with each transfer of fuel, as outlined in § 309.11(a)(1), or by using a letter of certification, as outlined in § 309.11(a)(2).

(b) If you are a distributor of electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems, you must certify the fuel rating of the system in each transfer you make to anyone who is not a consumer. You may certify by using a delivery ticket or other paper with each transfer, as outlined in § 309.11(b)(1), or by using the permanent marking or permanent label attached to the system by the manufacturer, as outlined in § 309.11(b)(2).

(c) If you do not blend non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity), you must certify consistent with the fuel rating certified to you. If you blend non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, as required by § 309.10(a), for the fuel rating that you certify for the blend.

(d) When you transfer non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), or an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, to a common carrier, you must certify the fuel rating of the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) or electric vehicle fuel dispensing system to the common carrier, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper, or by a permanent marking or label attached to the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system by the manufacturer. When you receive non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), or an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, from a common carrier, you also must receive from the common carrier a certification of the fuel rating of the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) or electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper, or by a permanent marking or label attached to the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system by the manufacturer.

### § 309.14 Recordkeeping.

You must keep for one year any delivery tickets, letters of certification, or other paper on which you based your fuel rating certifications for non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity) and for electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems. You also must keep for one year records of any fuel rating determinations you made according to § 309.10. If you rely for your certification on a permanent marking or permanent label attached to the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system by the manufacturer, you must not remove or deface the permanent marking or label. The records must be available

for inspection by Federal Trade Commission staff members, or by persons authorized by FTC.

DUTIES OF RETAILERS

**§309.15 Posting of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel rating.**

(a) If you are a retailer who offers for sale or sells non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) to consumers, you must post the fuel rating of each non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel. If you are a retailer who offers for sale or sells electricity to consumers through an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, you must post the fuel rating of the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system you use. You must do this by putting at least one label on the face of each fuel dispenser through which you sell non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel. If you are selling two or more kinds of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels with different fuel ratings from a single fuel dispenser, you must put separate labels for each kind of non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel on the face of the fuel dispenser.

(b)(1) The label, or labels, must be placed conspicuously on the fuel dispenser so as to be in full view of consumers and as near as reasonably practical to the price per unit of the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel.

(2) You may petition for an exemption from the placement requirements by writing the Secretary of the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. You must state the reasons that you want the exemption.

(c) If you do not blend non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity), you must post consistent with the fuel rating certified to you. If you blend non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, as required by §309.10(a), for the fuel rating that you post for the blend.

(d)(1) You must maintain and replace labels as needed to make sure consumers can easily see and read them.

(2) If the labels you have are destroyed or are unusable or unreadable for some unexpected reason, you may satisfy this part by posting a temporary label as much like the required label as possible. You must still get and post the required label without delay.

(e) The following examples of fuel rating disclosures for CNG and hydrogen are meant to serve as illustrations of compliance with this part, but do not limit the rule's coverage to only the mentioned non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity):

(1) ''CNG''
''Minimum''
''XXX%''
''Methane''
(2) ''Hydrogen''
''Minimum''
''XXX%''
''Hydrogen''

(f) The following example of fuel rating disclosures for electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems is meant to serve as an illustration of compliance with this part:

''Electricity''
''XX kW''
''XXX vac/XX amps''
''Inductive''

(g) When you receive non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity), or an electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, from a common carrier, you also must receive from the common carrier a certification of the fuel rating of the non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) or electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, either by letter or on the delivery ticket or other paper, or by a permanent marking or label attached to the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system by the manufacturer.

**§309.16 Recordkeeping.**

You must keep for one year any delivery tickets, letters of certification, or other paper on which you based your posting of fuel ratings for non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels. You also must keep for one year records of any fuel rating determinations you made according to §309.10. If you rely for your posting on a permanent marking or permanent label attached to the electric vehicle fuel dispensing system by the manufacturer, you must not remove or deface the permanent marking or label. The required records, other than the permanent marking or label on the electric vehicle fuel dispensing

system, may be kept at the retail outlet or at a reasonably close location. The records, including the permanent marking or label on each electric vehicle fuel dispensing system, must be available for inspection by Federal Trade Commission staff members or by persons authorized by FTC.

LABEL SPECIFICATIONS

**§ 309.17 Labels.**

All labels must meet the following specifications:

(a) *Layout:*

(1) *Non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) labels with disclosure of principal component only.* The label is 3″ (7.62 cm) wide × 2½″ (6.35 cm) long. ''Helvetica black'' type is used throughout. All type is centered. The band at the top of the label contains the name of the fuel. This band should measure 1″ (2.54 cm) deep. Spacing of the fuel name is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the top of the label and 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band, centered horizontally within the black band. The first line of type beneath the black band is ⅛″ (.32 cm) from the bottom of the black band. All type below the black band is centered horizontally, with ⅛″ (.32 cm) between lines. The bottom line of type is 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the label. All type should fall no closer than 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the side edges of the label. If you wish to change the format of this single component label, you must petition the Federal Trade Commission. You can do this by writing to the Secretary of the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. You must state the size and contents of the label that you wish to use, and the reasons that you want to use it.

(2) *Non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (other than electricity) labels with disclosure of two components.* The label is 3″ (7.62 cm) wide × 2½″ (6.35 cm) long. ''Helvetica black'' type is used throughout. All type is centered. The band at the top of the label contains the name of the fuel. This band should measure 1″ (2.54 cm) deep. Spacing of the fuel name is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the top of the label and 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band, centered horizontally within the black band. The first line of type beneath the black band is 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band. All type below the black band is centered horizontally, with ⅛″ (.32 cm) between lines. The bottom line of type is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the bottom of the label. All type should fall no closer than 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the side edges of the label. If you wish to change the format of this two component label, you must petition the Federal Trade Commission. You can do this by writing to the Secretary of the Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580. You must state the size and contents of the label that you wish to use, and the reasons that you want to use it.

(3) *Electric vehicle fuel dispensing system labels.* The label is 3″ (7.62 cm) wide × 2½″ (6.35 cm) long. ''Helvetica black'' type is used throughout. All type is centered. The band at the top of the label contains the common identifier of the fuel. This band should measure 1″ (2.54 cm) deep. Spacing of the common identifier is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the top of the label and 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band, centered horizontally within the black band. The first line of type beneath the black band is 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the bottom of the black band. All type below the black band is centered horizontally, with ⅛″ (.32 cm) between lines. The bottom line of type is ¼″ (.64 cm) from the bottom of the label. All type should fall no closer than 3⁄16″ (.48 cm) from the side edges of the label.

(b) *Type size and setting:*

(1) *Labels for non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity) with disclosure of principal component only.* All type should be set in upper case (all caps) ''Helvetica Black'' throughout. Helvetica Black is available in a variety of computer desk-top and phototypesetting systems. Its name may vary, but the type must conform in style and thickness to the sample provided here. The spacing between letters and words should be set as ''normal.'' The type for the fuel name is 50 point (½″ (1.27 cm) cap height) knocked out of a 1″ (2.54 cm) deep band. The type for the words ''MINIMUM'' and the principal component is 24 pt. (¼″ (.64 cm) cap height). The type for percentage is 36 pt. (⅜″ (.96 cm) cap height).

(2) *Labels for non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (other than electricity) with disclosure of two components.* All type should be set in upper case (all caps) ''Helvetica Black'' throughout. Helvetica Black is available in a variety of computer desk-top and photo-typesetting systems. Its name may vary, but the type must conform in style and thickness to the sample provided here. The spacing between letters and words should be set as ''normal.'' The type for the fuel name is 50 point (½″ 1.27 cm) cap height) knocked out of a 1″ (2.54 cm) deep band. All other type is 24 pt. (¼″ (.64 cm) cap height).

(3) *Labels for electric vehicle fuel dispensing systems.* All type should be set in upper case (all caps) ''Helvetica Black'' throughout. Helvetica Black is available in a variety of computer desk-top and photo-typesetting systems. Its name may vary, but the type must conform in style and thickness to the sample provided here. The spacing between letters and words should be set as ''normal.'' The type for the common identifier is 50 point (½″ 1.27 cm) cap height) knocked out of a 1″ (2.54 cm) deep band. All other type is 24 pt. (¼″ (.64 cm) cap height).

(c) *Colors:* The background color on the labels for all non-liquid alternative vehicle fuels (including electricity), and the color of the knock-out type within the black band, is Orange: PMS 1495. All other type is process black. All borders are process black. All colors must be non-fade.

(d) *Contents.* Examples of the contents are shown in Figures 1 through 3. The proper fuel rating for each non-liquid alternative vehicle fuel (including electricity) must be shown. No marks or information other than that called for by this part may appear on the labels.

(e) *Special label protection.* All labels must be capable of withstanding extremes of weather conditions for a period of at least one year. They must be resistant to vehicle fuel, oil, grease, solvents, detergents, and water.

(f) *Illustrations of labels.* Labels must meet the specifications in this section and look like Figures 1 through 3 of appendix A, except the black print should be on the appropriately colored background.

## Subpart C—Requirements for Alternative Fueled Vehicles

### §309.20 Labeling requirements for new covered vehicles.

(a) *Affixing and maintaining labels*

(1) Before offering a new covered vehicle for acquisition to consumers, manufacturers shall affix or cause to be affixed, and new vehicle dealers shall maintain or cause to be maintained, a new vehicle label on a visible surface of each such vehicle.

(2) If an aftermarket conversion system is installed on a vehicle by a person other than the manufacturer prior to such vehicle's being acquired by a consumer, the manufacturer shall provide that person with the vehicle's estimated cruising range (as determined by §309.22(a) for dedicated vehicles and §309.22(b) for dual fueled vehicles) and emission certification standard and ensure that new vehicle labels are affixed to such vehicles as required by paragraph (a) of this section.

(b) *Layout.* Figures 4 through 6 of appendix A are prototype labels that demonstrate the proper layout. All positioning, spacing, type size, and line widths shall be similar to and consistent with the prototype labels. Labels required by this section are two-sided and rectangular in shape measuring 7 inches (17.5 cm) wide and 5–1/2 inches (13.75 cm) long. Figure 4 of appendix A represents the prototype for the front side of the labels for dedicated vehicles. Figures 5 and 5.1 of appendix A represent the prototype of the front side of the labels for dual-fueled vehicles; Figure 5 of appendix A represents the prototype for vehicles with one fuel tank and Figure 5.1 of appendix A represents the prototype for vehicles with two fuel tanks. Figure 6 of appendix A represents the prototype of the back side of the labels for bothdedicated and dual-fueled vehicles. Manufacturers may, at their discretion, display the appropriate front label format and back label format immediately adjacent to each other on the same visible surface. No marks or information other than that specified in this subpart shall appear on this label.

(c) *Type size and setting.* The Helvetica Condensed and Helvetica family typefaces or equivalent shall be

used exclusively on the label. Specific type sizes and faces to be used are indicated on the prototype labels (Figures 4, 5, 5.1, and 6 of appendix A). No hyphenation should be used in setting headline or text copy. Positioning and spacing should follow the prototypes closely.

(d) *Colors and Paper Stock.* All labels shall be printed in process black ink on Hammermill Offset Opaque Vellum/S.70 Sky Blue (or equivalent) paper. Follow label prototypes for percentages of screen tints in Exhaust Emissions chart.

(e) *Content* (1) Headlines and text, as illustrated in Figures 4, 5, 5.1, and 6 of appendix A, are standard for all labels.

(2) *Estimated cruising range.* (i) For dedicated vehicles, determined in accordance with § 309.22(a).

(ii) For dual fueled vehicles, determined in accordance with § 309.22(b).

(3) *Emission certification standard.* (i) For vehicles not certified as meeting an EPA emissions standard, indicated by placing a mark in the appropriate box indicating that fact.

(ii) For vehicles certified as meeting an EPA emissions standard, indicated by placing a mark in the appropriate box indicating that fact and by placing a caret above the standard to which that vehicle has been certified.

### § 309.21 Labeling requirements for used covered vehicles.

(a) *Affixing and maintaining labels.* Before offering a used covered vehicle for acquisition to consumers, used vehicle dealers shall affix and maintain, or cause to be affixed and maintained, a used vehicle label on a visible surface of each such vehicle.

(b) *Layout.* Figures 7 and 8 of appendix A are prototype labels that demonstrate the proper layout. All positioning, spacing, type size, and line widths should be similar to and consistent with the prototype labels. Labels required by this section are two-sided and rectangular in shape measuring 7 inches (17.5 cm) in width and 5–1/2 inches (13.75 cm) in height. Figure 7 represents the prototype of the front side of the labels for used covered vehicles. Figure 8 represents the back side of the labels for used covered vehicles. Manufacturers may, at their discretion, display the appropriate front label format and back label format immediately adjacent to each other on the same visible surface. No marks or information other than that specified in this subpart shall appear on this label.

(c) *Type size and setting.* The Helvetica Condensed and Helvetica family typefaces or equivalent shall be used exclusively on the label. Specific type sizes and faces to be used are indicated on the prototype labels (Figures 7 and 8 of appendix A). No hyphenation should be used in setting headline or text copy. Positioning and spacing should follow the prototypes closely.

(d) *Colors and Paper Stock.* All labels shall be printed in process black ink on Hammermill Offset Opaque Vellum/S.70 Sky Blue (or equivalent) paper.

(e) *Contents.* Headlines and text, as illustrated in Figures 7 and 8 of appendix A, are standard for all labels.

### § 309.22 Determining estimated cruising range.

(a) *Dedicated vehicles.* (1) Estimated cruising range values for dedicated vehicles required to comply with the provisions of 40 CFR part 600 are to be calculated in accordance with the following:

(i) The lower range value shall be determined by multiplying the vehicle's estimated city fuel-economy by its fuel tank capacity, then rounding to the next lower integer value.

(ii) The upper range value shall be determined by multiplying the vehicle's estimated highway fuel-economy by its fuel tank capacity, then rounding to the next higher integer value.

(2) Estimated cruising range for an EV is the actual vehicle range determined in accordance with test methods set forth in Society of Automotive Engineers (''SAE'') Surface Vehicle Recommended Practice SAE J1634–1993–05–20, ''Electric Vehicle Energy Consumption and Range Test Procedure.'' This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of SAE J1634–1993–05–20 may be obtained from the Society of Automotive Engineers, 400 Commonwealth Drive, Warrendale, PA, 15096–0001, or may be inspected at

the Federal Trade Commission, Public Reference Room, room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW, Washington, DC, or at the Office of the Federal Register, 800 North Capitol Street, NW, suite 700, Washington, DC.

(3) To determine the estimated cruising range values for dedicated vehicles not required to comply with the provisions of 40 CFR part 600 (other than electric vehicles), you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence that substantiates the minimum and maximum number of miles the vehicle will travel between refuelings or rechargings that is claimed.

(b) *Dual-fueled vehicles.* (1) Estimated cruising range values for dual-fueled vehicles required to comply with the provisions of 40 CFR part 600 are to be calculated in accordance with the following:

(i) The lower range value for the vehicle while operating exclusively on alternative fuel shall be determined by multiplying the vehicle's estimated city fuel-economy by its alternative-fuel tank capacity, then rounding to the next lower integer value.

(ii) The upper range value for the vehicle while operating exclusively on alternative fuel shall be determined by multiplying the vehicle's estimated highway fuel-economy by its alternative-fuel tank capacity, then rounding to the next higher integer value.

(iii) The lower range value for the vehicle while operating exclusively on conventional fuel shall be determined by multiplying the vehicle's estimated city fuel-economy by its conventional-fuel tank capacity, then rounding to the next lower integer value.

(iv) The upper range value for the vehicle while operating exclusively on conventional fuel shall be determined by multiplying the vehicle's estimated highway fuel-economy by its conventional-fuel tank capacity, then rounding to the next higher integer value.

(2) [Reserved]

(3) To determine the estimated cruising range values for dual-fueled vehicles not required to comply with the provisions of 40 CFR part 600 (other than electric vehicles), you must possess a reasonable basis, consisting of competent and reliable evidence, of:

(i) The minimum and maximum number of miles the vehicle will travel between refuelings or rechargings when operated exclusively on alternative fuel, and

(ii) The minimum and maximum number of miles the vehicle will travel between refuelings or rechargings when operated exclusively on conventional fuel.

### §309.23 Recordkeeping.

Manufacturers required to comply this subpart shall establish, maintain, and retain copies of all data, reports, records, and procedures used to meet the requirements of this subpart for three years after the end of the model year to which they relate. They must be available for inspection by Federal Trade Commission staff members, or by people authorized by the Federal Trade Commission.

APPENDIX A—FIGURES FOR PART 309

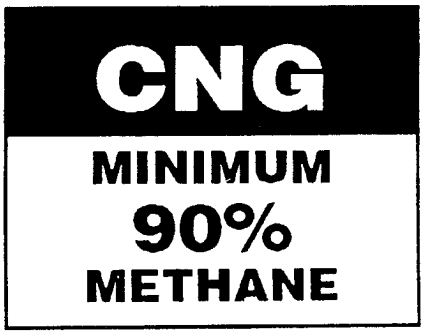



Figure 1

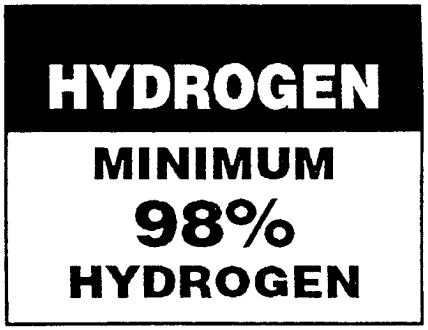



Figure 2

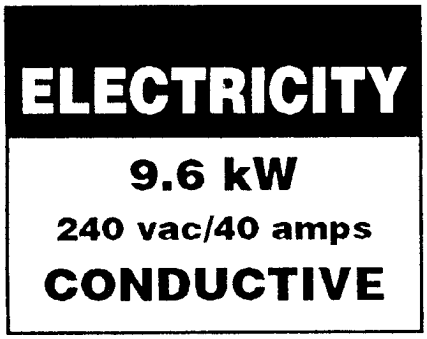



Figure 3

# AFV Buyers Guide

## Compare the Cruising Range and Emissions of this Vehicle with Others Before You Buy.

**Manufacturer's Estimated Cruising Range**

**440-520**

**Miles on one tank or charge**

Actual cruising range will vary with options, driving conditions, driving habits, and the vehicle's condition.

**Emissions**

- ❑ **This vehicle has not been certified as meeting an EPA emissions standard.**
- ❑ **This vehicle meets the EPA emissions standard noted below.**

| More Emissions | Tier I | TLEV | LEV | ULEV | ILEV | ULEV+ ILEV | ZEV | Fewer Emissions |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

The overall environmental impact of driving any vehicle includes many factors not currently measured by existing vehicle emissions standards.

**Please read back for important information.**

Figure 4

# AFV Buyers Guide

## Compare the Cruising Range and Emissions of this Vehicle with Others Before You Buy.

**Manufacturer's Estimated Cruising Range**

| 400-480 | 440-520 |
|---|---|
| Miles on one tank or charge exclusively on alternative fuel | Miles on one tank exclusively on gasoline/diesel |

Actual cruising range will vary with options, driving conditions, driving habits, and the vehicle's condition.

**Emissions**

- ❑ This vehicle has not been certified as meeting an EPA emissions standard.
- ❑ This vehicle meets the EPA emissions standard noted below.

▼

More Emissions | Tier I | TLEV | LEV | ULEV | ILEV | ULEV+ ILEV | ZEV | Fewer Emissions

The overall environmental impact of driving any vehicle includes many factors not currently measured by existing vehicle emissions standards.

**Please read back for important information.**

Figure 5

# AFV Buyers Guide

## Compare the Cruising Range and Emissions of this Vehicle with Others Before You Buy.

**Manufacturer's Estimated Cruising Range**

| 400-480 | 440-520 |
|---|---|
| Miles on one tank or charge exclusively on alternative fuel | Miles on one tank exclusively on gasoline/diesel |

The total possible cruising range of this vehicle is the sum of the alternative fuel range and the conventional fuel range. Actual cruising range will vary with options, driving conditions, driving habits, and the vehicle's condition.

**Emissions**

- ❑ This vehicle has not been certified as meeting an EPA emissions standard.
- ❑ This vehicle meets the EPA emissions standard noted below.

▼

| More Emissions | Tier I | TLEV | LEV | ULEV | ILEV | ULEV+ ILEV | ZEV | Fewer Emissions |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

The overall environmental impact of driving any vehicle includes many factors not currently measured by existing vehicle emissions standards.

**Please read back for important information.**

Figure 5.1

**Before selecting an Alternative Fueled Vehicle (AFV) make sure you consider:**

- ☑ **FUEL TYPE:** Know which fuel(s) power this vehicle.
- ☑ **OPERATING COSTS:** Fuel and maintenance costs for AFVs differ from gasoline or diesel-fueled vehicles and can vary considerably.
- ☑ **PERFORMANCE/CONVENIENCE:** Vehicles powered by different fuels differ in their cold-start capabilities (i.e., ability to start a cold engine), refueling and/or recharging time (i.e., how long it takes to refill the vehicle's tank to full capacity), acceleration rates, and refueling methods.
- ☑ **FUEL AVAILABILITY:** Determine whether refueling and/or recharging facilities that meet your driving needs have been developed for this vehicle and will be readily available in your area.
- ☑ **ENERGY SECURITY/RENEWABILITY:** Consider where and how the fuel powering this vehicle is typically produced.

**Additional Information**

**DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)**
For more information about AFVs, contact DOE's National Alternative Fuels Hotline, **1-800-423-1DOE**, and ask for its free brochure.

**NATIONAL HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SAFETY ADMINISTRATION (NHTSA)**
For more information about vehicle safety, contact NHTSA's Auto Safety Hotline, **1-800-424-9393**.

The information on this label is required by the Federal Trade Commission, 16 CFR Part 309.

Figure 6

# AFV Buyers Guide

## Before selecting an Alternative Fueled Vehicle (AFV) make sure you consider:

- ☑ **FUEL TYPE:** Know which fuel(s) power this vehicle.
- ☑ **OPERATING COSTS:** Fuel and maintenance costs for AFVs differ from gasoline or diesel-fueled vehicles and can vary considerably.
- ☑ **ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT:** All vehicles (conventional and AFVs) affect the environment directly (e.g., tailpipe emissions) and indirectly (e.g., how the fuel is produced and brought to market). Compare the environmental costs of driving an AFV with a gasoline-powered vehicle.
- ☑ **PERFORMANCE/CONVENIENCE:** Vehicles powered by different fuels differ in terms of the cruising range (i.e., how many miles the vehicle will go on a full supply of fuel), cold start capabilities (i.e., ability to start a cold engine), refueling and/or recharging time (i.e., how long it takes to refill the vehicle's tank to full capacity), acceleration rates, and refueling methods.
- ☑ **FUEL AVAILABILITY:** Determine whether refueling and/or recharging facilities that meet your driving needs have been developed for this vehicle and will be readily available in your area.
- ☑ **ENERGY SECURITY/RENEWABILITY:** Consider where and how the fuel powering this vehicle is typically produced.

**Please read back for important information.**

Figure 7

**Additional Information**

**DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)**

For more information about AFVs, contact DOE's National Alternative Fuels Hotline, **1-800-423-1DOE**, and ask for its free brochure.

**NATIONAL HIGHWAY TRAFFIC SAFETY ADMINISTRATION (NHTSA)**

For more information about vehicle safety, contact NHTSA's Auto Safety Hotline, **1-800-424-9393.**

The information on this label is required by the Federal Trade Commission, 16 CFR Part 309

Figure 8

## PART 310—TELEMARKETING SALES RULE

Sec.
310.1 Scope of regulations in this part.
310.2 Definitions.
310.3 Deceptive telemarketing acts or practices.
310.4 Abusive telemarketing acts or practices.
310.5 Recordkeeping requirements.
310.6 Exemptions.
310.7 Actions by States and private persons.
310.8 Severability.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 6101–6108.

SOURCE: 60 FR 43864, Aug. 23, 1995, unless otherwise noted.

### §310.1 Scope of regulations in this part.

This part implements the Telemarketing and Consumer Fraud and Abuse Prevention Act, 15 U.S.C. 6101–6108.

### §310.2 Definitions.

(a) *Acquirer* means a business organization, financial institution, or an agent of a business organization or financial institution that has authority from an organization that operates or licenses a credit card system to authorize merchants to accept, transmit, or process payment by credit card through the credit card system for money, goods or services, or anything else of value.

(b) *Attorney General* means the chief legal officer of a State.

(c) *Cardholder* means a person to whom a credit card is issued or who is authorized to use a credit card on behalf of or in addition to the person to whom the credit card is issued.

(d) *Commission* means the Federal Trade Commission.

(e) *Credit* means the right granted by a creditor to a debtor to defer payment

of debt or to incur debt and defer its payment.

(f) *Credit card* means any card, plate, coupon book, or other credit device existing for the purpose of obtaining money, property, labor, or services on credit.

(g) *Credit card sales draft* means any record or evidence of a credit card transaction.

(h) *Credit card system* means any method or procedure used to process credit card transactions involving credit cards issued or licensed by the operator of that system.

(i) *Customer* means any person who is or may be required to pay for goods or services offered through telemarketing.

(j) *Investment opportunity* means anything, tangible or intangible, that is offered, offered for sale, sold, or traded based wholly or in part on representations, either express or implied, about past, present, or future income, profit, or appreciation.

(k) *Material* means likely to affect a person's choice of, or conduct regarding, goods or services.

(l) *Merchant* means a person who is authorized under a written contract with an acquirer to honor or accept credit cards, or to transmit or process for payment credit card payments, for the purchase of goods or services.

(m) *Merchant agreement* means a written contract between a merchant and an acquirer to honor or accept credit cards, or to transmit or process for payment credit card payments, for the purchase of goods or services.

(n) *Outbound telephone call* means a telephone call initiated by a telemarketer to induce the purchase of goods or services.

(o) *Person* means any individual, group, unincorporated association, limited or general partnership, corporation, or other business entity.

(p) *Prize* means anything offered, or purportedly offered, and given, or purportedly given, to a person by chance. For purposes of this definition, chance exists if a person is guaranteed to receive an item and, at the time of the offer or purported offer, the telemarketer does not identify the specific item that the person will receive.

(q) *Prize promotion* means:

(1) A sweepstakes or other game of chance; or

(2) An oral or written express or implied representation that a person has won, has been selected to receive, or may be eligible to receive a prize or purported prize.

(r) *Seller* means any person who, in connection with a telemarketing transaction, provides, offers to provide, or arranges for others to provide goods or services to the customer in exchange for consideration.

(s) *State* means any State of the United States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Northern Mariana Islands, and any territory or possession of the United States.

(t) *Telemarketer* means any person who, in connection with telemarketing, initiates or receives telephone calls to or from a customer.

(u) *Telemarketing* means a plan, program, or campaign which is conducted to induce the purchase of goods or services by use of one or more telephones and which involves more than one interstate telephone call. The term does not include the solicitation of sales through the mailing of a catalog which: Contains a written description or illustration of the goods or services offered for sale; includes the business address of the seller; includes multiple pages of written material or illustrations; and has been issued not less frequently than once a year, when the person making the solicitation does not solicit customers by telephone but only receives calls initiated by customers in response to the catalog and during those calls takes orders only without further solicitation. For purposes of the previous sentence, the term *further solicitation* does not include providing the customer with information about, or attempting to sell, any other item included in the same catalog which prompted the customer's call or in a substantially similar catalog.

**§ 310.3 Deceptive telemarketing acts or practices.**

(a) *Prohibited deceptive telemarketing acts or practices.* It is a deceptive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for any seller or telemarketer to engage in the following conduct:

(1) Before a customer pays[1] for goods or services offered, failing to disclose, in a clear and conspicuous manner, the following material information:

(i) The total costs to purchase, receive, or use, and the quantity of, any goods or services that are the subject of the sales offer;[2]

(ii) All material restrictions, limitations, or conditions to purchase, receive, or use the goods or services that are the subject of the sales offer;

(iii) If the seller has a policy of not making refunds, cancellations, exchanges, or repurchases, a statement informing the customer that this is the seller's policy; or, if the seller or telemarketer makes a representation about a refund, cancellation, exchange, or repurchase policy, a statement of all material terms and conditions of such policy;

(iv) In any prize promotion, the odds of being able to receive the prize, and if the odds are not calculable in advance, the factors used in calculating the odds; that no purchase or payment is required to win a prize or to participate in a prize promotion; and the no purchase/no payment method of participating in the prize promotion with either instructions on how to participate or an address or local or toll-free telephone number to which customers may write or call for information on how to participate; and

(v) All material costs or conditions to receive or redeem a prize that is the subject of the prize promotion;

(2) Misrepresenting, directly or by implication, any of the following material information:

(i) The total costs to purchase, receive, or use, and the quantity of, any goods or services that are the subject of a sales offer;

(ii) Any material restriction, limitation, or condition to purchase, receive, or use goods or services that are the subject of a sales offer;

(iii) Any material aspect of the performance, efficacy, nature, or central characteristics of goods or services that are the subject of a sales offer;

(iv) Any material aspect of the nature or terms of the seller's refund, cancellation, exchange, or repurchase policies;

(v) Any material aspect of a prize promotion including, but not limited to, the odds of being able to receive a prize, the nature or value of a prize, or that a purchase or payment is required to win a prize or to participate in a prize promotion;

(vi) Any material aspect of an investment opportunity including, but not limited to, risk, liquidity, earnings potential, or profitability; or

(vii) A seller's or telemarketer's affiliation with, or endorsement by, any government or third-party organization;

(3) Obtaining or submitting for payment a check, draft, or other form of negotiable paper drawn on a person's checking, savings, share, or similar account, without that person's express verifiable authorization. Such authorization shall be deemed verifiable if any of the following means are employed:

(i) Express written authorization by the customer, which may include the customer's signature on the negotiable instrument; or

(ii) Express oral authorization which is tape recorded and made available upon request to the customer's bank and which evidences clearly both the customer's authorization of payment for the goods and services that are the subject of the sales offer and the customer's receipt of all of the following information:

[1] When a seller or telemarketer uses, or directs a customer to use, a courier to transport payment, the seller or telemarketer must make the disclosures required by § 310.3(a)(1) before sending a courier to pick up payment or authorization for payment, or directing a customer to have a courier pick up payment or authorization for payment.

[2] For offers of consumer credit products subject to the Truth in Lending Act, 15 U.S.C. 1601 *et seq.*, and Regulation Z, 12 CFR part 226, compliance with the disclosure requirements under the Truth in Lending Act, and Regulation Z, shall constitute compliance with § 310.3(a)(1)(i) of this Rule.

(A) The date of the draft(s);

(B) The amount of the draft(s);

(C) The payor's name;

(D) The number of draft payments (if more than one);

(E) A telephone number for customer inquiry that is answered during normal business hours; and

(F) The date of the customer's oral authorization; or

(iii) Written confirmation of the transaction, sent to the customer prior to submission for payment of the customer's check, draft, or other form of negotiable paper, that includes:

(A) All of the information contained in §§310.3(a)(3)(ii)(A)–(F); and

(B) The procedures by which the customer can obtain a refund from the seller or telemarketer in the event the confirmation is inaccurate; and

(4) Making a false or misleading statement to induce any person to pay for goods or services.

(b) *Assisting and facilitating.* It is a deceptive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for a person to provide substantial assistance or support to any seller or telemarketer when that person knows or consciously avoids knowing that the seller or telemarketer is engaged in any act or practice that violates §§310.3 (a) or (c), or §310.4 of this Rule.

(c) *Credit card laundering.* Except as expressly permitted by the applicable credit card system, it is a deceptive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for:

(1) A merchant to present to or deposit into, or cause another to present to or deposit into, the credit card system for payment, a credit card sales draft generated by a telemarketing transaction that is not the result of a telemarketing credit card transaction between the cardholder and the merchant;

(2) Any person to employ, solicit, or otherwise cause a merchant or an employee, representative, or agent of the merchant, to present to or deposit into the credit card system for payment, a credit card sales draft generated by a telemarketing transaction that is not the result of a telemarketing credit card transaction between the cardholder and the merchant; or

(3) Any person to obtain access to the credit card system through the use of a business relationship or an affiliation with a merchant, when such access is not authorized by the merchant agreement or the applicable credit card system.

### §310.4 Abusive telemarketing acts or practices.

(a) *Abusive conduct generally.* It is an abusive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for any seller or telemarketer to engage in the following conduct:

(1) Threats, intimidation, or the use of profane or obscene language;

(2) Requesting or receiving payment of any fee or consideration for goods or services represented to remove derogatory information from, or improve, a person's credit history, credit record, or credit rating until:

(i) The time frame in which the seller has represented all of the goods or services will be provided to that person has expired; and

(ii) The seller has provided the person with documentation in the form of a consumer report from a consumer reporting agency demonstrating that the promised results have been achieved, such report having been issued more than six months after the results were achieved. Nothing in this Rule should be construed to affect the requirement in the Fair Credit Reporting Act, 15 U.S.C. 1681, that a consumer report may only be obtained for a specified permissible purpose;

(3) Requesting or receiving payment of any fee or consideration from a person, for goods or services represented to recover or otherwise assist in the return of money or any other item of value paid for by, or promised to, that person in a previous telemarketing transaction, until seven (7) business days after such money or other item is delivered to that person. This provision shall not apply to goods or services provided to a person by a licensed attorney; or

(4) Requesting or receiving payment of any fee or consideration in advance of obtaining a loan or other extension of credit when the seller or telemarketer has guaranteed or represented a high likelihood of success in

obtaining or arranging a loan or other extension of credit for a person.

(b) *Pattern of calls.* (1) It is an abusive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for a telemarketer to engage in, or for a seller to cause a telemarketer to engage in, the following conduct:

(i) Causing any telephone to ring, or engaging any person in telephone conversation, repeatedly or continuously with intent to annoy, abuse, or harass any person at the called number; or

(ii) Initiating an outbound telephone call to a person when that person previously has stated that he or she does not wish to receive an outbound telephone call made by or on behalf of the seller whose goods or services are being offered.

(2) A seller or telemarketer will not be liable for violating § 310.4(b)(1)(ii) if:

(i) It has established and implemented written procedures to comply with § 310.4(b)(1)(ii);

(ii) It has trained its personnel in the procedures established pursuant to § 310.4(b)(2)(i);

(iii) The seller, or the telemarketer acting on behalf of the seller, has maintained and recorded lists of persons who may not be contacted, in compliance with § 310.4(b)(1)(ii); and

(iv) Any subsequent call is the result of error.

(c) *Calling time restrictions.* Without the prior consent of a person, it is an abusive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for a telemarketer to engage in outbound telephone calls to a person's residence at any time other than between 8 a.m. and 9 p.m. local time at the called person's location.

(d) *Required oral disclosures.* It is an abusive telemarketing act or practice and a violation of this Rule for a telemarketer in an outbound telephone call to fail to disclose promptly and in a clear and conspicuous manner to the person receiving the call, the following information:

(1) The identity of the seller;

(2) That the purpose of the call is to sell goods or services;

(3) The nature of the goods or services; and

(4) That no purchase or payment is necessary to be able to win a prize or participate in a prize promotion if a prize promotion is offered. This disclosure must be made before or in conjunction with the description of the prize to the person called. If requested by that person, the telemarketer must disclose the no-purchase/no-payment entry method for the prize promotion.

**§ 310.5 Recordkeeping requirements.**

(a) Any seller or telemarketer shall keep, for a period of 24 months from the date the record is produced, the following records relating to its telemarketing activities:

(1) All substantially different advertising, brochures, telemarketing scripts, and promotional materials;

(2) The name and last known address of each prize recipient and the prize awarded for prizes that are represented, directly or by implication, to have a value of $25.00 or more;

(3) The name and last known address of each customer, the goods or services purchased, the date such goods or services were shipped or provided, and the amount paid by the customer for the goods or services;[3]

(4) The name, any fictitious name used, the last known home address and telephone number, and the job title(s) for all current and former employees directly involved in telephone sales; provided, however, that if the seller or telemarketer permits fictitious names to be used by employees, each fictitious name must be traceable to only one specific employee; and

(5) All verifiable authorizations required to be provided or received under this Rule.

(b) A seller or telemarketer may keep the records required by § 310.5(a) in any form, and in the manner, format, or place as they keep such records in the ordinary course of business. Failure to keep all records required by § 310.5(a) shall be a violation of this Rule.

(c) The seller and the telemarketer calling on behalf of the seller may, by

[3] For offers of consumer credit products subject to the Truth in Lending Act, 15 U.S.C. 1601 *et seq.*, and Regulation Z, 12 CFR part 226, compliance with the recordkeeping requirements under the Truth in Lending Act, and Regulation Z, shall constitute compliance with § 310.5(a)(3) of this Rule.

written agreement, allocate responsibility between themselves for the recordkeeping required by this section. When a seller and telemarketer have entered into such an agreement, the terms of that agreement shall govern, and the seller or telemarketer, as the case may be, need not keep records that duplicate those of the other. If the agreement is unclear as to who must maintain any required record(s), or if no such agreement exists, the seller shall be responsible for complying with §§310.5(a)(1)–(3) and (5); the telemarketer shall be responsible for complying with §310.5(a)(4).

(d) In the event of any dissolution or termination of the seller's or telemarketer's business, the principal of that seller or telemarketer shall maintain all records as required under this section. In the event of any sale, assignment, or other change in ownership of the seller's or telemarketer's business, the successor business shall maintain all records required under this section.

### §310.6 Exemptions.

The following acts or practices are exempt from this Rule:

(a) The sale of pay-per-call services subject to the Commission's ''Trade Regulation Rule Pursuant to the Telephone Disclosure and Dispute Resolution Act of 1992,'' 16 CFR part 308;

(b) The sale of franchises subject to the Commission's Rule entitled ''Disclosure Requirements and Prohibitions Concerning Franchising and Business Opportunity Ventures,'' 16 CFR part 436;

(c) Telephone calls in which the sale of goods or services is not completed, and payment or authorization of payment is not required, until after a face-to-face sales presentation by the seller;

(d) Telephone calls initiated by a customer that are not the result of any solicitation by a seller or telemarketer;

(e) Telephone calls initiated by a customer in response to an advertisement through any media, other than direct mail solicitations; provided, however, that this exemption does not apply to calls initiated by a customer in response to an advertisement relating to investment opportunities, goods or services described in §§310.4(a) (2) or (3), or advertisements that guarantee or represent a high likelihood of success in obtaining or arranging for extensions of credit, if payment of a fee is required in advance of obtaining the extension of credit;

(f) Telephone calls initiated by a customer in response to a direct mail solicitation that clearly, conspicuously, and truthfully discloses all material information listed in §310.3(a)(1) of this Rule for any item offered in the direct mail solicitation; provided, however, that this exemption does not apply to calls initiated by a customer in response to a direct mail solicitation relating to prize promotions, investment opportunities, goods or services described in §§310.4(a) (2) or (3), or direct mail solicitations that guarantee or represent a high likelihood of success in obtaining or arranging for extensions of credit, if payment of a fee is required in advance of obtaining the extension of credit; and

(g) Telephone calls between a telemarketer and any business, except calls involving the retail sale of nondurable office or cleaning supplies; provided, however, that §310.5 of this Rule shall not apply to sellers or telemarketers of nondurable office or cleaning supplies.

### §310.7 Actions by States and private persons.

(a) Any attorney general or other officer of a State authorized by the State to bring an action under the Telemarketing and Consumer Fraud and Abuse Prevention Act, and any private person who brings an action under that Act, shall serve written notice of its action on the Commission, if feasible, prior to its initiating an action under this Rule. The notice shall be sent to the Office of the Director, Bureau of Consumer Protection, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580, and shall include a copy of the State's or private person's complaint and any other pleadings to be filed with the court. If prior notice is not feasible, the State or private person shall serve the Commission with the required notice immediately upon instituting its action.

(b) Nothing contained in this section shall prohibit any attorney general or

other authorized State official from proceeding in State court on the basis of an alleged violation of any civil or criminal statute of such State.

### § 310.8 Severability.

The provisions of this Rule are separate and severable from one another. If any provision is stayed or determined to be invalid, it is the Commission's intention that the remaining provisions shall continue in effect.

## PART 311—TEST PROCEDURES AND LABELING STANDARDS FOR RECYCLED OIL

Sec.
311.1 Definitions.
311.2 Stayed or invalid parts.
311.3 Preemption.
311.4 Testing.
311.5 Labeling.
311.6 Prohibited acts.

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 6363(d).

SOURCE: 60 FR 55421, Oct. 31, 1995, unless otherwise noted.

### § 311.1 Definitions.

As used in this part:

(a) *Manufacturer* means any person who re-refines or otherwise processes used oil to remove physical or chemical impurities acquired through use or who blends such re-refined or otherwise processed used oil with new oil or additives.

(b) *New oil* means any synthetic oil or oil that has been refined from crude oil and which has not been used and may or may not contain additives. Such term does not include used oil or recycled oil.

(c) *Processed used* oil means re-refined or otherwise processed used oil or blend of oil, consisting of such re-refined or otherwise processed used oil and new oil or additives.

(d) *Recycled oil* means processed used oil that the manufacturer has determined, pursuant to section 311.4 of this part, is substantially equivalent to new oil for use as engine oil.

(e) *Used oil* means any synthetic oil or oil that has been refined from crude oil, which has been used and, as a result of such use, has been contaminated by physical or chemical impurities.

(f) *Re-refined oil* means used oil from which physical and chemical contaminants acquired through use have been removed.

### § 311.2 Stayed or invalid parts.

If any part of this rule is stayed or held invalid, the rest of it will remain in force.

### § 311.3 Preemption.

No law, regulation, or order of any State or political subdivision thereof may apply, or remain applicable, to any container of recycled oil, if such law, regulation, or order requires any container of recycled oil, which container bears a label in accordance with the terms of § 311.5 of this part, to bear any label with respect to the comparative characteristics of such recycled oil with new oil that is not identical to that permitted by § 311.5 of this part.

### § 311.4 Testing.

To determine the substantial equivalency of processed used oil with new oil for use as engine oil, manufacturers or their designees must use the test procedures that were reported to the Commission by the National Institute of Standards and Technology (''NIST'') on July 27, 1995, entitled ''Engine Oil Licensing and Certification System,'' American Petroleum Institute (''API'') Publication 1509, Thirteenth Edition, January, 1995. This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of API Publication 1509, ''Engine Oil Licensing and Certification System,'' may be obtained from the American Petroleum Institute, 1220 L Street, NW., Washington, DC 20005, or may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, Public Reference Room, room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC, or at the Office of the Federal Register,, 800 North Capitol Street NW., suite 700, Washington, DC.

### § 311.5 Labeling.

A manufacturer or other seller may represent, on a label on a container of processed used oil, that such oil is substantially equivalent to new oil for use as engine oil only if the manufacturer

has determined that the oil is substantially equivalent to new oil for use as engine oil in accordance with the NIST test procedures prescribed under §311.4 of this part, and has based the representation on that determination.

**§311.6 Prohibited acts.**

It is unlawful for any manufacturer or other seller to represent, on a label on a container of processed used oil, that such oil is substantially equivalent to new oil for use as engine oil unless the manufacturer or other seller has based such representation on the manufacturer's determination that the processed used oil is substantially equivalent to new oil for use as engine oil in accordance with the NIST test procedures prescribed under §311.4 of this part. Violations will be subject to enforcement through civil penalties, imprisonment, and/or injunctive relief in accordance with the enforcement provisions of Section 525 of the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (42 U.S.C. 6395).

# SUBCHAPTER D—TRADE REGULATION RULES

## PART 408—UNFAIR OR DECEPTIVE ADVERTISING AND LABELING OF CIGARETTES IN RELATION TO THE HEALTH HAZARDS OF SMOKING

CROSS REFERENCE: For a statement of basis and purpose of Trade Regulation Rule, see 29 FR 8325 of July 2, 1964.

[30 FR 9485, July 29, 1965]

## PART 410—DECEPTIVE ADVERTISING AS TO SIZES OF VIEWABLE PICTURES SHOWN BY TELEVISION RECEIVING SETS

### § 410.1 The Rule.

In connection with the sale of television receiving sets, in commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it is an unfair method of competition and an unfair and deceptive act or practice to use any figure or size designation to refer to the size of the picture shown by a television receiving set or the picture tube contained therein unless such indicated size is the actual size of the viewable picture area measured on a single plane basis. If the indicated size is other than the horizontal dimension of the actual viewable picture area such size designation shall be accompanied by a statement, in close connection and conjunction therewith, clearly and conspicuously showing the manner of measurement.

NOTE 1: For the purposes of this part, measurement of the picture area on a single plane basis refers to a measurement of the distance between the outer extremities (sides) of the picture area which does not take into account the curvature of the tube.

NOTE 2: Any referenced or footnote disclosure of the manner of measurement by means of the asterisk or some similar symbol does not satisfy the ''close connection and conjunction'' requirement of this part.

Examples of proper size descriptions when a television receiving set shows a 20-inch picture measured diagonally, a 19-inch picture measured horizontally, a 15-inch picture measured vertically, and a picture area of 262 square inches include:

''20 inch (50.80 cm) picture measured diagonally'' or
''20 inch (50.80 cm) diagonal''
''19 inch × 15 inch (48.26 cm × 38.10 cm) picture'' or
''19 inch (48.26 cm) picture'' or
''19 inch (48.26 cm)'' or
''262 square inch (1,690.32 cm. sq.) picture.''

Examples of improper size descriptions of a television set showing a picture of the size described above include:

''21 inch (53.34 cm) set'' or
''21 inch (53.34 cm) diagonal set'' or
''21 inch (53.34 cm) over-all diagonal'' or
''Brand Name 21.''

NOTE 3: The numbers in parentheses reflect the metric equivalent of the English measurements. They are provided for information purposes only, and are not required to be included in the disclosures.

(38 Stat. 717, as amended, 15 U.S.C. 41–58)

[36 FR 21518, Nov. 10, 1971; 36 FR 22286, Nov. 24, 1971; as amended at 59 FR 54812, Nov. 2, 1994]

## PART 423—CARE LABELING OF TEXTILE WEARING APPAREL AND CERTAIN PIECE GOODS AS AMENDED

Sec.
423.1 Definitions.
423.2 Terminology.
423.3 What this regulation does.
423.4 Who is covered.
423.5 Unfair or deceptive acts or practices.
423.6 Textile wearing apparel.
423.7 Certain piece goods.
423.8 Exemptions.
423.9 Conflict with flammability standards.
423.10 Stayed or invalid parts.
APPENDIX A TO PART 423—GLOSSARY OF STANDARD TERMS

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended; (15 U.S.C. 41, et seq.)

SOURCE: 48 FR 22743, May 20, 1983; 48 FR 24869, June 3, 1983, unless otherwise noted.

### § 423.1 Definitions.

(a) *Care label* means a permanent label or tag, containing regular care information and instructions, that is attached or affixed in such a manner that it will not become separated from the product and will remain legible during the useful life of the product.

(b) *Certain Piece Goods* means textile products sold by the piece from bolts or rolls for the purpose of making home sewn textile wearing apparel. This includes remnants, the fiber content of which is known, that are cut by or for a retailer but does not include manufacturers' remnants, up to ten yards long, that are clearly and conspicuously marked *pound goods* or *fabrics of undetermined origin* (i.e., fiber content is not known and cannot be easily ascertained) and trim, up to five inches wide.

(c) *Dryclean* means a commercial process by which soil is removed from products or specimens in a machine which uses any common organic solvent (e.g. petroleum, perchlorethylene, fluorocarbon). The process may also include adding moisture to the solvent, up to 75% relative humidity, hot tumble drying up to 160 degrees F (71 degrees C) and restoration by steam press or steam-air finishing.

(d) *Machine Wash* means a process by which soil is removed from products in a specially designed machine using water, detergent or soap and agitation. When no temperature is given, e.g., *warm* or *cold*, hot water up to 150 degrees F (66 degrees C) can be regularly used.

(e) *Regular Care* means customary and routine care, not spot care.

(f) *Textile Product* means any commodity, woven, knit or otherwise made primarily of fiber, yarn or fabric and intended for sale or resale, requiring care and maintenance to effectuate ordinary use and enjoyment.

(g) *Textile Wearing Apparel* means any finished garment or article of clothing made from a textile product that is customarily used to cover or protect any part of the body, including hosiery, excluding footwear, gloves, hats or other articles used exclusively to cover or protect the head or hands.

### §423.2 Terminology.

(a) Any appropriate terms may be used on care labels or care instructions so long as they clearly and accurately describe regular care procedures and otherwise fulfill the requirements of this regulation.

(b) Any appropriate symbols may be used on care labels or care instructions, in addition to the required appropriate terms so long as the terms fulfill the requirements of this part. See §423.8(g) for conditional exemption allowing the use of symbols without terms.

(c) The terminology set forth in appendix A may be used to fulfill the requirements of this regulation.

[48 FR 22743, May 20, 1983; 48 FR 24869, June 3, 1983; 62 FR 29008, May 29, 1997]

### §423.3 What this regulation does.

This regulation requires manufacturers and importers of textile wearing apparel and certain piece goods, in or affecting commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, to provide regular care instructions at the time such products are sold to purchasers through the use of care labels or other methods described in this rule.

### §423.4 Who is covered.

Manufacturers and importers of textile wearing apparel and certain piece goods are covered by this regulation. This includes any person or organization that directs or controls the manufacture or importation of covered products.

### §423.5 Unfair or deceptive acts or practices.

(a) *Textile wearing apparel and certain piece goods.* In connection with the sale, in or affecting commerce, of textile wearing apparel and certain piece goods, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for a manufacturer or importer:

(1) To fail to disclose to a purchaser, prior to sale, instructions which prescribe a regular care procedure necessary for the ordinary use and enjoyment of the product;

(2) To fail to warn a purchaser, prior to sale, when the product cannot be cleaned by any cleaning procedure, without being harmed;

(3) To fail to warn a purchaser, prior to sale, when any part of the prescribed regular care procedure, which a consumer or professional cleaner could reasonably be expected to use, would harm the product or others being cleaned with it;

(4) To fail to provide regular care instructions and warnings, except as to piece goods, in a form that can be referred to by the consumer throughout the useful life of the product;

(5) To fail to possess, prior to sale, a reasonable basis for all regular care information disclosed to the purchaser.

(b) *Violations of this regulation.* The Commission has adopted this regulation to prevent the unfair or deceptive acts or practices, defined in paragraph (a) of this section. Each manufacturer or importer covered by this regulation must comply with the requirements in §§ 423.2 and 423.6 through 423.8 of this regulation. Any manufacturer or importer who complies with the requirements of §§ 423.2 and 423.6 through 423.8 does not violate this regulation.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 3084–0046)

### § 423.6 Textile wearing apparel.

This section applies to textile wearing apparel.

(a) Manufacturers and importers must attach care labels so that they can be seen or easily found when the product is offered for sale to consumers. If the product is packaged, displayed, or folded so that customers cannot see or easily find the label, the care information must also appear on the outside of the package or on a hang tag fastened to the product.

(b) Care labels must state what regular care is needed for the ordinary use of the product. In general, labels for textile wearing apparel must have either a washing instruction or a drycleaning instruction. If a washing instruction is included, it must comply with the requirements set forth in paragraph (b)(1) of this section. If a drycleaning instruction is included, it must comply with the requirements set forth in paragraph (b)(2) of this section. If either washing or drycleaning can be used on the product, the label need have only one of these instructions. If the product cannot be cleaned by any available cleaning method without being harmed, the label must so state. [For example, if a product would be harmed both by washing and by drycleaning, the label might say ''Do not wash—do not dryclean,'' or ''Cannot be successfully cleaned.''] The instructions for washing and drycleaning are as follows:

(1) Washing, drying, ironing, bleaching and warning instructions must follow these requirements:

(i) *Washing.* The label must state whether the product should be washed by hand or machine. The label must also state a water temperature that may be used. However, if the regular use of hot water will not harm the product, the label need not mention any water temperature. [For example, *Machine wash* means hot, warm or cold water can be used.]

(ii) *Drying.* The label must state whether the product should be dried by machine or by some other method. If machine drying is called for, the label must also state a drying temperature that may be used. However, if the regular use of a high temperature will not harm the product, the label need not mention any drying temperature. [For example, *Tumble dry* means that a high, medium, or low temperature setting can be used.]

(iii) *Ironing.* Ironing must be mentioned on a label only if it will be needed on a regular basis to preserve the appearance of the product, or if it is required under paragraph (b)(1)(v) of this section, *Warnings.* If ironing is mentioned, the label must also state an ironing temperature that may be used. However, if the regular use of a hot iron will not harm the product, the label need not mention any ironing temperature.

(iv) *Bleaching.* (A) If all commercially available bleaches can safely be used on a regular basis, the label need not mention bleaching.

(B) If all commercially available bleaches would harm the product when used on a regular basis, the label must say ''No bleach'' or ''Do not bleach.''

(C) If regular use of chlorine bleach would harm the product, but regular use of a non-chlorine bleach would not, the label must say ''Only non-chlorine bleach, when needed.''

(v) *Warnings.* (A) If there is any part of the prescribed washing procedure which consumers can reasonably be expected to use that would harm the product or others being washed with it in one or more washings, the label

must contain a warning to this effect. The warning must use words ''Do not,'' ''No,'' ''Only,'' or some other clear wording. [For example, if a shirt is not colorfast, its label should state ''Wash with like colors'' or ''Wash separately.'' If a pair of pants will be harmed by ironing, its label should state ''Do not iron.'']

(B) Warnings are not necessary for any procedure that is an alternative to the procedure prescribed on the label. [For example, if an instruction states ''Dry flat,'' it is not necessary to give the warning ''Do not tumble dry.'']

(2) *Drycleaning.*—(i) *General.* If a drycleaning instruction is included on the label, it must also state at least one type of solvent that may be used. However, if all commercially available types of solvent can be used, the label need not mention any types of solvent. The terms ''Drycleanable'' or ''Commercially Dryclean'' may not be used in an instruction. [For example, if drycleaning in perchlorethylene would harm a coat, the label might say ''Professionally dryclean: fluorocarbon or petroleum.'']

(ii) *Warnings.* (A) If there is any part of the drycleaning procedure which consumers or drycleaners can reasonably be expected to use that would harm the product or others being cleaned with it, the label must contain a warning to this effect. The warning must use the words ''Do not,'' ''No,'' ''Only,'' or some other clear wording. [For example, the drycleaning process normally includes moisture addition to solvent up to 75% relative humidity, hot tumble drying up to 160 degrees F and restoration by steam press or steam-air finish. If a product can be drycleaned in all solvents but steam should not be used, its label should state ''Professionally dryclean. No steam.'']

(B) Warnings are not necessary to any procedure which is an alternative to the procedure prescribed on the label. [For example, if an instruction states ''Professionally dryclean, fluorocarbon,'' it is not necessary to give the warning ''Do not use perchlorethylene.'']

(c) A manufacturer or importer must establish a reasonable basis for care information by processing prior to sale:

(1) Reliable evidence that the product was not harmed when cleaned reasonably often according to the instructions on the label, including instructions when silence has a meaning. [For example, if a shirt is labeled ''Machine wash. Tumble dry. Cool iron.,'' the manufacturer or importer must have reliable proof that the shirt is not harmed when cleaned by machine washing (in hot water), with any type of bleach, tumble dried (at a high setting), and ironed with a cool iron]; or

(2) Reliable evidence that the product or a fair sample of the product was harmed when cleaned by methods warned against on the label. However, the manufacturer or importer need not have proof of harm when silence does not constitute a warning. [For example, if a shirt is labeled ''Machine wash warm. Tumble dry medium'', the manufacturer need not have proof that the shirt would be harmed if washed in hot water or dried on high setting]; or

(3) Reliable evidence, like that described in paragraph (c) (1) or (2) of this section, for each component part of the product; or

(4) Reliable evidence that the product or a fair sample of the product was successfully tested. The tests may simulate the care suggested or warned against on the label; or

(5) Reliable evidence of current technical literature, past experience, or the industry expertise supporting the care information on the label; or

(6) Other reliable evidence.

### § 423.7 Certain piece goods.

This section applies to certain piece goods.

(a) Manufacturers and importers of certain piece goods must provide care information clearly and conspicuously on the end of each bolt or roll.

(b) Care information must say what regular care is needed for the ordinary use of the product, pursuant to the instructions set forth in § 423.6. Care information on the end of the bolt need only address information applicable to the fabric.

### § 423.8 Exemptions.

(a) Any item of textile wearing apparel, without pockets, that is totally reversible (i.e., the product is designed

to be used with either side as the outer part or face) is exempt from the care label requirement.

(b) Manufacturers or importers can ask for an exemption from the care label requirement for any other textile wearing apparel product or product line, if the label would harm the appearance or usefulness of the product. The request must be made in writing to the Secretary of the Commission. The request must be accompanied by a labeled sample of the product and a full statement explaining why the request should be granted.

(c) If an item is exempt from care labeling under paragraph (a) or (b), of this section the consumers still must be given the required care information for the product. However, the care information can be put on a hang tag, on the package, or in some other conspicuous place, so that consumers will be able to see the care information before buying the product.

(d) Manufacturers and importers of products covered by § 423.5 are exempt from the requirement for a permanent care label if the product can be cleaned safely under the harshest procedures. This exemption is available only if there is reliable proof that all of the following washing and drycleaning procedures can safely be used on a product:

(1) Machine washing in hot water;

(2) Machine drying at a high setting;

(3) Ironing at a hot setting;

(4) Bleaching with all commercially available bleaches;

(5) Drycleaning with all commercially available solvents. In such case, the statement ''wash or dry clean, any normal method'' must appear on a hang tag, on the package, or in some other conspicuous place, so that consumers will be able to see the statement before buying the product.

If a product meets the requirements outlined above, it is automatically exempt from the care label requirement. It is not necessary to file a request for this exemption.

(e) Manufacturers and importers need not provide care information with products sold to institutional buyers for commercial use.

(f) All exemption granted under § 423.1(c) (1) or (2) or the Care Labeling Rule issued on December 9, 1971, will continue to be in effect if the product still meets the standards on which the original exemption was based. Otherwise, the exemption is automatically revoked.

(g) The symbol system developed by the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) and designated as ASTM Standard D5489–96c Guide to Care Symbols for Care Instructions on Consumer Textile Products may be used on care labels or care instructions in lieu of terms so long as the symbols fulfill the requirements of this part. In addition, symbols from the symbol system designated as ASTM Standard D5489–96c may be combined with terms so long as the symbols and terms used fulfill the requirements of this part. Provided, however, that for the 18-month period beginning on July 1, 1997, such symbols may be used on care labels in lieu of terms only if an explanation of the meaning of the symbols used on the care label in terms is attached to, or provided with, the item of textile wearing apparel. This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of ASTM Standard D5489–96c Guide to Care Symbols for Care Instructions on Textile Products may be obtained from the American Society for Testing and Materials, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, West Conshohocken, PA 19428, or may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, room 130, 600 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW., Washington, DC, or at the Office of the Federal Register, suite 700, 800 North Capitol Street, NW., Washington, DC.

(15 U.S.C. 41–58)

[48 FR 22743, May 20, 1983; 48 FR 24869, June 3, 1983; 62 FR 29008, May 29, 1997]

### § 423.9 Conflict with flammability standards.

If there is a conflict between this regulation and any regulations issued under the Flammable Fabrics Act, the Flammable Fabics regulation govern over this one.

### § 423.10 Stayed or invalid parts.

If any part of this regulation is stayed or held invalid, the rest of it will stay in force.

## APPENDIX A TO PART 423—GLOSSARY OF STANDARD TERMS

1. *Washing, Machine Methods:*

a. ''Machine wash''—a process by which soil may be removed from products or specimens through the use of water, detergent or soap, agitation and a machine designed for this purpose. When no temperature is given, e.g., ''warm'' or ''cold'', hot water up to 150 °F (66 °C) can be regularly used.

b. ''Warm''—initial water temperature setting 90° to 110 °F (32° to 43 °C) (hand comfortable).

c. ''Cold''—initial water temperature setting same as cold water tap up to 85 °F (29 °C).

d. ''Do not have commercially laundered''—do not employ a laundry which uses special formulations, sour rinses, extermely large loads or extermely high temperatures or which otherwise is employed for commercial, industrial or institutional use. Employ laundering methods designed for residential use or use in a self-service establishment.

e. ''Small load''—smaller than normal washing load.

f. ''Delicate cycle'' or ''gentle cycle''—slow agitation and reduced time.

g. ''Durable press cycle'' or ''permanent press cycle''—cool down rinse or cold rinse before reduced spinning.

h. ''Separately''—alone.

i. ''With like colors''—with colors of similar hue and intensity.

j. ''Wash inside out''—turn product inside out to protect face of fabric.

k. ''Warm rinse''—initial water temperature setting 90° to 110 °F (32° to 43 °C).

l. ''Cold rinse''—initial water temperature setting same as cold water tap up to 85 °F (29 °C).

m. ''Rinse thoroughly''—rinse several times to remove detergent, soap, and bleach.

n. ''No spin'' or ''Do not spin''—remove material start of final spin cycle.

o. ''No wring'' or ''Do not wring''—do not use roller wringer, nor wring by hand.

2. *Washing, Hand Methods:*

a. ''Hand wash''—a process by which soil may be manually removed from products or specimens through the use of water, detergent or soap, and gentle squeezing action. When no temperature is given, e.g., ''warm'' or ''cold'', hot water up to 150 °F (66 °C) can be regularly used.

b. ''Warm''—initial water temperature 90° to 110 °F (32° to 43 °C) (hand comfortable).

c. ''Cold''—initial water temperature same as cold water tap up to 85 °F (29 °C).

d. ''Separately''—alone.

e. ''With like colors''—with colors of similar hue and intensity.

f. ''No wring or twist''—handle to avoid wrinkles and distortion.

g. ''Rinse thoroughly''—rinse several times to remove detergent, soap, and bleach.

h. ''Damp wipe only''—surface clean with damp cloth or sponge.

3. *Drying, All Methods:*

a. ''Tumble dry''—use machine dryer. When no temperature setting is given, machine drying at a hot setting may be regularly used.

b. ''Medium''—set dryer at medium heat.

c. ''Low''—set dryer at low heat.

d. ''Durable press'' or ''Permanent press''—set dryer at permanent press setting.

e. ''No heat''—set dryer to operate without heat.

f. ''Remove promptly''—when items are dry, remove immediately to prevent wrinkling.

g. ''Drip dry''—hang dripping wet with or without hand shaping and smoothing.

h. ''Line dry''—hang damp from line or bar in or out of doors.

i. ''Line dry in shade''—dry away from sun.

j. ''Line dry away from heat''—dry away from heat.

k. ''Dry flat''—lay out horizontally for drying.

l. ''Block to dry''—reshape to original dimensions while drying.

m. ''Smooth by hand''—by hand, while wet, remove wrinkles, straighten seams and facings.

4. *Ironing and Pressing:*

a. ''Iron''—Ironing is needed. When no temperature is given iron at the highest temperature setting may be regularly used.

b. ''Warm iron''—medium temperature setting.

c. ''Cool iron''—lowest temperature setting.

d. ''Do not iron''—item not to be smoothed or finished with an iron.

e. ''Iron wrong side only''—article turned inside out for ironing or pressing.

f. ''No steam'' or ''Do not steam''—steam in any form not to be used.

g. ''Steam only''—steaming without contact pressure.

h. ''Steam press'' or ''Steam iron''—use iron at steam setting.

i. ''Iron damp''—articles to be ironed should feel moist.

j. ''Use press cloth''—use a dry or a damp cloth between iron and fabric.

5. *Bleaching:*

a. ''Bleach when needed''—all bleaches may be used when necessary.

b. ''No bleach'' or ''Do not bleach''—no bleaches may be used.

c. ''Only non-chlorine bleach, when needed''—only the bleach specified may be used

when necessary. Chlorine bleach may not be used.

6. *Washing or Drycleaning:*

a. ''Wash or dryclean, any normal method''—can be machine washed in hot water, can be machine dried at a high setting, can be ironed at a hot setting, can be bleached with all commercially available bleaches and can be drycleaned with all commercially available solvents.

7. *Drycleaning, All Procedures:*

a. ''Dryclean''—a process by which soil may be removed from products or specimens in a machine which uses any common organic solvent (for example, petroleum, perchlorethylene, fluorocarbon) located in any commercial establishment. The process may include moisture addition to solvent up to 75% relative humidity, hot tumble drying up to 160 °F (71 °C) and restoration by steam press or steam-air finishing.

b. ''Professionally dryclean''—use the drycleaning process but modified to ensure optimum results either by a drycleaning attendant or through the use of a drycleaning machine which permits such modifications or both. Such modifications or special warnings must be included in the care instruction.

c. ''Petroleum'', ''Fluorocarbon'', or ''Perchlorethylene''—employ solvent(s) specified to dryclean the item.

d. ''Short cycle''—reduced or minimum cleaning time, depending upon solvent used.

e. ''Minimum extraction''—least possible extraction time.

f. ''Reduced moisture'' or ''Low moisture''—decreased relative humidity.

g. ''No tumble'' or ''Do not tumble''—do not tumble dry.

h. ''Tumble warm''—tumble dry up to 120 °F (49 °C).

i. ''Tumble cool''—tumble dry at room temperature.

j. ''Cabinet dry warm''—cabinet dry up to 120 °F (49 °C).

k. ''Cabinet dry cool''—cabinet dry at room temperature.

l. ''Steam only''—employ no contact pressure when steaming.

m. ''No steam'' or ''Do not steam''—do not use steam in pressing, finishing, steam cabinets or wands.

8. *Leather and Suede Cleaning:*

a. ''Leather clean''—have cleaned only by a professional cleaner who uses special leather or suede care methods.

[48 FR 22743, May 20, 1983; 48 FR 24868, June 3, 1983; 48 FR 27225, June 14, 1983]

# PART 424—RETAIL FOOD STORE ADVERTISING AND MARKETING PRACTICES

Sec.

424.1 Unfair or deceptive acts or practices.
424.2 Defenses.

AUTHORITY: 88 Stat. 2193, as amended: 15 U.S.C. 57a(a)(1)(B).

## § 424.1 Unfair or deceptive acts or practices.

In connection with the sale of offering for sale by retail food stores of food, grocery products or other merchandise to consumers in or affecting commerce as ''commerce'' is defined in section 4 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 44, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice in violation of section 5(a)(1) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 45(a)(1), to offer any such products for sale at a stated price, by means of an advertisement disseminated in an area served by any stores which are covered by the advertisement, if those stores do not have the advertised products in stock and readily available to customers during the effective period of the advertisement, unless the advertisement clearly and adequately discloses that supplies of the advertised products are limited or the advertised products are available only at some outlets.

[54 FR 35467, Aug. 28, 1989]

## § 424.2 Defenses.

No violation of § 424.1 shall be found if:

(a) The advertised products were ordered in adequate time for delivery in quantities sufficient to meet reasonably anticipated demand;

(b) The food retailer offers a ''raincheck'' for the advertised products;

(c) The food retailer offers at the advertised price or at a comparable price reduction a similar product that is at least comparable in value to the advertised product; or

(d) The food retailer offers other compensation at least equal to the advertised value.

DISSENTING STATEMENT OF COMMISSIONER CALVANI

I dissent from the Commission's decision today to amend the Retail Food Store Advertising and Marketing Practices Trade Regulation Rule (the Unavailability Rule). The Commission has acknowledged today that the original Unavailability Rule is not justified, and approved amendments designed to

lower its costs to grocers. However, in my view, common sense tells us that in the highly competitive grocery store business, where consumers return week after week to the same store, any supermarket that frustrates its customers through unavailability of advertised items will not long keep those customers. In other words, it is clear to me that existing market forces adequately police unavailability, and that, therefore, no Federal Trade Commission rule is necessary, amended or otherwise. The Commission's action today to retain even an amended Unavailability Rule does not conform to common sense.

STATEMENT OF COMMISSIONER ANDREW J. STRENIO, JR., RETAIL FOOD STORE ADVERTISING AND MARKETING PRACTICES RULE

Although revising the ''Unavailability Rule'' has a certain intuitive appeal, there is insufficient evidence on the record to conclude that these changes will result in net consumer benefits. Accordingly, I could not support amending the Rule in this manner. However, now that the step has been taken, it is to be hoped that experience will bear out the optimistic expectations of the Commission majority.

[54 FR 35467, Aug. 28, 1989]

## PART 425—USE OF NEGATIVE OPTION PLANS BY SELLERS IN COMMERCE

### §425.1 The rule.

(a) In connection with the sale, offering for sale, or distribution of goods and merchandise in commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it is an unfair method of competition and an unfair or deceptive act or practice, for a seller in connection with the use of any negative option plan to fail to comply with the following requirements:

(1) Promotional material shall clearly and conspicuously disclose the material terms of the plan, including:

(i) That aspect of the plan under which the subscriber must notify the seller, in the manner provided for by the seller, if he does not wish to purchase the selection;

(ii) Any obligation assumed by the subscriber to purchase a minimum quantity of merchandise;

(iii) The right of a contract-complete subscriber to cancel his membership at any time;

(iv) Whether billing charges will include an amount for postage and handling;

(v) A disclosure indicating that the subscriber will be provided with at least ten (10) days in which to mail any form, contained in or accompanying an announcement identifying the selection, to the seller;

(vi) A disclosure that the seller will credit the return of any selections sent to a subscriber, and guarantee to the Postal Service or the subscriber postage to return such selections to the seller when the announcement and form are not received by the subscriber in time to afford him at least ten (10) days in which to mail his form to the seller;

(vii) The frequency with which the announcements and forms will be sent to the subscriber and the maximum number of announcements and forms which will be sent to him during a 12-month period.

(2) Prior to sending any selection, the seller shall mail to its subscribers, within the time specified by paragraph (a)(3) of this section:

(i) An announcement identifying the selection;

(ii) A form, contained in or accompanying the announcement, clearly and conspicuously disclosing that the subscriber will receive the selection identified in the announcement unless he instructs the seller that he does not want the selection, designating a procedure by which the form may be used for the purpose of enabling the subscriber so to instruct the seller, and specifying either the return date or the mailing date.

(3) The seller shall mail the announcement and form either at least twenty (20) days prior to the return date or at least fifteen (15) days prior to the mailing date, or provide a mailing date at least ten (10) days after receipt by the subscriber, provided, however, that whichever system the seller chooses for mailing the announcement and form, such system must provide the subscriber with at least ten (10) days in which to mail his form.

(b) In connection with the sale or distribution of goods and merchandise in commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it

shall constitute an unfair method of competition and an unfair or deceptive act or practice for a seller in connection with the use of any negative option plan to:

(1) Refuse to credit, for the full invoiced amount thereof, the return of any selection sent to a subscriber, and to guarantee to the Postal Service or the subscriber postage adequate to return such selection to the seller, when:

(i) The selection is sent to a subscriber whose form indicating that he does not want to receive the selection was received by the seller by the return date or was mailed by the subscriber by the mailing date;

(ii) Such form is received by the seller after the return date, but has been mailed by the subscriber and postmarked at least 3 days prior to the return date;

(iii) Prior to the date of shipment of such selection, the seller has received from a contract-complete subscriber, a written notice of cancellation of membership adequately identifying the subscriber; however, this provision is applicable only to the first selection sent to a canceling contract-complete subscriber after the seller has received written notice of cancellation. After the first selection shipment, all selection shipments thereafter are deemed to be unordered merchandise pursuant to section 3009 of the Postal Reorganization Act of 1970, as adopted by the Federal Trade Commission in its public notice, dated September 11, 1970;

(iv) The announcement and form are not received by the subscriber in time to afford him at least ten (10) days in which to mail his form.

(2) Fail to notify a subscriber known by the seller to be within any of the circumstances set forth in paragraphs (b)(1)(i) through (iv) of this section, that if the subscriber elects, the subscriber may return the selection with return postage guaranteed and receive a credit to his account.

(3) Refuse to ship within 4 weeks after receipt of an order merchandise due subscribers as introductory and bonus merchandise, unless the seller is unable to deliver the merchandise originally offered due to unanticipated circumstances beyond the seller's control and promptly makes a reasonably equivalent alternative offer. However, where the subscriber refuses to accept alternatively offered introductory merchandise, but instead insists upon termination of his membership due to the seller's failure to provide the subscriber with his originally requested introductory merchandise, or any portion thereof, the seller must comply with the subscriber's request for cancellation of membership, provided the subscriber returns to the seller any introductory merchandise which already may have been sent him.

(4) Fail to terminate promptly the membership of a properly identified contract-complete subscriber upon his written request.

(5) Ship, without the express consent of the subscriber, substituted merchandise for that ordered by the subscriber.

NOTE: The Commission is aware of the fact that many of the consumer complaints received during the course of the proceeding involve allegations of erroneous or unfair billing practices of a type which would be covered by its proposed trade regulation rule involving billing practices arising out of the administration of customer accounts by credit card issuers and other retail establishments, which proceeding has been postponed indefinitely as a result of and for the reasons stated in the Commission's announcement dated January 7, 1971. In view of the fact that the problems encountered by users of the negative option system or merchandising are no different from those contemplated by the billing practices proceeding which was designed to be applicable to all sellers similarly situated, the Commission has not seen fit to include provisions governing such practices in this part, but would instead visualize that any subsequent rule or statute on the subject would be equally applicable to the members of this industry. In the meantime, abuses in this area will be dealt with on a case-by-case basis.

(c) For the purposes of this part:

(1) *Negative option plan* refers to a contractual plan or arrangement under which a seller periodically sends to subscribers an announcement which identifies merchandise (other than annual supplements to previously acquired merchandise) it proposes to send to subscribers to such plan, and the subscribers thereafter receive and are billed for the merchandise identified in each such announcement, unless by a date or within a time specified by the

seller with respect to each such announcement the subscribers, in conformity with the provisions of such plan, instruct the seller not to send the identified merchandise.

(2) *Subscriber* means any person who has agreed to receive the benefits of, and assume the obligations entailed in, membership in any negative option plan and whose membership in such negative option plan has been approved and accepted by the seller.

(3) *Contract-complete subscriber* refers to a subscriber who has purchased the minimum quantity of merchandise required by the terms of membership in a negative option plan.

(4) *Promotional material* refers to an advertisement containing or accompanying any device or material which a prospective subscriber sends to the seller to request acceptance or enrollment in a negative option plan.

(5) *Selection* refers to the merchandise identified by a seller under any negative option plan as the merchandise which the subscriber will receive and be billed for, unless by the date, or within the period specified by the seller, the subscriber instructs the seller not to send such merchandise.

(6) *Announcement* refers to any material sent by a seller using a negative option plan in which the selection is identified and offered to subscribers.

(7) *Form* refers to any form which the subscriber returns to the seller to instruct the seller not to send the selection.

(8) *Return date* refers to a date specified by a seller using a negative option plan as the date by which a form must be received by the seller to prevent shipment of the selection.

(9) *Mailing date* refers to the time specified by a seller using a negative option plan as the time by or within which a form must be mailed by a subscriber to prevent shipment of the selection.

(38 Stat. 717, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 41–58)

[38 FR 4896; Feb. 22, 1973; 38 FR 6991, Mar. 15, 1973]

# PART 429—RULE CONCERNING COOLING-OFF PERIOD FOR SALES MADE AT HOMES OR AT CERTAIN OTHER LOCATIONS

Sec.
429.0 Definitions.
429.1 The Rule.
429.2 Effect on State laws and municipal ordinances.
429.3 Exemptions.

AUTHORITY: Sections 1–23, FTC Act, 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

## §429.0 Definitions.

For the purposes of this part the following definitions shall apply:

(a) *Door-to-Door Sale*—A sale, lease, or rental of consumer goods or services with a purchase price of $25 or more, whether under single or multiple contracts, in which the seller or his representative personally solicits the sale, including those in response to or following an invitation by the buyer, and the buyer's agreement or offer to purchase is made at a place other than the place of business of the seller (e.g., sales at the buyer's residence or at facilities rented on a temporary or short-term basis, such as hotel or motel rooms, convention centers, fairgrounds and restaurants, or sales at the buyer's workplace or in dormitory lounges). The term *door-to-door sale* does not include a transaction:

(1) Made pursuant to prior negotiations in the course of a visit by the buyer to a retail business establishment having a fixed permanent location where the goods are exhibited or the services are offered for sale on a continuing basis; or

(2) In which the consumer is accorded the right of rescission by the provisions of the Consumer Credit Protection Act (15 U.S.C. 1635) or regulations issued pursuant thereto; or

(3) In which the buyer has initiated the contact and the goods or services are needed to meet a bona fide immediate personal emergency of the buyer, and the buyer furnishes the seller with a separate dated and signed personal statement in the buyer's handwriting

describing the situation requiring immediate remedy and expressly acknowledging and waiving the right to cancel the sale within 3 business days; or

(4) Conducted and consummated entirely by mail or telephone; and without any other contact between the buyer and the seller or its representative prior to delivery of the goods or performance of the services; or

(5) In which the buyer has initiated the contact and specifically requested the seller to visit the buyer's home for the purpose of repairing or performing maintenance upon the buyer's personal property. If, in the course of such a visit, the seller sells the buyer the right to receive additional services or goods other than replacement parts necessarily used in performing the maintenance or in making the repairs, the sale of those additional goods or services would not fall within this exclusion; or

(6) Pertaining to the sale or rental of real property, to the sale of insurance, or to the sale of securities or commodities by a broker-dealer registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

(b) *Consumer Goods or Services*—Goods or services purchased, leased, or rented primarily for personal, family, or household purposes, including courses of instruction or training regardless of the purpose for which they are taken.

(c) *Seller*—Any person, partnership, corporation, or association engaged in the door-to-door sale of consumer goods or services.

(d) *Place of Business*—The main or permanent branch office or local address of a seller.

(e) *Purchase Price*—The total price paid or to be paid for the consumer goods or services, including all interest and service charges.

(f) *Business Day*—Any calendar day except Sunday or any federal holiday (e.g., New Year's Day, Presidents' Day, Martin Luther King's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Veterans' Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.)

[60 FR 54186, Oct. 20, 1995]

## § 429.1 The Rule.

In connection with any door-to-door sale, it constitutes an unfair and deceptive act or practice for any seller to:

(a) Fail to furnish the buyer with a fully completed receipt or copy of any contract pertaining to such sale at the time of its execution, which is in the same language, e.g., Spanish, as that principally used in the oral sales presentation and which shows the date of the transaction and contains the name and address of the seller, and in immediate proximity to the space reserved in the contract for the signature of the buyer or on the front page of the receipt if a contract is not used and in bold face type of a minimum size of 10 points, a statement in substantially the following form:

> ''You, the buyer, may cancel this transaction at any time prior to midnight of the third business day after the date of this transaction. See the attached notice of cancellation form for an explanation of this right.''

The seller may select the method of providing the buyer with the duplicate notice of cancellation form set forth in paragraph (b) of this section, *provided however,* that in the event of cancellation the buyer must be able to retain a complete copy of the contract or receipt. Furthermore, if both forms are not attached to the contract or receipt, the seller is required to alter the last sentence in the statement above to conform to the actual location of the forms.

(b) Fail to furnish each buyer, at the time the buyer signs the door-to-door sales contract or otherwise agrees to buy consumer goods or services from the seller, a completed form in duplicate, captioned either ''NOTICE OF RIGHT TO CANCEL'' or ''NOTICE OF CANCELLATION,'' which shall (where applicable) contain in ten point bold face type the following information and statements in the same language, e.g., Spanish, as that used in the contract.

NOTICE OF CANCELLATION

[enter date of transaction]

_____

(Date)

You may CANCEL this transaction, without any Penalty or Obligation, within THREE BUSINESS DAYS from the above date.

If you cancel, any property traded in, any payments made by you under the contract or sale, and any negotiable instrument executed by you will be returned within TEN BUSINESS DAYS following receipt by the seller of your cancellation notice, and any security interest arising out of the transaction will be cancelled.

If you cancel, you must make available to the seller at your residence, in substantially as good condition as when received, any goods delivered to you under this contract or sale, or you may, if you wish, comply with the instructions of the seller regarding the return shipment of the goods at the seller's expense and risk.

If you do make the goods available to the seller and the seller does not pick them up within 20 days of the date of your Notice of Cancellation, you may retain or dispose of the goods without any further obligation. If you fail to make the goods available to the seller, or if you agree to return the goods to the seller and fail to do so, then you remain liable for performance of all obligations under the contract.

To cancel this transaction, mail or deliver a signed and dated copy of this Cancellation Notice or any other written notice, or send a telegram, to [*Name of seller*], at [*address of seller's place of business*] NOT LATER THAN MIDNIGHT OF [*date*].

I HEREBY CANCEL THIS TRANSACTION.

(Date) _____

(Buyer's signature) _____

(c) Fail, before furnishing copies of the ''Notice of Cancellation'' to the buyer, to complete both copies by entering the name of the seller, the address of the seller's place of business, the date of the transaction, and the date, not earlier than the third business day following the date of the transaction, by which the buyer may give notice of cancellation.

(d) Include in any door-to-door contract or receipt any confession of judgment or any waiver of any of the rights to which the buyer is entitled under this section including specifically the buyer's right to cancel the sale in accordance with the provisions of this section.

(e) Fail to inform each buyer orally, at the time the buyer signs the contract or purchases the goods or services, of the buyer's right to cancel.

(f) Misrepresent in any manner the buyer's right to cancel.

(g) Fail or refuse to honor any valid notice of cancellation by a buyer and within 10 business days after the receipt of such notice, to: (i) Refund all payments made under the contract or sale; (ii) return any goods or property traded in, in substantially as good condition as when received by the seller; (iii) cancel and return any negotiable instrument executed by the buyer in connection with the contract or sale and take any action necessary or appropriate to terminate promptly any security interest created in the transaction.

(h) Negotiate, transfer, sell, or assign any note or other evidence of indebtedness to a finance company or other third party prior to midnight of the fifth business day following the day the contract was signed or the goods or services were purchased.

(i) Fail, within 10 business days of receipt of the buyer's notice of cancellation, to notify the buyer whether the seller intends to repossess or to abandon any shipped or delivered goods.

[37 FR 22934, Oct. 26, 1972, as amended at 38 FR 30105, Nov. 1, 1973; 38 FR 31828, Nov. 19, 1973; 53 FR 45459, Nov. 10, 1988; 60 FR 54186, Oct. 20, 1995]

### § 429.2 Effect on State laws and municipal ordinances.

(a) The Commission is cognizant of the significant burden imposed upon door-to-door sellers by the various and often inconsistent State laws that provide the buyer the right to cancel a door-to-door sales transaction. However, it does not believe that this constitutes sufficient justification for preempting all of the provisions of such laws and the ordinances of the political subdivisions of the various States. The rulemaking record in this proceeding supports the view that the joint and coordinated efforts of both the Commission and State and local officials are required to insure that consumers who have purchased from a door-to-door seller something they do not want, do not need, or cannot afford, be accorded a unilateral right to rescind, without penalty, their agreements to purchase those goods or services.

(b) This part will not be construed to annul, or exempt any seller from complying with, the laws of any State or

the ordinances of a political subdivision thereof that regulate door-to-door sales, except to the extent that such laws or ordinances, if they permit door-to-door selling, are directly inconsistent with the provisions of this part. Such laws or ordinances which do not accord the buyer, with respect to the particular transaction, a right to cancel a door-to-door sale that is substantially the same or greater than that provided in this part, which permit the imposition of any fee or penalty on the buyer for the exercise of such right, or which do not provide for giving the buyer a notice of the right to cancel the transaction in substantially the same form and manner provided for in this part, are among those which will be considered directly inconsistent.

[60 FR 54187, Oct. 20, 1995]

### § 429.3 Exemptions.

(a) The requirements of this part do not apply for sellers of automobiles, vans, trucks or other motor vehicles sold at auctions, tent sales or other temporary places of business, provided that the seller is a seller of vehicles with a permanent place of business.

(b) The requirements of this part do not apply for sellers of arts or crafts sold at fairs or similar places.

[60 FR 54187, Oct. 20, 1995]

## PART 432—POWER OUTPUT CLAIMS FOR AMPLIFIERS UTILIZED IN HOME ENTERTAINMENT PRODUCTS

Sec.
432.1 Scope.
432.2 Required disclosures.
432.3 Standard test conditions.
432.4 Optional disclosures.
432.5 Prohibited disclosures.
432.6 Liability for violation.

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended; (15 U.S.C. 41–58).

SOURCE: 39 FR 15387, May 3, 1974, unless otherwise noted.

### § 432.1 Scope.

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, this part shall apply whenever any power output (in watts or otherwise), power band or power frequency response, or distortion capability or characteristic is represented, either expressly or by implication, in connection with the advertising, sale, or offering for sale, in commerce as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, of sound power amplification equipment manufactured or sold for home entertainment purposes, such as for example, radios, record and tape players, radio-phonograph and/or tape combinations, component audio amplifiers and the like.

(b) Representations shall be exempt from this part if all representations of performance characteristics referred to in paragraph (a) of this section clearly and conspicuously disclose a manufacturer's rated power output and that rated output does not exceed two (2) watts (per channel or total).

(c) It is an unfair method of competition and an unfair or deceptive act or practice within the meaning of section 5(a)(1) of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 45(a)(1)) to violate any applicable provision of this part.

### § 432.2 Required disclosures.

Whenever any direct or indirect representation is made of the power output, power band or power frequency response, or distortion characteristics of sound power amplification equipment, the following disclosures shall be made clearly, conspicuously, and more prominently than any other representations or disclosures permitted under this part:

(a) The manufacturer's rated minimum sine wave continuous average power output, in watts, per channel (if the equipment is designed to amplify two or more channels simultaneously)—

(1) For each load impedance required to be disclosed in paragraph (b) of this section, when measured with resistive load or loads equal to such (nominal) load impedance or impedances, and

(2) Measured with all associated channels fully driven to rated per channel power;

(b) The load impedance or impedances, in Ohms, for which the manufacturer designs the equipment to be used by the consumer;

(c) The manufacturer's rated power band or power frequency response, in Hertz (Hz), for each rated power output

required to be disclosed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section; and

(d) The manufacturer's rated percentage of maximum total harmonic distortion at any power level from 250 mW to the rated power output, for each such rated power output and its corresponding rated power band or power frequency response.

### §432.3 Standard test conditions.

For purposes of performing the tests necessary to make the disclosures required under §432.2 of this part:

(a) The power line voltage shall be 120 volts AC (230 volts when the equipment is made for foreign sale or use, unless a different nameplate rating is permanently affixed to the product by the manufacturer in which event the latter figure would control), RMS, using a sinusoidal wave containing less than 2 percent total harmonic content. In the case of equipment designed for battery operation only, tests shall be made with the battery power supply for which the particular equipment is designed and such test voltage must be disclosed under the required disclosures of §432.2 of this part. If capable of both AC and DC battery operation, testing shall be with AC line operation;

(b) The AC power line frequency for domestic equipment shall be 60 Hz and 50 Hz for equipment made for foreign sale or use;

(c) The amplifier shall be preconditioned by simultaneously operating all channels at one-third of rated power output for one hour using a sinusoidal wave at a frequency of 1,000 Hz;

(d) The preconditioning and testing shall be in still air and an ambient temperature of at least 77 °F (25 °C);

(e) Rated power shall be obtainable at all frequencies within the rated power band without exceeding the rated maximum percentage of total harmonic distortion after input signals at said frequencies have been continuously applied at full rated power for not less than five (5) minutes at the amplifier's auxiliary input, or if not provided, at the phono input.

(f) At all times during warm-up and testing, tone loudness-contour and other controls shall be preset for the flattest response.

### §432.4 Optional disclosures.

Other operating characteristics and technical specifications not required in §432.2 of this part may be disclosed: *Provided:*

(a) That any other power output is rated by the manufacturer, is expressed in minimum watts per channel, and such power output representation(s) complies with the provisions of §432.2 of this part; except that if a peak or other instantaneous power rating, such as music power or peak power, is represented under this section, the maximum percentage of total harmonic distortion (see §432.2(d) of this part) may be disclosed only at such rated output: *And provided further,*

(b) That all disclosures or representations made under this section are less conspicuously, and prominently made than the disclosures required in §432.2 of this part; and

(c) The rating and testing methods or standards used in determining such representations are disclosed, and well known and generally recognized by the industry at the time the representations or disclosures are made, are neither intended nor likely to deceive or confuse the consumers and are not otherwise likely to frustrate the purpose of this part.

NOTE 1: For the purpose of paragraph (b) of this section, optional disclosures will not be considered less prominent if they are either bold faced or are more than two-thirds the height of the disclosures required by §432.2.

NOTE 2: Use of the asterisk in effecting any of the disclosures required by §432.2 and permitted by §432.4 shall not be deemed conspicuous disclosure.

[39 FR 15387, May 3, 1974; 39 FR 17838, May 21, 1974]

### §432.5 Prohibited disclosures.

No performance characteristics to which this part applies shall be represented or disclosed if they are not obtainable as represented or disclosed when the equipment is operated by the consumer in the usual and normal manner without the use of extraneous aids.

### §432.6 Liability for violation.

If the manufacturer or, in the case of foreign made products, the importer or

domestic sales representative of a foreign manufacturer, of any product covered by this part furnishes the information required or permitted under this part, then any other seller of the product shall not be deemed to be in violation of §432.5 of this part due to his reliance upon or transmittal of the written representations of the manufacturer or importer if such seller has been furnished by the manufacturer, importer, or sales representative a written certification attesting to the accuracy of the representations to which this part applies: *And provided further,* That such seller is without actual knowledge of the violation contained in said written certification.

## PART 433—PRESERVATION OF CONSUMERS' CLAIMS AND DEFENSES

Sec.
433.1 Definitions.
433.2 Preservation of consumers' claims and defenses, unfair or deceptive acts or practices.
433.3 Exemption of sellers taking or receiving open end consumer credit contracts before November 1, 1977 from requirements of §433.2(a).

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended; (15 U.S.C. 41, *et seq.*)

### §433.1 Definitions.

(a) *Person.* An individual, corporation, or any other business organization.

(b) *Consumer.* A natural person who seeks or acquires goods or services for personal, family, or household use.

(c) *Creditor.* A person who, in the ordinary course of business, lends purchase money or finances the sale of goods or services to consumers on a deferred payment basis; *Provided,* such person is not acting, for the purposes of a particular transaction, in the capacity of a credit card issuer.

(d) *Purchase money loan.* A cash advance which is received by a consumer in return for a ''Finance Charge'' within the meaning of the Truth in Lending Act and Regulation Z, which is applied, in whole or substantial part, to a purchase of goods or services from a seller who (1) refers consumers to the creditor or (2) is affiliated with the creditor by common control, contract, or business arrangement.

(e) *Financing a sale.* Extending credit to a consumer in connection with a ''Credit Sale'' within the meaning of the Truth in Lending Act and Regulation Z.

(f) *Contract.* Any oral or written agreement, formal or informal, between a creditor and a seller, which contemplates or provides for cooperative or concerted activity in connection with the sale of goods or services to consumers or the financing thereof.

(g) *Business arrangement.* Any understanding, procedure, course of dealing, or arrangement, formal or informal, between a creditor and a seller, in connection with the sale of goods or services to consumers or the financing thereof.

(h) *Credit card issuer.* A person who extends to cardholders the right to use a credit card in connection with purchases of goods or services.

(i) *Consumer credit contract.* Any instrument which evidences or embodies a debt arising from a ''Purchase Money Loan'' transaction or a ''financed sale'' as defined in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section.

(j) *Seller.* A person who, in the ordinary course of business, sells or leases goods or services to consumers.

[40 FR 53506, Nov. 18, 1975]

### §433.2 Preservation of consumers' claims and defenses, unfair or deceptive acts or practices.

In connection with any sale or lease of goods or services to consumers, in or affecting commerce as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice within the meaning of section 5 of that Act for a seller, directly or indirectly, to:

(a) Take or receive a consumer credit contract which fails to contain the following provision in at least ten point, bold face, type:

NOTICE

ANY HOLDER OF THIS CONSUMER CREDIT CONTRACT IS SUBJECT TO ALL CLAIMS AND DEFENSES WHICH THE DEBTOR COULD ASSERT AGAINST THE SELLER OF GOODS OR SERVICES OBTAINED PURSUANT HERETO OR WITH THE PROCEEDS HEREOF. RECOVERY

HEREUNDER BY THE DEBTOR SHALL NOT EXCEED AMOUNTS PAID BY THE DEBTOR HEREUNDER.

or,

(b) Accept, as full or partial payment for such sale or lease, the proceeds of any purchase money loan (as purchase money loan is defined herein), unless any consumer credit contract made in connection with such purchase money loan contains the following provision in at least ten point, bold face, type:

NOTICE

ANY HOLDER OF THIS CONSUMER CREDIT CONTRACT IS SUBJECT TO ALL CLAIMS AND DEFENSES WHICH THE DEBTOR COULD ASSERT AGAINST THE SELLER OF GOODS OR SERVICES OBTAINED WITH THE PROCEEDS HEREOF. RECOVERY HEREUNDER BY THE DEBTOR SHALL NOT EXCEED AMOUNTS PAID BY THE DEBTOR HEREUNDER.

[40 FR 53506, Nov. 18, 1975; 40 FR 58131, Dec. 15, 1975]

### §433.3 Exemption of sellers taking or receiving open end consumer credit contracts before November 1, 1977 from requirements of §433.2(a).

(a) Any seller who has taken or received an open end consumer credit contract before November 1, 1977, shall be exempt from the requirements of 16 CFR part 433 with respect to such contract provided the contract does not cut off consumers' claims and defenses.

(b) *Definitions.* The following definitions apply to this exemption:

(1) All pertinent definitions contained in 16 CFR 433.1.

(2) Open end consumer credit contract: a consumer credit contract pursuant to which ''open end credit'' is extended.

(3) ''Open end credit'': consumer credit extended on an account pursuant to a plan under which a creditor may permit an applicant to make purchases or make loans, from time to time, directly from the creditor or indirectly by use of a credit card, check, or other device, as the plan may provide. The term does not include negotiated advances under an open-end real estate mortgage or a letter of credit.

(4) Contract which does not cut off consumers' claims and defenses: A consumer credit contract which does not constitute or contain a negotiable instrument, or contain any waiver, limitation, term, or condition which has the effect of limiting a consumer's right to assert against any holder of the contract all legally sufficient claims and defenses which the consumer could assert against the seller of goods or services purchased pursuant to the contract.

[42 FR 19490, Apr. 14, 1977, as amended at 42 FR 46510, Sept. 16, 1977]

## PART 435—MAIL OR TELEPHONE ORDER MERCHANDISE

Sec.
435.1 The rule.
435.2 Definitions.
435.3 Limited applicability.
435.4 Effective date of the rule.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 57a; 5 U.S.C. 552.

SOURCE: 58 FR 49121, Sept. 21, 1993, unless otherwise noted.

### §435.1 The rule.

In connection with mail or telephone order sales in or affecting commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it constitutes an unfair method of competition, and an unfair or deceptive act or practice for a seller:

(a)(1) To solicit any order for the sale of merchandise to be ordered by the buyer through the mails or by telephone unless, at the time of the solicitation, the seller has a reasonable basis to expect that it will be able to ship any ordered merchandise to the buyer:

(i) Within that time clearly and conspicuously stated in any such solicitation, or

(ii) if no time is clearly and conspicuously stated, within thirty (30) days after receipt of a properly completed order from the buyer, Provided, however, where, at the time the merchandise is ordered the buyer applies to the seller for credit to pay for the merchandise in whole or in part, the seller shall have 50 days, rather than 30 days, to perform the actions required in §435.1(a)(1)(ii) of this part.

(2) To provide any buyer with any revised shipping date, as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, unless, at the time any such revised shipping

date is provided, the seller has a reasonable basis for making such representation regarding a definite revised shipping date.

(3) To inform any buyer that it is unable to make any representation regarding the length of any delay unless

(i) the seller has a reasonable basis for so informing the buyer and

(ii) the seller informs the buyer of the reason or reasons for the delay.

(4) In any action brought by the Federal Trade Commission, alleging a violation of this part, the failure of a respondent-seller to have records or other documentary proof establishing its use of systems and procedures which assure the shipment of merchandise in the ordinary course of business within any applicable time set forth in this part will create a rebuttable presumption that the seller lacked a reasonable basis for any expectation of shipment within said applicable time.

(b)(1) Where a seller is unable to ship merchandise within the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, to fail to offer to the buyer, clearly and conspicuously and without prior demand, an option either to consent to a delay in shipping or to cancel the buyer's order and receive a prompt refund. Said offer shall be made within a reasonable time after the seller first becomes aware of its inability to ship within the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, but in no event later than said applicable time.

(i) Any offer to the buyer of such an option shall fully inform the buyer regarding the buyer's right to cancel the order and to obtain a prompt refund and shall provide a definite revised shipping date, but where the seller lacks a reasonable basis for providing a definite revised shipping date the notice shall inform the buyer that the seller is unable to make any representation regarding the length of the delay.

(ii) Where the seller has provided a definite revised shipping date which is thirty (30) days or less later than the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, the offer of said option shall expressly inform the buyer that, unless the seller receives, prior to shipment and prior to the expiration of the definite revised shipping date, a response from the buyer rejecting the delay and cancelling the order, the buyer will be deemed to have consented to a delayed shipment on or before the definite revised shipping date.

(iii) Where the seller has provided a definite revised shipping date which is more than thirty (30) days later than the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section or where the seller is unable to provide a definite revised shipping date and therefore informs the buyer that it is unable to make any representation regarding the length of the delay, the offer of said option shall also expressly inform the buyer that the buyer's order will automatically be deemed to have been cancelled unless:

(A) The seller has shipped the merchandise within thirty (30) days of the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, and has received no cancellation prior to shipment, or

(B) The seller has received from the buyer within thirty (30) days of said applicable time, a response specifically consenting to said shipping delay. Where the seller informs the buyer that it is unable to make any representation regarding the length of the delay, the buyer shall be expressly informed that, should the buyer consent to an indefinite delay, the buyer will have a continuing right to cancel the buyer's order at any time after the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section by so notifying the seller prior to actual shipment.

(iv) Nothing in this paragraph shall prohibit a seller who furnishes a definite revised shipping date pursuant to paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section, from requesting, simultaneously with or at any time subsequent to the offer of an option pursuant to paragraph (b)(1) of this section, the buyer's express consent to a further unanticipated delay beyond the definite revised shipping date in the form of a response from the buyer specifically consenting to said further delay. Provided, however, That where the seller solicits consent to an unanticipated indefinite delay the solicitation shall expressly inform the buyer that, should the buyer so consent to an indefinite delay, the buyer shall have a continuing right to cancel the

buyer's order at any time after the definite revised shipping date by so notifying the seller prior to actual shipment.

(2) Where a seller is unable to ship merchandise on or before the definite revised shipping date provided under paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section and consented to by the buyer pursuant to paragraph (b)(1) (ii) or (iii) of this section, to fail to offer to the buyer, clearly and conspicuously and without prior demand, a renewed option either to consent to a further delay or to cancel the order and to receive a prompt refund. Said offer shall be made within a reasonable time after the seller first becomes aware of its inability to ship before the said definite revised date, but in no event later than the expiration of the definite revised shipping date: Provided, however, That where the seller previously has obtained the buyer's express consent to an unanticipated delay until a specific date beyond the definite revised shipping date, pursuant to paragraph (b)(1)(iv) of this section or to a further delay until a specific date beyond the definite revised shipping date pursuant to paragraph (b)(2) of this section, that date to which the buyer has expressly consented shall supersede the definite revised shipping date for purposes of paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

(i) Any offer to the buyer of said renewed option shall provide the buyer with a new definite revised shipping date, but where the seller lacks a reasonable basis for providing a new definite revised shipping date, the notice shall inform the buyer that the seller is unable to make any representation regarding the length of the further delay.

(ii) The offer of a renewed option shall expressly inform the buyer that, unless the seller receives, prior to the expiration of the old definite revised shipping date or any date superseding the old definite revised shipping date, notification from the buyer specifically consenting to the further delay, the buyer will be deemed to have rejected any further delay, and to have cancelled the order if the seller is in fact unable to ship prior to the expiration of the old definite revised shipping date or any date superseding the old definite revised shipping date: Provided, however, That where the seller offers the buyer the option to consent to an indefinite delay the offer shall expressly inform the buyer that, should the buyer so consent to an indefinite delay, the buyer shall have a continuing right to cancel the buyer's order at any time after the old definite revised shipping date or any date superseding the old definite revised shipping date.

(iii) Paragraph (b)(2) of this section shall not apply to any situation where a seller, pursuant to the provisions of paragraph (b)(1)(iv) of this section, has previously obtained consent from the buyer to an indefinite extension beyond the first revised shipping date.

(3) Wherever a buyer has the right to exercise any option under this part or to cancel an order by so notifying the seller prior to shipment, to fail to furnish the buyer with adequate means, at the seller's expense, to exercise such option or to notify the seller regarding cancellation.

Nothing in paragraph (b) of this section shall prevent a seller, where it is unable to make shipment within the time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section or within a delay period consented to by the buyer, from deciding to consider the order cancelled and providing the buyer with notice of said decision within a reasonable time after it becomes aware of said inability to ship, together with a prompt refund.

(c) To fail to deem an order cancelled and to make a prompt refund to the buyer whenever:

(1) The seller receives, prior to the time of shipment, notification from the buyer cancelling the order pursuant to any option, renewed option or continuing option under this part;

(2) The seller has, pursuant to paragraph (b)(1)(iii) of this section, provided the buyer with a definite revised shipping date which is more than thirty (30) days later than the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section or has notified the buyer that it is unable to make any representation regarding the length of the delay and the seller

(i) Has not shipped the merchandise within thirty (30) days of the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, and

(ii) Has not received the buyer's express consent to said shipping delay within said thirty (30) days;

(3) The seller is unable to ship within the applicable time set forth in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, and has not received, within the said applicable time, the buyer's consent to and further delay;

(4) The seller has notified the buyer of its inability to make shipment and has indicated its decision not to ship the merchandise;

(5) The seller fails to offer the option prescribed in paragraph (b)(1) of this section and has not shipped the merchandise within the applicable time set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(d) In any action brought by the Federal Trade Commission, alleging a violation of this part, the failure of a respondent-seller to have records or other documentary proof establishing its use of systems and procedures which assure compliance, in the ordinary course of business, with any requirement of paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section will create a rebuttable presumption that the seller failed to comply with said requirement.

**§ 435.2 Definitions.**

For purposes of this part:

(a) *Mail or telephone order sales* shall mean sales in which the buyer has ordered merchandise from the seller by mail or telephone, regardless of the method of payment or the method used to solicit the order.

(b) *Telephone* refers to any direct or indirect use of the telephone to order merchandise, regardless of whether the telephone is activated by, or the language used is that of human beings, machines, or both.

(c) *Shipment* shall mean the act by which the merchandise is physically placed in the possession of the carrier.

(d) *Receipt of a properly completed order* shall mean, where the buyer tenders full or partial payment in the proper amount in the form of cash, check, money order, or authorization from the buyer to charge an existing charge account, the time at which the seller receives both said payment and an order from the buyer containing all of the information needed by the seller to process and ship the order. Provided, however, That where the seller receives notice that the check or money order tendered by the buyer has been dishonored or that the buyer does not qualify for a credit sale, *receipt of a properly completed order* shall mean the time at which:

(i) The seller receives notice that a check or money order for the proper amount tendered by the buyer has been honored,

(ii) The buyer tenders cash in the proper amount, or

(iii) The seller receives notice that the buyer qualifies for a credit sale.

(e) *Refund* shall mean:

(1) Where the buyer tendered full payment for the unshipped merchandise in the form of cash, check or money order, a return of the amount tendered in the form of cash, check or money order;

(2) Where there is a credit sale:

(i) And the seller is a creditor, a copy of a credit memorandum or the like or an account statement reflecting the removal or absence of any remaining charge incurred as a result of the sale from the buyer's account;

(ii) And a third party is the creditor, a copy of an appropriate credit memorandum or the like to the third party creditor which will remove the charge from the buyer's account or a statement from the seller acknowledging the cancellation of the order and representing that it has not taken any action regarding the order which will result in a charge to the buyer's account with the third party;

(iii) And the buyer tendered partial payment for the unshipped merchandise in the form of cash, check or money order, a return of the amount tendered in the form of cash, check or money order.

(f) *Prompt refund* shall mean:

(1) Where a refund is made pursuant to paragraph (e) (1) or (2)(iii) of this section, a refund sent to the buyer by first class mail within seven (7) working days of the date on which the buyer's right to refund vests under the provisions of this part;

(2) Where a refund is made pursuant to paragraph (e)(2) (i) or (ii) of this section, a refund sent to the buyer by first class mail within one (1) billing cycle from the date on which the buyer's

right to refund vests under the provisions of this part.

(g) The *time of solicitation* of an order shall mean that time when the seller has:

(1) Mailed or otherwise disseminated the solicitation to a prospective purchaser,

(2) Made arrangements for an advertisement containing the solicitation to appear in a newspaper, magazine or the like or on radio or television which cannot be changed or cancelled without incurring substantial expense, or

(3) Made arrangements for the printing of a catalog, brochure or the like which cannot be changed without incurring substantial expense, in which the solicitation in question forms an insubstantial part.

[58 FR 49121, Sept. 21, 1993, as amended at 60 FR 56950, Nov. 13, 1995]

### §435.3 Limited applicability.

(a) This part shall not apply to:

(1) Subscriptions, such as magazine sales, ordered for serial delivery, after the initial shipment is made in compliance with this part.

(2) Orders of seeds and growing plants.

(3) Orders made on a collect-on-delivery (C.O.D.) basis.

(4) Transactions governed by the Federal Trade Commission's Trade Regulation Rule entitled ''Use of Negative Option Plans by Sellers in Commerce,'' 16 CFR part 425.

(b) By taking action in this area:

(1) The Federal Trade Commission does not intend to preempt action in the same area, which is not inconsistent with this part, by any State, municipal, or other local government. This part does not annul or diminish any rights or remedies provided to consumers by any State law, municipal ordinance, or other local regulation, insofar as those rights or remedies are equal to or greater than those provided by this part. In addition, this part does not supersede those provisions of any State law, municipal ordinance, or other local regulation which impose obligations or liabilities upon sellers, when sellers subject to this part are not in compliance therewith.

(2) This part does supersede those provisions of any State law, municipal ordinance, or other local regulation which are inconsistent with this part to the extent that those provisions do not provide a buyer with rights which are equal to or greater than those rights granted a buyer by this part. This part also supersedes those provisions of any State law, municipal ordinance, or other local regulation requiring that a buyer be notified of a right which is the same as a right provided by this part but requiring that a buyer be given notice of this right in a language, form, or manner which is different in any way from that required by this part. In those instances where any State law, municipal ordinance, or other local regulation contains provisions, some but not all of which are partially or completely superseded by this part, the provisions or portions of those provisions which have not been superseded retain their full force and effect.

(c) If any provision of this part, or its application to any person, partnership, corporation, act or practice is held invalid, the remainder of this part or the application of the provision to any other person, partnership, corporation, act or practice shall not be affected thereby.

### §435.4 Effective date of the rule.

The original rule, which became effective 100 days after its promulgation on October 22, 1975, remains in effect. The amended rule, as set forth in this part, becomes effective March 1, 1994.

## PART 436—DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS AND PROHIBITIONS CONCERNING FRANCHISING AND BUSINESS OPPORTUNITY VENTURES

Sec.
436.1 The Rule.
436.2 Definitions.
436.3 Severability.

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended, 15 U.S.C. 41–58.

SOURCE: 43 FR 59614, Dec. 21, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

### §436.1 The Rule.

In connection with the advertising, offering, licensing, contracting, sale, or

other promotion in or affecting commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, of any franchise, or any relationship which is represented either orally or in writing to be a franchise, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice within the meaning of section 5 of that Act for any franchisor or franchise broker:

(a) To fail to furnish any prospective franchisee with the following information accurately, clearly, and concisely stated, in a legible, written document at the earlier of the ''time for making of disclosures'' or the first ''personal meeting'':

(1)(i) The official name and address and principal place of business of the franchisor, and of the parent firm or holding company of the franchisor, if any;

(ii) The name under which the franchisor is doing or intends to do business; and

(iii) The trademarks, trade names, service marks, advertising or other commercial symbols (hereinafter collectively referred to as ''marks'') which identify the goods, commodities, or services to be offered, sold, or distributed by the prospective franchisee, or under which the prospective franchisee will be operating.

(2) The business experience during the past 5 years, stated individually, of each of the franchisor's current directors and executive officers (including, and hereinafter to include, the chief executive and chief operating officer, financial, franchise marketing, training and service officers). With regard to each person listed, those persons' principal occupations and employers must be included.

(3) The business experience of the franchisor and the franchisor's parent firm (if any), including the length of time each: (i) Has conducted a business of the type to be operated by the franchisee; (ii) has offered or sold a franchise for such business; (iii) has conducted a business or offered or sold a franchise for a business (A) operating under a name using any mark set forth under paragraph (a)(1)(iii) of this section, or (B) involving the sale, offering, or distribution of goods, commodities, or services which are identified by any mark set forth under paragraph (a)(1)(iii) of this section; and (iv) has offered for sale or sold franchises in other lines of business, together with a description of such other lines of business.

(4) A statement disclosing who, if any, of the persons listed in paragraphs (a) (2) and (3) of this section:

(i) Has, at any time during the previous seven fiscal years, been convicted of a felony or pleaded nolo contendere to a felony charge if the felony involved fraud (including violation of any franchise law, or unfair or deceptive practices law), embezzlement, fraudulent conversion, misappropriation of property, or restraint of trade;

(ii) Has, at any time during the previous seven fiscal years, been held liable in a civil action resulting in a final judgment or has settled out of court any civil action or is a party to any civil action (A) involving allegations of fraud (including violation of any franchise law, or unfair or deceptive practices law), embezzlement, fraudulent conversion, misappropriation of property, or restraint of trade, or (B) which was brought by a present or former franchisee or franchisees and which involves or involved the franchise relationship; *Provided, however,* That only material individual civil actions need be so listed pursuant to paragraph (4)(ii) of this section, including any group of civil actions which, irrespective of the materiality of any single such action, in the aggregate is material;

(iii) Is subject to any currently effective State or Federal agency or court injunctive or restrictive order, or is a party to a proceeding currently pending in which such order is sought, relating to or affecting franchise activities or the franchisor-franchisee relationship, or involving fraud (including violation of any franchise law, or unfair or deceptive practices law), embezzlement, fraudulent conversion, misappropriation of property, or restraint of trade.

Such statement shall set forth the identity and location of the court or agency; the date of conviction, judgment, or decision; the penalty imposed; the damages assessed; the terms of settlement or the terms of the order; and the date, nature, and issuer of each

such order or ruling. A franchisor may include a summary opinion of counsel as to any pending litigation, but only if counsel's consent to the use of such opinion is included in the disclosure statement.

(5) A statement disclosing who, if any, of the persons listed in paragraphs (a) (2) and (3) of this section at any time during the previous 7 fiscal years has:

(i) Filed in bankruptcy;

(ii) Been adjudged bankrupt;

(iii) Been reorganized due to insolvency; or

(iv) Been a principal, director, executive officer, or partner of any other person that has so filed or was so adjudged or reorganized, during or within 1 year after the period that such person held such position in such other person. If so, the name and location of the person having so filed, or having been so adjudged or reorganized, the date thereof, and any other material facts relating thereto, shall be set forth.

(6) A factual description of the franchise offered to be sold by the franchisor.

(7) A statement of the total funds which must be paid by the franchisee to the franchisor or to a person affiliated with the franchisor, or which the franchisor or such affiliated person imposes or collects in whole or in part on behalf of a third party, in order to obtain or commence the franchise operation, such as initial franchise fees, deposits, downpayments, prepaid rent, and equipment and inventory purchases. If all or part of these fees or deposits are returnable under certain conditions, these conditions shall be set forth; and if not returnable, such fact shall be disclosed.

(8) A statement describing any recurring funds required to be paid, in connection with carrying on the franchise business, by the franchisee to the franchisor or to a person affiliated with the franchisor, or which the franchisor or such affiliated person imposes or collects in whole or in part on behalf of a third party, including, but not limited to, royalty, lease, advertising, training, and sign rental fees, and equipment or inventory purchases.

(9) A statement setting forth the name of each person (including the franchisor) the franchisee is directly or indirectly required or advised to do business with by the franchisor, where such persons are affiliated with the franchisor.

(10) A statement describing any real estate, services, supplies, products, inventories, signs, fixtures, or equipment relating to the establishment or the operation of the franchise business which the franchisee is directly or indirectly required by the franchisor to purchase, lease or rent; and if such purchases, leases or rentals must be made from specific persons (including the franchisor), a list of the names and addresses of each such person. Such list may be made in a separate document delivered to the prospective franchisee with the prospectus if the existence of such separate document is disclosed in the prospectus.

(11) A description of the basis for calculating, and, if such information is readily available, the actual amount of, any revenue or other consideration to be received by the franchisor or persons affiliated with the franchisor from suppliers to the prospective franchisee in consideration for goods or services which the franchisor requires or advises the franchisee to obtain from such suppliers.

(12)(i) A statement of all the material terms and conditions of any financing arrangement offered directly or indirectly by the franchisor, or any person affiliated with the franchisor, to the prospective franchisee; and

(ii) A description of the terms by which any payment is to be received by the franchisor from (A) any person offering financing to a prospective franchisee; and (B) any person arranging for financing for a prospective franchisee.

(13) A statement describing the material facts of whether, by the terms of the franchise agreement or other device or practice, the franchisee is:

(i) Limited in the goods or services he or she may offer for sale;

(ii) Limited in the customers to whom he or she may sell such goods or services;

(iii) Limited in the geographic area in which he or she may offer for sale or sell goods or services; or

(iv) Granted territorial protection by the franchisor, by which, with respect to a territory or area, (A) the franchisor will not establish another, or more than any fixed number of, franchises or company-owned outlets, either operating under, or selling, offering, or distributing goods, commodities or services, identified by any mark set forth under paragraph (a)(1)(iii) of this section; or (B) the franchisor or its parent will not establish other franchises or company-owned outlets selling or leasing the same or similar products or services under a different trade name, trademark, service mark, advertising or other commercial symbol.

(14) A statement of the extent to which the franchisor requires the franchisee (or, if the franchisee is a corporation, any person affiliated with the franchisee) to participate personally in the direct operation of the franchise.

(15) A statement disclosing, with respect to the franchise agreement and any related agreements:

(i) The term (i.e., duration of arrangement), if any, of such agreement, and whether such term is or may be affected by any agreement (including leases or subleases) other than the one from which such term arises;

(ii) The conditions under which the franchisee may renew or extend;

(iii) The conditions under which the franchisor may refuse to renew or extend;

(iv) The conditions under which the franchisee may terminate;

(v) The conditions under which the franchisor may terminate;

(vi) The obligations (including lease or sublease obligations) of the franchisee after termination of the franchise by the franchisor, and the obligations of the franchisee (including lease or sublease obligations) after termination of the franchise by the franchisee and after the expiration of the franchise;

(vii) The franchisee's interest upon termination of the franchise, or upon refusal to renew or extend the franchise, whether by the franchisor or by the franchisee;

(viii) The conditions under which the franchisor may repurchase, whether by right of first refusal or at the option of the franchisor (and if the franchisor has the option to repurchase the franchise, whether there will be an independent appraisal of the franchise, whether the repurchase price will be determined by a predetermined formula and whether there will be a recognition of goodwill or other intangibles associated therewith in the repurchase price to be given the franchisee);

(ix) The conditions under which the franchisee may sell or assign all or any interest in the ownership of the franchise, or of the assets of the franchise business;

(x) The conditions under which the franchisor may sell or assign, in whole or in part, its interest under such agreements;

(xi) The conditions under which the franchisee may modify;

(xii) The conditions under which the franchisor may modify;

(xiii) The rights of the franchisee's heirs or personal representative upon the death or incapacity of the franchisee; and

(xiv) The provisions of any covenant not to compete.

(16) A statement disclosing, with respect to the franchisor and as to the particular named business being offered:

(i) The total number of franchises operating at the end of the preceding fiscal year;

(ii) The total number of company-owned outlets operating at the end of the preceding fiscal year;

(iii) The names, addresses, and telephone numbers of (A) The 10 franchised outlets of the named franchise business nearest the prospective franchisee's intended location; or (B) all franchisees of the franchisor, or (C) all franchisees of the franchisor in the State in which the prospective franchisee lives or where the proposed franchise is to be located, *Provided, however,* That there are more than 10 such franchisees. If the number of franchisees to be disclosed pursuant to paragraph (a)(16)(iii)(B) or (C) of this section exceeds 50, such listing may be made in a separate document delivered to the

prospective franchisee with the prospectus if the existence of such separate document is disclosed in the prospectus;

(iv) The number of franchises voluntarily terminated or not renewed by franchisees within, or at the conclusion of, the term of the franchise agreement, during the preceding fiscal year;

(v) The number of franchises reacquired by purchase by the franchisor during the term of the franchise agreement, and upon the conclusion of the term of the franchise agreement, during the preceding fiscal year;

(vi) The number of franchises otherwise reacquired by the franchisor during the term of the franchise agreement, and upon the conclusion of the term of the franchise agreement, during the preceding fiscal year;

(vii) The number of franchises for which the franchisor refused renewal of the franchise agreement or other agreements relating to the franchise during the preceding fiscal year; and

(viii) The number of franchises that were canceled or terminated by the franchisor during the term of the franchise agreement, and upon conclusion of the term of the franchise agreement, during the preceding fiscal year.

With respect to the disclosures required by paragraphs (a)(16) (v), (vi), (vii), and (viii) of this section, the disclosure statement shall also include a general categorization of the reasons for such reacquisitions, refusals to renew or terminations, and the number falling within each such category, including but not limited to the following: failure to comply with quality control standards, failure to make sufficient sales, and other breaches of contract.

(17)(i) If site selection or approval thereof by the franchisor is involved in the franchise relationship, a statement disclosing the range of time that has elapsed between signing of franchise agreements or other agreements relating to the franchise and site selection, for agreements entered into during the preceding fiscal year; and

(ii) If operating franchise outlets are to be provided by the franchisor, a statement disclosing the range of time that has elapsed between the signing of franchise agreements or other agreements relating to the franchise and the commencement of the franchisee's business, for agreements entered into during the preceding fiscal year.

With respect to the disclosures required by paragraphs (a)(17) (i) and (ii) of this section, a franchisor may at its option also provide a distribution chart using meaningful classifications with respect to such ranges of time.

(18) If the franchisor offers an initial training program or informs the prospective franchisee that it intends to provide such person with initial training, a statement disclosing:

(i) The type and nature of such training;

(ii) The minimum amount, if any, of training that will be provided to a franchisee; and

(iii) The cost, if any, to be borne by the franchisee for the training to be provided, or for obtaining such training.

(19) If the name of a public figure is used in connection with a recommendation to purchase a franchise, or as a part of the name of the franchise operation, or if the public figure is stated to be involved with the management of the franchisor, a statement disclosing:

(i) The nature and extent of the public figure's involvement and obligations to the franchisor, including but not limited to the promotional assistance the public figure will provide to the franchisor and to the franchisee;

(ii) The total investment of the public figure in the franchise operation; and

(iii) The amount of any fee or fees the franchisee will be obligated to pay for such involvement or assistance provided by the public figure.

(20)(i) A balance sheet (statement of financial position) for the franchisor for the most recent fiscal year, and an income statement (statement of results of operations) and statement of changes in financial position for the franchisor for the most recent 3 fiscal years. Such statements are required to have been examined in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards by an independent certified or licensed public accountant.

*Provided, however,* That where a franchisor is a subsidiary of another corporation which is permitted under

generally accepted accounting principles to prepare financial statements on a consolidated or combined statement basis, the above information may be submitted for the parent if (A) the corresponding unaudited financial statements of the franchisor are also provided, and (B) the parent absolutely and irrevocably has agreed to guarantee all obligations of the subsidiary;

(ii) Unaudited statements shall be used only to the extent that audited statements have not been made, and provided that such statements are accompanied by a clear and conspicuous disclosure that they are unaudited. Statements shall be prepared on an audited basis as soon as practicable, but, at a minimum, financial statements for the first full fiscal year following the date on which the franchisor must first comply with this part shall contain a balance sheet opinion prepared by an independent certified or licensed public accountant, and financial statements for the following fiscal year shall be fully audited.

(21) All of the foregoing information in paragraphs (a) (1) through (20) of this section shall be contained in a single disclosure statement or prospectus, which shall not contain any materials or information other than that required by this part or by State law not preempted by this part. This does not preclude franchisors or franchise brokers from giving other nondeceptive information orally, visually, or in separate literature so long as such information is not contradictory to the information in the disclosure statement required by paragraph (a) of this section. This disclosure statement shall carry a cover sheet distinctively and conspicuously showing the name of the franchisor, the date of issuance of the disclosure statement, and the following notice imprinted thereon in upper and lower case bold-face type of not less than 12 point size:

Information for Prospective Franchisees
Required by Federal Trade Commission

* * * * *

To protect you, we've required your franchisor to give you this information. *We haven't checked it, and don't know if it's correct.* It should help you make up your mind. Study it carefully. While it includes some information about your contract, don't rely on it alone to understand your contract. Read all of your contract carefully. Buying a franchise is a complicated investment. Take your time to decide. If possible, show your contract and this information to an advisor, like a lawyer or an accountant. If you find anything you think may be wrong or anything important that's been left out, you should let us know about it. It may be against the law.

There may also be laws on franchising in your state. Ask your state agencies about them.

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION,
*Washington, D.C.*

*Provided,* That the obligation to furnish such disclosure statement shall be deemed to have been met for both the franchisor and the franchise broker if either such party furnishes the prospective franchisee with such disclosure statement.

(22) All information contained in the disclosure statement shall be current as of the close of the franchisor's most recent fiscal year. After the close of each fiscal year, the franchisor shall be given a period not exceeding 90 days to prepare a revised disclosure statement and, following such 90 days, may distribute only the revised prospectus and no other. The franchisor shall, within a reasonable time after the close of each quarter of the fiscal year, prepare revisions to be attached to the disclosure statement to reflect any material change in the franchisor or relating to the franchise business of the franchisor, about which the franchisor or franchise broker, or any agent, representative, or employee thereof, knows or should know. Each prospective franchisee shall have in his or her possession, at the ''time for making of disclosures,'' the disclosure statement and quarterly revision for the period most recent to the ''time for making of disclosures'' and available at that time. Information which is required to be audited pursuant to paragraph (a)(20) of this section is not required to be audited for quarterly revisions, *Provided, however,* That the unaudited information be accompanied by a statement in immediate conjunction therewith that clearly and conspicuously discloses that such information has not been audited.

(23) A table of contents shall be included within the disclosure statement.

(24) The disclosure statement shall include a comment which either positively or negatively responds to each disclosure item required to be in the disclosure statement, by use of a statement which fully incorporates the information required by the item. Each disclosure item therein must be preceded by the appropriate heading, as set forth in Note 3 of this part.

(b) To make any oral, written, or visual representation to a prospective franchisee which states a specific level of potential sales, income, gross or net profit for that prospective franchisee, or which states other facts which suggest such a specific level, unless:

(1) At the time such representation is made, such representation is relevant to the geographic market in which the franchise is to be located;

(2) At the time such representation is made, a reasonable basis exists for such representation and the franchisor has in its possession material which constitutes a reasonable basis for such representation, and such material is made available to any prospective franchisee and to the Commission or its staff upon reasonable demand.

*Provided, further,* That in immediate conjunction with such representation, the franchisor shall disclose in a clear and conspicuous manner that such material is available to the prospective franchisee; and *Provided, however,* That no provision within paragraph (b) of this section shall be construed as requiring the disclosure to any prospective franchisee of the identity of any specific franchisee or of information reasonably likely to lead to the disclosure of such person's identity; and *Provided, further,* That no additional representation as to a prospective franchisee's potential sales, income, or profits may be made later than the ''time for making of disclosures'';

(3) Such representation is set forth in detail along with the material bases and assumptions therefor in a single legible written document whose text accurately, clearly and concisely discloses such information, and none other than that provided for by this part or by State law not preempted by this part. Each prospective franchisee to whom the representation is made shall be furnished with such document no later than the ''time for making of disclosures''; *Provided, however,* That if the representation is made at or prior to a ''personal meeting'' and such meeting occurs before the ''time for making of disclosures'', the document shall be furnished to the prospective franchisee to whom the representation is made at that ''personal meeting'';

(4) The following statement is clearly and conspicuously disclosed in the document described by paragraph (b)(3) of this section in immediate conjunction with such representation and in not less than twelve point upper and lowercase boldface type:

CAUTION

These figures are only estimates of what we think you may earn. There is no assurance you'll do as well. If you rely upon our figures, you must accept the risk of not doing as well.

(5) The following information is clearly and conspicuously disclosed in the document described by paragraph (b)(3) of this section in immediate conjunction with such representation:

(i) The number and percentage of outlets of the named franchise business which are located in the geographic markets that form the basis for any such representation and which are known to the franchisor or franchise broker to have earned or made at least the same sales, income, or profits during a period of corresponding length in the immediate past as those potential sales, income, or profits represented; and

(ii) The beginning and ending dates for the corresponding time period referred to by paragraph (b)(5)(i) of this section, *Provided, however,* That any franchisor without prior franchising experience as to the named franchise business so indicate such lack of experience in the document described in paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

*Except,* That representations of the sales, income or profits of existing franchise outlets need not comply with paragraph (b) of this section.

(c) To make any oral, written or visual representation to a prospective franchisee which states a specific level of sales, income, gross or net profits of

existing outlets (whether franchised or company-owned) of the named franchise business, or which states other facts which suggest such a specific level, unless:

(1) At the time such representation is made, such representation is relevant to the geographic market in which the franchise is to be located;

(2) At the time such representation is made, a reasonable basis exists for such representation and the franchisor has in its possession material which constitutes a reasonable basis for such representation, and such material is made available to any prospective franchisee and to the Commission or its staff upon reasonable demand, *Provided, however,* That in immediate conjunction with such representation, the franchisor discloses in a clear and conspicuous manner that such material is available to the prospective franchisee; and *Provided, further,* That no provision within paragraph (c) of this section shall be construed as requiring the disclosure to any prospective franchisee of the identity of any specific franchisee or of information reasonably likely to lead to the disclosure of such person's identity; and *Provided, further,* That no additional representation as to the sales, income, or gross or net profits of existing outlets (whether franchised or company-owned) of the named franchise business may be made later than the ''time for making of disclosures'';

(3) Such representation is set forth in detail along with the material bases and assumptions therefor in a single legible written document which accurately, clearly and concisely discloses such information, and none other than that provided for by this part or by State law not preempted by this part. Each prospective franchisee to whom the representation is made shall be furnished with such document no later than the ''time for making of disclosures'', *Provided, however,* That if the representation is made at or prior to a ''personal meeting'' and such meeting occurs before the ''time for making of disclosures,'' the document shall be furnished to the prospective franchisee to whom the representation is made at that ''personal meeting'';

(4) The underlying data on which the representation is based have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;

(5) The following statement is clearly and conspicuously disclosed in the document described by paragraph (c)(3) of this section in immediate conjunction with such representation, and in not less than twelve point upper and lower case boldface type:

CAUTION

Some outlets have [sold] [earned] this amount. There is no assurance you'll do as well. If you rely upon our figures, you must accept the risk of not doing as well.

(6) The following information is clearly and conspicuously disclosed in the document described by paragraph (c)(3) of this section in immediate conjunction with such representation:

(i) The number and percentage of outlets of the named franchise business which are located in the geographic markets that form the basis for any such representation and which are known to the franchisor or franchise broker to have earned or made at least the same sales, income, or profits during a period of corresponding length in the immediate past as those sales, income, or profits represented; and

(ii) The beginning and ending dates for the corresponding time period referred to by paragraph (c)(6)(i) of this section, *Provided, however,* That any franchisor without prior franchising experience as to the named franchise business so indicate such lack of experience in the document described in paragraph (c)(3) of this section.

(d) To fail to provide the following information within the document(s) required by paragraphs (b)(3) and (c)(3) of this section whenever any representation is made to a prospective franchisee regarding its potential sales, income, or profits, or the sales, income, gross or net profits of existing outlets (whether franchised or company-owned) of the named franchise business:

(1) A cover sheet distinctively and conspicuously showing the name of the franchisor, the date of issuance of the document and the following notice imprinted thereon in upper and lower case boldface type of not less than twelve point size:

Information for Prospective Franchisees About Franchise [Sales] [Income] [Profit] Required by the Federal Trade Commission.

To protect you, we've required the franchisor to give you this information. *We haven't checked it and don't know if it's correct.* Study these facts and figures carefully. If possible, show them to someone who can advise you, like a lawyer or an accountant. Then take your time and think it over.

If you find anything you think may be wrong or anything important that's been left out, let us know about it. It may be against the law.

There may also be laws on franchising in your State. Ask your State agencies about them.

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION,
*Washington, D.C.*

(2) A table of contents.

*Provided, however,* That each prospective franchisee to whom the representation is made shall be notified at the ''time for making of disclosures'' of any material change (about which the franchisor, franchise broker, or any of the agents, representatives, or employees thereof, knows or should know) in the information contained in the document(s) described by paragraphs (b)(3) and (c)(3) of this section.

(e) To make any oral, written, or visual representation for general dissemination (not otherwise covered by paragraph (b) or (c) of this section) which states a specific level of sales, income, gross or net profits, either actual or potential, of existing or prospective outlets (whether franchised or company-owned) of the named franchise business or which states other facts which suggest such a specific level, unless:

(1) At the time such representation is made, a reasonable basis exists for such representation and the franchisor has in its possession material which constitutes a reasonable basis for such representation and which is made available to the Commission or its staff upon reasonable demand;

(2) The underlying data on which each representation of sales, income or profit for existing outlets is based have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;

(3) In immediate conjunction with such representation, there shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed the number and percentage of outlets of the named franchise business which the franchisor or the franchise broker knows to have earned or made at least the same sales, income, or profits during a period of corresponding length in the immediate past as those sales, income, or profits represented, and the beginning and ending dates for said time period;

(4) In immediate conjuction with each such representation of potential sales, income or profits, the following statement shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed:

CAUTION

These figures are only estimates; there is no assurance you'll do as well. If you rely upon our figures, you must accept the risk of not doing as well.

*Provided, however,* That if such representation is not based on actual experience of existing outlets of the named franchise business, that fact also should be disclosed;

(5) No later than the earlier of the first ''personal meeting'' or the ''time for making of disclosures,'' each prospective franchisee shall be given a single, legible written document which accurately, clearly and concisely sets forth the following information and materials (and none other than that provided for by this part or by State law not preempted by this part):

(i) The representation, set forth in detail along with the material bases and assumptions therefor;

(ii) The number and percentage of outlets of the named franchise business which the franchisor or the franchise broker knows to have earned or made at least the same sales, income or profits during a period of corresponding length in the immediate past as those sales, income, or profits represented, and the beginning and ending dates for said time period;

(iii) With respect to each such representation of sales, income, or profits of existing outlets, the following statement shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed in immediate conjunction therewith, printed in not less than 12 point upper and lower case boldface type:

CAUTION

Some outlets have [sold] [earned] this amount. There is no assurance you'll do as well. If you rely upon our figures, you must accept the risk of not doing as well.

(iv) With respect to each such representation of potential sales, income, or profits, the following statement shall be clearly and conspicuously disclosed in immediate conjunction therewith, printed in not less than 12 point upper and lower case boldface type:

CAUTION

These figures are only estimates. There is no assurance that you'll do as well. If you rely upon our figures, you must accept the risk of not doing as well.

(v) If applicable, a statement clearly and conspicuously disclosing that the franchisor lacks prior franchising experience as to the named franchise business;

(vi) If applicable, a statement clearly and conspicuously disclosing that the franchisor has not been in business long enough to have actual business data;

(vii) A cover sheet, distinctively and conspicuously showing the name of the franchisor, the date of issuance of the document, and the following notice printed thereon in not less than 12 point upper and lower case boldface type:

Information for Prospective Franchisees About Franchise [Sales] [Income] [Profit] Required by the Federal Trade Commission

To protect you, we've required the franchisor to give you this information. *We haven't checked it and don't know if it's correct.* Study these facts and figures carefully. If possible, show them to someone who can advise you, like a lawyer or an accountant. If you find anything you think may be wrong or anything important that's been left out, let us know about it. It may be against the law. There may also be laws about franchising in your State. Ask your State agencies about them.

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSSION,
*Washington, D.C.*

(viii) A table of contents;

(6) Each prospective franchisee shall be notified at the ''time for making of disclosures'' of any material changes that have occurred in the information contained in this document.

(f) To make any claim or representation which is contradictory to the information required to be disclosed by this part.

(g) To fail to furnish the prospective franchisee with a copy of the franchisor's franchise agreement and related agreements with the document, and a copy of the completed franchise and related agreements intended to be executed by the parties at least 5 business days prior to the date the agreements are to be executed.

*Provided, however,* That the obligations defined in paragraphs (b) through (g) of this section shall be deemed to have been met for both the franchisor and the franchise broker if either such person furnishes the prospective franchisee with the written disclosures required thereby.

(h) To fail to return any funds or deposits in accordance with any conditions disclosed pursuant to paragraph (a)(7) of this section.

**§ 436.2 Definitions.**

As used in this part, the following definitions shall apply:

(a) The term *franchise* means any continuing commercial relationship created by any arrangement or arrangements whereby:

(1)(i)(A) a person (hereinafter ''franchisee'') offers, sells, or distributes to any person other than a ''franchisor'' (as hereinafter defined), goods, commodities, or services which are:

(*1*) Identified by a trademark, service mark, trade name, advertising or other commercial symbol designating another person (hereinafter ''franchisor''); or

(*2*) Indirectly or directly required or advised to meet the quality standards prescribed by another person (hereinafter ''franchisor'') where the franchisee operates under a name using the trademark, service mark, trade name, advertising or other commercial symbol designating the franchisor; and

(B)(*1*) The franchisor exerts or has authority to exert a significant degree of control over the franchisee's method of operation, including but not limited

to, the franchisee's business organization, promotional activities, management, marketing plan or business affairs; or

(*2*) The franchisor gives significant assistance to the franchisee in the latter's method of operation, including, but not limited to, the franchisee's business organization, management, marketing plan, promotional activities, or business affairs; *Provided, however,* That assistance in the franchisee's promotional activities shall not, in the absence of assistance in other areas of the franchisee's method of operation, constitute significant assistance; or

(ii)(A) A person (hereinafter ''franchisee'') offers, sells, or distributes to any person other than a ''franchisor'' (as hereinafter defined), goods, commodities, or services which are:

(*1*) Supplied by another person (hereinafter ''franchisor''), or

(*2*) Supplied by a third person (e.g., a supplier) with whom the franchisee is directly or indirectly required to do business by another person (hereinafter ''franchisor''); or

(*3*) Supplied by a third person (e.g., a supplier) with whom the franchisee is directly or indirectly advised to do business by another person (hereinafter ''franchisor'') where such third person is affiliated with the franchisor; and

(B) The franchisor:

(*1*) Secures for the franchisee retail outlets or accounts for said goods, commodities, or services; or

(*2*) Secures for the franchisee locations or sites for vending machines, rack displays, or any other product sales display used by the franchisee in the offering, sale, or distribution of said goods, commodities, or services; or

(*3*) Provides to the franchisee the services of a person able to secure the retail outlets, accounts, sites or locations referred to in paragraphs (a)(1)(ii)(B) (*1*) and (*2*) of this section; and

(2) The franchisee is required as a condition of obtaining or commencing the franchise operation to make a payment or a commitment to pay to the franchisor, or to a person affiliated with the franchisor.

(3) Exemptions. The provisions of this part shall not apply to a franchise:

(i) Which is a ''fractional franchise''; or

(ii) Where pursuant to a lease, license, or similar agreement, a person offers, sells, or distributes goods, commodities, or services on or about premises occupied by a retailer-grantor primarily for the retailer-grantor's own merchandising activities, which goods, commodities, or services are not purchased from the retailer-grantor or persons whom the lessee is directly or indirectly (A) required to do business with by the retailer-grantor or (B) advised to do business with by the retailer-grantor where such person is affiliated with the retailer-grantor; or

(iii) Where the total of the payments referred to in paragraph (a)(2) of this section made during a period from any time before to within 6 months after commencing operation of the franchisee's business, is less than $500; or

(iv) Where there is no writing which evidences any material term or aspect of the relationship or arrangement.

(4) Exclusions. The term *franchise* shall not be deemed to include any continuing commercial relationship created solely by:

(i) The relationship between an employer and an employee, or among general business partners; or

(ii) Membership in a bona fide ''cooperative association''; or

(iii) An agreement for the use of a trademark, service mark, trade name, seal, advertising, or other commercial symbol designating a person who offers on a general basis, for a fee or otherwise, a bona fide service for the evaluation, testing, or certification of goods, commodities, or services;

(iv) An agreement between a licensor and a single licensee to license a trademark, trade name, service mark, advertising or other commercial symbol where such license is the only one of its general nature and type to be granted by the licensor with respect to that trademark, trade name, service mark, advertising, or other commercial symbol.

(5) Any relationship which is represented either orally or in writing to

be a franchise (as defined in this paragraphs (a) (1) and (2) of this section) is subject to the requirements of this part.

(b) The term *person* means any individual, group, association, limited or general partnership, corporation, or any other business entity.

(c) The term *franchisor* means any person who participates in a franchise relationship as a franchisor, as denoted in paragraph (a) of this section.

(d) The term *franchisee* means any person (1) who participates in a franchise relationship as a franchisee, as denoted in paragraph (a) of this section, or (2) to whom an interest in a franchise is sold.

(e) The term *prospective franchisee* includes any person, including any representative, agent, or employee of that person, who approaches or is approached by a franchisor or franchise broker, or any representative, agent, or employee thereof, for the purpose of discussing the establishment, or possible establishment, of a franchise relationship involving such a person.

(f) The term *business day* means any day other than Saturday, Sunday, or the following national holidays: New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Veterans' Day, Thanksgiving, and Christmas.

(g) The term *time for making of disclosures* means ten (10) business days prior to the earlier of (1) the execution by a prospective franchisee of any franchise agreement or any other agreement imposing a binding legal obligation on such prospective franchisee, about which the franchisor, franchise broker, or any agent, representative, or employee thereof, knows or should know, in connection with the sale or proposed sale of a franchise, or (2) the payment by a prospective franchisee, about which the franchisor, franchise broker, or any agent, representative, or employee thereof, knows or should know, of any consideration in connection with the sale or proposed sale of a franchise.

(h) The term *fractional franchise* means any relationship, as denoted by paragraph (a) of this section, in which the person described therein as a franchisee, or any of the current directors or executive officers thereof, has been in the type of business represented by the franchise relationship for more than 2 years and the parties anticipated, or should have anticipated, at the time the agreement establishing the franchise relationship was reached, that the sales arising from the relationship would represent no more than 20 percent of the sales in dollar volume of the franchisee.

(i) The term *affiliated person* means a person (as defined in paragraph (b) of this section):

(1) Which directly or indirectly controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with, a franchisor; or

(2) Which directly or indirectly owns, controls, or holds with power to vote, 10 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of a franchisor; or

(3) Which has, in common with a franchisor, one or more partners, officers, directors, trustees, branch managers, or other persons occupying similar status or performing similar functions.

(j) The term *franchise broker* means any person other than a franchisor or a franchisee who sells, offers for sale, or arranges for the sale of a franchise.

(k) The term *sale of a franchise* includes a contract or agreement whereby a person obtains a franchise or interest in a franchise for value by purchase, license, or otherwise. This term shall not be deemed to include the renewal or extension of an existing franchise where there is no interruption in the operation of the franchised business by the franchisee, unless the new contracts or agreements contain material changes from those in effect between the franchisor and franchisee prior thereto.

(l) A *cooperative association* is either (1) an association of producers of agricultural products authorized by section 1 of the Capper-Volstead Act, 7 U.S.C. 291; or (2) an organization operated on a cooperative basis by and for independent retailers which wholesales goods or furnishes services primarily to its member-retailers.

(m) The term *fiscal year* means the franchisor's fiscal year.

(n) The terms *material, material fact,* and *material change* shall include any fact, circumstance, or set of conditions

which has a substantial likelihood of influencing a reasonable franchisee or a reasonable prospective franchisee in the making of a significant decision relating to a named franchise business or which has any significant financial impact on a franchisee or prospective franchisee.

(o) The term *personal meeting* means a face-to-face meeting between a franchisor or franchise broker (or any agent, representative, or employee thereof) and a prospective franchisee which is held for the purpose of discussing the sale or possible sale of a franchise.

### §436.3 Severability.

If any provision of this part or its application to any person, act, or practice is held invalid, the remainder of the part or the application of its provisions to any person, act, or practice shall not be affected thereby.

NOTE 1: The Commission expresses no opinion as to the legality of any practice mentioned in this part. A provision for disclosure should not be construed as condonation or approval with respect to the matter required to be disclosed, nor as an indication of the Commission's intention not to enforce any applicable statute.

NOTE 2: By taking action in this area, the Federal Trade Commission does not intend to annul, alter, or affect, or exempt any person subject to the provisions of this part from complying with the laws or regulations of any State, municipality, or other local government with respect to franchising practices, except to the extent that those laws or regulations are inconsistent with any provision of this part, and then only to the extent of the inconsistency. For the purposes of this part, a law or regulation of any State, municipality, or other local government is not inconsistent with this part if the protection such law or regulation affords any prospective franchisee is equal to or greater than that provided by this part. Examples of provisions which provide protection equal to or greater than that provided by this part include laws or regulations which require more complete record keeping by the franchisor or the disclosure of more complete information to the franchisee.

NOTE 3: [As per §436.1(a)(24) of this part]:

DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Pursuant to 16 CFR 436.1 et seq., a Trade Regulation Rule of the Federal Trade Commission regarding Disclosure Requirements and Prohibitions Concerning Franchising and Business Opportunity Ventures, the following information is set forth on [name of franchisor] for your examination:

1. Identifying information as to franchisor.
2. Business experience of franchisor's directors and executive officers.
3. Business experience of the franchisor.
4. Litigation history.
5. Bankruptcy history.
6. Description of franchise.
7. Initial funds required to be paid by a franchisee.
8. Recurring funds required to be paid by a franchisee.
9. Affiliated persons the franchisee is required or advised to do business with by the franchisor.
10. Obligations to purchase.
11. Revenues received by the franchisor in consideration of purchases by a franchisee.
12. Financing arrangements.
13. Restriction of sales.
14. Personal participation required of the franchisee in the operation of the franchise.
15. Termination, cancellation, and renewal of the franchise.
16. Statistical information concerning the number of franchises (and company-owned outlets).
17. Site selection.
18. Training programs.
19. Public figure involvement in the franchise.
20. Financial information concerning the franchisor.

## PART 444—CREDIT PRACTICES

Sec.
444.1 Definitions.
444.2 Unfair credit practices.
444.3 Unfair or deceptive cosigner practices.
444.4 Late charges.
444.5 State exemptions.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 18(a), 88 Stat. 2193, as amended 93 Stat. 95 (15 U.S.C. 57a); 80 Stat. 383, as amended, 81 Stat. 54 (5 U.S.C. 552).

SOURCE: 49 FR 7789, Mar. 1, 1984, unless otherwise noted.

### §444.1 Definitions.

(a) *Lender.* A person who engages in the business of lending money to consumers within the jurisdiction of the Federal Trade Commission.

(b) *Retail installment seller.* A person who sells goods or services to consumers on a deferred payment basis or pursuant to a lease-purchase arrangement within the jurisdiction of the Federal Trade Commission.

(c) *Person.* An individual, corporation, or other business organization.

(d) *Consumer.* A natural person who seeks or acquires goods, services, or money for personal, family, or household use.

(e) *Obligation.* An agreement between a consumer and a lender or retail installment seller.

(f) *Creditor.* A lender or a retail installment seller.

(g) *Debt.* Money that is due or alleged to be due from one to another.

(h) *Earnings.* Compensation paid or payable to an individual or for his or her account for personal services rendered or to be rendered by him or her, whether denominated as wages, salary, commission, bonus, or otherwise, including periodic payments pursuant to a pension, retirement, or disability program.

(i) *Household goods.* Clothing, furniture, appliances, one radio and one television, linens, china, crockery, kitchenware, and personal effects (including wedding rings) of the consumer and his or her dependents, provided that the following are not included within the scope of the term *household goods:*

(1) Works of art;

(2) Electronic entertainment equipment (except one television and one radio);

(3) Items acquired as antiques; and

(4) Jewelry (except wedding rings).

(j) *Antique.* Any item over one hundred years of age, including such items that have been repaired or renovated without changing their original form or character.

(k) *Cosigner.* A natural person who renders himself or herself liable for the obligation of another person without compensation. The term shall include any person whose signature is requested as a condition to granting credit to another person, or as a condition for forbearance on collection of another person's obligation that is in default. The term shall not include a spouse whose signature is required on a credit obligation to perfect a security interest pursuant to State law. A person who does not receive goods, services, or money in return for a credit obligation does not receive compensation within the meaning of this definition. A person is a cosigner within the meaning of this definition whether or not he or she is designated as such on a credit obligation.

### § 444.2 Unfair credit practices.

(a) In connection with the extension of credit to consumers in or affecting commerce, as commerce is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it is an unfair act or practice within the meaning of Section 5 of that Act for a lender or retail installment seller directly or indirectly to take or receive from a consumer an obligation that:

(1) Constitutes or contains a cognovit or confession of judgment (for purposes other than executory process in the State of Louisiana), warrant of attorney, or other waiver of the right to notice and the opportunity to be heard in the event of suit or process thereon.

(2) Constitutes or contains an executory waiver or a limitation of exemption from attachment, execution, or other process on real or personal property held, owned by, or due to the consumer, unless the waiver applies solely to property subject to a security interest executed in connection with the obligation.

(3) Constitutes or contains an assignment of wages or other earnings unless:

(i) The assignment by its terms is revocable at the will of the debtor, or

(ii) The assignment is a payroll deduction plan or preauthorized payment plan, commencing at the time of the transaction, in which the consumer authorizes a series of wage deductions as a method of making each payment, or

(iii) The assignment applies only to wages or other earnings already earned at the time of the assignment.

(4) Constitutes or contains a nonpossessory security interest in household goods other than a purchase money security interest.

### § 444.3 Unfair or deceptive cosigner practices.

(a) In connection with the extension of credit to consumers in or affecting commerce, as commerce is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it is:

(1) A deceptive act or practice within the meaning of section 5 of that Act for a lender or retail installment seller, directly or indirectly, to misrepresent

the nature or extent of cosigner liability to any person.

(2) An unfair act or practice within the meaning of section 5 of that Act for a lender or retail installment seller, directly or indirectly, to obligate a cosigner unless the cosigner is informed prior to becoming obligated, which in the case of open end credit shall mean prior to the time that the agreement creating the cosigner's liability for future charges is executed, of the nature of his or her liability as cosigner.

(b) Any lender or retail installment seller who complies with the preventive requirements in paragraph (c) of this section does not violate paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) To prevent these unfair or deceptive acts or practices, a disclosure, consisting of a separate document that shall contain the following statement and no other, shall be given to the cosigner prior to becoming obligated, which in the case of open end credit shall mean prior to the time that the agreement creating the cosigner's liability for future charges is executed:

NOTICE TO COSIGNER

You are being asked to guarantee this debt. Think carefully before you do. If the borrower doesn't pay the debt, you will have to. Be sure you can afford to pay if you have to, and that you want to accept this responsibility.

You may have to pay up to the full amount of the debt if the borrower does not pay. You may also have to pay late fees or collection costs, which increase this amount.

The creditor can collect this debt from you without first trying to collect from the borrower. The creditor can use the same collection methods against you that can be used against the borrower, such as suing you, garnishing your wages, etc. If this debt is ever in default, that fact may become a part of *your* credit record.

This notice is not the contract that makes you liable for the debt.

### § 444.4 Late charges.

(a) In connection with collecting a debt arising out of an extension of credit to a consumer in or affecting commerce, as commerce is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act, it is an unfair act or practice within the meaning of section 5 of that Act for a creditor, directly or indirectly, to levy or collect any deliquency charge on a payment, which payment is otherwise a full payment for the applicable period and is paid on its due date or within an applicable grace period, when the only delinquency is attributable to late fee(s) or delinquency charge(s) assessed on earlier installment(s).

(b) For purposes of this section, *collecting a debt* means any activity other than the use of judicial process that is intended to bring about or does bring about repayment of all or part of a consumer debt.

### § 444.5 State exemptions.

(a) If, upon application to the Federal Trade Commission by an appropriate State agency, the Federal Trade Commission determines that:

(1) There is a State requirement or prohibition in effect that applies to any transaction to which a provision of this rule applies; and

(2) The State requirement or prohibition affords a level of protection to consumers that is substantially equivalent to, or greater than, the protection afforded by this rule;

Then that provision of the rule will not be in effect in that State to the extent specified by the Federal Trade Commission in its determination, for as long as the State administers and enforces the State requirement or prohibition effectively.

(b) [Reserved]

## PART 453—FUNERAL INDUSTRY PRACTICES

Sec.
453.1 Definitions.
453.2 Price disclosures.
453.3 Misrepresentations.
453.4 Required purchase of funeral goods or funeral services.
453.5 Services provided without prior approval.
453.6 Retention of documents.
453.7 Comprehension of disclosures.
453.8 Declaration of intent.
453.9 State exemptions.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 57a(a); 15 U.S.C. 46(g); 5 U.S.C. 552.

SOURCE: 59 FR 1611, Jan. 11, 1994, unless otherwise noted.

**§ 453.1 Definitions.**

(a) *Alternative container.* An ''alternative container'' is an unfinished wood box or other non-metal receptacle or enclosure, without ornamentation or a fixed interior lining, which is designed for the encasement of human remains and which is made of fiberboard, pressed-wood, composition materials (with or without an outside covering) or like materials.

(b) *Cash advance item.* A ''cash advance item'' is any item of service or merchandise described to a purchaser as a ''cash advance,'' ''accommodation,'' ''cash disbursement,'' or similar term. A cash advance item is also any item obtained from a third party and paid for by the funeral provider on the purchaser's behalf. Cash advance items may include, but are not limited to: cemetery or crematory services; pallbearers; public transportation; clergy honoraria; flowers; musicians or singers; nurses; obituary notices; gratuities and death certificates.

(c) *Casket.* A ''casket'' is a rigid container which is designed for the encasement of human remains and which is usually constructed of wood, metal, fiberglass, plastic, or like material, and ornamented and lined with fabric.

(d) *Commission.* ''Commission'' refers to the Federal Trade Commission.

(e) *Cremation.* ''Cremation'' is a heating process which incinerates human remains.

(f) *Crematory.* A ''crematory'' is any person, partnership or corporation that performs cremation and sells funeral goods.

(g) *Direct cremation.* A ''direct cremation'' is a disposition of human remains by cremation, without formal viewing, visitation, or ceremony with the body present.

(h) *Funeral goods.* ''Funeral goods'' are the goods which are sold or offered for sale directly to the public for use in connection with funeral services.

(i) *Funeral provider.* A ''funeral provider'' is any person, partnership or corporation that sells or offers to sell funeral goods and funeral services to the public.

(j) *Funeral services.* ''Funeral services'' are any services which may be used to:

(1) Care for and prepare deceased human bodies for burial, cremation or other final disposition; and

(2) arrange, supervise or conduct the funeral ceremony or the final disposition of deceased human bodies.

(k) *Immediate burial.* An ''immediate burial'' is a disposition of human remains by burial, without formal viewing, visitation, or ceremony with the body present, except for a graveside service.

(l) *Memorial service.* A ''memorial service'' is a ceremony commemorating the deceased without the body present.

(m) *Funeral ceremony.* A ''funeral ceremony'' is a service commemorating the deceased with the body present.

(n) *Outer burial container.* An ''outer burial container'' is any container which is designed for placement in the grave around the casket including, but not limited to, containers commonly known as burial vaults, grave boxes, and grave liners.

(o) *Person.* A ''person'' is any individual, partnership, corporation, association, government or governmental subdivision or agency, or other entity.

(p) *Services of funeral director and staff.* The ''services of funeral director and staff'' are the basic services, not to be included in prices of other categories in § 453.2(b)(4), that are furnished by a funeral provider in arranging any funeral, such as conducting the arrangements conference, planning the funeral, obtaining necessary permits, and placing obituary notices.

**§ 453.2 Price disclosures.**

(a) *Unfair or deceptive acts or practices.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider to fail to furnish accurate price information disclosing the cost to the purchaser for each of the specific funeral goods and funeral services used in connection with the disposition of deceased human bodies, including at least the price of embalming, transportation of remains, use of facilities, caskets, outer burial containers, immediate burials, or direct cremations, to persons inquiring about the purchase of funerals. Any funeral provider who complies with the

preventive requirements in paragraph (b) of this section is not engaged in the unfair or deceptive acts or practices defined here.

(b) *Preventive requirements.* To prevent these unfair or deceptive acts or practices, as well as the unfair or deceptive acts or practices defined in § 453.4(b)(1), funeral providers must:

(1) *Telephone price disclosure.* Tell persons who ask by telephone about the funeral provider's offerings or prices any accurate information from the price lists described in paragraphs (b)(2) through (4) of this section and any other readily available information that reasonably answers the question.

(2) *Casket price list.* (i) Give a printed or typewritten price list to people who inquire in person about the offerings or prices of caskets or alternative containers. The funeral provider must offer the list upon beginning discussion of, but in any event before showing caskets. The list must contain at least the retail prices of all caskets and alternative containers offered which do not require special ordering, enough information to identify each, and the effective date for the price list. In lieu of a written list, other formats, such as notebooks, brochures, or charts may be used if they contain the same information as would the printed or typewritten list, and display it in a clear and conspicuous manner. Provided, however, that funeral providers do not have to make a casket price list available if the funeral providers place on the general price list, specified in paragraph (b)(4) of this section, the information required by this paragraph.

(ii) Place on the list, however produced, the name of the funeral provider's place of business and a caption describing the list as a ''casket price list.''

(3) *Outer burial container price list.* (i) Give a printed or typewritten price list to persons who inquire in person about outer burial container offerings or prices. The funeral provider must offer the list upon beginning discussion of, but in any event before showing the containers. The list must contain at least the retail prices of all outer burial containers offered which do not require special ordering, enough information to identify each container, and the effective date for the prices listed. In lieu of a written list, the funeral provider may use other formats, such as notebooks, brochures, or charts, if they contain the same information as the printed or typewritten list, and display it in a clear and conspicuous manner. Provided, however, that funeral providers do not have to make an outer burial container price list available if the funeral providers place on the general price list, specified in paragraph (b)(4) of this section, the information required by this paragraph.

(ii) Place on the list, however produced, the name of the funeral provider's place of business and a caption describing the list as an ''outer burial container price list.''

(4) *General price list.* (i)(A) Give a printed or typewritten price list for retention to persons who inquire in person about the funeral goods, funeral services or prices of funeral goods or services offered by the funeral provider. The funeral provider must give the list upon beginning discussion of any of the following:

(*1*) The prices of funeral goods or funeral services;

(*2*) The overall type of funeral service or disposition; or

(*3*) Specific funeral goods or funeral services offered by the funeral provider.

(B) The requirement in paragraph (b)(4)(i)(A) of this section applies whether the discussion takes place in the funeral home or elsewhere. Provided, however, that when the deceased is removed for transportation to the funeral home, an in-person request at that time for authorization to embalm, required by § 453.5(a)(2), does not, by itself, trigger the requirement to offer the general price list if the provider in seeking prior embalming approval discloses that embalming is not required by law except in certain special cases, if any. Any other discussion during that time about prices or the selection of funeral goods or services triggers the requirement under paragraph (b)(4)(i)(A) of this section to give consumers a general price list.

(C) The list required in paragraph (b)(4)(i)(A) of this section must contain at least the following information:

(*1*) The name, address, and telephone number of the funeral provider's place of business;

(*2*) A caption describing the list as a ''general price list''; and

(*3*) The effective date for the price list;

(ii) Include on the price list, in any order, the retail prices (expressed either as the flat fee, or as the price per hour, mile or other unit of computation) and the other information specified below for at least each of the following items, if offered for sale:

(A) Forwarding of remains to another funeral home, together with a list of the services provided for any quoted price;

(B) Receiving remains from another funeral home, together with a list of the services provided for any quoted price;

(C) The price range for the direct cremations offered by the funeral provider, together with:

(*1*) A separate price for a direct cremation where the purchaser provides the container;

(*2*) Separate prices for each direct cremation offered including an alternative container; and

(*3*) A description of the services and container (where applicable), included in each price;

(D) The price range for the immediate burials offered by the funeral provider, together with:

(*1*) A separate price for an immediate burial where the purchaser provides the casket;

(*2*) Separate prices for each immediate burial offered including a casket or alternative container; and

(*3*) A description of the services and container (where applicable) included in that price;

(E) Transfer of remains to funeral home;

(F) Embalming;

(G) Other preparation of the body;

(H) Use of facilities and staff for viewing;

(I) Use of facilities and staff for funeral ceremony;

(J) Use of facilities and staff for memorial service;

(K) Use of equipment and staff for graveside service;

(L) Hearse; and

(M) Limousine.

(iii) Include on the price list, in any order, the following information:

(A) Either of the following:

(*1*) The price range for the caskets offered by the funeral provider, together with the statement: ''A complete price list will be provided at the funeral home.''; or

(*2*) The prices of individual caskets, disclosed in the manner specified by paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section; and

(B) Either of the following:

(*1*) The price range for the outer burial containers offered by the funeral provider, together with the statement: ''A complete price list will be provided at the funeral home.''; or

(*2*) The prices of individual outer burial containers, disclosed in the manner specified by paragraph (b)(3)(i) of this section; and

(C) Either of the following:

(*1*) The price for the basic services of funeral director and staff, together with a list of the principal basic services provided for any quoted price and, if the charge cannot be declined by the purchaser, the statement: ''This fee for our basic services will be added to the total cost of the funeral arrangements you select. (This fee is already included in our charges for direct cremations, immediate burials, and forwarding or receiving remains.)''. If the charge cannot be declined by the purchaser, the quoted price shall include all charges for the recovery of unallocated funeral provider overhead, and funeral providers may include in the required disclosure the phrase ''and overhead'' after the word ''services''; or

(*2*) The following statement: ''Please note that a fee of (*specify dollar amount*) for the use of our basic services is included in the price of our caskets. This same fee shall be added to the total cost of your funeral arrangements if you provide the casket. Our services include (specify).'' The fee shall include all charges for the recovery of unallocated funeral provider overhead, and funeral providers may include in the required disclosure the phrase ''and overhead'' after the word ''services.'' The statement must be placed on the general price list together with the casket price range, required by paragraph (b)(4)(iii)(A)(*1*) of this section, or

together with the prices of individual caskets, required by (b)(4)(iii)(A)(*2*) of this section.

(iv) The services fee permitted by § 453.2(b)(4)(iii)(C)(*1*) or (C)(*2*) is the only funeral provider fee for services, facilities or unallocated overhead permitted by this part to be non-declinable, unless otherwise required by law.

(5) *Statement of funeral goods and services selected.* (i) Give an itemized written statement for retention to each person who arranges a funeral or other disposition of human remains, at the conclusion of the discussion of arrangements. The statement must list at least the following information:

(A) The funeral goods and funeral services selected by that person and the prices to be paid for each of them;

(B) Specifically itemized cash advance items. (These prices must be given to the extent then known or reasonably ascertainable. If the prices are not known or reasonably ascertainable, a good faith estimate shall be given and a written statement of the actual charges shall be provided before the final bill is paid.); and

(C) The total cost of the goods and services selected.

(ii) The information required by this paragraph (b)(5) may be included on any contract, statement, or other document which the funeral provider would otherwise provide at the conclusion of discussion of arrangements.

(6) *Other pricing methods.* Funeral providers may give persons any other price information, in any other format, in addition to that required by § 453.2(b)(2), (3), and (4) so long as the statement required by § 453.2(b)(5) is given when required by the rule.

### § 453.3 Misrepresentations.

(a) *Embalming provisions.* (1) *Deceptive acts or practices.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is a deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider to:

(i) Represent that state or local law requires that a deceased person be embalmed when such is not the case;

(ii) Fail to disclose that embalming is not required by law except in certain special cases, if any.

(2) *Preventive requirements.* To prevent these deceptive acts or practices, as well as the unfair or deceptive acts or practices defined in §§ 453.4(b)(1) and 453.5(2), funeral providers must:

(i) Not represent that a deceased person is required to be embalmed for:

(A) Direct cremation;

(B) Immediate burial; or

(C) A closed casket funeral without viewing or visitation when refrigeration is available and when state or local law does not require embalming; and

(ii) Place the following disclosure on the general price list, required by § 453.2(b)(4), in immediate conjunction with the price shown for embalming: ''Except in certain special cases, embalming is not required by law. Embalming may be necessary, however, if you select certain funeral arrangements, such as a funeral with viewing. If you do not want embalming, you usually have the right to choose an arrangement that does not require you to pay for it, such as direct cremation or immediate burial.'' The phrase ''except in certain special cases'' need not be included in this disclosure if state or local law in the area(s) where the provider does business does not require embalming under any circumstances.

(b) *Casket for cremation provisions*—(1) *Deceptive acts or practices.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is a deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider to:

(i) Represent that state or local law requires a casket for direct cremations;

(ii) Represent that a casket is required for direct cremations.

(2) *Preventive requirements.* To prevent these deceptive acts or practices, as well as the unfair or deceptive acts or practices defined in § 453.4(a)(1), funeral providers must place the following disclosure in immediate conjunction with the price range shown for direct cremations: ''If you want to arrange a direct cremation, you can use an alternative container. Alternative containers encase the body and can be made of materials like fiberboard or composition materials (with or without an outside covering). The containers we provide are (specify containers).'' This disclosure only has to be placed on the general price list if the funeral provider arranges direct cremations.

(c) *Outer burial container provisions*—(1) *Deceptive acts or practices.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods and funeral services to the public, it is a deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider to:

(i) Represent that state or local laws or regulations, or particular cemeteries, require outer burial containers when such is not the case;

(ii) Fail to disclose to persons arranging funerals that state law does not require the purchase of an outer burial container.

(2) *Preventive requirement.* To prevent these deceptive acts or practices, funeral providers must place the following disclosure on the outer burial container price list, required by § 453.2(b)(3)(i), or, if the prices of outer burial containers are listed on the general price list, required by § 453.2(b)(4), in immediate conjunction with those prices: ''In most areas of the country, state or local law does not require that you buy a container to surround the casket in the grave. However, many cemeteries require that you have such a container so that the grave will not sink in. Either a grave liner or a burial vault will satisfy these requirements.'' The phrase ''in most areas of the country'' need not be included in this disclosure if state or local law in the area(s) where the provider does business does not require a container to surround the casket in the grave.

(d) *General provisions on legal and cemetery requirements*—(1) *Deceptive acts or practices.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is a deceptive act or practice for funeral providers to represent that federal, state, or local laws, or particular cemeteries or crematories, require the purchase of any funeral goods or funeral services when such is not the case.

(2) *Preventive requirements.* To prevent these deceptive acts or practices, as well as the deceptive acts or practices identified in §§ 453.3(a)(1), 453.3(b)(1), and 453.3(c)(1), funeral providers must identify and briefly describe in writing on the statement of funeral goods and services selected (required by § 453.2(b)(5)) any legal, cemetery, or crematory requirement which the funeral provider represents to persons as compelling the purchase of funeral goods or funeral services for the funeral which that person is arranging.

(e) *Provisions on preservative and protective value claims.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is a deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider to:

(1) Represent that funeral goods or funeral services will delay the natural decomposition of human remains for a long-term or indefinite time;

(2) Represent that funeral goods have protective features or will protect the body from gravesite substances, when such is not the case.

(f) *Cash advance provisions*—(1) *Deceptive acts or practices.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is a deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider to:

(i) Represent that the price charged for a cash advance item is the same as the cost to the funeral provider for the item when such is not the case;

(ii) Fail to disclose to persons arranging funerals that the price being charged for a cash advance item is not the same as the cost to the funeral provider for the item when such is the case.

(2) *Preventive requirements.* To prevent these deceptive acts or practices, funeral providers must place the following sentence in the itemized statement of funeral goods and services selected, in immediate conjunction with the list of itemized cash advance items required by § 453.2(b)(5)(i)(B): ''We charge you for our services in obtaining: (specify cash advance items),'' if the funeral provider makes a charge upon, or receives and retains a rebate, commission or trade or volume discount upon a cash advance item.

### § 453.4 Required purchase of funeral goods or funeral services.

(a) *Casket for cremation provisions*—(1) *Unfair or deceptive acts or practices.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider, or a crematory, to require that a casket be purchased for direct cremation.

(2) *Preventive requirement.* To prevent this unfair or deceptive act or practice, funeral providers must make an alternative container available for direct cremations, if they arrange direct cremations.

(b) *Other required purchases of funeral goods or funeral services*—(1) *Unfair or deceptive acts or practices.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for a funeral provider to:

(i) Condition the furnishing of any funeral good or funeral service to a person arranging a funeral upon the purchase of any other funeral good or funeral service, except as required by law or as otherwise permitted by this part;

(ii) Charge any fee as a condition to furnishing any funeral goods or funeral services to a person arranging a funeral, other than the fees for: (1) Services of funeral director and staff, permitted by § 453.2(b)(4)(iii)(C); (2) other funeral services and funeral goods selected by the purchaser; and (3) other funeral goods or services required to be purchased, as explained on the itemized statement in accordance with § 453.3(d)(2).

(2) *Preventive requirements.* (i) To prevent these unfair or deceptive acts or practices, funeral providers must:

(A) Place the following disclosure in the general price list, immediately above the prices required by § 453.2(b)(4)(ii) and (iii): ''The goods and services shown below are those we can provide to our customers. You may choose only the items you desire. If legal or other requirements mean you must buy any items you did not specifically ask for, we will explain the reason in writing on the statement we provide describing the funeral goods and services you selected.'' Provided, however, that if the charge for ''services of funeral director and staff'' cannot be declined by the purchaser, the statement shall include the sentence: ''However, any funeral arrangements you select will include a charge for our basic services'' between the second and third sentences of the statement specified above herein. The statement may include the phrase ''and overhead'' after the word ''services'' if the fee includes a charge for the recovery of unallocated funeral provider overhead;

(B) Place the following disclosure in the statement of funeral goods and services selected, required by § 453.2(b)(5)(i): ''Charges are only for those items that you selected or that are required. If we are required by law or by a cemetery or crematory to use any items, we will explain the reasons in writing below.''

(ii) A funeral provider shall not violate this section by failing to comply with a request for a combination of goods or services which would be impossible, impractical, or excessively burdensome to provide.

### § 453.5 Services provided without prior approval.

(a) *Unfair or deceptive acts or practices.* In selling or offering to sell funeral goods or funeral services to the public, it is an unfair or deceptive act or practice for any provider to embalm a deceased human body for a fee unless:

(1) State or local law or regulation requires embalming in the particular circumstances regardless of any funeral choice which the family might make; or

(2) Prior approval for embalming (expressly so described) has been obtained from a family member or other authorized person; or

(3) The funeral provider is unable to contact a family member or other authorized person after exercising due diligence, has no reason to believe the family does not want embalming performed, and obtains subsequent approval for embalming already performed (expressly so described). In seeking approval, the funeral provider must disclose that a fee will be charged if the family selects a funeral which requires embalming, such as a funeral with viewing, and that no fee will be charged if the family selects a service which does not require embalming, such as direct cremation or immediate burial.

(b) *Preventive requirement.* To prevent these unfair or deceptive acts or practices, funeral providers must include on the itemized statement of funeral goods and services selected, required by

§ 453.2(b)(5), the statement: ''If you selected a funeral that may require embalming, such as a funeral with viewing, you may have to pay for embalming. You do not have to pay for embalming you did not approve if you selected arrangements such as a direct cremation or immediate burial. If we charged for embalming, we will explain why below.''

### § 453.6 Retention of documents.

To prevent the unfair or deceptive acts or practices specified in §§ 453.2 and 453.3 of this rule, funeral providers must retain and make available for inspection by Commission officials true and accurate copies of the price lists specified in §§ 453.2(b) (2) through (4), as applicable, for at least one year after the date of their last distribution to customers, and a copy of each statement of funeral goods and services selected, as required by § 453.2(b)(5), for at least one year from the date of the arrangements conference.

### § 453.7 Comprehension of disclosures.

To prevent the unfair or deceptive acts or practices specified in §§ 453.2 through 453.5, funeral providers must make all disclosures required by those sections in a clear and conspicuous manner. Providers shall not include in the casket, outer burial container, and general price lists, required by §§ 453.2(b)(2)–(4), any statement or information that alters or contradicts the information required by this part to be included in those lists.

### § 453.8 Declaration of intent.

(a) Except as otherwise provided in § 453.2(a), it is a violation of this rule to engage in any unfair or deceptive acts or practices specified in this rule, or to fail to comply with any of the preventive requirements specified in this rule;

(b) The provisions of this rule are separate and severable from one another. If any provision is determined to be invalid, it is the Commission's intention that the remaining provisions shall continue in effect.

(c) This rule shall not apply to the business of insurance or to acts in the conduct thereof.

### § 453.9 State exemptions.

If, upon application to the Commission by an appropriate state agency, the Commission determines that:

(a) There is a state requirement in effect which applies to any transaction to which this rule applies; and

(b) That state requirement affords an overall level of protection to consumers which is as great as, or greater than, the protection afforded by this rule; then the Commission's rule will not be in effect in that state to the extent specified by the Commission in its determination, for as long as the State administers and enforces effectively the state requirement.

## PART 455—USED MOTOR VEHICLE TRADE REGULATION RULE

Sec.

455.1 General duties of a used vehicle dealer; definitions.
455.2 Consumer sales—window form.
455.3 Window form.
455.4 Contrary statements.
455.5 Spanish language sales.
455.6 State exemptions.
455.7 Severability.

AUTHORITY: 88 Stat. 2189, 15 U.S.C. 2309; 38 Stat. 717, as amended 15 U.S.C. 41 et seq.

SOURCE: 49 FR 45725, Nov. 19, 1984, unless otherwise noted.

### § 455.1 General duties of a used vehicle dealer; definitions.

(a) It is a deceptive act or practice for any used vehicle dealer, when that dealer sells or offers for sale a used vehicle in or affecting commerce as *commerce* is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act:

(1) To misrepresent the mechanical condition of a used vehicle;

(2) To misrepresent the terms of any warranty offered in connection with the sale of a used vehicle; and

(3) To represent that a used vehicle is sold with a warranty when the vehicle is sold without any warranty.

(b) It is an unfair act or practice for any used vehicle dealer, when that dealer sells or offers for sale a used vehicle in or affecting commerce as *commerce* is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act:

(1) To fail to disclose, prior to sale, that a used vehicle is sold without any warranty; and

(2) To fail to make available, prior to sale, the terms of any written warranty offered in connection with the sale of a used vehicle.

(c) The Commission has adopted this Rule in order to prevent the unfair and deceptive acts or practices defined in paragraphs (a) and (b). It is a violation of this Rule for any used vehicle dealer to fail to comply with the requirements set forth in §§ 455.2 through 455.5 of this part. If a used vehicle dealer complies with the requirements of §§ 455.2 through 455.5 of this part, the dealer does not violate this Rule.

(d) The following definitions shall apply for purposes of this part:

(1) *Vehicle* means any motorized vehicle, other than a motorcycle, with a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of less than 8500 lbs., a curb weight of less than 6,000 lbs., and a frontal area of less than 46 sq. ft.

(2) *Used vehicle* means any vehicle driven more than the limited use necessary in moving or road testing a new vehicle prior to delivery to a consumer, but does not include any vehicle sold only for scrap or parts (title documents surrendered to the State and a salvage certificate issued).

(3) *Dealer* means any person or business which sells or offers for sale a used vehicle after selling or offering for sale five (5) or more used vehicles in the previous twelve months, but does not include a bank or financial institution, a business selling a used vehicle to an employee of that business, or a lessor selling a leased vehicle by or to that vehicle's lessee or to an employee of the lessee.

(4) *Consumer* means any person who is not a used vehicle dealer.

(5) *Warranty* means any undertaking in writing, in connection with the sale by a dealer of a used vehicle, to refund, repair, replace, maintain or take other action with respect to such used vehicle and provided at no extra charge beyond the price of the used vehicle.

(6) *Implied warranty* means an implied warranty arising under State law (as modified by the Magnuson-Moss Act) in connection with the sale by a dealer of a used vehicle.

(7) *Service contract* means a contract in writing for any period of time or any specific mileage to refund, repair, replace, or maintain a used vehicle and provided at an extra charge beyond the price of the used vehicle, provided that such contract is not regulated in your State as the business of insurance.

(8) *You* means any dealer, or any agent or employee of a dealer, except where the term appears on the window form required by § 455.2(a).

### § 455.2 Consumer sales—window form.

(a) *General duty*. Before you offer a used vehicle for sale to a consumer, you must prepare, fill in as applicable and display on that vehicle a ''Buyers Guide'' as required by this Rule.

(1) The Buyers Guide shall be displayed prominently and conspicuously in any location on a vehicle and in such a fashion that both sides are readily readable. You may remove the form temporarily from the vehicle during any test drive, but you must return it as soon as the test drive is over.

(2) The capitalization, punctuation and wording of all items, headings, and text on the form must be exactly as required by this Rule. The entire form must be printed in 100% black ink on a white stock no smaller than 11 inches high by 7¼ inches wide in the type styles, sizes and format indicated.

# BUYERS GUIDE

28 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

2 pt Rule

**IMPORTANT: Spoken promises are difficult to enforce. Ask the dealer to put all promises in writing. Keep this form.**

10/12 Triumvirate Bold c & lc flush left ragged right maximum line 42 picas

VEHICLE MAKE MODEL YEAR VIN NUMBER

10 pt Baseline Rule
6 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

DEALER STOCK NUMBER (Optional)

10 pt Baseline Rule
6 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

**WARRANTIES FOR THIS VEHICLE:**

10 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

2 pt Rule

54 pt Box
42 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

## ☐ AS IS - NO WARRANTY

**YOU WILL PAY ALL COSTS FOR ANY REPAIRS. The dealer assumes no responsibility for any repairs regardless of any oral statements about the vehicle.**

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc flush left ragged right maximum line 42 picas

1 pt Rule

54 pt Box
42 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

## ☐ WARRANTY

☐ **FULL** ☐ **LIMITED WARRANTY. The dealer will pay _____% of the labor and _____% of the parts for the covered systems that fail during the warranty period. Ask the dealer for a copy of the warranty document for a full explanation of warranty coverage, exclusions, and the dealer's repair obligations. Under state law, "implied warranties" may give you even more rights.**

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc 4½ picas indent on 2nd line

**SYSTEMS COVERED:** **DURATION:**

10 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

10 pt Baseline Rule

☐ **SERVICE CONTRACT. A service contract is available at an extra charge on this vehicle. Ask for details as to coverage, deductable, price, and exclusions. If you buy a service contract within 90 days of the time of sale, state law "implied warranties" may give you additional rights.**

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc maximum line 42 picas

**PRE PURCHASE INSPECTION: ASK THE DEALER IF YOU MAY HAVE THIS VEHICLE INSPECTED BY YOUR MECHANIC EITHER ON OR OFF THE LOT.**

10/10 Triumvirate Bold caps flush left ragged right maximum line 42 picas

**SEE THE BACK OF THIS FORM for important additional information, including a list of some major defects that may occur in used motor vehicles.**

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc flush left ragged right maximum line 42 picas

12 pt Triumvirate Bold lc
flush left ragged right
maximum line 42 picas

**Below is a list of some major defects that may occur in used motor vehicles.**

2 pt Rule

8/9 Triumvirate Bold c & lc
flush left ragged right
maximum line 20 picas
1 em indent on 2nd line

**Frame & Body**
Frame-cracks, corrective welds, or rusted through
Dogtracks—bent or twisted frame

**Engine**
Oil leakage, excluding normal seepage
Cracked block or head
Belts missing or inoperable
Knocks or misses related to camshaft lifters and push rods
Abnormal exhaust discharge

**Transmission & Drive Shaft**
Improper fluid level or leakage, excluding normal seepage
Cracked or damaged case which is visible
Abnormal noise or vibration caused by faulty transmission or drive shaft
Improper shifting or functioning in any gear
Manual clutch slips or chatters

**Differential**
Improper fluid level or leakage excluding normal seepage
Cracked or damaged housing which is visible
Abnormal noise or vibration caused by faulty differential

**Cooling System**
Leakage including radiator
Improperly functioning water pump

**Electrical System**
Battery leakage
Improperly functioning alternator, generator, battery, or starter

**Fuel System**
Visible leakage

**Inoperable Accessories**
Gauges or warning devices
Air conditioner
Heater & Defroster

**Brake System**
Failure warning light broken
Pedal not firm under pressure (DOT spec.)
Not enough pedal reserve (DOT spec.)
Does not stop vehicle in straight (DOT spec.)
Hoses damaged
Drum or rotor too thin (Mfgr. Specs)
Lining or pad thickness less than 1/32 inch
Power unit not operating or leaking
Structural or mechanical parts damaged

**Steering System**
Too much free play at steering wheel (DOT specs.)
Free play in linkage more than 1/4 inch
Steering gear binds or jams
Front wheels aligned improperly (DOT specs.)
Power unit belts cracked or slipping
Power unit fluid level improper

**Suspension System**
Ball joint seals damaged
Structural parts bent or damaged
Stabilizer bar disconnected
Spring broken
Shock absorber mounting loose
Rubber bushings damaged or missing
Radius rod damaged or missing
Shock absorber leaking or functioning improperly

**Tires**
Tread depth less than 2/32 inch
Sizes mismatched
Visible damage

**Wheels**
Visible cracks, damage or repairs
Mounting bolts loose or missing

**Exhaust System**
Leakage

2 pt Rule

10 pt Baseline Rule
6 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

DEALER

ADDRESS

SEE FOR COMPLAINTS

2 pt Rule

**IMPORTANT: The information on this form is part of any contract to buy this vehicle. Removal of this label before consumer purchase (except for purpose of test-driving) is a violation of federal law (16 C.F.R. 455).**

10/12 Triumvirate Bold c & lc
maximum line 42 picas

When filling out the form, follow the directions in (b) through (e) of this section and § 455.4 of this part.

(b) *Warranties*—(1) *No Implied Warranty—"As Is"/No Warranty.* (i) If you offer the vehicle without any implied warranty, i.e., "as is," mark the box provided. If you offer the vehicle with implied warranties only, substitute the disclosure specified below, and mark the box provided. If you first offer the vehicle "as is" or with implied warranties only but then sell it with a warranty, cross out the "As Is—No Warranty" or "Implied Warranties Only" disclosure, and fill in the warranty terms in accordance with paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

(ii) If your State law limits or prohibits "as is" sales of vehicles, that State law overrides this part and this rule does not give you the right to sell "as is." In such States, the heading "As Is—No Warranty" and the paragraph immediately accompanying that phrase must be deleted from the form, and the following heading and paragraph must be substituted. If you sell

vehicles in States that permit ''as is'' sales, but you choose to offer implied warranties only, you must also use the following disclosure instead of ''As Is—No Warranty'':[1]

IMPLIED WARRANTIES ONLY

This means that the dealer does not make any specific promises to fix things that need repair when you buy the vehicle or after the time of sale. But, State law ''implied warranties'' may give you some rights to have the dealer take care of serious problems that were not apparent when you bought the vehicle.

(2) *Full/Limited Warranty.* If you offer the vehicle with a warranty, briefly describe the warranty terms in the space provided. This description must include the following warranty information:

(i) Whether the warranty offered is ''Full'' or ''Limited.''[2] Mark the box next to the appropriate designation.

(ii) Which of the specific systems are covered (for example, ''engine, transmission, diffential''). You cannot use shorthand, such as ''drive train'' or ''power train'' for covered systems.

(iii) The duration (for example, ''30 days or 1,000 miles, whichever occurs first'').

(iv) The percentage of the repair cost paid by you (for example, ''The dealer will pay 100% of the labor and 100% of the parts.'')

(v) If the vehicle is still under the manufacturer's original warranty, you may add the following paragraph below the ''Full/Limited Warranty'' disclosure: MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY STILL APPLIES. The manufacturer's original warranty has not expired on the vehicle. Consult the manufacturer's warranty booklet for details as to warranty coverage, service location, etc.

If, following negotiations, you and the buyer agree to changes in the warranty coverage, mark the changes on the form, as appropriate. If you first offer the vehicle with a warranty, but then sell it without one, cross out the offered warranty and mark either the ''As Is—No Warranty'' box or the ''Implied Warranties Only'' box, as appropriate.

(3) *Service contracts.* If you make a service contract (other than a contract that is regulated in your State as the business of insurance) available on the vehicle, you must add the following heading and paragraph below the ''Full/Limited Warranty'' disclosure and mark the box provided.[3]

☐ Service Contract

A service contract is available at an extra charge on this vehicle. If you buy a service contract within 90 days of the time of sale, State law ''implied warranties'' may give you additional rights.

(c) *Name and Address.* Put the name and address of your dealership in the space provided. If you do not have a dealership, use the name and address of your place of business (for example, your service station) or your own name and home address.

(d) *Make, Model, Model Year, VIN.* Put the vehicle's name (for example, ''Chevrolet''), model (for example, ''Vega''), model year, and Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) in the spaces provided. You may write the dealer stock number in the space provided or you may leave this space blank.

(e) *Complaints.* In the space provided, put the name and telephone number of the person who should be contacted if any complaints arise after sale.

(f) Optional Signature Line. In the space provided for the name of the individual to be contacted in the event of complaints after sale, you may include a signature line for a buyer's signature. If you opt to include a signature line, you must include a disclosure in immediate proximity to the signature line stating: ''I hereby acknowledge receipt of the Buyers Guide at the closing of this sale.'' You may pre-print this language on the form if you choose.

[49 FR 45725, Nov. 19, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 62205, Dec. 5, 1995]

[1] See § 455.5 n. 4 for the Spanish version of this disclosure.

[2] A ''Full'' warranty is defined by the Federal Minimum Standards for Warranty set forth in 104 of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. 2304 (1975). The Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act does not apply to vehicles manufactured before July 4, 1975. Therefore, if you choose not to designate ''Full'' or ''Limited'' for such cars, cross out both designations, leaving only ''Warranty''.

[3] See § 455.5 n. 4 for the Spanish version of this disclosure.

### §455.3 Window form.

(a) *Form given to buyer.* Give the buyer of a used vehicle sold by you the window form displayed under §455.2 containing all of the disclosures required by the Rule and reflecting the warranty coverage agreed upon. If you prefer, you may give the buyer a copy of the original, so long as that copy accurately reflects all of the disclosures required by the Rule and the warranty coverage agreed upon.

(b) *Incorporated into contract.* The information on the final version of the window form is incorporated into the contract of sale for each used vehicle you sell to a consumer. Information on the window form overrides any contrary provisions in the contract of sale. To inform the consumer of these facts, include the following language conspicuously in each consumer contract of sale:

The information you see on the window form for this vehicle is part of this contract. Information on the window form overrides any contrary provisions in the contract of sale.

### §455.4 Contrary statements.

You may not make any statements, oral or written, or take other actions which alter or contradict the disclosures required by §§455.2 and 455.3. You may negotiate over warranty coverage, as provided in §455.2(b) of this part, as long as the final warranty terms are identified in the contract of sale and summarized on the copy of the window form you give to the buyer.

### §455.5 Spanish language sales.

If you conduct a sale in Spanish, the window form required by §455.2 and the contract disclosures required by §455.3 must be in that language. You may display on a vehicle both an English language window form and a Spanish language translation of that form. Use the following translation and layout for Spanish language sales:[4]

[4] Use the following language for the ''Implied Warranties Only'' disclosure when required by §455.2(b)(1):

Garantías implicítas solamente

Este término significa que el vendedor no hace promesas específicas de arreglar lo que requiera reparación cuando usted compra el vehículo o después del momento de la venta. Pero, las ''garantías implícitas'' de la ley estatal pueden darle a usted algunos derechos y hacer que el vendedor resuelva problemas graves que no fueron evidentes cuando usted compró el vehículo.

Use the following language for the ''Service Contract'' disclosure required by §455.2(b)(3):

CONTRATO DE SERVICIO. Este vehículo tiene disponible un contrato de servicio a un precio adicional. Pida los detalles en cuanto a cobertura, deducible, precio y exclusiones. Si adquiere usted un contrato de servicio dentro de los 90 días del momento de la venta, las ''garantías implícitas'' de acuerdo a la ley del estado pueden concederle derechos adicionales.

# GUÍA DEL COMPRADOR

28 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

IMPORTANTE: Las promesas verbales son difíciles de hacer cumplir. Solicite al vendedor que ponga todas las promesas por escrito. Conserve este formulario.

2 pt Rule

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc maximum line 38 picas

MARCA DEL VEHÍCULO MODELO AÑO NÚMERO DE IDENTIFICACIÓN

Hairline Rule

6/8 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

NÚMERO DE ABASTO DEL DISTRIBUIDOR (Opcional)

Hairline Rule

6/8 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

GARANTÍAS PARA ESTE VEHÍCULO:

10 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

2 pt Rule

## ☐ COMO ESTÁ—SIN GARANTÍA

28 pt Box
24 pt Triumvirate Bold c & lc

USTED PAGARÁ TODOS LOS GASTOS DE CUALQUIER REPARACIÓN QUE SEA NECESARIA. El vendedor no asume ninguna responsabilidad por cualquier reparación, sean cuales sean las declaraciones verbales que haya hecho acerca del vehículo.

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc maximum line 38 picas

1 pt Rule

## ☐ GARANTÍA

28 pt Box
24 pt Triumvirate Bold c & lc

☐ COMPLETA ☐ LIMITADA. El vendedor pagará el ____% de la mano de obra y el ____% de los repuestos de los sistemas cubiertos que dejen de funcionar durante el período de garantía. Pida al vendedor una copia del documento de garantía donde se explican detalladamente la cobertura de le garantía, exclusiones y las obligaciones que tiene el vendedor de realizar reparaciones. Conforme a la ley estatal, las "garantías implícitas" pueden darle a usted incluso más derechos.

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc
7½ picas indent
on runovers

SISTEMAS CUBIERTOS POR LA GARANTÍA: DURACIÓN:

10/10 Triumvirate Bold caps

10/12 Hairline Rule

CONTRATO DE SERVICIO. Este vehículo tiene disponible un contrato de servicio a un precio adicional. Pida los detalles en cuanto a cobertura, deducible, precio y exclusiones. Si adquiere usted un contrato de servicio dentro de los 90 días del momento de la venta, las 'garantías implícitas' de acuerdo a la ley del estado pueden concederle derechos adicionales.

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc maximum line 38 picas

INSPECCIÓN PREVIA A LA COMPRA: PREGUNTE AL VENDEDOR SI PUEDE USTED TRAER UN MECÁNICO PARA QUE INSPECCIONE EL AUTOMÓVIL O LLEVAR EL AUTOMÓVIL PARA QUE ESTE LO INSPECCIONE EN SU TALLER.

10/10 Triumvirate Bold caps maximum line 38 picas

VÉASE EL DORSO DE ESTE FORMULARIO donde se proporciona información adicional importante, incluyendo una lista de algunos de los principales defectos que pueden ocurrir en vehículos usados.

10/10 Triumvirate Bold c & lc maximum line 38 picas

**A continuación presentamos una lista de algunos de los principales defectos que pueden ocurrir en vehículos usados.**

12 pt Triumvirate Bold lc flush left ragged right maximum line 42 picas

2 pt Rule

8/9 Triumvirate Bold c & lc flush left ragged right maximum line 20 picas 1 em indent on 2nd line

**Chasis y carrocería**
Chasis-grietas, soldaduras correctivas u oxidado
Chasis doblado o torcido

**Motor**
Fuga de aceite, excluyendo el escape normal
Bloque o tapa de recamara agrietados
Correas que faltan o no funcionan
Fallo o pistoneo
Emision excesiva de humo por el sistema de escape

**Transmisión y eje de cardan**
Nivel de liquido inadecuado o fuga, excluyendo filtración normal
Cubierta agrietada o dañada visible
Vibración o ruido anormal ocasion do por una transmisión o eje de cardan defectuoso
Cambio de marchas o funcionmiento inadecuado en cualquier marcha
Embrague manual patina o vibra

**Diferencial**
Nivel de liquido inadecuado o fuga excluyendo filtracion normal
Cubierta agrietada o dañada visible
Ruido o vibración anormal ocasionado por diferencial defectuoso

**Sistema de refrigeración**
Fuga, incluido el radiador
Bomba de agua defectuosa

**Sistema electrico**
Fuga en las baterías
Alternador, generador, batería, o motor de arranque defectuosos

**Sistema de combustible**
Escape visible de combustible

**Accesorios averiados**
Indicadores o medidores del cuadro de instrumentos
Acondicionador de aire
Calefactor y descarchador

**Sistema de frenos**
Luz de advertencia de falla dañada
Pedal no firma bajo presión (Especif. del Dpto de Transp.)
Juego insuficiente en el pedal (Especif. del Dpto de Transp.)
No detiene el vehículo en línea recta (Especif. del Dpto de Transp.)
Conductos dañados
Tambor o disco muy delgados (Especif. del fabricante)
Grosor de las bandas de los frenos menor de 1/32 de pulgada
Sistema de servofreno dañado o con escape
Partes estructurales o mecánicas dañadas

**Sistema de dirección**
Juego excesivo en el volante (Especif. Dpto. de Transp.)
Juego en el varillaje en exceso de 1/4 pulgada
Engranaje del volante de dirección se agarrota
Ruedas delanteras mal alineadas (Especif. del Dpto. de Transp.)
Correas del sistema de servodirección agrietadas o flojas
Nival del liquido del sistema de servodirección inadecuado

**Sistema de suspensión**
Sellos de conexión de rodamientos defectuosos
Piezas estructurales dobladas o dañadas
Barra de estabilizacion desconectada
Resorte roto
Montura del amortiguador floja
Bujes de goma dañadas o ausentes
Estabilizador para curvas dañadas o ausente
Amortiguador tiene fuga o funciona defectuosamente

**Llantas**
Profundidad de la banda de rodamiento menor de 2/32 de pulgada
Diferentes tamanos de llanta
Danos visibles

**Ruedas**
Grietas visibles, danos o reparaciones
Pernos de montaje suelltos o ausentes

**Sistema de Escape**
Fuga

2 pt Rule

VENDEDOR

DIRECCION

VEASE PARA RECLAMACIONES

10 pt Baseline Rule

6 pt Triumvirate Bold caps

**IMPORTANTE: La informacion contenida en este formulario forma parte de todo contrato de compra de este vehiculo. Constituye una contravencion de la ley federal (16 C.F.R. 455) quitar este rotulo antes de la compra del vehiculo por el consumidor (salvo para conducir el automovil en calidad de prueba).**

2 pt Rule

10/12 Triumvirate Bold c & lc maximum line 42 picas

[49 FR 45725, Nov. 19, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 62205, Dec. 5, 1995]

## § 455.6 State exemptions.

(a) If, upon application to the Commission by an appropriate State agency, the Commission determines, that—

(1) There is a State requirement in effect which applies to any transaction to which this rule applies; and

(2) That State requirement affords an overall level of protection to consumers which is as great as, or greater than, the protection afforded by this Rule; then the Commission's Rule will not be in effect in that State to the extent specified by the Commission in its determination, for as long as the State administers and enforces effectively the State requirement.

(b) Applications for exemption under subsection (a) should be directed to the Secretary of the Commission. When appropriate, proceedings will be commenced in order to make a determination described in paragraph (a) of this section, and will be conducted in accordance with subpart C of part 1 of the Commission's Rules of Practice.

## § 455.7 Severability.

The provisions of this part are separate and severable from one another. If any provision is determined to be invalid, it is the Commission's intention

that the remaining provisions shall continue in effect.

## PART 456—OPHTHALMIC PRACTICE RULES

Sec.
456.1 Definitions.
456.2 Separation of examination and dispensing.
456.3 Federal or State employees.
456.4 Declaration of Commission Intent.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 57a; 5 U.S.C. 552.

SOURCE: 57 FR 18822, May 1, 1992, unless otherwise noted.

### § 456.1 Definitions.

(a) A *patient* is any person who has had an eye examination.

(b) An *eye examination* is the process of determining the refractive condition of a person's eyes or the presence of any visual anomaly by the use of objective or subjective tests.

(c) *Ophthalmic goods* are eyeglasses, or any component of eyeglasses, and contact lenses.

(d) *Ophthalmic services* are the measuring, fitting, and adjusting of ophthalmic goods subsequent to an eye examination.

(e) An *ophthalmologist* is any Doctor of Medicine or Osteopathy who performs eye examinations.

(f) An *optometrist* is any Doctor of Optometry.

(g) A *prescription* is the written specifications for lenses for eyeglasses which are derived from an eye examination, including all of the information specified by state law, if any, necessary to obtain lenses for eyeglasses.

### § 456.2 Separation of examination and dispensing.

It is an unfair act or practice for an ophthalmologist or optometrist to:

(a) Fail to provide to the patient one copy of the patient's prescription immediately after the eye examination is completed. Provided: An ophthalmologist or optometrist may refuse to give the patient a copy of the patient's prescription until the patient has paid for the eye examination, but only if that ophthalmologist or optometrist would have required immediate payment from that patient had the examination revealed that no ophthalmic goods were required;

(b) Condition the availability of an eye examination to any person on a requirement that the patient agree to purchase any ophthalmic goods from the ophthalmologist or optometrist;

(c) Charge the patient any fee in addition to the ophthalmologist's or optometrist's examination fee as a condition to releasing the prescription to the patient. Provided: An ophthalmologist or optometrist may charge an additional fee for verifying ophthalmic goods dispensed by another seller when the additional fee is imposed at the time the verification is performed; or

(d) Place on the prescription, or require the patient to sign, or deliver to the patient a form or notice waiving or disclaiming the liability or responsibility of the ophthalmologist or optometrist for the accuracy of the eye examination or the accuracy of the ophthalmic goods and services dispensed by another seller.

### § 456.3 Federal or State employees.

This rule does not apply to ophthalmologists or optometrists employed by any Federal, State or local government entity.

### § 456.4 Declaration of Commission Intent.

In prohibiting the use of waivers and disclaimers of liability in § 456.2(d), it is not the Commission's intent to impose liability on an ophthalmologist or optometrist for the ophthalmic goods and services dispensed by another seller pursuant to the ophthalmologist's or optometrist's prescription.

## PART 460—LABELING AND ADVERTISING OF HOME INSULATION

Sec.
460.1 What this regulation does.
460.2 What is home insulation.
460.3 Who is covered.
460.4 When the rules apply.
460.5 R-value tests.
460.6 ''Representative thickness'' testing.
460.7 Which test version to use.
460.8 R-value tolerances.
460.9 What test records you must keep.
460.10 How statements must be made.
460.11 Rounding off R-values.
460.12 Labels.

460.13 Fact sheets.
460.14 How retailers must handle fact sheets.
460.15 How installers must handle fact sheets.
460.16 What new home sellers must tell new home buyers.
460.17 What installers must tell their customers.
460.18 Insulation ads.
460.19 Savings claims.
460.20 R-value per inch claims.
460.21 Government claims.
460.22 Tax claims.
460.23 Other laws, rules, and orders.
460.24 Stayed or invalid parts.
APPENDIX TO PART 460—EXEMPTIONS

AUTHORITY: 38 Stat. 717, as amended (15 U.S.C. 41 *et seq.*).

SOURCE: 44 FR 50242, Aug. 27, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

### §460.1 What this regulation does.

This regulation deals with home insulation labels, fact sheets, ads, and other promotional materials in or affecting commerce, as ''commerce'' is defined in the Federal Trade Commission Act. If you are covered by this regulation, breaking any of its rules is an unfair and deceptive act or practice or an unfair method of competition under section 5 of that Act. You can be fined heavily (up to $10,000 plus an adjustment for inflation, under §1.98 of this chapter) each time you break a rule.

[44 FR 50242, Aug. 27, 1979, as amended at 61 FR 54549, Oct. 21, 1996; 61 FR 55840, Oct. 29, 1996]

### §460.2 What is home insulation.

Insulation is any material mainly used to slow down heat flow. It may be mineral or organic, fibrous, cellular, or reflective (aluminum foil). It may be in rigid, semirigid, flexible, or loose-fill form. Home insulation is for use in old or new homes, condominiums, cooperatives, apartments, modular homes, or mobile homes. It does not include pipe insulation. It does not include any kind of duct insulation except for duct wrap.

### §460.3 Who is covered.

You are covered by this regulation if you are a member of the home insulation industry. This includes individuals, firms, partnerships, and corporations. It includes manufacturers, distributors, franchisors, installers, retailers, utility companies, and trade associations. Advertisers and advertising agencies are also covered. So are labs doing tests for industry members. If you sell new homes to consumers, you are covered.

### §460.4 When the rules apply.

You must follow these rules each time you import, manufacture, distribute, sell, install, promote, or label home insulation. You must follow them each time you prepare, approve, place, or pay for home insulation labels, fact sheets, ads, or other promotional materials for consumer use. You must also follow them each time you supply anyone covered by this regulation with written information that is to be used in labels, fact sheets, ads, or other promotional materials for consumer use. Testing labs must follow the rules unless the industry members tells them, in writing, that labels, fact sheets, ads, or other promotional materials for home insulation will not be based on the test results.

### §460.5 R-value tests.

R-value measures resistance to heat flow. R-values given in labels, fact sheets, ads, or other promotional materials must be based on tests done under the methods listed below. They were designed by the American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM). The test methods are:

(a) All types of insulation except aluminum foil must be tested with ASTM C 177–85 (Reapproved 1993), ''Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus;'' ASTM C 236–89 (Reapproved 1993), ''Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Performance of Building Assemblies by Means of a Guarded Hot Box;'' ASTM C 518–91, ''Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus;'' ASTM C 976–90, ''Standard Test Method for Thermal Performance of Building Assemblies by Means of a Calibrated Hot Box;'' or ASTM C 1114–95, ''Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by

Means of the Thin-Heater Apparatus.'' The tests must be done at a mean temperature of 75 °Fahrenheit. The tests must be done on the insulation material alone (excluding any airspace). R-values (''thermal resistance'') based upon heat flux measurements according to ASTM C 177–85 (Reapproved 1993) or ASTM C 518–91 must be reported only in accordance with the requirements and restrictions of ASTM C 1045–90, ''Standard Practice for Calculating Thermal Transmission Properties from Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements.'' These incorporations by reference were approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of the test procedures and standard practice may be obtained from the American Society of Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103. Copies may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, Public Reference Room, Room 130, Sixth Street and Pennsylvania Ave., NW, Washington, DC, or at the Office of the Federal Register, 800 North Capital St., NW, suite 700, Washington, DC.

(1) For polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, and extruded polystyrene, the tests must be done on samples that fully reflect the effect of aging on the product's R-value. To age the sample, follow the procedure in paragraph 4.6.4 of GSA Specification HH–I–530A, or another reliable procedure.

(2) For loose-fill cellulose, the tests must be done at the settled density determined under paragraph 8 of ASTM C 739–91, ''Standard Specification for Cellulosic Fiber (Wood-Base) Loose-Fill Thermal Insulation.'' This incorporation by reference was approved by the Director of the Federal Register in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR part 51. Copies of the test procedure may be obtained from the American Society of Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103. Copies may be inspected at the Federal Trade Commission, Public Reference Room, Room 130, Sixth Street and Pennsylvania Ave., NW, Washington, DC, or at the Office of the Federal Register, 800 North Capital St., NW, suite 700, Washington, DC.

(3) For loose-fill mineral wool, the tests must be done on samples that fully reflect the effect of settling on the product's R-value. When a settled density procedure becomes part of a final GSA Specification for loose-fill mineral wool, the tests must be done at the settled density determined under the GSA Specification.

(b) Aluminum foil systems with more than one sheet must be tested with ASTM C 236–89 (Reapproved 1993) or ASTM C 976–90, which are incorporated by reference in paragraph (a) of this section. The tests must be done at a mean temperature of 75 °Fahrenheit, with a temperature differential of 30 °Fahrenheit.

(c) Single sheet systems of aluminum foil must be tested with ASTM E408 or another test method that provides comparable results. This tests the emissivity of the foil—its power to radiate heat. To get the R-value for a specific emissivity level, air space, and direction of heat flow, use the tables in the most recent edition of the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers' (ASHRAE) Handbook. You must use the R-value shown for 50 °Fahrenheit, with a temperature differential of 30 °Fahrenheit.

(d) For insulation materials with foil facings, you must test the R-value of the material alone (excluding any air spaces) under the methods listed in paragraph (a) of this section. You can also determine the R-value of the material in conjunction with an air space. You can use one of two methods to do this:

(1) You can test the system, with its air space, under ASTM C 236–89 (Reapproved 1993) or ASTM C 976–90, which are incorporated by reference in paragraph (a) of this section. If you do this, you must follow the rules in paragraph (a) of this section on temperature, aging and settled density.

(2) You can add up the tested R-value of the material and the R-value of the air space. To get the R-value for the air space, you must follow the rules in paragraph (c) of this section.

[44 FR 50242, Aug. 27, 1979, as amended at 55 FR 10055, Mar. 19, 1990; 55 FR 12110, Mar. 30, 1990; 61 FR 13665, Mar. 28, 1996]

### §460.6 "Representative thickness" testing.

All tests except aluminum foil tests must be done at a representative thickness for every thickness shown in a label, fact sheet, ad, or other promotional material. ''Representative thickness'' means a thickness at which the R-value per unit will vary no more than plus or minus 2% with increases in thickness. However, if the thickness shown in your label, fact sheet, ad, or promotional material is less than the representative thickness, then you can test the insulation at the thickness shown.

### §460.7 Which test version to use.

Use the version of the ASTM test method that was in effect when this regulation was promulgated. If ASTM changes a test method, the new version will automatically replace the old one in these rules 90 days after ASTM first publishes the change. However, the Commission's staff or a person affected by the change can petition the Commission during the 90-day period not to adopt the change or to reopen the proceeding to consider it further.

### §460.8 R-value tolerances.

If you are an industry member, the R-value of any insulation you sell cannot be more than 10% below the R-value shown in a label, fact sheet, ad, or other promotional material for that insulation. However, if you are not a manufacturer, you can rely on the R-value data given to you by the manufacturer, unless you know or should know that the data is false or not based on the proper tests.

### §460.9 What test records you must keep.

Manufacturers and testing labs must keep records of each item of information in the ''Report'' section of the ASTM test method that is used for a test. They must also keep the following records:

(a) The name and address of the testing lab that did each test.

(b) The date of each test.

(c) For manufacturers, the date each test report was received from a lab. For labs, the date each test report was sent to a manufacturer.

(d) For extruded polystyrene, polyurethane, and polyisocyanurate, the age (in days) of the specimen that was tested.

(e) For aluminum foil, the emissivity level that was found in the test.

Manufacturers who own their own testing labs need not keep records of the information in paragraph (c) of this section.

Keep these records for at least three years. If the documents show proof for your claims, the three years will begin again each time you make the claim. Federal Trade Commission staff members can check these records at any time, but they must give you reasonable notice first.

### §460.10 How statements must be made.

All statements called for by this regulation must be made clearly and conspicuously. Among other things, you must follow the Commission's enforcement policy statement for clear and conspicuous disclosures in foreign language advertising and sales materials, 16 CFR 14.9.

[61 FR 13666, Mar. 28, 1996]

### §460.11 Rounding off R-values.

R-values shown in labels, fact sheets, ads, or other promotional materials must be rounded to the nearest tenth. However, R-values of 10 or more may be rounded to the nearest whole number.

### §460.12 Labels.

If you are a manufacturer, you must label all packages of your insulation. The labels must contain:

(a) The type of insulation.

(b) A chart showing these items:

(1) For mineral fiber batts and blankets: the R-value, length, width, thickness, and square feet of insulation in the package.

(2) For all loose-fill insulation except cellulose: The minimum thickness, maximum net coverage area, and minimum weight per square foot at R-values of 11, 19, and 22. You must also give this information for any additional R-values you list on the chart. Labels for

these products must state the minimum net weight of the insulation in the package.

(3) For loose-fill cellulose insulation: the minimum thickness, maximum net coverage area, number of bags per 1,000 square feet, and minimum weight per square foot at R-values of 13, 19, 24, 32, and 40. You must also give this information for any additional R-values you list on the chart. Labels for this product must state the minimum net weight of the insulation in the package.

(4) For boardstock: the R-value, length, width, and thickness of the boards in the package, and the square feet of insulation in the package.

(5) For aluminum foil: the number of foil sheets; the number and thickness of the air spaces; and the R-value provided by that system when the direction of heat flow is up, down, and horizontal. You can show the R-value for only one direction of heat flow if you clearly and conspicuously state that the foil can only be used in that application.

(6) For insulation materials with foil facings, you must follow the rule that applies to the material itself. For example, if you manufacture boardstock with a foil facing, follow paragraph (b)(4) of this section. You can also show the R-value of the insulation when it is installed in conjunction with an air space. This is its ''system R-value.'' If you do this, you must clearly and conspicuously state the conditions under which the system R-value can be attained.

(7) For air duct insulation: The R-value, length, width, thickness, and square feet of insulation in the package.

(c) The following statement: ''R means resistance to heat flow. The higher the R-value, the greater the insulating power.''

(d) If installation instructions are included on the label or with the package, add this statement: ''To get the marked R-value, it is essential that this insulation be installed properly. If you do it yourself, follow the instructions carefully.''

(e) If no instructions are included, add this statement: ''To get the marked R-value, it is essential that this insulation be installed properly. If you do it yourself, get instructions and follow them carefully. Instructions do not come with this package.''

### § 460.13 Fact sheets.

If you are a manufacturer, you must give retailers and installers fact sheets for the insulation products you sell to them. Each sheet must contain what is listed here. You can add any disclosures that are required by federal laws, regulations, rules, or orders. You can add any disclosures that are required by State or local laws, rules, and orders, unless they are inconsistent with the provisions of this regulation. Do not add anything else.

Each fact sheet must contain these items:

(a) The name and address of the manufacturer. It can also include a logo or other symbol that the manufacturer uses.

(b) A heading: ''This is _____ insulation.'' Fill in the blank with the type and form of your insulation.

(c) The heading must be followed by a chart:

(1) If § 460.12(b) requires a chart for your product's label, you must use that chart. For foamed-in-place insulations, you must show the R-value of your product at 3½ inches. You can also show R-values at other thicknesses.

(2) You can put the charts for similar products on the same fact sheet. For example, if you sell insulation boards or batts in three different thicknesses, you can put the label charts for all three products on one fact sheet. If you sell loose-fill insulation in two different bag sizes, you can put both coverage charts on one fact sheet, as long as you state which coverage chart applies to each bag size.

(d) For urea-based foam insulation, the chart must be followed by this paragraph:

''Foam insulation shrinks after it is installed. This shrinkage may significantly reduce the R-value you get.''

However, you can lower your product's R-value to account for shrinkage. To do this, you must have reliable scientific proof of the extent of shrinkage for your product and of its effect on R-value. If you lower your product's R-

value, you need not make the above statement.

(e) For air duct insulation, the chart must be followed by this statement:

''The R-value of this insulation varies depending on how much it is compressed during installation.''

(f) After the chart and any statement dealing with the specific type of insulation, ALL fact sheets must carry this statement, boxed, in 12-point type:

READ THIS BEFORE YOU BUY

What You Should Know About R-values

The chart shows the R-value of this insulation. R means resistance to heat flow. The higher the R-value, the greater the insulating power. Compare insulation R-values before you buy.

There are other factors to consider. The amount of insulation you need depends mainly on the climate you live in. Also, your fuel savings from insulation will depend upon the climate, the type and size of your house, the amount of insulation already in your house, and your fuel use patterns and family size. If you buy too much insulation, it will cost you more than what you'll save on fuel.

To get the marked R-value, it is essential that this insulation be installed properly.

[44 FR 50242, Aug. 27, 1979, as amended at 45 FR 68928, Oct. 17, 1980]

### §460.14 How retailers must handle fact sheets.

If you sell insulation to do-it-yourself customers, you must have fact sheets for the insulation products you sell. You must make the fact sheets available to your customers. You can decide how to do this, as long as your insulation customers are likely to notice them. For example, you can put them in a display, and let customers take copies of them. You can keep them in a binder at a counter or service desk, and have a sign telling customers where the fact sheets are.

### §460.15 How installers must handle fact sheets.

If you are an installer, you must have fact sheets for the insulation products you sell. Before customers agree to buy insulation from you, you must show them the fact sheet(s) for the type(s) of insulation they want. You can decide how to do this. For example, you can give each customer a copy of the fact sheet(s). You can keep the fact sheets in a binder, and show customers the binder before they agree to buy.

### §460.16 What new home sellers must tell new home buyers.

If you are a new home seller, you must put the following information in every sales contract: The type, thickness, and R-value of the insulation that will be installed in each part of the house. There is an exception to this rule. If the buyer signs a sales contract before you know what type of insulation will be put in the house, or if there is a change in the contract, you can give the buyer a receipt stating this information as soon as you find out.

### §460.17 What installers must tell their customers.

If you are an installer, you must give your customers a contract or receipt for the insulation you install. For all insulation except loose-fill and aluminum foil, the receipt must show the coverage area, thickness, and R-value of the insulation you installed. For loose-fill, the receipt must show those three items plus the number of bags used. For aluminum foil, the receipt must show the number and thickness of the air spaces, the direction of heat flow, and the R-value. The receipt must be dated and signed by the installer. To figure out the R-value of the insulation, use the data that the manufacturer gives you. Do not multiply the R-value for one inch by the number of inches you installed. If you put insulation in more than one part of the house, put the data for each part on the receipt. You can do this on one receipt, as long as you do not add up the coverage areas or R-values for different parts of the house.

### §460.18 Insulation ads.

(a) If your ad gives an R-value, you must give the type of insulation and the thickness needed to get that R-value. Also, add this statement explaining R-values: ''The higher the R-value, the greater the insulating power. Ask your seller for the fact sheet on R-values.''

(b) If your ad gives a price, you must give the type of insulation, the R-value

at a specific thickness, the statement explaining R-values in paragraph (a) of this section, and the coverage area for that thickness. If you give the price per square foot, you do not have to give the coverage area.

(c) If your ad gives the thickness of your insulation, you must give its R-value at that thickness and the statement explaining R-values in paragraph (a) of this section.

(d) If your ad compares one type of insulation to another, the comparison must be based on the same coverage areas. You must give the R-value at a specific thickness for each insulation, and the statement explaining R-values in paragraph (a) of this section. If you give the price of each insulation, you must also give the coverage area for the price and thickness shown. However, if you give the price per square foot, you do not have to give the coverage area.

(e) If your ad gives the R-value of urea-based foam insulation, you must add this statement: ''Foam insulation shrinks after it is installed. This shrinkage may significantly reduce the R-value you get.'' However, you can lower your product's R-value to account for shrinkage. To do this, you must have reliable scientific proof of the extent of shrinkage for your product and of its effect on R-value. If you lower your product's R-value, you need not make the above statement.

(f) The affirmative disclosure requirements in § 460.18 do not apply to ads on television.

[44 FR 50242, Aug. 27, 1979, as amended at 51 FR 39651, Oct. 30, 1986]

### § 460.19 Savings claims.

(a) If you say or imply in your ads, labels, or other promotional materials that insulation can cut fuel bills or fuel use, you must have a reasonable basis for the claim. For example, if you say that insulation can ''slash'' or ''lower'' fuel bills, or that insulation ''saves money,'' you must have a reasonable basis for the claim. Also, if you say that insulation can ''cut fuel use in half,'' or ''lower fuel bills by 30%,'' you must have a reasonable basis for the claim.

(b) If you say or imply in your ads, labels, or other promotional materials that insulation can cut fuel bills or fuel use, you must make this statement about savings: ''Savings vary. Find out why in the seller's fact sheet on R-values. Higher R-values mean greater insulating power.''

(c) If you say or imply that a combination of products can cut fuel bills or use, you must have a reasonable basis for the claim. You must make the statement about savings in paragraph (b) of this section. Also, you must list the combination of products used. They may be two or more types of insulation; one or more types of insulation and one or more other insulating products, like storm windows or siding; or insulation for two or more parts of the house, like the attic and walls. You must say how much of the savings came from each product or location. If you cannot give exact or approximate figures, you must give a ranking. For instance, if your ad says that insulation and storm doors combined to cut fuel use by 50%, you must say which one saved more.

(d) If your ad or other promotional material is covered by § 460.18 (a), (b), (c), or (d), and also makes a savings claim, you must follow the rules in §§ 460.18 and 460.19. However, you need not make the statement explaining R-value in § 460.18(a).

(e) Manufacturers are liable if they do not have a reasonable basis for their savings claims before the claim is made. If you are not a manufacturer, you are liable only if you know or should know that the manufacturer does not have a reasonable basis for the claim.

(f) Keep records of all data on savings claims for at least three years. For the records showing proof for claims, the three years will begin again each time you make the claim. Federal Trade Commission staff members can check these records at any time, but they must give you reasonable notice first.

(g) The affirmative disclosure requirements in § 460.19 do not apply to ads on television.

[44 FR 50242, Aug. 27, 1979, as amended at 51 FR 39651, Oct. 30, 1986]

### § 460.20 R-value per inch claims.

In labels, fact sheets, ads, or other promotional materials, do not give the

R-value for one inch or the ''R-value per inch'' of your product. There are two exceptions:

(a) You can do this if you suggest using your product at a one-inch thickness.

(b) You can do this if actual test results prove that the R-values per inch of your product does not drop as it gets thicker.

You can list a range of R-value per inch. If you do, you must say exactly how much the R-value drops with greater thickness. You must also add this statement: ''The R-value per inch of this insulation varies with thickness. The thicker the insulation, the lower the R-value per inch.''

### § 460.21 Government claims.

Do not say or imply that a government agency uses, certifies, recommends, or otherwise favors your product unless it is true. Do not say or imply that your insulation complies with a governmental standard or specification unless it is true.

### § 460.22 Tax claims.

Do not say or imply that your product qualifies for a tax benefit unless it is true.

### § 460.23 Other laws, rules, and orders.

(a) If an outstanding FTC Cease and Desist Order applies to you but differs from the rules given here, you can petition to amend to order.

(b) State and local laws and regulations that are inconsistent with, or frustrate the purposes of, the provisions of this regulation are preempted. However, a State or local government may petition the Commission, for good cause, to permit the enforcement of any part of a State or local law or regulation that would be preempted by this section.

(c) The Commission's three-day cooling-off rule stays in force.

### § 460.24 Stayed or invalid parts.

If any part of this regulation is stayed or held invalid, the rest of it will stay in force.

## APPENDIX TO PART 460—EXEMPTIONS

Section 18(g)(2) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 57a(g)(2), authorizes the Commission to exempt a person or class of persons from all or part of a trade regulation rule if the Commission finds that application of the rule is not necessary to prevent the unfair or deceptive acts or practices to which the rule relates. In response to petitions from industry representatives, the Commission has granted exemptions from specific requirements of 16 CFR part 460 to certain classes of sellers. Some of these exemptions are conditioned upon the performance of alternative actions. The exemptions are limited to specific sections of part 460. All other requirements of part 460 apply to these sellers. The exemptions are summarized below. For an explanation of the scope and application of the exemptions, see the formal Commission decisions in the FEDERAL REGISTER cited at the end of each exemption.

(a) Manufacturers of perlite insulation products that have an inverse relationship between R-value and density or weight per square foot are exempted from the requirements in §§460.12(b)(2) and 460.13(c)(1) that they disclose minimum weight per square foot for R-values listed on labels and fact sheets. This exemption is conditioned upon the alternative disclosure in labels and fact sheets of the maximum weight per square foot for each R-value required to be listed. 46 FR 22179 (1981).

(b) Manufacturers of rigid, flat-roof insulation products used in flat, built-up roofs are exempted from the requirements in §460.12 that they label these home insulation products. 46 FR 22180 (1981).

(c) New home sellers are exempted from:

(1) the requirement in §460.18(a) that they disclose the type and thickness of the insulation when they make a representation in an advertisement or other promotional material about the R-value of the insulation in a new home;

(2) the requirement that they disclose in an advertisement or other promotional material the R-value explanatory statement specified in §460.18(a) or the savings explanatory statement specified in §460.19(b), conditioned upon the new home sellers alternatively disclosing the appropriate explanatory statement in the sales contract along with the disclosures required by §460.16;

(3) the requirement that they make the disclosures specified in §460.19(c) if they claim that insulation, along with other products in a new home, will cut fuel bills or fuel use; and

(4) the requirement that they include the reference to fact sheets when they must disclose the R-value explanatory statement or the savings claim explanatory statement under §460.18(a) or §460.19(b), respectively.

The exemptions for new home sellers also apply to home insulation sellers other than new home sellers when they participate with a new home seller to advertise and promote the sale of new homes, provided that the primary thrust of the advertisement or other promotional material is the promotion of new homes, and not the promotion of the insulation product. 48 FR 31192 (1983).

[61 FR 13666, Mar. 28, 1996]

# SUBCHAPTER E—RULES, REGULATIONS, STATEMENT OF GENERAL POLICY OR INTERPRETATION AND EXEMPTIONS UNDER THE FAIR PACKAGING AND LABELING ACT

## PART 500—REGULATIONS UNDER SECTION 4 OF THE FAIR PACKAGING AND LABELING ACT


Sec.
500.1 Scope of the regulations of this part.
500.2 Terms defined.
500.3 Prohibited acts, coverage, general labeling requirements, exemption procedures.
500.4 Statement of identity.
500.5 Name and place of business of manufacturer, packer or distributor.
500.6 Net quantity of contents declaration, location.
500.7 Net quantity of contents, method of expression.
500.8 Units of weight or mass and measure.
500.9 Units of weight or mass, how expressed.
500.10 Units of fluid measure, how expressed.
500.11 Measurement of commodity length, how expressed.
500.12 Measurement of commodities by length and width, how expressed.
500.13 Measurement of commodities by area measure only, how expressed.
500.14 Statements of cubic measure and dry measure.
500.15 Units of count, more than one ply.
500.16 Measurement of container type commodities, how expressed.
500.17 Fractions.
500.18 SI metric prefixes.
500.19 Conversion of SI metric quantities to inch/pound quantities and inch/pound quantities to SI metric quantities.
500.20 Conspicuousness.
500.21 Type size in relationship to the area of the principal display panel.
500.22 Abbreviations.
500.23 Expression of net quantity of contents in SI Metric units.
500.24 Supplemental statements.
500.25 Net quantity, average quantity, permitted variations.
500.26 Representations of servings, uses, applications.
500.27 Multiunit packages.
500.28 Variety packages.
500.29 Combination packages.


AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 1453, 1454, 1455.

SOURCE: 59 FR 1872, Jan. 12, 1994, unless otherwise noted.

### §500.1 Scope of the regulations of this part.

The regulations in this part establish requirements for labeling of consumer commodities as hereinafter defined with respect to identity of the commodity; the name and place of business of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor; the net quantity of contents; and net quantity of servings, uses, or applications represented to be present.

### §500.2 Terms defined.

As used in this part, unless the context otherwise specifically requires:

(a) The term *Act* means the ''Fair Packaging and Labeling Act'' (Pub. L. 89–755, approved Nov. 3, 1966; 80 Stat. 1296 *et seq.*; 15 U.S.C. 1451 *et seq.*, as amended by Public Law 102–329, August 3, 1992).

(b) The term *regulation* or *regulations* means regulations promulgated by the Commission pursuant to sections 4, 5, and 6 of the Act (15 U.S.C. 1453, 1454, 1455).

(c) The term *consumer commodity* or *commodity* means any article, product, or commodity of any kind or class which is customarily produced or distributed for sale through retail sales agencies or instrumentalities for consumption by individuals, or use by individuals for purposes of personal care or in the performance of services ordinarily rendered within the household, and which usually is consumed or expended in the course of such consumption or use. For purposes of the regulations in this part the term *consumer commodity* does not include any food, drug, device or cosmetic as defined by section 201 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 321); any meat or meat product, poultry or poultry product, or tobacco or tobacco product; any commodity subject to packaging or labeling requirements imposed by the Administrator of the Environmental Protection Agency pursuant to the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act (7 U.S.C. 136 *et seq.*); any commodity subject to

the provisions of the eighth paragraph under the heading ''Bureau of Animal Industry'' of the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act (21 U.S.C. 151–157); any beverage subject to or complying with packaging or labeling requirements imposed under the Federal Alcohol Administration Act (27 U.S.C. 201 *et seq.*); any commodity subject to the provisions of the Federal Seed Act (7 U.S.C. 1551–1610).

(d) The term *package* means any container or wrapping in which any consumer commodity is enclosed for use in the delivery or display of that commodity to retail purchasers. For purposes of the regulations in this part the term *package* does not include shipping containers or wrappings used solely for the transportation of any consumer commodity in bulk or in quantity to manufacturers, packers, or processors, or to wholesale or retail distributors thereof unless used in retail display; shipping containers or outer wrappings used by retailers to ship or deliver any commodity to retail customers if such containers and wrappings bear no printed matter pertaining to any particular commodity; or containers subject to the provisions of the Act of August 3, 1912 (37 Stat. 250, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 231–233), the Act of March 4, 1915 (38 Stat. 1186, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 234–236); or transparent wrappers or containers which do not bear written, printed, or graphic matter obscuring any part of the label information required by this part.

(e) The term *label* means any written, printed, or graphic matter affixed to or appearing upon any consumer commodity or affixed to or appearing upon a package containing any consumer commodity; except that:

(1) An inspector's tag or other nonpromotional matter affixed to or appearing upon a consumer commodity shall not be deemed to be a label requiring the repetition of label information required by this part, and

(2) For the purposes of the regulations in this part the term *label* does not include written, printed, or graphic matter affixed to or appearing upon commodities, or affixed to or appearing upon containers or wrappers for commodities sold or distributed to industrial or institutional users.

(f) The term *person* includes any firm, corporation or associations.

(g) The term *commerce* means:

(1) Commerce between any State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, or any territory or possession of the United States, and any place outside thereof, and

(2) Commerce within the District of Columbia or within any territory or possession of the United States, not organized with a legislature, but shall not include exports to foreign countries.

(h) The term *principal display panel* means that part of a label that is most likely to be displayed, presented, shown, or examined under normal and customary conditions of display for retail sale. The principal display panel must be large enough to accommodate all the mandatory label information required to be placed thereon by this part without obscuring designs, vignettes, or crowding. This definition does not preclude utilization of alternate principal display panels on a label of a package, but alternate principal display panels must duplicate the information required to be placed on the principal display panel by this part. This definition does not preclude utilization of the container closure as the surface bearing the principal display panel if that label location is the one most likely to be displayed, presented, shown, or examined under normal and customary conditions of display for retail sale. The principal display panel of a label appearing on a cylindrical surface is that 40 percent of the circumference which is more likely to be displayed, presented, shown, or examined under normal and customary conditions of display for retail sale. The principal display panel of a consumer commodity marketed in a decorative type container, or a container having a capacity of ¼ ounce (7.4 mL) or less, may be considered to be a tear-away tag or tape affixed to the container and bearing the mandatory label information as required by this part, but the type size of the net quantity of contents statement shall be governed by the dimensions of the container itself.

The principal display panel of a consumer commodity marketed on a display card to which the immediate container of the commodity is affixed may be considered to be the display panel of the card, and the type size of the net quantity of contents statement is governed by the dimensions of the display card.

(i) The term *random package* means a package which is one of a lot, shipment, or delivery of packages of the same consumer commodity with varying weights, that is, packages with no fixed weight pattern.

(j) The term *SI metric* refers to units belonging to the International System of Units (abbreviated ''SI'' from the French, *Le Systeme International d'Unites*), as interpreted or modified for use in the United States by the Secretary of Commerce. They include the SI units (together with their multiples and submultiples) as well as other metric units (e.g., the liter) that are accepted for use with the SI units because of their practical importance.

(k) The term *customary inch/pound* refers to units belonging to the system of units used in the United States based on or derived from the ounce, pound, and ton for weight; the inch, foot, yard, and mile for length; the fluid ounce, pint, quart, and gallon for volume; and dry pint, dry quart, peck, and bushel for dry measure.

(l) The term *''e'' mark* refers to the symbol ''e'' used in connection with the quantity declarations on labels of some consumer commodities marketed primarily in the European Community (EC). The ''e'' mark constitutes a representation by the packer or importer that the package to which it is applied has been filled in accordance with the average system of quantity specified by the EC. The average system is a method of declaring package fill in the EC and other countries of the world, including the United States.

### § 500.3 Prohibited acts, coverage, general labeling requirements, exemption procedures.

(a) No person engaged in the packaging or labeling of any consumer commodity for distribution in commerce, and no person (other than a common carrier for hire, or a freight forwarder for hire) engaged in the distribution in commerce of any packaged or labeled consumer commodity, shall distribute or cause to be distributed in commerce any such commodity if such commodity is contained in a package, or if there is affixed to that commodity a label, which does not conform to the provisions of the Act and of the regulations in this part.

(b) Persons engaged in business as wholesale or retail distributors of consumer commodities shall be subject to the Act and the regulations in this part to the extent that such persons are engaged in the packaging or labeling of consumer commodities, or prescribe or specify by any means the manner in which such consumer commodities are packaged or labeled.

(c) Each packaged or labeled consumer commodity, unless it has been exempted through proceedings under section 5(b) of the Act (15 U.S.C. 1454(b)), shall, upon being prepared for distribution in commerce or for sale at retail, and before being distributed in commerce or offered for sale at retail, be labeled in accordance with the requirements of the Act and the regulations in this part.

(d) Each packaged or labeled consumer commodity, unless it has been exempted through proceedings under section 5(b) of the Act, shall bear a label specifying the identity of the commodity; the name and place of business of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor; the net quantity of contents; and the net quantity per serving, use or application, where there is a label representation as to the number of servings, uses, or applications obtainable from the commodity.

(e) Regulations will be promulgated by the Commission exempting particular consumer commodities from one or more of the requirements of section 4 of the Act and the regulations thereunder to the extent and under such conditions as are consistent with the declared policy of the Act whenever the Commission finds that, because of the nature, form, or quantity of the particular consumer commodity, or for other good and sufficient reasons, full compliance with all the requirements otherwise applicable is impracticable or is not necessary for the adequate

protection of consumers. Proceedings for the promulgation of such exempting regulations may be commenced by the Commission upon its own initiative or pursuant to petition filed with the Secretary by any interested person or group stating reasonable grounds for the proposed exemption, pursuant to § 1.15 of this chapter of the Commission's general procedures.

### § 500.4 Statement of identity.

(a) The principal display panel of a consumer commodity shall bear a specification of the identity of the commodity.

(b) Such specification of identity shall comprise a principal feature of the principal display panel, shall be in such type size and so positioned as to render it easily read and understood by the consumer, and shall be in lines generally parallel to the base on which the package or commodity rests as it is designed to be displayed.

(c) Such specification of identity shall be in terms of:

(1) The name now or hereafter specified in or required by any applicable Federal law or regulation; or in the absence thereof,

(2) The common or usual name of the commodity; or in the absence thereof,

(3) The generic name or in other appropriately descriptive terms such as a specification which includes a statement of function.

(d) The specification of identity shall not be false, misleading, or deceptive in any respect. Ingredients or components which are not present in the commodity in a substantial or significantly effective amount may not be mentioned in the specification of identity; except that a component present in a formulation in substantial and effective amounts, but not present in the final product due to conversion or transformation into a different entity (which different entity is present in the final product), may be mentioned in the specification of identity.

### § 500.5 Name and place of business of manufacturer, packer or distributor.

(a) The label of a consumer commodity shall specify conspicuously the name and place of business of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor. Where the consumer commodity is not manufactured by the person whose name appears on the label, the name shall be qualified by a phrase that reveals the connection such person has with such commodity; such as ''Manufactured for _____,'' ''Distributed by _____,'' or any other wording that expresses the facts.

(b) The requirement for declaration of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor shall in the case of a corporation be deemed to be satisfied only by the actual corporate name, which may be preceded or followed by the name of the particular division of the corporation. In the case of an individual, partnership, or association, the name under which the business is conducted shall be used.

(c) The statement of the place of business shall include the street address, city, State, and Zip Code; however, the street address may be omitted if it is shown in a current city directory or telephone directory.

(d) If a person manufactures, packs, or distributes a consumer commodity at a place other than his principal place of business, the label may state the principal place of business in lieu of the actual place where such consumer commodity was manufactured or packed or is to be distributed, unless such statement would be misleading.

(e) Standard abbreviations may be used in complying with the requirements of this section.

### § 500.6 Net quantity of contents declaration, location.

(a) The label of a consumer commodity shall bear a declaration of the net quantity of contents separately and accurately stated on the principal display panel.

(b) The declaration of net quantity shall appear as a distinct item on the principal display panel, shall be separated (by at least a space equal to the height of the lettering used in the declaration) from other printed label information appearing above or below the declaration and, shall not include any term qualifying a unit of weight or mass, measure, or count such as ''jumbo quart,'' ''giant liter,'' ''full gallon,'' ''when packed,'' ''minimum,'' or

words of similar import. The declaration of net quantity shall be separated (by at least a space equal to twice the width of the letter ''N'' of the style of type used in the net quantity statement) from other printed label information appearing to the left or right of the declaration. However, the ''e'' mark shall not be considered to be a qualifying word or phrase and may be used as part of the statement of the net quantity of contents where warranted. When used, the ''e'' mark shall be at least 3 millimeters (approximately 1/8 in) in height. The declaration of net quantity of contents shall be placed on the principal display panel within the bottom 30 percent of the area of the label panel in lines generally parallel to the base on which the package or commodity rests as it is designed to be displayed: *Provided,* that:

(1) On consumer commodities having a principal display panel of 5 square inches (32.2 $cm^2$) or less, the requirement for placement within the bottom 30 percent of the area of the label panel shall not apply when the declaration of net quantity of contents meets the other requirements of this part, and

(2) The requirements as to separation, location, and type size, specified in this part are waived with respect to variety and combination packages as defined in this part.

### §500.7 Net quantity of contents, method of expression.

The net quantity of contents shall be expressed in terms of weight or mass, measure, numerical count, or a combination of numerical count and weight or mass, size, or measure so as to give accurate information regarding the net quantity of contents thereof, and thereby facilitate value comparisons by consumers. The net quantity of contents statement shall be in terms of fluid measure if the commodity is liquid, or in terms of weight or mass if the commodity is solid, semi-solid, or viscous, or a mixture of solid and liquid. If there is a firmly established general consumer usage and trade custom of declaring the contents of a liquid by weight or mass, or a solid, semi-solid, or viscous product by fluid measure, numerical count, and/or size, or (as in the case of lawn and plant care products) by cubic measure, it may be used, when such declaration provides sufficient information to facilitate value comparisons by consumers. The declaration may appear in more than one line of print or type.

### §500.8 Units of weight or mass and measure.

(a) Statements of weight or mass shall be in terms of both avoirdupois pound and ounce and SI metric kilograms, grams, or milligrams. (Examples of avoirdupois/metric declarations: ''Net Wt 15 oz (425 g)'' or ''Net Wt 1½ lbs (680 g)'' or '' 2.5 oz (70.8 g)''; examples of metric/avoirdupois declarations: ''Net Mass 425 g (15 oz)'' or ''Net Mass 680 g (1½ lbs)'' or ''100 g e (3.5 oz).'')

(b) Statements of fluid measure shall be in terms of both the U.S. gallon of 231 cubic inches and quart, pint, and fluid ounce subdivisions thereof and SI metric liters or milliliters and shall (except in the case of petroleum products, for which the declaration shall express the volume at 60 °Fahrenheit (15.6 °Celsius)) express the volume at 68 °Fahrenheit (20 °Celsius). (Examples of gallon/metric declarations: ''Net 12 fl oz (354 mL)'' or ''Net Contents 1 gal (3.78 L)'' or ''8 fl oz (236 mL)''; examples of metric/gallon declarations: ''Net 500 mL (1.05 pt)'' or ''Net Contents 1 L (1.05 qt).'')

(c) Statements of linear measure shall be in terms of both yards, feet, and inches and SI metric meters, centimeters, or millimeters.

(d) Statements of measure of area shall be in terms of both square yards, square feet, and square inches and SI metric square meters, square decimeters, square centimeters, or square millimeters.

(e) Statements of dry measure shall be in terms of both the U.S. bushel of 2,150.42 cubic inches and peck, dry quart, and dry pint subdivisions thereof and SI metric liters or milliliters.

(f) Statements of cubic measure shall be in terms of both cubic yard, cubic foot, and cubic inch and SI metric cubic meters, cubic decimeters, or cubic centimeters.

**§ 500.9 Units of weight or mass, how expressed.**

(a) The term *net weight* or *net mass* may be used in stating the net quantity of contents in terms of weight or mass. However, where the term ''net weight'' or ''net mass'' is not used, the quantity of contents shall always disclose the net quantity of contents. For example: ''453 g (1 lb)'' or ''Net Wt 1 lb (453 g)'' or ''Net Mass 453 g (1 lb)''.

(b) With the exception of random packages, the statement of net quantity of contents in terms of avoirdupois weight shall be expressed as follows:

(1) If less than 1 pound, in terms of ounces. (Examples: ''Net Weight 12 oz. (340 g)'' or ''Net Mass 340 g (12 oz)''.)

(2) If at least 1 pound but less than 4 pounds, in whole pounds, with any remainder in ounces or common or decimal fractions of the pound, except that it shall be optional to include an immediately adjacent additional expression of net quantity in terms of ounces.

(*Examples:* ''Net Wt. 1 lb. 8 oz. (680 g)'' or ''Net Wt. 1.5 lb./24 oz. (680 g)'' or ''24 oz. (1½ lb.) 680 g''.)

(3) If 4 pounds or more, in terms of whole pounds, with any remainder in terms of ounces or common or decimal fractions of the pound, except that it shall be optional to include an immediately adjacent additional expression of net quantity in terms of ounces. (Examples: ''Net Weight 5 pounds 4 ounces (2.38 kg)'' or ''Net Mass 2.38 kg (5 lbs 4 oz)'' or ''Net Wt. 5¼ lbs. (2.38 kg)'' or ''Net Mass 2.38 kg (5¼ lbs.)'' or ''Net Wt. 5.25 lbs. (2.38 kg) or ''Net Mass 2.38 kg (5.25 lbs)''.)

(c) If the net quantity of contents declaration appears on a random package it may, when the net weight exceeds 1 pound, be expressed in terms of pounds and decimal fractions of the pound carried out to not more than three decimal places. When the net weight does not exceed 1 pound, the declaration on the random package may be in terms of decimal fractions of the pound in lieu of ounces. (Examples: ''Net Wt. 0.75 lb.'' and ''Net Weight 1.05 pounds.'') Such decimal declaration shall be exempt from the type size and placement requirements of section 4(a) of the Act if the accurate statement of net weight is presented prominently and conspicuously on the principal display panel of the package. The net quantity of contents declaration on a random package is not required to, but may include a statement in terms of the SI metric system carried out to not more than 3 decimal places.

(d) It is sufficient to distinguish avoirdupois ounce from fluid ounce through association of terms. (Examples: ''Net Wt. 6 oz.'' vs. ''6 fl. oz.'' or ''Net Contents 6 fl. oz.'')

**§ 500.10 Units of fluid measure, how expressed.**

(a) Use of the terms ''net'' or ''net contents'' is optional.

(b) Declaration of net quantity of contents in terms of fluid measure shall be identified as such in each instance and the statement of U.S. gallon of 231 cubic inches and quart, pint, and fluid ounce subdivisions thereof shall be expressed as follows:

(1) If less than 1 pint, in terms of fluid ounces. (Example: ''Net Contents 8 fl. oz. (236 mL)'' or ''Net Contents 236 mL (8 fl. oz.)''.)

(2) If at least 1 pint but less than 1 gallon, in terms of the largest whole unit (quarts, quarts and pints or pints, as appropriate), with any remainder in terms of fluid ounces or common or decimal fractions of the pint or quart, except that it shall be optional to include an immediately adjacent additional expression of net quantity in terms of fluid ounces. (Examples: ''1 qt. (946 mL)'' or ''Net contents 1 qt. 1 pt. 8 oz./56 fl. oz. (1.65 L)'', but not in terms of quart and ounce such as ''1 quart 24 ounces (1.65 L)''.)

(3) If 1 gallon or more, in terms of the largest whole unit (gallons followed by common or decimal fractions of a gallon or by the next smaller whole unit or units viz, quarts and pints) with any remainder in terms of fluid ounces or common or decimal fractions of the pint or quart, except that it shall be optional to include an immediately adjacent additional expression of net quantity in terms of fluid ounces.

(*Examples:* ''Net contents 2½ gal. (9.46 L)'', ''Contents 2.5 gal. (9.46 L)'', or ''Net contents 2 gallons 2 quarts (9.46 L)'' but not as ''2 gallons 4 pints (9.46 L)''.)

### §500.11 Measurement of commodity length, how expressed.

Declaration of net quantity in terms of yards, feet, and inches shall be expressed as follows:

(a) If less than 1 foot, in terms of inches and fractions thereof.

(b) If 1 foot or more, in terms of the largest whole unit (a yard or foot) with any remainder in terms of inches or common or decimal fractions of the foot or yard, except that it shall be optional to express the length in the preceding manner followed by a statement of the length in terms of inches.

### §500.12 Measurement of commodities by length and width, how expressed.

For bidimensional commodities (including roll-type commodities) measured in terms of commodity length and width, the declaration of net quantity of contents shall be expressed in the following manner:

(a) The declaration of net quantity for bidimensional commodities having a width of more than 4 inches (10.1 cm) shall:

(1) When the commodity has an area of less than 1 square foot (929 $cm^2$) be expressed in terms of length and width in linear measure. The customary inch/pound statement is to be expressed in inches and fractions thereof.

(2) When the commodity has an area of 1 square foot (929 $cm^2$) or more, but less than 4 square feet (37.1 $dm^2$), be expressed in terms of area, followed by the length and width. The customary inch/pound statement of area is to be expressed in square inches with length and width expressed in the largest whole unit (yard or foot) with any remainder in inches or common or decimal fractions of the yard or foot except that a dimension of less than 2 feet (60.9 cm) may be stated in inches. Commodities consisting of usable individual units (e.g., paper napkins) while requiring a declaration of unit area need not declare the total area of all such individual units.

(3) When the commodity has an area of 4 square feet (37.1 $dm^2$) or more, be expressed in terms of area, followed by the length and width. The customary inch/pound statement of area is to be expressed in square feet with the length and width expressed in the largest whole units (yards or feet) with any remainder in terms of inches or common or decimal fractions of the foot or yard except that a dimension of less than 2 feet (60.96 cm) may be stated in inches.

(4) For any commodity for which the quantity of contents is required by paragraph (a) (2) or (3) of this section to include a declaration of the linear dimensions, the quantity of contents, in addition to being declared in the manner prescribed by the appropriate provisions of this regulation, may also include, after the customary inch/pound statement of the linear dimensions of the largest unit of measurement, a parenthetical declaration of the linear dimensions of said commodity in terms of inches.

(*Example:* ''25 sq. ft. (12 in. × 8.33 yd.) (12 in. × 300 in.) 42.32 $m^2$ (30.4 cm × 7.62 m)''.)

(b) For bidimensional commodities having a width of 4 inches (10.16 cm) or less, the declaration of net quantity shall be expressed in terms of width and length in linear measure. The customary inch/pound statement of width shall be expressed in terms of linear inches and fractions thereof, and length shall be expressed in the largest whole unit (yard or foot) with any remainder in terms of the common or decimal fractions of the yard or foot, except that it shall be optional to express the length in the largest whole unit followed by a statement of length in inches or to express the length in inches followed by a statement of length in the largest whole unit.

(*Example:* ''2 inches × 10 yards (5.08 cm × 9.14 m)'', ''2 inches × 10 yards (360 inches) 5.08 cm × 9.14 m'', or ''2 inches × 360 inches (10 yards) 5.08 cm × 9.14 m''.)

### §500.13 Measurement of commodities by area measure only, how expressed.

For commodities measured in terms of area measure only declaration of net quantity in terms of square yards, square feet, and square inches shall be expressed in the following manner:

(a) If less than 1 square foot (929 $cm^2$), in terms of square inches and fractions thereof.

(b) If at least 1 square foot (929 $cm^2$) but less than 4 square feet (37.1 $dm^2$), in terms of square feet with any remainder in terms of square inches or common or decimal fractions of the square foot.

(c) If 4 square feet (37.1 $dm^2$) or more, in terms of the largest appropriate whole unit (square yards, square yards and square feet, or square feet) with any remainder in terms of square inches or common or decimal fractions of the square foot or square yard.

### § 500.14 Statements of cubic measure and dry measure.

Statements of cubic measure and dry measure shall be expressed in terms most appropriate to the providing of accurate information as to the net quantity of contents, and to the facilitating of value comparisons by consumers. When the content declaration on a commodity sold in compressed form is stated in terms of cubic measure there may also be a statement indicating the amount of material from which the final product was compressed. Such statement shall not exceed the actual amount of material that can be recovered.

### § 500.15 Units of count, more than one ply.

If the commodity is in distinct usable units made up of one or more components or ply, the statement of net quantity of contents shall (in addition to complying with the requirements of linear and area measurement declaration for each unit as specified in § 500.12) include the number of ply and the total number of usable units.

(*Example:* ''100 2-ply facial tissues, 8½ inches × 10 inches'' (21.5 × 25.4 cm).)

For the purposes of this section, roll type commodities (e.g. paper towels), irrespective of perforations, shall not be considered to be usable units, and shall be labeled in terms of total area measurement and the number of ply. Such area measurement, however, shall be supplemented by a count statement and the dimensions of a single unit.

### § 500.16 Measurement of container type commodities, how expressed.

Notwithstanding other provisions of this part 500 of the regulations pertaining to the expression of net quantity of contents by measurement, commodities designed and sold at retail to be used as containers for other materials or objects, such as bags, cups, boxes, and pans, shall be labeled in accordance with the following paragraphs:

(a) The declaration of net quantity for container commodities shall be expressed as follows:

(1) For bag type commodities, in terms of count followed by linear dimensions of the bag (whether packaged in a perforated roll or otherwise) Net quantity of contents in terms of feet and inches shall be expressed as follows:

(i) When the unit bag is characterized by two dimensions because of the absence of a gusset, the width and length will be expressed in inches, except that a dimension of 2 feet or more will be expressed in feet with any remainder in terms of inches or common or decimal fractions of the foot.

(*Example:* ''25 bags, 17 in. × 20 in. (43.1 × 50.8 cm)'' or ''200 bags, 20 in. × 2 ft. 6 in. (50.8 × 76.2 cm)'', or ''50 bags, 20 in. × 2½ ft. (50.8 × 76.2 cm)''.)

(ii) When the unit bag is gussetted, the dimensions will be expressed as width, depth and length in terms of inches except that any dimensions of 2 feet or more will be expressed in feet with any remainder in terms of inches or the common or decimal fractions of the foot.

(*Examples:* ''25 bags, 17 in. × 4 in. × 20 in. (43 × 10 × 50 cm)'', or ''200 bags, 20 in. × 12 in. × 2½ ft. (50.8 × 30.4 × 76.2 cm)''.)

(2) For other square, oblong, rectangular or similarly shaped containers, in terms of count followed by length, width, and depth except depth need not be listed when less than 2 inches (5.08 cm).

(*Example:* ''2 cake pans, 8 in. × 8 in. (20.3 × 20.3 cm)'', or ''roasting pan, 12 in. × 8 in. × 3 in. (30.4 × 20.3 × 7.62 cm)''.)

(3) For circular or other generally round shaped containers, except cups, and the like, in terms of count followed

by diameter and depth except depth need not be listed when less than 2 inches (5.08 cm).

(*Example:* ''4 pie pans, 8 in. diameter (20.3 cm)'' or ''2 cake pans, 8 in. diameter × 4 in. (20.3 × 10.1 cm)''.)

(b) When the functional use of the container is related by label reference in standard terms of measure to the capability of holding a specific quantity of substance or class of substances such references shall be a part of the net quantity statement and shall specify capacity as follows:

(1) Liquid measure for containers which are intended to be used for liquids, semi-solids, viscous materials or mixtures of solids and liquids. The customary inch/pound statement of capacity shall be stated in terms of the largest whole U.S. gallon of 231 cubic inches, quart, pint, or ounce with any remainder in terms of the common or decimal fraction of that unit.

(*Example:* Freezer Boxes: ''4 boxes, 1 qt. capacity, 6 in. × 6 in. × 4 in. (946 mL capacity, 15.2 × 15.2 × 10.1 cm)''.)

(2) Dry measure for containers which are intended to be used for solids. The customary inch/pound statement of capacity shall be stated in terms of the largest whole U.S. bushel of 2,150.42 cubic inches, peck, dry quart, or dry pint with any remainder in terms of the common or decimal fraction of that unit.

(*Example:* Leaf Bags: ''8 bags, 6 bushel capacity, 4 feet × 5 feet (211 L capacity—1.21 m × 1.52 m)''.)

(3) Where containers are used as liners for other more permanent containers, in the same terms as are normally used to express the capacity of the more permanent container.

(*Example:* Garbage Can Liners: ''10 liners, 2 ft. 6 in. × 3 ft. 1 in., fits up to 30 gallon cans (76.2 × 93.9 cm, fits up to 113 L cans''.)

(c) Notwithstanding the above requirements, the net quantity statement for containers such as cups will be listed in terms of count and liquid capacity per unit.

(*Example:* ''24 cups, 6 fl. oz. capacity (177 mL)''.)

(d) For purposes of this section, the use of the terms ''capacity,'' ''diameter,'' and ''fluid'' is optional.

### § 500.17 Fractions.

(a) SI metric declarations of net quantity of contents of any consumer commodity may contain only decimal fractions. Other declarations of net quantity of contents may contain common or decimal fractions. A common fraction shall be in terms of halves, quarters, eighths, sixteenths, or thirty-seconds; except that:

(1) If there exists a firmly established general consumer usage and trade custom of employing different common fractions in the net quantity declaration of a particular commodity, they may be employed, and

(2) If linear measurements are required in terms of yards or feet, common fractions may be in terms of thirds. A common fraction shall be reduced to its lowest terms; a decimal fraction shall not be carried out to more than three places.

(b) If a statement includes small fractions, smaller variations in the actual size or weight of the commodity will be permitted as provided in § 500.25, than in cases where the larger fractions or whole numbers are used.

### § 500.18 SI metric prefixes.

The following chart indicates SI prefixes that may be used on a broad range of consumer commodity labels:

| Prefix | Symbol | Multiplying factor [1] |
|---|---|---|
| Kilo- | k | $\times 10^{3}$ |
| Deca- | da | $\times 10$ |
| Deci- | d | $\times 10^{-1}$ |
| Centi- | c | $\times 10^{-2}$ |
| Milli- | m | $\times 10^{-3}$ |
| Micro- | µ | $\times 10^{-6}$ |

[1] $10^{2}=100$; $10^{3}=1000$; $10^{-1}=0.1$; $10^{-2}=0.01$.
Thus, 2 kg=2x1000 g=2000 g, and 3 cm=3x0.01 m=0.03 m.

### § 500.19 Conversion of SI metric quantities to inch/pound quantities and inch/pound quantities to SI metric quantities.

(a) For calculating the conversion of SI metric quantities to inch/pound quantities and inch/pound quantities to metric quantities, the factors in the following chart and none others shall be employed:

SI METRIC INCH/POUND CONVERSION FACTORS

| Inch/pound | Metric |
|---|---|
| **Length** | |
| 1 mil=25.4 micrometers (μm)* | 1 micrometer= 0.039370 mil. |
| 1 inch=2.54 cm* | 1 millimeter=0.039 370 in. |
| 1 foot=30.48 cm* | 1 centimeter=0.393 701 in. |
| 1 yard=0.9144m* | 1 meter=3.280 84 ft. |
| **Area** | |
| 1 square inch=6.4516 $cm^2$* | 1 square centimeter=0.155 000 $in^2$. |
| 1 square foot=929.0304 $cm^2$* | 1 square decimeter=0.107 639 $ft^2$. |
| =9.290 304 $dm^2$ | 1 square meter=10.763 9 $ft^2$. |
| 1 square yard=0.836 127 $m^2$. | |
| **Volume or Capacity** | |
| 1 cubic inch=16.3871 $cm^3$ | 1 cubic centimeter=0.061 023 7 $in^3$. |
| 1 cubic foot=0.028 316 8 $m^3$ | 1 cubic decimeter=0.035 314 7 $ft^3$. |
| =2.83 168 $dm^3$ | 1 cubic meter=35.314 7 $ft^3$. |
| 1 cubic yard=0.764 555 $m^3$ | =1.307 95 $yd^3$. |
| 1 fluid ounce=29.573 5 mL | 1 milliliter=0.033 814 0 fluid oz. |
| 1 liquid pint=473.177 mL | 1 liter=1.05669 liquid quart. |
| =0.473 177 L | 1 liter=0.264 172 gallon. |
| 1 liquid quart=946.353 mL | 1 dry pint=550.610 5 mL. |
| =0.946 353 L | 1 dry quart=1.101 221 L. |
| 1 gallon=3.785 41 L | 1 dry peck=8.809 768 L. |
| 1 bushel=35.2391 L. | |
| **Weight or Mass** | |
| 1 ounce=28.349 5 g | 1 milligram=0.000 035 274 0 oz. |
| 1 pound=453.592 g | =0.015 432 4 grain. |
| =0.453 592 kg | 1 gram=0.035 274 0 oz. |
| | 1 kilogram=2.204 62 lb. |

*Exactly.

NOTE: These conversion factors are given to six significant digits to provide such accuracy when necessary.

(b) The SI metric quantity declaration should be shown in three digits except where the quantity is below 100 grams, milliliters, centimeters, square centimeters or cubic centimeters, where it can be shown in two figures. In either case, any final zero appearing to the right of a decimal point need not be shown.

*(Examples:* ''1 lb (453 g)'' not ''1 lb (453.592 g)''; ''Net Wt. 2 oz (56 g)'' or ''Net Wt 2 oz (56.6 g)'' not ''Net Wt. 2 oz (56.69 g)''.)

## § 500.20 Conspicuousness.

The statement of net quantity of contents shall appear in conspicuous and easily legible boldface type or print in distinct contrast (by typography, layout, color, embossing, or molding) to other matter on the package; except that a statement of net quantity blown, embossed, or molded on a glass or plastic surface is permissible when all label information is so formed on the surface.

## § 500.21 Type size in relationship to the area of the principal display panel.

(a) The statement of net quantity of contents shall be in letters and numerals in a type size established in relationship to the area of the principal display panel of the package or commodity and shall be uniform for all packages or commodities of substantially the same size. For this purpose, ''area of the principal display panel'' means the area of the side or surface that bears the principal display panel, exclusive of tops, bottoms, flanges at tops and bottoms of cans, and shoulders and necks of bottles and jars. This area shall be:

(1) In the case of a rectangular package or commodity where one entire side properly can be considered to be a principal display panel side, the product of the height times the width of that side;

(2) In the case of a cylindrical or nearly cylindrical container or commodity, 40 percent of the product of the height of the container or commodity times the circumference; and

(3) In the case of any otherwise shaped container or commodity, 40 percent of the total surface of the container or commodity: *Provided*, however, that where such container or commodity presents an obvious ''principal display panel'' such as the top of a triangular or oval shaped container, the area shall consist of the entire top surface.

(b) With area of principal display panel defined as above, the type size in relationship to area of that panel shall comply with the following specifications:

(1) Not less than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) in height on packages the principal display panel of which has an area of 5 square inches or (32.2 $cm^2$) less.

(2) Not less than 1/8 inch (3.1 mm) in height on packages the principal display panel of which has an area of more than 5 (32.2 $cm^2$) but not more than 25 square inches (161 $cm^2$).

(3) Not less than 3/16 inch (4.7 mm) in height on packages the principal display panel of which has an area of more than 25 (161 $cm^2$) but not more than 100 square inches (6.45 $dm^2$).

(4) Not less than ¼ inch (6.35 mm) in height on packages the principal display panel of which has an area of more than 100 square inches (6.45 $dm^2$), except not less than ½ (12.7 mm) inch in height if the area is more than 400 square inches (25.8 $dm^2$).

(c) Where the statement of net quantity of contents is blown, embossed, or molded on a glass or plastic surface rather than by printing, typing, or coloring, the lettering sizes specified in paragraph (b) of this section shall be increased by 1/16 of an inch (1.5 mm).

(d) Letter heights pertain to upper case or capital letters. When upper and lower case or all lower case letters are used, it is the lower case letter ''o'' or its equivalent that shall meet the minimum standards.

(e) The ratio of height to width of a letter shall not exceed a differential of 3 units to 1 unit (no more than 3 times as high as it is wide).

(f) When fractions are used, each component shall meet one-half the minimum height standards.

(g) The type size requirements specified in this section do not apply to the ''e'' mark. (See § 500.6(b).)

(h) When upper and lower case or all lowercase letters are used in SI metric symbols, it is the uppercase ''L,'' lowercase ''d,'' or their equivalent in the print or type used that shall meet the minimum height requirement. Other letters and exponents must be presented in the same type style and in proportion to the type size used. However, no letter shall be less than 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) in height.

### § 500.22 Abbreviations.

The following abbreviations and none other may be employed in the required net quantity declaration:

Inch—in.
Feet or foot—ft.
Fluid—fl.
Liquid—liq.
Ounce—oz.
Gallon—gal.
Pint—pt.
Pound—lb.
Quart—qt.
Square—sq.
Weight—wt.
Yard—yd.
Avoirdupois—avdp.
Cubic—cu.

NOTE: Periods and plural forms shall be optional.

### § 500.23 Expression of net quantity of contents in SI Metric units.

(a) The selected multiple or submultiple prefixes for SI metric units shall result in numerical values between 1 and 1000, except that centimeters or millimeters may be used where a length declaration is less than 100 centimeters. For example, ''1.96 kg'' instead of ''1960 g'' and ''750 mL'' instead of ''0.75 L''.

(b) The following symbols for SI metric units and none others may be employed in the required net quantity declaration:

centimeter—cm
cubic centimeter—$cm^3$
cubic decimeter—$dm^3$
meter—m
milligram—mg
liter—L or l
milliliter—mL or ml
square decimeter—$dm^2$
cubic meter—$m^3$
kilogram—kg
micrometer—µm
gram—g
millimeter—mm
square meter—$m^2$
square centimeter—$cm^2$

NOTE: Symbols, except for liter, are not capitalized. Periods should not be used after the symbol. Symbols are always written in the singular form.

### § 500.24 Supplemental statements.

Nothing contained in the regulations in this part shall prohibit supplemental statements, at locations other than the principal display panel, describing in non-deceptive terms the net quantity of contents: *Provided* that such supplemental statements of net quantity of contents shall not include any term qualifying a unit of weight or mass, measure, or count that tends to exaggerate the amount of commodity contained in the package. (Examples of prohibited language are: ''Giant Quart,'' ''Jumbo Liter,'' ''Full Gallon,'' ''When Packed,'' ''Minimum,'' or words

of similar import.) Required combination declarations of net quantity of contents (for example, a combination of net weight or mass plus numerical count, numerical count plus dimensions of the commodity, etc.) are not regarded as supplemental net quantity statements and shall be located on the principal display panel. Dilution directions or other similar directions for use are not regarded as supplemental net quantity statements and may be located on the principal display panel. Size characterizations in compliance with standards promulgated under section 5(c)(1) of the Act may appear on the principal display panel.

### § 500.25 Net quantity, average quantity, permitted variations.

(a) The statement of net quantity of contents shall accurately reveal the quantity of the commodity in the container exclusive of wrappers and other material packed therewith: *Provided,* that in the case of a commodity packed in a container designed to deliver the commodity under pressure, the statement shall declare the net quantity of the contents that will be expelled when the instructions for use are followed. The propellant is included in the net quantity statement.

(b) Variations from the stated weight or mass or measure shall be permitted when caused by ordinary and customary exposure, after the commodity is introduced into interstate commerce, to conditions which normally occur in good distribution practice and which unavoidably result in change of weight or mass or measure.

(c) Variations from the stated weight or mass, measure, or numerical count shall be permitted when caused by unavoidable deviations in weighing, measuring, or counting the contents of individual packages which occur in good packaging practice: *Provided,* that such variations shall not be permitted to such extent that the average of the quantities in the packages comprising a shipment or other delivery of the commodity is below the quantity stated, and no unreasonable shortage in any package will be permitted even though overages in other packages in the same shipment or delivery compensate for such shortage. Variations from stated quantity of contents shall not be unreasonably large.

### § 500.26 Representations of servings, uses, applications.

(a) The label of any packaged consumer commodity which bears a representation as to the number of servings, uses, or applications of such commodity contained in such package shall bear in immediate conjunction therewith, and in letters the same size as those used for such representations, a statement of the net quantity (in terms of weight or mass, measure, or numerical count) of each such serving, use, or application: *Provided,* that such statement may be expressed in terms that differ from terms used in the required statement of net contents (e.g., cupsful, tablespoonful, etc.), when such differing terms describe a constant quantity. Such statement may not be misleading in any particular.

(b) Representations as to the total amount of object or objects to which the commodity may be applied or upon which or in which the commodity may be used, will not be considered to be representations as to servings, uses, or applications, if such amount is expressed in terms of standard units of weight or mass, measure, size, or count.

(c) If there exists a voluntary product standard promulgated pursuant to the procedures found in 15 CFR part 10, by the Department of Commerce, quantitatively defining the meaning of the terms *serving, use,* or *application* with respect to a particular consumer commodity, then any label representation as to the number of servings, uses, or applications in such packaged consumer commodity shall correspond with such quantitative definition. (Copies of published standards will be available upon request from the National Institute of Standards and Technology, Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20899.)

### § 500.27 Multiunit packages.

(a) A multiunit package is a package intended for retail sale, containing two or more individual packaged or labeled units of an identical commodity in the same quantity. The declaration of net

quantity of contents of a multiunit package shall be expressed as follows:

(1) The number of individual packaged or labeled units;

(2) The quantity of each individual packaged or labeled unit; and

(3) The total quantity of the multiunit package.

*Examples:* Soap bars: ''6 Bars, Net Wt. 3.4 ozs. (96.3 g) each, Total Net Wt. 1 lb. 4.4 oz. (578 g)'' Facial Tissues: ''10 Packs, each 25 two-ply tissues, 9.7 in. × 8.2 in. (24.6 × 20.8 cm), Total 250 Tissues.''

(b) The individual packages or labeled units of a multiunit package, when intended for individual sale separate from the multiunit package, shall be labeled in compliance with the regulations under this part 500 applicable to that package.

(c) A multiunit package containing unlabeled individual packages which are not intended for retail sale separate from the multiunit package may contain, in lieu of the requirements of Paragraph (a) of this section, a declaration of quantity of contents expressing the total quantity of the multiunit package without regard for inner packaging. For such multiunit packages it shall be optional to include a statement of the number of individual packages when such a statement is not otherwise required by the regulations.

*Examples:* Deodorant Cakes: ''5 Cakes, Net Wt. 4 ozs. (113 g) each, Total Net Wt. 1.25 lb. (566 g)'' or ''5 Cakes, Total Net Wt. 1 lb. 4 ozs. (566 g)'';

Soap Packets: ''10 Packets, Net Wt. 2 ozs. (56.6 g) each, total Net Wt 1.25 lb. (566 g)'' or ''Net Wt 1 lb. 4 ozs. (566 g)'' or ''10 Packets, Total Net Wt. 1 lb. 4 ozs. (566 g).''

### §500.28 Variety packages.

(a) A variety package is a package intended for retail sale, containing two or more individual packages or units of similar but not identical commodities. Commodities which are generically the same but which differ in weight or mass, measure, volume, appearance or quality are considered similar but not identical. The declaration of net quantity for a variety package will be expressed as follows:

(1) The number of units for each identical commodity followed by the weight or mass, volume, or measure of that commodity: and

(2) The total quantity by weight or mass, volume, measure, and count, as appropriate, of the variety package. The statement of total quantity shall appear as the last item in the declaration of net quantity and shall not be of greater prominence than other terms used.

*Examples:*

(i) ''2 sponges 4½ ins. × 4 ins. ×¾ in. (11.4 cm × 10.1 cm × 1.9 cm); 1 sponge 4½ ins. × 8 ins. ×¾ in. (11.4 cm × 20.3 cm × 1.9 cm); 4 sponges 2½ ins. × 4 ins. ×½ in. (6.3 cm × 10.1 cm × 1.2 cm)

Total: 7 sponges''.

(ii) ''2 soap bars Net Wt. 3.2 ozs. (90 g) each; 1 soap bar Net Wt. 5.0 ozs. (141 g).

Total: 3 bars Net Wt. 11.4 ozs. (323 g).''

(iii) Liquid Shoe Polish: ''1 Brown 3 fl. ozs. (88 mL); 1 Black 3 fl. ozs. (88 mL); 1 White 5 fl. ozs. (147 mL).

Total: 11 fl. ozs. (325 mL).''

(iv) Picnic Ware: ''34 spoons; 33 forks; 33 knives.

Total: 100 pieces.''

(b) When the individual units in a variety package are either packaged or labeled and are intended for retail sale as individual units, each unit shall be labeled in compliance with the applicable regulations under this part 500.

### §500.29 Combination packages.

(a) A combination package is a package intended for retail sale, containing two or more individual packages or units of dissimilar commodities. The declaration of net quantity for a combination package will contain an expression of weight or mass, volume, measure or count or a combination, thereof, as appropriate for each individual package or unit: *Provided*, that the quantity statements for identical packages or units shall be combined.

*Examples*

(1) Lighter fluid and flints: ''2 cans—each 8 fl. ozs. (236 mL); 1 package—8 flints.''

(2) Sponges & Cleaner: ''2 sponges each 4 in. × 6 in. × 1 in. (10.1 × 15.2 × 2.5 cm); 1 box cleaner—Net Wt. 6 ozs. (170 g)''

(3) Picnic Pack: ''20 spoons, 10 knives and 10 forks, 10 2-ply napkins 10 ins. ×

10 ins. (25.4 × 25.4 cm) 10 cups—6 fl. ozs. (177 mL)''.

(b) When the individual units in a combination package are either packaged or labeled and are intended for retail sale as individual units, each unit shall be in compliance with the applicable regulations under this part 500.

## PART 501—EXEMPTIONS FROM REQUIREMENTS AND PROHIBITIONS UNDER PART 500

Sec.
501.1 Camera film.
501.2 Christmas tree ornaments.
501.3 Replacement bags for vacuum cleaners.
501.4 Chamois.
501.5 Paper table covers, bedsheets, pillowcases.
501.6 Cellulose sponges, irregular dimensions.
501.7 Candles.
501.8 Solder.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 80 Stat. 1298, 1299, 1300; 15 U.S.C. 1454, 1455.

### § 501.1 Camera film.

Camera film packaged and labeled for retail sale is exempt from the net quantity statement requirements of part 500 of this chapter which specify how measurement of commodities should be expressed, provided:

(a) The net quantity of contents on packages of movie film and bulk still film is expressed in terms of the number of lineal feet of usable film contained therein.

(b) The net quantity of contents on packages of still film is expressed in terms of the number of exposures the contents will provide. The length and width measurements of the individual exposures, expressed in millimeters or inches, are authorized as an optional statement. (Example: ''36 exposures, 36 × 24 mm. or 12 exposures, 2¼ × 2¼ inches''.)

[35 FR 75, Jan. 3, 1970]

### § 501.2 Christmas tree ornaments.

Christmas tree ornaments packaged and labeled for retail sale are exempt from the net quantity statement requirements of part 500 of this chapter which specify how the net quantity statement should be expressed, provided:

(a) The quantity of contents is expressed in terms of numerical count of the ornaments, and

(b) The ornaments are so packaged that the ornaments are clearly visible to the retail purchaser at the time of purchase.

[35 FR 9108, June 12, 1970]

### § 501.3 Replacement bags for vacuum cleaners.

Replacement bags for vacuum cleaners, packaged and labeled for retail sale are exempt from the requirements of § 500.15a of this chapter which specifies how measurement of container type commodities should be expressed, provided:

(a) The quantity of contents is expressed in terms of numerical count of the bags;

(b) A statement appears on the principal display panel of the package accurately identifying the make and model of the vacuum cleaner or cleaners in which the replacement bag is intended to effectively function;

(c) The name and place of business of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor of the replacement bags, in addition to the requirements of § 500.5 of this chapter, appears on the principal display panel of the package.

[35 FR 10510, June 27, 1970]

### § 501.4 Chamois.

Chamois packaged or labeled for retail sale is exempt from the requirements of § 500.13 of this chapter which specifies how measurement of commodities by area measure should be expressed: *Provided:*

(a) The quantity of contents for full skins is expressed in terms of square feet with any remainder in terms of the common or decimal fraction of the square foot.

(b) The quantity of contents for cut skins of any configuration is expressed in terms of square inches and fractions thereof. Where the area of a cut skin is at least one square foot or more, the statement of square inches shall be followed in parentheses by a declaration in square feet with any remainder in

terms of square inches or common or decimal fractions of the square foot.

[35 FR 19572, Dec. 24, 1970]

### §501.5 Paper table covers, bedsheets, pillowcases.

Table covers, bedsheets, and pillowcases, fabricated from paper, are exempt from the requirements of §500.12 of this chapter which specifies the expression of measurement of bidimensional commodities: *Provided*, That such commodities shall clearly present their actual length and width in terms of inches.

[35 FR 19077, Dec. 17, 1970]

### §501.6 Cellulose sponges, irregular dimensions.

Variety packages of cellulose sponges of irregular dimensions, are exempted from the requirements of §500.25 of this chapter, provided:

(a) Such sponges are packaged in transparent packages which afford visual inspection of the varied sizes, shapes, and irregular dimensions; and

(b) The quantity of contents declaration is expressed as a combination of count accompanied by the term *irregular dimensions*. Example: ''10 Assorted Sponges—Irregular dimensions.''

[35 FR 18510, Dec. 5, 1970]

### §501.7 Candles.

Tapered candles and irregularly shaped decorative candles which are either hand dipped or molded are exempt from the requirements of §500.7 of this chapter which specifies that the net quantity of contents shall be expressed in terms of count and measure (e.g., length and diameter), to the extent that diameter of such candles need not be expressed. The requirements of §500.7 of this chapter for these candles will be met by an expression of count and length or height in inches.

[36 FR 5690, Mar. 26, 1971]

### §501.8 Solder.

Solder and brazing alloys containing precious metals when packaged and labeled for retail sale are exempt from the net quantity statement requirements of part 500 of this chapter which specify that all statements of weight shall be in terms of avoirdupois pound and ounce provided the net quantity declaration is stated in terms of the troy pound and ounce and the term *troy* is used in each declaration.

[37 FR 4429, Mar. 3, 1972]

## PART 502—REGULATIONS UNDER SECTION 5(C) OF THE FAIR PACKAGING AND LABELING ACT

SCOPE

Sec.
502.1 Scope of the regulations in this part.

DEFINITIONS

502.2 Terms defined.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

502.3 Prohibited acts.

CHARACTERIZATION OF PACKAGE SIZE

502.4–502.99 [Reserved]

RETAIL SALE PRICE REPRESENTATIONS

502.100 ''Cents-off'' representations.
502.101 Introductory offers.
502.102 ''Economy size''.

COMMON NAME AND INGREDIENT LISTING

502.200–502.299 [Reserved]

NONFUNCTIONAL-SLACK-FILL

502.300–502.399 [Reserved]

AUTHORITY: Secs. 5, 6, 80 Stat. 1299, 1300; 15 U.S.C. 1454, 1455.

SOURCE: 36 FR 12286, June 30, 1971, unless otherwise noted.

SCOPE

### §502.1 Scope of the regulations in this part.

The regulations in this part establish requirements for labeling of consumer commodities with respect to use of package size characterizations, retail sale price representations, and common name and ingredient listing. Additionally, the regulations in this part establish criteria to prevent nonfunctional-slack-fill of packages containing consumer commodities.

DEFINITIONS

### § 502.2 Terms defined.

As used in this part, unless the context otherwise specifically requires:

(a) The terms *Act, regulation* or *regulations, consumer commodity, package, label, person, commerce, principal display panel,* and *random package* have the same meaning as those terms are defined under part 500 of this chapter.

(b) The term *packager* and *labeler* means any person engaged in the packaging or labeling of any consumer commodity for distribution in commerce or any person, other than a common carrier for hire, a contract carrier for hire, or a freight forwarder for hire, engaged in the distribution in commerce of any packaged or labeled consumer commodity; except persons engaged in business as wholesale or retail distributors of consumer commodities are not included unless such persons (1) are engaged in the packaging or labeling of such commodities, or (2) prescribe or specify by any means the manner in which such commodities are packaged or labeled.

(c) The terms *ordinary and customary* and *regular* when used with the term *price* means the price at which a consumer commodity has been openly and actively sold in the most recent and regular course of business in a particular market or trade area for a reasonably substantial period of time, i.e., a 30-day period. For consumer commodities which fluctuate in price, the ordinary and customary price shall be the lowest price at which any substantial sales were made during the aforesaid 30-day period.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

### § 502.3 Prohibited acts.

(a) No person engaged in the packaging or labeling of any consumer commodity for distribution in commerce, and no person (other than a common carrier for hire, a contract carrier for hire, or a freight forwarder for hire) engaged in the distribution in commerce of any packaged or labeled consumer commodity, shall distribute or cause to be distributed in commerce any such commodity if such commodity is contained in a package, or if there is affixed to that commodity a label, which does not conform to the provisions of the Act and of the regulations in this part.

(b) Persons engaged in business as wholesale or retail distributors of consumer commodities shall be subject to the Act and the regulations in this part to the extent that such persons are engaged in the packaging or labeling of consumer commodities, or prescribe or specify by any means the manner in which such consumer commodities are packaged or labeled.

CHARACTERIZATION OF PACKAGE SIZE

### §§ 502.4–502.99 [Reserved]

RETAIL SALE PRICE REPRESENTATIONS

### § 502.100 "Cents-off" representations.

(a) The term *cents-off representation* means any printed matter consisting of the words ''cents-off'' or words of similar import, placed upon any packaging containing a consumer commodity or placed upon any label affixed to such commodity, stating or representing by implication that the commodity is being offered for sale at a price lower than the ordinary and customary retail sale price.

(b) Except as set forth in § 502.101 of this part, the package or label of a consumer commodity shall not have imprinted thereon by a packager or labeler a ''cents-off'' representation unless:

(1) The commodity has been sold by the packager or labeler at an ordinary and customary price in the most recent and regular course of business in the trade area in which the ''cents-off'' promotion is made, either to the trade in the event such commodity is not sold at retail by the packager or labeler, or to the public in the event such commodity is sold at retail by the packager or labeler.

(2) The packager or labeler sells the commodity so labeled (either to the trade in the event such commodity is not sold at retail by the packager or labeler, or to the public in the event such commodity is sold at retail by the packager or labeler) at a reduction from his ordinary and customary price, which reduction is at least equal to the

amount of the ''cents-off'' representation imprinted on the commodity package or label.

(3) Each ''cents-off'' representation imprinted on the package or label is limited to a phrase which reflects that the price marked by the retailer represents the savings in the amount of the ''cents-off'' the retailer's regular price, e.g., ''Price Marked is ____¢ Off the Regular Price''. ''Price Marked is ____ Cents-off the Regular Price of This Package''; provided, the package or label may in addition bear in the usual pricing spot a form reflecting a space for the regular price, the represented ''cents-off'' and a space for the price to be paid by the consumer.

(4) The packager or labeler who sells the commodity at retail displays the regular price, designated as the ''regular price'', clearly and conspicuously on the package or label of the commodity or on a sign, placard, or shelf-marker placed in a position contiguous to the retail display of the ''cents-off'' marked commodity, and the packager or labeler who does not sell at retail provides the retailer with a sign, placard, shelf-marker, or other device for the purpose of clearly and conspicuously displaying the retailers regular price, designated as ''regular price'', in a position contiguous to the ''cents-off'' marked commodity.

(5) The packager or labeler:

(i) Does not initiate more than three ''cents-off'' promotions of any single size commodity in the same trade area within a 12-month period;

(ii) Allows at least 30 days to lapse between ''cents-off'' promotions of any particular size packaged or labeled commodity in a specific trade area; and

(iii) Does not sell any single size commodity so labeled in a trade area for a duration in excess of 6 months within any 12-month period.

(6) Sales by the packager or labeler of any single size commodity so labeled in a trade area do not exceed in volume fifty percent (50%) of the total volume of sales of such size commodity in the same trade area during any 12-month period. The 12-month period used by the packager or labeler may be the calendar, fiscal, or market year provided the identical period is applied in this paragraph (b)(6) and paragraph (b)(5) of this section. Volume limits may be calculated on the basis of projections for the current year but shall not exceed 50 percent of the sales for the preceding year in the event actual sales are less than the projection for the current year.

(c) A packager or labeler will not make a ''cents-off'' promotion available in any circumstances where he knows or should have reason to know that it will be used as an instrumentality for deception or for frustration of value comparison, e.g., where the retailer charges a price which does not fully pass on to the consumers the represented price reduction or where the retailer fails to display the regular price in the display area of the ''cents-off'' marked product. Nothing in this rule, however, should be construed to authorize or condone the illegal setting or policing of retail prices by a packager or labeler in situations where he does not sell to the public.

(d) A packager or labeler who sponsors a ''cents-off'' promotion shall prepare and maintain invoices or other records showing compliance with this section. The invoices or other records required by this section shall be open to inspection by duly authorized representatives of this Commission and shall be retained for a period of 1 year subsequent to the end of the year (calendar, fiscal, or market) in which the ''cents-off'' promotion occurs.

[36 FR 23057, Dec. 3, 1971]

### § 502.101 Introductory offers.

(a) The term *introductory offer* means any printed matter consisting of the words ''introductory offer'' or words of similar import, placed upon a package containing any new commodity or upon any label affixed to such new commodity, stating or representing by implication that such new commodity is offered for retail sale at a price lower than the anticipated ordinary and customary retail sale price.

(b) The package or label of a consumer commodity may not have imprinted thereon by a packager or labeler an introductory offer unless:

(1) The product contained in the package is new, has been changed in a

functionally significant and substantial respect, or is being introduced into a trade area for the first time.

(2) The packager or labeler clearly and conspicuously qualifies each offer on a package or label with the phrase ''Introductory Offer.''

(3) The packager or labeler does not sell any commodity so labeled in a trade area for a duration in excess of 6 months.

(4) At the time of making the introductory offer promotion, the packagers or labeler intends in good faith to offer the commodity, alone, at the anticipated ordinary and customary price for a reasonably substantial period of time following the duration of the introductory offer promotion.

(c) The package or label of a consumer commodity shall not have imprinted thereon by a packager or labeler an introductory offer in the form of a ''cents-off'' representation unless, in addition to the requirements in paragraph (b) of this section:

(1) The packager or labeler clearly and conspicuously and in immediate conjunction with the phrase ''Introductory Offer'' imprints the phrase ''____ cents-off the after introductory offer price''.

(2) The packager or labeler sells the commodity so labeled (either to the trade in the event such commodity is not sold at retail by the packager or labeler, or to the public in the event such commodity is sold at retail by the packager or labeler) at a reduction from his anticipated ordinary customary price, which reduction is at least equal to the amount of the reduction from the after introductory offer price representation on the commodity package or label.

(d) A packager or labeler will not make an introductory offer with a ''cents-off'' representation available in any circumstance where he knows or should have reason to know that it will be used as an instrumentality for deception or for frustration of value comparison, e.g., where the retailer charges a price which does not fully pass on to consumers the represented price reduction. Nothing in this rule, however, should be construed to authorize or condone the illegal setting or policing of retail prices by a packager or labeler.

(e) A packager or labeler who sponsors an introductory offer shall prepare and maintain invoices or other records showing compliance with this section. The invoices or other records required by this section shall be open to inspection by duly authorized representatives of this Commission and shall be retained for a period of 1 year subsequent to the period of the introductory offer.

### § 502.102 "Economy size."

(a) The term *economy size* means any printed matter consisting of the words ''economy size,'' ''economy pack,'' ''budget pack,'' ''bargain size,'' ''value size,'' or words of similar import placed upon any package containing any consumer commodity or placed upon any label affixed to such commodity, stating or representing directly or by implication that a retail sale price advantage is accorded the purchaser thereof by reason of the size of that package or the quantity of its contents.

(b) The package or label of a consumer commodity may not have imprinted thereon an ''economy size'' representation unless:

(1) The packager or labeler at the same time offers the same brand of that commodity in at least one other packaged size or labeled form.

(2) The packager or labeler offers only one packaged or labeled form of that brand of commodity labeled with an ''economy size'' representation.

(3) The packager or labeler sells the commodity labeled with an ''economy size'' representation (either to the trade in the event such commodity is not sold at retail by the packager or labeler, or to the public in the event such commodity is sold at retail by the packager or labeler), at a price per unit of weight, volume, measure, or count which is substantially reduced (i.e., at least 5 percent) from the actual price of all other packaged or labeled units of the same brand of that commodity offered simultaneously.

(c) A packager or labeler will not make an ''economy size'' package available in any circumstances where he knows that it will be used as an instrumentality for deception, e.g., where the retailer charges a price

which does not pass on to the consumer the substantial reduction in cost per unit initially granted by the packager or labeler. Nothing in this rule, however, should be construed to authorize or condone the illegal setting or policing of retail prices by a packager or labeler.

(d) A packager or labeler who sponsors an ''economy size'' package shall prepare and maintain invoices or other records showing compliance with paragraph (b) of this section. The invoices or other records required by this section shall be open to inspection by duly authorized representatives of this Commission and shall be retained for one year.

COMMON NAME AND INGREDIENT LISTING

**§§ 502.200–502.299 [Reserved]**

NONFUNCTIONAL-SLACK-FILL

**§§ 502.300–502.399 [Reserved]**

## PART 503—STATEMENTS OF GENERAL POLICY OR INTERPRETATION

Sec.

503.1 Interpretations.
503.2 Status of specific items under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.
503.3 Name and place of business of manufacturer, packer, or distributor.
503.4 Net quantity of contents, numerical count.
503.5 Interpretation of the definition of ''consumer commodity'' as contained in section 10(a) of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.
503.6 Packagers' duty to withhold availability of packages imprinted with retail sale price representations.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 4, 6, 10, 80 Stat. 1297, 1999, 1300, 1301; 15 U.S.C. 1453, 1455, 1456.

### §503.1 Interpretations.

The regulations in parts 500, 501, and 502 of this chapter are necessarily general in application and requests for formal rulings, statements of policy or interpretations shall be addressed to the Secretary of the Commission for consideration. Statements of policy or interpretations binding on the Commission will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. However, technical questions not involving policy consideration may be answered by the staff.

[36 FR 23058, Dec. 3, 1971]

### §503.2 Status of specific items under the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.

Recent questions submitted to the Commission concerning whether certain articles, products or commodities are included under the definition of the term *consumer commodity*, as contained in section 10(a) of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act, have been considered in the light of the Commission's interpretation of that term as set forth in §503.5 of this part as follows:

(a) The Commission is of the opinion that the following commodities or classes of commodities are not ''consumer commodities'' within the meaning of the Act.

Antifreeze.
Artificial flowers and parts.
Automotive accessories.
Automotive chemical products.
Automotive replacement parts.
Bicycle tires and tubes.
Books.
Brushes (bristle, nylon, etc.).
Brooms and mops.
Cameras.
Chinaware.
Christmas light sets.
Cigarette lighters.
Clothespins (wooden, plastic).
Compacts and mirrors.
Diaries and calendars.
Flower seeds.
Footwear.
Garden tools.
Gift ties and tapes.
Glasses and glassware.
Gloves (work type).
Greeting cards.
Hand tools.
Handicraft and sewing thread.
Hardware.
Household cooking utensils.
Inks.
Jewelry.
Luggage.
Magnetic recording tape.
Metal pails.
Motor oil (automobile).
Mouse and rat traps.
Musical instruments.
Paintings and wall plaques.
Photo albums.
Pictures.
Plastic table cloths, plastic placement and plastic shelf paper.
Rubber gloves (household).

Safety flares.
Safety pins.
School supplies.
Sewing accessories.
Silverware, stainless steelware and pewterware.
Small arms ammunition.
Smoking pipes.
Souvenirs.
Sporting goods.
Toys.
Typewriter ribbons.
Woodenware.

(b) The Commission is of the opinion that the following commodities or classes of commodities are ''consumer commodities'' within the meaning of the Act:

Adhesives and sealants.
Aluminum foil cooking utensils.
Aluminum wrap.
Camera supplies.
Candles.
Christmas decorations.
Cordage.
Disposable diapers.
Dry cell batteries.
Light bulbs.
Liquified petroleum gas for other than heating and cooking.
Lubricants for home use.
Photographic chemicals.
Pressure sensitive tapes, excluding gift tapes.
Solder.
Solvents and cleaning fluids for home use.
Sponges and chamois.
Waxes for home use.

[35 FR 6185, Apr. 16, 1970]

### § 503.3 Name and place of business of manufacturer, packer, or distributor.

To clarify the identity of a manufacturer, packer, or distributor for the purpose of § 500.5 of this chapter, the following represents the opinions of the Commission.

(a) A manufacturer of a bulk product who supplies the product to a contract packager and permits his bulk product to be packaged by the contract packager remains the manufacturer of the commodity, if the contract packager does not perform any act other than package filling and labeling.

(b)(1) A manufacturer of a bulk product who supplies the bulk to a contract packager but permits the packager to modify the bulk commodity by the addition of any substance which changes the identity of the bulk, ceases to be the manufacturer of the consumer commodity. At that point, if the manufacturer of the bulk elects to use his name on the label of the consumer commodity, his name should be qualified to show ''Distributed by _____'', or ''Manufactured for _____''.

(2) The identity of a bulk substance received by a contract packager is changed if the packager, for example, adds a propellant as in the case of an aerosol, or adds a solvent as in the case of a paint, or blends two or more components, or changes the physical state as in the case of a liquid being changed to a gel or a semisolid being changed to a solid.

(c) A person or firm who supplies a formula and/or specifications to a contract packager but who takes no part in the actual production of the consumer commodity is not the manufacturer of the consumer commodity for the purpose of § 500.5(a) of this chapter. This is true whether the person or firm who supplies the formula or specifications, or both, also supplies the raw materials which are to be reacted, mixed, or otherwise modified to produce the consumer commodity.

(d) A corporation which wholly owns a manufacturing subsidiary which retains its separate corporate identity, is not the manufacturer of the consumer commodities manufactured by the wholly owned subsidiary, but must qualify its name if it elects to use its name on the label. Such qualification may be ''Manufactured for _____'', ''Distributed by _____'', or ''Manufactured by _____ (XYZ, Inc., City, State, Zip Code, a subsidiary of ABC, Inc.)''.

[34 FR 4956, Mar. 7, 1969, as amended at 34 FR 11199, July 3, 1969]

### § 503.4 Net quantity of contents, numerical count.

To clarify the requirement for declaration of net quantity in terms of count for the purpose of §§ 500.6 and 500.7 of this chapter, the following interpretation is rendered.

(a) When a consumer commodity is properly measured in terms of count only, or in terms of count and weight, volume, area, or dimension, the regulations are interpreted not to require the

declaration of the net content as ''one'', provided the statement of identity clearly expresses the fact that only one unit is contained in the package. Thus the unit synthetic sponge, the unit light bulb, and the unit dry cell battery do not require a net quantity statement of ''one sponge,'' ''one light bulb,'' or ''one dry cell battery.'' However, there still exists the necessity to provide a net quantity statement to specify weight, volume, area, or dimensions when such are required. For example, the synthetic sponge which is packaged, requires dimensions such as ''5 in. × 3 in. × 1 in.'' A multicomponent package or a package containing two or more units of the same commodity shall bear the net quantity statement in terms of count, and weight, volume, area, or dimensions as required. This interpretation does not preclude the option to enumerate a unit count on a single packaged commodity if so desired.

(b) [Reserved]

[34 FR 18087, Nov. 8, 1969]

### §503.5 Interpretation of the definition of "consumer commodity" as contained in section 10(a) of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act.

(a) Section 10(a) of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act defines the term *consumer commodity* in four classifications. These are:

(1) Any food, drug, device, or cosmetic;

(2) And any other article, product, or commodity of any kind or class which is customarily produced or distributed for sale through retail sales agencies or instrumentalities.

(i) For consumption by individuals and which usually is consumed or expended in the course of such consumption.

(ii) For use by individuals for purposes of personal care and which usually is consumed or expended in the course of such use.

(iii) For use by individuals in the performance of services ordinarily rendered within the household and which usually is consumed or expended in the course of such use.

(b) Section 10(a) then expressly excludes (1) meats, poultry, and tobacco, (2) economic poisons and biologics for animals, (3) prescription drugs, (4) alcoholic beverages, and (5) agricultural and vegetable seeds.

(c) Pursuant to sections 5 and 7 of the Fair Packaging and Labeling Act, the authority to promulgate regulations and to enforce the Act as to any food, drug, device, or cosmetic has been delegated to the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare and as to any other ''consumer commodity'' to the Federal Trade Commission.

(d) As to these articles, products, or commodities subject to regulation by the Federal Trade Commission, the legislative history of the Act demonstrates the intent of Congress, for the reasons stated therein, to place the following categories outside the scope of the definition of ''consumer commodity'':

(1) Durable articles or commodities;

(2) Textiles or items of apparel;

(3) Any household appliance, equipment, or furnishing, including feather and down-filled products, synthetic-filled bed pillows, mattress pads and patchwork quilts, comforters and decorative curtains;

(4) Bottled gas for heating or cooking purposes;

(5) Paints and kindred products;

(6) Flowers, fertilizer, and fertilizer materials, plants or shrubs, garden and lawn supplies;

(7) Pet care supplies;

(8) Stationery and writing supplies, gift wraps, fountain pens, mechanical pencils, and kindred products.

(e) The articles, products, or commodities that are within the terms of section 10(a) of the Act and subject to regulation by the Federal Trade Commission are either expendable commodities for consumption by individuals, expendable commodities used for personal care, or expendable commodities used for household services. The primary terms in section 10(a) for defining these categories are:

(1) Consumption by individuals;

(2) Use by individuals;

(3) Personal care by individuals;

(4) Performances of services ordinarily rendered within the household by individuals;

(5) Consumed or expended.

(f) These terms are defined as follows:

(1) *Consumption by individuals.* This term as it is used in section 10(a) means the using up of an article, product, or commodity by an individual.

(2) *Use by individuals.* This term as it is used in section 10(a) means the employment or application of an article, product, or commodity by an individual.

(3) *Personal care by individuals.* This term as it is used in section 10(a) means that activity of an individual which is concerned with protecting, enhancing, and providing for the general cleanliness, health, or appearance of the individual.

(4) *Performance of services ordinarily rendered within the household by individuals.* These terms as they are used in section 10(a) mean: The term *household* refers to the interior and exterior of dwellings or residences occupied by individuals, including the surrounding premises. The term *performance of services ordinarily rendered within the household* means the doing of any activity by an individual within the above-described area which is normally done in connection with the maintenance and occupation of the above-described area as a habitation for individuals.

(5) *Consumed or expended.* These terms as they are used in section 10(a) mean (i) the immediate destruction or extinction of an article, product, or commodity, or of the part used; or (ii) the substantial diminution in the quantity, quality or utility of an article, product, or commodity which results from usage upon one or several occasions over a comparatively short period of time.

(g) The foregoing definition serves to amplify the definition of ''consumer commodity'' supplied by Congress in section 10(a) of the Act. As questions arise as to whether specific articles, products, or commodities are included in the above definition, the Commission will consider, among other things, the Congressional policy declared in section 2 of the Act, namely, that packages and labels should enable consumers to obtain accurate information as to the quantity of contents and should facilitate value comparisons. That is, in making its determinations of inclusions and exclusions under this definition, the Commission will consider the requirements of both the Act and the pertinent regulations and in that connection will regard as one criterion the extent to which the disclosures required on ''consumer commodities'' are material to a consumer's selection of a particular article, product, or commodity. Interpretative rulings in such instances will be made public, and can be expected to further contribute to the development of clearer delineation of the scope of the term ''consumer commodity''.

(h) With respect to articles, products, or commodities included within the definition of ''consumer commodities'', the Commission will consider requests for exemptions in accordance with section 5(b) of the Act and § 500.3(e) of this chapter, and will make public its rulings on all such requests.

[34 FR 12945, Aug. 9, 1969]

### § 503.6 Packagers' duty to withhold availability of packages imprinted with retail sale price representations.

To clarify the requirements, under part 502 of this chapter, that a packager or labeler will not make packages marked with retail sale price representations available in any circumstance where he knows or should have reason to know that it will be used as an instrumentality for deception or for frustration of value comparison, the following represents the opinions of the Commission:

(a) Details of a plan to provide special packaging or special package sizes bearing retail sale price representations should contain the condition that customers will not be provided with such packages unless they resell the package at a price which fully passes on to the purchasers the represented savings or sale price advantage.

(b) A packager or labeler who, in good faith, takes reasonable and prudent measures to verify the performance of his customers will be deemed to have satisfied his obligation under the regulations. If the packager has taken such steps, the fact that a particular customer has failed to resell the packages at a price which fully passes on to the purchaser the represented savings or sale price advantage shall not alone

place a seller in violation of the regulations.

(c) Any packager or labeler who determines that a customer does not intend to fulfill or has not fulfilled the conditions of an offer should immediately refrain from further sale under that offer to the customer. In situations where proper fulfillment of the conditions of an offer are in question, the Commission will resolve the issue after appropriate investigation of the facts submitted.

[36 FR 23058, Dec. 3, 1971]

# SUBCHAPTER F—STATEMENTS OF GENERAL POLICY OR INTERPRETATIONS UNDER THE FAIR CREDIT REPORTING ACT

## PART 600—STATEMENTS OF GENERAL POLICY OR INTERPRETATIONS

Sec.
600.1 Authority and purpose.
600.2 Legal effect.

APPENDIX—COMMENTARY ON THE FAIR CREDIT REPORTING ACT

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 1681s and 16 CFR 1.73.

SOURCE: 55 FR 18808, May 4, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

### § 600.1 Authority and purpose.

(a) *Authority:* This part is issued by the Commission pursuant to the provisions of the Fair Credit Reporting Act. Pub. L. 91–508, approved October 26, 1970. 84 Stat. 1127–36 (15 U.S.C. 1681 *et seq*).

(b) *Purpose.* The purpose of this part is to clarify and consolidate statements of general policy or interpretations in a commentary in the appendix to this part. The Commentary will serve as guidance to consumer reporting agencies, their customers, and consumer representatives. The Fair Credit Reporting Act requires that the manner in which consumer reporting agencies provide information be fair and equitable to the consumer with regard to the confidentiality, accuracy, and proper use of such information. The Commentary will enable interested parties to resolve their questions more easily, present a more comprehensive treatment of interpretations and facilitate compliance with the Fair Credit Reporting Act in accordance with Congressional intent.

### § 600.2 Legal effect.

(a) The interpretations in the Commentary are not trade regulation rules or regulations, and, as provided in § 1.73 of the Commission's rules, they do not have the force or effect of statutory provisions.

(b) The regulations of the Commission relating to the administration of the Fair Credit Reporting Act are found in subpart H of 16 CFR part 1 (§§ 1.71–1.73).

## APPENDIX—COMMENTARY ON THE FAIR CREDIT REPORTING ACT

### INTRODUCTION

1. *Official status.* This Commentary contains interpretations of the Federal Trade Commission (Commission) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act (FCRA). It is a guideline intended to clarify how the Commission will construe the FCRA in light of Congressional intent as reflected in the statute and its legislative history. The Commentary does not have the force or effect of regulations or statutory provisions, and its contents may be revised and updated as the Commission considers necessary or appropriate.

2. *Status of previous interpretations.* The Commentary primarily addresses issues discussed in the Commission's earlier formal interpretations of the FCRA (16 CFR 600.1–600.8), which are hereby superseded, in the staff's manual entitled ''Compliance With the Fair Credit Reporting Act'' (the current edition of which was published in May 1973, and revised in January 1977 and March 1979), and in informal staff opinion letters responding to public requests for interpretations, and it also reflects the results of the Commission's FCRA enforcement program. It is intended to synthesize the Commission's views and give clear advice on important issues. The Commentary sets forth some interpretations that differ from those previously expressed by the Commission or its staff, and is intended to supersede all prior formal Commission interpretations, informal staff opinion letters, and the staff manual cited above.

3. *Statutory references.* Reference to several different provisions of the FCRA is frequently required in order to make a complete analysis of an issue. For various sections and subsections of the FCRA, the Commentary discusses the most important and common overlapping references under the heading ''Relation to other (sub)sections.''

4. *Issuance of staff interpretations.* The Commission will revise and update the Commentary as it deems necessary, based on the staff's experience in responding to public inquiries about, and enforcing, the FCRA. The Commission welcomes input from interested industry and consumer groups and other public parties on the Commentary and on issues discussed in it. Staff will continue to respond

to requests for informal staff interpretations. In proposing revisions of the Commentary, staff will consider and, where appropriate, recommend that the Commentary incorporate issues raised in correspondence and other public contacts, as well as in connection with the Commission's enforcement efforts. Therefore, a party may raise an issue for inclusion in future editions of the Commentary without making any formal submission or request to that effect. However, requests for formal Commission interpretations of the FCRA may also still be made pursuant to the procedures set forth in the Commission's Rules (16 CFR 1.73).

5. *Commentary citations to FCRA.* The Commentary should be used in conjunction with the text of the statute. In some cases, the Commentary includes an abbreviated description of the statute, rather than the full text, as a preamble to discussion of issues pertaining to various sections and subsections. These summary statements of the law should not be used as a substitute for the statutory text.

*Section 601—Short Title*

''This title may be cited as the Fair Credit Reporting Act.''

The Fair Credit Reporting Act (FCRA) is title VI of the Consumer Credit Protection Act, which also includes other Federal statutes relating to consumer credit, such as the Truth in Lending Act (title I), the Equal Credit Opportunity Act (Title VII), and the Fair Debt Collection Practices Act (title VIII).

*Section 602—Findings and Purpose*

Section 602 recites the Congressional findings regarding the significant role of consumer reporting agencies in the nation's financial system, and states that the basic purpose of the FCRA is to require consumer reporting agencies to adopt reasonable procedures for providing information to credit grantors, insurers, employers and others in a manner that is fair and equitable to the consumer with regard to confidentiality, accuracy, and the proper use of such information.

*Section 603—Definitions and Rules of Construction*

Section 603(a) states that ''definitions and rules of construction set forth in this section are applicable for the purposes of this title.''

Section 603(b) defines *person* to mean ''any individual, partnership, corporation, trust, estate, cooperative, association, government or governmental subdivision or agency or other entity.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

Certain ''persons'' must comply with the Act. The term *consumer reporting agency* is defined in section 603(f) to include certain ''persons.'' Section 619 subjects any ''person'' who knowingly and willfully obtains information from a consumer reporting agency on a consumer under false pretenses to criminal sanctions. Requirements relating to report users apply to ''persons.'' Section 606 imposes disclosure obligations on ''persons'' who obtain investigative reports or cause them to be prepared. Section 615(c) uses the term *person* to denote those subject to disclosure obligations under sections 615(a) and 615(b).

2. Examples

The term ''person'' includes universities, creditors, collection agencies, insurance companies, private investigators, and employers.

Section 603(c) defines the term *consumer* to mean ''an individual.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

The term ''consumer'' denotes an individual entitled to the Act's protections. Consumer reports, as defined in section 603(d), are reports about consumers. A ''consumer'' is entitled to obtain disclosures under section 609 from consumer reporting agencies and to take certain steps that require such agencies to follow procedures in section 611, concerning disputes about the completeness or accuracy of items of information in the consumer's file. Disclosures required under section 606 by one procuring an investigative report must be made to the ''consumer'' on whom the report is sought. Notifications required by section 615 must be provided to ''consumers.'' A ''consumer'' is the party entitled to sue for willful noncompliance (section 616) or negligent noncompliance (section 617) with the Act's requirements.

2. General

The definition includes only a natural person. It does not include artificial entities (e.g., partnerships, corporations, trusts, estates, cooperatives, associations) or entities created by statute (e.g., governments, governmental subdivisions or agencies).

Section 603(d) defines *consumer report* to mean ''any written, oral, or other communication of any information by a consumer reporting agency bearing on a consumer's credit worthiness, credit standing, credit capacity, character, general reputation, personal characteristics, or mode of living which is used or expected to be used or collected in whole or in part for the purpose of serving as a factor in establishing the consumer's eligibility for (1) credit or insurance to be used primarily for personal, family, or household purposes, or (2) employment purposes, or (3) other purposes authorized under Section 604'' (with three specific exclusions).

1. Relation to ''Consumer Reporting Agency''

To be a ''consumer report,'' the information must be furnished by a ''consumer reporting agency'' as that term is defined in section 603(f). Conversely, the term ''consumer reporting agency'' is restricted to persons that regularly engage in assembling or evaluating consumer credit information or other information on consumers for the purpose of furnishing ''consumer reports'' to third parties. In other words, the terms ''consumer reporting agency'' in section 603(f) and ''consumer report'' in section 603 (d)) are mutually dependent and must therefore be construed together. For example, information is not a ''consumer report'' if the person furnishing the information is clearly not a ''consumer reporting agency'' (e.g., if the person furnishing the information does not regularly furnish such information for monetary fees or on a cooperative nonprofit basis).

2. Relation to the Applicability of the Act

If a report is not a ''consumer report,'' then the Act does not usually apply to it.[1] For example, because a commercial credit report is not a report on a consumer, it is not a ''consumer report''. Therefore, the user need not notify the subject of the name and address of the credit bureau when taking adverse action, and the provider need not omit ''obsolete'' information, as would be required if the FCRA applied.

3. Report Concerning a ''Consumer's'' Attributes and History

A. *General.* A ''consumer report'' is a report on a ''consumer'' to be used for certain purposes involving that ''consumer.''

B. *Artificial entities.* Reports about corporations, associations, and other collective entities are not consumer reports, and the Act does not apply to them.

C. *Reports on businesses for business purposes.* Reports used to determine the eligibility of a business, rather than a consumer, for certain purposes, are not consumer reports and the FCRA does not apply to them, even if they contain information on individuals, because Congress did not intend for the FCRA to apply to reports used for commercial purposes (see 116 Cong. Rec. 36572 (1970) (Conf. Report on H.R. 15073)).

[1] However, a creditor denying a consumer's application based on a report from a ''third party'' must give the disclosure required by section 615(b).

4. ''(C)redit Worthiness, Credit Standing, Credit Capacity, Character, General Reputation, Personal Characteristics, or Mode of Living * * *''

A. *General.* To be a ''consumer report,'' the information must bear on at least one of the seven characteristics listed in this definition.

B. *Credit guides.* Credit guides are listings, furnished by credit bureaus to credit grantors, that rate how well consumers pay their bills. Such guides are a series of ''consumer reports,'' because they contain information which is used for the purpose of serving as a factor in establishing the consumers' eligibility for credit. However, if they are coded (by identification such as social security number, driver's license number, or bank account number) so that the consumer's identity is not disclosed, they are not ''consumer reports'' until decoded. (See discussion of uncoded credit guides under section 604(3)(A), item 8 *infra*.)

C. *Motor vehicle reports.* Motor vehicle reports are distributed by state motor vehicle departments, generally to insurance companies upon request, and usually reveal a consumer's entire driving record, including arrests for driving offenses. Such reports are consumer reports when they are sold by a Department of Motor Vehicles for insurance underwriting purposes and contain information bearing on the consumer's ''personal characteristics,'' such as arrest information. The Act's legislative history indicates Congress intended the Act to cover mutually beneficial exchanges of information between commercial enterprises rather than between governmental entities. Accordingly, these reports are not consumer reports when provided to other governmental authorities involved in licensing or law enforcement activities. (See discussion titled ''State Departments of Motor Vehicles,'' under section 603(f), item 10 *infra*.)

D. *Consumer lists.* A list of the names of creditworthy individuals, or of individuals on whom credit bureaus have derogatory information, is a series of ''consumer reports'' because the information bears on credit worthiness.

E. *Public record information.* A report solely of public record information is not a ''consumer report'' unless that information is provided by a consumer reporting agency, is collected or used for the purposes identified in section 603(d), and bears on at least one of the seven characteristics listed in the definition. Public record information relating to records of arrest, or the institution or disposition of civil or criminal proceedings, bears on one or more of these characteristics.

F. *Name and address.* A report limited solely to the consumer's name and address alone, with no connotations as to credit worthiness or other characteristics, does not constitute a ''consumer report,'' if it does not bear on any of the seven factors.

G. *Rental characteristics.* Reports about rental characteristics (e.g., consumers' evictions, rental payment histories, treatment of premises) are consumer reports, because they relate to character, general reputation, personal characteristics, or mode of living.

5. ''(U)sed or Expected to Be Used or Collected in Whole or in Part for the Purpose of Serving as a Factor in Establishing the Consumer's Eligibility * * *''

A. *Law enforcement bulletins.* Bulletins that are limited to a series of descriptions, sometimes accompanied by photographs, of individuals who are being sought by law enforcement authorities for alleged crimes are not a series of ''consumer reports'' because they have not been collected for use in evaluating consumers for credit, insurance, employment or other consumer purposes, and it cannot reasonably be anticipated they will be used for such purposes.

B. *Directories.* Telephone directories and city directories, to the extent they only provide information regarding name, address and phone number, marital status, home ownership, and number of children, are not ''consumer reports,'' because the information is not used or expected to be used in evaluating consumers for credit, insurance, employment or other purposes and does not reflect on credit standing, credit worthiness, or any of the other factors. A list of names of individuals with checking accounts is not a series of consumer reports because the information does not bear on credit worthiness or any of the other factors. A trade directory, such as a list of all insurance agents licensed to do business in a state, is not a series of consumer reports because it is commercial information that would be used for commercial purposes.

C. *Use of prior consumer report in preparation.* A report that would not otherwise be a consumer report may be a consumer report, notwithstanding the purpose for which it is furnished, if it includes a prior consumer report or information from consumer report files, because it would contain some information ''collected in whole or in part'' for consumer reporting purposes. For example, an insurance claims report would be a consumer report if a consumer report (or information from a consumer report) were used to prepare it. (See discussion, *infra,* in item 6–C under this subsection.)

D. *Use of reports for purposes not anticipated by the reporting party.* The question arises whether a report that is not otherwise a consumer report is subject to the FCRA because the recipient subsequently uses the report for a permissible purpose. If the reporting party's procedures are such that it neither knows of nor should reasonably anticipate such use, the report is not a consumer report. If a reporting party has taken reasonable steps to insure that the report is not used for such a purpose, and if it neither knows of, nor can reasonably anticipate such use, the report should not be deemed a consumer report by virtue of uses beyond the reporting party's control. A reporting party might establish that it does not reasonably anticipate such use of the report by requiring the recipient to certify that the report will not be used for one of the purposes listed in section 604. (Such procedure may be compared to the requirement in section 607(a), discussed *infra,* that consumer reporting agencies furnishing consumer reports require that prospective users certify the purposes for which the information is sought and certify that the information will be used for no other purpose.) For example, a claims reporting service could use such a certification to avoid having its insurance claims reports deemed ''consumer reports'' if the report recipient/insurer were to use the report later for ''underwriting purposes'' under section 604(3)(C), such as terminating insurance coverage or raising the premium.

6. ''(E)stablishing the Consumer's Eligibility for (1) Credit or Insurance to Be Used Primarily for Personal, Family or Household Purposes, or (2) Employment Purposes, or (3) Other Purposes Authorized Under Section 604''

A. *Relation to section 604.* Because section 603(d)(3) refers to ''purposes authorized under section 604'' (often described as ''permissible purposes'' of consumer reports), some of which overlap purposes enumerated in section 603 (e.g., 603(d)(1) and 603(d)(2)), sections 603 and 604 must be construed together, to determine what are ''consumer reports'' and ''permissible purposes'' under the two sections. See discussion *infra,* under section 604.

B. *Commercial credit or insurance.* A report on a consumer for credit or insurance in connection with a business operated by the consumer is not a ''consumer report,'' and the Act does not apply to it.

C. *Insurance claims reports.* (It is assumed that information in prior consumer reports is not used in claims reports. See discussion, *supra,* in item 5–C under this subsection.) Reports provided to insurers by claims investigation services solely to determine the validity of insurance claims are not consumer reports, because section 604(3)(C) specifically sets forth only underwriting (not claims) as an insurance-related purpose, and section 603(d)(1) deals specifically with eligibility for insurance and no other insurance-related purposes. To construe section 604(3)(E) as including reports furnished in connection with

insurance claims would be to disregard the specific language of sections 604(3)(C) and 603(d)(1).

D. *Scope of employment purpose.* A report that is used or is expected to be used or collected in whole or in part in connection with establishing an employee's eligibility for ''promotion, reassignment or retention,'' as well as to evaluate a job applicant, is a consumer report because sections 603(d)(2) and 604(3)(B) use the term ''employment purposes,'' which section 603(h) defines to include these situations.

E. *Bad check lists.* A report indicating that an individual has issued bad checks, provided by printed list or otherwise, to a business for use in determining whether to accept consumers' checks tendered in transactions primarily for personal, family or household purposes, is a consumer report. The information furnished bears on consumers' character, general reputation and personal characteristics, and it is used or expected to be used in connection with business transactions involving consumers.

F. *Tenant screening reports.* A report used to determine whether to rent a residence to a consumer is a consumer report, because it is used for a business transaction that the consumer wishes to enter into for personal, family or household purposes.

7. Exclusions From the Definition of ''Consumer Report''

A. *''(Any) reports containing information solely as to transactions or experiences between the consumer and the person making the report;''*—(1) *Examples of Sources.* The exemption applies to reports limited to transactions or experiences between the consumer and the entity making the report (e.g., retail stores, hospitals, present or former employers, banks, mortgage servicing companies, credit unions, or universities).

(2) *Information beyond the reporting entity's own transactions or experiences with the consumer.*

The exemption does not apply to reports by these entities of information beyond their own transactions or experiences with the consumer. An example is a creditor's or an insurance company's report of the reasons it cancelled credit or insurance, based on information from an outside source.

(3) Opinions Concerning Transactions or Experiences

The exemption applies to reports that are not limited to the facts, but also include opinions (e.g., use of the term ''slow pay'' to describe a consumer's transactions with a creditor), as long as the facts underlying the opinions involve only transactions or experiences between the consumer and the reporting entity.

B. *''(A)ny authorization or approval of a specific extension of credit directly or indirectly by the issuer of a credit card or similar device;''*—(1) *General.* The exemption applies to a credit or debit card issuer's written, oral, or electronic communication of its decision whether or not to authorize a charge, in response to a request from a merchant or other party that the consumer has asked to honor the card.

C. *''(A)ny report in which a person who has been requested by a third party to make a specific extension of credit directly or indirectly to the consumer conveys his decision with respect to such request, if the third party advises the consumer of the name and address of the person to whom the request was made and such person makes the disclosures to the consumer required under section 615.''*—(1) *General.* The exemption covers retailers' attempts to obtain credit for their individual customers from an outside source (such as a bank or a finance company). The communication by the financial institution of its decision whether to extend credit is not a ''consumer report'' *if* the retailer informs the customer of the name and address of the financial institution to which the application or contract is offered *and* the financial institution makes the disclosures required by section 615 of the Act. Such disclosures must be made only when there is a denial of, or increase in the charge for, credit or insurance. (See discussion of section 615, item 10, *infra*.)

(2) *Information included in the exemption.*

The exemption is not limited to a simple ''yes'' or ''no'' response, but includes the information constituting the basis for the credit denial, because it applies to ''any report.''

(3) *How third party creditors can insure that the exemption applies.*

Creditors, who are requested by dealers or merchants to make such specific extensions of credit, can assure that communication of their decision to the dealer or merchant will be exempt under this section from the term ''consumer report,'' by having written agreements that require such parties to inform the consumer of the creditor's name and address and by complying with any applicable provisions of section 615.

Section 603(e) defines ''investigative consumer report'' as ''a consumer report or portion thereof in which information on a consumer's character, general reputation, personal characteristics, or mode of living is obtained through personal interviews with neighbors, friends, or associates of the consumer reported on or with others with whom he is acquainted or who may have knowledge concerning any such items of information. However, such information shall not include specific factual information on a consumer's credit record obtained directly from a creditor of the consumer or from a consumer reporting agency when such information was

obtained directly from a creditor of the consumer or from the consumer.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

The term *investigative consumer report* denotes a subset of ''consumer report'' for which the Act imposes additional requirements on recipients and consumer reporting agencies. Persons procuring ''investigative consumer reports'' must make certain disclosures to the consumers who are the subjects of the reports, as required by section 606. Consumer reporting agencies must comply with section 614, when furnishing ''investigative consumer reports'' containing adverse information that is not a matter of public record. Consumer reporting agencies making disclosure to consumers pursuant to section 609 are not required to disclose ''sources of information acquired solely for use in preparing an investigative consumer report and actually used for no other purpose.''

2. General

An ''investigative consumer report'' is a type of ''consumer report'' that contains information that is both related to a consumer's character, general reputation, personal characteristics or mode of living and obtained by personal interviews with the consumer's neighbors, friends, associates or others.

3. Types of Sources Interviewed

A report consisting of information from any third party concerning the subject's character (reputation, etc.) may be an investigative consumer report because the phrase ''obtained through personal interviews * * * with others'' includes any source that is a third party interviewee. A report containing interview information obtained solely from the subject is not an ''investigative consumer report.''

4. Telephone Interviews

A consumer report that contains information on a consumer's ''character, general reputation, personal characteristics or mode of living'' obtained through telephone interviews with third parties is an ''investigative consumer report,'' because ''personal interviews'' includes interviews conducted by telephone as well as in person.

5. Identity of Interviewer

A consumer report is an ''investigative consumer report'' if personal interviews are used to obtain information reported on a consumer's ''character, general reputation, personal characteristics or mode of living,'' regardless of who conducted the interview.

6. Noninvestigative Information in ''Investigative Consumer Reports''

An ''investigative consumer report'' may also contain noninvestigative information, because the definition includes reports, a ''portion'' of which are investigative reports.

7. Exclusions From ''Investigative Consumer Reports''

A report that consists solely of information gathered from observation by one who drives by the consumer's residence is not an ''investigative consumer report,'' because it contains no information from ''personal interviews.''

Section 603(f) defines ''consumer reporting agency'' as ''any person which, for monetary fees, dues, or on a cooperative nonprofit basis, regularly engages in whole or in part in the practice of assembling or evaluating consumer credit information or other information on consumers for the purpose of furnishing consumer reports to third parties, and which uses any means or facility of interstate commerce for the purpose of preparing or furnishing consumer reports.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

A. *Duties imposed on ''consumer reporting agencies.''* The Act imposes a number of duties on ''consumer reporting agencies.'' They must have permissible purposes to furnish consumer reports (section 604), avoid furnishing obsolete adverse information in certain consumer reports (sections 605, 607(a)), adopt reasonable procedures to assure privacy (section 604, 607(a)), and accuracy (section 607(b)) of consumer reports, provide only limited disclosures to governmental agencies (section 608), provide consumers certain disclosures upon request (sections 609 and 610) at no cost or for a reasonable charge (section 612), follow certain procedures if a consumer disputes the completeness or accuracy of any item of information contained in his file (section 611), and follow certain procedures in reporting public record information for employment purposes or when reporting adverse information other than public record information in investigative consumer reports (sections 613, 614).

B. *Relation to ''consumer reports.''* The term *consumer reporting agency,* as defined in section 603(f), includes certain persons who assemble or evaluate information on individuals for the purpose of furnishing ''consumer reports'' to third parties. Conversely, section 603(d) defines the term *consumer report* to mean the communication of certain information by a ''consumer reporting agency.'' In other words, the terms ''consumer report'' in section 603(d) and ''consumer reporting agency'' as defined in section 603(f) are defined in a mutually dependent manner and must therefore be construed together. For example, a party is not a ''consumer reporting

agency'' if it provides only information that is excepted from the definition of ''consumer report'' under section 603(d), such as reports limited to the party's own transactions or experiences with a consumer, or credit information on organizations.

2. Isolated Reports

Parties that do not ''regularly'' engage in assembling or evaluating information for the purpose of furnishing consumer reports to third parties are not consumer reporting agencies. For example, a creditor that furnished information on a consumer to a governmental entity in connection with one of its investigations, would not ''regularly'' be making such disclosure for a fee or on a cooperative nonprofit basis, and therefore would not become a consumer reporting agency, even if the information exceeded the creditor's transactions or experiences with the consumer.

3. Provision of Credit Report to Report Subject

A consumer report user does not become a consumer reporting agency by regularly giving a copy of the report, or otherwise disclosing it, to the consumer who is the subject of the report, because it is not disclosing the information to a ''third party.''

4. Employment Agency

An employment agency that routinely obtains information on job applicants from their former employers and furnishes the information to prospective employers is a consumer reporting agency.

5. Information Compiled for Insurance Underwriting

A business that compiles claim payment histories on individuals from insurers and furnishes them to insurance companies for use in underwriting decisions concerning those individuals is a consumer reporting agency.

6. Private Investigators and Detective Agencies

Private investigators and detective agencies that regularly obtain consumer reports and furnish them to clients may thereby become consumer reporting agencies.

7. Collection Agencies and Creditors

Collection agencies and creditors become consumer reporting agencies if they regularly furnish information beyond their transactions or experiences with consumers to third parties for use in connection with consumers' transactions.

8. Joint Users of Consumer Reports

Entities that share consumer reports with others that are jointly involved in decisions for which there are permissible purposes to obtain the reports may be ''joint users'' rather than consumer reporting agencies. For example, if a lender forwards consumer reports to governmental agencies administering loan guarantee programs (or to other prospective loan insurers or guarantors), or to other parties whose approval is needed before it grants credit, or to another creditor for use in considering a consumer's loan application at the consumer's request, the lender does not become a consumer reporting agency by virtue of such action. An agent or employee that obtains consumer reports does not become a consumer reporting agency by sharing such reports with its principal or employer in connection with the purposes for which the reports were initially obtained.

9. Loan Exchanges

Loan exchanges, which are generally owned and operated on a cooperative basis by consumer finance companies, constitute a mechanism whereby each member furnishes the exchange information concerning the full identity and loan amount of each of its borrowers, and receives information from the exchange concerning the number and types of outstanding loans for each of its applicants. A loan exchange or any other exchange that regularly collects information bearing on decisions to grant consumers credit or insurance for personal, family or household purposes, or employment, is a ''consumer reporting agency.''

10. State Departments of Motor Vehicles

State motor vehicle departments are ''consumer reporting agencies'' if they regularly furnish motor vehicle reports containing information bearing on the consumer's ''personal characteristics,'' such as arrest information, to insurance companies for insurance underwriting purposes. (See discussion of motor vehicle reports under section 603(d), item 4c *supra*.)

11. Federal Agencies

The Office of Personnel Management collects and files data concerning current and potential employees of the Federal Government and transmits that information to other government agencies for employment purposes. Because Congress did not intend that the FCRA apply to the Office of Personnel Management and similar federal agencies (see 116 Cong. Rec. 36576 (1970) (remarks of Rep. Brown)), no such agency is a ''consumer reporting agency.''

12. Credit Application Information

A creditor that provides information from a consumer's application to a credit bureau, for verification as part of the creditor's evaluation process that includes obtaining a report on the consumer from that credit bureau, does not thereby become a ''consumer reporting agency,'' because the creditor does not provide the information for ''fees, dues, or on a cooperative nonprofit basis,'' but rather pays the bureau to verify the information when it provides a consumer report on the applicant.

Section 603(g) defines *file*, when used in connection with information on any consumer, to mean ''all of the information on that consumer recorded and retained by a consumer reporting agency regardless of how the information is stored.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

Consumer reporting agencies are required to make disclosures of all information in their ''files'' to consumers upon request (section 609) and to follow reinvestigation procedures if the consumer disputes the completeness or accuracy of any item of information contained in his ''file'' (section 611).

2. General

The term *file* denotes all information on the consumer that is recorded and retained by a consumer reporting agency that might be furnished, or has been furnished, in a consumer report on that consumer.

3. Audit Trail

The term ''file'' does not include an ''audit trail'' (a list of changes made by a consumer reporting agency to a consumer's credit history record, maintained to detect fraudulent changes to that record), because such information is not furnished in consumer reports or used as a basis for preparing them.

4. Other Information

The term ''file'' does not include information in billing records or in the consumer relations folder that a consumer reporting agency opens on a consumer who obtains disclosures or files a dispute, if the information has not been used in a consumer report and would not be used in preparing one.

Section 603(h) defines *employment purposes* to mean ''a report used for the purpose of evaluating a consumer for employment, promotion, reassignment or retention as an employee.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

The term *employment purposes* is used as part of the definition of ''consumer reports'' (section 603(d)(2)) and as a permissible purpose for the furnishing of consumer reports (section 604(3)(B)). Where an investigative consumer report is to be used for ''employment purposes'' for which a consumer has not specifically applied, section 606(a)(2) provides that the notice otherwise required by section 606(a)(1) need not be sent. When a consumer reporting agency furnishes public record information in reports ''for employment purposes,'' it must follow the procedure set out in section 613.

2. Security Clearances

A report in connection with security clearances of a government contractor's employees would be for ''employment purposes'' under this section.

Section 603(i) defines *medical information* to mean ''information or records obtained, with the consent of the individual to whom it relates, from licensed physicians or medical practitioners, hospitals, clinics, or other medical or medically related facilities.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

Under section 609(a)(1), a consumer reporting agency must, upon the consumer's request and proper identification, disclose the nature and substance of all information in its files on the consumer, except ''medical information.''

2. Information From Non-medical Sources

Information from non-medical sources such as employers, is not ''medical information.''

*Section 604—Permissible Purposes of Reports*

*''A consumer reporting agency may furnish a consumer report under the following circumstances and no other: * * *''*

1. Relation to Section 603

Sections 603(d)(3) and 604 must be construed together to determine what are ''permissible purposes,'' because section 603(d)(3) refers to ''purposes authorized under section 604'' (often described as ''permissible purposes'' of consumer reports), and some purposes are enumerated in section 603 (e.g., sections 603(d)(1) and 603(d)(2)). Subsections of sections 603 and 604 that specifically set forth ''permissible purposes'' relating to credit, insurance and employment, are the only subsections that cover ''permissible purposes'' relating to those three areas. Section 604(3)(E), a general subsection, is limited to purposes not otherwise addressed in section 604(3) (A)–(D).

A. *Credit.* Sections 603(d)(1)—which defines ''consumer report'' to include certain reports for the purpose of serving as a factor in establishing the consumer's eligibility for credit or insurance primarily for personal, family, or household purposes—and 604(3)(A) must be read together as fully describing

permissible purposes involving credit for obtaining consumer reports. Accordingly, section 604(3)(A) permits the furnishing of a consumer report for use in connection with a credit transaction involving the consumer, primarily for personal, family or household purposes, and involving the extension of credit to, or review or collection of an account of, the consumer.

B. *Insurance.* Sections 603(d)(1) and 604(3)(C) must be read together as describing the only permissible insurance purposes for obtaining consumer reports. Accordingly, section 604(3)(C) permits the furnishing of a consumer report, provided it is for use in connection with the underwriting of insurance involving the consumer, primarily for personal, family, or household purposes.

C. *Employment.* Employment is covered exclusively by sections 603(d)(2) and 604(3)(B), and by section 603(h) (which defines ''employment purposes''). Therefore, ''permissible purposes'' relating to employment include reports used for evaluating a consumer ''for employment, promotion, reassignment or retention as an employee.''

D. *Other purposes.* ''Other purposes'' are referred to in section 603(d)(3) and covered by section 604(3)(E), as well as sections 604(1), 604(2) and 604(3)(D) (which contain specific purposes not involving credit, insurance, employment). Permissible purposes relating to section 604(3)(E) are limited to transactions that consumers enter into primarily for personal, family or household purposes (excluding credit, insurance or employment, which are specifically covered by other subsections discussed above). The FCRA does not cover reports furnished for transactions that consumers enter into primarily in connection with businesses they operate (e.g., a consumer's rental of equipment for use in his retail store).

2. Relation to Other Sections

A. *Section 607(a).* Section 607(a) requires consumer reporting agencies to keep information confidential by furnishing consumer reports only for purposes listed under section 604, and to follow specified, reasonable procedures to achieve this end. Section 619 provides criminal sanctions against any person who knowingly and willfully obtains information on a consumer from a consumer reporting agency under false pretenses.

B. *Section 608.* Section 608 allows ''consumer reporting agencies'' to furnish governmental agencies specified identifying information concerning consumers, notwithstanding the limitations of section 604.

Section 604(1)—A consumer reporting agency may furnish a consumer report ''in response to the order of a court having jurisdiction to issue such an order.''

1. Subpoena

A subpoena, including a grand jury subpoena, is not an ''order of a court'' unless signed by a judge.

2. Internal Revenue Service Summons

An I.R.S. summons is an exception to the requirement that an order be signed by a judge before it constitutes an ''order of a court'' under this section, because a 1976 revision to Federal statutes (26 U.S.C. 7609) specifically requires a consumer reporting agency to furnish a consumer report in response to an I.R.S. summons upon receipt of the designated I.R.S. certificate that the consumer has not filed a timely motion to quash the summons.

Section 604(2)—A consumer reporting agency may furnish a consumer report ''in accordance with the written instructions of the consumer to whom it relates.''

1. No Other Permissible Purpose Needed

If the report subject furnishes written authorization for a report, that creates a permissible purpose for furnishing the report.

2. Refusal to Furnish Report

The consumer reporting agency may refuse to furnish the report because the statute is permissive, not mandatory. (Requirements that consumer reporting agencies make disclosure to consumers (as contrasted with furnishing reports to users) are discussed under sections 609 and 610, *infra*.)

Section 604(3)(A)—A consumer reporting agency may issue a consumer report to ''a person which it has reason to believe * * * intends to use the information in connection with a credit transaction involving the consumer on whom the information is to be furnished and involving the extension of credit to, or review or collection of an account of, the consumer;''

1. Reports Sought in Connection with the ''Review or Collection of an Account''

A. *Reports for collection.* A collection agency has a permissible purpose under this section to receive a consumer report on a consumer for use in attempting to collect that consumer's debt, regardless of whether that debt is assigned or referred for collection. Similarly, a detective agency or private investigator, attempting to collect a debt owed by a consumer, would have a permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on that individual for use in collecting that debt. An attorney may obtain a consumer report under this section on a consumer for use in connection with a decision whether to sue that individual to collect a credit account.

B. *Unsolicited reports.* A consumer reporting agency may not send an unsolicited consumer report to the recipient of a previous

report on the same consumer, because the recipient will not necessarily have a permissible purpose to receive the unsolicited report.[2] For example, the recipient may have rejected the consumer's application or ceased to do business with the consumer. (See also discussion in section 607, item 2G, *infra*.)

2. Judgment Creditors

A judgment creditor has a permissible purpose to receive a consumer report on the judgment debtor for use in connection with collection of the judgment debt, because it is in the same position as any creditor attempting to collect a debt from a consumer who is the subject of a consumer report.

3. Child Support Debts

A district attorney's office or other child support agency may obtain a consumer report in connection with enforcement of the report subject's child support obligation, established by court (or quasi-judicial administrative) orders, since the agency is acting as or on behalf of the judgment creditor, and is, in effect, collecting a debt. However, a consumer reporting agency may not furnish consumer reports to child support agencies seeking to *establish* paternity or the duty to pay child support.

4. Tax Obligations

A tax collection agency has no general permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report to collect delinquent tax accounts, because this subsection applies only to collection of ''credit'' accounts. However, if a tax collection agency acquired a tax lien having the same effect as a judgment or obtained a judgment, it would be a judgment creditor and would have a permissible purpose for obtaining a consumer report on the consumer who owed the tax. Similarly, if a consumer taxpayer entered an agreement with a tax collection agency to pay taxes according to some timetable, that agreement would create a debtor-creditor relationship, thereby giving the agency a permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on that consumer.

5. Information on an Applicant's Spouse

A. *Permissible purpose.* A creditor may request any information concerning an applicant's spouse if that spouse will be permitted to use the account or will be contractually liable upon the account, or the applicant is relying on the spouse's income as a basis for repayment of the credit requested. A creditor may request any information concerning an applicant's spouse if (1) the state law doctrine of necessaries applies to the transaction, or (2) the applicant resides in a community property state, or (3) the property upon which the applicant is relying as a basis for repayment of the credit requested is located in such a state, or (4) the applicant is acting as the agent of the nonapplicant spouse.

B. *Lack of permissible purpose.* If the creditor receives information clearly indicating that the applicant is not acting as the agent of the nonapplicant spouse, and that the applicant is relying only on separate property to repay the credit extended, and that the state law doctrine of necessaries does not apply to the transaction and that the applicant does not reside in a community property state, the creditor does not have a permissible purpose for obtaining a report on a nonapplicant spouse. A permissible purpose for making a consumer report on a nonapplicant spouse can never exist under the FCRA, where Regulation B, issued under the Equal Credit Opportunity Act (12 CFR 202), prohibits the creditor from requesting information on such spouse. There is no permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on a nonapplicant former spouse or on a nonapplicant spouse who has legally separated or otherwise indicated an intent to legally disassociate with the marriage. (This does not preclude reporting a prior joint credit account of former spouses for which the spouse that is the subject of the report is still contractually liable. See discussion in section 607, item 3–D *infra*.)

6. Prescreening

*Prescreening* means the process whereby a consumer reporting agency compiles or edits a list of consumers who meet specific criteria and provides this list to the client or a third party (such as a mailing service) on behalf of the client for use in soliciting these consumers for the client's products or services. The process may also include demographic or other analysis of the consumers on the list (e.g., use of census tract data reflecting real estate values) by the consumer reporting agency or by a third party employed for that purpose (by either the agency or its client) before the list is provided to the consumer reporting agency's client. In such situations, the client's creditworthiness criteria may be provided only to the consumer reporting agency and not to the third party performing the demographic analysis. The consumer reporting agency that performs a ''prescreening'' service may furnish a client with several different lists of consumers who meet different sets of creditworthiness criteria supplied by the client, who intends to

[2] Of course a consumer reporting agency must furnish notifications required by section 611(d), upon the consumer's requests, to prior recipients of reports containing disputed information that is deleted or that is the subject of a dispute statement under section 611(b).

make different credit offers (e.g., various credit limits) to consumers who meet the different criteria.

A prescreened list constitutes a series of consumer reports, because the list conveys the information that each consumer named meets certain criteria for creditworthiness. Prescreening is permissible under the FCRA if the client agrees in advance that each consumer whose name is on the list after prescreening will receive an offer of credit. In these circumstances, a permissible purpose for the prescreening service exists under this section, because of the client's present intent to grant credit to all consumers on the final list, with the result that the information is used ''in connection with a credit transaction involving the consumer on whom the information is to be furnished and involving the extension of credit to * * * the consumer.''

7. Seller of Property Extending Credit

A seller of property has a permissible purpose under this subsection to obtain a consumer report on a prospective purchaser to whom he is planning to extend credit.

8. Uncoded Credit Guides

A consumer reporting agency may not furnish an uncoded credit guide, because the recipient does not have a permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on each consumer listed. (As discussed under section 603(d), item 4 *supra*, credit guides are listings that credit bureaus furnish to credit grantors, rating how consumers pay their bills. Such guides are a series of ''consumer reports'' on the ''consumers'' listed therein, unless coded so that the consumer's identity is not disclosed.)

9. Liability for Bad Checks

A party attempting to recover the amount due on a bad check is attempting to collect a debt and, therefore, has a permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on the consumer who wrote it, and on any other consumer who is liable for the amount of that check under applicable state law.

Section 604(3)(B)—A consumer reporting agency may issue a consumer report to ''a person which it has reason to believe * * * intends to use the information for employment purposes;''

1. Current Employees

An employer may obtain a consumer report on a current employee in connection with an investigation of the disappearance of money from employment premises, because ''retention as an employee'' is included in the definition of ''employment purposes'' (section 603(h)).

2. Consumer Reports on Applicants and Nonapplicants

An employer may obtain a consumer report for use in evaluating the subject's application for employment but may not obtain a consumer report to evaluate the application of a consumer who is not the subject of the report.

3. Grand Jurors

The fact that grand jurors are usually paid a stipend for their service does not provide a district attorney's office a permissible purpose for obtaining consumer reports on them, because such service is a duty, not ''employment.''

Section 604(3)(C)—A consumer reporting agency may issue a consumer report to ''a person which it has reason to believe * * * intends to use the information in connection with the underwriting of insurance involving the consumer;''

1. Underwriting

An insurer may obtain a consumer report to decide whether or not to issue a policy to the consumer, the amount and terms of coverage, the duration of the policy, the rates or fees charged, or whether or not to renew or cancel a policy, because these are all ''underwriting'' decisions.

2. Claims

An insurer may not obtain a consumer report for the purpose of evaluating a claim (to ascertain its validity or otherwise determine what action should be taken), because permissible purposes relating to insurance are limited by this section to ''underwriting'' purposes.

Section 604(3)(D)—A consumer reporting agency may issue a consumer report to ''a person which it has reason to believe * * * intends to use the information in connection with a determination of the consumer's eligibility for a license or other benefit granted by a governmental instrumentality required by law to consider an applicant's financial responsibility or status * * *''

1. Appropriate recipient

Any party charged by law (including a rule or regulation having the force of law) with responsibility for assessing the consumer's eligibility for the benefit (not only the agency directly responsible for administering the benefit) has a permissible purpose to receive a consumer report. For example, a district attorney's office or social services bureau, required by law to consider a consumer's financial status in determining whether that consumer qualifies for welfare benefits, has a permissible purpose to obtain a report on the

consumer for that purpose. Similarly, consumer reporting agencies may furnish consumer reports to townships on consumers whose financial status the townships are required by law to consider in determining the consumers' eligibility for assistance, or to professional boards (e.g., bar examiners) required by law to consider such information on applicants for admission to practice.

2. Inappropriate Recipient

Parties not charged with the responsibility of determining a consumer's eligibility for a license or other benefit, for example, a party competing for an FCC radio station construction permit, would not have a permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on that consumer.

3. Initial or Continuing Benefit

The permissible purpose includes the determination of a consumer's continuing eligibility for a benefit, as well as the evaluation of a consumer's initial application for a benefit. If the governmental body has reason to believe a particular consumer's eligibility is in doubt, or wishes to conduct random checks to confirm eligibility, it has a permissible purpose to receive a consumer report.

Section 604(3)(E)—A consumer reporting agency may issue a consumer report to ''a person which it has reason to believe * * * otherwise has a legitimate business need for the information in connection with a business transaction involving the consumer.''

1. Relation to Other Subsections of Section 604(3)

The issue of whether credit, employment, or insurance provides a permissible purpose is determined exclusively by reference to subsection (A), (B), or (C), respectively.

2. Commercial Transactions

The term *business transaction* in this section means a business transaction with a consumer primarily for personal, family, or household purposes. Business transactions that involve purely commercial purposes are not covered by the FCRA.

3. ''Legitimate Business Need''

Under this subsection, a party has a permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on a consumer for use in connection with some action the consumer takes from which he or she might expect to receive a benefit that is not more specifically covered by subsections (A), (B), or (C). For example, a consumer report may be obtained on a consumer who applies to rent an apartment, offers to pay for goods with a check, applies for a checking account or similar service, seeks to be included in a computer dating service, or who has sought and received over-payments of government benefits that he has refused to return.

4. Litigation

The possibility that a party may be involved in litigation involving a consumer does not provide a permissible purpose for that party to receive a consumer report on such consumer under this subsection, because litigation is not a ''business transaction'' involving the consumer. Therefore, potential plaintiffs may not always obtain reports on potential defendants to determine whether they are worth suing. The transaction that gives rise to the litigation may or may not provide a permissible purpose. A party seeking to sue on a *credit* account would have a permissible purpose under section 604(3)(A). (That section also permits judgment creditors and lien creditors to obtain consumer reports on judgment debtors or individuals whose property is subject to the lien creditor's lien.) If that transaction is a business transaction involving the consumer, there is a permissible purpose. If the litigation arises from a tort, there is no permissible purpose. Similarly, a consumer report may not be obtained solely for use in discrediting a witness at trial or for locating a witness. This section does not permit consumer reporting agencies to furnish consumer reports for the purpose of locating a person suspected of committing a crime. (As stated in the discussion of section 608 *infra* (item 2), section 608 permits the furnishing of specified, limited identifying information to governmental agencies, notwithstanding the provisions of section 604.)

5. Impermissible Purposes

A consumer reporting agency may not furnish a consumer report to satisfy a requester's curiosity, or for use by a news reporter in preparing a newspaper or magazine article.

6. Agents

A. *General.* An agent[3] of a party with a ''permissible purpose'' may obtain a consumer report on behalf of his principal, where he is involved in the decision that gives rise to the permissible purpose. Such involvement may include the agent's making a decision (or taking action) for the principal, or assisting the principal in making the decision (e.g., by evaluating information). In these circumstances, the agent is acting on behalf of the principal. In some cases, the agent and principal are referred to as ''joint users.'' See discussion in section 603(f), *supra* (item 8).

B. *Real estate agent.* A real estate agent may obtain a consumer report on behalf of a

[3] Of course agents and principals *are* bound by the Act.

seller, to evaluate the eligibility as a prospective purchaser of a subject who has expressed an interest in purchasing property from the seller.

C. *Private detective agency*. A private detective agency may obtain a consumer report as agent for its client while investigating a report subject that is a client's prospective employee, or in connection with advising a client concerning a business transaction with the report subject or in attempting to collect a debt owed its client by the subject of the report. In these circumstances, the detective agency is acting on behalf of its client.

D. *Rental clearance agency*. A rental clearance agency that obtains consumer reports to assist owners of residential properties in screening consumers as tenants, has a permissible purpose to obtain the reports, if it uses them in applying the landlord's criteria to approve or disapprove the subjects as tenant applicants. Similarly, an apartment manager investigating applicants for apartment rentals by a landlord may obtain consumer reports on these applicants.

E. *Attorney*. An attorney collecting a debt for a creditor client, including a party suing on a debt or collecting on behalf of a judgment creditor or lien creditor, has a permissible purpose to obtain a consumer report on the debtor to the same extent as the client.

*Section 604—General*

1. Furnishing of Consumer Reports to Other Consumer Reporting Agencies

A consumer reporting agency may furnish a consumer report to another consumer reporting agency for it to furnish pursuant to a subscriber's request. In these circumstances, one consumer reporting agency is acting on behalf of another.

2. Consumer's Permission not Needed

When permissible purposes exist, parties may obtain, and consumer reporting agencies may furnish, consumer reports without the consumers' permission or over their objection. Similarly, parties may furnish information concerning their transactions with consumers to consumer reporting agencies and others, and consumer reporting agencies may gather information, without consumers' permission.

3. User's Disclosure of Report to Subject Consumer

The FCRA does not prohibit a consumer report user from giving a copy of the report, or otherwise disclosing it, to the consumer who is the subject of the report.

*Section 605—Obsolete Information*

''(a) *Except as authorized under subsection (b), no consumer reporting agency may make any consumer report containing any of the following items of information * * *:*

(b) *The provisions of subsection (a) are not applicable in the case of any consumer credit report to be used in connection with—*

(1) *a credit transaction involving, or which may reasonably be expected to involve, a principal amount of $50,000 or more;*

(2) *the underwriting of life insurance involving, or which may reasonably be expected to involve, a face amount of $50,000 or more; or*

(3) *the employment of any individual at an annual salary which equals, or which may reasonably be expected to equal $20,000, or more.''*

1. General

Section 605(a) provides that most adverse information more than seven years old may not be reported, except in certain circumstances set out in section 605(b). With respect to delinquent accounts, accounts placed for collection, and accounts charged to profit and loss, there are many dates that could be deemed to commence seven year reporting periods. The discussion in subsections (a)(2), (a)(4), and (a)(6) is intended to set forth a clear, workable rule that effectuates Congressional intent.

2. Favorable Information

The Act imposes no time restriction on reporting of information that is not adverse.

3. Retention of Information in Files

Consumer reporting agencies may retain obsolete adverse information and furnish it in reports for purposes that are exempt under subsection (b) (e.g., credit for a principal amount of $50,000 or more).

4. Use of Shorter Periods

The section does not require consumer reporting agencies to report adverse information for the time periods set forth, but only prohibits them from reporting adverse items beyond those time periods.

5. Inapplicability to Users

The section does not limit creditors or others from using adverse information that would be ''obsolete'' under its terms, because it applies only to reporting by consumer reporting agencies. Similarly, this section does not bar a creditor's reporting such adverse obsolete information concerning its transactions or experiences with a consumer, because the report would not constitute a consumer report.

6. Indicating the Existence of Nonspecified, Obsolete Information

A consumer reporting agency may not furnish a consumer report indicating the existence of obsolete adverse information, even if no specific item is reported. For example, a

consumer reporting agency may not communicate the existence of a debt older than seven years by reporting that a credit grantor cannot locate a debtor whose debt was charged off ten years ago.

7. Operative Dates

The times or dates set forth in this section, which relate to the occurrence of events involving adverse information, determine whether the item is obsolete. The date that the consumer reporting agency acquired the adverse information is irrelevant to how long that information may be reported.

Section 605(a)(1)—''Cases under title 11 of the United States Code or under the Bankruptcy Act that, from the date of entry of the order for relief or the date of adjudication, as the case may be, antedate the report by more than 10 years.''

1. Relation to Other Subsections

The reporting of suits and judgments is governed by subsection (a)(2), the reporting of accounts placed for collection or charged to profit and loss is governed by subsection (a)(4), and the reporting of other delinquent accounts is governed by subsection (a)(6). Any such item, even if discharged in bankruptcy, may be reported separately for the applicable seven year period, while the existence of the bankruptcy filing may be reported for ten years.

2. Wage Earner Plans

Wage earner plans may be reported for ten years, because they are covered by Title 11 of the United States Code.

3. Date for Filing

A voluntary bankruptcy petition may be reported for ten years from the date that it is filed, because the filing of the petition constitutes the entry of an ''order for relief'' under this subsection, just like a filing under the Bankruptcy Act (11 U.S.C. 301).

Section 605(a)(2)—''Suits and judgments which, from date of entry, antedate the report by more than seven years or until the governing statute of limitations has expired, whichever is the longer period.''

1. Operative Date

For a suit, the term *date of entry* means the date the suit was initiated. A protracted suit may be reported for more than seven years from the date it was entered, if the governing statute of limitations has not expired. For a judgment, the term ''date of entry'' means the date the judgment was rendered.

2. Paid Judgments

Paid judgments cannot be reported for more than seven years after the judgment was entered, because payment of the judgment eliminates any ''governing statute of limitations'' under this subsection that might otherwise lengthen the period.

Section 605(a)(3)—''Paid tax liens which, from date of payment, antedate the report by more than seven years.''

1. Unpaid Liens

If a tax lien (or other lien) remains unsatisfied, it may be reported as long as it remains filed against the consumer, without limitation, because this subsection addresses only paid tax liens.

Section 605(a)(4)—''Accounts placed for collection or charged to profit and loss which antedate the report by more than seven years.''

1. Placement for Collection

The term *placed for collection* means internal collection activity by the creditor, as well as placement with an outside collector, whichever occurs first. Sending of the initial past due notices does not constitute placement for collection. Placement for collection occurs when dunning notices or other collection efforts are initiated. The reporting period is not extended by assignment to another entity for further collection, or by a partial or full payment of the account. However, where a borrower brings his delinquent account to date and returns to his regular payment schedule, and later defaults again, a consumer reporting agency may disregard any collection activity with respect to the first delinquency and measure the reporting period from the date the account was placed for collection as a result of the borrower's ultimate default. A consumer's repayment agreement with a collection agency can be treated as a new account that has its own seven year period.

2. Charge to Profit and Loss

The term *charged to profit and loss* means action taken by the creditor to write off the account, and the applicable time period is measured from that event. If an account that was charged off is later paid in part or paid in full by the consumer, the reporting period of seven years from the charge-off is not extended by this subsequent payment.

3. Reporting of a Delinquent Account That is Later Placed for Collection or Charged to Profit and Loss

The fact that an account has been placed for collection or charged to profit and loss may be reported for seven years from the date that either of those events occurs, regardless of the date the account became delinquent. The fact of delinquency may also be reported for seven years from the date the account became delinquent.

Section 605(a)(5)—''Records of arrest, indictment, or conviction of crime which, from

date of disposition, release, or parole, antedate the report by more than seven years.''

1. Records

The term *records* means any information a consumer reporting agency has in its files relating to arrest, indictment or conviction of a crime.

2. Computation of Time Period

The seven year reporting period runs from the date of disposition, release or parole, as applicable. For example, if charges are dismissed at or before trial, or the consumer is acquitted, the date of such dismissal or acquittal is the date of disposition. If the consumer is convicted of a crime and sentenced to confinement, the date of release or placement on parole controls. (Confinement, whether continuing or resulting from revocation of parole, may be reported until seven years after the confinement is terminated.) The sentencing date controls for a convicted consumer whose sentence does not include confinement. The fact that information concerning the arrest, indictment, or conviction of crime is obtained by the reporting agency at a later date from a more recent source (such as a newspaper or interview) does not serve to extend this reporting period.

Section 605(a)(6)—''Any other adverse item of information which antedates the report by more than seven years.''

1. Relation to Other Subsections

This section applies to all adverse information that is not covered by section 605(a) (1)–(5). For example, a delinquent account that has neither been placed for collection, nor charged to profit and loss, may be reported for seven years from the date of the last regularly scheduled payment. (Accounts placed for collection or charged to profit and loss may be reported for the time periods stated in section 605(a)(4).)

2. Non Tax Liens

Liens (other than paid tax liens) may be reported as long as they remain filed against the consumer or the consumer's property, and remain effective (under any applicable statute of limitations). (See discussion under section 605(a)(3), *supra*.)

*Section 606—Disclosure of Investigative Consumer Reports*

''(a) *A person may not procure or cause to be prepared an investigative consumer report on any consumer unless—*

(1) it is clearly and accurately disclosed to the consumer that an investigative consumer report including information as to his character, general reputation, personal characteristics, and mode of living, whichever are applicable, may be made, and such disclosure (A) is made in a writing mailed, or otherwise delivered, to the consumer, not later than three days after the date on which the report was first requested, and (B) includes a statement informing the consumer of his right to request the additional disclosures provided for under subsection (b) of this section; or

(2) the report is to be used for employment purposes for which the consumer has not specifically applied.

(b) Any person who procures or causes to be prepared an investigative consumer report on any consumer shall, upon written request made by the consumer within a reasonable period of time after receipt by him of the disclosure required by subsection (a)(1), make a complete and accurate disclosure of the nature and scope of the investigation requested. This disclosure shall be made in a writing mailed, or otherwise delivered, to the consumer not later than five days after the date on which the request for such disclosure was received from the consumer or such report was first requested, whichever is the later.

(c) No person may be held liable for any violation of subsection (a) or (b) of this section if he shows by a preponderance of the evidence that at the time of the violation he maintained reasonable procedures to assure compliance with subsection (a) or (b).''

1. Relation to Other Sections

The term *investigative consumer report* is defined at section 603(e) to mean a consumer report, all or a portion of which contains information obtained through personal interviews (in person or by telephone) with persons other than the subject, which information relates to the subject's character, general reputation, personal characteristics or mode of living.

2. Inapplicability to Consumer Reporting Agencies

The section applies only to report users, not consumer reporting agencies. The FCRA does not require consumer reporting agencies to inform consumers that information will be gathered or that reports will be furnished concerning them.

3. Inapplicability to Noninvestigative Consumer Reports

The section does not apply to noninvestigative reports.

4. Exemptions

An employer who orders investigative consumer reports on a current employee who has not applied for a job change need not notify the employee, because the term ''employment purposes'' is defined to include ''promotion, reassignment or retention'' and subsection (b) provides that the disclosure requirements do not apply to ''employment

purposes for which the consumer has not specifically applied.''

5. Form and Delivery of Notice

The notice must be in writing and delivered to the consumer. The user may include the disclosure in an application for employment, insurance, or credit, if it is clear and conspicuous and not obscured by other language. A user may send the required notice via first class mail. The notice must be mailed or otherwise delivered to the consumer not later than three days after the report was first requested.

6. Content of Notice of Right to Disclosure

The notice must clearly and accurately disclose that an ''investigative consumer report'' including information as to the consumer's character, general reputation, personal characteristics and mode of living (whichever are applicable), may be made. The disclosure must also state that an investigative consumer report involves personal interviews with sources such as neighbors, friends, or associates. The notice may include any additional, accurate information about the report, such as the types of interviews that will be conducted. The notice must include a statement informing the consumer of the right to request complete and accurate disclosure of the nature and scope of the investigation.

7. Content of Disclosure of Report

When the consumer requests disclosure of the ''nature and scope'' of the investigation, such disclosure must include a complete and accurate description of the types of questions asked, the number and types of persons interviewed, and the name and address of the investigating agency. The user need not disclose the names of sources of information, nor must it provide the consumer with a copy of the report. A report user that provides the consumer with a blank copy of the standardized form used to transmit the report from the agency to the user complies with the requirement that it disclose the ''nature'' of the investigation.

*Section 607—Compliance Procedures*

''(a) Every consumer reporting agency shall maintain reasonable procedures designed to avoid violations of section 605 and to limit the furnishing of consumer reports to the purposes listed under section 604. These procedures shall require that prospective users of the information identify themselves, certify the purposes for which the information is sought, and certify that the information will be used for no other purpose. Every consumer reporting agency shall make a reasonable effort to verify the identity of a new prospective user and the uses certified by such prospective user prior to furnishing such user a consumer report. No consumer reporting agency may furnish a consumer report to any person if it has reasonable grounds for believing that the consumer report will not be used for a purpose listed in Section 604.

(b) Whenever a consumer reporting agency prepares a consumer report it shall follow reasonable procedures to assure maximum possible accuracy of the information concerning the individual about whom the report relates.''

1. Procedures to Avoid Reporting Obsolete Information

A. *General.* A consumer reporting agency should establish procedures with its sources of adverse information that will avoid the risk of reporting obsolete information. For example, the agency should either require a creditor to supply the date an account was placed for collection or charged off, or the agency should use a conservative date for such placement or charge off (such as the date of the last regularly scheduled payment), to be sure of complying with the statute.

B. *Retention of obsolete information for reporting in excepted circumstances.* If a consumer reporting agency retains adverse information in its files that is ''obsolete'' under section 605(a) (e.g., information about a satisfied judgment that is more than seven years old), so that it may be reported for use in transactions described by section 605(b) (*i.e.,* applications for credit or life insurance for $50,000 or more, or employment at an annual salary of $20,000 or more), it must have procedural safeguards to avoid reporting the information except in those situations. The procedure should require that such obsolete information be released only after an internal decision that its release will not violate section 605.

2. Procedures to Avoid Reporting for Impermissible Purposes

A. *Verification.* A consumer reporting agency should have a system to verify that it is dealing with a legitimate business having a ''permissible purpose'' for the information reported. What constitutes adequate verification will vary with the circumstances. If the consumer reporting agency is not familiar with the user, appropriate procedures might require an on-site visit to the user's place of business, or a check of the user's references.

B. *Required certification by user.* A consumer reporting agency should adopt procedures that require prospective report users to identify themselves, certify the purpose for which the information is sought, and certify that the information will be used for no other purpose. A consumer reporting agency should determine initially that users have

permissible purposes and ascertain what those purposes are. It should obtain a specific, written certification that the recipient will obtain reports for those purposes and no others. The user's certification that the report will be used for no other purposes should expressly prohibit the user from sharing the report or providing it to anyone else, other than the subject of the report or to a joint user having the same purpose. A consumer reporting agency should refuse to provide reports to those refusing to provide such certification.

C. *Blanket or individual certification.* Once the consumer reporting agency obtains a certification from a user (e.g., a creditor) that typically has a permissible purpose for receiving a consumer report, stating that it will use those reports only for specified permissible purposes (e.g., for credit or employment purposes), a certification of purpose need not be furnished for each individual report obtained, provided there is no reason to believe the user may be violating its certification. However, in furnishing reports to users that typically could have both permissible and impermissible purposes for ordering consumer reports (e.g., attorneys and detective agencies), the consumer reporting agency must require the user to provide a separate certification each time it requests a consumer report.

D. *Procedures to avoid recipients' abuse of certification.* When doubt arises concerning any user's compliance with its contractual certification, a consumer reporting agency must take steps to insure compliance, such as requiring a separate, advance certification for each report it furnishes that user, or auditing that user to verify that it is obtaining reports only for permissible purposes. A consumer reporting agency must cease furnishing consumer reports to users who repeatedly request consumer reports for impermissible purposes.

E. *Unauthorized access.* A consumer reporting agency should take several other steps when doubt arises concerning whether a user is obtaining reports for a permissible purpose from a computerized system. If it appears that a third party, not a subscriber, has obtained unauthorized access to the system, the consumer reporting agency should take appropriate steps such as altering authorized users' means of access, such as codes and passwords, and making random checks to ensure that future reports are obtained only for permissible purposes. If a subscriber has inadvertently sought reports for impermissible purposes or its employee has obtained reports without a permissible purpose, it would be appropriate for the consumer reporting agency to alter the subscriber's means of access, and require an individual written certification of the permissible purpose for each report requested or randomly verify such purposes. A consumer reporting agency should refuse to furnish any further reports to a user that repeatedly violates certifications.

F. *Use of computerized systems.* A consumer reporting agency may furnish consumer reports to users via terminals, provided the consumer reporting agency has taken the necessary steps to ensure that the users have a permissible purpose to receive the reports. (The agency would have to record the identity of consumer report recipients for each consumer, to be able to make any disclosures required under section 609(a)(3) or section 611(d)).

G. *Activity reports.* If a consumer reporting agency provides ''activity reports'' on all customers who have open-end accounts with a credit grantor, it must make certain that the credit grantor always notifies the agency when accounts are closed and paid in full, to avoid furnishing reports on former customers or other customers for whom the credit grantor lacks a permissible purpose. (See also discussion in section 604(3)(A), item 1, *supra.*)

### 3. Reasonable Procedures to Assure Maximum Possible Accuracy

A. *General.* The section does not require error free consumer reports. If a consumer reporting agency accurately transcribes, stores and communicates consumer information received from a source that it reasonably believes to be reputable, and which is credible on its face, the agency does not violate this section simply by reporting an item of information that turns out to be inaccurate. However, when a consumer reporting agency learns or should reasonably be aware of errors in its reports that may indicate systematic problems (by virtue of information from consumers, report users, from periodic review of its reporting system, or otherwise) it must review its procedures for assuring accuracy. Examples of errors that would require such review are the issuance of a consumer report pertaining entirely to a consumer other than the one on whom a report was requested, and the issuance of a consumer report containing information on two or more consumers (e.g., information that was mixed in the file) in response to a request for a report on only one of those consumers.

B. *Required steps to improve accuracy.* If the agency's review of its procedures reveals, or the agency should reasonably be aware of, steps it can take to improve the accuracy of its reports at a reasonable cost, it must take any such steps. It should correct inaccuracies that come to its attention. A consumer reporting agency must also adopt reasonable procedures to eliminate systematic errors that it knows about, or should reasonably be aware of, resulting from procedures followed by its sources of information. For example, if

a particular credit grantor has often furnished a significant amount of erroneous consumer account information, the agency must require the creditor to revise its procedures to correct whatever problems cause the errors or stop reporting information from that creditor.

C. *Use of automatic data processing equipment.* Consumer reporting agencies that use automatic data processing equipment (particularly for long distance transmission of information) should have reasonable procedures to assure that the data is accurately converted into a machine-readable format and not distorted by machine malfunction or transmission failure. Reasonable security procedures must be adopted to minimize the possibility that computerized consumer information will be stolen or altered by either authorized or unauthorized users of the information system.

D. *Reliability of sources.* Whether a consumer reporting agency may rely on the accuracy of information from a source depends on the circumstances. This section does not hold a consumer reporting agency responsible where an item of information that it receives from a source that it reasonably believes to be reputable appears credible on its face, and is transcribed, stored and communicated as provided by that source. Requirements are more stringent where the information furnished appears implausible or inconsistent, or where procedures for furnishing it seem likely to result in inaccuracies, or where the consumer reporting agency has had numerous problems regarding information from a particular source.

E. *Undesignated information in credit transactions. Undesignated information* means all credit history information in a married (or formerly married) consumer's file, which was not reported to the consumer reporting agency with a designation indicating that the information relates to either the consumer's joint or individual credit experience. The question arises what is meant by reasonable procedures under this section for treatment of credit history in the file of only one (present or former) spouse (usually the husband) that has not been designated by the procedure in Regulation B, 12 CFR 202.10, which implements the Equal Credit Opportunity Act. (This situation exists only for certain credit history file information compiled before June 1, 1977, and certain accounts opened before that date.) A consumer reporting agency may report information solely in the file of spouse A, when spouse B applies for a separate extension of credit, only if such information relates to accounts for which spouse B was either a user or was contractually liable, or the report recipient has a permissible purpose for a report on spouse A. A consumer reporting agency may not supply all undesignated information from the file of a consumer's spouse in response to a request for a report on the consumer, because some or all of that information may not relate to both spouses. Consumer reporting agencies must honor without charge the request of a married or formerly married individual that undesignated information (that appears only in the files of the individual's present or former spouse) be segregated—*i.e.*, placed in a separate file that is accessible under that individual's name. This procedure insures greater accuracy and protection of the privacy of spouses than does the automatic reporting of undesignated information.

F. *Reporting of credit obligation*—(1) *Past due accounts.* A consumer reporting agency must employ reasonable procedures to keep its file current on past due accounts (e.g., by requiring its creditors to notify the credit bureau when a previously past due account has been paid or discharged in bankruptcy), but its failure to show such activity in particular instances, despite the maintenance of reasonable procedures to keep files current, does not violate this section. For example, a consumer reporting agency that reports accurately in 1985 that as of 1983 the consumer owed a retail store money, without mentioning that the consumer eventually paid the debt, does not violate this section if it was not informed by the store or the consumer of the later payment.

(2) *Significant, verified information.* A consumer reporting agency must report significant, verified information it possesses about an item. For instance, a consumer reporting agency may continue to report a paid account that was previously delinquent, but should also report that the account has been paid. Similarly, a consumer reporting agency may include delinquencies on debts discharged in bankruptcy in consumer reports, but must accurately note the status of the debt (e.g., discharged, voluntarily repaid). Finally, if a reported bankruptcy has been dismissed, that fact should be reported.

(3) *Guarantor obligations.* Personal guarantees for obligations incurred by others (including a corporation) may be included in a consumer report on the individual who is the guarantor. The report should accurately reflect the individual's involvement (e.g., as guarantor of the corporate debt).

4. Effect of Criminal Sanctions

Notwithstanding the fact that section 619 provides criminal sanctions against persons who knowingly and willfully obtain information on a consumer from a consumer reporting agency under false pretenses, a consumer reporting agency must follow reasonable procedures to limit the furnishing of reports to those with permissible purposes.

5. Disclosure of Credit Denial

When reporting that a consumer was denied a benefit (such as credit), a consumer reporting agency need not report the reasons for the denial.

6. Content of Report

A consumer report need not be tailored to the user's needs. It may contain any information that is complete, accurate, and not obsolete on the consumer who is the subject of the report. A consumer report may include an account that was discharged in bankruptcy (as well as the bankruptcy itself), as long as it reports a zero balance due to reflect the fact that the consumer is no longer liable for the discharged debt. A consumer report may include a list of recipients of reports on the consumer who is the subject of the report.

7. Completeness of Reports

Consumer reporting agencies are not required to include all existing derogatory or favorable information about a consumer in their reports. (See, however, discussion in section 611, item 14, *infra*, concerning conveying consumer dispute statements.) However, a consumer reporting agency may not mislead its subscribers as to the completeness of its reports by deleting nonderogatory information and not disclosing its policy of making such deletions.

8. User Notice of Adverse Action Based on a Consumer Report

A consumer reporting agency need not require users of its consumer reports to provide any notice to consumers against whom adverse action is taken based on a consumer report. The FCRA imposes such notice requirements directly on users, under the circumstances set out in section 615.

*Section 608—Disclosures to Governmental Agencies*

''Notwithstanding the provisions of section 604, a consumer reporting agency may furnish identifying information respecting any consumer limited to his name, address, former addresses, places of employment, or former places of employment, to a governmental agency.''

1. Permissible Purpose Necessary for Additional Information

A consumer reporting agency may furnish limited identifying information concerning a consumer to a governmental agency (e.g., an agency seeking a fugitive from justice) even if that agency does not have a ''permissible purpose'' under section 604 to receive a consumer report. However, a governmental agency must have a permissible purpose in order to obtain information beyond what is authorized by this section.

2. Entities Covered by Section

The term *governmental agency* includes federal, state, county and municipal agencies, and grand juries. Only governmental agencies may obtain disclosures of identifying information under this section.

*Section 609—Disclosures to Consumers*

''(a) Every consumer reporting agency shall, upon request and proper identification of any consumer, clearly and accurately disclose to the consumer:

(1) The nature and substance of all information (except medical information) in its files on the consumer at the time of the request.

(2) The sources of the information; except that the sources of information acquired solely for use in preparing an investigative consumer report and actually used for no other purpose need not be disclosed: Provided, That in the event an action is brought under this title, such sources shall be available to the plaintiff under appropriate discovery procedures in the court in which the action is brought.

(3) The recipients of any consumer report on the consumer which it has furnished

(A) for employment purposes within the two-year period preceding the request, and

(B) for any other purpose within the six-month period preceding the request.

(b) The requirements of subsection (a) respecting the disclosure of sources of information and the recipients of consumer reports do not apply to information received or consumer reports furnished prior to the effective date of this title except to the extent that the matter involved is contained in the files of the consumer reporting agency on that date.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

This section states what consumer reporting agencies must disclose to consumers, upon request and proper identification. Section 610 sets forth the conditions under which those disclosures must be made, and section 612 sets forth the circumstances under which consumer reporting agencies may charge for making such disclosures. The term ''file'' as used in section 609(a)(1) is defined in section 603(g). The term ''investigative consumer report,'' which is used in section 609(a)(2), is defined in section 603(e). The term *medical information*, which is used in section 609(a)(1), is defined in section 603(i).

2. Proper Identification

A consumer reporting agency must take reasonable steps to verify the identity of an individual seeking disclosure under this section.

3. Manner of ''Proper Identification''

If a consumer provides sufficient identifying information, the consumer reporting agency cannot insist that the consumer execute a ''request for interview'' form, or provide the items listed on it, as a prerequisite to disclosure. However, the agency may use a form to identify consumers requesting disclosure if it does not use the form to inhibit disclosure, or to obtain any waiver of the consumers' rights. A consumer reporting agency may provide disclosure by telephone without a written request, if the consumer is properly identified, but may insist on a written request before providing such disclosure.

4. Power of Attorney

A consumer reporting agency may disclose a consumer's file to a third party authorized by the consumer's written power of attorney to obtain the disclosure, if the third party presents adequate identification and fulfills other applicable conditions of disclosure. However, the agency may also disclose the information directly to the consumer.

5. Nature of Disclosure Required

A consumer reporting agency must disclose the nature and substance of all items in the consumer's file, no matter how or where they are stored (e.g., in other offices of the consumer reporting agency). The consumer reporting agency must have personnel trained to explain to the consumer any information furnished in accordance with the Act. Particularly when the file includes coded information that would be meaningless to the consumer, the agency's personnel must assist the consumer to understand the disclosures. Any summary must not mischaracterize the nature of any item of information in the file. The consumer reporting agency is not required to provide a copy of the file, or any other written disclosure, or to read the file verbatim to the consumer or to permit the consumer to examine any information in its files. A consumer reporting agency may choose to usually comply with the FCRA in writing, by providing a copy of the file to the consumer or otherwise.

6. Medical Information

Medical information includes information obtained with the consumer's consent from physicians and medical facilities, but does not include comments on a consumer's health by non-medical personnel. A consumer reporting agency is not required to disclose medical information in its files to consumers, but may do so. Alternatively, a consumer reporting agency may inform consumers that there is medical information in the files concerning them and supply the name of the doctor or other source of the information. Consumer reporting agencies may also disclose such information to a physician of the consumer's choice, upon the consumer's written instructions pursuant to section 604(2).

7. Ancillary Information.

A consumer reporting agency is not required to disclose information consisting of an audit trail of changes it makes in the consumer's file, billing records, or the contents of a consumer relations folder, if the information is not from consumer reports and will not be used in preparing future consumer reports. Such data is not included in the term ''information in the files'' which must be disclosed to the consumer pursuant to this section. A consumer reporting agency must disclose claims report information only if it has appeared in consumer reports.

8. Information on Other Consumers

The consumer has no right to information in the consumer reporting agency's files on other individuals, because the disclosure must be limited to information ''on the consumer.'' However, all information in the files of the consumer making the request must be disclosed, including information about another individual that relates to the consumer (e.g., concerning that individual's dealings with the subject of the consumer report).

9. Disclosure of Sources of Information

Consumer reporting agencies must disclose the sources of information, except for sources of information acquired solely for use in preparing an investigative consumer report and actually used for no other purpose. When it has used information from another consumer reporting agency, the other agency should be reported as a source.

10. Disclosure of Recipients of Consumer Reports

Consumer reporting agencies must maintain records of recipients of prior consumer reports sufficient to enable them to meet the FCRA's requirements that they disclose the identity of recipients of prior consumer reports. A consumer reporting agency that furnishes a consumer report directly to a report user at the request of another consumer reporting agency must disclose the identity of the user that was the ultimate recipient of the report, not the other agency that acted as an intermediary in procuring the report.

11. Disclosure of Recipients of Prescreened Lists

A consumer reporting agency must furnish to a consumer requesting file disclosure the identity of recipients of any prescreened lists that contained the consumer's name

when submitted to creditors (or other users) by the consumer reporting agency.

12. Risk Scores.

A consumer reporting agency is not required to disclose a risk score (or other numerical evaluation, however named) that is provided to the agency's client (based on an analysis of data on the consumer) but not retained by the agency. Such a score is not information ''in (the agency's) files at the time of the request'' by the consumer for file disclosure.

*Section 610—Conditions of Disclosure*

''(a) A consumer reporting agency shall make the disclosures required under section 609 during normal business hours and on reasonable notice.

(b) The disclosures required under section 609 shall be made to the consumer—

(1) in person if he appears in person and furnishes proper identification; or

(2) by telephone if he has made a written request, with proper identification, for telephone disclosure and the toll charge, if any, for the telephone call is prepaid by or charged directly to the consumer.

(c) Any consumer reporting agency shall provide trained personnel to explain to the consumer any information furnished to him pursuant to section 609.

(d) The consumer shall be permitted to be accompanied by one other person of his choosing, who shall furnish reasonable identification. A consumer reporting agency may require the consumer to furnish a written statement granting permission to the consumer reporting agency to discuss the consumer's file in such person's presence.

(e) Except as provided in section 616 and 617, no consumer may bring any action or proceeding in the nature of defamation, invasion of privacy, or negligence with respect to the reporting of information against any consumer reporting agency, any user of information or any person who furnishes information to a consumer reporting agency, based on information disclosed pursuant to section 609, 610, or 615, except as to false information furnished with malice or willful intent to injure such consumers.''

1. Time of Disclosure

A consumer reporting agency must make disclosures during normal business hours, upon reasonable notice. However, the consumer reporting agency may waive reasonable notice, and the consumer may agree to disclosure outside of normal business hours. A consumer reporting agency may make in-person disclosure to consumers who have made appointments ahead of other consumers, because the disclosures are only required to be made ''on reasonable notice.''

2. Extra Conditions Prohibited

A consumer reporting agency may not add conditions not set out in the FCRA as a prerequisite to the required disclosure.

3. Manner of Disclosure

A consumer reporting agency may, with the consumer's actual or implied consent, meet its disclosure obligations by mail, in lieu of the in-person or telephone disclosures specified in the statute.

4. Disclosure in the Presence of Third Parties

When the consumer requests disclosure in a third party's presence, the consumer reporting agency may require that a consumer sign an authorization before such disclosure is made. The consumer may choose the third party to accompany him or her for the disclosure.

5. Expense of Telephone Calls

A consumer reporting agency is not required to pay the telephone charge for a telephone interview with a consumer obtaining disclosure.

6. Qualified Defamation Privilege

The privilege extended by subsection 610(e) does not apply to an action brought by a consumer if the action is based on information not disclosed pursuant to sections 609, 610 or 615. A disclosure to a consumer's representative (e.g., based on the consumer's power of attorney) constitutes ''information disclosed pursuant to section 609'' and is thus covered by this privilege.

*Section 611—Procedure in Case of Disputed Accuracy*

''(a) If the completeness or accuracy of any item of information contained in his file is disputed by a consumer, and such dispute is directly conveyed to the consumer reporting agency by the consumer, the consumer reporting agency shall within a reasonable period of time reinvestigate and record the current status of that information unless it has reasonable grounds to believe that the dispute by the consumer is frivolous or irrelevant. If after such reinvestigation such information is found to be inaccurate or can no longer be verified, the consumer reporting agency shall promptly delete such information. The presence of contradictory information in the consumer's file does not in and of itself constitute reasonable grounds for believing the dispute is frivolous or irrelevant.

(b) If the reinvestigation does not resolve the dispute, the consumer may file a brief statement setting forth the nature of the dispute. The consumer reporting agency may limit such statements to not more than one hundred words if it provides the consumer

with assistance in writing a clear summary of the dispute.

(c) Whenever a statement of a dispute is filed, unless there is reasonable grounds to believe that it is frivolous or irrelevant, the consumer reporting agency shall, in any subsequent consumer report containing the information in question, clearly note that it is disputed by the consumer and provide either the consumer's statement or a clear and accurate codification or summary thereof.

(d) Following any deletion of information which is found to be inaccurate or whose accuracy can no longer be verified or any notation as to disputed information, the consumer reporting agency shall, at the request of the consumer, furnish notification that the item has been deleted or the statement, codification or summary pursuant to subsection (b) or (c) to any person specifically designated by the consumer who has within two years prior thereto received a consumer report for employment purposes, or within six months prior thereto received a consumer report for any other purpose, which contained the deleted or disputed information. The consumer reporting agency shall clearly and conspicuously disclose to the consumer his rights to make such a request. Such disclosure shall be made at or prior to the time the information is deleted or the consumer's statement regarding the disputed information is received.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

This section sets forth procedures consumer reporting agencies must follow if a consumer conveys a dispute of the completeness or accuracy of any item of information in the consumer's file to the consumer reporting agency. Section 609 provides for disclosures by consumer reporting agencies to consumers, and section 610 sets forth conditions of disclosure. Section 612 permits a consumer reporting agency to impose charges for certain disclosures, including the furnishing of certain information to recipients of prior reports, as provided by section 611(d).

2. Proper Reinvestigation

A consumer reporting agency conducting a reinvestigation must make a good faith effort to determine the accuracy of the disputed item or items. At a minimum, it must check with the original sources or other reliable sources of the disputed information and inform them of the nature of the consumer's dispute. In reinvestigating and attempting to verify a disputed credit transaction, a consumer reporting agency may rely on the accuracy of a creditor's ledger sheets and need not require the creditor to produce documentation such as the actual signed sales slips. Depending on the nature of the dispute, reinvestigation and verification may require more than asking the original source of the disputed information the same question and receiving the same answer. If the original source is contacted for reinvestigation, the consumer reporting agency should at least explain to the source that the original statement has been disputed, state the consumer's position, and then ask whether the source would confirm the information, qualify it, or accept the consumer's explanation.

3. Complaint of Insufficient File, or Lack of File

The FCRA does not require a consumer reporting agency to add new items of information to its file. A consumer reporting agency is not required to create new files on consumers for whom it has no file, nor is it required to add new lines of information about new accounts not reflected in an existing file, because the section permits the consumer to dispute only the completeness or accuracy of particular items of information in the file. If a consumer reporting agency chooses to add lines of information at the consumer's request, it may charge a fee for doing so.

4. Explanation of Extenuating Circumstances

A consumer reporting agency has no duty to reinvestigate, or take any other action under this section, if a consumer merely provides a reason for a failure to pay a debt (e.g., sudden illness or layoff), and does not challenge the accuracy or completeness of the item of information in the file relating to a debt. Most creditors are aware that a variety of circumstances may render consumers unable to repay credit obligations. Although a consumer reporting agency is not required to accept a consumer dispute statement that does not challenge the accuracy or completeness of an item in the consumer's file, it may accept such a statement and may charge a fee for doing so.

5. Reinvestigation of a Debt

A consumer reporting agency must reinvestigate if a consumer conveys to it a dispute concerning the validity or status of a debt, such as whether the debt was owed by the consumer, or whether the debt had subsequently been paid. For example, if a consumer alleges that a judgment reflected in the file as unpaid has been satisfied, or notifies a consumer reporting agency that a past due obligation reflected in the file as unpaid was subsequently paid, the consumer reporting agency must reinvestigate the matter. If a file reflects a debt discharged in bankruptcy without reflecting subsequent reaffirmation and payment of that debt, a consumer may require that the item be reinvestigated.

6. Status of a Debt

The consumer reporting agency must, upon reinvestigation, ''record the current status'' of the disputed item. This requires inclusion of any information relating to a change in status of an ongoing matter (e.g., that a credit account had been closed, that a debt shown as past due had subsequently been paid or discharged in bankruptcy, or that a debt shown as discharged in bankruptcy was later reaffirmed and/or paid).

7. Dispute Conveyed to Party Other Than the Consumer Reporting Agency

A consumer reporting agency is required to take action under this section only if the consumer directly communicates a dispute to it. It is not required to respond to a dispute of information that the consumer merely conveys to others (e.g., to a source of information). (But see, however, discussion in section 607, item 3A, of consumer reporting agencies' duties to correct errors that come to their attention.)

8. Dispute Conveyed to the Consumer Reporting Agency by a Party Other Than the Consumer

A consumer reporting agency need not reinvestigate a dispute about a consumer's file raised by any third party, because the obligation under the section arises only where an ''item of information in his file is disputed by the consumer.''

9. Consumer Disclosures and Adverse Action Not Prerequisites to Reinvestigation Duty

A consumer reporting agency's obligation to reinvestigate disputed items is not contingent upon the consumer's having been denied a benefit or having asserted any rights under the FCRA other than disputing items of information.

10. Reasonable Period of Time

A consumer reporting agency is required to reinvestigate and record the current status of disputed information within a reasonable period of time after the consumer conveys the dispute to it. Although consumer reporting agencies are able to reinvestigate most disputes within 30 days, a ''reasonable time'' for a particular reinvestigation may be shorter or longer depending on the circumstances of the dispute. For example, where the consumer provides documentary evidence (e.g., a certified copy of a court record to show that a judgment has been paid) when submitting the dispute, the creditor may require a shorter time to reinvestigate. On the other hand, where the dispute is more complicated than normal (e.g., the consumer alleges in good faith that a creditor has falsified its report of the consumer's account history because of a personal grudge), the ''reasonable time'' needed to conduct the reinvestigation may be longer.

11. Frivolous or Irrelevant

The mere presence of contradictory information in the file does not provide the consumer reporting agency ''reasonable grounds to believe that the dispute by the consumer is frivolous or irrelevant.'' A consumer reporting agency must assume a consumer's dispute is bona fide, unless there is evidence to the contrary. Such evidence may constitute receipt of letters from consumers disputing all information in their files without providing any allegations concerning the specific items in the files, or of several letters in similar format that indicate that a particular third party (e.g., a ''credit repair'' operator) is counselling consumers to dispute all items in their files, regardless of whether the information is known to be accurate. The agency is not required to repeat a reinvestigation that it has previously conducted simply because the consumer reiterates a dispute about the same item of information, unless the consumer provides additional evidence that the item is inaccurate or incomplete, or alleges changed circumstances.

12. Deletion of Accurate Information That has not Been Disputed

The consumer reporting agency is not required to delete accurate information that could not be verified upon reinvestigation, if it has not been ''disputed by a consumer.'' For example, if a creditor deletes adverse information from its files with the result that information could not be reverified if disputed, it is still permissible for a consumer reporting agency to report it (subject to the obsolescence provisions of section 605) until it is disputed.

13. Consumer Dispute Statements on Multiple Items

A consumer who disputes multiple items of information in his file may submit a one hundred word statement as to each disputed item.

14. Conveying Dispute Statements to Recipients of Subsequent Reports.

A consumer reporting agency may not merely tell the recipient of a subsequent report containing disputed information that the consumer's statement is on file but will be provided only if requested, because subsection (c) requires the agency to provide either the statement or ''a clear and accurate codification or summary thereof.''

*Section 612—Charges for Certain Disclosures*

''A consumer reporting agency shall make all disclosures pursuant to section 609 and

furnish all consumer reports pursuant to section 611(d) without charge to the consumer if, within thirty days after receipt by such consumer of a notification pursuant to section 615 or notification from a debt collection agency affiliated with such consumer reporting agency stating that the consumer's credit rating may be or has been adversely affected, the consumer makes a request under section 609 or 611(d). Otherwise, the consumer reporting agency may impose a reasonable charge on the consumer for making disclosure to such consumer pursuant to section 609, the charge for which shall be indicated to the consumer prior to making disclosure; and for furnishing notifications, statements, summaries, or codifications to persons designated by the consumer pursuant to section 611(d), the charge for which shall be indicated to the consumer prior to furnishing such information and shall not exceed the charge that the consumer reporting agency would impose on each designated recipient for a consumer report except that no charge may be made for notifying such persons of the deletion of information which is found to be inaccurate or which can no longer be verified.''

1. Irrelevance of Subsequent Grant of Credit or Reason for Denial

A consumer denied credit because of a consumer report from a consumer reporting agency has the right to a free disclosure from that agency within 30 days of receipt of the section 615(a) notice, even if credit was subsequently granted or the basis of the denial was that the references supplied by the consumer are too few or too new to appear in the credit file.

2. Charge for Reinvestigation Prohibited

This section does not permit consumer reporting agencies to charge for making the reinvestigation or following other procedures required by section 611 (a)–(c).

3. Permissible Charges for Services Requested by Consumers

A consumer reporting agency may charge fees for creating files on consumers at their request, or for other services not required by the FCRA that are requested by consumers.

*Section 613—Public Record Information for Employment Purposes*

''A consumer reporting agency which furnishes a consumer report for employment purposes and which for that purpose compiles and reports items of information on consumers which are matters of public record and are likely to have an adverse effect upon a consumer's ability to obtain employment shall—

(1) at the time such public record information is reported to the user of such consumer report, notify the consumer of the fact that public record information is being reported by the consumer reporting agency, together with the name and address of the person to whom such information is being reported; or

(2) maintain strict procedures designed to insure that whenever public record information which is likely to have an adverse effect on a consumer's ability to obtain employment is reported it is complete and up to date. For purposes of this paragraph, items of public record relating to arrests, indictments, convictions, suits, tax liens, and outstanding judgments shall be considered up to date if the current public record status of the item at the time of the report is reported.''

1. Relation to Other Sections

A consumer reporting agency that complies with section 613(1) must also follow reasonable procedures to assure maximum possible accuracy, as required by section 607(b).

2. Alternate Methods of Compliance

A consumer reporting agency that furnishes public record information for employment purposes must comply with either subsection (1) or (2), but need not comply with both.

3. Information From Another Consumer Reporting Agency

If a consumer reporting agency uses information or reports from other consumer reporting agencies in a report for employment purposes, it must comply with this section.

4. Method of Providing Notice

A consumer reporting agency may use first class mail to provide the notice required by subsection (1).

5. Waiver

The procedures required by this section cannot be waived by the consumer to whom the report relates.

*Section 614—Restrictions on Investigative Consumer Reports*

''Whenever a consumer reporting agency prepares an investigative consumer report, no adverse information in the consumer report (other than information which is a matter of public record) may be included in a subsequent consumer report unless such adverse information has been verified in the process of making such subsequent consumer report, or the adverse information was received within the three-month period preceding the date the subsequent report is furnished.''

*Section 615—Requirements on Users of Consumer Reports*

(a) Whenever credit or insurance for personal, family, or household purposes, or employment involving a consumer is denied or the charge for such credit or insurance is increased either wholly or partly because of information contained in a consumer report from a consumer reporting agency, the user of the consumer report shall so advise the consumer against whom such adverse action has been taken and supply the name and address of the consumer reporting agency making the report.

(b) Whenever credit for personal, family, or household purposes involving a consumer is denied or the charge for such credit is increased either wholly or partly because of information obtained from a person other than a consumer reporting agency bearing upon the consumer's credit worthiness, credit standing, credit capacity, character, general reputation, personal characteristics, or mode of living, the user of such information shall, within a reasonable period of time, upon the consumer's written request for the reasons for such adverse action received within 60 days after learning of such adverse action, disclose the nature of the information to the consumer. The user of such information shall clearly and accurately disclose to the consumer his right to make such written request at the time such adverse action is communicated to the consumer.

(c) No person shall be held liable for any violation of this section if he shows by a preponderance of the evidence that at the time of the alleged violation he maintained reasonable procedures to assure compliance with the provisions of subsections (a) and (b).''

1. Relation to Other Sections and Regulation B

Sections 606 and 615 are the only two sections that require users of reports to make disclosures to consumers. Section 606 applies only to users of ''investigative consumer reports.'' Creditors should not confuse compliance with section 615(a), which only requires disclosure of the name and address of the consumer reporting agency, and compliance with the Equal Credit Opportunity Act, 15 U.S.C. 1691 *et seq.* and Regulation B, 12 C.F.R. 202, which require disclosure of the *reasons* for adverse action. Compliance with section 615(a), therefore, does not constitute compliance with Regulation B.

2. Limited Scope of Requirements

The section does not require that creditors disclose their credit criteria or standards or that employees furnish copies of personnel files to former employees. The section does not require that the user provide any kind of advance notification to consumers before a consumer report is obtained. (See section 606 regarding notice of investigative consumer reports.)

3. Method of Disclosure

The disclosures required by this section need not be made in writing. However, users will have evidence that they have taken reasonable steps to comply with this section if they provide written disclosures and retain copies for at least two years, the applicable statute of limitations for most civil liability actions under the FCRA.

4. Adverse Action Based on Direct Information

This section does not require that a user send any notice to a consumer concerning adverse action regarding that consumer that is based neither on information from a consumer reporting agency nor on information from a third party. For example, no disclosures are required concerning adverse action based on information provided by the consumer in an application or based on past experience in direct transactions with the consumer.

5. Creditors Using ''Prescreened'' Mailing Lists

A creditor is not required to provide notices regarding consumer reporting agencies that prepare mailing lists by ''prescreening'' because they do not involve consumer requests for credit and credit has not been denied to consumers whose names are deleted from a list furnished to the agency for use in this procedure. See discussion of ''prescreening,'' under section 604(3)(A), item 6, *supra.*

6. Applicability to Users of Motor Vehicle Reports

An insurer that refuses to issue a policy, or charges a higher than normal premium, based on a motor vehicle report is required to comply with subsection(a).

7. Securities and Insurance Transactions

A consumer report user that denies credit to a consumer in connection with a securities transaction must provide the required notice, because the denial is of ''credit * * * for personal purposes,'' unless the consumer engages in such transactions as a business.

8. Denial of Employment

An employer must provide the notice required by subsection (a) to an individual who has applied for employment and has been rejected based on a consumer report. However, an employer is not required to send a notice when it decides not to offer a position to an individual who has not applied for it, because

in this case employment is not ''denied.'' (See discussion in section 606, item 4, *supra*.)

9. Adverse Action Involving Credit

A creditor must provide the required notice when it denies the consumer's request for credit (including a rejection based on a scoring system, where a credit report received less than the maximum number of points possible and caused the application to receive an insufficient score), denies the consumer's request for increased credit, grants credit in an amount less than the consumer requested, or raises the charge for credit.

10. Adverse Action Not Involving Credit, Insurance or Employment

The Act does not require that a report user provide any notice to consumers when taking adverse action not relating to credit, insurance or employment. For example, a landlord who refuses to rent an apartment to a consumer based on credit or other information in a consumer report need not provide the notice. Similarly, a party that uses credit or other information in a consumer report as a basis for refusing to accept payment by check need not comply with this section. Checks have historically been treated as cash items, and thus such refusal does not involve a denial of credit, insurance or employment.

11. Adverse Action Based on Non-derogatory Adverse Information

A party taking adverse action concerning credit or insurance or denying employment, ''wholly or partly because of information contained in a consumer report,'' must provide the required notice, even if the information is not derogatory. For example, the user must give the notice if the denial is based wholly or partly on the absence of a file or on the fact that the file contained insufficient references.

12. Name and Address of the Consumer Reporting Agency

The ''section 615(a)'' notice must include the consumer reporting agency's street address, not just a post office box address.

13. Agency To Be Identified

The consumer report user should provide the name and address of the consumer reporting agency from which it obtained the consumer report, even if that agency obtained all or part of the report from another agency.

14. Denial Based Partly on a Consumer Report

A ''section 615(a)'' notice must be sent even if the adverse action is based only partly on a consumer report.

15. Denial of Credit Based on Information From ''Third Parties''

Subsection (b) imposes requirements on a creditor when it denies (or increases the charge for) credit for personal, family or household purposes involving a consumer, based on information from a ''third party'' source, which means a source *other* than the consumer reporting agency, the creditor's own files, or the consumer's application (e.g., creditor, employer, landlord, or the public record). Where a creditor denies a consumer's application based on information obtained directly from another lender, even if the lender's name was furnished to the creditor by a consumer reporting agency, the creditor must give a ''third party'' disclosure.

16. Substance of Required ''Third Party'' Disclosures

When the adverse action is communicated to the consumer, the creditor must clearly and accurately disclose to the consumer his or her right to make a written request for the disclosure of the nature of the third party information that led to the adverse action. Upon timely receipt of such a request, however, the creditor need disclose only the nature of the information that led to the adverse action (e.g., history of late rent payments or bad checks); it need not identify the source that provided the information or the criteria that led to the adverse action. A creditor may comply with subsection (b) by providing a statement of the nature of the third party information that led to the denial when it notifies the consumer of the denial. A statement of principal, specific reasons for adverse action based on third party information that is sufficient to comply with the requirements of the Equal Credit Opportunity Act (e.g., ''unable to verify employment'') is sufficient to constitute disclosure of the ''nature of the information'' under subsection (b).

*Section 616—Civil Liability for Willful Noncompliance*

Section 616 permits consumers who sue and prove willful noncompliance with the Act to recover actual damages, punitive damages, and the costs of the action, together with reasonable attorney's fees.

*Section 617—Civil Liability for Negligent Noncompliance*

Section 617 permits consumers who sue and prove negligent noncompliance with the Act to recover actual damages and the costs of the action, together with reasonable attorney's fees.

*Section 618—Jurisdiction of Courts; Limitation of Actions*

Section 618 provides that any action brought under section 616 or section 617 may be brought in any United States district court or other court of competent jurisdiction. Such suit must be brought within two years from the date on which liability arises, unless a defendant has materially and willfully misrepresented information the Act requires to be disclosed, and the information misrepresented is material to establishment of the defendant's liability. In that event, the action must be brought within two years after the individual discovers the misrepresentation.

*Section 619—Obtaining Information Under False Pretense*

Section 619 provides criminal sanctions against any person who knowingly and willfully obtains information on a consumer from a consumer reporting agency under false pretenses.

1. Relation to Other Sections

The presence of this provision does not excuse a consumer reporting agency's failure to follow reasonable procedures, as required by section 607(a), to limit the furnishing of consumer reports to the purposes listed under section 604.

*Section 620—Unauthorized Disclosures by Officers or Employees*

Section 620 provides criminal sanctions against any officer or employee of a consumer reporting agency who knowingly and willfully provides information concerning an individual from the agency's file to a person not authorized to receive it.

*Section 621—Administrative Enforcement*

This section gives the Federal Trade Commission authority to enforce the Act with respect to consumer reporting agencies, users of reports, and all others, except to the extent that it gives enforcement jurisdiction specifically to some other agency. Those excepted from the Commission's enforcement jurisdiction include certain financial institutions regulated by Federal agencies or boards, Federal credit unions, common carriers subject to acts to regulate commerce, air carriers, and parties subject to the Packers and Stockyards Act, 1921.

1. General

The Commission can use its cease-and-desist power and other procedural, investigative and enforcement powers which it has under the FTC Act to secure compliance, irrespective of commerce or any other jurisdictional tests in the FTC Act.

2. Geographic Coverage

The Commission's authority encompasses the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, and all United States territories but does not extend to activities outside those areas.

3. Status of Commission Commentary and Staff Interpretations

The FCRA does not give any Federal agency authority to promulgate rules having the force and effect, of statutory provisions. The Commission has issued this Commentary, superseding the eight formal Interpretations of the Act (16 CFR 600.1–600.8), previously issued pursuant to §1.73 of the Commission's Rules, 16 CFR 1.73. The Commentary does not constitute substantive rules and does not have the force or effect of statutory provisions. It constitutes guidelines to clarify the Act that are advisory in nature and represent the Commission's views as to what particular provisions of the Act mean. Staff opinion letters constitute staff interpretations of the Act's provisions, but do not have the force or effect of statutory provisions and, as provided in §1.72 of the Commission's Rules, 16 CFR 1.72, do not bind the Commission.

*Section 622—Relation to State Laws*

''This title does not annul, alter, affect, or exempt any person subject to the provisions of this title from complying with the laws of any State with respect to the collection, distribution, or use of any information on consumers, except to the extent that those laws are inconsistent with any provision of this title, and then only to the extent of the inconsistency.''

1. Basic Rule

State law is pre-empted by the FCRA only when compliance with inconsistent State law would result in violation of the FCRA.

2. Examples of Statutes that are not Pre-empted

A State law requirement that an employer provide notice to a consumer before ordering a consumer report, or that a consumer reporting agency must provide the consumer with a written copy of his file, would not be pre-empted, because a party that complies with such provisions would not violate the FCRA.

3. Examples of Statutes that are Pre-empted

A State law authorizing grand juries to compel consumer reporting agencies to provide consumer reports, by means of subpoenas signed by a court clerk, is pre-empted by the FCRA's requirement that such reports be furnished only pursuant to an ''order of the court'' signed by a judge (section 604(1)), or furnished for other purposes not applicable

to grand jury subpoenas (section 604 (2)–(3)), and by section 607(a). A State statute requiring automatic disclosure of a deletion or dispute statement to every person who has previously received a consumer report containing the disputed information, regardless of whether the consumer designates such persons to receive this disclosure, is pre-empted by section 604 of the FCRA, which permits disclosure only for specified, permissible purposes and by section 607(a), which requires consumer reporting agencies to limit the furnishing of consumer reports to purposes listed under section 604. Absent a specific designation by the consumer, the consumer reporting agency has no reason to believe all past recipients would have a present, permissible purpose to receive the reports.

4. Statute Providing Access for Enforcement Purposes

A State ''little FCRA'' that permits State officials access to a consumer reporting agency's files for the purpose of enforcing that statute just as Federal agencies are permitted access to such files under the FCRA, is not pre-empted by the FCRA.

(Information collection requirements in this appendix were approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 3084–0091)

[55 FR 18808, May 4, 1990, as amended at 57 FR 4935, Feb. 11, 1992; 60 FR 45660, Sept. 1, 1995]

# PART 601—SUMMARY OF CONSUMER RIGHTS, NOTICE OF USER RESPONSIBILITIES, AND NOTICE OF FURNISHER RESPONSIBILITIES UNDER THE FAIR CREDIT REPORTING ACT

Sec.
601.1 Authority and purpose.
601.2 Legal effect.
APPENDIX A TO PART 601—PRESCRIBED SUMMARY OF CONSUMER RIGHTS
APPENDIX B TO PART 601—PRESCRIBED NOTICE OF FURNISHER RESPONSIBILITIES
APPENDIX C TO PART 601—PRESCRIBED NOTICE OF USER RESPONSIBILITIES

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 1681g and 1681s.

SOURCE: 62 FR 35589, July 1, 1997, unless otherwise noted.

## § 601.1 Authority and purpose.

(a) *Authority*. This part is issued by the Commission pursuant to the provisions of the Fair Credit Reporting Act (15 U.S.C. 1681 et seq.), as most recently amended by the Consumer Credit Reporting Reform Act of 1996 (Title II, Subtitle D, Chapter 1, of the Omnibus Consolidated Appropriations Act for Fiscal Year 1997), Public Law 104–208, 110 Stat. 3009–426 (Sept. 30, 1996).

(b) *Purpose*. The purpose of this part is to comply with sections 607(c) and 609(c) of the Fair Credit Reporting Act, as amended. Section 609(c)(3) directs the FTC to prescribe the form and content of a summary of consumers' legal rights under the FCRA that the amended law requires each consumer reporting agency to provide when disclosing the information in its file to consumers, and section 609(c)(4) provides that the summary need not be provided until the FTC has in fact prescribed its form and content. Section 607(d)(2) directs the FTC to prescribe the content of notices that consumer reporting agencies are required to provide to parties that supply information to, or purchase consumer reports from, the agency. These notices will set forth the responsibilities under the FCRA of all persons who furnish information to consumer reporting agencies or use information subject to the FCRA.

## § 601.2 Legal effect.

The forms prescribed by the FTC do not constitute a trade regulation rule. They carry out the directive in the statute that the FTC prescribe the summary and notices. A consumer reporting agency that provides notices substantially similar to those prescribed by the FTC will be in compliance with Section 607(d) or 609(c) of the FCRA, as applicable.

## APPENDIX A TO PART 601—PRESCRIBED SUMMARY OF CONSUMER RIGHTS

The prescribed form for this summary is as a separate document, on paper no smaller than 8½ × 11 inches in size, with text no less than 12-point type (8-point for the chart of federal agencies), in bold or capital letters as indicated. The form in this appendix prescribes both the content and the sequence of items in the required summary. A summary may accurately reflect changes in numerical items that change over time (e.g., dollar amounts, or phone numbers and addresses of federal agencies), and remain in compliance.

**A Summary of Your Rights Under the Fair Credit Reporting Act**

The federal Fair Credit Reporting Act (FCRA) is designed to promote accuracy, fairness, and privacy of information in the files of every "consumer reporting agency" (CRA). Most CRAs are credit bureaus that gather and sell information about you -- such as if you pay your bills on time or have filed bankruptcy -- to creditors, employers, landlords, and other businesses. You can find the complete text of the FCRA, 15 U.S.C. §§1681-1681u, at the Federal Trade Commission's web site (*http://www.ftc.gov*). The FCRA gives you specific rights, as outlined below. You may have additional rights under state law. You may contact a state or local consumer protection agency or a state attorney general to learn those rights.

- **You must be told if information in your file has been used against you.** Anyone who uses information from a CRA to take action against you -- such as denying an application for credit, insurance, or employment -- must tell you, and give you the name, address, and phone number of the CRA that provided the consumer report.

- **You can find out what is in your file.** At your request, a CRA must give you the information in your file, and a list of everyone who has requested it recently. There is no charge for the report if a person has taken action against you because of information supplied by the CRA, if you request the report within 60 days of receiving notice of the action. You also are entitled to one free report every twelve months upon request if you certify that (1) you are unemployed and plan to seek employment within 60 days, (2) you are on welfare, or (3) your report is inaccurate due to fraud. Otherwise, a CRA may charge you up to eight dollars.

- **You can dispute inaccurate information with the CRA.** If you tell a CRA that your file contains inaccurate information, the CRA must investigate the items (usually within 30 days) by presenting to its information source all relevant evidence you submit, unless your dispute is frivolous. The source must review your evidence and report its findings to the CRA. (The source also must advise national CRAs -- to which it has provided the data -- of any error.) The CRA must give you a written report of the investigation, and a copy of your report if the investigation results in any change. If the CRA's investigation does not resolve the dispute, you may add a brief statement to your file. The CRA must normally include a summary of your statement in future reports. If an item is deleted or a dispute statement is filed, you may ask that anyone who has recently received your report be notified of the change.

- **Inaccurate information must be corrected or deleted.** A CRA must remove or correct inaccurate or unverified information from its files, usually within 30 days after you dispute it. **However, the CRA is not required to remove accurate data from your file unless it is outdated (as described below) or cannot be verified.** If your dispute results in any change to your report, the CRA cannot reinsert into your file a disputed item unless the information source verifies its accuracy and completeness. In addition, the CRA must give you a written notice telling you it has reinserted the item. The notice must include the name, address and phone number of the information source.

- **You can dispute inaccurate items with the source of the information.** If you tell anyone -- such as a creditor who reports to a CRA -- that you dispute an item, they may not then report the information to a CRA without including a notice of your dispute. In addition, once you've notified the source of the error in writing, it may not continue to report the information if it is, in fact, an error.

- **Outdated information may not be reported.** In most cases, a CRA may not report negative information that is more than seven years old; ten years for bankruptcies.

- **Access to your file is limited.** A CRA may provide information about you only to people with a need recognized by the FCRA -- usually to consider an application with a creditor, insurer, employer, landlord, or other business.

- **Your consent is required for reports that are provided to employers, or reports that contain medical information.** A CRA may not give out information about you to your employer, or prospective employer, without your written consent. A CRA may not report medical information about you to creditors, insurers, or employers without your permission.

- **You may choose to exclude your name from CRA lists for unsolicited credit and insurance offers.** Creditors and insurers may use file information as the basis for sending you unsolicited offers of credit or insurance. Such offers must include a toll-free phone number for you to call if you want your name and address removed from future lists. If you call, you must be kept off the lists for two years. If you request, complete, and return the CRA form provided for this purpose, you must be taken off the lists indefinitely.

- **You may seek damages from violators.** If a CRA, a user or (in some cases) a provider of CRA data, violates the FCRA, you may sue them in state or federal court.

The FCRA gives several different federal agencies authority to enforce the FCRA:

| FOR QUESTIONS OR CONCERNS REGARDING: | PLEASE CONTACT: |
|---|---|
| CRAs, creditors and others not listed below | Federal Trade Commission<br>Consumer Response Center - FCRA<br>Washington, DC 20580 * 202-326-3761 |
| National banks, federal branches/agencies of foreign banks<br>(word "National" or initials "N.A." appear in or after bank's name) | Office of the Comptroller of the Currency<br>Compliance Management, Mail Stop 6-6<br>Washington, DC 20219 * 800-613-6743 |
| Federal Reserve System member banks (except national banks, and federal branches/agencies of foreign banks) | Federal Reserve Board<br>Division of Consumer & Community Affairs<br>Washington, DC 20551 * 202-452-3693 |
| Savings associations and federally chartered savings banks<br>(word "Federal" or initials "F.S.B." appear in federal institution's name) | Office of Thrift Supervision<br>Consumer Programs<br>Washington, DC 20552 * 800-842-6929 |
| Federal credit unions<br>(words "Federal Credit Union" appear in institution's name) | National Credit Union Administration<br>1775 Duke Street<br>Alexandria, VA 22314 * 703-518-6360 |
| State-chartered banks that are not members of the Federal Reserve System | Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation<br>Division of Compliance & Consumer Affairs<br>Washington, DC 20429 * 800-934-FDIC |
| Air, surface, or rail common carriers regulated by former Civil Aeronautics Board or Interstate Commerce Commission | Department of Transportation<br>Office of Financial Management<br>Washington, DC 20590 * 202-366-1306 |
| Activities subject to the Packers and Stockyards Act, 1921 | Department of Agriculture<br>Office of Deputy Administrator - GIPSA<br>Washington, DC 20250 * 202-720-7051 |

**Appendix B to Part 601 - Prescribed Notice of Furnisher Responsibilities**

This appendix prescribes the content of the required notice.

**NOTICES TO FURNISHERS OF INFORMATION:**
**OBLIGATIONS OF FURNISHERS UNDER THE FCRA**

The federal Fair Credit Reporting Act (FCRA), as amended, imposes responsibilities on all persons who furnish information to consumer reporting agencies (CRAs). These responsibilities are found in Section 623 of the FCRA. State law may impose additional requirements. All furnishers of information to CRAs should become familiar with the law and may want to consult with their counsel to ensure that they are in compliance. The FCRA, 15 U.S.C. §§1681-1681u, is set forth in full at the Federal Trade Commission's Internet web site (*http://www.ftc.gov*). Section 623 imposes the following duties:

**General Prohibition on Reporting Inaccurate Information:**

The FCRA prohibits information furnishers from providing information to a consumer reporting agency (CRA) that they know (or consciously avoid knowing) is inaccurate. However, the furnisher is not subject to this general prohibition if it clearly and conspicuously specifies an address to which consumers may write to notify the furnisher that certain information is inaccurate. *Sections 623(a)(1)(A) and (a)(1)(C)*

**Duty to Correct and Update Information:**

If at any time a person who regularly and in the ordinary course of business furnishes information to one or more CRAs determines that the information provided is not complete or accurate, the furnisher must provide complete and accurate information to the CRA. In addition, the furnisher must notify all CRAs that received the information of any corrections, and must thereafter report only the complete and accurate information. *Section 623(a)(2)*

**Duties After Notice of Dispute from Consumer:**

If a consumer notifies a furnisher, at an address specified by the furnisher for such notices, that specific information is inaccurate, and the information is in fact inaccurate, the furnisher must thereafter report the correct information to CRAs. *Section 623(a)(1)(B)*

If a consumer notifies a furnisher that the consumer disputes the completeness or accuracy of any information reported by the furnisher, the furnisher may not subsequently report that information to a CRA without providing notice of the dispute. *Section 623(a)(3)*

**Duties After Notice of Dispute from Consumer Reporting Agency:**

If a CRA notifies a furnisher that a consumer disputes the completeness or accuracy of information provided by the furnisher, the furnisher has a duty to follow certain procedures. The furnisher must:

• Conduct an investigation and review all relevant information provided by the CRA, including information given to the CRA by the consumer. *Sections 623(b)(1)(A) and (b)(1)(B)*

• Report the results to the CRA, and, if the investigation establishes that the information was, in fact, incomplete or inaccurate, report the results to all CRAs to which the furnisher provided the information that compile and maintain files on a nationwide basis. *Sections 623(b)(1)(C) and (b)(1)(D)*

• Complete the above within 30 days from the date the CRA receives the dispute (or 45 days, if the consumer later provides relevant additional information to the CRA). *Section 623(b)(2)*

**Duty to Report Voluntary Closing of Credit Accounts:**

If a consumer voluntarily closes a credit account, any person who regularly and in the ordinary course of business furnishes information to one or more CRAs must report this fact when it provides information to CRAs for the time period in which the account was closed. *Section 623(a)(4)*

**Duty to Report Dates of Delinquencies:**

If a furnisher reports information concerning a delinquent account placed for collection, charged to profit or loss, or subject to any similar action, the furnisher must, within 90 days after reporting the information, provide the CRA with the month and the year of the commencement of the delinquency that immediately preceded the action, so that the agency will know how long to keep the information in the consumer's file. *Section 623(a)(5)*

**Appendix C to Part 601 - Prescribed Notice of User Responsibilities**

This appendix prescribes the content of the required notice.

**NOTICE TO USERS OF CONSUMER REPORTS:**
**OBLIGATIONS OF USERS UNDER THE FCRA**

The federal Fair Credit Reporting Act (FCRA) requires that this notice be provided to inform users of consumer reports of their legal obligations. State law may impose additional requirements. This first section of this summary sets forth the responsibilities imposed by the FCRA on all users of consumer reports. The subsequent sections discuss the duties of users of reports that contain specific types of information, or that are used for certain purposes, and the legal consequences of violations. The FCRA, 15 U.S.C. §§1681-1681u, is set forth in full at the Federal Trade Commission's Internet web site (*http://www.ftc.gov*).

**I. OBLIGATIONS OF ALL USERS OF CONSUMER REPORTS**

**A. Users Must Have a Permissible Purpose**

Congress has limited the use of consumer reports to protect consumers' privacy. All users must have a permissible purpose under the FCRA to obtain a consumer report. Section 604 of the FCRA contains a list of the permissible purposes under the law. These are:

- As ordered by a court or a federal grand jury subpoena. *Section 604(a)(1)*

- As instructed by the consumer in writing. *Section 604(a)(2)*

- For the extension of credit as a result of an application from a consumer, or the review or collection of a consumer's account. *Section 604(a)(3)(A)*

- For employment purposes, including hiring and promotion decisions, where the consumer has given written permission. *Sections 604(a)(3)(B) and 604(b)*

- For the underwriting of insurance as a result of an application from a consumer. *Section 604(a)(3)(C)*

- When there is a legitimate business need, in connection with a business transaction that is initiated by the consumer. *Section 604(a)(3)(F)(i)*

- To review a consumer's account to determine whether the consumer continues to meet the terms of the account. *Section 604(a)(3)(F)(ii)*

- To determine a consumer's eligibility for a license or other benefit granted by a governmental instrumentality required by law to consider an applicant's financial responsibility or status. *Section 604(a)(3)(D)*

• For use by a potential investor or servicer, or current insurer, in a valuation or assessment of the credit or prepayment risks associated with an existing credit obligation. *Section 604(a)(3)(E)*

• For use by state and local officials in connection with the determination of child support payments, or modifications and enforcement thereof. *Sections 604(a)(4) and 604(a)(5)*

In addition, creditors and insurers may obtain certain consumer report information for the purpose of making unsolicited offers of credit or insurance. The particular obligations of users of this "prescreened" information are described in Section V below.

**B. Users Must Provide Certifications**

Section 604(f) of the FCRA prohibits any person from obtaining a consumer report from a consumer reporting agency (CRA) unless the person has certified to the CRA (by a general or specific certification, as appropriate) the permissible purpose(s) for which the report is being obtained and certifies that the report will not be used for any other purpose.

**C. Users Must Notify Consumers When Adverse Actions Are Taken**

The term "adverse action" is defined very broadly by Section 603 of the FCRA. "Adverse actions" include all business, credit, and employment actions affecting consumers that can be considered to have a negative impact -- such as unfavorably changing credit or contract terms or conditions, denying or canceling credit or insurance, offering credit on less favorable terms than requested, or denying employment or promotion.

**1. Adverse Actions Based on Information Obtained From a CRA**

If a user takes any type of adverse action that is based at least in part on information contained in a consumer report, the user is required by Section 615(a) of the FCRA to notify the consumer. The notification may be done in writing, orally, or by electronic means. It must include the following:

• The name, address, and telephone number of the CRA (including a toll-free telephone number, if it is a nationwide CRA) that provided the report.

• A statement that the CRA did not make the adverse decision and is not able to explain why the decision was made.

• A statement setting forth the consumer's right to obtain a free disclosure of the consumer's file from the CRA if the consumer requests the report within 60 days.

• A statement setting forth the consumer's right to dispute directly with the CRA the accuracy or completeness of any information provided by the CRA.

**2. Adverse Actions Based on Information Obtained From Third Parties Who Are Not Consumer Reporting Agencies**

If a person denies (or increases the charge for) credit for personal, family, or household purposes based either wholly or partly upon information from a person other than a CRA, and the information is the type of consumer information covered by the FCRA, Section 615(b)(1) of the FCRA requires that the user clearly and accurately disclose to the consumer his or her right to obtain disclosure of the nature of the information that was relied upon by making a written request within 60 days of notification. The user must provide the disclosure within a reasonable period of time following the consumer's written request.

**3. Adverse Actions Based on Information Obtained From Affiliates**

If a person takes an adverse action involving insurance, employment, or a credit transaction initiated by the consumer, based on information of the type covered by the FCRA, and this information was obtained from an entity affiliated with the user of the information by common ownership or control, Section 615(b)(2) requires the user to notify the consumer of the adverse action. The notification must inform the consumer that he or she may obtain a disclosure of the nature of the information relied upon by making a written request within 60 days of receiving the adverse action notice. If the consumer makes such a request, the user must disclose the nature of the information not later than 30 days after receiving the request. (Information that is obtained directly from an affiliated entity relating solely to its transactions or experiences with the consumer, and information from a consumer report obtained from an affiliate are not covered by Section 615(b)(2).)

## II. OBLIGATIONS OF USERS WHEN CONSUMER REPORTS ARE OBTAINED FOR EMPLOYMENT PURPOSES

If information from a CRA is used for employment purposes, the user has specific duties, which are set forth in Section 604(b) of the FCRA. The user must:

• Make a clear and conspicuous written disclosure to the consumer before the report is obtained, in a document that consists solely of the disclosure, that a consumer report may be obtained.

• Obtain prior written authorization from the consumer.

• Certify to the CRA that the above steps have been followed, that the information being obtained will not be used in violation of any federal or state equal opportunity law or regulation, and that, if any adverse action is to be taken based on the consumer report, a copy of the report and a summary of the consumer's rights will be provided to the consumer.

• Before taking an adverse action, provide a copy of the report to the consumer as well as the summary of the consumer's rights. (The user should receive this summary from the CRA, because Section 604(b)(1)(B) of the FCRA requires CRAs to provide a copy of the summary with each consumer report obtained for employment purposes.)

## III. OBLIGATIONS OF USERS OF INVESTIGATIVE CONSUMER REPORTS

Investigative consumer reports are a special type of consumer report in which information about a consumer's character, general reputation, personal characteristics, and mode of living is obtained through personal interviews. Consumers who are the subjects of such reports are given special rights under the FCRA. If a user intends to obtain an investigative consumer report, Section 606 of the FCRA requires the following:

• The user must disclose to the consumer that an investigative consumer report may be obtained. This must be done in a written disclosure that is mailed, or otherwise delivered, to the consumer not later than three days after the date on which the report was first requested. The disclosure must include a statement informing the consumer of his or her right to request additional disclosures of the nature and scope of the investigation as described below, and must include the summary of consumer rights required by Section 609 of the FCRA. (The user should be able to obtain a copy of the notice of consumer rights from the CRA that provided the consumer report.)

• The user must certify to the CRA that the disclosures set forth above have been made and that the user will make the disclosure described below.

• Upon the written request of a consumer made within a reasonable period of time after the disclosures required above, the user must make a complete disclosure of the nature and scope of the investigation that was requested. This must be made in a written statement that is mailed, or otherwise delivered, to the consumer no later than five days after the date on which the request was received from the consumer or the report was first requested, whichever is later in time.

## IV. OBLIGATIONS OF USERS OF CONSUMER REPORTS CONTAINING MEDICAL INFORMATION

Section 604(g) of the FCRA prohibits consumer reporting agencies from providing consumer reports that contain medical information for employment purposes, or in connection with credit or insurance transactions, without the specific prior consent of the consumer who is the subject of the report. In the case of medical information being sought for employment purposes, the consumer must explicitly consent to the release of the medical information in addition to authorizing the obtaining of a consumer report generally.

## V. OBLIGATIONS OF USERS OF "PRESCREENED" LISTS

The FCRA permits creditors and insurers to obtain limited consumer report information for use in connection with unsolicited offers of credit or insurance under certain circumstances. *Sections 603(l), 604(c), 604(e), and 615(d)* This practice is known as "prescreening" and typically involves obtaining a list of consumers from a CRA who meet certain preestablished criteria. If any person intends to use prescreened lists, that person must (1) before the offer is made, establish the criteria that will be relied upon to make the offer and to grant credit or insurance, and (2) maintain such criteria on file for a three-year period beginning on the date on which the offer is made to each consumer. In addition, any user must provide with each written solicitation a clear and conspicuous statement that:

- Information contained in a consumer's CRA file was used in connection with the transaction.

- The consumer received the offer because he or she satisfied the criteria for credit worthiness or insurability used to screen for the offer.

- Credit or insurance may not be extended if, after the consumer responds, it is determined that the consumer does not meet the criteria used for screening or any applicable criteria bearing on credit worthiness or insurability, or the consumer does not furnish required collateral.

- The.consumer may prohibit the use of information in his or her file in connection with future prescreened offers of credit or insurance by contacting the notification system established by the CRA that provided the report. This statement must include the address and toll-free telephone number of the appropriate notification system.

## VI. OBLIGATIONS OF RESELLERS

Section 607(e) of the FCRA requires any person who obtains a consumer report for resale to take the following steps:

- Disclose the identity of the end-user to the source CRA.

- Identify to the source CRA each permissible purpose for which the report will be furnished to the end-user.

- Establish and follow reasonable procedures to ensure that reports are resold only for permissible purposes, including procedures to obtain: (1) the identity of all end-users; (2) certifications from all users of each purpose for which reports will be used; and (3) certifications that reports will not be used for any purpose other than the purpose(s) specified to the reseller. Resellers must make reasonable efforts to verify this information before selling the report.

## VII. LIABILITY FOR VIOLATIONS OF THE FCRA

Failure to comply with the FCRA can result in state or federal enforcement actions, as well as private lawsuits. *Sections 616, 617, and 621.* In addition, any person who knowingly and willfully obtains a consumer report under false pretenses may face criminal prosecution. *Section 619*

# SUBCHAPTER G—RULES, REGULATIONS, STATEMENTS AND INTERPRETATIONS UNDER THE MAGNUSON-MOSS WARRANTY ACT

## PART 700—INTERPRETATIONS OF MAGNUSON-MOSS WARRANTY ACT


Sec.
700.1 Products covered.
700.2 Date of manufacture.
700.3 Written warranty.
700.4 Parties ''actually making'' a written warranty.
700.5 Expressions of general policy.
700.6 Designation of warranties.
700.7 Use of warranty registration cards.
700.8 Warrantor's decision as final.
700.9 Duty to install under a full warranty.
700.10 Section 102(c).
700.11 Written warranty, service contract, and insurance distinguished for purposes of compliance under the Act.
700.12 Effective date of 16 CFR parts 701 and 702.


AUTHORITY: Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, Pub. L. 93–637, 15 U.S.C. 2301.

SOURCE: 42 FR 36114, July 13, 1977, unless otherwise noted.

### § 700.1 Products covered.

(a) The Act applies to written warranties on tangible personal property which is normally used for personal, family, or household purposes. This definition includes property which is intended to be attached to or installed in any real property without regard to whether it is so attached or installed. This means that a product is a ''consumer product'' if the use of that type of product is not uncommon. The percentage of sales or the use to which a product is put by any individual buyer is not determinative. For example, products such as automobiles and typewriters which are used for both personal and commercial purposes come within the definition of consumer product. Where it is unclear whether a particular product is covered under the definition of consumer product, any ambiguity will be resolved in favor of coverage.

(b) Agricultural products such as farm machinery, structures and implements used in the business or occupation of farming are not covered by the Act where their personal, family, or household use is uncommon. However, those agricultural products normally used for personal or household gardening (for example, to produce goods for personal consumption, and not for resale) are consumer products under the Act.

(c) The definition of ''Consumer product'' limits the applicability of the Act to personal property, ''including any such property intended to be attached to or installed in any real property without regard to whether it is so attached or installed.'' This provision brings under the Act separate items of equipment attached to real property, such as air conditioners, furnaces, and water heaters.

(d) The coverage of separate items of equipment attached to real property includes, but is not limited to, appliances and other thermal, mechanical, and electrical equipment. (It does not extend to the wiring, plumbing, ducts, and other items which are integral component parts of the structure.) State law would classify many such products as fixtures to, and therefore a part of, realty. The statutory definition is designed to bring such products under the Act regardless of whether they may be considered fixtures under state law.

(e) The coverage of building materials which are not separate items of equipment is based on the nature of the purchase transaction. An analysis of the transaction will determine whether the goods are real or personal property. The numerous products which go into the construction of a consumer dwelling are all consumer products when sold ''over the counter,'' as by hardware and building supply retailers. This is also true where a consumer contracts for the purchase of such materials in connection with the improvement, repair, or modification of a home (for example, paneling, dropped ceilings, siding, roofing, storm windows, remodeling). However, where such

products are at the time of sale integrated into the structure of a dwelling they are not consumer products as they cannot be practically distinguished from realty. Thus, for example, the beams, wallboard, wiring, plumbing, windows, roofing, and other structural components of a dwelling are not consumer products when they are sold as part of real estate covered by a written warranty.

(f) In the case where a consumer contracts with a builder to construct a home, a substantial addition to a home, or other realty (such as a garage or an in-ground swimming pool) the building materials to be used are not consumer products. Although the materials are separately identifiable at the time the contract is made, it is the intention of the parties to contract for the construction of realty which will integrate the component materials. Of course, as noted above, any separate items of equipment to be attached to such realty are consumer products under the Act.

(g) Certain provisions of the Act apply only to products actually costing the consumer more than a specified amount. Section 103 applies to consumer products actually costing the consumer more than $10, excluding tax. The $10 minimum will be interpreted to include multiple-packaged items which may individually sell for less than $10, but which have been packaged in a manner that does not permit breaking the package to purchase an item or items at a price less than $10. Thus, a written warranty on a dozen items packaged and priced for sale at $12 must be designated, even though identical items may be offered in smaller quantities at under $10. This interpretation applies in the same manner to the minimum dollar limits in section 102 and rules promulgated under that section.

(h) Warranties on replacement parts and components used to repair consumer products are covered; warranties on services are not covered. Therefore, warranties which apply solely to a repairer's workmanship in performing repairs are not subject to the Act. Where a written agreement warrants both the parts provided to effect a repair and the workmanship in making that repair, the warranty must comply with the Act and the rules thereunder.

(i) The Act covers written warranties on consumer products ''distributed in commerce'' as that term is defined in section 101(3). Thus, by its terms the Act arguably applies to products exported to foreign jurisdictions. However, the public interest would not be served by the use of Commission resources to enforce the Act with respect to such products. Moreover, the legislative intent to apply the requirements of the Act to such products is not sufficiently clear to justify such an extraordinary result. The Commission does not contemplate the enforcement of the Act with respect to consumer products exported to foreign jurisdictions. Products exported for sale at military post exchanges remain subject to the same enforcement standards as products sold within the United States, its territories and possessions.

### §700.2 Date of manufacture.

Section 112 of the Act provides that the Act shall apply only to those consumer products manufactured after July 4, 1975. When a consumer purchases repair of a consumer product the date of manufacture of any replacement parts used is the measuring date for determining coverage under the Act. The date of manufacture of the consumer product being repaired is in this instance not relevant. Where a consumer purchases or obtains on an exchange basis a rebuilt consumer product, the date that the rebuilding process is completed determines the Act's applicability.

[42 FR 36114, July 13, 1977; 42 FR 38341, July 28, 1977]

### §700.3 Written warranty.

(a) The Act imposes specific duties and liabilities on suppliers who offer written warranties on consumer products. Certain representations, such as energy efficiency ratings for electrical appliances, care labeling of wearing apparel, and other product information disclosures may be express warranties under the Uniform Commercial Code. However, these disclosures alone are not written warranties under this Act. Section 101(6) provides that a written

affirmation of fact or a written promise of a specified level of performance must relate to a specified period of time in order to be considered a ''written warranty.'',[1] A product information disclosure without a specified time period to which the disclosure relates is therefore not a written warranty. In addition, section 111(d) exempts from the Act (except section 102(c)) any written warranty the making or content of which is required by federal law. The Commission encourages the disclosure of product information which is not deceptive and which may benefit consumers, and will not construe the Act to impede information disclosure in product advertising or labeling.

(b) Certain terms, or conditions, of sale of a consumer product may not be ''written warranties'' as that term is defined in section 101(6), and should not be offered or described in a manner that may deceive consumers as to their enforceability under the Act. For example, a seller of consumer products may give consumers an unconditional right to revoke acceptance of goods within a certain number of days after delivery without regard to defects or failure to meet a specified level of performance. Or a seller may permit consumers to return products for any reason for credit toward purchase of another item. Such terms of sale taken alone are not written warranties under the Act. Therefore, suppliers should avoid any characterization of such terms of sale as warranties. The use of such terms as ''free trial period'' and ''trade-in credit policy'' in this regard would be appropriate. Furthermore, such terms of sale should be stated separately from any written warranty. Of course, the offering and performance of such terms of sale remain subject to section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 45.

(c) The Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act generally applies to written warranties covering consumer products. Many consumer products are covered by warranties which are neither intended for, nor enforceable by, consumers. A common example is a warranty given by a component supplier to a manufacturer of consumer products. (The manufacturer may, in turn, warrant these components to consumers.) The component supplier's warranty is generally given solely to the product manufacturer, and is neither intended to be conveyed to the consumer nor brought to the consumer's attention in connection with the sale. Such warranties are not subject to the Act, since a written warranty under section 101(6) of the Act must become ''part of the basis of the bargain between a supplier and a buyer for purposes other than resale.'' However, the Act applies to a component supplier's warranty in writing which is given to the consumer. An example is a supplier's written warranty to the consumer covering a refrigerator that is sold installed in a boat or recreational vehicle. The supplier of the refrigerator relies on the boat or vehicle assembler to convey the written agreement to the consumer. In this case, the supplier's written warranty is to a consumer, and is covered by the Act.

### § 700.4 Parties "actually making" a written warranty.

Section 110(f) of the Act provides that only the supplier ''actually making'' a written warranty is liable for purposes of FTC and private enforcement of the Act. A supplier who does no more than distribute or sell a consumer product covered by a written warranty offered by another person or business and which identifies that person or business as the warrantor is not liable for failure of the written warranty to comply with the Act or rules thereunder. However, other actions and written and oral representations of such a supplier in connection with the offer or sale of a warranted product may obligate that supplier under the Act. If under State law the supplier is deemed to have ''adopted'' the written affirmation of fact, promise, or undertaking, the supplier is also obligated under the Act. Suppliers are advised to consult State law to determine those actions and representations which may

[1] A ''written warranty'' is also created by a written affirmation of fact or a written promise that the product is defect free, or by a written undertaking of remedial action within the meaning of section 101(6)(B).

make them co-warrantors, and therefore obligated under the warranty of the other person or business.

### §700.5 Expressions of general policy.

(a) Under section 103(b), statements or representations of general policy concerning customer satisfaction which are not subject to any specific limitation need not be designated as full or limited warranties, and are exempt from the requirements of sections 102, 103, and 104 of the Act and rules thereunder. However, such statements remain subject to the enforcement provisions of section 110 of the Act, and to section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 45.

(b) The section 103(b) exemption applies only to general policies, not to those which are limited to specific consumer products manufactured or sold by the supplier offering such a policy. In addition, to qualify for an exemption under section 103(b) such policies may not be subject to any specific limitations. For example, policies which have an express limitation of duration or a limitation of the amount to be refunded are not exempted. This does not preclude the imposition of reasonable limitations based on the circumstances in each instance a consumer seeks to invoke such an agreement. For instance, a warrantor may refuse to honor such an expression of policy where a consumer has used a product for 10 years without previously expressing any dissatisfaction with the product. Such a refusal would not be a specific limitation under this provision.

### §700.6 Designation of warranties.

(a) Section 103 of the Act provides that written warranties on consumer products manufactured after July 4, 1975, and actually costing the consumer more than $10, excluding tax, must be designated either ''Full (statement of duration) Warranty'' or ''Limited Warranty''. Warrantors may include a statement of duration in a limited warranty designation. The designation or designations should appear clearly and conspicuously as a caption, or prominent title, clearly separated from the text of the warranty. The full (statement of duration) warranty and limited warranty are the exclusive designations permitted under the Act, unless a specific exception is created by rule.

(b) Section 104(b)(4) states that ''the duties under subsection (a) (of section 104) extend from the warrantor to each person who is a consumer with respect to the consumer product.'' Section 101(3) defines a consumer as ''a buyer (other than for purposes of resale) of any consumer product, any person to whom such product is transferred during the duration of an implied or written warranty (or service contract) applicable to the product. * * *.'' Therefore, a full warranty may not expressly restrict the warranty rights of a transferee during its stated duration. However, where the duration of a full warranty is defined solely in terms of first purchaser ownership there can be no violation of section 104(b)(4), since the duration of the warranty expires, by definition, at the time of transfer. No rights of a subsequent transferee are cut off as there is no transfer of ownership ''during the duration of (any) warranty.'' Thus, these provisions do not preclude the offering of a full warranty with its duration determined exclusively by the period during which the first purchaser owns the product, or uses it in conjunction with another product. For example, an automotive battery or muffler warranty may be designated as ''full warranty for as long as you own your car.'' Because this type of warranty leads the consumer to believe that proof of purchase is not needed so long as he or she owns the product a duty to furnish documentary proof may not be reasonably imposed on the consumer under this type of warranty. The burden is on the warrantor to prove that a particular claimant under this type of warranty is not the original purchaser or owner of the product. Warrantors or their designated agents may, however, ask consumers to state or affirm that they are the first purchaser of the product.

### §700.7 Use of warranty registration cards.

(a) Under section 104(b)(1) of the Act a warrantor offering a full warranty may not impose on consumers any duty other than notification of a defect as a condition of securing remedy of

the defect or malfunction, unless such additional duty can be demonstrated by the warrantor to be reasonable. Warrantors have in the past stipulated the return of a ''warranty registration'' or similar card. By ''warranty registration card'' the Commission means a card which must be returned by the consumer shortly after purchase of the product and which is stipulated or implied in the warranty to be a condition precedent to warranty coverage and performance.

(b) A requirement that the consumer return a warranty registration card or a similar notice as a condition of performance under a full warranty is an unreasonable duty. Thus, a provision such as, ''This warranty is void unless the warranty registration card is returned to the warrantor'' is not permissible in a full warranty, nor is it permissible to imply such a condition in a full warranty.

(c) This does not prohibit the use of such registration cards where a warrantor suggests use of the card as one possible means of proof of the date the product was purchased. For example, it is permissible to provide in a full warranty that a consumer may fill out and return a card to place on file proof of the date the product was purchased. Any such suggestion to the consumer must include notice that failure to return the card will not affect rights under the warranty, so long as the consumer can show in a reasonable manner the date the product was purchased. Nor does this interpretation prohibit a seller from obtaining from purchasers at the time of sale information requested by the warrantor.

### § 700.8 Warrantor's decision as final.

A warrantor shall not indicate in any written warranty or service contract either directly or indirectly that the decision of the warrantor, service contractor, or any designated third party is final or binding in any dispute concerning the warranty or service contract. Nor shall a warrantor or service contractor state that it alone shall determine what is a defect under the agreement. Such statements are deceptive since section 110(d) of the Act gives state and federal courts jurisdiction over suits for breach of warranty and service contract.

### § 700.9 Duty to install under a full warranty.

Under section 104(a)(1) of the Act, the remedy under a full warranty must be provided to the consumer without charge. If the warranted product has utility only when installed, a full warranty must provide such installation without charge regardless of whether or not the consumer originally paid for installation by the warrantor or his agent. However, this does not preclude the warrantor from imposing on the consumer a duty to remove, return, or reinstall where such duty can be demonstrated by the warrantor to meet the standard of reasonableness under section 104(b)(1).

### § 700.10 Section 102(c).

(a) Section 102(c) prohibits tying arrangements that condition coverage under a written warranty on the consumer's use of an article or service identified by brand, trade, or corporate name unless that article or service is provided without charge to the consumer.

(b) Under a limited warranty that provides only for replacement of defective parts and no portion of labor charges, section 102(c) prohibits a condition that the consumer use only service (labor) identified by the warrantor to install the replacement parts. A warrantor or his designated representative may not provide parts under the warranty in a manner which impedes or precludes the choice by the consumer of the person or business to perform necessary labor to install such parts.

(c) No warrantor may condition the continued validity of a warranty on the use of only authorized repair service and/or authorized replacement parts for non-warranty service and maintenance. For example, provisions such as, ''This warranty is void if service is performed by anyone other than an authorized 'ABC' dealer and all replacement parts must be genuine 'ABC' parts,'' and the like, are prohibited where the service or parts are not covered by the warranty. These provisions violate the Act in two ways. First, they

violate the section 102 (c) ban against tying arrangements. Second, such provisions are deceptive under section 110 of the Act, because a warrantor cannot, as a matter of law, avoid liability under a written warranty where a defect is unrelated to the use by a consumer of ''unauthorized'' articles or service. This does not preclude a warrantor from expressly excluding liability for defects or damage caused by such ''unauthorized'' articles or service; nor does it preclude the warrantor from denying liability where the warrantor can demonstrate that the defect or damage was so caused.

### § 700.11 Written warranty, service contract, and insurance distinguished for purposes of compliance under the Act.

(a) The Act recognizes two types of agreements which may provide similar coverage of consumer products, the written warranty, and the service contract. In addition, other agreements may meet the statutory definitions of either ''written warranty'' or ''service contract,'' but are sold and regulated under state law as contracts of insurance. One example is the automobile breakdown insurance policies sold in many jurisdictions and regulated by the state as a form of casualty insurance. The McCarran-Ferguson Act, 15 U.S.C. 1011 et seq., precludes jurisdiction under federal law over ''the business of insurance'' to the extent an agreement is regulated by state law as insurance. Thus, such agreements are subject to the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act only to the extent they are not regulated in a particular state as the business of insurance.

(b) ''Written warranty'' and ''service contract'' are defined in sections 101(6) and 101(8) of the Act, respectively. A written warranty must be ''part of the basis of the bargain.'' This means that it must be conveyed at the time of sale of the consumer product and the consumer must not give any consideration beyond the purchase price of the consumer product in order to benefit from the agreement. It is not a requirement of the Act that an agreement obligate a supplier of the consumer product to a written warranty, but merely that it be part of the basis of the bargain between a supplier and a consumer. This contemplates written warranties by third-party non-suppliers.

(c) A service contract under the Act must meet the definitions of section 101(8). An agreement which would meet the definition of written warranty in section 101(6) (A) or (B) but for its failure to satisfy the basis of the bargain test is a service contract. For example, an agreement which calls for some consideration in addition to the purchase price of the consumer product, or which is entered into at some date after the purchase of the consumer product to which it applies, is a service contract. An agreement which relates only to the performance of maintenance and/or inspection services and which is not an undertaking, promise, or affirmation with respect to a specified level of performance, or that the product is free of defects in materials or workmanship, is a service contract. An agreement to perform periodic cleaning and inspection of a product over a specified period of time, even when offered at the time of sale and without charge to the consumer, is an example of such a service contract.

### § 700.12 Effective date of 16 CFR parts 701 and 702.

The Statement of Basis and Purpose of the final rules promulgated on December 31, 1975, provides that parts 701 and 702 of this chapter will become effective one year after the date of promulgation, December 31, 1976. The Commission intends this to mean that these rules apply only to written warranties on products manufactured after December 31, 1976.

## PART 701—DISCLOSURE OF WRITTEN CONSUMER PRODUCT WARRANTY TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Sec.
701.1 Definitions.
701.2 Scope.
701.3 Written warranty terms.
701.4 Owner registration cards.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 2302 and 2309.

SOURCE: 40 FR 60188, Dec. 31, 1975, unless otherwise noted.

**§ 701.1 Definitions.**

(a) *The Act* means the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Federal Trade Commission Improvement Act, 15 U.S.C. 2301, et seq.

(b) *Consumer product* means any tangible personal property which is distributed in commerce and which is normally used for personal, family, or household purposes (including any such property intended to be attached to or installed in any real property without regard to whether it is so attached or installed. Products which are purchased solely for commercial or industrial use are excluded solely for purposes of this part.

(c) *Written warranty* means:

(1) Any written affirmation of fact or written promise made in connection with the sale of a consumer product by a supplier to a buyer which relates to the nature of the material or workmanship and affirms or promises that such material or workmanship is defect free or will meet a specified level of performance over a specified period of time, or

(2) Any undertaking in writing in connection with the sale by a supplier of a consumer product to refund, repair, replace, or take other remedial action with respect to such product in the event that such product fails to meet the specifications set forth in the undertaking, which written affirmation, promise or undertaking becomes part of the basis of the bargain between a supplier and a buyer for purposes other than resale of such product.

(d) *Implied warranty* means an implied warranty arising under State law (as modified by sections 104(a) and 108 of the Act) in connection with the sale by a supplier of a consumer product.

(e) *Remedy* means whichever of the following actions the warrantor elects:

(1) Repair,

(2) Replacement, or

(3) Refund; except that the warrantor may not elect refund unless:

(i) The warrantor is unable to provide replacement and repair is not commercially practicable or cannot be timely made, or

(ii) The consumer is willing to accept such refund.

(f) *Supplier* means any person engaged in the business of making a consumer product directly or indirectly available to consumers.

(g) *Warrantor* means any supplier or other person who gives or offers to give a written warranty.

(h) *Consumer* means a buyer (other than for purposes of resale or use in the ordinary course of the buyer's business) of any consumer product, any person to whom such product is transferred during the duration of an implied or written warranty applicable to the product, and any other such person who is entitled by the terms of such warranty or under applicable State law to enforce against the warrantor the obligations of the warranty.

(i) *On the face of the warranty* means:

(1) Where the warranty is a single sheet with printing on both sides of the sheet or where the warranty is comprised of more than one sheet, the page on which the warranty text begins;

(2) Where the warranty is included as part of a larger document, such as a use and care manual, the page in such document on which the warranty text begins.

**§ 701.2 Scope.**

The regulations in this part establish requirements for warrantors for disclosing the terms and conditions of written warranties on consumer products actually costing the consumer more than $15.00.

**§ 701.3 Written warranty terms.**

(a) Any warrantor warranting to a consumer by means of a written warranty a consumer product actually costing the consumer more than $15.00 shall clearly and conspicuously disclose in a single document in simple and readily understood language, the following items of information:

(1) The identity of the party or parties to whom the written warranty is extended, if the enforceability of the written warranty is limited to the original consumer purchaser or is otherwise limited to persons other than every consumer owner during the term of the warranty;

(2) A clear description and identification of products, or parts, or characteristics, or components or properties covered by and where necessary for clarification, excluded from the warranty;

(3) A statement of what the warrantor will do in the event of a defect, malfunction or failure to conform with the written warranty, including the items or services the warrantor will pay for or provide, and, where necessary for clarification, those which the warrantor will not pay for or provide;

(4) The point in time or event on which the warranty term commences, if different from the purchase date, and the time period or other measurement of warranty duration;

(5) A step-by-step explanation of the procedure which the consumer should follow in order to obtain performance of any warranty obligation, including the persons or class of persons authorized to perform warranty obligations. This includes the name(s) of the warrantor(s), together with: The mailing address(es) of the warrantor(s), and/or the name or title and the address of any employee or department of the warrantor responsible for the performance of warranty obligations, and/or a telephone number which consumers may use without charge to obtain information on warranty performance;

(6) Information respecting the availability of any informal dispute settlement mechanism elected by the warrantor in compliance with part 703 of this subchapter;

(7) Any limitations on the duration of implied warranties, disclosed on the face of the warranty as provided in section 108 of the Act, accompanied by the following statement:

Some States do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you.

(8) Any exclusions of or limitations on relief such as incidental or consequential damages, accompanied by the following statement, which may be combined with the statement required in paragraph (a)(7) of this section:

Some States do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

(9) A statement in the following language:

This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from State to State.

(b) Paragraphs (a) (1) through (9) of this section shall not be applicable with respect to statements of general policy on emblems, seals or insignias issued by third parties promising replacement or refund if a consumer product is defective, which statements contain no representation or assurance of the quality or performance characteristics of the product; *Provided* That: (1) The disclosures required by paragraphs (a) (1) through (9) of this section are published by such third parties in each issue of a publication with a general circulation, and (2) such disclosures are provided free of charge to any consumer upon written request.

### §701.4 Owner registration cards.

When a warrantor employs any card such as an owner's registration card, a warranty registration card, or the like, and the return of such card is a condition precedent to warranty coverage and performance, the warrantor shall disclose this fact in the warranty. If the return of such card reasonably appears to be a condition precedent to warranty coverage and performance, but is not such a condition, that fact shall be disclosed in the warranty.

## PART 702—PRE-SALE AVAILABILITY OF WRITTEN WARRANTY TERMS

Sec.

702.1 Definitions.
702.2 Scope.
702.3 Pre-sale availability of written warranty terms.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 2302 and 2309.

SOURCE: 40 FR 60189, Dec. 31, 1975, unless otherwise noted.

### §702.1 Definitions.

(a) *The Act* means the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Federal Trade Commission Improvement Act, 15 U.S.C. 2301, *et seq.*

(b) *Consumer product* means any tangible personal property which is distributed in commerce and which is normally used for personal, family, or household purposes (including any such property intended to be attached to or installed in any real property without regard to whether it is so attached or

installed). Products which are purchased solely for commercial or industrial use are excluded solely for purposes of this part.

(c) *Written warranty* means—

(1) Any written affirmation of fact or written promise made in connection with the sale of a consumer product by a supplier to a buyer which relates to the nature of the material or workmanship and affirms or promises that such material or workmanship is defect free or will meet a specified level of performance over a specified period of time, or

(2) Any undertaking in writing in connection with the sale by a supplier of a consumer product to refund, repair, replace or take other remedial action with respect to such product in the event that such product fails to meet the specifications set forth in the undertaking,

which written affirmation, promise, or undertaking becomes part of the basis of the bargain between a supplier and a buyer for purposes other than resale of such product.

(d) *Warrantor* means any supplier or other person who gives or offers to give a written warranty.

(e) *Seller* means any person who sells or offers for sale for purposes other than resale or use in the ordinary course of the buyer's business any consumer product.

(f) *Supplier* means any person engaged in the business of making a consumer product directly or indirectly available to consumers.

[40 FR 60189, Dec. 31, 1975, as amended at 52 FR 7574, Mar. 12, 1987]

### § 702.2 Scope.

The regulations in this part establish requirements for sellers and warrantors for making the terms of any written warranty on a consumer product available to the consumer prior to sale.

### § 702.3 Pre-sale availability of written warranty terms.

The following requirements apply to consumer products actually costing the consumer more than $15.00:

(a) *Duties of seller.* Except as provided in paragraphs (c) through (d) of this section, the seller of a consumer product with a written warranty shall make a text of the warranty readily available for examination by the prospective buyer by:

(1) Displaying it in close proximity to the warranted product, or

(2) Furnishing it upon request prior to sale and placing signs reasonably calculated to elicit the prospective buyer's attention in prominent locations in the store or department advising such prospective buyers of the availability of warranties upon request.

(b) *Duties of the warrantor.* (1) A warrantor who gives a written warranty warranting to a consumer a consumer product actually costing the consumer more than $15.00 shall:

(i) Provide sellers with warranty materials necessary for such sellers to comply with the requirements set forth in paragraph (a) of this section, by the use of one or more by the following means:

(A) Providing a copy of the written warranty with every warranted consumer product; and/or

(B) Providing a tag, sign, sticker, label, decal or other attachment to the product, which contains the full text of the written warranty; and/or

(C) Printing on or otherwise attaching the text of the written warranty to the package, carton, or other container if that package, carton or other container is normally used for display purposes. If the warrantor elects this option a copy of the written warranty must also accompany the warranted product; and/or

(D) Providing a notice, sign, or poster disclosing the text of a consumer product warranty. If the warrantor elects this option, a copy of the written warranty must also accompany each warranted product.

(ii) Provide catalog, mail order, and door-to-door sellers with copies of written warranties necessary for such sellers to comply with the requirements set forth in paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section.

(2) Paragraph (a)(1) of this section shall not be applicable with respect to statements of general policy on emblems, seals or insignias issued by third parties promising replacement or

refund if a consumer product is defective, which statements contain no representation or assurance of the quality or performance characteristics of the product; provided that

(i) The disclosures required by §701.3(a) (1) through (9) of this part are published by such third parties in each issue of a publication with a general circulation, and

(ii) Such disclosures are provided free of charge to any consumer upon written request.

(c) *Catalog and mail order sales.* (1) For purposes of this paragraph:

(i) *Catalog or mail order sales* means any offer for sale, or any solicitation for an order for a consumer product with a written warranty, which includes instructions for ordering the product which do not require a personal visit to the seller's establishment.

(ii) *Close conjunction* means on the page containing the description of the warranted product, or on the page facing that page.

(2) Any seller who offers for sale to consumers consumer products with written warranties by means of a catalog or mail order solicitation shall:

(i) Clearly and conspicuously disclose in such catalog or solicitation in close conjunction to the description of warranted product, or in an information section of the catalog or solicitation clearly referenced, including a page number, in close conjunction to the description of the warranted product, *either:*

(A) The full text of the written warranty; or

(B) That the written warranty can be obtained free upon specific written request, and the address where such warranty can be obtained. If this option is elected, such seller shall promptly provide a copy of any written warranty requested by the consumer.

(d) *Door-to-door sales.* (1) For purposes of this paragraph:

(i) *Door-to-door sale* means a sale of consumer products in which the seller or his representative personally solicits the sale, including those in response to or following an invitation by a buyer, and the buyer's agreement to offer to purchase is made at a place other than the place of business of the seller.

(ii) *Prospective buyer* means an individual solicited by a door-to-door seller to buy a consumer product who indicates sufficient interest in that consumer product or maintains sufficient contact with the seller for the seller reasonably to conclude that the person solicited is considering purchasing the product.

(2) Any seller who offers for sale to consumers consumer products with written warranties by means of door-to-door sales shall, prior to the consummation of the sale, disclose the fact that the sales representative has copies of the warranties for the warranted products being offered for sale, which may be inspected by the prospective buyer at any time during the sales presentation. Such disclosure shall be made orally and shall be included in any written materials shown to prospective buyers.

[40 FR 60189, Dec. 31, 1975, as amended at 52 FR 7574, Mar. 12, 1987]

## PART 703—INFORMAL DISPUTE SETTLEMENT PROCEDURES

Sec.
703.1 Definitions.
703.2 Duties of warrantor.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS OF THE MECHANISM

703.3 Mechanism organization.
703.4 Qualification of members.
703.5 Operation of the Mechanism.
703.6 Recordkeeping.
703.7 Audits.
703.8 Openness of records and proceedings.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 2309 and 2310.

SOURCE: 40 FR 60215, Dec. 31, 1975, unless otherwise noted.

### §703.1 Definitions.

(a) *The Act* means the Magnuson-Moss Warranty—Federal Trade Commission Improvement Act, 15 U.S.C. 2301, *et seq.*

(b) *Consumer product* means any tangible personal property which is distributed in commerce and which is normally used for personal, family, or household purposes (including any such property intended to be attached to or installed in any real property without

regard to whether it is so attached or installed).

(c) *Written warranty* means:

(1) Any written affirmation of fact or written promise made in connection with the sale of a consumer product by a supplier to a buyer which relates to the nature of the material or workmanship and affirms or promises that such material or workmanship is defect free or will meet a specified level of performance over a specified period of time, or

(2) Any undertaking in writing in connection with the sale by a supplier of a consumer product to refund, repair, replace, or take other remedial action with respect to such product in the event that such product fails to meet the specifications set forth in the undertaking, which written affirmation, promise or undertaking becomes part of the basis of the bargain between a supplier and a buyer for purposes other than resale of such product.

(d) *Warrantor* means any person who gives or offers to give a written warranty which incorporates an informal dispute settlement mechanism.

(e) *Mechanism* means an informal dispute settlement procedure which is incorporated into the terms of a written warranty to which any provision of Title I of the Act applies, as provided in section 110 of the Act.

(f) *Members* means the person or persons within a Mechanism actually deciding disputes.

(g) *Consumer* means a buyer (other than for purposes of resale) of any consumer product, any person to whom such product is transferred during the duration of a written warranty applicable to the product, and any other person who is entitled by the terms of such warranty or under applicable state law to enforce against the warrantor the obligations of the warranty.

(h) *On the face of the warranty* means:

(1) If the warranty is a single sheet with printing on both sides of the sheet, or if the warranty is comprised of more than one sheet, the page on which the warranty text begins;

(2) If the warranty is included as part of a longer document, such as a use and care manual, the page in such document on which the warranty text begins.

**§ 703.2 Duties of warrantor.**

(a) The warrantor shall not incorporate into the terms of a written warranty a Mechanism that fails to comply with the requirements contained in §§ 703.3 through 703.8 of this part. This paragraph shall not prohibit a warrantor from incorporating into the terms of a written warranty the step-by-step procedure which the consumer should take in order to obtain performance of any obligation under the warranty as described in section 102(a)(7) of the Act and required by part 701 of this subchapter.

(b) The warrantor shall disclose clearly and conspicuously at least the following information on the face of the written warranty:

(1) A statement of the availability of the informal dispute settlement mechanism;

(2) The name and address of the Mechanism, or the name and a telephone number of the Mechanism which consumers may use without charge;

(3) A statement of any requirement that the consumer resort to the Mechanism before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by Title I of the Act; together with the disclosure that if a consumer chooses to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by Title I of the Act, resort to the Mechanism would not be required by any provision of the Act; and

(4) A statement, if applicable, indicating where further information on the Mechanism can be found in materials accompanying the product, as provided in § 703.2(c) of this section.

(c) The warrantor shall include in the written warranty or in a separate section of materials accompanying the product, the following information:

(1) Either (i) a form addressed to the Mechanism containing spaces requesting the information which the Mechanism may require for prompt resolution of warranty disputes; or (ii) a telephone number of the Mechanism which consumers may use without charge;

(2) The name and address of the Mechanism;

(3) A brief description of Mechanism procedures;

(4) The time limits adhered to by the Mechanism; and

(5) The types of information which the Mechanism may require for prompt resolution of warranty disputes.

(d) The warrantor shall take steps reasonably calculated to make consumers aware of the Mechanism's existence at the time consumers experience warranty disputes. Nothing contained in paragraphs (b), (c), or (d) of this section shall limit the warrantor's option to encourage consumers to seek redress directly from the warrantor as long as the warrantor does not expressly require consumers to seek redress directly from the warrantor. The warrantor shall proceed fairly and expeditiously to attempt to resolve all disputes submitted directly to the warrantor.

(e) Whenever a dispute is submitted directly to the warrantor, the warrantor shall, within a reasonable time, decide whether, and to what extent, it will satisfy the consumer, and inform the consumer of its decision. In its notification to the consumer of its decision, the warrantor shall include the information required in §703.2 (b) and (c) of this section.

(f) The warrantor shall:

(1) Respond fully and promptly to reasonable requests by the Mechanism for information relating to disputes;

(2) Upon notification of any decision of the Mechanism that would require action on the part of the warrantor, immediately notify the Mechanism whether, and to what extent, warrantor will abide by the decision; and

(3) Perform any obligations it has agreed to.

(g) The warrantor shall act in good faith in determining whether, and to what extent, it will abide by a Mechanism decision.

(h) The warrantor shall comply with any reasonable requirements imposed by the Mechanism to fairly and expeditiously resolve warranty disputes.

## MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS OF THE MECHANISM

### §703.3 Mechanism organization.

(a) The Mechanism shall be funded and competently staffed at a level sufficient to ensure fair and expeditious resolution of all disputes, and shall not charge consumers any fee for use of the Mechanism.

(b) The warrantor and the sponsor of the Mechanism (if other than the warrantor) shall take all steps necessary to ensure that the Mechanism, and its members and staff, are sufficiently insulated from the warrantor and the sponsor, so that the decisions of the members and the performance of the staff are not influenced by either the warrantor or the sponsor. Necessary steps shall include, at a minimum, committing funds in advance, basing personnel decisions solely on merit, and not assigning conflicting warrantor or sponsor duties to Mechanism staff persons.

(c) The Mechanism shall impose any other reasonable requirements necessary to ensure that the members and staff act fairly and expeditiously in each dispute.

### §703.4 Qualification of members.

(a) No member deciding a dispute shall be:

(1) A party to the dispute, or an employee or agent of a party other than for purposes of deciding disputes; or

(2) A person who is or may become a party in any legal action, including but not limited to class actions, relating to the product or complaint in dispute, or an employee or agent of such person other than for purposes of deciding disputes. For purposes of this paragraph (a) a person shall not be considered a ''party'' solely because he or she acquires or owns an interest in a party solely for investment, and the acquisition or ownership of an interest which is offered to the general public shall be prima facie evidence of its acquisition or ownership solely for investment.

(b) When one or two members are deciding a dispute, all shall be persons having no direct involvement in the manufacture, distribution, sale or service of any product. When three or more members are deciding a dispute, at least two-thirds shall be persons having no direct involvement in the manufacture, distribution, sale or service of any product. ''Direct involvement'' shall not include acquiring or owning an interest solely for investment, and the acquisition or ownership of an interest which is offered to the general

public shall be prima facie evidence of its acquisition or ownership solely for investment. Nothing contained in this section shall prevent the members from consulting with any persons knowledgeable in the technical, commercial or other areas relating to the product which is the subject of the dispute.

(c) Members shall be persons interested in the fair and expeditious settlement of consumer disputes.

### § 703.5 Operation of the Mechanism.

(a) The Mechanism shall establish written operating procedures which shall include at least those items specified in paragraphs (b) through (j) of this section. Copies of the written procedures shall be made available to any person upon request.

(b) Upon notification of a dispute, the Mechanism shall immediately inform both the warrantor and the consumer of receipt of the dispute.

(c) The Mechanism shall investigate, gather and organize all information necessary for a fair and expeditious decision in each dispute. When any evidence gathered by or submitted to the Mechanism raises issues relating to the number of repair attempts, the length of repair periods, the possibility of unreasonable use of the product, or any other issues relevant in light of Title I of the Act (or rules thereunder), including issues relating to consequential damages, or any other remedy under the Act (or rules thereunder), the Mechanism shall investigate these issues. When information which will or may be used in the decision, submitted by one party, or a consultant under § 703.4(b) of this part, or any other source tends to contradict facts submitted by the other party, the Mechanism shall clearly, accurately, and completely disclose to both parties the contradictory information (and its source) and shall provide both parties an opportunity to explain or rebut the information and to submit additional materials. The Mechanism shall not require any information not reasonably necessary to decide the dispute.

(d) If the dispute has not been settled, the Mechanism shall, as expeditiously as possible but at least within 40 days of notification of the dispute, except as provided in paragraph (e) of this section:

(1) Render a fair decision based on the information gathered as described in paragraph (c) of this section, and on any information submitted at an oral presentation which conforms to the requirements of paragraph (f) of this section (A decision shall include any remedies appropriate under the circumstances, including repair, replacement, refund, reimbursement for expenses, compensation for damages, and any other remedies available under the written warranty or the Act (or rules thereunder); and a decision shall state a specified reasonable time for performance);

(2) Disclose to the warrantor its decision and the reasons therefor;

(3) If the decision would require action on the part of the warrantor, determine whether, and to what extent, warrantor will abide by its decision; and

(4) Disclose to the consumer its decision, the reasons therefor, warrantor's intended actions (if the decision would require action on the part of the warrantor), and the information described in paragraph (g) of this section. For purposes of paragraph (d) of this section a dispute shall be deemed settled when the Mechanism has ascertained from the consumer that:

(i) The dispute has been settled to the consumer's satisfaction; and (ii) the settlement contains a specified reasonable time for performance.

(e) The Mechanism may delay the performance of its duties under paragraph (d) of this section beyond the 40 day time limit:

(1) Where the period of delay is due solely to failure of a consumer to provide promptly his or her name and address, brand name and model number of the product involved, and a statement as to the nature of the defect or other complaint; or

(2) For a 7 day period in those cases where the consumer has made no attempt to seek redress directly from the warrantor.

(f) The Mechanism may allow an oral presentation by a party to a dispute (or a party's representative) only if:

(1) Both warrantor and consumer expressly agree to the presentation;

(2) Prior to agreement the Mechanism fully discloses to the consumer the following information:

(i) That the presentation by either party will take place only if both parties so agree, but that if they agree, and one party fails to appear at the agreed upon time and place, the presentation by the other party may still be allowed;

(ii) That the members will decide the dispute whether or not an oral presentation is made;

(iii) The proposed date, time and place for the presentation; and

(iv) A brief description of what will occur at the presentation including, if applicable, parties' rights to bring witnesses and/or counsel; and

(3) Each party has the right to be present during the other party's oral presentation. Nothing contained in this paragraph (b) of this section shall preclude the Mechanism from allowing an oral presentation by one party, if the other party fails to appear at the agreed upon time and place, as long as all of the requirements of this paragraph have been satisfied.

(g) The Mechanism shall inform the consumer, at the time of disclosure required in paragraph (d) of this section that:

(1) If he or she is dissatisfied with its decision or warrantor's intended actions, or eventual performance, legal remedies, including use of small claims court, may be pursued;

(2) The Mechanism's decision is admissible in evidence as provided in section 110(a)(3) of the Act; and

(3) The consumer may obtain, at reasonable cost, copies of all Mechanism records relating to the consumer's dispute.

(h) If the warrantor has agreed to perform any obligations, either as part of a settlement agreed to after notification to the Mechanism of the dispute or as a result of a decision under paragraph (d) of this section, the Mechanism shall ascertain from the consumer within 10 working days of the date for performance whether performance has occurred.

(i) A requirement that a consumer resort to the Mechanism prior to commencement of an action under section 110(d) of the Act shall be satisfied 40 days after notification to the Mechanism of the dispute or when the Mechanism completes all of its duties under paragraph (d) of this section, whichever occurs sooner. Except that, if the Mechanism delays performance of its paragraph (d) of this section duties as allowed by paragraph (e) of this section, the requirement that the consumer initially resort to the Mechanism shall not be satisfied until the period of delay allowed by paragraph (e) of this section has ended.

(j) Decisions of the Mechanism shall not be legally binding on any person. However, the warrantor shall act in good faith, as provided in §703.2(g) of this part. In any civil action arising out of a warranty obligation and relating to a matter considered by the Mechanism, any decision of the Mechanism shall be admissible in evidence, as provided in section 110(a)(3) of the Act.

**§703.6 Recordkeeping.**

(a) The Mechanism shall maintain records on each dispute referred to it which shall include:

(1) Name, address and telephone number of the consumer;

(2) Name, address, telephone number and contact person of the warrantor;

(3) Brand name and model number of the product involved;

(4) The date of receipt of the dispute and the date of disclosure to the consumer of the decision;

(5) All letters or other written documents submitted by either party;

(6) All other evidence collected by the Mechanism relating to the dispute, including summaries of relevant and material portions of telephone calls and meetings between the Mechanism and any other person (including consultants described in §703.4(b) of this part);

(7) A summary of any relevant and material information presented by either party at an oral presentation;

(8) The decision of the members including information as to date, time and place of meeting, and the identity of members voting; or information on any other resolution;

(9) A copy of the disclosure to the parties of the decision;

(10) A statement of the warrantor's intended action(s);

(11) Copies of follow-up letters (or summaries of relevant and material portions of follow-up telephone calls) to the consumer, and responses thereto; and

(12) Any other documents and communications (or summaries of relevant and material portions of oral communications) relating to the dispute.

(b) The Mechanism shall maintain an index of each warrantor's disputes grouped under brand name and subgrouped under product model.

(c) The Mechanism shall maintain an index for each warrantor as will show:

(1) All disputes in which the warrantor has promised some performance (either by settlement or in response to a Mechanism decision) and has failed to comply; and

(2) All disputes in which the warrantor has refused to abide by a Mechanism decision.

(d) The Mechanism shall maintain an index as will show all disputes delayed beyond 40 days.

(e) The Mechanism shall compile semi-annually and maintain statistics which show the number and percent of disputes in each of the following categories:

(1) Resolved by staff of the Mechanism and warrantor has complied;

(2) Resolved by staff of the Mechanism, time for compliance has occurred, and warrantor has not complied;

(3) Resolved by staff of the Mechanism and time for compliance has not yet occurred;

(4) Decided by members and warrantor has complied;

(5) Decided by members, time for compliance has occurred, and warrantor has not complied;

(6) Decided by members and time for compliance has not yet occurred;

(7) Decided by members adverse to the consumer;

(8) No jurisdiction;

(9) Decision delayed beyond 40 days under § 703.5(e)(1) of this part;

(10) Decision delayed beyond 40 days under § 703.5(e)(2) of this part;

(11) Decision delayed beyond 40 days for any other reason; and

(12) Pending decision.

(f) The Mechanism shall retain all records specified in paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section for at least 4 years after final disposition of the dispute.

### § 703.7 Audits.

(a) The Mechanism shall have an audit conducted at least annually, to determine whether the Mechanism and its implementation are in compliance with this part. All records of the Mechanism required to be kept under § 703.6 of this part shall be available for audit.

(b) Each audit provided for in paragraph (a) of this section shall include at a minimum the following:

(1) Evaluation of warrantors' efforts to make consumers aware of the Mechanism's existence as required in § 703.2(d) of this part;

(2) Review of the indexes maintained pursuant to § 703.6 (b), (c), and (d) of this part; and

(3) Analysis of a random sample of disputes handled by the Mechanism to determine the following:

(i) Adequacy of the Mechanism's complaint and other forms, investigation, mediation and follow-up efforts, and other aspects of complaint handling; and

(ii) Accuracy of the Mechanism's statistical compilations under § 703.6(e) of this part. (For purposes of this subparagraph ''analysis'' shall include oral or written contact with the consumers involved in each of the disputes in the random sample.)

(c) A report of each audit under this section shall be submitted to the Federal Trade Commission, and shall be made available to any person at reasonable cost. The Mechanism may direct its auditor to delete names of parties to disputes, and identity of products involved, from the audit report.

(d) Auditors shall be selected by the Mechanism. No auditor may be involved with the Mechanism as a warrantor, sponsor or member, or employee or agent thereof, other than for purposes of the audit.

### § 703.8 Openness of records and proceedings.

(a) The statistical summaries specified in § 703.6(e) of this part shall be available to any person for inspection and copying.

(b) Except as provided under paragraphs (a) and (e) of this section, and paragraph (c) of § 703.7 of this part, all records of the Mechanism may be kept confidential, or made available only on such terms and conditions, or in such form, as the Mechanism shall permit.

(c) The policy of the Mechanism with respect to records made available at the Mechanism's option shall be set out in the procedures under § 703.5(a) of this part; the policy shall be applied uniformly to all requests for access to or copies of such records.

(d) Meetings of the members to hear and decide disputes shall be open to observers on reasonable and nondiscriminatory terms. The identity of the parties and products involved in disputes need not be disclosed at meetings.

(e) Upon request the Mechanism shall provide to either party to a dispute:

(1) Access to all records relating to the dispute; and

(2) Copies of any records relating to the dispute, at reasonable cost.

(f) The Mechanism shall make available to any person upon request, information relating to the qualifications of Mechanism staff and members.

# SUBCHAPTER H—RULES, REGULATIONS, STATEMENTS AND INTERPRETATIONS UNDER THE HART-SCOTT-RODINO ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT OF 1976

## PART 801—COVERAGE RULES


Sec.
801.1 Definitions.
801.2 Acquiring and acquired persons.
801.3 Activities in or affecting commerce.
801.4 Secondary acquisitions.
801.10 Value of voting securities and assets to be acquired.
801.11 Annual net sales and total assets.
801.12 Calculating percentage of voting securities or assets.
801.13 Voting securities or assets to be held as a result of acquisition.
801.14 Aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets.
801.15 Aggregation of voting securities and assets the acquisition of which was exempt.
801.20 Acquisitions subsequent to exceeding threshold.
801.21 Securities and cash not considered assets when acquired.
801.30 Tender offers and acquisitions of voting securities from third parties.
801.31 Acquisitions of voting securities by offerees in tender offers.
801.32 Conversion and acquisition.
801.33 Consummation of an acquisition by acceptance of tendered shares of payment.
801.40 Formation of joint venture or other corporations.
801.90 Transactions or devices for avoidance.


AUTHORITY: Sec. 7A(d), Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A(d), as added by sec. 201, Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94–435, 90 Stat. 1390.

SOURCE: 43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

### § 801.1 Definitions.

When used in the act and these rules—

(a)(1) *Person*. Except as provided in paragraphs (a) and (b) of § 801.12, the term *person* means an ultimate parent entity and all entities which it controls directly or indirectly.

*Examples:* 1. In the case of corporations, ''person'' encompasses the entire corporate structure, including all parent corporations, subsidiaries and divisions (whether consolidated or unconsolidated, and whether incorporated or unincorporated), and all related corporations under common control with any of the foregoing.

2. Corporations A and B are each directly controlled by the same foreign state. They are not included within the same ''person,'' although the corporations are under common control, because the foreign state which controls them is not an ''entity'' (see § 801.1(a)(2)). Corporations A and B* are the ultimate parent entities within persons ''A'', and ''B'' which include any entities each may control.

3. Since a natural person is an entity (see § 801.1(a)(2)), a natural person and a corporation which he or she controls are part of the same ''person.'' If that natural person controls two otherwise separate corporations, both corporations and the natural person are all part of the same ''person.''

4. See the example to § 801.2(a).

(2) *Entity*. The term *entity* means any natural person, corporation, company, partnership, joint venture, association, joint-stock company, trust, estate of a deceased natural person, foundation, fund, institution, society, union, or club, whether incorporated or not, wherever located and of whatever citizenship, or any receiver, trustee in bankruptcy or similar official or any liquidating agent for any of the foregoing, in his or her capacity as such; or any joint venture or other corporation which has not been formed but the acquisition of the voting securities or other interest in which, if already formed, would require notification under the act and these rules: *Provided, however,* That the term ''entity'' shall not include any foreign state, foreign government, or agency thereof (other than a corporation engaged in commerce), nor the United States, any of the States thereof, or any political subdivision or agency of either (other than a corporation engaged in commerce).

(3) *Ultimate parent entity*. The term *ultimate parent entity* means an entity which is not controlled by any other entity.

---

*Throughout the examples to the rules, persons are designated (''A'', ''B,'' etc.) with quotation marks, and entities are designated (A, B, etc.) without quotation marks.

*Examples:* 1. If corporation A holds 100 percent of the stock of subsidiary B, and B holds 75 percent of the stock of its subsidiary C, corporation A is the ultimate parent entity, since it controls subsidiary B directly and subsidiary C indirectly, and since it is the entity within the person which is not controlled by any other entity.

2. If corporation A is controlled by natural person D, natural person D is the ultimate parent entity.

3. P and Q are the ultimate parent entities within persons ''P'' and ''Q.'' If P and Q each own 50 percent of the voting securities of R, then P and Q are both ultimate parents of R, and R is part of both persons ''P'' and ''Q.''

(b) *Control.* The term *control* (as used in the terms *control(s), controlling, controlled by* and *under common control with*) means:

(1) *Either.* (i) Holding 50 percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer or

(ii) In the case of an entity that has no outstanding voting securities, having the right to 50 percent or more of the profits of the entity, or having the right in the event of dissolution to 50 percent or more of the assets of the entity; or

(2) Having the contractual power presently to designate 50 percent or more of the directors of a corporation, or in the case of unincorporated entities, of individuals exercising similar functions.

*Examples:* 1. Corporation A holds 100 percent of the stock of corporation B, 75 percent of the stock of corporation C, 50 percent of the stock of corporation D, and 30 percent of the stock of corporation E. Corporation A controls corporations B, C and D, but not corporation E. Corporation A is the ultimate parent entity of a person comprised of corporations A, B, C and D, and each of these corporations (but not corporation E) is ''included within the person.''

2. A statutory limited partnership agreement provides as follows: The general partner ''A'' is entitled to 50 percent of the partnership profits, ''B'' is entitled to 40 percent of the profits and ''C'' is entitled to 10 percent of the profits. Upon dissolution, ''B'' is entitled to 75 percent of the partnership assets and ''C'' is entitled to 25 percent of those assets. All limited and general partners are entitled to vote on the following matters: the dissolution of the partnership, the transfer of assets not in the ordinary course of business, any change in the nature of the business, and the removal of the general partner. The interest of each partner is evidenced by an ownership certificate that is transferable under the terms of the partnership agreement and is subject to the Securities Act of 1933. For purposes of these rules, control of this partnership is determined by subparagraph (1)(ii) of this paragraph. Although partnership interests may be securities and have some voting rights attached to them, they do not entitle the owner of that interest to vote for a corporate ''director'' or ''an individual exercising similar functions'' as required by §801.1(f)(1) below. Thus control of a partnership is not determined on the basis of either subparagraph (1)(i) or (2) of this paragraph. Consequently, ''A'' is deemed to control the partnership because of its right to 50 percent of the partnership's profits. ''B'' is also deemed to control the partnership because it is entitled to 75 percent of the partnership's assets upon dissolution.

3. ''A'' is a nonprofit charitable foundation that has formed a partnership joint venture with ''B,'' a nonprofit university, to establish C, a nonprofit hospital corporation that does not issue voting securities. Pursuant to its charter all surplus revenue from the hospital in excess of expenses and necessary capital investments is to be disbursed evenly to ''A'' and ''B.'' In the event of dissolution of the hospital corporation, the assets of the hospital are to be contributed to a local charitable medical facility then in need of financial assistance. Notwithstanding the hospital's designation of its disbursement funds as surplus rather than profits to maintain its charitable image, ''A'' and ''B'' would each be deemed to control C, pursuant to §801.1(b)(1)(ii), because each is entitled to 50 percent of the excess of the hospital's revenues over expenditures.

4. ''A'' is entitled to 50 percent of the profits of partnership B and 50 percent of the profits of partnership C. B and C form a partnership E with ''D'' in which each entity has a right to one-third of the profits. When E acquires company X, ''A'' must report the transaction (assuming it is otherwise reportable). Pursuant to §801.1(b)(1)(ii), E is deemed to be controlled by ''A,'' even though ''A'' ultimately will receive only one-third of the profits of E. Because B and C are considered as part of ''A,'' the rules attribute all profits to which B and C are entitled (two-thirds of the profits of E in this example) to ''A.'

(c) *Hold.* (1) Subject to the provisions of paragraphs (c) (2) through (8) of this section, the term *hold* (as used in the terms *hold(s), holding, holder* and *held*) means beneficial ownership, whether direct, or indirect through fiduciaries, agents, controlled entities or other means.

*Example:* If a stockbroker has stock in ''street name'' for the account of a natural person, only the natural person (who has

beneficial ownership) and not the stockbroker (which may have record title) ''holds'' that stock.

(2) The holdings of spouses and their minor children shall be holdings of each of them.

(3) Except for a common trust fund or collective investment fund within the meaning of 12 CFR 9.18(a) (both of which are hereafter referred to in this paragraph as ''collective investment funds''), and any revocable trust or an irrevocable trust in which the settlor retains a reversionary interest in the corpus, a trust, including a pension trust, shall hold all assets and voting securities constituting the corpus of the trust.

*Example:* Under this paragraph the trust—and not the trustee—''holds'' the voting securities and assets constituting the corpus of any irrevocable trust (in which the settlor retains no reversionary interest, and which is not a collective investment fund). Therefore, the trustee need not aggregate its holdings of any other assets or voting securities with the holdings of the trust for purposes of determining whether the requirements of the act apply to an acquisition by the trust. Similarly, the trustee, if making an acquisition for its own account, need not aggregate its holdings with those of any trusts for which it serves as trustee. (However, the trustee must aggregate any collective investment funds which it administers; see paragraph (c)(6) of this section.)

(4) The assets and voting securities constituting the corpus of a revocable trust or the corpus of an irrevocable trust in which the settlor(s) retain(s) a reversionary interest in the corpus shall be holdings of the settlor(s) of such trust.

(5) Except as provided in paragraph (c)(4) of this section, beneficiaries of a trust, including a pension trust or a collective investment fund, shall not hold any assets or voting securities constituting the corpus of such trust.

(6) A bank or trust company which administers one or more collective investment funds shall hold all assets and voting securities constituting the corpus of each such fund.

*Example:* Suppose A, a bank or trust company, administers collective investment funds W, X, Y and Z. Whenever person ''A'' is to make an acquisition, whether of not on behalf of one or more of the funds, it must aggregate the holdings of W, X, Y and Z in determining whether the requirements of the act apply to the acquisition.

(7) An insurance company shall hold all assets and voting securities held for the benefit of any general account of, or any separate account administered by, such company.

(8) A person holds all assets and voting securities held by the entities included within it; in addition to its own holding, an entity holds all assets and voting securities held by the entities which it controls directly or indirectly.

(d) *Affiliate.* An entity is an affiliate of a person if it is controlled, directly or indirectly, by the ultimate parent entity of such person.

(e)(1)(i) *United States person.* The term *United States person* means a person the ultimate parent entity of which—

(A) Is incorporated in the United States, is organized under the laws of the United States or has its principal offices within the United States; or

(B) If a natural person, either is a citizen of the United States or resides in the United States.

(ii) *United States issuer.* The term *United States issuer* means an issuer which is incorporated in the United States, is organized under the laws of the United States or has its principal offices within the United States.

(2)(i) *Foreign person.* The term *foreign person* means a person the ultimate parent entity of which—

(A) Is not incorporated in the United States, is not organized under the laws of the United States and does not have its principal offices within the United States; or

(B) If a natural person, neither is a citizen of the United States nor resides in the United States.

(ii) *Foreign issuer.* The term *foreign issuer* means an issuer which is not incorporated in the United States, is not organized under the laws of the United States and does not have its principal offices within the United States.

(f)(1) *Voting securities.* The term *voting securities* means any securities which at present or upon conversion entitle the owner or holder thereof to vote for the election of directors of the issuer, or of an entity included within the same person as the issuer, or, with respect to unincorporated entities, individuals exercising similar functions.

(2) *Convertible voting security.* The term *convertible voting security* means a

voting security which presently does not entitle its owner or holder to vote for directors of any entity.

(3) *Conversion.* The term *conversion* means the exercise of a right inherent in the ownership or holding of particular voting securities to exchange such securities for securities which presently entitle the owner or holder to vote for directors of the issuer or of any entity included within the same person as the issuer.

*Examples:* 1. The acquisition of convertible debentures which are convertible into common stock is an acquisition of ''voting securities.'' However, § 802.31 exempts the acquisition of such securities from the requirements of the act, provided that they have no present voting rights.

2. Options and warrants are also ''voting securities'' for purposes of the act, because they can be exchanged for securities with present voting rights. Section 802.31 exempts the acquisition of options and warrants as well, since they do not themselves have present voting rights and hence are convertible voting securities. Notification may be required prior to exercising options and warrants, however.

3. Assume that X has issued preferred shares which presently entitle the holder to vote for directors of X, and that these shares are convertible into common shares of X. Because the preferred shares confer a present right to vote for dirctors of X, they are ''voting securities.'' (See § 801.1(f)(1).) They are not ''convertible voting securities,'' however, because the definition of that term excludes securities which confer a present right to vote for directors of any entity. (See § 801.1(f)(2).) Thus, an acquisition of these preferred shares issued by X would not be exempt as an acquisition of ''convertible voting securities.'' (See § 802.31.) If the criteria in section 7A(a) are met, an acquisition of X's preferred shares would be subject to the reporting and waiting period requirements of the Act. Moreover, the conversion of these preferred shares into common shares of X would also be potentially reportable, since the holder would be exercising a right to exchange particular voting securities for different voting securities having a present right to vote for directors of the issuer. Because this exchange would be a ''conversion,'' § 801.30 would apply. (See § 801.30(a)(6).)

(g)(1) *Tender offer.* The term *tender offer* means any offer to purchase voting securities which is a tender offer within the meaning of section 14 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, 15 U.S.C. 78n.

(2) *Cash tender offer.* The term *cash tender offer* means a tender offer in which cash is the only consideration offered to the holders of the voting securities to be acquired.

(3) *Non-cash tender offer.* The term *non-cash tender offer* means any tender offer which is not a cash tender offer.

(h) *Notification threshold.* The term *notification threshold* means:

(1) Fifteen percent of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer, or an aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets of the acquired person valued in excess of $15 million;

(2) Fifteen percent of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer, if valued in excess of $15 million;

(3) Twenty-five percent of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer; or

(4) Fifty percent of the outstanding voting securities of an issuer.

(i)(1) *Solely for the purpose of investment.* Voting securities are held or acquired ''solely for the purpose of investment'' if the person holding or acquiring such voting securities has no intention of participating in the formulation, determination, or direction of the basic business decisions of the issuer.

*Example:* If a person holds stock ''solely for the purpose of investment'' and thereafter decides to influence or participate in management of the issuer of that stock, the stock in no longer held ''solely for the purpose of investment.''

(2) *Investment assets.* The term *investment assets* means cash, deposits in financial institutions, other money market instruments, and instruments evidencing government obligations.

(j) *Engaged in manufacturing.* A person is ''engaged in manufacturing'' if it produces and derives annual sales or revenues in excess of $1 million from products within industries 2000–3999 as coded in the Standard Industrial Classification Manual (1972 edition) published by the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget.

(k) *United States.* The term *United States* shall include the several States, the territories, possessions, and commonwealths of the United States, and the District of Columbia.

(l) *Commerce.* The term *commerce* shall have the meaning ascribed to that term in section 1 of the Clayton Act, 15

U.S.C. 12, or section 4 of the Federal Trade Commission Act, 15 U.S.C. 44.

(m) *The act.* References to ''the act'' refer to section 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A, as added by section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94–435, 90 Stat. 1390. References to '' section 7A()'' refer to subsections thereof. References to ''this section'' refer to the section of these rules in which the term appears.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34429, July 29, 1983; 52 FR 20063, May 29, 1987]

### § 801.2 Acquiring and acquired persons.

(a) Any person which, as a result of an acquisition, will hold voting securities or assets, either directly or indirectly, or through fiduciaries, agents, or other entities acting on behalf of such person, is an acquiring person.

*Example:* Assume that corporations A and B, which are each ultimate parent entitles of their respective ''persons,'' created a joint venture, corporation V, and that each holds half of V's shares. Therefore, A and B each control V (see § 801.1(b)), and V is included within two persons, ''A'' and ''B.'' Under this section, if V is to acquire corporation X, both ''A'' and ''B'' are acquiring persons.

(b) Except as provided in paragraphs (a) and (b) of § 801.12, the person(s) within which the entity whose assets or voting securities are being acquired is included, is an acquired person.

*Examples:* 1. Assume that person ''Q'' will acquire voting securities of corporation X held by ''P'' and that X is not included within person ''P.'' Under this section, the acquired person is the person within which X is included, and is not ''P.''

2. In the example to paragraph (a) of this section, if V were to be acquired by X, then both ''A'' and ''B'' would be acquired persons.

(c) For purposes of the act and these rules, a person may be an acquiring person and an acquired person with respect to separate acquisitions which comprise a single transaction.

(d)(1)(i) Mergers and consolidations are transactions subject to the act and shall be treated as acquisitions of voting securities.

(ii) In a merger, the person which, after consummation, will include the corporation in existence prior to consummation which is designated as the surviving corporation in the plan, agreement, or certificate of merger required to be filed with State authorities to effectuate the transaction shall be deemed to have made an acquisition of voting securities.

(2)(i) Any person party to a merger or consolidation is an acquiring person if, as a result of the transaction, such person will hold any assets or voting securities which it did not hold prior to the transaction.

(ii) Any person party to a merger or consolidation is an acquired person if, as a result of the transaction, the assets or voting securities of any entity included within such person will be held by any other person.

(iii) All persons party to a transaction as a result of which all parties will lose their separate pre-acquisition identities shall be both acquiring and acquired persons.

*Examples:* 1. Corporation A (the ultimate parent entity included within person ''A'') proposes to acquire Y, a wholly-owned subsidiary of B (the ultimate parent entity included within person ''B''). The transaction is to be carried out by merging Y into X, a wholly-owned subsidiary of A, with X surviving, and by distributing the assets of X to B, the only shareholder of Y. The assets of X consist solely of cash and the voting securities of C, an entity unrelated to ''A'' or ''B''. Since X is designated the surviving corporation in the plan or agreement of merger or consolidation and since X will be included in ''A'' after consummation of the transaction, ''A'' will be deemed to have made an acquisition of voting securities. In this acquisition, ''A'' is an acquiring person because it will hold assets or voting securities it did not hold prior to the transaction, and ''B'' is an acquired person because the assets or the voting securities of an entity previously included within it will be held by A as a result of the acquisition. B will hold the cash and voting securities of C as a result of the transaction, but since § 801.21 applies, this acquisition is not reportable. ''A'' is therefore an acquiring person only, and ''B'' is an acquired person only. ''B'' may, however, have a separate reporting obligation as an acquiring person in a separate transaction involving the voting securities of C.

2. In the above example, suppose the consideration for Y consists of $8 million worth of the voting securities of A, constituting less than 15% of A's outstanding voting securities. With regard to the transfer of this consideration, ''B'' is an acquiring person because it will hold voting securities it did not previously hold, and ''A'' is an acquired person because its voting securities will be held by B. Since these voting securities are worth

less than $15 million and constitute less than 15% of the outstanding voting securities of A, however, the acquisition of these securities is not reportable. ''A'' will therefore report as an acquiring person only and ''B'' as an acquired person only.

3. In the above example, suppose the consideration for Y is 50% of the voting securities of Z, a wholly-owned subsidiary of A which, together with all entities it controls, has annual net sales and total assets of less then $25 million. Suppose also that the value of these securities is less than $15 million. Since the acquisition of the voting securities of Z is exempt under the minimum dollar value exemption in §802.20, ''A'' will report in this transaction as an acquiring person only and ''B'' as an acquired person only.

4. In the above example, suppose that, as consideration for Y, A transfers to B a manufacturing plant valued at $16 million. ''B'' is thus an acquiring person and ''A'' an acquired person in a reportable acquisition of assets.''A'' and ''B'' will each report as both an acquiring and an acquired person in this transaction because each occupies each role in a reportable acquisition.

5. Corporations A (the ultimate parent entity in person ''A'') and B (the ultimate parent entity in person ''B'') propose to consolidate into C, a newly formed corporation. All shareholders of A and B will receive shares of C, and both A and B will lose their separate pre-acquisition identities. ''A'' and ''B'' are both acquiring and acquired persons because they are parties to a transaction in which all parties lose their separate pre-acquisition identities.

(e) Whenever voting securities or assets are to be acquired from an acquiring person in connection with an acquisition, the acquisition of voting securities or assets shall be separately subject to the act.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34431, July 29, 1983]

### §801.3 Activities in or affecting commerce.

Section 7A(a)(1) is satisfied if any entity included within the acquiring person, or any entity included within the acquired person, is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce.

*Examples:* 1. A foreign subsidiary of a U.S. corporation seeks to acquire a foreign business. The acquiring person includes the U.S. parent corporation. If the U.S. corporation, or the foreign subsidiary, or any entity controlled by either one of them, is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce, section 7A(a)(1) is satisfied. Note, however, that §§802.50–802.52 may exempt certain acquisitions of foreign businesses or assets.

2. Even if none of the entities within the acquiring person is engaged in commerce or in any activity affecting commerce, the acquisition nevertheless satisfies section 7A(a)(1) if any entity included within the acquired person is so engaged.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978; 43 FR 36054, Aug. 15, 1978]

### §801.4 Secondary acquisitions.

(a) Whenever as a result of an acquisition (the ''primary acquisition'') an acquiring person will obtain control of an issuer which holds voting securities of another issuer which it does not control, then the acquisition of the other issuer's voting securities is a secondary acquisition and is separately subject to the act and these rules.

(b) *Exemptions.* (1) No secondary acquisition shall be exempt from the requirements of the act solely because the related primary acquisition is exempt from the requirements of the act.

(2) A secondary acquisition may itself be exempt from the requirements of the act under section 7A(c) or these rules.

*Examples:* 1. Assume that acquiring person ''A'' proposes to acquire all the voting securities of corporation B. This section provides that the acquisition of voting securities of issuers held but not controlled by B or by any entity which B controls are secondary acquisitions by ''A.'' Thus, if B holds more than $15 million of the voting securities of corporation X (but does not control X), and ''A'' and ''X'' satisfy sections 7A (a)(1) and (a)(2), ''A'' must file notification separately with respect to its secondary acquisition of voting securities of X. ''X'' must file notification within fifteen days (or in the case of a cash tender offer, 10 days) after ''A'' files, pursuant to §801.30.

2. If in the previous example ''A'' acquires only 50 percent of the voting securities of B, the result would remain the same. Since ''A'' would be acquiring control of B, all of B's holdings in X would be attributable to ''A.''

3. In the previous examples, if ''A's'' acquisition of the voting securities of B is exempt, ''A'' may still be required to file notification with respect to its secondary acquisition of the voting securities of X, unless that acquisition is itself exempt.

4. In the previous examples, assume A's acquisition of B is accomplished by merging B into A's subsidiary, S, and S is designated the surviving corporation. B's voting securities are cancelled, and B's shareholders are to receive cash in return. Since S is designated the surviving corporation and A will

control S and also hold assets or voting securities it did not hold previously, ''A'' is an acquiring person in an acquisition of voting securities by virtue of §§801.2 (d)(1)(ii) and (d)(2)(i). A will be deemed to have acquired control of B, and A's resulting acquisition of the voting securities of X is a secondary acquisition. Since cash, the only consideration paid for the voting securities of B, is not considered an asset of the person from which it is acquired, by virtue of §801.2(d)(2) ''A'' is an acquiring person only. The acquisition of the minority holding of B in X is therefore a secondary acquisition by ''A,'' but since ''B'' is an acquired person only, ''B'' is not deemed to make any secondary acquisition in this transaction.

5. In example 4 above, suppose the consideration paid by A for the acquisition of B is $20 million worth of the voting securities of A. By virtue of §801.2(d)(2), ''A'' and ''B'' are each both acquiring and acquired persons. A will still be deemed to have acquired control of B, and therefore the resulting acquisition of the voting securities of X is a secondary acquisition. Although ''B'' is now also an acquiring person, unless B gains control of A in the transaction, B still makes no secondary acquisitions of stock held by A. If the consideration paid by A is the voting securities of one of A's subsidiaries and B thereby gains control of that subsidiary, B will make secondary acquisitions of any minority holdings of that subsidiary.

6. Assume that A and B propose through consolidation to create a new corporation, C, and that both A and B will lose their corporate identities as a result. Since no participating corporation in existence prior to consummation is the designated surviving corporation, ''A'' and ''B'' are each both acquiring and acquired persons by virtue of §801.2(d)(2)(iii). The acquisition of the minority holdings of entities within each are therefore potential secondary acquisitions by the other.

(c) Where the primary acquisition is—

(1) A cash tender offer, the waiting period procedures established for cash tender offers pursuant to sections 7A(a) and 7A(e) of the act shall be applicable to both the primary acquisition and the secondary acquisition; (2) a noncash tender offer, the waiting period procedures established for tender offers pursuant to section 7A(e)(2) of the act shall be applicable to both the primary acquisition and the secondary acquisition.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34432, July 29, 1983; 52 FR 7080, Mar. 6, 1987]

## § 801.10 Value of voting securities and assets to be acquired.

Except as provided in §801.13, the value of voting securities and assets to be acquired shall be determined as follows:

(a) *Voting securities.* (1) If the security is traded on a national securities exchange or is authorized to be quoted in an interdealer quotation system of a national securities association registered with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission—

(i) And the acquisition price has been determined, the value shall be the market price or the acquisition price, whichever is greater; or if

(ii) The acquisition price has not been determined, the value shall be the market price.

(2) If paragraph (a)(1) of this section is inapplicable—

(i) But the acquisition price has been determined, the value shall be the acquisition price; or if

(ii) The acquisition price has not been determined, the value shall be the fair market value.

(b) *Assets.* The value of assets to be acquired shall be the fair market value of the assets, or, if determined and greater than the fair market value, the acquisition price.

(c) For purposes of this section and §801.13(a)(2):

(1) *Market price.* (i) For acquisitions subject to §801.30, the market price shall be the lowest closing quotation, or, in an interdealer quotation system, the lowest closing bid price, within the 45 calendar days prior to the receipt of the notice required by §803.5(a) or prior to the consummation of the acquisition.

(ii) For acquisitions not subject to §801.30, the market price shall be the lowest closing quotation, or, in an interdealer quotation system, the lowest closing bid price, within the 45 or fewer calendar days which are prior to the consummation of the acquisition but not earlier than the day prior to the execution of the contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent to merge or acquire.

(iii) When the security was not traded within the period specified by this paragraph, the last closing quotation

or closing bid price preceding such period shall be used. If such closing quotations are available in more than one market, the person filing notification may select any such quotation.

(2) *Acquisition price.* The acquisition price shall include the value of all consideration for such voting securities or assets to be acquired.

(3) *Fair market value.* The fair market value shall be determinded in good faith by the board of directors of the ultimate parent entity included within the acquiring person, or, if unincorporated, by officials exercising similar functions; or by an entity delegated that function by such board or officials. Such determination must be made as of any day within 60 calendar days prior to the filing of the notification required by the act, or, if such notification has not been filed, within 60 calendar days prior to the consummation of the acquisition.

*Example:* Corporation A, the ultimate parent entity in person ''A,'' contracts to acquire assets of corporation B, and the contract provides that the acquisition price is not to be determined until after the acquisition is effected. Under paragraph (b) of this section, for purposes of the act the value of the assets is to be the fair market value of the assets. Under paragraph (c)(3), the board of directors of corporation A must in good faith determine the fair market value. That determination will control for 60 days whether ''A'' and ''B'' must observe the requirements of the act; that is, ''A'' and ''B'' must either file notification or consummate the acquisition within that time. If ''A'' and ''B'' neither file nor consummate within 60 days, the parties would no longer be entitled to rely on the determination of fair market value, and, if in doubt about whether required to observe the requirements of the act, would have to make a second determination of fair market value. Note that since item 2(d)(i) of the Notification and Report Form only requests the approximate dollar value of assets, a second formal determination of the fair market value would not be necessary for that purpose.

### § 801.11 Annual net sales and total assets.

(a) The annual net sales and total assets of a person shall include all net sales and all assets held, whether foreign or domestic, except as provided in paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section.

(b) Except for the total assets of a joint venture or other corporation at the time of its formation which shall be determined pursuant to § 801.40(c), the annual net sales and total assets of a person shall be as stated on the financial statements specified in paragraph (c) of this section: *Provided:*

(1) That the annual net sales and total assets of each entity included within such person are consolidated therein. If the annual net sales and total assets of any entity included within the person are not consolidated in such statements, the annual net sales and total assets of the person filing notification shall be recomputed to include the nonduplicative annual net sales and nonduplicative total assets of each such entity; and

(2) That such statements, and any restatements pursuant to paragraph (b)(1) of this section (insofar as possible), have been prepared in accordance with the accounting principles normally used by such person, and are of a date not more than 15 months prior to the date of filing of the notification required by the act, or the date of consummation of the acquisition.

*Example:* Person ''A'' is composed of entity A, subsidiaries B1 and B2 which A controls, subsidiaries C1 and C2 which B1 controls, and subsidiary C3 which B2 controls. Suppose that A's most recent financial statement consolidates the annual net sales and total assets of B1, C1, and C2, but not B2 or C3. In order to determine whether person ''A'' meets the criteria of section 7A(a)(2), as either an acquiring or an acquired person, A must recompute its annual net sales and total assets to reflect consolidation of the nonduplicative annual net sales and nonduplicative total assets of B2 and C3.

(c) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (b) of this section:

(1) The annual net sales of a person shall be as stated on the last regularly prepared annual statement of income and expense of that person; and

(2) The total assets of a person shall be as stated on the last regularly prepared balance sheet of that person.

*Example:* Suppose ''A'' sells assets to ''B'' on January 1. ''A's'' next regularly prepared balance sheet, dated February 1, reflects that sale. On March 1, ''A'' proposes to sell more assets to ''B.'' ''A's'' total assets on March 1 are ''A's'' total assets as stated on its February 1 balance sheet.

(d) No assets of any natural person or of any estate of a deceased natural person, other than investment assets, voting securities and other income-producing property, shall be included in determining the total assets of a person.

(e) Subject to the limitations of paragraph (d) of this section, the total assets of:

(1) An acquiring person that does not have the regularly prepared balance sheet described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section shall be, for acquisitions of each acquired person:

(i) All assets held by the acquiring person at the time of the acquisition,

(ii) Less all cash that will be used by the acquiring person as consideration in an acquisition of assets from, or in an acquisition of voting securities issued by, that acquired person (or an entity within that acquired person) and less all cash that will be used for expenses incidental to the acquisition, and less all securities of the acquired person (or an entity within that acquired person); and

(2) An acquired person that does not have the regularly prepared balance sheet described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section shall be either

(i) All assets held by the acquired person at the time of the acquisition, or

(ii) Where applicable, its assets as determined in accordance with § 801.40(c).

*Examples:* For examples 1–4, assume that A is a newly-formed company which is not controlled by any other entity. Assume also that A has no sales and does not have the balance sheet described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section.

1. A will borrow $105 million in cash and will purchase assets from B for $100 million. In order to establish whether A's acquisition of B's assets is reportable, A's total assets are determined by subtracting the $100 million that it will use to acquire B's assets from the $105 million that A will have at the time of the acquisition. Therefore, A has total assets of $5 million and does not meet the size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2).

2. Assume that A will acquire assets from B and that, at the time it acquires B's assets, A will have $85 million in cash and a factory valued at $20 million. A will exchange the factory and $80 million cash for B's assets. To determine A's total assets, A should subtract from the $85 million cash the $80 million that will be used to acquire assets from B and add the remainder to the value of the factory. Thus, A has total assets of $25 million. Even though A will use the factory as part of the consideration for the acquisition, the value of the factory must still be included in A's total assets.

Note that A and B may also have to report the acquisition by B of A's non-cash assets (i.e., the factory). For that acquisition, the value of the cash A will use to buy B's assets is not excluded from A's total assets. Thus, in the acquisition by B, A's total assets are $105 million.

3. Assume that company A will make a $200 million acquisition and that it must pay a loan origination fee of $5 million. A borrows $211 million. A does not meet the size-of-person test in section 7A(a)(2) because its total assets are less than $10 million. $200 million is excluded because it will be consideration for the acquisition and $5 million is excluded because it is an expense incidental to the acquisition. Therefore, A is only a $6 million person.

4. Assume that A borrows $150 million to acquire $100 million of assets from person B and $45 million of voting securities of person C. To determine its size for purposes of its acquisition from person B, A subtracts the $100 million that it will use for that acquisition. Therefore, A has total assets of $50 million for purposes of its acquisition from B. To determine its size with respect to its acquisition from person C, A subtracts the $45 million that will be paid for C's voting securities. Thus, for purposes of its acquisition from C, A has total assets of $105 million. In the first acquisition A meets the $10 million size-of-person test and in the second acquisition A meets the $100 million size-of-person test of section 7A(a)(2).

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34429, July 29, 1983; 52 FR 7080, Mar. 6, 1987]

### § 801.12 Calculating percentage of voting securities or assets.

(a) *Voting securities.* Whenever the act or these rules require calculation of the percentage of voting securities to be held or acquired, the issuer whose voting securities are being acquired shall be deemed the ''acquired persons.''

*Example:* Person ''A'' is composed of corporation A1 and subsidiary A2; person ''B'' is composed of corporation B1 and subsidiary B2. Assume that A2 proposes to sell assets to B1 in exchange for common stock of B2. Under this paragraph, for purposes of calculating the percentage of voting securities to be held, the ''acquired person'' is B2. For all other purposes, the acquired person is ''B.'' (For all purposes, the ''acquiring persons'' are ''A'' and ''B.'')

(b) *Percentage of voting securities.* (1) Whenever the act or these rules require calculation of the percentage of voting securities of an issuer to be held or acquired, the percentage shall be the sum of the separate ratios for each class of voting securities, expressed as a percentage. The ratio for each class of voting securities equals:

(i)(A) The number of votes for directors of the issuer which the holder of a class of voting securities is presently entitled to cast, and as a result of the acquisition, will become entitled to cast, divided by,

(B) The total number of votes for directors of the issuer which presently may be cast by that class, and which will be entitled to be cast by that class after the acquisition, multiplied by,

(ii)(A) The number of directors that class is entitled to elect, divided by (B) the total number of directors.

*Examples:* In each of the following examples company X has two classes of voting securities, class A, consisting of 1000 shares with each share having one vote, and class B, consisting of 100 shares with each share having one vote. The class A shares elect four of the ten directors and the class B shares elect six of the ten directors.

In this situation, § 801.12(b) requires calculations of the percentage of voting securities held to be made according to the following formula:

Number of votes of class A held divided by Total votes of class A times Directors elected by class A stock divided by Total number of directors

Plus

Number of votes of class B held divided by Total votes of class B times Directors elected by class B stock divided by Total number of directors

1. Assume that company Y holds all 100 shares of class B stock and no shares of class A stock. By virtue of its class B holdings, Y has all 100 of the votes which may be cast by class B stock and can elect six of company X's ten directors. Applying the formula which results from the rule, Y calculates that it holds 100/100 × 6/10 or 60 percent of the voting securities of company X because of its holdings of class B stock and no additional percentage derived from holdings of class A stock. Consequently, Y holds a total of 60 percent of the voting securities of company X.

2. Assume that company Y holds 500 shares of class A stock and no shares of class B stock. By virtue of its class A holdings, Y has 500 of the 1000 votes which may be cast by class A to elect four of company X's ten directors. Applying the formula, Y calculates that it holds 500/1000 × 4/10 or 20 percent of the voting securities of company X from its holdings of class A stock and no additional percentage derived from holdings of class B stock. Consequently, Y holds a total of 20 percent of the voting securities of company X.

3. Assume that company Y holds 500 shares of class A stock and 60 shares of class B stock. Y calculates that it holds 20 percent of the voting securities of company X because of its holdings of class A stock (see example 2). Additionally, as a result of its class B holdings Y has 60 of the 100 votes which may be cast by class B stock to elect six of company X's ten directors. Applying the formula, Y calculates that it holds 60/100 × 6/10 or 36 percent of the voting securities of company X because of its holdings of class B stock. Since the formula requires that a person that holds different classes of voting securities of the same issuer add together the separate percentages calculated for each class, Y holds a total of 56 percent (20 percent plus 36 percent) of the voting securities of company X.

(2) Authorized but unissued voting securities and treasury voting securities shall not be considered securities presently entitled to vote for directors of the issuer.

(3) For purposes of determining the number of outstanding voting securities of an issuer, a person may rely upon the most recent information set forth in filings with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, unless such person knows or has reason to believe that the information contained therein is inaccurate.

*Examples:* 1. In the example to paragraph (a), to determine the percentage of B2's voting securities which will be held by ''A'' after the transaction, all voting securities of B2 held by ''A,'' the ''acquiring person'' (including A2 and all other entities included in person ''A''), must be aggregated. If ''A'' holds convertible securities of B2 which meet the definition of voting securities in § 801.1(f), these securities are to be disregarded in calculating the percentage of voting securities held by ''A.''

2. Under this formula, any votes obtained by means of proxies from other persons are also disregarded in calculating the percentage of voting securities to be held or acquired.

(c) *Assets.* Any person whose assets are being acquired shall be deemed an ''acquired person'' in calculating the

percentage of assets to be held or acquired for purposes of section 7A(a)(3)(A).

*Example:* In the example to paragraph (a), for purposes of calculating the percentage of assets to be held, the ''acquired person'' is ''A.''

(d) *Percentage of assets.* Whenever the act or these rules require calculation of the percentage of assets of a person to be held or acquired, the percentage shall be the ratio, expressed as a percentage, which—

(1) The book value (on the books of the acquired person) of the assets to be acquired (see § 801.13(b)(1)), bears to

(2) The total assets of the acquired person, determined in accordance with § 801.11.

*Example:* In the example to paragraph (a), the percentage of assets to be acquired by ''B'' is determined by dividing the book value of A2's assets being acquired, by the total assets of ''A,'' determined in accordance with § 801.11.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978; 43 FR 36054, Aug. 15, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 7081, Mar. 6, 1987]

### § 801.13 Voting securities or assets to be held as a result of acquisition.

(a) *Voting securities.* (1) Subject to the provisions of § 801.15, and paragraph (a)(3) of this section, all voting securities of the issuer which will be held by the acquiring person after the consummation of an acquisition shall be deemed voting securities held as a result of the acquisition. The value of such voting securities shall be the sum of the value of the voting securities to be acquired, determined in accordance with § 801.10(a), and the value of the voting securities held by the acquiring person prior to the acquisition, determined in accordance with paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

(2) The value of voting securities of an issuer held prior to an acquisition shall be—

(i) If the security is traded on a national securities exchange or is authorized to be quoted in an interdealer quotation system of a national securities association registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, the market price calculated in accordance with § 801.10(c)(1); or

(ii) If paragraph (a)(2)(i) of this section is not applicable, the fair market value determined in accordance with § 801.10(c)(3).

*Examples:* 1. Assume that acquiring person ''A'' holds $19 million of the voting securities of X, and is to acquire another $1 million of the same voting securities. Since under paragraph (a) of this rule all voting securities ''A'' will hold after the acquisition are held ''as a result of'' the acquisition, ''A'' will hold $20 million of the voting securities of X as a result of the acquisition. ''A'' must therefore observe the requirements of the act before making the acquisition, unless the present acquisition is exempt under section 7A(c), § 802.21 or any other rule.

2. See § 801.15 and the examples to that rule.

3. See § 801.20 and the examples to that rule.

4. On January 1, Company A acquired $30 million of voting securities of Company B. ''A'' and ''B'' filed notification and observed the waiting period for that acquisition.

Company A plans to acquire $1 million of assets from company B on May 1 of the same year. Under § 801.13(a)(3), ''A'' and ''B'' do not aggregate the value of the earlier acquired voting securities to determine whether the acquisition is subject to the act. Therefore, the value of the acquisition is $1 million and it is not reportable.

(3) Voting securities held by the acquiring person prior to an acquisition shall not be deemed voting securities held as a result of that subsequent acquisition if:

(i) The acquiring person is, in the subsequent acquisition, acquiring only assets; and

(ii) The acquisition of the previously acquired voting securities was subject to the filing and waiting requirements of the act (and such requirements were observed) or was exempt pursuant to § 802.21.

(b) *Assets.* (1) All assets to be acquired from the acquired person shall be assets held as a result of the acquisition. The value of such assets shall be determined in accordance with § 801.10(b).

(2)(i) If the acquiring person has signed a letter of intent or entered into a contract or agreement in principle to acquire assets from the acquired person, and

(ii) Subject to the provisions of § 801.15, if the acquiring person has acquired from the acquired person within the 180 calendar days preceding the signing of such agreement any assets

which are presently held by the acquiring person, and the acquisition of which was not previously subject to the requirements of the act or the acquisition of which was subject to the requirements of the act but they were not observed, then only for purposes of section 7A(a)(3)(B) and §801.1(h)(1), both the acquiring and the acquired persons shall treat such assets as though they had not previously been acquired and are being acquired as part of the present acquisition. The value of any assets previously acquired which are subject to this paragraph shall be determined in accordance with §801.10(b) as of the time of their prior acquisition.

*Example:* Acquiring person ''A'' proposes to make two acquisitions of assets from acquired person ''B,'' 90 days apart, and wishes to determine whether notification is necessary prior to the second acquisition. For purposes of the percentage test of section 7A(a)(3)(A), ''A'' would hold only the assets it acquired in the second acquisition. For purposes of the $15 million test of section 7A(a)(3)(B), however, ''A'' must aggregate both of its acquisitions and must value each as of the time of its occurrence.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 7081, Mar. 6, 1987]

### §801.14 Aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets.

For purposes of section 7A(a)(3)(B) and §801.1(h)(1), the aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets shall be the sum of:

(a) The value of all voting securities of the acquired person which the acquiring person would hold as a result of the acquisition, determined in accordance with §801.13(a); and

(b) The value of all assets of the acquired person which the acquiring person would hold as a result of the acquisition, determined in accordance with §801.13(b).

*Examples:* 1. Acquiring person ''A'' previously acquired $6 million of the voting securities (not convertible voting securities) of corporation X. ''A'' now intends to acquire $8 million of X's assets. Under paragraph (a) of this section, ''A'' looks to §801.13(a) and determines that the voting securities are to be held ''as a reult of'' the acquisition. Section 801.13(a) also provides that ''A'' must determine the present value of the previously acquired securities. Under paragraph (b) of this section, ''A'' looks to §801.13(b)(1) and determines that the assets to be acquired will be held ''as a result of'' the acquisition, and are valued under §801.10(b) at $8 million. Therefore, if the voting securities have a present value of more than $7 million, the asset acquisition is subject to the requirements of the act since, as a result of it, ''A'' would hold an aggregate total amount of the voting securities and assets of ''X'' in excess of $15 million.

2. In the previous example, assume that the assets acquisition occurred first, and that the acquisition of the voting securities is to occur within 180 days of the first acquisition. ''A'' now looks to §801.13(b)(2) and determines that because the second acquisition is of voting securities and not assets, the asset and voting securities acquisitions are not treated as one transaction. Therefore, the second acquisition would not be subject to the requirements of the act by reason of section 7A(a)(3)(B) since the value of the securities to be acquired does not equal or exceed $15 million.

### §801.15 Aggregation of voting securities and assets the acquisition of which was exempt.

Notwithstanding §801.13, for purposes of section 7A(a)(3) and §801.1(h), none of the following will be held as a result of an acquisition:

(a) Assets or voting securities the acquisition of which was exempt at the time of acquisition (or would have been exempt, had the act and these rules been in effect), or the present acquisition of which is exempt, under—

(1) Sections 7A(c) (1), (5), (6), (7), (8), and (11)(B);

(2) Sections 802.1, 802.2, 802.5, 802.6(b)(1), 802.8, 802.31, 802.35, 802.50(a)(1), 802.51(a), 802.52, 802.53, 802.63, and 802.70;

(b) Assets or voting securities the acquisition of which was exempt at the time of acquisition (or would have been exempt, had the act and these rules been in effect), or the present acquisition of which is exempt, under section 7A(c)(9) and §§802.3, 802.4, 802.50(a)(2), 802.50(b), 802.51(b) and 802.64 unless the limitations contained in section 7A(c)(9) or those sections do not apply or as a result of the acquisition would be exceeded, in which case the assets or voting securities so acquired will be held; and

(c) Voting securities the acquisition of which was exempt at the time of acquisition (or would have been exempt, had the act and these rules been in effect), or the present acquisition of

which is exempt, under section 7A(c)(11)(A) unless additional voting securities of the same issuer have been or are being acquired.

*Examples:* 1. Assume that acquiring person ''A'' is simultaneously to acquire $50 million of the convertible voting securities of X and $12 million (which is less than 15 percent) of the voting common stock of X. Although the acquisition of the convertible voting securities is exempt under § 802.31, since the overall value of the securities to be acquired is greater than $15 million, ''A'' must determine whether it is obliged to file notification and observe a waiting period before acquiring the common stock. Because § 802.31 is one of the exemptions listed in paragraph (a)(2) of this rule, ''A'' would not hold the convertible voting securities as a result of the acquisition. Therefore, since as a result of the acquisition ''A'' would hold only the common stock, the test of section 7A(a)(3) would not be satisfied, and ''A'' need not observe the requirements of the act before acquiring the common stock.

(Note, however, that the $50 million of convertible voting securities would be reflected in ''A's'' next regularly prepared balance sheet, for purposes of § 801.11.)

2. In the previous example, the rule was applied to voting securities the present acquisition of which is exempt. Assume instead that ''A'' had acquired the convertible voting securities prior to its acquisition of the common stock. ''A'' still would not hold the convertible voting securities as a result of the acquisition of the common stock, because the rule states that voting securities the previous acquisition of which was exempt also fall within the rule. Thus, the test of section 7A(a)(3) would again not be satisfied, and ''A'' need not observe the requirements of the act before acquiring the common stock.

3. In example 2, assume instead that ''A'' acquired the convertible voting securities in 1975, before the act and rules went into effect. Since the rule applies to voting securities the acquisition of which would have been exempt had the act and rules been in effect, the result again would be identical. If the rules had been in effect in 1975, the acquisition of the convertible voting securities would have been exempt under § 802.31.

4. Assume that acquiring person ''B,'' a United States person, acquired from corporation ''X'' two manufacturing plants located abroad, and assume that the acquisition price was $40 million. In the most recent year, sales into the United States attributable to the plants were $15 million, and thus the acquisition was exempt under § 802.50(a)(2). Within 180 days of that acquisition, ''B'' seeks to acquire a third plant from ''X,'' to which United States sales of $12 million were attributable in the most recent year. Since under § 801.13(b)(2), as a result of the acquisition, ''B'' would hold all three plants of ''X,'' and the $25 million limitation in § 802.50(a)(2) would be exceeded, under paragraph (b) of this rule, ''B'' would hold the previously acquired assets for purposes of the second acquisition. Therefore, as a result of the second acquisition, ''B'' would hold assets of X exceeding $15 million in value, would not qualify for the exemption in § 802.50(a)(2), and must observe the requirements of the act and file notification for the acquisition of all three plants before acquiring the third plant.

5. ''A'' acquires producing oil reserves valued at $400 million from ''B.'' Two months later, ''A'' agrees to acquire oil and gas rights valued at $75 million from ''B.'' Paragraph (b) of this section and § 801.13(b)(2) require aggregating the previously exempt acquisition of oil reserves with the second acquisition. If the two acquisitions, when aggregated, exceed the $500 million limitation on the exemption for oil and gas reserves in § 802.3(a), ''A'' and ''B'' will be required to file notification for the latter acquisition, including within the filings the earlier acquisition. Since, in this example, the total value of the assets in the two acquisitions, when aggregated, is less than $500 million, both acquisitions are exempt from the notification requirements. In determining whether the value of the assets in the two acquisitions exceed $500 million, ''A'' need not determine the current fair market value of the oil reserves acquired in the first transaction, since these assets are now within the person of ''A.'' Instead ''A'' may use the value of the oil reserves at the time of their prior acquisition in accordance with § 801.10(b).

6. ''X'' acquired 55 percent of the voting securities of M, an entity controlled by ''Z,'' six months ago and now proposes to acquire 50 percent of the voting stock of N, another entity controlled by ''Z.'' M's assets consist of $150 million worth of producing coal reserves plus $7 million worth of non-exempt assets and N's assets consist of a producing coal mine worth $100 million together with non-exempt assets with a fair market value of $6 million. ''X's'' acquisition of the voting securities of M was exempt under § 802.4(a) because M held exempt assets pursuant to § 802.3(b) and less than $15 million of non-exempt assets. Because ''X'' acquired control of M in the earlier transaction, M is now within the person of ''X,'' and the assets of M need not be aggregated with those of N to determine if the subsequent acquisition of N will exceed the limitation for coal reserves or for non-exempt assets. Since the assets of N alone do not exceed these limitations, ''X's'' acquisition of N also is not reportable.

7. In Example 6, above, assume that ''X'' acquired 30 percent of the voting securities of M and proposes to acquire 40 percent of the voting securities of N, another entity

controlled by ''Z.'' Assume also that M's assets at the time of ''X's'' acquisition of M's voting securities consisted of $90 million worth of producing coal reserves and non-exempt assets with a fair market value of $9 million, and that N's assets currently consist of $60 million worth of producing coal reserves and non-exempt assets with a fair market value of $8 million. Since ''X'' acquired a minority interest in M and intends to acquire a minority interest in N, and since M and N are controlled by ''Z,'' the assets of M and N must be aggregated, pursuant to §§801.15(b) and 801.13, to determine whether the acquisition of N's voting securities is exempt. ''X'' is required to determine the current fair market value of M's assets. If the fair market value of M's coal reserves is unchanged, the aggregated exempt assets do not exceed the limitation for coal reserves. However, if the present fair market value of N's non-exempt assets also is unchanged, the present fair market value of the non-exempt assets of M and N when aggregated is greater than $15 million. Thus the acquisition of the voting securities of N is not exempt. If ''X'' proposed to acquire 50 percent or more of the voting securities of both M and N in the same acquisition, the assets of M and N must be aggregated to determine if the acquisition of the voting securities of both issuers is exempt. Since the fair market value of the aggregated non- exempt assets exceeds $15 million, the acquisition would not be exempt.

8. ''A'' acquired 49 percent of the voting securities of M and 45 percent of the voting securities of N. Both M and N are controlled by ''B.'' At the time of the acquisition M held rights to producing coal reserves worth $90 million and N held a producing coal mine worth $90 million. This acquisition was exempt since the aggregated holdings fell below the $200 million limitation for coal in §802.3(b). A year later, ''A'' proposes to acquire an additional 10 percent of the voting securities of both M and N. In the intervening year, M has acquired coal reserves so that its holdings are now valued at $140 million, and the value of N's assets remained unchanged. ''A's'' second acquisition would not be exempt. ''A'' is required to determine the value of the exempt assets and any non-exempt assets held by any issuer whose voting securities it intends to acquire before each proposed acquisition (unless ''A'' already owns 50 percent or more of the voting securities of the issuer) to determine if the value of those holdings of the issuer falls below the limitation of the applicable exemption. Here, an assessment shows that the holdings of M and N now exceed the $200 million limitation for coal reserves in §802.3.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 7081, Mar. 6, 1987; 61 FR 13684, Mar. 28, 1996]

### §801.20 Acquisitions subsequent to exceeding threshold.

Acquisitions meeting the criteria of section 7A(a), and not otherwise exempted by section 7A(c) or §802.21 or any other of these rules, are subject to the requirements of the act even though:

(a) Earlier acquisitions of assets or voting securities may have been subject to the requirements of the act;

(b) The acquiring person's holdings initially may have met or exceeded a notification threshold before the effective date of these rules; or

(c) The acquiring person's holdings initially may have met or exceeded a notification threshold by reason of increases in market values or events other than acquisitions.

*Examples:* 1. Person ''A'' acquires $10 million of the voting securities of person ''B'' before the effective date of these rules. If ''A'' wishes to acquire an additional $6 million of the voting securities of ''B'' after the effective date of the rules, notification will be required by reason of section 7A(a)(3)(B).

2. In example 1, assume that the value of the voting securities of ''B'' originally acquired by ''A'' has reached a present value exceeding $15 million. If ''A'' wishes to acquire *any* additional voting securities or assets of ''B,'' notification will be required. See §801.13(a).

### §801.21 Securities and cash not considered assets when acquired.

For purposes of section 7A(a)(3) and §§801.1(h)(1), 801.12(d)(1) and 801.13(b):

(a) Cash shall not be considered an asset of the person from which it is acquired; and

(b) Neither voting or nonvoting securities nor obligations referred to in section 7A(c)(2) shall be considered assets of another person from which they are acquired.

*Examples:* 1. Assume that acquiring person ''A'' acquires voting securities of issuer X from ''B,'' a person unrelated to X. Under this paragraph, the acquisition is treated only as one of voting securities, requiring ''A'' and ''X'' to comply with the requirements of the act, rather than one in which ''A'' acquires the assets of ''B,'' requiring ''A'' and ''B'' to comply. See also example 2 to §801.30. Note that for purposes of section 7A(a)(2)—that is, for the next regularly prepared balance sheet of ''A'' referred to in §801.11—the voting securities of X must be reflected after their acquisition; see §801.11(c)(2).

2. In the previous example, if ''A'' acquires nonvoting securities of X from ''B,'' then under this section the acquisition would be treated only as one of nonvoting securities of X (and would be exempt under section 7A(c)(2)), rather than one in which ''A'' acquires assets of ''B,'' requiring ''A'' and ''B'' to comply. Again, the nonvoting securities of X would have to be reflected in ''A's'' next regularly prepared balance sheet for purposes of section 7A(a)(2).

3. In example 1, assume that ''B'' receives only cash from ''A'' in exchange for the voting securities of X. Under this section, ''B's'' acquisition of cash is *not* an acquisition of the ''assets'' of ''A,'' and ''B'' is not required to file notification as an acquiring person.

### § 801.30 Tender offers and acquisitions of voting securities from third parties.

(a) This section applies to:

(1) Acquisitions on a national securities exchange or through an interdealer quotation system registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission;

(2) Acquisitions described by § 801.31;

(3) Tender offers;

(4) Secondary acquisitions;

(5) All acquisitions (other than mergers and consolidations) in which voting securities are to be acquired from a holder or holders other than the issuer or an entity included within the same person as the issuer;

(6) Conversions; and

(7) Acquisitions of voting securities resulting from the exercise of options or warrants which are—

(i) Issued by the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired (or by any entity included within the same person as the issuer); and

(ii) The subject of a currently effective registration statement filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission under the Securities Act of 1933.

(b) For acquisitions described by paragraph (a) of this section:

(1) The waiting period required under the act shall commence upon the filing of notification by the acquiring person as provided in § 803.10(a); and

(2) The acquired person shall file the notification required by the act, in accordance with these rules, no later than 5 p.m. eastern time on the 15th (or, in the case of cash tender offers, the 10th) calendar day following the date of receipt, as defined by § 803.10(a), by the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General of the notification filed by the acquiring person. Should the 15th (or, in the case of cash tender offers, the 10th) calendar day fall on a weekend day or federal holiday, the notification shall be filed no later than 10 a.m. eastern time on the next following business day.

*Examples:* 1. Acquiring person ''A'' proposes to acquire from corporation B the voting securities of B's wholly owned subsidiary, corporation S. Since ''A'' is acquiring the shares of S from its parent, this section does not apply, and the waiting period does not begin until both ''A'' and ''B'' file notification.

2. Acquiring person ''A'' proposes to acquire $20 million of the voting securities of corporation X on a securities exchange. The waiting period begins when ''A'' files notification. ''X'' must file notification within 15 calendar days thereafter. The seller of the X shares is not subject to any obligations under the act.

3. Suppose that acquiring person ''A'' proposes to acquire 50 percent of the voting securities of corporation B which in turn owns 30 percent of the voting securities of corporation C. Thus ''A's'' acquisition of C's voting securities is a secondary acquisition (see § 801.4) to which this section applies because ''A'' is acquiring C's voting securities from a third party (B). Therefore, the waiting period with respect to ''A's'' acquisition of C's voting securities begins when ''A'' files its separate Notification and Report Form with respect to C, and ''C'' must file within 15 days (or in the case of a cash tender offer, 10 days) thereafter. ''A's'' primary and secondary acquisitions of the voting securities of B and C are subject to separate waiting periods; see § 801.4.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978; 43 FR 36054, Aug. 15, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 7082, Mar. 6, 1987]

### § 801.31 Acquisitions of voting securities by offerees in tender offers.

Whenever an offeree in a noncash tender offer is required to, and does, file notification with respect to an acquisition described in § 801.2(e):

(a) The waiting period with respect to such acquisition shall begin upon filing of notification by the offeree, pursuant to §§ 801.30 and 803.10(a)(1);

(b) The person within which the issuer of the shares to be acquired by the offeree is included shall file notification as required by § 801.30(b);

(c) Any request for additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and §803.20 shall extend the waiting period in accordance with §803.20(c); and

(d) The voting securities to be acquired by the offeree may be placed into escrow, for the benefit of the offeree, pending expiration or termination of the waiting period with respect to the acquisition of such securities; *Provided however,* That no person may vote any voting securities placed into escrow pursuant to this paragraph.

*Example:* Assume that ''A,'' which has annual net sales exceeding $100 million, makes a tender offer for voting securities of corporation X. The consideration for the tender offer is to be voting securities of A. ''S,'' a shareholder of X with total assets exceeding $10 million, wishes to tender its holdings of X and in exchange would receive shares of A valued at $16 million. Under this section, ''S's'' acquisition of the shares of A would be an acquisition separately subject to the requirements of the act. Before ''S'' may acquire the voting securities of A, ''S'' must first file notification and observe a waiting period—which is separate from any waiting period that may apply with respect to ''A'' and ''X.'' Since §801.30 applies, the waiting period applicable to ''A'' and ''S'' begins upon filing by ''S,'' and ''A'' must file with respect to ''S's'' acquisition within 15 days pursuant to §801.30(b). Should the waiting period with respect to ''A'' and ''X'' expire or be terminated prior to the waiting period with respect to ''S'' and ''A,'' ''S'' may wish to tender its X-shares and place the A-shares into a nonvoting escrow until the expiration or termination of the latter waiting period.

### §801.32 Conversion an acquisition.

A conversion is an acquisition within the meaning of the act.

*Example:* Assume that acquiring person ''A'' wishes to convert convertible voting securities of issuer X, and is to receive common stock of X valued at $20 million. If ''A'' and ''X'' satisfy the criteria of section 7A(a)(1) and section 7A(a)(2), then ''A'' and ''X'' must file notification and observe the waiting period before ''A'' completes the acquisition of the X common stock, unless exempted by section 7A(c) or these rules. Since §801.30 applies, the waiting period begins upon notification by ''A,'' and ''X'' must file notification within 15 days.

### §801.33 Consummation of an acquisition by acceptance of tendered shares of payment.

The acceptance for payment of any shares tendered in a tender offer is the consummation of an acquisition of those shares within the meaning of the act.

[48 FR 34433, July 29, 1983]

### §801.40 Formation of joint venture or other corporations.

(a) In the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (other than in connection with a merger or consolidation), even though the persons contributing to the formation of a joint venture or other corporation and the joint venture or other corporation itself may, in the formation transaction, be both acquiring and acquired persons within the meaning of §801.2, the contributors shall be deemed acquiring persons only, and the joint venture or other corporation shall be deemed the acquired person only.

(b) Unless exempted by the act or any of these rules, upon the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, in a transaction meeting the criteria of section 7A (a) (1) and (3) (other than in connection with a merger or consolidation), an acquiring person shall be subject to the requirements of the act if:

(1)(i) The acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $100 million or more;

(ii) The joint venture or other corporation will have total assets of $10 million or more; and

(iii) At least one other acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more; or

(2)(i) The acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more;

(ii) The joint venture or other corporation will have total assets of $100 million or more; and

(iii) At least one other acquiring person has annual net sales or total assets of $10 million or more.

(c) For purposes of paragraph (b) of this section and determining whether any exemptions provided by the act and these rules apply to its formation,

the assets of the joint venture or other corporation shall include:

(1) All assets which any person contributing to the formation of the joint venture or other corporation has agreed to transfer or for which agreements have been secured for the joint venture or other corporation to obtain at any time, whether or not such person is subject to the requirements of the act; and

(2) Any amount of credit or any obligations of the joint venture or other corporation which any person contributing to the formation has agreed to extend or guarantee, at any time.

(d) The commerce criterion of section 7A(a)(1) is satisfied if either the activities of any acquiring person are in or affect commerce, or the person filing notification should reasonably believe that the activities of the joint venture or other corporation will be in or will affect commerce.

*Example:* Persons ''A,'' ''B,'' and ''C'' agree to create new corporation N, a joint venture. ''A,'' ''B,'' and ''C'' will each hold one third of the shares of N. ''A'' has more than $100 million in annual net sales. ''B'' has more than $10 million in total assets but less than $100 million in annual net sales and total assets. Both ''C''''s total assets and its annual net sales are less than $10 million. ''A,'' ''B,'' and ''C'' are each engaged in commerce. ''A,'' ''B,'' and ''C'' have agreed to make an aggregate initial contribution to the new entity of $6 million in assets and each to make additional contributions of $6 million in each of the next three years. Under paragraph (c), the assets of the new corporation are $60 million. Under paragraph (b), only ''A'' must file notification. Note that ''A'' also meets the criterion of section 7A(a)(3) since it will be acquiring one third of the voting securities of the new entity for $20 million. N need not file notification; see § 802.41.

[43 FR 33537, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34434, July 29, 1983; 52 FR 7082, Mar. 6, 1987]

### § 801.90 Transactions or devices for avoidance.

Any transaction(s) or other device(s) entered into or employed for the purpose of avoiding the obligation to comply with the requirements of the act shall be disregarded, and the obligation to comply shall be determined by applying the act and these rules to the substance of the transaction.

*Examples:* 1. Suppose corporations A and B wish to form a joint venture. A and B contemplate a total investment of $30 million in the joint venture; persons ''A'' and ''B'' each have total assets in excess of $100 million. Instead of filing notification pursuant to § 801.40, A creates a new subsidiary, A1, which issues half of its authorized shares to A. Assume that A1 has total assets of $1,000. ''A'' then sells 50 percent of its A1 stock to ''B'' for $500. Thereafter, ''A'' and ''B'' each contribute $15 million to A1 in exchange for the remaining authorized A1 stock (one-fourth each to ''A'' and ''B''). A's creation of A1 was exempt under § 802.30; its sale of A1 stock to ''B'' was exempt under § 802.20; and the second acquisition of stock in A1 by ''A'' and ''B'' was exempt under § 802.30 and sections 7A(c) (3) and (10). Since this scheme appears to be for the purpose of avoiding the requirements of the act, the sequence of transactions will be disregarded. The transactions will be viewed as the formation of a joint venture corporation by ''A'' and ''B'' having over $10 million in assets. Such a transaction would be covered by § 801.40 and ''A'' and ''B'' must file notification and observe the waiting period.

2. Suppose ''A'' wholly owns and operates a chain of twenty retail hardware stores, each of which is separately incorporated and has assets of less than $10 million. The aggregate fair market value of the assets of the twenty store corporations is $60 million. ''A'' proposes to sell the stores to ''B'' for $60 million. For various reasons it is decided that ''B'' will buy the stock of each of the store corporations from ''A''. Instead of filing notification and observing the waiting period as contemplated by the act, ''A'' and ''B'' enter into a series of five stock purchase-sale agreements for $12 million each. Under the terms of each contract the stock of four stores will pass from ''A'' to ''B''. The five agreements are to be consummated on five successive days. Because, after each of these transactions, the store corporations are no longer part of the acquired person (§ 801.13(a) does not apply because control has passed, see § 801.2), and because § 802.20(b) exempts the acquisition of control of each of the store corporations, none of the contemplated acquisitions would be subject to the requirements of the act. However, if the stock of all of the store corporations were to be purchased in one transaction, no exemption would be applicable, and the act's requirements would have to be met. Because it appears that the purpose of making five separate contracts is to avoid the requirements of the act, this section would ignore the form of the separate transactions and consider the substance to be one transaction requiring compliance with the act.

## PART 802—EXEMPTION RULES

Sec.

802.1 Acquisitions of goods and realty in the ordinary course of business.

802.2 Certain acquisitions of real property assets.
802.3 Acquisitions of carbon-based mineral reserves.
802.4 Acquisitions of voting securities of issuers holding certain assets the direct acquisition of which is exempt.
802.5 Acquisitions of investment rental property assets.
802.6 Federal agency approval.
802.8 Certain supervisory acquisitions.
802.9 Acquisition solely for the purpose of investment.
802.10 Stock dividends and splits.
802.20 Minimum dollar value.
802.21 Acquisitions of voting securities not meeting or exceeding greater notification threshold.
802.23 Amended or renewed tender offers.
802.30 Intraperson transactions.
802.31 Acquisitions of convertible voting securities.
802.35 Acquisitions by employee trusts.
802.40 Exempt formation of joint venture or other corporations.
802.41 Joint venture or other corporations at time of formation.
802.42 Partial exemption for acquisitions in connection with the formation of certain joint ventures or other corporations.
802.50 Acquisitions of foreign assets or of voting securities of a foreign issuer by United States persons.
802.51 Acquisitions by foreign persons.
802.52 Acquisitions by or from foreign governmental corporations.
802.53 Certain foreign banking transactions.
802.60 Acquisitions by securities underwriters.
802.63 Certain acquisitions by creditors and insurers.
802.64 Acquisitions of voting securities by certain institutional investors.
802.70 Acquisitions subject to order.
802.71 Acquisitions by gift, intestate succession or devise, or by irrevocable trust.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 7A(d), Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A(d), as added by sec. 201, Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94–435, 90 Stat. 1390.

SOURCE: 43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

### §802.1 Acquisitions of goods and realty in the ordinary course of business.

Pursuant to section 7A(c)(1), acquisitions of goods and realty transferred in the ordinary course of business are exempt from the notification requirements of the act. This section identifies certain acquisitions of goods that are exempt as transfers in the ordinary course of business. This section also identifies certain acquisitions of goods and realty that are not in the ordinary course of business and, therefore, do not qualify for the exemption.

(a) *Operating unit.* An acquisition of all or substantially all the assets of an operating unit is not an acquisition in the ordinary course of business. *Operating unit* means assets that are operated by the acquired person as a business undertaking in a particular location or for particular products or services, even though those assets may not be organized as a separate legal entity.

(b) *New goods.* An acquisition of new goods is in the ordinary course of business, except when the goods are acquired as part of an acquisition described in paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) *Current supplies.* An acquisition of current supplies is in the ordinary course of business, except when acquired as part of an acquisition described in paragraph (a) of this section. The term ''current supplies'' includes the following kinds of new or used assets:

(1) Goods acquired and held solely for the purpose of resale or leasing to an entity not within the acquiring person (e.g., inventory),

(2) Goods acquired for consumption in the acquiring person's business (e.g., office supplies, maintenance supplies or electricity), and

(3) Goods acquired to be incorporated in the final product (e.g., raw materials and components).

(d) *Used durable goods.* A good is ''durable'' if it is designed to be used repeatedly and has a useful life greater than one year. An acquisition of used durable goods is an acquisition in the ordinary course of business if the goods are not acquired as part of an acquisition described in paragraph (a) of this section and any of the following criteria are met:

(1) The goods are acquired and held solely for the purpose of resale or leasing to an entity not within the acquiring person; or

(2) The goods are acquired from an acquired person who acquired and has held the goods solely for resale or leasing to an entity not within the acquired person; or

(3) The acquired person has replaced, by acquisition or lease, all or substantially all of the productive capacity of the goods being sold within six months of that sale, or the acquired person has in good faith executed a contract to replace within six months after the sale, by acquisition or lease, all or substantially all of the productive capacity of the goods being sold; or

(4) The goods have been used by the acquired person solely to provide management and administrative support services for its business operations, and the acquired person has in good faith executed a contract to obtain substantially similar services as were provided by the goods being sold. Management and administrative support services include services such as accounting, legal, purchasing, payroll, billing and repair and maintenance of the acquired person's own equipment. Manufacturing, research and development, testing and distribution (i.e., warehousing and transportation) are not considered management and administrative support services.

*Examples:* 1. Greengrocer Inc. intends to sell to ''A'' all of the assets of one of the 12 grocery stores that it owns and operates throughout the metropolitan area of City X. Each of Greengrocer's stores constitutes an operating unit, i.e., a business undertaking in a particular location. Thus ''A's'' acquisition is not exempt as an acquisition in the ordinary course of business. However, the acquisition will not be subject to the notification requirements if the acquisition price or fair market value of the store's assets does not exceed $15 million.

2. ''A,'' a manufacturer of airplane engines, agrees to pay $20 million to ''B,'' a manufacturer of airplane parts, for certain new engine components to be used in the manufacture of airplane engines. The acquisition is exempt under §802.1(b) as new goods as well as under §802.1(c)(3) as current supplies.

3. ''A,'' a power generation company, proposes to purchase from ''B,'' a coal company, $25 million of coal under a long-term contract for use in its facilities to supply electric power to a regional public utility and steam to several industrial sites. This transaction is exempt under §802.1(c)(2) as an acquisition of current supplies. However, if ''A'' proposed to purchase coal reserves rather than enter into a contract to acquire output of a coal mine, the acquisition would not be exempt as an acquisition of goods in the ordinary course of business. The acquisition may still be exempt pursuant to §802.3(b) as an acquisition of reserves of coal if the requirements of that section are met.

4. ''A,'' a national producer of canned fruit, preserves, jams and jellies, agrees to purchase from ''B'' for $25 million a total of 10,000 acres of orchards and vineyards in several locations throughout the U.S. ''A'' plans to harvest the fruit from the acreage for use in its canning operations. The acquisition is not exempt under §802.1 because orchards and vineyards are real property, not ''goods.'' If, on the other hand, ''A'' had contracted to acquire from ''B'' the fruit and grapes harvested from the orchards and vineyards, the acquisition would qualify for the exemption as an acquisition of current supplies under §802.1(c)(3). Although the transfer of orchards and vineyards is not exempt under §802.1, the acquisition would be exempt under §802.2(g) as an acquisition of agricultural property.

5. ''A,'' a railcar leasing company, will purchase $20 million of new railcars from a railcar manufacturer in order to expand its existing fleet of cars available for lease. The transaction is exempt under §802.1(b) as an acquisition of new goods and §802.1(c), as an acquisition of current supplies. If ''A'' subsequently sells the railcars to ''C'', a commercial railroad company, that acquisition would be exempt under §802.1(d)(2), provided that ''A'' acquired and held the railcars solely for resale or leasing to an entity not within itself.

6. ''A,'' a major oil company, proposes to sell two of its used oil tankers for $15.5 million to ''B,'' a dealer who purchases oil tankers from the major U.S. oil companies. ''B's'' acquisition of the used oil tankers is exempt under §802.1(d)(1) provided that ''B'' is actually acquiring beneficial ownership of the used tankers and is not acting as an agent of the seller or purchaser.

7. ''A,'' a cruise ship operator, plans to sell for $18 million one of its cruise ships to ''B,'' another cruise ship operator. ''A'' has, in good faith, executed a contract to acquire a new cruise ship with substantially the same capacity from a ship builder. The contract specifies that ''A'' will receive the new cruise ship within one month after the scheduled date of the sale of its used cruise ship to ''B.'' Since ''B''is acquiring a used durable good that ''A'' has contracted to replace within six months of the sale, the acquisition is exempt under §802.1(d)(3).

8. ''A,'' a luxury cruise ship operator, proposes to sell to ''B,'' a credit company engaged in the ordinary course of its business in lease financing transactions, its fleet of six passenger ships under a 10-year sale/leaseback arrangement. That acquisition is exempt pursuant to §802.1(d)(1), used durable goods acquired for leasing purposes. The acquisition is also exempt under §802.63(a) as a bona fide credit transaction entered into in the ordinary course of ''B's'' business. ''B''

now proposes to sell the ships, subject to the current lease financing arrangement, to ''C,'' another lease financing company. This transaction is exempt under §§802.1(d)(1) and 802.1(d)(2).

9. Three months ago ''A,'' a manufacturing company, acquired several new machines that will replace equipment on one of its production lines. ''A's'' capacity to produce the same products increased modestly when the integration of the new equipment was completed. ''B,'' a manufacturing company that produces products similar to those produced by ''A,'' has entered into a contract to acquire for $18 million the machinery that ''A'' replaced. Delivery of the equipment by ''A'' to ''B'' is scheduled to occur within thirty days. Since ''A'' purchased new machinery to replace the productive capacity of the used equipment, which it sold within six months of the purchase of the new equipment, the acquisition by ''B'' is exempt under §802.1(d)(3).

10. ''A'' will sell to ''B'' for $16 million all of the equipment ''A'' uses exclusively to perform its billing requirements. ''B'' will use the equipment to provide ''A's'' billing needs pursuant to a contract which ''A'' and ''B'' executed 30 days ago in conjunction with the equipment purchase agreement. Although the assets ''B'' will acquire make up essentially all of the assets of one of ''A's'' management and administrative support services divisions, the acquisition qualifies for the exemption under §802.1(d)(4) because a company's internal management and administrative support services, however organized, are not an operating unit as defined by §802.1(a). Management and administrative support services are not a ''business undertaking'' as that term is used in §802.1(a). Rather, they provide support and benefit to the company's operating units and support the company's business operations. However, if the assets being sold also derived revenues from providing billing services for third parties, then the transfer of these assets would not be exempt under §802.1(d)(4), since the equipment is not being used solely to provide management and administrative support services to ''A''.

11. ''A,'' a manufacturer of pharmaceutical products, and ''B'' have entered into a contract under which ''B'' will provide all of ''A's'' research and development needs. Pursuant to the contract, ''B'' will also purchase all of the equipment that ''A'' formerly used to perform its own research and development activities. The sale of the equipment is not an exempt transaction under §802.1(d)(3) because ''A'' is not replacing the productive capacity of the equipment being sold. The sale is also not exempt under §802.1(d)(4), because functions such as research and development and testing are not management and administrative support services of a company but are integral to the design, development or production of the company's products.

12. ''A,'' an automobile manufacturer, is discontinuing its manufacture of metal seat frames for its cars. ''A'' enters into a contract with ''B,'' a manufacturer of various fabricated metal products, to sell its seat frame production lines and to purchase from ''B'' all of its metal seat frame needs for the next five years. This transfer of productive capacity by ''A'' is not exempt pursuant to §802.1(d)(3), since ''A'' is not replacing the productive capacity of the equipment being sold. The acquisition is also not exempt under §802.1(d)(4). ''A's'' sale of production lines is not the transfer of goods that provide management and administrative services to support the business operations of''A''; this manufacturing equipment is an integral part of ''A's'' production operations.

[61 FR 13684, Mar. 28, 1996]

### §802.2 Certain acquisitions of real property assets.

(a) *New facilities.* An acquisition of a new facility shall be exempt from the requirements of the act. A new facility is a structure that has not produced income and was either constructed by the acquired person for sale or held at all times by the acquired person solely for resale. The new facility may include realty, equipment or other assets incidental to the ownership of the new facility. In an acquisition that includes a new facility, the transfer of any other assets shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were being acquired in a separate acquisition.

(b) *Used facilities.* An acquisition of a used facility shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if the facility is acquired from a lessor that has held title to the facility for financing purposes in the ordinary course of the lessor's business by a lessee that has had sole and continuous possession and use of the facility since it was first built as a new facility. The used facility may include realty, equipment or other assets associated with the operation of the facility. In an acquisition that includes a used facility that meets the requirements of this paragraph, the transfer of any other assets shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were acquired in a separate transaction.

(c) *Unproductive real property.* An acquisition of unproductive real property

shall be exempt from the requirements of the act. In an acquisition that includes unproductive real property, the transfer of any assets that are not unproductive real property shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were being acquired in a separate acquisition.

(1) Subject to the limitations of (c)(2), unproductive real property is any real property, including raw land, structures or other improvements (but excluding equipment), associated production and exploration assets as defined in § 802.3(c), natural resources and assets incidental to the ownership of the real property, that has not generated total revenues in excess of $5 million during the thirty-six (36) months preceding the acquisition.

(2) Unproductive real property does not include the following:

(i) Manufacturing or non-manufacturing facilities that have not yet begun operation;

(ii) Manufacturing or non-manufacturing facilities that were in operation at any time during the twelve (12) months preceding the acquisition; and

(iii) Real property that is either adjacent to or used in conjunction with real property that is not unproductive real property and is included in the acquisition.

(d) *Office and residential property.* (1) An acquisition of office or residential property shall be exempt from the requirements of the act. In an acquisition that includes office or residential property, the transfer of any assets that are not office or residential property shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if such assets were being transferred in a separate acquisition.

(2) Office and residential property is real property that is used primarily for office or residential purposes. In determining whether real property is used primarily for office or residential purposes, all real property, the acquisition of which is exempt under another provision of the act and these rules, shall be excluded from the determination. Office and residential property includes:

(i) Office buildings,

(ii) Residences,

(iii) Common areas on the property, including parking and recreational facilities, and

(iv) Assets incidental to the ownership of such property, including cash, prepaid taxes or insurance, rental receivables and the like.

(3) If the acquisition includes the purchase of a business conducted on the office and residential property, the transfer of that business, including the space in which the business is conducted, shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if such business were being transferred in a separate acquisition.

(e) *Hotels and motels.* (1) An acquisition of a hotel or motel, its improvements such as golf, swimming, tennis, restaurant, health club or parking facilities (but excluding ski facilities), and assets incidental to the ownership and operation of the hotel or motel (e.g., prepaid taxes or insurance, management contracts and licenses to use trademarks associated with the hotel or motel being acquired) shall be exempt from the requirements of the act. In an acquisition that includes a hotel or motel, the transfer of any assets that are not a hotel or motel, its improvements such as golf, swimming, tennis, restaurant, health club or parking facilities (but excluding ski facilities) and assets incidental to the ownership of the hotel or motel, shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were being acquired in a separate acquisition.

(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (1) of the section, an acquisition of a hotel or motel that includes a gambling casino shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules.

(f) *Recreational land.* An acquisition of recreational land shall be exempt from the requirements of the act. Recreational land is real property used primarily as a golf course or a swimming or tennis club facility, and assets incidental to the ownership of such property. In an acquisition that includes recreational land, the transfer of any property or assets that are not recreational land shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were being acquired in a separate acquisition.

(g) *Agricultural property*. An acquisition of agricultural property, assets incidental to the ownership of such property and associated agricultural assets shall be exempt from the requirements of the act. Agricultural property is real property and assets that primarily generate revenues from the production of crops, fruits, vegetables, livestock, poultry, milk and eggs (activities within SIC Major Groups 01 and 02).

(1) Associated agricultural assets are assets integral to the agricultural business activities conducted on the property. Associated agricultural assets include, but are not limited to, inventory (e.g., livestock, poultry, crops, fruit, vegetables, milk, eggs); structures that house livestock raised on the real property; and fertilizer and animal feed. Associated agricultural assets do not include processing facilities such as poultry and livestock slaughtering, processing and packing facilities.

(2) Agricultural property does not include any real property and assets either adjacent to or used in conjunction with processing facilities that are included in the acquisition.

(3) In an acquisition that includes agricultural property, the transfer of any assets that are not agricultural property, assets incidental to the ownership of such property or associated agricultural assets shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if such assets were being transferred in a separate acquisition.

(h) *Retail rental space; warehouses.* An acquisition of retail rental space (including shopping centers) or warehouses and assets incidental to the ownership of retail rental space or warehouses shall be exempt from the requirements of the act, except when the retail rental space or warehouse is to be acquired in an acquisition of a business conducted on the real property. In an acquisition that includes retail rental space or warehouses, the transfer of any assets that are neither retail rental space nor warehouses shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if such assets were being transferred in a separate acquisition.

*Examples.* 1. ''A,'' a major automobile manufacturer, builds a new automobile plant in anticipation of increased demand for its cars. The market does not improve and ''A'' never occupies the facility. ''A'' then sells the facility, which is fully equipped and ready for operation, to ''B,'' another automobile manufacturer. The acquisition of this plant, including any equipment and assets associated with its operation, is not exempt as an acquisition of a new facility, even though the facility has not produced any income, since ''A'' did not construct the facility for sale or hold it at all times solely for resale. Also, the acquisition is not exempt as an acquisition of unproductive property, because manufacturing facilities that have not yet begun operations are explicitly excluded from that exemption.

2. B, a subsidiary of ''A,'' a financial institution, acquired a newly constructed power plant, which it leased to ''X'' pursuant to a lease financing arrangement. ''A's'' acquisition of the plant through B was exempt under §802.63(a) as a bona fide credit transaction entered into in the ordinary course of ''A's'' business. ''X'' operated the plant as sole lessee for the next eight years and now proposes to exercise an option to buy the plant for $62 million. ''X's'' acquisition of the plant is exempt pursuant to §802.2(b). The plant is being acquired from B, the lessor, which held title to the plant for financing purposes, and the purchaser, ''X,'' has had sole and continuous possession and use of the plant since its construction.

3. ''A'' proposes to acquire a $100 million tract of wilderness land from ''B.'' Copper deposits valued at $17 million and timber reserves valued at $20 million are situated on the land and will be conveyed as part of this transaction. During the last three fiscal years preceding the sale, the property generated $50,000 from the sale of a small amount of timber cut from the reserves two years ago. ''A's'' acquisition of the wilderness land from ''B'' is exempt as an acquisition of unproductive real property because the property did not generate revenues exceeding $5 million during the thirty-six months preceding the acquisition. The copper deposits and timber reserves are by definition unproductive real property and, thus, are not separately subject to the notification requirements.

4. ''A'' proposes to purchase from ''B'' for $40 million an old steel mill that is not currently operating to add to ''A's'' existing steel production capacity. The mill has not generated revenues during the 36 months preceding the acquisition but contains equipment valued at $16 million that ''A'' plans to refurbish for use in its operations. ''A's'' acquisition of the mill and the land on which it is located is exempt as unproductive real property. However, the transfer of the equipment and any assets other than the unproductive property is not exempt and is separately subject to the notification requirements of the act.

5. ''A'' proposes to purchase two downtown lots, Parcels 1 and 2, from ''B'' for $40 million. Parcel 1, located in the southwest section, contains no structures or improvements. A hotel is located in the northeast section on Parcel 2, and it has generated $9 million in revenues during the past three years. The purchase of Parcel 1 is exempt if it qualifies as unproductive real property, i.e., it has not generated annual revenues in excess of $5 million in the three fiscal years prior to the acquisition. Parcel 2 is not unproductive real property, but its acquisition is exempt under § 802.2(e) as the acquisition of a hotel.

6. ''A'' plans to purchase from ''B,'' a manufacturer, a newly-constructed building that ''B'' had intended to equip for use in its manufacturing operations. ''B'' was unable to secure financing to purchase the necessary equipment and ''A'', also a manufacturer, will be required to invest approximately $50 million in order to equip the building for use in its production operations. This building is not a new facility under § 802.2 (a), because it was not constructed or held by ''B'' for sale or resale. However, the acquisition of the building qualifies for exemption as unproductive real property pursuant to § 802.2(c)(1). The building is not yet a manufacturing facility since it does not contain equipment and requires significant capital investment before it can be used as a manufacturing facility.

7. ''A'' proposes to purchase from ''B,'' for $20 million, a 100 acre parcel of land that includes a currently operating factory occupying 10 acres. The other 90 adjoining acres are vacant and unimproved and are used by ''B'' for storage of supplies and equipment. The factory and the unimproved acreage have fair market values of $12 million and $8 million, respectively. The transaction is not exempt under § 802.2(c) because the vacant property is adjacent to property occupied by the operating factory. Moreover, if the 90 acres were not adjacent to the 10 acres occupied by the factory, the transaction would not be exempt because the 90 acres are being used in conjunction with the factory being acquired and thus is not unproductive property.

8. ''X'' proposes to buy a five-story building from ''Y.'' The ground floor of this building houses a department store, and ''X'' currently leases the third floor to operate a medical laboratory. The remaining three floors are used for offices. ''X'' is not acquiring the business of the department store. Because the ground floor is rental retail space, the acquisition of which is exempt under § 802.2(h), this part of the building is excluded from the determination of whether the building is used primarily for office purposes. The laboratory is therefore the only non-office use, and, since it makes up 25 percent of the remainder of the building, the building is used 75 percent for offices. Thus the building qualifies as an office building and its acquisition is therefore exempt under § 802.2(d).

9. ''A'' intends to acquire three shopping centers from ''B'' for a total of $80 million. The anchor stores in two of the shopping centers are department stores, the businesses of which ''A'' is buying from ''B'' as part of the overall transaction. The acquisition of the shopping centers is an acquisition of retail rental space that is exempt under § 802.2(h). However, ''A's'' acquisition of the department store business, including the portion of the shopping centers that the two department stores being purchased occupy, are separately subject to the notification requirements. If the value of these assets exceeds $15 million, ''A'' must comply with the requirements of the act for this part of the transaction.

10. ''A'' wishes to purchase from ''B'' a parcel of land for $30 million. The parcel contains a race track and a golf course. The golf course qualifies as recreational land pursuant to § 802.2(f), but the race track is not included in the exemption. Therefore, if the value of the race track is more than $15 million, ''A'' will have to file notification for the purchase of the race track.

11. ''A'' intends to purchase a poultry farm from ''B.'' The acquisition of the poultry farm is a transfer of agricultural property that is exempt pursuant to § 802.2(g). If, however, ''B'' has a poultry slaughtering and processing facility on his farm that is included in the acquisition, ''A's'' acquisition of the farm is not exempt as an acquisition of agricultural property because agricultural property does not include property or assets adjacent to or used in conjunction with a processing facility that is included in an acquisition.

12. ''A'' proposes to purchase the prescription drug wholesale distribution business of ''B'' for $50 million. The business includes six regional warehouses used for ''B's'' national wholesale drug distribution business. Since ''A'' is acquiring the warehouses in connection with the acquisition of ''B's'' prescription drug wholesale distribution business, the acquisition of the warehouses is not exempt.

[61 FR 13686, Mar. 28, 1996]

### § 802.3 Acquisitions of carbon-based mineral reserves.

(a) An acquisition of reserves of oil, natural gas, shale or tar sands, or rights to reserves of oil, natural gas, shale or tar sands together with associated exploration or production assets shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if the value of the reserves, the rights and the associated exploration or production assets to be held

as a result of the acquisition does not exceed $500 million. In an acquisition that includes reserves of oil, natural gas, shale or tar sands, or rights to reserves of oil, natural gas, shale or tar sands and associated exploration or production assets, the transfer of any other assets shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were being acquired in a separate acquisition.

(b) An acquisition of reserves of coal, or rights to reserves of coal and associated exploration or production assets, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if the value of the reserves, the rights and the associated exploration or production assets to be held as a result of the acquisition does not exceed $200 million. In an acquisition that includes reserves of coal, rights to reserves of coal and associated exploration or production assets, the transfer of any other assets shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were being acquired in a separate acquisition.

(c) Associated exploration or production assets means equipment, machinery, fixtures and other assets that are integral and exclusive to current or future exploration or production activities associated with the carbon-based mineral reserves that are being acquired. Associated exploration or production assets do not include the following:

(1) Any pipeline and pipeline system or processing facility which transports or processes oil and gas after it passes through the meters of a producing field located within reserves that are being acquired; and

(2) Any pipeline or pipeline system that receives gas directly from gas wells for transportation to a natural gas processing facility or other destination.

*Examples:* 1. ''A'' proposes to purchase from ''B'' for $550 million gas reserves that are not yet in production and have not generated any income. ''A'' will also acquire from ''B'' for $280 million producing oil reserves and associated assets such as wells, compressors, pumps and other equipment. The acquisition of the gas reserves is exempt as a transfer of unproductive property under §802.2(c). The acquisition of the oil reserves and associated assets is exempt pursuant to §802.3(a), since the value of the reserves and associated assets does not exceed the $500 million limitation.

2. ''A,'' an oil company, proposes to acquire for $180 million oil reserves currently in production along with field pipelines and treating and metering facilities which serve such reserves exclusively. The acquisition of the reserves and the associated assets are exempt. ''A'' will also acquire from ''B'' for $16 million a natural gas processing plant and its associated gathering pipeline system. This acquisition is not exempt since §802.3(c) excludes these assets from the exemption in §802.3 for transfers of associated exploration or production assets.

3. ''A,'' an oil company, proposes to acquire a coal mine currently in operation and associated production assets for $90 million from ''B,'' an oil company. ''A'' will also purchase from ''B'' producing oil reserves valued at $100 million and an oil refinery valued at $13 million. The acquisition of the coal mine and the oil reserves is exempt pursuant to §802.3. Although §802.3(c) excludes the refinery from the exemption in §802.3 for transfers of associated exploration and production assets, ''A's'' acquisition of the refinery is not subject to the notification requirements of the act because its value does not exceed $15 million.

4. ''X'' proposes to acquire from ''Z'' coal reserves which, together with associated exploration assets, are valued at $230 million. Since the value of the reserves and the assets exceeds the $200 million limitation in §802.3(b), this transaction is not exempt under §802.3. However, if the coal reserves qualify as unproductive property under the requirements of §802.2(c), their acquisition, along with the acquisition of their associated assets, would be exempt.

[61 FR 13688, Mar. 28, 1996]

### §802.4 Acquisitions of voting securities of issuers holding certain assets the direct acquisition of which is exempt.

(a) An acquisition of voting securities of an issuer whose assets together with those of all entities it controls consist or will consist of assets whose purchase would be exempt from the requirements of the act pursuant to section 7A(c)(2) of the act, §802.2, §802.3 or §802.5 of these rules is exempt from the reporting requirements if the acquired issuer and all entities it controls do not hold other non-exempt assets with an aggregate fair market value of more than $15 million.

(b) As used in paragraph (a) of this section, *issuer* means a single issuer, or two or more issuers controlled by the same acquired person.

(c) In connection with paragraph (a) of this section and § 801.15 (b), the value of the assets of an issuer whose voting securities are being acquired pursuant to this section shall be the fair market value, determined in accordance with § 801.10(c).

*Examples:* 1. ''A,'' a real estate investment company, proposes to purchase 100 percent of the voting securities of C, a wholly-owned subsidiary of ''B,'' a construction company. C's assets are a newly constructed, never occupied hotel, including fixtures, furnishings and insurance policies. The acquisition of the hotel would be exempt under § 802.2(a) as a new facility and under § 802.2(d). Therefore, the acquisition of the voting securities of C is exempt pursuant to § 802.4(a) since C holds assets whose direct purchase would be exempt under § 802.2 and does not hold non-exempt assets exceeding $15 million in value.

2. ''A'' proposes to acquire 60 percent of the voting securities of C from ''B.'' C's assets consist of a portfolio of mortgages valued at $20 million and a small manufacturing plant valued at $6 million. The manufacturing plant is an operating unit for purposes of § 802.1(a). Since the acquisition of the mortgages would be exempt pursuant to section 7A(c)(2) of the act and since the value of the non-exempt manufacturing plant is less than $15 million, this acquisition is exempt under § 802.4(a).

3. ''A'' proposes to acquire from ''B'' 100 percent of the voting securities of each of three issuers, M, N and O, simultaneously. M's assets consist of oil reserves worth $160 million and coal reserves worth $40 million. N has assets consisting of $130 million of gas reserves and $100 million of coal reserves. O's assets are oil shale reserves worth $140 million and a coal mine worth $80 million. Since ''A'' is simultaneously acquiring the voting securities of three issuers from the same acquired person, it must aggregate the assets of the issuers to determine if any of the limitations in § 802.3 is exceeded. As a result of aggregating the assets of M, N and O, ''A's'' holdings of oil and gas reserves are below the $500 limitation for such assets in § 802.3(a). However, the aggregated holdings exceed the $200 million limitation for coal reserves in § 802.3(b). ''A's'' acquisition therefore is not exempt, and it must report the entire transaction.

[61 FR 13688, Mar. 28, 1996]

### § 802.5 Acquisitions of investment rental property assets.

(a) Acquisitions of investment rental property assets shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

(b) Investment rental property assets. ''Investment rental property assets'' means real property that will not be rented to entities included within the acquiring person except for the sole purpose of maintaining, managing or supervising the operation of the real property, and will be held solely for rental or investment purposes. In an acquisition that includes investment rental property assets, the transfer of any property or assets that are not investment rental property assets shall be subject to the requirements of the act and these rules as if they were being acquired in a separate transaction. Investment rental property assets include:

(1) Property currently rented,

(2) Property held for rent but not currently rented,

(3) Common areas on the property, and

(4) Assets incidental to the ownership of property, which may include cash, prepaid taxes or insurance, rental receivables and the like.

*Example:* 1. ''X'', a corporation, proposes to purchase a sports/entertainment complex which it will rent to professional sports teams and promoters of special events for concerts, ice shows, sporting events and other entertainment activities. ''X'' will provide office space in the complex for ''Y'', a management company which will maintain and manage the facility for ''X.'' This acquisition is an exempt acquisition of investment rental property assets since ''X'' intends to rent the facility to third parties and is providing space within the facility to a management company solely to maintain, manage or supervise the operation of the facility on its behalf. If, however, ''X'' controls Z, a concert promoter to whom it also intends to rent the complex, the acquisition would not be exempt under § 802.5, since the property would not meet the requirements of § 802.5(b)(1).

2. ''X'' intends to buy from ''Y'' a development commonly referred to as an industrial park. The industrial park contains a warehouse/distribution center, a retail tire and automobile parts store, an office building, and a small factory. The industrial park also contains several parcels of vacant land. If ''X'' intends to acquire this industrial park as investment rental property, the acquisition will be exempt pursuant to § 802.5. If, however, ''X'' intends to use the factory for its own manufacturing operations, this exemption would be unavailable. The exemptions in § 802.2 for warehouses, rental retail space, office buildings, and undeveloped land

may still apply and, if the value of the factory is $15 million or less, the entire transaction may be exempted by that section.

[61 FR 13688, Mar. 28, 1996]

### §802.6 Federal agency approval.

(a) For the purposes of section 7A (c)(6) and (c)(8), the term *information and documentary material* includes one copy of all documents, application forms, and all written submissions of any type whatsoever. In lieu of providing all such information and documentary material, or any portion thereof, one copy of an index describing such information and documentary material may be provided, together with a certification that any such information or documentary material not provided will be provided within 10 calendar days upon request by the Federal Trade Commission or Assistant Attorney General, or a delegated official of either. Any material submitted pursuant to this section shall be submitted to the offices specified in §803.10(c).

(b)(1) Except as provided in §802.6(b)(2), any transaction which requires approval by the Civil Aeronautics Board prior to consummation, pursuant to section 408 of the Federal Aviation Act, 49 U.S.C. 1378, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if copies of all information and documentary material filed with the Civil Aeronautics Board are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General.

(2) The following will be considered assets held as a result of an acquisition requiring approval by the Civil Aeronautics Board pursuant to section 408 of the Federal Aviation Act, and such assets will not be exempt under §802.6(b)(1):

(i) If the transaction is an acquisition of assets, the assets which are engaged in a business or businesses other than aeronautics or air transportation as defined in section 101 of the Federal Aviation Act, 49 U.S.C. 1301;

(ii) If the transaction is an acquisition of voting securities, or is treated under the rules as an acquisition of voting securities, and the acquiring person will, as a result of the acquisition, hold voting securities of the acquired person valued in excess of $15 million, the business or businesses of the acquired issuer (and all entities which it controls) which are not engaged in aeronautics or air transportation as defined in section 101 of the Federal Aviation Act, 49 U.S.C. 1301.

*Example:* Assume that A (an entity included within person ''A'') proposes to acquire voting securities of B (an entity included within person ''B'') for $100 million. A and B are both air carriers who meet the size-of-person test, but B also owns a commercial data processing business located in the United States with a value of $30 million. Assume that this transaction requires CAB approval under 49 U.S.C. 1378. Since the acquired person has a business other than aeronautics or air transportation, the parties must report under §802.6(b)(2) because the parties meet the size-of-person test, no other exemption applies to the acquisition of the data processing business, and the acquisition of the non-aeronautic business is deemed to be an acquisition of assets valued at $30 million.

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34435, July 29, 1983]

### §802.8 Certain supervisory acquisitions.

(a) A merger, consolidation, purchase of assets, or acquisition requiring agency approval under sections 403 or 408(e) of the National Housing Act, 12 U.S.C. 1726, 1730a(e), or under section 5 of the Home Owners' Loan Act of 1933, 12 U.S.C. 1464 shall be exempt from the requirements of the Act, including specifically the filing requirement of section 7A(c)(8), it the agency whose approval is required finds that approval of such merger, consolidation, purchase of assets, or acquisition is necessary to prevent the probable failure of one of the institutions involved.

(b)(1) A merger, consolidation, purchase of assets, or acquisition which requires agency approval under 12 U.S.C. 1817(j) or 12 U.S.C. 1730(q) shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if copies of all information and documentary materials filed with any such agency are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General at least 30 days prior to consummation of the proposed acquisition.

(2) A transaction described in paragraph (b)(1) of this section shall be exempt from the requirements of the act,

including specifically the filing requirement, if the agency whose approval is required finds that approval of such transaction is necessary to prevent the probable failure of one of the institutions involved.

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34436, July 29, 1983]

### § 802.9 Acquisition solely for the purpose of investment.

An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act pursuant to section 7A(c)(9) if made solely for the purpose of investment and if, as a result of the acquisition, the acquiring person would hold ten percent or less of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer, regardless of the dollar value of voting securities so acquired or held.

*Examples:* 1. Suppose that acquiring person ''A'' acquires 6 percent of the voting securities of issuer X, valued at $30 million. If the acquisition is solely for the purpose of investment, it is exempt under section 7A(c)(9).

2. After the acquisition in example 1, ''A'' decides to acquire an additional 7 percent of the voting securities of X. Regardless of ''A''s intentions, the acquisition is not exempt under section 7A(c)(9).

3. After the acquisition in example 1, acquiring person ''A'' decides to participate in the management of issuer X. Any subsequent acquisitions of X stock by ''A'' would not be exempt under section 7A(c)(9).

### § 802.10 Stock dividends and splits.

The acquisition of voting securities, pursuant to a stock split or pro rata stock dividend, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act under section 7A(c)(10).

### § 802.20 Minimum dollar value.

An acquisition which would be subject to the requirements of the act and which satisfies section 7A(a)(3)(A), but which does not satisfy section 7A(a)(3)(B), shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if as a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would not hold:

(a) Assets of the acquired person valued at more than $15 million; or

(b) Voting securities which confer control of an issuer which, together with all entities which it controls, has annual net sales or total assets of $25 million or more.

*Examples:* 1. Acquiring person ''A'' intends to acquire 66 percent of the voting securities of corporation X from X's ultimate parent entity, W, and ''A'' holds no other assets or voting securities of acquired persons ''W''. X has no subsidiaries and does not have annual net sales or total assets of $10 million. If the postacquisition value of ''A''s holdings of voting securities of X would be $15 million or less, the acquisition would be exempt under this section.

2. Assume that acquiring person ''B'' holds voting securities of corporation Q valued at $9 million. ''B'' now intends to acquire assets of Q valued at $7 million. Since the aggregate total amount of voting securities and assets of ''Q'' to be held by ''B'' would exceed $15 million, section 7A(a)(3)(B) would be satisfied, and the acquisition would not be exempt under this section.

3. Assume that acquiring person ''C'' holds $5 million of the voting securities of corporation R, an entity included within person ''T.'' ''C'' now proposes to acquire $8 million of the assets of corporation S, also an entity included within person ''T,'' representing 20 percent of ''T's'' total assets. Section 7A(a)(3)(B) is not satisfied because the aggregate total amount of ''C's'' holdings in acquired person ''T'' will be less than $15 million. Although section 7A(a)(3)(A) would be satisfied by the asset acquisition, it will nevertheless be exempt under paragraph (a) of this section.

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 44 FR 66782, Nov. 21, 1979]

### § 802.21 Acquisitions of voting securities not meeting or exceeding greater notification threshold.

An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if:

(a) The acquiring person and all other persons required by the act and these rules to file notification filed notification with respect to an earlier acquisition of voting securities of the same issuer;

(b) The waiting period with respect to the earlier acquisition has expired, or been terminated pursuant to § 803.11, and the acquisition will be consummated within 5 years of such expiration or termination; and

(c) The acquisition will not increase the holdings of the acquiring person to meet or exceed a notification threshold greater than the greatest notification threshold met or exceeded in the earlier acquisition.

*Examples:* 1. Corporation A acquires 15 percent of the voting securities of corporation B

and both ''A'' and ''B'' file notification as required. Within five years of the expiration of the original waiting period, ''A'' acquires additional voting securities of B but not in an amount sufficient to meet or exceed 25 percent of the voting securities of B. No additional notification is required.

2. In example 1, ''A'' continues to acquire B's securities. Before ''A's'' holdings meet or exceed 25 percent of B's outstanding voting securities, ''A'' and ''B'' must file notification and wait the prescribed period, regardless of whether the acquisition occur within five years after the expiration of the earlier waiting period.

3. In example 2, suppose that ''A'' and ''B'' file notification at the 25 percent level and that, within 5 years after expiration of the waiting period, ''A'' continues to acquire voting securities of B. No further notification is required until ''A'' plans to make the acquisition that will give it 50 percent ownership of B. (Once ''A'' holds 50 percent, further acquisitions of voting securities are exempt under section 7A(c)(3).

4. Assume that ''C'' is an institutional investor whose prior acquisitions of corporation D's voting securities were exempt under §802.64. ''C'' now proposes to purchase additional voting securities of D which will result in holdings exceeding 15 percent and $25 million. ''C'' and ''D'' therefore file notification and observe the waiting period. Under this section within the 5 years following the expiration of the waiting period ''C'' may further increase its holdings in D to any amount below 25 percent (regardless of dollar value) without again filing notification. Section 802.64 exempted ''C'' from filing notification at the thresholds defined in subparagraphs (1) or (2) of §801.1(h); thereafter, since ''C'' filed notification with respect to an acquisition which resulted in its holding more than 15 percent of D's voting securities valued at more than $25 million, the next notification threshold ''greater than the greatest notification threshold met or exceeded in the earlier acquisition'' is 25 percent of D's voting securities. (See paragraph (c) of this section and §801.1(h)(3).)

5. This section also allows a person to recross any of the threshold notification levels—15 percent/$15 million, 15 percent if greater than $15 million, 25 and 50 percent—any number of times within 5 years of the expiration of the waiting period following notification for that level. Thus, if in example 1, ''A'' had disposed of some voting securities so that it held less than 15 percent of the voting securities of B, and thereafter had increased its holdings to more than 15 percent but less than 25 percent of B, notification would not be required if the increase occurred within 5 years of the expiration of the original waiting period. Similarly, in examples 2 and 3, ''A'' could decrease its holdings below, and then increase its holdings above, 25 percent and 50 percent, respectively without filing notification, if done within 5 years of the expiration of those respective waiting periods.

## §802.23 Amended or renewed tender offers.

Whenever a tender offer is amended or renewed after notification has been filed by the offeror, no new notification shall be required, and the running of the waiting period shall be unaffected, except as follows:

(a) If the number of voting securities to be acquired pursuant to the offer is increased such that a greater notification threshold would be met or exceeded, only the acquiring person need again file notification, but a new waiting period must be observed;

(b) If a noncash tender offer is amended to become a cash tender offer, (1) one copy of the amended tender offer shall be filed in the manner prescribed by §803.10(c) with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General, and (2) subject to the provisions of §803.10(b)(1), the waiting period shall expire on the 15th day after the date of receipt (determined in accordance with §803.10(c)) of the amended tender offer, or on the 30th day after filing notification, whichever is earlier; or

(c) If a cash tender offer is amended to become a noncash tender offer, (1) one copy of the amended tender offer shall be filed in the manner prescribed by §803.10(c) with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General, and (2) subject to the provisions of §803.10(b)(1), the waiting period shall expire on the 15th day after the date of receipt (as determined in accordance with §803.10(c)) of the amended tender offer, or on the 30th day after filing notification, whichever is later.

*Examples:* 1. Assume that corporation A makes a tender offer for 20 percent of the voting securities of corporation B and that ''A'' files notification. Under this section, if A subsequently amends its tender offer only as to the amount of consideration offered, the waiting period so commenced is not affected, and no new notification need be filed.

2. In the previous example, assume that A makes an amended tender offer for 27 percent of the voting securities of B. Since a new notification threshold will be crossed, this section requires that ''A'' must again file notification and observe a new waiting period.

Paragraph (a) of this section, however, provides that ''B'' need not file notification again.

3. Assume that ''A'' makes a tender offer for shares of corporation B. ''A'' includes its voting securities as part of the consideration. ''A'' files notification. Five days later, ''A'' changes its tender offer to a cash tender offer, and on the same day files copies of its amended tender offer with the offices designated in § 803.10(c). Under paragraph (b) of this section, the waiting period expires (unless extended or terminated) 15 days after the receipt of the amended offer (on the 20th day after filing notification), since that occurs earlier than the expiration of the original waiting period (which would occur on the 30th day after filing).

4. Assume that ''A'' makes a cash tender offer for shares of corporation B and files notification. Six days later, ''A'' amends the tender offer and adds voting securities as consideration, and on the same day files copies of the amended tender offer with the offices designated in § 803.10(c). Under paragraph (c) of this section, the waiting period expires (unless extended or terminated) on the 30th day following the date of filing of notification (determined under § 803.10(c)), since that occurs later than the 15th day after receipt of the amended tender offer (which would occur on the 21st day).

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978; 43 FR 36054, Aug. 15, 1978]

### § 802.30 Intraperson transactions.

An acquisition (other than the formation of a joint venture or other corporation the voting securities of which will be held by two or more persons) in which, by reason of holdings of voting securities, the acquiring and acquired persons are (or as a result of formation of a wholly owned entity will be) the same person, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

*Examples:* 1. Corporation A merges its two wholly owned subsidiaries S1 and S2. The transaction is exempt under this section.

2. Corporation B creates a new wholly owned subsidiary. The transaction is exempt under this section.

3. Corporation A, which controls corporation B by a contract giving A the power to name a majority of B's directors, but which holds no voting securities of B, proposes to acquire 15 percent of B's voting securities. The transaction is not exempt under this section, since ''A'' and ''B'' are not the same person ''by reason of holdings of voting securities.''

4. Corporation A repurchases a portion of its voting securities in a series of transactions involving numerous sellers. All of these acquisitions are exempt under this section. The redemption or retirement of securities would likewise be exempt under this section.

5. Corporations A and B (which are not included within the same person) form a new corporation, C. A and B will each hold C's voting securities upon formation. This section is inapplicable, and the acquisitions of C's voting securities by A and B are not exempt.

### § 802.31 Acquisitions of convertible voting securities.

Acquisitions of convertible voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

*Example:* This section applies regardless of the dollar value of the convertible voting securities held or to be acquired and even though they may be converted into 15 percent or more of the issuer's voting securities. Note, however, that subsequent conversions of convertible voting securities may be subject to the requirements of the act. See § 801.32.

### § 802.35 Acquisitions by employee trusts.

An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the notification requirements of the act if:

(a) The securities are acquired by a trust that meets the qualifications of section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code;

(b) The trust is controlled by a person that employs the beneficiaries and,

(c) The voting securities acquired are those of that person or an entity within that person.

*Examples:* 1. Company A establishes a trust for its employees that meets the qualifications of section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code. Company A has the power to designate the trustee of the trust. That trust then acquires 30% of the voting securities of Company A for $30 million. Later, the trust acquires 20% of the stock of Company B, a wholly-owned subsidiary of Company A, for $20 million. Neither acquisition is reportable.

2. Assume that in the example above, ''A'' has total assets of $100 million. ''C'' also has total assets of $100 million and is not controlled by Company A. The trust controlled by Company A plans to acquire 40 percent of the voting securities of Company C for $40 million. Since Company C is not included within ''A,'' ''A'' must observe the requirements of the act before the trust makes the acquisition of Company C's shares.

[52 FR 7082, Mar. 6, 1987]

### §802.40 Exempt formation of joint venture or other corporations.

Acquisitions of the voting securities of a joint venture or other corporation at the time of formation under §801.40 shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if the joint venture or other corporation will be not for profit within the meaning of sections 501(c)(1)–(4), (6)–(15), (17)–(20) or (d) of the Internal Revenue Code.

### §802.41 Joint venture or other corporations at time of formation.

Whenever any person(s) contributing to the formation of a joint venture or other corporation are subject to the requirements of the act by reason of §801.40, the joint venture or other corporation need not file the notification required by the act and §803.1.

*Examples:* 1. Corporations A and B, each having sales of $100 million, each propose to contribute $20 million in cash in exchange for 50 percent of the voting securities of a new corporation, N. Under this section, the new corporation need not file notification, although both ''A'' and ''B'' must do so and observe the waiting period prior to receiving any voting securities of N.

2. In addition to the facts in example 1 above, A and B have agreed that upon creation N will purchase 100 percent of the voting securities of corporation C for $15 million. Because N's purchase of C is not a transaction in connection with N's formation, and because in any event C is not a contributor to the formation of N, ''A,'' ''B'' and ''C'' must file with respect to the proposed acquisition of C and must observe the waiting period.

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 7082, Mar. 6, 1987]

### §802.42 Partial exemption for acquisitions in connection with the formation of certain joint ventures or other corporations.

(a) Whenever one or more of the contributors in the formation of a joint venture or other corporation which otherwise would be subject to the requirements of the act by reason of §801.40 are exempt from these requirements under section 7A(c)(8), any other contributor in the formation which is subject to the act and not exempt under section 7A(c)(8) need not file a Notification and Report Form, provided that no less than 30 days prior to the date of consummation any such contributor claiming this exemption has submitted an affidavit to the Federal Trade Commission and to the Assistant Attorney General stating its good faith intention to make the proposed acquisition and asserting the applicability of this exemption.

(b) Persons relieved of the requirement to file a Notification and Report Form pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section remain subject to all other provisions of the act and these rules.

[48 FR 34436, July 29, 1983]

### §802.50 Acquisitions of foreign assets or of voting securities of a foreign issuer by United States persons.

(a) *Assets.* In a transaction in which assets located outside the United States are being acquired by a U.S. person:

(1) The acquisition of assets located outside the United States, to which no sales in or into the United States are attributable, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act; and

(2) The acquisition of assets located outside the United States, to which sales in or into the United States are attributable, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act unless as a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would hold assets of the acquired person to which such sales aggregating $25 million or more during the acquired person's most recent fiscal year were attributable.

*Examples:* 1. Assume that ''A'' and ''B'' are both U.S. persons. ''A'' proposes selling to ''B'' a manufacturing plant located abroad. Sales in or into the United States attributable to the plant totaled $8 million in the most recent fiscal year. The transaction is exempt under this paragraph.

2. Sixty days after the transaction in example 1, ''A'' proposes to sell to ''B'' a second manufacturing plant located abroad; sales in or into the United States attributable to this plant totaled $20 million in the most recent fiscal year. Since ''B'' would be acquiring the second plant within 180 days of the first plant, both plants would be considered assets of ''A'' now held by ''B''. See §801.13(b)(2). Since the total annual sales in or into the United States exceed $215 million, the acquisition of the second plant would not be exempt under this paragraph.

(b) *Voting securities.* An acquisition of voting securities of a foreign issuer by a U.S. person shall be exempt from the requirements of the act unless the

issuer (including all entities controlled by the issuer) either:

(1) Holds assets located in the United States (other than investment assets, voting or nonvoting securities of another person, and assets included pursuant to § 801.40(c)(2)) having an aggregate book value of $15 million or more; or

(2) Made aggregate sales in or into the United States of $25 million or more in its most recent fiscal year.

*Example:* ''A,'' a U.S. person, is to acquire the voting securities of C, a foreign issuer. C has no assets in the United States, but made aggregate sales into the United States of $27 million in the most recent fiscal year. The transaction is not exempt under this section.

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34437, July 29, 1983]

### § 802.51 Acquisitions by foreign persons.

An acquisition by a foreign person shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if:

(a) The acquisition is of assets located outside the United States;

(b) The acquisition is of voting securities of a foreign issuer, and will not confer control of:

(1) An issuer which holds assets located in the United States (other than investment assets, voting or nonvoting securities of another person, and assets included pursuant to § 801.40(c)(2)) having an aggregate book value of $15 million or more, or

(2) A U.S. issuer with annual net sales or total assets of $25 million or more;

(c) The acquisition is of less than $15 million of assets located in the United States (other than investment assets); or

(d) The acquired person is also a foreign person, the aggregate annual sales of the acquiring and acquired persons in or into the United States are less than $110 million, and the aggregate total assets of the acquiring and acquired persons located in the United States (other than investment assets, voting or nonvoting securities of another person, and assets included pursuant to § 801.40(c)(2)) are less than $110 million.

*Examples:* 1. Assume that ''A'' and ''B'' are foreign persons with aggregate annual sales in or into the United States of $200 million. If ''A'' acquires the assets of ''B,'' and if no assets in the United States or voting securities of U.S. issuers will be acquired, the transaction is exempt under paragraphs (a) and (c).

2. In example 1, assume that ''A'' is acquiring ''B's'' stock and that included within ''B'' is issuer C, a U.S. issuer whose total assets are valued at $27 million. Since C's voting securities will be acquired indirectly, and since ''A'' thus will be acquiring control of a U.S. issuer with total assets of more than $25 million, the acquisition cannot be exempt under this section.

3. In the previous examples, assume that ''A'' is a U.S. person. This section does not apply, since the acquiring person must be a foreign person.

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34437, July 29, 1983]

### § 802.52 Acquisitions by or from foreign governmental corporations.

An acquisition shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if:

(a) The ultimate parent entity of either the acquiring person or the acquired person is controlled by a foreign state, foreign government, or agency thereof; and

(b) The acquisition is of assets located within that foreign state or of voting securities of an issuer organized under the laws of that state.

*Example:* The government of foreign country X has decided to sell assets of its wholly owned corporation, B, all of which are located in foreign country X. The buyer is ''A,'' a U.S. person. Regardless of the aggregate annual sales in or into the United States attributable to the assets of B, the transaction is exempt under this section. (If such aggregate annual sales were less than $10 million, the transaction would also be exempt under § 802.50.)

### § 802.53 Certain foreign banking transactions.

An acquisition which requires the consent or approval of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System under section 25 or section 25(a) of the Federal Reserve Act, 12 U.S.C. 601, 615, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if copies of all information and documentary material filed with the Board of Governors are contemporaneously filed with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General at least 30 days prior to consummation of the acquisition. In

lieu of such information and documentary material or any portion thereof, an index describing such material may be provided in the manner authorized by §802.6(a).

[43 FR 33544, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34435, July 29, 1983]

### §802.60 Acquisitions by securities underwriters.

An acquisition of voting securities by a person acting as a securities underwriter, in the ordinary course of business, and in the process of underwriting, shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

### §802.63 Certain acquisitions by creditors and insurers.

(a) *Creditors.* An acquisition of collateral or receivables, or an acquisition in foreclosure, or upon default, or in connection with the establishment of a lease financing, or in connection with a bona fide debt work-out shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if made by a creditor in a bona fide credit transaction entered into in the ordinary course of the creditor's business.

(b) *Insurers.* An acquisition pursuant to a condition in a contract of insurance relating to fidelity, surety, or casualty obligations shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if made by an insurer in the ordinary course of business.

*Examples:* 1. A bank makes a loan and takes actual or constructive possession of collateral in any form. Since the bank is not the beneficial owner of the collateral, the bank's receipt of it is not an acquisition which is subject to the requirements of the act. However, if upon default the bank becomes the beneficial owner of the collateral, that acquisition is exempt under this section.

2. This section exempts only the acquisition by the creditor or insurer, and not the subsequent disposition of the assets or voting securities. If a creditor or insurer sells voting securities or assets that have come into its possession in a transaction which is exempt under this section, the requirements of the act may apply to that disposition.

### §802.64 Acquisitions of voting securities by certain institutional investors.

(a) *Institutional investor.* For purposes of this section, the term *institutional investor* means any entity of the following type:

(1) A bank within the meaning of 15 U.S.C. 80b–2(a)(2);

(2) Savings bank;

(3) Savings and loan or building and loan company or association;

(4) Trust company;

(5) Insurance company;

(6) Investment company registered with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission under the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.);

(7) Finance company;

(8) Broker-dealer within the meaning of 15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(4) or (a)(5);

(9) Small Business Investment Company or Minority Enterprise Small Business Investment Company regulated by the U.S. Small Business Administration pursuant to 15 U.S.C. 662;

(10) A stock bonus, pension, or profit-sharing trust qualified under section 401 of the Internal Revenue Code;

(11) Bank holding company within the meaning of 12 U.S.C. 1841;

(12) An entity which is controlled directly or indirectly by an institutional investor and the activities of which are in the ordinary course of business of the institutional investor;

(13) An entity which may supply incidental services to entities which it controls directly or indirectly but which performs no operating functions, and which is otherwise engaged only in holding controlling interests in institutional investors; or

(14) A nonprofit entity within the meaning of sections 501(c) (1) through (4), (6) through (15), (17) through (20), or (d) of the Internal Revenue Code.

(b) *Exemption.* An acquisition of voting securities shall be exempt from the requirements of the act, except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, if:

(1) Made directly by an institutional investor;

(2) Made in the ordinary course of business;

(3) Made solely for the purpose of investment;

(4) As a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would not control the issuer; and

(5) As a result of the acquisition the acquiring person would hold either:

(i) Fifteen percent or less of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer; or

(ii) Voting securities of the issuer valued at $25 million or less.

(c) *Exception to exemption.* Notwithstanding paragraph (b) of this section:

(1) No acquisition of voting securities of an institutional investor of the same type as any entity included within the acquiring person shall be exempt under this section; and

(2) No acquisition by an institutional investor shall be exempt under this section if any entity included within the acquiring person which is not an institutional investor holds any voting securities of the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired.

*Examples:* 1. Assume that A and its subsidiary, B, are both institutional investors as defined in paragraph (a) of this section, that X is not, and that the conditions set forth in subparagraphs (2), (3) and (4) of paragraph (b) of this section are satisfied. Either A or B may acquire voting securities of X worth in excess of $25 million as long as the aggregate amount held by person ''A'' as a result of the acquisition does not equal or exceed 15 percent of X's outstanding voting securities. If the aggregate holdings would equal or exceed 15 percent, ''A'' may acquire no more than $25 million worth of voting securities without being subject to the requirements of the act.

2. In example 1, assume that B plans to make the acquisition, but that corporation B's parent, corporation A, is not an institutional investor and is engaged in manufacturing. Subparagraph (c)(2) provides that acquisitions by B can never be exempt under this section if A owns any amount of X's voting securities.

3. In example 1, the exemption does not apply if X is also an institutional investor of the same type as either A or B.

4. Assume that H is a holding company which controls a life insurance company, a casualty insurer and a finance company. The life insurance company controls a data processing company which performs services for the two insurers. Any acquisition by any of these entities could qualify for exemption under this section.

5. In example 4, if H also controls a manufacturing entity, H is not an institutional investor, and only the acquisitions made by the two insurance companies, the finance company and the data processing company can qualify for the exemption under this section.

### § 802.70 Acquisitions subject to order.

An acquisition shall be exempt from the requirements of the act if the voting securities or assets are to be acquired from an entity ordered to divest such voting securities or assets by order of the Federal Trade Commission or of any Federal court in an action brought by the Federal Trade Commission or the Department of Justice.

[52 FR 7082, Mar. 6, 1987]

### § 802.71 Acquisitions by gift, intestate succession or devise, or by irrevocable trust.

Acquisitions resulting from a gift, intestate succession, testamentary disposition or transfer by a settlor to an irrevocable trust shall be exempt from the requirements of the act.

## PART 803—TRANSMITTAL RULES

Sec.
803.1 Notification and Report Form.
803.2 Instructions applicable to Notification and Report Form.
803.3 Statement of reasons for noncompliance.
803.4 Foreign persons refusing to file notification.
803.5 Affidavits required.
803.6 Certification.
803.7 Expiration of notification.
803.8 Foreign language documents.
803.10 Running of time.
803.11 Termination of waiting period.
803.20 Requests for additional information or documentary material.
803.21 Additional information shall be supplied within reasonable time.
803.30 Formal and informal interpretations of requirements under the Act and the rules.
803.90 Separability.

APPENDIX—ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM FOR CERTAIN MERGERS AND ACQUISITIONS

AUTHORITY: Sec. 7A(d), Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. 18A(d), as added by sec. 201, Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. 94–435, 90 Stat. 1390.

SOURCE: 43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

### § 803.1 Notification and Report Form.

(a) The notification required by the act shall be the Notification and Report Form set forth in the appendix to this part (803), as amended from time

to time. All acquiring and acquired persons required to file notification by the act and these rules shall do so by completing and filing the Notification and Report Form, or a photostatic or other equivalent reproduction thereof, in accordance with the instructions thereon and these rules. Copies of the Notification and Report Form may be obtained in person from the Public Reference Branch, Room 130, Federal Trade Commission, Sixth Street and Pennsylvania Avenue NW., Washington, D.C., or by writing to the Premerger Notification Office, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580.

(b) Any person filing notification may, in addition to the submissions required by this section, submit any other information or documentary material which such person believes will be helpful to the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General in assessing the impact of the acquisition upon competition.

### §803.2 Instructions applicable to Notification and Report Form.

(a) The notification required by the act shall be filed by the preacquisition ultimate parent entity, or by any entity included within the person authorized by such preacquisition ultimate parent entity to file notification on its behalf. In the case of a natural person required by the act to file notification, such notification may be filed by his or her legal representative: *Provided however,* That notwithstanding §§801.1(c)(2) and 801.2, only one notification shall be filed by or on behalf of a natural person, spouse and minor children with respect to an acquisition as a result of which more than one such natural person will hold voting securities of the same issuer.

*Example:* Jane Doe, her husband and minor child collectively hold more than 50 percent of the shares of family corporation F. Therefore, Jane Doe (or her husband or minor child) is the ''ultimate parent entity'' of a ''person'' composed to herself (or her husband or minor child) and F; see paragraphs (a)(3), (b) and (c)(2) of §801.1. If corporation F is to acquire corporation X, under this paragraph only one notification is to be filed by Jane Doe, her husband and minor child collectively.

(b)(1) Except as provided in paragraph (b)(2) of this section and paragraph (c) of this section, items 5–9 and the appendix to the Notification and Report Form must be completed—

(i) By acquiring persons, with respect to all entities included within the acquiring person;

(ii) By acquired persons, in the case of an acquisition of assets, only with respect to the assets to be acquired;

(iii) By acquired persons, in the case of an acquisition of voting securities, with respect to only the issuer whose voting securities are being acquired, and all entities controlled by such issuer; and

(iv) By persons which are both acquiring and acquired persons, separately in the manner that would be required of acquiring and acquired persons under this paragraph, if different.

(2) For purposes of items 7–9 of the Notification and Report Form, the acquiring person shall regard the acquired person in the manner described in paragraphs (b)(1) (ii) and (iii) of this section.

*Example:* Person ''A'' is comprised of entities separately engaged in grocery retailing, auto rental, and coal mining. Person ''B'' is comprised of entities separately engaged in wholesale magazine distribution, auto rental and book publishing. ''A'' proposes to purchase 100 percent of the voting securities of ''B''''s book publishing subsidiary. For purposes of item 5, under clause (b)(1)(i), ''A'' reports, the activities of all its entities; under clause (b)(1)(iii), ''B'' reports only the operations of its book publishing subsidiary. For purposes of items 7–9, under subparagraph (2) of this paragraph ''A'' must regard ''B'' as consisting only of its book publishing subsidiary, and must disregard the fact that ''A'' and ''B'' are both engaged in the auto rental business.

(c) In response to items 5, 7, 8, and 9 and the appendix to the Notification and Report Form—

(1) Information shall be supplied only with respect to operations conducted within the United States; and

(2) Information need not be supplied with respect to assets or voting securities to be acquired, the acquisition of which is exempt from the requirements of the act.

(d) The term *dollar revenues,* as used in the Notification and Report Form, means value of shipments for manufacturing operations, and sales, receipts,

revenues, or other appropriate dollar value measure for operations other than manufacturing, f.o.b. the plant or establishment less returns, after discounts and allowances and excluding freight charges and excise taxes. Dollar revenues including delivery may be supplied if delivery is an integral part of the sales price. Dollar revenues include interplant transfers.

(e) A person filing notification may incorporate by reference only documentary materials required to be filed in response to item 4(a) of the Notification and Report Form and annual reports required to be filed in response to item 4(b), which were previously submitted with a filing by the same person and which are the most recent versions available; except that when the same parties file for a higher notification threshold no more than 90 days after having made filings with respect to a lower threshold, each party may incorporate by reference in the subsequent filing any documents or information in its earlier filing provided that the documents and information are the most recent available.

[43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34438, July 29, 1983]

### § 803.3 Statement of reasons for noncompliance.

A complete response shall be supplied to each item on the Notification and Report Form and to any request for additional information pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20. Whenever the person filing notification is unable to supply a complete response, that person shall provide, for each item for which less than a complete response has been supplied, a statement of reasons for noncompliance. The statement of reasons for noncompliance shall contain all information upon which a person relies in explanation of its noncompliance and shall include at least the following:

(a) Why the person is unable to supply a complete response;

(b) What information, and what specific documents or categories of documents, would have been required for a complete response;

(c) Who, if anyone, has the required information, and specific documents or categories of documents; and a description of all efforts made to obtain such information and documents, including the names of persons who searched for required information and documents, and where the search was conducted. If no such efforts were made, provide an explanation of the reasons why, and a description of all efforts necessary to obtain required information and documents;

(d) Where noncompliance is based on a claim of privilege, a statement of the claim of privilege and all facts relied on in support thereof, including the identity of each document, its author, addressee, date, subject matter, all recipients of the original and of any copies, its present location, and who has control of it.

[48 FR 34439, July 29, 1983]

### § 803.4 Foreign persons refusing to file notification.

(a) In an acquisition to which § 801.30 does not apply, and in which no assets (other than investment assets) located in the United States and no voting securities of a United States issuer will be acquired directly or indirectly, if a foreign acquired person refuses to file notification, then any other person which is a party to the acquisition may file notification on behalf of the foreign person. Such notification shall constitute the notification required of the foreign person by the act and these rules.

(b) Any person filing on behalf of the foreign person pursuant to this section must state in the affidavit required by § 803.5(b) that such foreign person has refused to file notification and must explain all efforts made by the person filing on behalf of the foreign person to obtain compliance with the act and these rules by such foreign person.

(c) Any notification filed on behalf of a foreign person pursuant to this section must contain all information and documentary material reasonably available to the person filing on behalf of the foreign person which such foreign person would be required to provide. Whenever information or documentary material is not reasonably available, the person filing on behalf of the foreign person shall so indicate on the Notification and Report Form, and

need not supply the statement of reasons for noncompliance required by §803.3.

(d) Any foreign person on whose behalf notification has been filed by another person pursuant to this section shall be a ''person filing notification'' for purposes of the act and these rules. Nothing in this section shall exempt a foreign person from the requirements of the act or these rules with respect to a request for additional information or an extension of the waiting period pursuant to section 7A(e) and these rules.

### §803.5 Affidavits required.

(a)(1) *Section 801.30 acquisitions.* For acquisitions to which §801.30 applies, the notification required by the act from each acquiring person shall contain an affidavit, attached to the front of the notification, attesting that the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired has received notice in writing by certified or registered mail, by wire or by hand delivery, at its principal executive offices, of:

(i) The identity of the acquiring person;

(ii) The fact that the acquiring person intends to acquire voting securities of the issuer;

(iii) The specific classes of voting securities of the issuer sought to be acquired; and if known, the number of securities of each such class that would be held by the acquiring person as a result of the acquisition or, if the number is not known, the specific notification threshold that the acquiring person intends to meet or exceed; and, if designated by the acquiring person, a higher threshold for additional voting securities it may hold in the year following the expiration of the waiting period;

(iv) The fact that the acquisition may be subject to the act, and that the acquiring person will file notification under the act with the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General;

(v) The anticipated date of receipt of such notification under §803.10(c); and

(vi) The fact that the person within which the issuer is included may be required to file notification under the act.

(2) The affidavit required by this paragraph must also state the good faith intention of the person filing notification to make the acquisition, and, in the case of a tender offer, that the intention to make the tender offer has been publicly announced.

*Example:* 1. This paragraph permits the tender offeror to file notification at any time after the intention to make the tender offer has been publicly announced.

In examples 2–5 assume that one percent of B's shares are valued at $15 million.

2. ''A'' holds 100,000 shares of the voting securities of Company B. ''A'' has a good faith intention to acquire an additional 900,000 shares of Company B's voting securities. ''A'' states in its notice to B, inter alia, that as a result of the acquisition it will hold 1,000,000 shares. If 1,000,000 shares of Company B represents 20 percent of Company B's outstanding voting securities, the statement will be deemed by the enforcement agencies a notification for the 15 percent threshold.

3. Company A intends to acquire voting securities of Company B. ''A'' does not know exactly how many shares it will acquire, but it knows it will definitely acquire 15 percent and may acquire 50 percent of Company B's shares. ''A''''s notice to the acquired person would meet the requirements of §803.5(a)(1)(iii) if it states, inter alia, either: ''Company A has a present good faith intention to acquire 15 percent of the outstanding voting securities of Company B, and depending on market conditions, may acquire more of the voting securities of Company B and thus designates the 50 percent threshold'' or ''Company A has a present good faith intention to acquire 15 percent of the outstanding voting securities of Company B, and depending on market conditions may acquire 50 percent or more of the voting securities of Company B.'' The Commission would deem either of these statements as intending to give notice for the 50 percent threshold.

4. ''A'' states, inter alia, that, ''depending on market conditions, it may acquire 100 percent of the shares of B.'' ''A''''s notice does not comply with §803.5 because it does not state an intent to meet or exceed any notification threshold. ''A''''s filing will be considered deficient within the meaning of §803.10(c)(2).

5. ''A'' states, inter alia, that it has commenced a tender offer for ''up to 55 percent of the outstanding voting securities of Company B.'' ''A''''s notice does not comply with §803.5 because use of the term ''up to'' does not state an intent to meet or exceed any notification threshold. The filing will therefore be considered deficient within the meaning of §803.10 (c)(2).

(3) The affidavit required by this paragraph must have attached to it a

copy of the written notice received by the acquired person pursuant to paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(b) *Non-section 801.30 acquisitions.* For acquisitions to which § 801.30 does not apply, the notification required by the act shall contain an affidavit, attached to the front of the notification, attesting that a contract, agreement in principle or letter of intent to merge or acquire has been executed, and further attesting to the good faith intention of the person filing notification to complete the transaction.

[43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34439, July 29, 1983; 52 FR 7082, Mar. 6, 1987]

### § 803.6 Certification.

(a) The notification required by the act shall be certified:

(1) In the case of a partnership, by any general partner thereof;

(2) In the case of a corporation, by any officer or director thereof;

(3) In the case of a person lacking officers, directors, or partners, by any individual exercising similar functions;

(4) In the case of a natural person, by such natural person or his or her legal representative;

(5) In the case of the estate of a deceased natural person, by any duly authorized legal representative of such estate.

(b) Additional information or documentary material submitted in response to a request pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 shall be accompanied by a certification in the format appearing at the end of the Notification and Report Form, completed in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section by the person or individual to whom it was directed.

(c) In all cases, the certifying individual must possess actual authority to make the certification on behalf of the person filing notification.

[43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34429, July 29, 1983]

### § 803.7 Expiration of notification.

Notification with respect to an acquisition shall expire 1 year following the expiration of the waiting period. If the acquiring person's holdings do not, within such time period, meet or exceed the notification threshold with respect to which the notification was filed, the requirements of the act must thereafter be observed with respect to any notification threshold not met or exceeded.

*Example:* A files notification that 26 percent of the voting securities of corporation B are to be acquired. One year after the expiration of the waiting period, A has acquired only 22 percent of B's voting securities. Although § 802.21 will permit ''A'' to purchase any amount of B's voting securities short of 25 percent within 5 years from the expiration of the waiting period, A's holdings may not meet or exceed the 25 percent notification threshold without ''A'' and ''B'' again filing notification and observing a waiting period.

### § 803.8 Foreign language documents.

(a) Whenever at the time of filing a Notification and Report Form there is an English language outline, summary, extract or verbatim translation of any information or of all or portions of any documentary materials in a foreign language required to be submitted by the act or these rules, all such English language versions shall be filed along with the foreign language information or materials.

(b) Documentary materials or information in a foreign language required to be submitted in responses to a request for additional information or documentary material shall be submitted with verbatim English language translations, or all existing English language versions, or both, as specified in such request.

[48 FR 34440, July 29, 1983]

### § 803.10 Running of time.

(a) *Beginning of waiting period.* The waiting period required by the act shall begin on the date of receipt of the notification required by the act, in the manner provided by these rules (or, if such notification is not completed, the notification to the extent completed and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) from:

(1) In the case of acquisitions to which § 801.30 applies, the acquiring person;

(2) In the case of the formation of a joint venture or other corporation covered by § 801.40, all persons contributing to the formation of the joint venture or other corporation that are required by the act and these rules to file notification;

(3) In the case of all other acquisitions, all persons required by the act and these rules to file notification.

(b) *Expiration of waiting period.* (1) For purposes of section 7A(b)(1)(B), the waiting period shall expire at 11:59 p.m. Eastern Time on the 30th (or in the case of a cash tender offer, the 15th) calendar day (or if § 802.23 applies, such other day as that section may provide) following the beginning of the waiting period as determined under paragraph (a) of this section, unless extended pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20, or section 7A(g)(2), or unless terminated pursuant to section 7A(b)(2) and § 803.11.

(2) Unless further extended pursuant to section 7A(g)(2), or terminated pursuant to section 7A(b)(2) and § 803.11, any waiting period which has been extended pursuant to section 7A(e)(2) and § 803.20 shall expire at 11:59 p.m. Eastern Time—

(i) On the 20th (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, the 10th) day following the date of receipt of all additional information or documentary material requested from all persons to whom such requests have been directed (or, if a request is not fully complied with, the information and documentary material submitted and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3), by the Federal Trade Commission or Assistant Attorney General, whichever requested additional information or documentary material, at the office designated in paragraph (c) of this section, or

(ii) As provided in paragraph (b)(1) of this section, whichever is later.

(c)(1) *Date of receipt and means of delivery.* For purposes of this section the date of receipt shall be the date on which delivery is effected to the designated offices (Premerger Notification Office, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, DC 20580, and Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Room 3214, Department of Justice, Washington, DC 20530) during normal business hours. Delivery effected after 5 p.m. eastern time on a regular business day, or at any time on any day other than a regular business day, shall be deemed effected on the next following regular business day. Delivery should be effected directly to the designated office(s), either by hand or by certified or registered mail. If delivery of all required filings to all offices required to receive such filings is not effected on the same date, the date of receipt shall be the latest of the dates on which delivery is effected.

*Examples:* 1. In an acquisition other than a cash tender offer, assume that a request for additional information is issued to a person on the second day of the waiting period, and that the person supplies the response 5 days later. Under subparagraph (b)(2)(ii), the waiting period remains in effect through the 30th day, even though the 20th day after receipt of such additional information would occur earlier.

2. In an acquisition other than a tender offer, assume that requests for additional information are issued to both the acquiring and acquired persons on the 26th day of the waiting period. One person submits the additional information on the 35th day, while the other responds on the 44th day. Under this section, the waiting period expires twenty days following the last receipt of additional information, that is, it expires on the 64th day.

(2) *Deficient filings.* If notification or a response to a request for additional information or documentary material received by the Commission or Assistant Attorney General does not comply with these rules, the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General shall promptly notify the person filing such notification or response of the deficiencies in such filing, and the date of receipt shall be the date on which a filing which complies with these rules is received.

[43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978; 43 FR 36054, Aug. 15, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 7083, Mar. 6, 1987]

### § 803.11 Termination of waiting period.

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, no waiting period shall be terminated pursuant to section 7A(b)(2) unless—

(1) All notifications required to be filed with respect to the acquisition by

the act and these rules (or, if such notification is not completed, the notification to the extent completed and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) have been received,

(2) It has been determined that no additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 will be requested, or, if such additional information or documentary material has been requested, it (or, if a request is not fully complied with, the information and documentary material submitted and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) has been received, and

(3) The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General have concluded that neither intends to take any further action within the waiting period.

(b) Any request for additional information or documentary material pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 shall constitute a denial of all pending requests for termination of the waiting period.

(c) The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General may in their discretion terminate a waiting period upon the written request of any person filing notification or, notwithstanding paragraph (a) of this section, sua sponte. A request for termination of the waiting period shall be sent to the offices designated in § 803.10(c). Termination shall be effective upon notice to any requesting person by telephone, and such notice shall be given as soon as possible. Such notice shall also be confirmed in writing to each person which has filed notification, and notice thereof shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER in accordance with section 7A(b)(2). The Federal Trade Commission and the Assistant Attorney General also may use other means to make the termination public, prior to publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER in a manner that will make the information equally accessible to all members of the public.

[43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978, as amended at 54 FR 21427, May 18, 1989]

**§ 803.20 Requests for additional information or documentary material.**

(a)(1) *Persons and individuals subject to request.* Pursuant to section 7A(e)(1), the submission of additional information or documentary material relevant to the acquisition may be required from one or more persons required to file notification, and, with respect to each such person, from one or more entities included therein, or from one or more officers, directors, partners, agents, or employees thereof, if so required by the same request.

*Example:* A request for additional information may require a corporation and, in addition, a named officer or employee to provide certain information or documents, if both the corporation and the officer or employee are named in the same request. See subparagraph (b)(3) of this section.

(2) All the information and documentary material required to be submitted pursuant to a request under paragraph (a)(1) of this section shall be supplied to the Commission or to the Assistant Attorney General, whichever made such request, at such location as may be designated in the request, or, if no such location is designated, at the office designated in § 803.10(c). If such request is not fully complied with, a statement of reasons for noncompliance pursuant to § 803.3 shall be provided for each item or portion of such request which is not full complied with.

(b)(1) *Who may require submission.* A request for additional information or documentary material with respect to an acquisition may be issued by the Federal Trade Commission or its designee, or by the Assistant Attorney General or his or her designee, but not by both to the same person, any entities included therein, or any officers, directors, partners, agents, or employees of that person.

(2) *When request effective.* A request for additional information or documentary material shall be effective—

(i) In the case of a written request, upon receipt of the request by the ultimate parent entity of the person to which the request is directed, (or, if another entity included within the person filed notification pursuant to § 803.2(a), then by such entity), within the original 30-day (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, 15-day) waiting period (or, if

§ 802.23 applies, such other period as that section provides); or

(ii) In the case of a written request, upon notice of the issuance of such request to the person to which it is directed within the original 30-day (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, 15-day) waiting period (or, if § 802.23 applies, such other period as that section provides), provided that written confirmation of the request is mailed to the person to which the request is directed within the original 30-day (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, 15-day) waiting period (or, if § 802.23 applies, such other period as that section provides). Notice to the person to which the request is directed may be given by telephone or in person. The person filing notification shall keep a designated individual reasonably available during normal business hours throughout the waiting period through the telephone number supplied on the certification page of the Notification and Report Form. Notice of a request for additional information or documentary material need be given by telephone only to that individual or to the individual designated in accordance with paragraph (b)(2)(iii) of this section. Upon the request of the individual receiving notice of the issuance of such a request, the full text of the request will be read. The written confirmation of the request shall be mailed to the ultimate parent entity of the person filing notification, or if another entity within the person filed notification pursuant to § 803.2(a), then to such entity.

(iii) When the individual designated in accordance with paragraph (b)(2)(ii) of this section is not located in the United States, the person filing notification shall designate an additional individual located within the United States to be reasonably available during normal business hours throughout the waiting period through a telephone number supplied on the certification page of the Notification and Report Form. This individual shall be designated for the limited purpose of receiving notification of the issuance of requests for additional information or documentary material in accordance with the procedure described in paragraph (b)(2)(ii) of this section.

(3) *Requests to natural persons.* A request addressed to an individual, requiring that he or she submit additional information or documentary material, shall be transmitted to the person filing notification of which the individual is an ultimate parent entity, officer, director, partner, agent or employee, and shall be effective as to that individual when effective as to the person filing notification pursuant to paragraph (b)(2) of this section. A written copy of the request shall also be delivered to the individual by hand, or by registered or certified mail at his or her home or business address.

*Example:* A designee of the Federal Trade Commission sends, by certified letter which is received within the 30-day waiting period, a written request for additional information to corporation W, the ultimate parent entity within a person which filed notification. The request is effective under clause (b)(2)(i). If the letter also addressed a request for documentary material to the secretary of corporation W, a named individual, under paragraph (b)(3), the request would likewise be effective as to the individual upon receipt of the letter by W. In the latter case, the Federal Trade Commission also would send a copy of the request to the Secretary of the corporation at his or her home or business address.

(c) *Waiting period extended.* (1) During the time period when a request for additional information or documentary material remains outstanding to any person other than, in the case of a tender offer, the person whose voting securities are sought to be acquired by the tender offeror (or any officer, director, partner, agent or employee thereof), the waiting period shall remain in effect, even though the waiting period would have expired (see § 803.10(b)) if no such request had been made.

(2) A request for additional information or documentary material to any person other than, in the case of a tender offer, the person whose voting securities are being acquired pursuant to the tender offer (or any officer, director, partner, agent or employee thereof) shall in every instance extend the waiting period for a period of 20 (or, in the case of a cash tender offer, 10) calendar days from the date of receipt (as determined under § 803.10) of the additional information or documentary material requested.

*Example:* Acquiring person ''A'' desires to acquire voting securities of corporation X on a securities exchange, and files notification. Under § 801.30, the waiting period begins upon filing by ''A,'' and ''X'' must file within 15 days thereafter. Assume that before the end of the waiting period, the Assistant Attorney General issues a request for additional information to ''X.'' Since the transaction is not a tender offer, under paragraph (c)(1) the waiting period is extended until ''X'' supplies the requested information; under paragraph (c)(2), the waiting period is extended for 20 days beyond the date on which ''X'' responds.

Note that under § 803.21 ''X'' is obliged to respond to the request within a reasonable time; nevertheless, the Federal Trade Commission and Assistant Attorney General could, notwithstanding the pendency of the request for additional information, terminate the waiting period sua sponte pursuant to § 803.11(c).

(d)(1) *Identification of requests.* Every request for additional information or documentary material shall be clearly identified as such, whether communicated in person, by telephone or in writing, and shall clearly identify the person, entity or entities, or individual(s) to which it is addressed.

(2) *Request for clarification.* No request for clarification or amplification of a response to any item on the Notification and Report Form, whether communicated in person, by telephone or in writing, shall be considered a request for additional information or documentary material within the meaning of section 7A(e) and this section.

[43 FR 33548, July 31, 1978, as amended at 48 FR 34441, July 29, 1983]

### § 803.21 Additional information shall be supplied within reasonable time.

All additional information or documentary material requested pursuant to section 7A(e) and § 803.20 (or, if such request is not fully complied with, the information or documentary material submitted and a statement of the reasons for such noncompliance in accordance with § 803.3) shall be supplied within a reasonable time.

### § 803.30 Formal and informal interpretations of requirements under the Act and the rules.

(a) The Commission staff may consider requests for formal or informal interpretations as to the obligations under the act and these rules of any party to an acquisition. A request for a formal interpretation shall be made in writing to the offices designated in § 803.10(c), and shall state:

(1) All facts which the applicant believes to be material, (2) the reasons why the requirements of the act are or may be applicable and (3) the question(s) that the applicant wishes resolved. The Commission staff may, in its discretion, render a formal or informal response to any request, however made, or may decline to render such advice.

(b) In the sole discretion of the staff, any request for interpretation may be referred to the Commission.

(c) Formal interpretations by the Commission staff or by the Commission shall be rendered with the concurrence of the Assistant Attorney General or his or her designee.

(d) Any formal interpretation shall be without prejudice to the right of either the Commission or the Assistant Attorney General to rescind any such interpretation rendered pursuant to this section. In the event of such rescission, the party which requested the interpretation shall be so notified in writing.

(e) The Commission shall publish a summary of formal interpretations by the Commission, and any rescissions thereof, in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

### § 803.90 Separability.

If any provision of the rules in this subchapter (H) (including the Notification and Report Form) or the application of any such provision to any person or circumstances is held invalid, neither the other provisions of the rules nor the application of such provision to other persons or circumstances shall be affected thereby.

APPENDIX

**ANTITRUST IMPROVEMENTS ACT**
**NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM**
**for Certain Mergers and Acquisitions**

## INSTRUCTIONS

### GENERAL

The Answer Sheets (pp. 1-16) constitute the Notification and Report Form ("the Form") required to be submitted pursuant to § 803.1(a) of the premerger notification rules ("the rules"). Filing persons need not, however, record their responses on the Form.

These instructions specify the information which must be provided in response to the items on the Answer Sheets. *Only* the completed Answer Sheets, together with all documentary attachments are to be filed with the Federal Trade Commission and the Department of Justice.

Persons providing responses on attachment pages rather than on answer sheets must submit a complete set of attachment pages with **each** copy of the Form.

The term "documentary attachments" refers to materials supplied in responses to Item 2(d), Item 4 and to submissions pursuant to §§ 803.1(b) and 803.11 of the rules.

**Information**-The central office for information and assistance concerning the rules, 16 CFR Parts 801-803, and the Form is Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, 6th St. & Pa. Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20580, phone (202) 326-3100.

**Definitions**-The definitions and other provisions governing this Form are set forth in the rules, 16 CFR Parts 801-803. The governing statute, the rules, and the Statement of Basis and Purpose for the rules are set forth at 43 FR 33450 (July 31, 1978), 44 FR 66781 (November 22, 1979) and 48 FR 34427 (July 29, 1983).

**Affidavit**-Attach the affidavit required by § 803.5 to page 1 of the Form. Affidavits are not required if the person filing notification is an acquired person in a transaction covered by § 801.30. (See § 803.5(a).)

**Responses**-*Each answer* should identify the **item** to which it is addressed. Use the reverse side of the corresponding answer sheet or attach separate additional sheets as necessary in answering each item. Each additional sheet should identify at the top of the page the item to which it is addressed. Voluntary submissions pursuant to § 803.1(b) should also be so identified.

Enter the name of the person filing notification appearing in Item 1(a) on page 1 of the Form and the date on which the Form is completed at the top of each page of the Form, at the top of any sheets attached to complete the response to any item, and at the top of the first or cover page of each documentary attachment.

If unable to answer any item fully, give such information as is available and provide a statement of reasons for non-compliance as required by § 803.3. If exact answers to any item cannot be given, enter best estimates and indicate the sources or bases of such estimates. Estimated data should be followed by the notation, "est." All information should be rounded to the nearest thousand dollars.

**Year**-All references to "year" refer to calendar year. If the data are not available on a calendar year basis, supply the requested data for the fiscal year reporting period which most nearly corresponds to the calendar year specified. References to "most recent year" mean the most recent calendar or fiscal year for which the requested information is available.

**SIC Data**-This Notification and Report Form requests information regarding dollar revenues and lines of commerce at three levels with respect to operations conducted within the United States. (See § 803.2(c)(1).) *All persons* must submit certain data at the 4-digit (SIC code) *industry* level. To the extent that dollar revenues are derived from *manufactured operations* (SIC major groups 20-39), data must also be submitted at the *5-digit product class* and *7-digit product levels* (SIC based codes).
The term "dollar revenues" is defined in § 803.2(d).

**References**- In reporting information by "4-digit (SIC code) industry" refer to the 1987 edition of the *Standard Industrial Classification Manual* published by the Executive Office of the President, Office of Management and Budget.

In reporting information by "5-digit product class" and "7-digit product" refer to the following reference publication published by the U.S. Bureau of the Census:
Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products, 1992 *Census of Manufactures and Census of Mineral Industries* (MC92-R-1). Make sure that the Numerical List you use has MC92-R-1 printed on the cover.

Furthermore, when the Numerical List cites footnote 3, which refers to Appendices A and C for detail collected in a specified Current Industrial Report, you must provide revenue information using the 7-digit product codes listed in Appendix A.

Privacy Act Statement - Section 18a(a) of Title 15 of the U.S. Code authorizes the collection of this information. The primary use of this information is to determine whether the merger or acquisition reported in the Notification and Report Form may violate the antitrust laws. Furnishing the information on this Form is voluntary.

Consummation of an acquisition required to be reported by the statute cited above without having provided this information may, however, render a person liable to civil penalties up to $10,000 per day.

**Items 5, 7, 8, 9 and the Insurance Appendix** —Supply information *only* with respect to operations conducted within the United States, including its commonwealths, territories, possessions and the District of Columbia. (See §§ 801.1(k), 803.2(c)(1).)

Information need *not* be supplied regarding assets or voting securities currently being acquired, when the acquisition is exempt under the statute or rules. (See § 803.2(c)(2).)

*Limited or separate responses may be required* from the person filing notification. (See § 803.2(b).)

**Filing**—Complete and return two notarized copies (with *one set* of documentary attachments) of this Notification and Report Form to the Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, 6th Street and Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20580, and *three* notarized copies (with *one* set of documentary attachments) to Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Department of Justice, Room 3218, 10th and Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20530.

**ITEM BY ITEM**

**Affidavit**—Attach the affidavit required by § 803.5 to page 1 of the Answer Sheets. Acquiring persons in transactions covered by § 801.30 are required to also submit a copy of the notice served on the acquired person pursuant to § 803.5 (a)(1). (See § 803.5(a)(3).)

**Cash Tender Offer**—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether the acquisition is a cash tender offer.

**Early Termination** —Put an X in the yes box to request early termination of the waiting period. Notification of each grant of early termination will be published in the Federal Register as required by § 7A(b)(2) of the Clayton Act.

**ITEM 1**

**Item 1(a)**—Give the name and headquarters address of the person filing notification. The name of the person is the name of the ultimate parent entity included within that person.

**Item 1(b)** —Indicate whether the person filing notification is an acquiring person, an acquired person, or both an acquiring and acquired person. (See § 801.2.)

**Item 1(c)**—Give the names of all ultimate parent entities of acquiring and acquired persons which are parties to the acquisition whether or not they are required to file notification.

**Item 1(d)**—Put an X in all the boxes that apply to this acquisition.

**Item 1(e)**—*Acquiring* persons put an X in the box to indicate the highest threshold for which notification is being filed (see § 801.1(h)): $15 million, 15%, 25%, or 50%.

**Item 1(f)**—All persons state the value of voting securities held as a result of the acquisition and/or the value of assets held as a result of the acquisition. (Insert responses to Item 3(c).)

**Item 1(g)**—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether the entity in Item 1(a) is a corporation, partnership, or other (specify).

**Item 1(h)**—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate whether data furnished is by calendar year or fiscal year. If fiscal year, specify period.

**Item 1(i)**—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate if this Form is being filed on behalf of the ultimate parent entity by another entity within the same person authorized by it to file notification on its behalf pursuant to § 803.2(a), or if this Form is being filed pursuant to § 803.4 on behalf of a foreign person. Then provide the name and mailing address of the entity filing notification on behalf of the reporting person named in Item 1(a) on the Form.

**Item 1(j)**—If an entity within the person filing notification other than the ultimate parent entity listed in Item 1(a) is the entity which is making the acquisition, or if the assets or voting securities of an entity other than the ultimate parent entity listed in Item 1(a) are being acquired, provide the name and mailing address of that entity and the percentage of its voting securities held by the person named in Item 1(a) above. (If control is effected by means other than the direct holding of the entity's voting securities, describe the intermediaries or the contract through which control is effected (see § 801.1(b)).

**ITEM 2**

**Item 2(a)**—*Description of acquisition.* Briefly describe the transaction. Include a list of the name and mailing address of each acquiring and acquired person, whether or not required to file notification. Indicate for each party whether assets or voting securities (or both) are to be acquired. Also indicate what consideration will be received by each party. In describing the acquisition, include the expected dates of any major events required to consummate the transaction (e.g., stockholders' meetings, filing of requests for approval, other public filings, terminations of tender offers) and the scheduled consummation date of the transaction.

If the voting securities are to be acquired from a holder other than the issuer (or an entity within the same person as the issuer) separately identify (if known) such holder and the issuer of the voting securities. Acquiring persons in tender offers should describe the terms of the offer.

**Item 2(b)(i)**—*Assets to be acquired.* This Item is to be completed only to the extent that the transaction is an acquisition of assets. Describe all general classes of assets (other than cash and securities) to be acquired by each party to the transaction giving approximate dollar values thereof. If the transaction is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (see § 801.40), include assets to be acquired by the joint venture or other corporation.

Give the approximate total value or estimated total value of the assets to be acquired in this transaction.

Examples of general classes of assets other than cash and securities are land, merchandising inventory, manufacturing plants (specify location and products produced), and

retail stores. For each general class of assets, indicate the page or paragraph number of the contract or other document submitted with this Form in which the assets are more particularly described.

**Item 2(b)(ii)**—*Assets held by acquiring person.* (To be completed by acquiring persons.) If assets of the acquired person (see § 801.13) are presently held by the person filing notification, furnish a description of each general class of such assets in the manner required by Item 2(b)(i), and the dollar value or estimated dollar value at the time they were acquired.

**Item 2(c)**—*Voting securities to be acquired.* Furnish the following information separately for each issuer whose voting securities will be acquired in the acquisition: (If, as a result of the acquisition, the acquiring person will hold 100 percent of the voting securities of the acquired issuer or if the acquisition is a merger or consolidation (see § 801.2(d)), the parties may so state and provide the total dollar value of the transaction instead of responding to items 2(c)(i) - 2(c)(viii). However, this procedure may not be used if the acquiring person currently holds 15 percent or more than $15 million worth of the voting securities of the acquired person or of any entity included within the acquired person.)

**Item 2(c)(i)**—List each class of voting securities (including convertible voting securities) which will be outstanding after the acquisition has been completed. If there is more than one class of voting securities, include a description of the voting rights of each class. Also list each class of non-voting securities which will be acquired in the acquisition;

**Item 2(c)(ii)**—Total number of shares of each class of securities listed on page 3 which will be outstanding after the acquisition has been completed;

**Item 2(c)(iii)**—Total number of shares of each class of securities listed on page 3 which will be acquired in this acquisition. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person;

**Item 2(c)(iv)**—Identity of each person acquiring any securities of any class listed on page 3. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person;

**Item 2(c)(v)**—Dollar value of securities of each class listed on page 3 to be acquired in this transaction (see § 801.10). If there is more than one acquiring person of any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person; (If the exact dollar value cannot be determined at the time of filing, provide an estimated value and indicate the basis on which the estimate was made.)

**Item 2(c)(vi)**—Total number of each class of securities listed on page 3 which will be held by acquiring person(s) after the acquisition has been accomplished. If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of securities, show data separately for each acquiring person;

**Item 2(c)(vii)**—Percentage of each class of securities listed under 2(c)(vi) above which will be held by the acquiring person(s) after the acquisition has been completed (see § 801.12(b)). If there is more than one acquiring person for any class of security, show data separately for each acquiring person;

**Item 2(c)(viii)**—Dollar value (or estimated dollar value) of securities to be held as a result of the acquisition (see § 801.13).

**Item 2(d)**—Furnish copies of final or most recent versions of all documents which constitute the agreement among the acquiring person(s) and the person(s) whose voting securities or assets are to be acquired. (Do not attach these documents to page 4 of the Answer Sheets.)

**ITEM 3**

*Assets and voting securities held as a result of the acquisition* (to be completed by both acquiring and acquired persons). State:

**Item 3(a)**- the percentage of the assets;

**Item 3(b)**- the percentage of the voting securities;

**Item 3(c)**- the aggregate total dollar amount of voting securities and assets of the acquired person to be held by each acquiring person, as a result of the acquisition (see §§ 801.12, 801.13, and 801.14).

**ITEM 4**

Furnish one copy of each of the following documents. For each entity included within the person filing notification which has prepared its own such documents different from those prepared by the person filing notification, furnish, in addition, one copy of each document from each such other entity. Furnish copies of:

**Item 4(a)**—all of the following documents which have been filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (or are to be filed contemporaneously in connection with this acquisition): the most recent proxy statement and Form 10-K, each dated not more than three years prior to the date of this Notification and Report Form; all Forms 10-Q and 8-K filed since the end of the period reflected by the Form 10-K being supplied; any registration statement filed in connection with the transaction for which notification is being filed; if the acquisition is a tender offer, Schedule 14D-1. Alternatively, if the person filing notification does not have copies of responsive documents readily available, identification of such documents and citation to date and place of filing will constitute compliance;

**NOTE:** In response to Item 4(a), the person filing notification may incorporate by reference documents submitted with an earlier filing as explained in the staff formal interpretations dated April 10, 1979, and April 7, 1981, and in § 803.2(e).

**Item 4(b)**—the most recent annual reports and most recent annual audit reports (of person filing notification and of each unconsolidated United States issuer included within such person) and, if different, the most recent regularly prepared balance sheet of the person filing notification and of each unconsolidated United States issuer included within such person;

**Item 4(c)**—all studies, surveys, analyses and reports which were prepared by or for any officer(s) or director(s) (or, in

the case of unincorporated entities, individuals exercising similar functions) for the purpose of evaluating or analyzing the acquisition with respect to market shares, competition, competitors, markets, potential for sales growth or expansion into product or geographic markets, and indicate (if not contained in the document itself) the date of preparation, and the name and title of each individual who prepared each such document.

Persons filing notification may provide an optional index of documents called for by Item 4 on page 5 of the Answer Sheets.

**NOTE**: If the person filing notification withholds any documents called for by Item 4(c) based on a claim of privilege, the person must provide a statement of reasons for such noncompliance as specified in the staff formal interpretation dated September 13, 1979, and § 803.3(d).

* * * * *

**ITEMS 5 through 9 and the Appendix**

**NOTE**: *For Items 5 through 9 and the Appendix limited or separate responses may be required of the person filing notification. (See § 803.2(b) and (c).)*

**ITEM 5(a) - 5(c)**: These Items request information regarding dollar revenues and lines of commerce at three levels with respect to operations conducted within the United States. (See § 803.2(c)(1).) All persons must submit certain data at the 4-digit (SIC code) *industry* level. To the extent that dollar revenues are derived from *manufacturing operations* (SIC major groups 20-39), data must also be submitted at the 5-digit product class and 7-digit product levels (SIC based codes).

**NOTE**: See the "References" listed in the General Instructions to the Form. Refer to the 1987 edition of the *Standard Industrial Classification Manual* for the 4-digit (SIC code) industry codes. Refer to the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products, 1992 *Census oi Manufactures and Census of Mineral Industries* (MC92-R-1) for the 5-digit product class and 7-digit product codes. Report revenues for the 5-digit and 7-digit codes using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code."

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) should supply the information requested only with respect to industries not within 2-digit major group 63. Credit agencies other than banks; security and commodity brokers, dealers, exchanges, and services; holding and other investment offices, and real estate companies (2-digit SIC major groups 61, 62, 67 and 65) should identify or explain the revenues reported (e.g., dollar sales, receipts).

Persons filing notification should include the total dollar revenues for 1992 derived by all entities included within the person filing notification at the time this Notification and Report Form is prepared (even if such entities have become included within the person since 1992). For example, if the person filing notification acquired an entity in 1994, it must include that entity's 1992 revenues in Items 5(a) and 5(b)(i).

**Item 5(a)**-*Dollar revenues by industry.* Provide aggregate 4-digit (SIC code) industry data for 1992.

**Item 5(b)(i)**-*Dollar revenues by manufactured product.* Provide the following information on the aggregate operations for the person filing notification for 1992 for each 7-digit product of the person in 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries)

**NOTE**: When the Numerical List refers to footnote 3, which cites Appendices A and C for detail collected in a specified Current Industrial Report, you must provide revenue information using 7-digit product codes listed in Appendix A.

**Item 5(b)(ii)**-*Products added or deleted.* Within 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries), identify each product of the person filing notification added or deleted subsequent to 1992, indicate the year of addition or deletion, and state total dollar revenues in the most recent year for each product that has been added. Products may be identified either by 7-digit product code or in the manner ordinarily used by the person filing notification.

Do not include products added since 1992 by reason of mergers or acquisition occurring since 1992. Dollar revenues derived from such products should be included in response to Item 5(b)(i). However, if an entity acquired since 1992 by the person filing notification(and now included within the person) itself has added any products since 1992, these products and the dollar revenues derived therefrom should be listed here. Products deleted by reason of dispositions of assets or voting securities since 1992 should also be listed here.

**Item 5(b)(iii)**-*Dollar revenues by manufactured product class.* Provide the following information about the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for the most recent year for each 5-digit product class of the person within SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries). If such data have not been compiled for the most recent year, estimates of dollar revenues by 5-digit product class may be provided if a statement describing the method of estimation is furnished.

**Item 5(c)**-*Dollar revenues by non-manufacturing industry.* Provide the following information concerning the aggregate operations of the person filing notification for the most recent year for each 4-digit (SIC code) industry in SIC major groups other than 20-39 in which the person engaged. If such data have not been compiled for the most recent year, estimates of dollar revenues by 4-digit industry may be provided if a statement describing the method of estimation is furnished. Industries for which the dollar revenues totaled less than one million dollars in the most recent year may be omitted.

**NOTE**: *This million dollar minimum is applicable only to Item 5(c).*

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) should supply the information requested only with respect to industries not within SIC major group 63, and, if voting securities of an insurance carrier are being acquired directly or indirectly should complete the Insurance Appendix to this Form.

### JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATIONS

**Item 5(d)**—Supply the following information only if the acquisition is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation. (See § 801.40.)

**Item 5(d)(i)**—List the name and mailing address of the joint venture or other corporation.

**Item 5(d)(ii)(A)**—List contributions that each person forming the joint venture or other corporation has agreed to make, specifying when each contribution is to be made and the value of the contribution as agreed by the contributors.

**Item 5(d)(ii)(B)**—Describe any contracts or agreements whereby the joint venture or other corporation will obtain assets or capital from sources other than the persons forming it.

**Item 5(d)(ii)(C)**—Specify whether and in what amount the persons forming the joint venture or other corporation have agreed to guarantee its credit or obligations.

**Item 5(d)(ii)(D)**—Describe fully the consideration which each person forming the joint venture or other corporation will receive in exchange for its contribution(s).

**Item 5(d)(iii)**—Describe generally the business in which the joint venture or other corporation will engage, including location of headquarters and principal plants, warehouses, retail establishments or other places of business, its principal types of products or activities, and the geographic areas in which it will do business.

**Item 5(d)(iv)**—Identify each 4-digit (SIC code) *industry* in which the joint venture or other corporation will derive dollar revenues. If the joint venture or other corporation will be engaged in manufacturing, also specify each 5-digit *product class* in which it will derive dollar revenues.

### ITEM 6

This Item need not be completed by a person filing notification only as an acquired person if only assets are to be acquired. Persons filing notification may respond to Items 6(a), 6(b), or 6(c) by referencing a "documentary attachment" furnished with this Form if the information so referenced is a complete response and is up-to-date and accurate. Indicate for each Item the specific page(s) of the document that are responsive to that Item.

**Item 6(a)**—*Entities within person filing notification.* List the name and headquarters mailing address of each entity included within the person filing notification. Entities with total assets of less than $10 million may be omitted.

**Item 6(b)**—*Shareholders of person filing notification.* For each entity (including the ultimate parent entity) included within the person filing notification the voting securities of which are held (see § 801.1(c)) by one or more other persons, list the issuer and class of voting securities, the name and headquarters mailing address of each other person which holds five percent or more of the outstanding voting securities of the class, and the number and percentage held by that person. Holders need not be listed for entities with total assets of less than $10 million.

**Item 6(c)**—*Holdings of person filing notification.* If the person filing notification holds voting securities of any issuer not included within the person filing notification, list the issuer and class, the number and percentage held, and (optionally) the entity within the person filing notification which holds the securities. Holdings of less than five percent of the outstanding voting securities of any issuers, and holdings of issuers with total assets of less than $10 million, may be omitted.

### ITEM 7

If, to the knowledge or belief of the person filing notification, the person filing notification derived dollar revenues in the most recent year from operations in any 4-digit (SIC code) industries in which any other person which is a party to the acquisition also derived dollar revenues in the most recent year (or in which a joint venture or other corporation will derive dollar revenues), then for each such 4-digit (SIC code) industry:

**Item 7(a)**—supply the 4-digit SIC code and description for the industry;

**Item 7(b)**—list the name of each person which is a party to the acquisition which also derived dollar revenues in the 4-digit industry;

**Item 7(c)**—*Geographic market information:*

**Item 7(c)(i)**—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 20-39 (manufacturing industries) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which, to the knowledge or belief of the person filing notification, the products in that 4-digit industry produced by the person filing notification are sold without a significant change in their form, whether they are sold by the person filing notification or by others to whom such products have been sold or resold;

**Item 7(c)(ii)**—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 01-17 and 40-49 (agriculture, forestry and fishing, mining, construction, transportation, communications, electric, gas and sanitary services) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which the person filing notification conducts such operations;

**Item 7(c)(iii)**—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 50-51 (wholesale trade) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states, (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which the customers of the person filing notification are located;

**Item 7(c)(iv)**—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major groups 52-61, 70, 75, 78, and 80 (retail trade, banking, and certain services) listed in Item 7(a) above, provide the address, arranged by state, county and city or town, of each establishment from which dollar revenues were derived in the most recent year by the person filing notification;

**Item 7(c)(v)**—for each 4-digit industry within SIC major group 62, 64-67, 72, 73, 76, 79, and 81-89 (certain finance, insurance and real estate groups and certain services) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the states (or, if desired, portions thereof) in which establishments were located from which the person filing notification derived revenues in the most recent year; and

**Item 7 (c)(vi)**— for each 4-digit industry within SIC 63 (insurance) listed in Item 7(a) above, list the state(s) in which the person filing notification is licensed to write insurance.

**NOTE:** Except in the case of those SIC major industry groups mentioned in Item 7(c)(iv) above, the person filing notification may respond with the word "national" if business is conducted in all 50 states.

**ITEM 8**

**Item 8**—Put an X in the appropriate box to indicate if the acquired person and an acquiring person maintained a vendor-vendee relationship during the most recent year with respect to any manufactured product (or, if the acquisition is the formation of a joint venture or other corporation (see § 801.40), if the joint venture or other corporation will supply to any of the persons forming it any manufactured product which such person purchased from another such person during the most recent year) which the vendee either resells or consumes in or incorporates into the manufacture of any product. Persons filing notification which are *vendees* of such product(s) should list each product purchased, identify each vendor which is a party to the acquisition from which the product was purchased and state the dollar amount of the product purchased from that vendor during the most recent year.

Manufactured products are those within 2-digit SIC major groups 20-39. Any product purchased from the vendor in an aggregrate annual amount not exceeding $1 million, or the manufacture, consumption or use of which is not attributable to the assets to be acquired, or to the issuer whose voting securities are to be acquired (including entities controlled by the issuer), may be omitted.

**ITEM 9**

**Item 9**—*Previous acquisitions* (to be completed by acquiring persons). Determine each 4-digit (SIC code) industry listed in Item 7(a) above, in which the person filing notification derived dollar revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year and in which either the acquired issuer derived revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year, (or in which, in the case of the formation of a joint venture or other corporation, the joint venture or other corporation reasonably can be expected to derive dollar revenues of $1 million or more), or revenues of $1 million or more in the most recent year were attributable to the acquired assets.

For each such 4-digit industry, list all acquisitions made by the person filing notification in the five years prior to the date of filing of entities deriving dollar revenues in that 4-digit industry. List only acquisitions of more than 50 percent of the voting securities or assets of entities which had annual net sales or total assets greater than $10 million in the year prior to the acquisition.

For each such acquisition, supply:

**(a)** the name of the entity acquired;

**(b)** the headquarters address of the entity prior to the acquisition;

**(c)** whether securities or assets were acquired;

**(d)** the consummation date of the acquisition;

**(e)** the annual net sales of the acquired entity for the year prior to the acquisition;

**(f)** the total assets of the acquired entity in the year prior to the acquisition; and

**(g)** the 4-digit (SIC code) industries (by number and description) identified above in which the acquired entity derived dollar revenues.

**ITEM 10**

**Item 10(a)**—Print or type the name and title, firm name, address, and telephone number of the individual to contact regarding this Notification and Report Form. (See § 803.20(b)(2)(ii).)

**Item 10(b)**—Foreign filing persons print or type the name and title, firm name, address, and telephone number of an individual located in the United States designated for the limited purpose of receiving notice of the issuance of a request for additional information or documentary material. (See § 803.20(b)(2)(iii).)

**Certification**—(See § 803.6.)

**APPENDIX TO NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM: INSURANCE**

Insurance carriers (2-digit SIC major group 63) are required to complete this Appendix if voting securities of an insurance carrier are being acquired directly or indirectly.

**ITEM 1**

**Item 1(A)**—*Life Insurance.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of premium receipts (calulated on the accrual basis) for each of the lines of insurance listed on page 16 of the Answer Sheets.

**Item 1(B)**—*New Business.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of new life insurance business issued in the United States (exclusive of revivals, increases, dividend additions and reinsurance ceded) for each of the lines of insurance listed on page 16 of the Answer Sheets.

**ITEM 2**

**Item 2(A)**—*Property Liability Insurance.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of direct premiums written in the United States for each line of insurance specified in Part 2 of the Underwriting and Investment Exhibit of your carrier's annual convention statement.

**Item 2(B)**—Provide for the most recent year the amount of net premiums written in the United States for each line of insurance specified in Part 2 of the Underwriting and Investment Exhibit of your carrier's annual convention statement.

**ITEM 3**

**Item 3(A)**—*Title Insurance.* Provide for the most recent year the amount of net direct title insurance premiums written in the United States.

**Item 3(B)**—Provide for the most recent year the amount of direct title insurance premiums earned in the United States.

**16 C.F.R. Part 803 - Appendix**

**NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM FOR CERTAIN MERGERS AND ACQUISITIONS**

Approved by OMB
3084-0005
Expires 9-30-88

THE INFORMATION REQUIRED TO BE SUPPLIED ON THESE ANSWER SHEETS IS SPECIFIED IN THE INSTRUCTIONS

➡ Attach the Affidavit required by § 803.5 to this page.

FOR OFFICE USE ONLY
TRANSACTION NUMBER
☐ CTO ☐ ETR

Is this Acquisition a CASH TENDER OFFER? ☐ YES ☐ NO

Do you request Early Termination of the Waiting Period? ☐ YES ☐ NO
*(Grants of early termination are published in the Federal Register.)*

**ITEM 1**

(a) NAME AND HEADQUARTERS ADDRESS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION *(ultimate parent entity)*

(b) PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION IS
☐ an acquiring person ☐ an acquired person ☐ both

| (c) LIST NAMES OF ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITIES OF ALL ACQUIRING PERSONS | LIST NAMES OF ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITIES OF ALL ACQUIRED PERSONS |
|---|---|
| | |

(d) THIS ACQUISITION IS *(put an X in all the boxes that apply)*

☐ an acquisition of assets
☐ a merger (see § 801.2)
☐ an acquisition subject to § 801.2(e)
☐ formation of a joint venture or other corporation (see § 801.40)
☐ a consolidation (see § 801.2)
☐ an acquisition of voting securities
☐ a secondary acquisition
☐ an acquisition subject to § 801.31
☐ an acquisition subject to § 801.30 *(specify type)*: _____
☐ other *(specify)* _____

(e) INDICATE HIGHEST NOTIFICATION THRESHOLD IN § 801.1(h) FOR WHICH THIS FORM IS BEING FILED *(acquiring person only)*
☐ $ 15 million ☐ 15% ☐ 25% ☐ 50%

| (f) VALUE OF VOTING SECURITIES | VALUE OF ASSETS |
|---|---|
| | |

(g) PUT AN X IN THE APPROPRIATE BOX TO DESCRIBE ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION
☐ corporation ☐ partnership ☐ other *(specify)* _____

(h) DATA FURNISHED BY
☐ calendar year ☐ fiscal year *(specify period)*: _____ *(month/day)* to _____ *(month/day)*

(i) PUT AN X IN THE APPROPRIATE BOX AND GIVE THE NAME AND ADDRESS OF THE ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION *(if other than ultimate parent entity)*

☐ NA
☐ This report is being filed on behalf of a foreign person pursuant to § 803.4.
☐ This report is being filed on behalf of the ultimate parent entity by another entity within the same person authorized by it to file pursuant to § 803.2(a).

| NAME OF ENTITY FILING NOTIFICATION | ADDRESS |
|---|---|
| | |

THIS FORM IS REQUIRED BY LAW and must be filed separately by each person which, by reason of a merger, consolidation or acquisition, is subject to § 7A of the Clayton Act, 15 U.S.C. § 18a, as added by Section 201 of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, Pub. L. No. 94-435, 90 Stat. 1390, and rules promulgated thereunder (hereinafter referred to as "the rules" or by section number). The statute and rules are set forth in the *Federal Register* at 43 FR 33450; the rules may also be found at 16 CFR Parts 801-03. Failure to file this **Notification and Report Form**, and to observe the required waiting period before consummating the acquisition, in accordance with the applicable provisions of 15 U.S.C. § 18a and the rules, subjects any "person," as defined in the rules, or any individuals responsible for noncompliance, to liability for a penalty of not more than $10,000 for each day during which such person is in violation of 15 U.S.C. § 18a.

All information and documentary material filed in or with this Form is confidential. It is exempt from disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act, and may be made public only in an administrative or judicial proceeding, or disclosed to Congress or to a duly authorized committee or subcommittee of Congress.

Complete and return *two* notarized copies (with *one set* of documentary attachments) of this **Notification and Report Form** to Premerger Notification Office, Bureau of Competition, Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, and *three* notarized copies (with *one set* of documentary attachments) to Director of Operations, Antitrust Division, Room 3218, Department of Justice, Washington, D.C. 20530. The central office for information and assistance with respect to matters in connection with this **Notification and Report Form** is Room 303, Federal Trade Commission, Washington, D.C. 20580, phone (202) 326-3100.

FTC Form: C 4 (rev. 2/87)

1

| NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | DATE |
|---|---|
| | |

(j) NAME AND ADDRESS OF ENTITY MAKING ACQUISITION OR WHOSE ASSETS OR VOTING SECURITIES ARE BEING ACQUIRED IF DIFFERENT FROM THE ULTIMATE PARENT ENTITY IDENTIFIED IN ITEM 1(a)

PERCENT OF VOTING SECURITIES HELD BY EACH ENTITY IDENTIFIED IN ITEM 1(a)

**ITEM 2**

2(a) DESCRIPTION OF ACQUISITION

| NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | DATE |
|---|---|
| | |

2(b)(i) ASSETS TO BE ACQUIRED (*to be completed only for assets acquisitions*)

2(b)(ii) ASSETS HELD BY ACQUIRING PERSON

2(c) VOTING SECURITIES TO BE ACQUIRED

(c)(i) LIST AND DESCRIPTION OF VOTING SECURITIES AND LIST OF NON-VOTING SECURITIES:

(c)(ii) TOTAL NUMBER OF SHARES OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITY:

(c)(iii) TOTAL NUMBER OF SHARES OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITY BEING ACQUIRED:

(*Item 2(c) continued on next page*)

| NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | DATE |
|---|---|
| | |

(c)(iv) IDENTITY OF PERSONS ACQUIRING SECURITIES:

(c)(v) DOLLAR VALUE OF SECURITIES IN EACH CLASS BEING ACQUIRED:

(c)(vi) TOTAL NUMBER OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITIES HELD BY ACQUIRING PERSON AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION:

(c)(vii) PERCENTAGE OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITIES HELD BY ACQUIRING PERSON AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION:

(c)(viii) DOLLAR VALUE OF SECURITIES TO BE HELD AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION

(d) SUBMIT A COPY OF THE MOST RECENT VERSION OF CONTRACT OR AGREEMENT (*or letter of intent to merge or acquire*)

DO NOT ATTACH THIS DOCUMENT TO THIS PAGE. ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER OF CONTRACT OR AGGREEMENT _____

4

| NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | DATE |
|---|---|
| | |

**ITEM 3**
ASSETS AND VOTING SECURITIES HELD AS A RESULT OF THE ACQUISITION

(a) PERCENTAGE OF ASSETS _____

(b) PERCENTAGE OF VOTING SECURITIES _____

(c) AGGREGATE TOTAL VALUE _____

**ITEM 4** PERSONS FILING NOTIFICATION MAY PROVIDE BELOW AN OPTIONAL INDEX OF DOCUMENTS REQUIRED TO BE SUBMITTED BY ITEM 4 (SEE ITEM BY ITEM INSTRUCTIONS). THESE DOCUMENTS SHOULD NOT BE ATTACHED TO THIS PAGE.

(a) DOCUMENTS FILED WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION. ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER

(b) ANNUAL REPORTS, ANNUAL AUDIT REPORTS, AND REGULARLY PREPARED BALANCE SHEETS. ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER

(c) STUDIES, SURVEYS, ANALYSES, AND REPORTS. ATTACHMENT OR REFERENCE NUMBER

| NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | DATE |
|---|---|

**ITEM 5** (See the "References" listed in the General Instructions to the Form. Refer to the 1987 editon of the *Standard Industiral Classification Manual* for the 4-digit (SIC Code) industry codes. Refer to the Numerical List of Manufactured and Mineral Products, *1992 Census of Manufactures and Census of Mineral Industries* (MC92-R-1) for the 5-digit product class and 7-digit product codes. Report revenues for the 5-digit and 7-digit codes using the codes in the columns labeled "Product code.")

5(a) DOLLAR REVENUES BY INDUSTRY

| 4-DIGIT INDUSTRY CODE *Product code published* | DESCRIPTION | 1992 TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

FTC Form C 4 (rev. 07/95) 6

| NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | DATE |
|---|---|
| | |

ITEM 5(b)(i) DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCTS

| 7-DIGIT PRODUCT CODE *Product code published* | DESCRIPTION | 1992 TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

FTC Form C 4 (rev. 07/95) 7

| NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | DATE |
|---|---|
| | |

**ITEM 5(b)(II) PRODUCTS ADDED OR DELETED**

| DESCRIPTION (7-DIGIT PRODUCT CODE) | ADD | DELETE | YEAR OF CHANGE | TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | |

**ITEM 5(b)(III) DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCT CLASS**

| 5-DIGIT PRODUCT CLASS CODE *Product code published* | DESCRIPTION | YEAR ___ TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES |
|---|---|---|
| | *(Item 5(b)(iii) continued on page 9)* | |

8

| NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | | DATE |
|---|---|---|

5(b)(iii) DOLLAR REVENUES BY MANUFACTURED PRODUCT CLASS - CONTINUED

| 5-DIGIT PRODUCT CLASS CODE | DESCRIPTION | YEAR<br>TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

5(c) DOLLAR REVENUES BY NON-MANUFACTURING INDUSTRY

| 4-DIGIT INDUSTRY CODE | DESCRIPTION | YEAR<br>TOTAL DOLLAR REVENUES |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

| NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | DATE |
|---|---|

5(d) COMPLETE ONLY IF ACQUISITION IS THE FORMATION OF A JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION

5(d)(i) NAME AND ADDRESS OF THE JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION

5(d)(ii)

(A) CONTRIBUTIONS THAT EACH PERSON FORMING THE JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION HAS AGREED TO MAKE.

(B) DESCRIPTION OF ANY CONTRACTS OR AGREEMENTS.

(C) DESCRIPTION OF ANY CREDIT GUARANTEES OR OBLIGATIONS.

(D) DESCRIPTION OF CONSIDERATION WHICH EACH PERSON FORMING THE JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION WILL RECEIVE .

5(d)(iii) DESCRIPTION OF THE BUSINESS IN WHICH THE JOINT VENTURE OR OTHER CORPORATION WILL ENGAGE.

5(d)(iv)SOURCE OF DOLLAR REVENUES BY 4-DIGIT SIC CODE (*non-manufacturing*) AND BY 5-DIGIT PRODUCT CLASS (*manufacturing*).

NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION DATE

**ITEM 6**

6(a) ENTITIES WITHIN PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

6(b) SHAREHOLDERS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

| NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | DATE |
|---|---|

6(c) HOLDINGS OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION

**ITEM 7** DOLLAR REVENUES
7(a) 4-DIGIT SIC CODE AND DESCRIPTION

7(b) NAME OF EACH PERSON WHICH ALSO DERIVED DOLLAR REVENUES

| NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | | DATE |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

7(c) GEOGRAPHIC MARKET INFORMATION

| NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | DATE |
|---|---|
| | |

**ITEM 8** VENDOR-VENDEE RELATIONSHIP

☐ NO ☐ YES (*If yes and you are the vendee, complete the following*)

| PRODUCT PURCHASES | VENDOR | DOLLAR AMOUNT |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

**ITEM 9** PRIOR ACQUISITIONS (*to be completed by acquiring person only*)

| NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | DATE |
|---|---|

**ITEM 10** IDENTIFICATION OF PERSON TO CONTACT REGARDING THIS REPORT

| 10(a) NAME OF CONTACT PERSON | TITLE OF CONTACT PERSON |
|---|---|
| FIRM NAME AND BUSINESS ADDRESS | BUSINESS TELEPHONE NUMBER |

10(b) IDENTIFICATION OF AN INDIVIDUAL LOCATED IN THE UNITED STATES DESIGNATED FOR THE LIMITED PURPOSE OF RECEIVING NOTICE OF ISSUANCE OF A REQUEST FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION OR DOCUMENTS. *(See § 803.20(b)(2)(iii))*

| NAME | TITLE |
|---|---|
| ADDRESS | BUSINESS TELEPHONE NUMBER |

**CERTIFICATION**

This **NOTIFICATION AND REPORT FORM**, together with any and all appendices and attachments thereto, was prepared and assembled under my supervision in accordance with instructions issued by the Federal Trade Commission. Subject to the recognition that, where so indicated, reasonable estimates have been made because books and records do not provide the required data, the information is, to the best of my knowledge, true, correct, and complete in accordance with the statute and rules.

| NAME *(Please print or type)* | TITLE |
|---|---|
| SIGNATURE | DATE |

Subscribed and sworn to before me at the

City of _____, State of _____

this _____ day of _____, 19__

Signature _____ _____

My Commission expires _____

(SEAL)

15

| NAME OF PERSON FILING NOTIFICATION | DATE |
|---|---|

## APPENDIX: INSURANCE

**ITEM 1**

| | YEAR ____ AMOUNT |
|---|---|
| A PREMIUM RECEIPTS | |
| 1 LIFE INSURANCE | |
| 1a. ORDINARY LIFE INSURANCE | |
| 1b. GROUP LIFE INSURANCE (including Federal Employees' Group Life Insurance and Servicemen's Group Life Insurance, but excluding credit life insurance). | |
| 1c. INDUSTRIAL LIFE INSURANCE | |
| 1d. CREDIT LIFE INSURANCE | |
| 2 ANNUITY CONSIDERATIONS | |
| 2a. INDIVIDUAL ANNUITY CONSIDERATIONS | |
| 2b. GROUP ANNUITY CONSIDERATIONS | |
| 3 HEALTH INSURANCE | |
| 3a. INDIVIDUAL HEALTH INSURANCE | |
| 3b. GROUP HEALTH INSURANCE | |
| TOTAL | |

| B NEW BUSINESS | YEAR ____ AMOUNT |
|---|---|
| 1 ORDINARY LIFE INSURANCE | |
| 2 GROUP LIFE INSURANCE | |
| 3 INDUSTRIAL LIFE INSURANCE | |
| 4 CREDIT LIFE INSURANCE | |
| TOTAL | |

**ITEM 2** PROPERTY LIABILITY INSURANCE — YEAR ____

| LINE OF INSURANCE | A. DIRECT PREMIUMS | B. NET PREMIUMS |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

**ITEM 3** TITLE INSURANCE — YEAR ____

| A. NET DIRECT PREMIUMS WRITTEN | B. DIRECT PREMIUMS EARNED | |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

16

[52 FR 7083, Mar. 6, 1987; as amended at 55 FR 31374, Aug. 2, 1990; 60 FR 40706, Aug. 9, 1995]

# SUBCHAPTER I—FAIR DEBT COLLECTION PRACTICES ACT

## PART 901—PROCEDURES FOR STATE APPLICATION FOR EXEMPTION FROM THE PROVISIONS OF THE ACT

Sec.
901.1 Purpose.
901.2 Application.
901.3 Supporting documents.
901.4 Criteria for determination.
901.5 Public notice of filing.
901.6 Exemption from requirements.
901.7 Adverse determination.
901.8 Revocation of exemption.

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 95–109, 91 Stat. 874, 15 U.S.C. 1692o; 5 U.S.C. 552.

SOURCE: 44 FR 21005, Apr. 9, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

### § 901.1 Purpose.

This part establishes procedures and criteria whereby States may apply to the Federal Trade Commission for exemption of a class of debt collection practices within the applying State from the provisions of the Fair Debt Collection Practices Act as provided in section 817 of the Act, 15 U.S.C. 1692o.

### § 901.2 Application.

Any State may apply to the Commission pursuant to the terms of this Rule for a determination that, under the laws of that State,[1] any class of debt collection practices[2] within that State is subject to requirements that are substantially similar to, or provide greater protection for consumers than, those imposed under sections 803 through 812 of the Act, and that there is adequate provision for State enforcement of such requirements. The application shall be in writing, addressed to the Commission, signed by the Governor, Attorney General or State official having primary enforcement or responsibility under the State law which is applicable to the class of debt collection practices, and shall be supported by the documents specified herein.

### § 901.3 Supporting documents.

The application shall be accompanied by:

(a) A copy of the full text of the State law that is claimed to contain requirements substantially similar to those imposed under sections 803 through 812 of the Act, or to provide greater protection to consumers than sections 803 through 812 of the Act, regarding the class of debt collection practices within that State.

(b) A comparison of each provision of sections 803 through 812 of the Act with the corresponding provision of the State law, together with reasons supporting the claim that the corresponding provisions of the State law are substantially similar to or provide greater protection to consumers than provisions of sections 803 through 812 of the Act and an explanation as to why any differences between the State and federal law are not inconsistent with the provisions of sections 803 through 812 of the Act and do not result in a diminution in the protection otherwise afforded consumers; and a statement that no other State laws (including administrative or judicial interpretations) are related to, or would have an effect upon, the State law that is being considered by the Commission in making its determination.

(c) A copy of the full text of the State law that provides for enforcement of the State law referred to in paragraph (a) of this section.

(d) A comparison of the provisions of the State law that provides for enforcement with the provisions of section 814 of the Act, together with reasons supporting the claim that such State law provides for:

(1) Administrative enforcement of the State law referred to in paragraph (a) of this section that is substantially similar to, or more extensive than, the enforcement provided under section 814 of the Act;

[1] Any reference to State law herein includes a reference to any regulations that implement State law and formal interpretations thereof by a court of competent jurisdiction or duly authorized agency of that State.

[2] As applicable, references to ''class of debt collection practices'' in this rule include one or more such classes of debt collection practices.

(2) Civil liabilities for a failure to comply with the requirements of the State law that is substantially similar to, or more extensive than, that provided under section 813 of the Act, including class action liability and the ability of the State Attorney General or other appropriate State officials to commence a civil action under circumstances substantially similar to those prescribed in section 813 of the Act, except that such State law may provide a greater damage remedy or other, more extensive remedies;

(3) A statute of limitations that prescribes a period for civil actions of substantially similar duration to that provided under section 813(d) of the Act or a longer period; and

(e) A statement identifying the office designated or to be designated to administer the State law referred to in paragraph (a) of this section, together with complete information regarding the fiscal arrangements for administrative enforcement (including the amount of funds available or to be provided), the number and qualifications of personnel engaged or to be engaged in enforcement, and a description of the procedures under which such State law is to be administratively enforced. The statement should also include reasons to support the claim that there is adequate provision for enforcement of such State law.

### § 901.4 Criteria for determination.

The Commission will consider the criteria set forth below, and any other relevant information, in determining whether the law of a State is substantially similar to, or provides greater protection to consumers than, the provisions of sections 803 through 812 of the Act regarding the class of debt collection practices within that State, and whether there is adequate provision for State enforcement of such law. In making that determination, the Commission primarily will consider each provision of the State law in comparison with each corresponding provision in sections 803 through 812 of the Act, and not the State law as a whole in comparison with the Act as a whole.

(a) In order for provisions of State law to be substantially similar to, or provide greater protection to consumers than the provisions of sections 803 through 812 of the Act, the provisions of State law[3] at least shall provide that:

(1) Definitions and rules of construction, as applicable, import the same meaning and have the same application as those prescribed by sections 803 through 812 of the Act.

(2) Debt collectors provide all of the applicable notifications required by the provisions of sections 803 through 812 of the Act, with the content and in the terminology, form, and time periods prescribed by this part pursuant to sections 803 through 812; however, required references to State law may be substituted for the references to Federal law required in this part. Notification requirements under State law in additional circumstances or with additional detail that do not frustrate any of the purposes of the Act may be determined by the Commission to be consistent with sections 803 through 812 of the Act;

(3) Debt Collectors take all affirmative actions and abide by obligations substantially similar to, or more extensive than, those prescribed by sections 803 through 812 of the Act under substantially similar or more stringent conditions and within the same or more stringent time periods as are prescribed in sections 803 through 812 of the Act;

(4) Debt Collectors abide by the same or more stringent prohibitions as are prescribed by sections 803 through 812 of the act;

(5) Obligations or responsibilities imposed on consumers are no more costly, lengthy, or burdensome relative to consumers exercising any of the rights or gaining the benefits of the protections provided in the State law than corresponding obligations or responsibilities imposed on consumers in sections 803 through 812 of the act.

(6) Consumers' rights and protections are substantially similar to, or more

[3] This subsection is not be construed as indicating that the Commission would consider adversely any additional requirements of State law that are not inconsistent with the purpose of the Act or the requirements imposed under sections 803 through 812 of the Act.

favorable than, those provided by sections 803 through 812 of the Act under conditions or within time periods that are substantially similar to, or more favorable to consumers than, those prescribed by sections 803 through 812 of the Act.

(b) In determining whether provisions for enforcement of the State law referred to in §901.3(a) are adequate, consideration will be given to the extent to which, under State law, provision is made for:

(1) Administrative enforcement, including necessary facilities, personnel, and funding;

(2) Civil liability for a failure to comply with the requirements of such a State law that is substantially similar to, or more extensive than, that provided under section 813 of the act;

(3) A statute of limitations for civil liability of substantially similar or longer duration as that provided under section 813(d) of the act.

### §901.5 Public notice of filing.

In connection with any application that has been filed in accordance with the requirements of §§901.2 and 901.3 of this rule and following initial review of the application, a notice of such filing shall be published by the Commission in the FEDERAL REGISTER, and a copy of such application shall be made available for examination by interested persons during business hours at the Federal Trade Commission, Public Reference Room, Room 130. A period of time shall be allowed from the date of such publication for interested parties to submit written comments to the Commission regarding that application.

### §901.6 Exemption from requirements.

If the Commission determines on the basis of the information before it that, under the law of a State, a class of debt collection practices is subject to requirements substantially similar to, or that provide greater protection to consumers than, those imposed under sections 803 through section 812 and 814 of the Act, and that there is adequate provision for State enforcement, the Commission will exempt the class of debt collection practices in that State from the requirements of sections 803 through 812 and section 814 of the Act in the following manner and subject to the following conditions:

(a) Notice of the exemption shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, and the Commission shall furnish a copy of such notice to the State official who made application for such exemption, to each Federal authority responsible for administrative enforcement of the requirements of sections 803 through 812 of the Act, and to the Attorney General of the United States. Any exemption granted shall be effective 90 days after the date of publication of such notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(b) The appropriate official of any State that receives an exemption shall inform the Commission in writing within 30 days of any change in the State laws referred to in §901.3 (a) and (c). The report of any such change shall contain copies of the full text of that change, together with statements setting forth the information and opinions regarding that change that are specified in §901.3 (b) and (d). The appropriate official of any State that has received such an exemption also shall file with the Commission from time to time such reports as the Commission may require.

(c) The Commission shall inform the appropriate official of any State that receives such an exemption of any subsequent amendments of the Act (including the Commission's formal advisory opinions, and informal staff interpretations issued by an authorized official or employee of the Federal Trade Commission) that might necessitate the amendment of State law for the exemption to continue.

(d) No exemption shall extend to the civil liability provisions of section 813 of the Act. After an exemption is granted, the requirements of the applicable State law shall constitute the requirements of sections 803 through 812 of the Act, except to the extent such State law imposes requirements not imposed by the Act or this part.

### §901.7 Adverse determination.

(a) If, after publication of a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER as provided under §901.5, the Commission finds on the basis of the information before it

that it cannot make a favorable determination in connection with the application, the Commission shall notify the appropriate State official of the facts upon which such findings are based and shall afford that State authority a reasonable opportunity to demonstrate or achieve compliance.

(b) If, after having afforded the State authority such opportunity to demonstrate or achieve compliance, the Commission finds on the basis of the information before it that it still cannot make a favorable determination in connection with the application, the Commission shall publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a notice of its determination regarding the application and shall furnish a copy of such notice to the State official who made application for such exemption.

### § 901.8 Revocation of exemption.

(a) The Commission reserves the right to revoke any exemption granted under the provisions of this rule, if at any time it determines that the State law does not, in fact, impose requirements that are substantially similar to, or that provide greater protection to applicants than, those imposed under sections 803 through 812 of the Act or that there is not, in fact, adequate provision for State enforcement.

(b) Before revoking any such exemption, the Commission shall notify the appropriate State official of the facts or conduct that, in the Commission's opinion, warrants such revocation, and shall afford that State such opportunity as the Commission deems appropriate in the circumstances to demonstrate or achieve compliance.

(c) If, after having been afforded the opportunity to demonstrate or achieve compliance, the Commission determines that the State has not done so, notice of the Commission's intention to revoke such exemption shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. A period of time shall be allowed from the date of such publication for interested persons to submit written comments to the Commission regarding the intention to revoke.

(d) If such exemption is revoked, notice of such revocation shall be published by the Commission in the FEDERAL REGISTER, and a copy of such notice shall be furnished to the appropriate State official, to the Federal authorities responsible for enforcement of the requirements of the Act, and to the Attorney General of the United States. The revocation shall become effective, and the class of debt collection practices affected within that State shall become subject to the requirements of sections 803 through 812 of the Act, 90 days after the date of publication of the notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

## PARTS 902–999 [RESERVED]